IBN KHALLIKAN'S

BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

VOL. IV
PARIS. — PRINTED BY ÉDOUARD BLOT,
7, Rue Blot, 7.
IBN KHALLIKAN’S

BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY

TRANSLATED FROM THE ARABIC

BY

Bn MAC GUCKIN DE SLANE,
MEMBER OF THE FRENCH INSTITUTE, ACADEMIE DES INSCRIPTIONS ET BELLES-LETtres, ETC.

VOL. IV.

PARIS,
PRINTED FOR THE
ORIENTAL TRANSLATION FUND OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND.

MDCCCLXXI.
LIFE OF IBN KHALLIKAN

On the left bank of the Tigris, opposite to the southern part of the province of Mosul, lies an extensive territory, bounded, on the north, by the greater Zab, on the east by the chain of mountains which separates that part of the Ottoman empire from Persia, on the south by a line which may be supposed to have extended from the town of Kefri to the Tigris, and, on the west, by the waters of that river. Arbeia, the capital of this region, lies at the distance of twenty hours, or leagues, to the N. N. E. of Mosul.

During upwards of forty years, from A. H. 587 (A. D. 1191) to A. H. 630 (A. D. 1233), the principality of Arbeia was governed by a brother-in-law of the sultan Salāh ad-Dīn (Saladin), and enjoyed, under that chieftain's sway, a period of continual prosperity (a). His name was Kūkūburi, an alteration of the words Ghīdūr-Būrī, which, in the Jaghatāi dialect of the Turkish language, mean the blue wolf. The titles by which he was generally designated, in conformity to the custom of the age, were al-Malek al-Moazzam Muzaffar ad-Dīn (the exalted prince, the triumphant in religion). His father, Ali Ibn Bektikin (the valourous bey), was a feudatory prince who had faithfully served the celebrated Nūr ad-Dīn, and whose


vol. IV.
usual titles were Ali Katchek Zain ad-Dîn (little Ali, the ornament of religion). Kû-kubûrî took an active share in the wars carried on by the sultan Salâh ad-Dîn against the Crusaders, and Arabic historians remark that, in every battle with the enemy, his standard always came off victorious. Appointed by Salâh ad-Dîn to the government of the city and province of Arbela, he reigned over that little state in the character of an independant sovereign, and consecrated the revenues of the country to the foundation of mosques, schools, hospitals, asylums for the blind, for widows, for orphans and for foundlings. The second volume of the present work, page 535 et seq. contains a long and interesting description of the institutions and practices by which Kû-kubûrî displayed the ardour of his zeal for the Muslim faith. Doctors of the law, literary men and students found in him a generous protector; to his well-directed patronage it was that Ibn Khalîkân, the author of this biographical dictionary, was indebted for his education.

It is worthy of remark that the province of Mosul, on the opposite side of the Tigris, was governed, nearly at the same time, by a prince who rivalled in talent and beneficence with the sovereign of Arbela. Badr ad-Dîn Lûdû al-Malik ar-Rakâm (Lûdû, the full moon of religion, the clement prince), such were his name and titles, was the patron and friend of Izz ad-Dîn Ibn al-Athîr, and to his encouragement we owe that historian’s excellent book of annals bearing the title of the Kâmîl.

The family called the Bani Khalîkân drew its descent from Jaafar Ibn Yahya Ibn Khalîd the Barmekide, and held a distinguished place in Arbela. It derived its name from the father of the great grand-father of our historian. M. de Sacy in the third volume of his Chrestomathie Arabe, 2nd edition, page 538, says that the name of Khalîkân does not occur in the genealogy of the family, but the list to which he himself refers, that given by Tydeman in his Conspectus, and another furnished by Abû’l-Mahasîn, in his Manhal, life of Ibn Khalîkân, do really contain it. The Tabakât al-Fukahâ, MS. of the Bib. Nat. anciens fonds, no 755, fol. 144 verso, and the Tabakât ash-Shafîyîn, anciens fonds, no 861, fol. 72, insert also the name of Khalîkân in the genealogy of our author.

Great uncertainty prevails respecting the prononciation of the word here transcribed Khâlikân, it being written in Arabic Khîkân (خليكان), with the omission of the short vowels and of the sign which redoubles the letters; but the form adopted throughout this work is probably the true one.
Our biographer bore the ethnic surname of al-Barmakī (the descendant of Barmek). Effectively, the family of which he was a member drew its origin from the celebrated Yahya, the son of Khālid, and the grand son of Barmek. That genealogy has come down to us in three complete copies, one of them by the anonymous author of the biographical notice inserted by Tydeman in his Conспектus, another by the manuscript of the Bib. Nat. fonds Saint-Germain, no 83, and the third, by Abū l-Mahāsin in his Manhal (b).

The Khallikān family were greatly favoured and protected by Kūkubūrī and by Ibn Bekūkīn, that prince’s father. “Our family,” says the author of this biographical dictionary (c), “was under such obligations to Muzaffar ad-Dīn Kūkubūrī that, to repay even a part of them, our utmost efforts would be vain. The benefits and favours conferred by him on us, and by his forefathers on ours, were boundless.” In another place he mentions that his father, Muhammad Ibn Ibrahim, was professor in the college founded at Arbela by al-Malik al-Moazzam Muzaffar ad-Dīn, meaning Kūkubūrī, and that he continued to teach till the hour of his death. That event took place on the 21st of Shaabān, A. H. 610 (5th January, A. D. 1214) (d). The author was then in the second year of his age, for he informs us that he was born at Arbela, in the college founded by Kūkubūrī, on the 11th of the latter Rabīl, A. H. 608 (22nd September, A. D. 1211)(e). This indication proves that his father was lodged in the college, probably by special favour. His mother, whose name we are unable to give, was a descendant of Khalaf Ibn Aiyūb, one of the imām Abū Hantfa’s disciples (f). Of his brother, named Dla ad-Dīn Isa, we only know that, towards A. H. 626 (A. D. 1228-9), he went to study at Aleppo under Bahā ad-Dīn Ibn Shaddād, the au-

(b) This biographical notice we have given in vol. I, page VIII of the Introduction.
(d) Ibid., vol. I, page 91.
(e) Ibid., vol. I, page 551.
(f) So says Abū l-Mahāsin in his al-Manhal as-Safī. See the Introduction to the first volume of this translation, page IX. An article on Ibn Aiyūb will be found in the Tabakāt al-Fukāh, MS. of the Bibliothèque nationale, supplément arabe, n° 699, fol. 97, verso. — Some of the indications given here and farther on are taken from notes collected by the translator in former years and may, perhaps, not be precisely exact. To verify them now, May, 1871, is impossible, the manuscripts from which they were borrowed and which belong to the Bib. nat., having been removed to a place of safety, where they are to lie as long as Paris remains in its present unsettled state.
LIFE OF IBN KHALLIKAN.

Author of the life of Salâh ad-Dîn (g), and that he was probably the elder son. We may suppose he was about sixteen years of age.

Before our author had completed his second year, he received the first elements of instruction from his father; even in that year, he obtained from a very learned lady, Zainab, the daughter of as-Shari and one of the celebrated Zamakshari's pupils, a licence certifying that he had learned perfectly well some texts which she had taught him (h). It would be of little importance were we to insert here the names of the teachers from whom he took lessons in his early youth; one of these professors may, however, be noticed. His surname was Sharaf ad-Dîn; his family was that of the Banû Manâ, a distinguished house which produced a number of learned men (i). "When a boy," says Ibn Khallikân (j), "I attended his lessons. — He was the best of men, and when I think of him, the world is of little value in my eyes."

He continued to reside at Arbela for some years. He was there in A. H. 618 (A. D. 1221-2), when an attempt was made on the life of Ibn al-Mustaфи (k). At the age of thirteen, he heard al-Bokhari's Safî explained by the shâikh Muhammad Ibn Hibat Allah as-Sûfi (l). In the year 623 (A. D. 1226), he saw Ibn Qain at Arbela, whither that poet had been sent on a political mission (m). Between the years 618 and 626 (A. D. 1221-1228), he went more than ten times from Arbela to Mosul, where Dîa ad-Dîn Ibn al-Athîr, the brother of the historian, was residing: "I tried" said he, "to get introduced to him (n), because I knew that he had been the intimate friend of my father, and I wished to study something under his tuition. I did not, however, succeed in my project." In A. H. 625 (A. D. 1227-8), he left his native place, with the intention of continuing his studies at Aleppo.

(g) Biog. Dict., vol. II, page 435, vol. IV, p. 423. — For the life of Bahâ ad-Dîn Ibn Shaddâd, consult vol. IV, page 417 et seq.; a very interesting article but, as usual with our author, badly drawn up.


(i) Ibid., vol. IV, pages 597, 598.


(k) Ibid., vol. II, page 559.


(m) Ibid., vol. III, page 477.

(n) Ibid., vol. III, page 548.
The north of Syria formed, at that time, a principality the capital of which was Aleppo. The sovereign, al-Malik az-Zahir (الظاهر), who was one of Salâh ad-Dîn’s sons, had taken for vizir and privy-councillor the kadi Abû ‘l-Mahâsin Yûsuf, surnamed familiarly Ibn Shaddâd and generally known by the title of Bahâ ad-Dîn (splendor of religion). This statesman had been one of Salâh ad-Dîn’s ministers and secretaries; at a later period he wrote the life of that sultan, the same work of which Albert Schultens has given us an edition under the title of Vita et res gestæ Saladini, auctore Bohadino Ibn Sjeddâd: ‘‘There were but few ‘‘colleges (or high schools) in Aleppo till Bahâ ad-Dîn went there (o), and learned men were very rare. Abû ‘l-Mahâsin (Bahâ ad-Dîn) was therefore induced ‘‘to reorganize these institutions and provide them with teachers learned in the ‘‘law. During his life a great number of colleges were thus established.’’ He founded also a college at his own expense and a school for the teaching of the Traditions concerning the Prophet (p). ‘‘When Aleppo, ’’ says our author (q), ‘‘was brought into this (prosperous) state, legists arrived there from ‘‘all quarters, studies became active and the number of persons who went to ‘‘the city was very great. A close intimacy, a sincere and friendly attachment, ‘‘subsisted between my deceased father and the kâdi Abû ‘l-Mahâsin (Bahâ ad- ‘‘Dîn), from the time in which they were fellow-students at Mosul. My brother ‘‘went to study under him, a very short time before my arrival there, and a letter ‘‘of recommendation, drawn up in the strongest terms, was sent to him (Bahâ ‘‘ad-Dîn) by (Kâkubûrî), the sovereign of our city. In this missive he said: ‘‘‘‘You know what is necessary to be done with these boys; they are the sons ‘‘of one who was to me as a brother and who was also as a brother to you. I ‘‘need not add any stronger recommendation.’ ’’

It was towards the end of the month of Ramadân, 626 (about the 20th of August, A. D. 1229) that Ibn Khallikân left Arbela. On reaching Mosul, he went to visit one of the most learned men of the age, the celebrated legist, divine and mathematician, Kamâl ad-Dîn Ibn Manâ, of whom he afterwards wrote a biographical notice. ‘‘I went frequently to see him,’’ said he (r) ‘‘on account of the

(o) Ibid., vol. IV, page 422.
(p) Ibid., vol. IV, page 423.
(q) Ibid., loco laudato.
LIFE OF IBN KHALLIKAN.

"close and intimate friendship which existed between him and my deceased " father; but I had not an opportunity of receiving lessons from him, because " I could not make any stay (in Mosul) and was obliged to hurry off to Syria." In the month of Shauwal, 625 (August-September, A. D. 1229), Ibn Khallikân passed into the province which, at that time, was called as-Sharkiya (the oriental), and then proceeded from Harrân (t) to Aleppo, where he arrived on the first of Zu 'l-Kaada (21st September) of the same year (u).

"The kâdi Abû 'l-Mahâsin, being very obliging (v), received us most hono-" rably and treated us as well as he possibly could, just in a manner worthy of " himself. He lodged us in his college, inscribed us on the list of those who " received commons and placed us in the class of the elder boys, though we " were still very young and merely beginners. I and my brother remained " with him till the day of his death (14 Safar, A. H. 632, 8th November, A. D. " 1234). During all that time there was not a general course of lectures in the " college, because the professor, Abû 'l-Mahâsin himself, was much advanced in " years and so very weak that he could hardly move, much less commit his les-" sons to memory and deliver them. He therefore confined to four legists of " merit the duty of going over the lessons with the students, and it was under " the tuition of these masters that all the school pursued their studies. I and " my brother read our lessons under the shaikh Jamâl ad-Dîn Abû Bakr al-" Mâhâni, because he was our townsman and had been a fellow-student of my " father's. I then attended the lectures given by the shaikh Najm ad-Dîn Ibn " al-Khabbât in the Saïfiya college and read, under his direction, al-Ghazzâli's " (law treatise, the) Wâjiz from the beginning of the work to the chapter on " affirmations."

"Aleppo was then filled with learned men and with students. The gramma-
" rian Muwaffak ad-Dîn Ibn as-Sâigh was at that time the chief of the literary " community and stood in it without a rival. I began to study under

(c) In some passages of our translation the word Sharkiya has been erroneously explained by Irak and Mesopotamia. It designated northern Mesopotamia and Diâr Bakr.


(u) Ibid., vol. IV, pages 28, 380.

(v) Ibid., vol. IV, page 493.
"him; he taught in the great mosque and held his class in the northern makārah. In the interval between the maghreb and the asha prayers he taught in the Rawḍaḫiya college. I commenced by Ibn Jinni’s Luma' (المعنى) and read to him the greater part of that work, besides which I listened to the lectures which he addressed to the assembly. This was towards the close of the year 627 (Oct.-Nov., A.D. 1230) [w]." Ibn Khallikān then bestows great commendation on this professor. He informs us elsewhere [x] that, on his arrival at Aleppo, he met the historian Ibn al-Athīr, who was residing as a guest with the aṭābek, or guardian, of the reigning prince. I was," says he, "his constant visitor and, as a close intimacy had subsisted between him and my lamented father, he (Ibn al-Athīr) received me with the utmost regard and kindness. I continued to cultivate his society with unceasing as-"siduity till he removed to Mosul."

The only information furnished by Ibn Khallikān respecting his early education is that contained in the preceding paragraphs. A manual of jurisprudence by al-Ghazzālī, a grammatical treatise by Ibn Jinni and the Traditions of al-Bokhārī are the only works which he mentions. But he certainly must have learned by heart the contents of many other books treating of dogmatical and scholastic theology, of the shafeite system of law, of grammar and of philology; such works or text-books as were then employed in the schools.

In the beginning of the month of Shawwāl, A.H. 632 (19th of June, A.D. 1235), about seven months after Bahā ad-Dīn’s death, he went to see the professor Ibn as-Salāḥ [y] at Damascus, and resided with him for a year, which time he passed in close study. In A.H. 633 he was still in that city [z], and two years later, in the month of Rajab (March, A.D. 1238) he was present in the great mosque of Damascus when the death of the sultan al-Malik al-Kāmil was announced to the congregation [a].

After residing about ten years in Syria, he proceeded to Egypt in the year

[w] Ibid., vol. IV, page 380.
[a] Ibid., vol. III, page 244.
LIFE OF IBN KHALLIKAN.

636 (A. D. 1238-9) (b), five months of which he passed in Alexandria (c). Towards the end of the following year we find him dwelling in Cairo, where he had made the acquaintance of Bahâ ad-Dln az-Zuhair (d), an eminent literary scholar and secretary of the sultan al-Malik as-Sâlih Aîyûb.

We now lose sight of Ibn Khallikân till the year 645 (1247-8), when we find him occupying a seat in the imperial tribunal at Cairo (e). He was then acting as deputy of the kâdi Sinjar, who was chief judge and magistrate of all Egypt (f). There is no need of reproducing here the anecdote related by him, concerning a townsman of his, named Jamâl ad-Dln Ibn Abd, as he gives it in the first volume, page 393, of the present work. A short biographical article on Ibn Khallikân, inscribed on the first leaf of the manuscrit n° 83 of the fonds Saint-Germain, informs us that he passed from the place of deputy-kâdi to that of the kadiship in al-Mahalla (for المحلة, read المحلة), probably the Mahalla of Dakla, situated between Cairo and Damietta. Our author states, in his article on Kamâl ad-Dln Ibn Manâ (g), that, after undergoing many vicissitudes of fortune, he got married and that Mûsa, his eldest son, was born at Cairo, in the month of Safar, 651 (April, A. D. 1253). Three years later he had the pleasure of terminating the first copy of his Biographical Dictionary, which, however, was retouched by him later (h). In the month of Zâ 'l-Kaada, 659 (Sept.-Oct., A. D. 1261), he was appointed to act as chief kâdi over all the provinces of Syria. His tribunal was at Damascus, to which city he had accompanied the mamlûk sultan Baibars (i) al-Bundukdâri, who had been raised to the throne of Egypt and Syria the year before. It was to this sovereign that he owed his nomination.

(b) Ibid., vol. III, page 473. The date given in the translation is false, the Arabic cypher ح having been taken for ١.

(c) Ibid., vol. III, page 382.

(d) Ibid., vol. I, page 583.

(e) Ibid., vol. I, page 393. The words مجلس الحكم العزيز are there inexactely rendered by the council of state.

(f) Ibid., vol. IV, page 147.

(g) Ibid., vol. III, page 478.

(h) Ibid., vol. I, page 3; see also page xvii of the present notice.

(i) In this translation the name of Baibars has been inexactely transcribed Bihars. The true pronunciation is indicated in the manuscript of al-Makri's Solâk, where we always find the first letter of this word surmounted with a fatha. That should be, for Bai-bars signifies the lord, or bey, leopard.
Three years later, he ceased to hold under his jurisdiction the followers of the Hanifite, Malikite and Hanbalite sects; each of these communities having received from the same sultan a kādi of its own class. The Shafites alone remained under our author’s judicial authority.

During ten years Ibn Khallikān filled with general approbation the duties of the office conferred upon him, but, towards the end of the year 669 (A. D. 1270-1), he was replaced by Ibn as-Saigh (j). Having no further inducement to remain in the capital of Syria, he returned to Egypt and obtained a professorship in the Fakhriya college; one of those literary institutions which abounded in Cairo (k). He remained in that city during seven years, teaching, giving legal consultations and making biographical researches; but so narrow were the circumstances to which he was reduced that the high treasurer, Badr ad-Dīn, ordered him an ample donation in money and (a yearly gift of) one hundred bushels of wheat. This generous offer he did not accept (l). Reading of poetry and philological studies seem to have then engaged a considerable portion of his time. None was better acquainted than he with the poems of al-Mutanabbi (m), and if we are to believe a passage extracted from a historical work composed by the shaikh Tāj ad-Dīn al-Fāżārī, which passage is inserted in a short notice on Ibn Khallikān given in the List of shafite doctors, man. n° 861, fol. 72, ancien fonds of the Bib. nat., he could recite from memory the contents of seventeen dīwāns of poetry. In the year 672 (A. D. 1273) we find him discussing a literary question with one of his friends (n). Towards the end of the year 676 he was again nominated chief kādi of Syria for the shafite sect, and, in the first month of the following year (May-June, A. D. 1278) he arrived at Damascus. Izz ad-Dīn Aidmor, the governor of that city, accompanied by all the military chiefs and the directors of the civil administration, went out in state to receive him; the principal inhabitants having already gone to meet him at the distance of some days’ journey (o).

(j) Al-Makrizi’s Soltāk, translated in part by Mr Quatremère and published under the title of Histoire des sultans mamlouks, vol. i, part 2, page 90.
(k) Tydeman’s Conjectures, page 63.
(n) Ibid., vol. iv, page 135.

Vol. IV.
A few years later, Ibn Khallikân was arrested, and cast into prison. He was accused of having declared by a formal decision that Sonkor al-Asbkar, the emir and governor of Syria, had as good a right to be sultan of that country as Kalâvûn had to the throne of Egypt. After the defeat of Sonkor’s troops and the occupation of Damascus by the Egyptian army, a number of that emir’s partisans were imprisoned by order of the sultan Kalâvûn. After a short of time, a letter of amnesty was sent to Damascus by the sultan, and Ibn Khallikân was present at the public reading of that document. The emir Alam ad-Dîn al-Halebi then undertook to plead in his favour: ‘A letter, said he, sent by the sultan has arrived at Damascus and guarantees the safety of all those who hear it read. Ibn Khallikân is one of those persons and therefore cannot incur the penalty of death.’ The deposition of Ibn Khallikân from the kadiship of Damascus took place on the 21st of Safar (A. H. 679, 22 June, A. D. 1280). On the 24th of the same month he was taken to the Najibiya Khangah (a dervish monastery) and placed in confinement; but, on the 9th of the first Râbit (9th of July), he was set at liberty in pursuance to a written order sent by the sultan. His successor, Ibn Sani ad-Dawla then declared against him and summoned him to leave the Aâdiliya college. On Wednesday, the 19th of the same month, he set a guard over him and treated him rigorously, in order to oblige him to quit that residence. Ibn Khallikân consented to obey and, on the fourth hour of the same day, he commenced removing his books and furniture. Whilst he was thus engaged, a police-guard came in, and he, thinking that the man had been sent for the purpose of hastening his departure, said he was getting ready as quick as he possibly could. Being then informed by the guard that a messenger, sent in post-haste from Egypt, had just arrived, he went to see the governor of the city, thinking that some untoward circumstance had taken place. To his great relief of mind the governor told him that he had received a letter from the sultan, disapproving of Ibn Sani ad-Dawla’s nomination, in as much as he was deaf, and then containing the following passage: ‘We have granted a general pardon to all, from the highest to the lowest, and it is not therefore fitting that any single subject of ours should suffer from our anger. We know well the high merit of the kadi Shaams ad-Dîn Ibn Khal-likân; we were formerly on terms of intimacy with him, and he has always shewn us great respect. Moreover, he is one of those persons who filled public offices under the reign of (the ex-sultan) al-Malik as-Sâlih. We have therefore
LIFE OF IBN KHALLIKAN.

'decided that he be reinstated in his place.' Ibn Khallikân being then arrayed in a robe of honour by order of the emir Alam ad-Dîn al-Halabi, proceeded, on horseback, to the Aâdiliya College, where he took up his residence at mid-day and resumed his judicial occupations (p).

Ten months later (22nd Moharram, 680, 13th May A. D. 1281), he was again dismissed from office by the sultan Kalâvûn and, from that time, he remained in his lodgings at the Najibiya College, in Damascus (q), and never again went out of doors. He died there on the 16th, or the 26th, of Rajab, A. H. 681 (20th October, or 30th Oct., A. D. 1282), at the age of seventy-three lunar years, and was buried in the cemetery of as-Sâlihiya, a well-known village situated on the declivity of mount Kasiûn, at a very short distance to the north of Damascus (r).

Arabic biographers are profuse in his commendation. They describe him as a pious man, virtuous, and learned; amiable in temper, in conversation serious and instructive. According to them, he possessed every merit which could give illustration to a doctor of the law, to a magistrate and to a man of letters. His exterior was highly prepossessing, his contenance handsome and his manners engaging. We may, perhaps, form a clearer idea of his character and cast of mind by the perusal of his work, the only one he ever produced. There we remark a noble sentiment of humanity, a taste for literature and a great fondness for poetry, particularly that of Moslim times. Pieces composed by the Arabs anteriorly to Mahomet he seems not to have cared for; the more a piece of verse was modern and affected, the more he admired it. As a philologer and a grammarian he certainly displayed extensive acquirements and, as a collector of dates, anecdotes and biographical information, he held a rank to which the ablest of his numerous predecessors never attained. His extensive sphere of literary pursuits furnished him with extracts of great historical interest, and we must feel grateful to him for having preserved and transmitted to us a quantity of passages taken from works now lost, but which were undoubtedly replete with historical and literary information. He

(p) Solûk, vol. II, first part, page 22. Not having means of consulting the original text, we follow the translation given by Mr. Quatremère.


(r) Ibid., vol. I, page X of the Introduction; Tycheman's Conspectus, page 68; Tobalâ'd al-Fusâla'd, n° 735, fol. 144 verso; Tob. as-Shafiyin, n° 861, f. l. 72.
was a kind and honorable man, sincerely attached to his friends and a lover of justice; the joy with which the inhabitants of Damascus received him on his restoration to the kadiship of Syria proves in favour of his integrity as a magistrate. Like many of his contemporaries among the learned, he used to compose verses, some of which have come down to us (s). They are not remarkable for merit, the ideas being trite and the style deficient in elevation. One or two of those pieces are, besides, tainted with a sentiment which though openly avowed in the Muslim world, is repugnant even to the Muslim religion. It is true that poems of this description were generally explained as being euphemistic; delicacy requiring that no direct allusion should be made to the female sex. Those verses do not deserve being transcribed or translated; yet some of them have been published, little to the honour of the author (t).

His motives for collecting information respecting eminent men and his reasons for drawing up the Biographical Dictionary in alphabetical order being indicated in his own preface (u), we need not repeat here what he has already said. We shall merely remark that the arrangement adopted by him is of little use to readers who wish to find out the article which concerns any particular individual. It is not every person who would think of searching for the notice on Abū Hantfa under the word Nomān, that of al-Ghazzālī amongst the Muhammadans and that of Abū Tammām under Habb. This defective system prevails in all biographical dictionaries composed by Musulmans and could hardly be replaced by any other; with that people indexes were very seldom thought of (v), and indeed they could be applicable only to the single manuscripts for which they were compiled. Though acknowledging that the author could not have adopted, under the circumstances, a better mode of arrangement for his work, we most declare that his idea was most unfortunate when he decided on omitting the biographical notices of many persons highly eminent, because he was unable

(t) Tydeman's Conspectus, pages 79 et seq.
(v) The most remarkable exception which we know of is the Tabdhat as-Shafyin or chronological list of eminent Shafite doctors. This manuscript contains four indexes, one for the names, one for the surnames, one for the patronymics and one for the ethnics.
to ascertain the precise dates of their death. It is true that he considered his work to be an obituary; but he might have perceived, on further reflection, how much more useful it would have been, had it contained some information respecting those persons. The translator has endeavoured to remedy the silence of his author by giving in the notes such indications as might be requisite, but he regrets to say that he has not always been successful.

Ibn Khallikân informs us, in his preface (w) that, in the year 654 (A.D. 1256), being at Cairo, he put his work in order, though taken up by other avocations and living under circumstances by no means favorable to such a task. In his first copy he terminated with the life of Yahya Ibn Khalid the Barmekide (x), preserving a number of articles for another and a more extensive dictionary. This projected work was to contain ten times as much matter as the preceding one and furnish ample details relative to certain events which he had slightly touched on before (y). He perceived however, that it was impossible for him to fulfil this plan (z); being obliged to pass into Syria and accept the kadishship of Damascus, he was overwhelmed with business to such a degree that no leisure remained for the accomplishment of that task. Ten years later, he returned to Cairo and, finding there some books requisite for his purpose, he decided on completing his first work by the addition of about fifty articles, those perhaps which he had reserved for the second. They belong to the Y, the last letter of the Arabic alphabet. The articles of this letter which he had already given in the first edition of his work seem to have received their actual development for the sole reason that they might obtain a place in the greater work, the execution of which he always hoped to accomplish.

In the preface to the first volume, page VI, we mentioned our intention of giving here a notice on the Times of Ibn Khallikân. Were we however to retrace the events which occurred in the lifetime of that biographer and give an account of the state in which the Moslim empire was then placed by a series of revolutions, we should have to draw up a history of the Crusades and relate the rise and fall of

(x) Ibid., vol. IV, page 113.
(y) Ibid., vol. IV, page 338.
(z) Ibid., vol. IV, page 113.
the dynasty founded by Salāh ad-Dīn. But a subject so extensive would lead us very far and occupy too many pages for a simple introduction. The subject will, however, be treated elsewhere; a work containing all the passages in which upwards of fifty Arabic historians speak of the Crusades being now in the press. The first volume of this publication, undertaken by the Academy of Inscriptions and Belles-Lettres, and placed under the direction of the author of the present notice, will soon appear.

The Arabic text of which these four volumes contain the translation, is represented, for nearly one half, by the first and only volume hitherto published of the edition drawn up by us, after a number of manuscripts, most of them belonging to the Bibliothèque nationale (a). For the other half we have followed the typographical edition of Bûlak and the lithographed edition published at Goettingen by D' Wuestenfeld; both of them carefully collated by us with the manuscripts just indicated. The Bûlak edition is merely tolerable; whole phrases are often omitted by the inattention of the compositor or of the corrector, and the proper names, both of men and of places, are frequently inexact. Of geography and history the editor had little or no knowledge. The literary portion of the work is more satisfactory and justifies to a certain degree the high reputation of the editor, Naṣr al-Hūrīnī, as an Arabic scholar; but neither he, nor any another musulman of the present day, is capable of giving a truly critical edition of a historical text. The edition of Goettingen offers a number of false readings and omissions resulting from the incorrectness of the manuscripts on the authority of which it was drawn up. When the true readings were not given by these two editions, we followed the text of our manuscripts and inserted the corrections in our translation, enclosing them between crochets.

The first half of the third volume was printed on or about the year 1844. The translator, being then sent, by the French government, to explore the libraries of Constantinople, was under the necessity of suspending the impression of his work. After a residence of eighteen months in that city, he was appointed interprète principal de l'armée d'Afrique, and obliged to join his post. Twelve years later, circumstances allowed him to return to Paris, and, at the request

(a) This édition, bearing the title of Vie des Hommes illustres de l'Islamisme par Ibn Khallikan, texte arabe, was published at Paris in the year 1843.
of his lamented friend, the Rev. Dr. Cureton, dean of Westminster, he undertook to reprint the first half of the third volume, which had been destroyed by accident, to translate the rest of the work and to get it through the press. Much delay occurred, but, fortunately, the task is now achieved. Critical readers will certainly discover in these volumes a great number of faults, some attributable to the printer, many more to the translator; but, when they consider the difficulty of rendering into English a work so various in its contents and in its style, so ill drawn up in some places, so obscure in others, they will treat with indulgence the conscientious efforts of him who first undertook the rendering of Ibn Khallikân's Biographical Dictionary into a European language.
YARUK AT-TURKOMANI

Yarûk Ibn Arslân at-Turkomâni was a chief who had great influence over his people. It was after him that the horde of Turkomans called the Yârûkiya was thus named. He was of a colossal stature, a formidable aspect, and resided outside of Aleppo, in the country to the south of the city. He, his family and followers built for themselves, on a lofty hill bordering the river Kuwaik, a great number of houses and large edifices which are known by the appellation of al-Yârûkiya and bear the appearance of a village. He and his people resided there. It is yet inhabited by a numerous population and is frequently visited by the people of Aleppo in the spring season, for the purpose of amusing themselves in its green fields and looking down on the Kuwaik. It is a place of amusement and diversion. Yarûk died in the month of Muharram, 564 (Oct.-Nov. A.D. 1168); so says Bahâ ad-Din Ibn Shaddâd, in the Life of the sultan Salâh ad-Din.—The word ياروق is to be pronounced Yârûk.

—Kuwaik is the name of a little river which passes near Aleppo; its waters flow abundantly in winter and in spring, but cease to run in summer. Poets have often mentioned it in their verses, Abû Obâda al-Bohtori (vol. III. p. 657) particularly, who has repeatedly spoken of it in his kasîdas. He says, for instance, in one of his pieces:

vol. iv.
O ye lightnings! disclose (to my sight) the Kuwaik and the two outskirts of Aleppo! flash over the castle of Batıbas! Show me the land of roses tinged with yellow, the land where the myrtle is gathered (majna). When I went to that country, it assembled around me (its delights) and greatly tranquillized my heart.

Batıbas is the name of a village which lay outside of Aleppo, but is now so completely ruined that not a trace of it remains. Sāliḥ Ibn Ali Ibn Abd Allah Ibn al-Abbās Ibn Abd al-Muttalib (1) built there a castle which he inhabited and his sons (after him). It was situated between an-Nīreb and as-Sālihiya, villages lying near each other and to the east of Aleppo. The castle was built on a hill which commands an-Nīreb, but nothing now remains of it except some mouldering ruins. So I find it written in the handwriting of a well-informed native of Aleppo.

(1) This was the father of Abd al-Malik, the Abbaside prince of whom we have spoken in the first volume, page 816.

YAKUT AL-MAUSILI, THE PENMAN

The kāṭib (secretary or writer) Abū 'd-Durr (the father of pearls) Yākūt (hyacinth) al-Mausili (an inhabitant of Mosul, was) the son of a Muselman (abd Allah). He obtained the title of Amin ad-Dīn (trustworthy in religion) and was surnamed al-Malaki (the Malakian) after (his patron) the sultan Abū 'l-Fath Malak Shāh II, the son of Saljūk, the son of Muhammad, the son of Malak Shāh I. Having settled at Mosul, he studied with great assiduity under Abū Muhammad Sulī Ibn al-Mubārak, an Egyptian grammarian who is more generally known by the surname of Ibn ad-Dahhān (vol. I. p. 574). He read over, under the tuition of this master, all the works composed by him, as also al-Mutanabbī's Divān, al-Harīrī's Makāmāt and some other treatises. He wrote a great deal and specimens of his penmanship, which was extremely beautiful, spread abroad into (distant) countries. In the latter part of his life he remained without a rival in the art of calligraphy. The style of writing employed by) Ibn al-Bawwāb (vol. II. p. 282) in the transcription (of books),
excellent and renowned as it is, does not come up to his. He had a passion for transcribing the Sahâh of al-Jauhari (vol. I. p. 22) and wrote a great number of them, each copy forming one volume. Some of them, which I have seen, are now sold for one hundred dinars (1) a piece. Numbers of students received from him lessons in writing and profited greatly under his direction. During his lifetime, he enjoyed a high reputation, and people came to study under him from all quarters. An-Najib Abû Abd Allah al-Husain Ibn Ali Ibn Abi Bakr al-Wâsiti (of the town of Wâsit) sent him a kasîda which he had composed in his praise; he had never seen him, but only heard of his (eminent talent). In this poem, which is a good one of its kind, the author extols, in the highest terms, the beauty of Yâkût's handwriting. Here is the piece:

Where are the gazelles (maidens) of Aâlij and al-Musalla? those fawns that dwelt near the stream of al-Moalla? Do the branches of the willow (slender-waisted girls) still flourish on the sand-hills? do full moons (handsome faces) stile shine in that horizon? Have those gazelles still got faces so beautiful that their aspect would alleviate (a lover's) sadness? Compared with these nymphs, what is the tender narcissus which, after sustaining the attacks of the zephyr, erects again its stem? Compared with those cheeks, what is the tint of the rose when the cloud sheds upon it copiously its waters and its dews? Do those knolls offer (to our sight) star-like oranges, borne on branches which are bent beneath and brought near (the hand)? How could you think that any water could match that of the Tigris? they who judged so uttered a falsehood! it is by no means true; God forbid! Does any city on earth resemble the Abode of Welfare (2)? to find the like of Baghdad would be a miracle. It shows us, each day, faces different from those of yesterday and seemingly pregnant (with mischief); (it shows us) maidens of whom a sage would become enamoured, were he to see their mincing and coquettish gait. They bind their hair with Nâsîrian ribbons (3) and thus reduce you to bondage (4). They pay no regard to your saying: "Were it not (that I fear)..." " They only know (how to say) these words: "(we must have) the entire (heart) or else (none at all)." That is a pasture-ground for the hearts (of lovers); on the retreat of spring it is always watered by successive showers. That is a city where a man acquires new ideas and gains the summits of learning, of gravity and of gaiety. (Baghdad,) to be perfect, requires only the possession of a hyacinth (yâkût); O that she had it already to adorn her! Who will come to her aid, so that the perfume of Aâmîn ad-Din's presence may float around her? that alone would suffice for her pre-eminence. Had she a reason to hope for Yâkût's visit, even speechless things would (find a tongue and) exclaim:

"A hearty welcome!" Relaters of anecdotes may tell her of the perfume (which his talent spreads around), but she would feel much more pleasure at his sight. (He is) an ocean of generosity; the noblest of men follow in his steps; for the generous man, when noble deeds are done, has always followers. He unites in himself every scattered portion of knowledge; were he not living, the mother of all talents would be childless. He possesses a reed (pen) whose attacks inspire terror to the lions (powerful chiefs), and to which squadrons of horse submit with humility. When its mouth (nib) opens to let flow black (ink) upon white (paper), the white and the yellow (the swords and spears) are astounded. (He is) vigilant in guarding the
kingdom, yet he neither aims an arrow nor bares a blade. Eloquence is sent (by him) on messages when sheets of paper can fulfill the duties of ambassadors. The arrogant then recoil, filled with terror at what he dictates and prescribes. Sometimes you see him mix with his hand the lots (of the game) of science, phrase by phrase; (so as to form a picture) like meadows enameled with flowers, or like strings of pearls; (producing thus a piece) elegant in penmanship, brilliant in expressions and in the thoughts which they convey. O you who aspire to proficiency! prepare (for your work) like Amin ad-Din; take your time, and fatigue your mind but gently. You, my lord! the (sworn) brother of generosity and the nurturer of glory! you, the son of high renown! you who bear off the prize! you are the full moon of which the penman, the son of a crescent (5), was the father. He that retreats (before obstacles) is good for nothing. Though he was the first (in point of time), you are more worthy of preference, for you out-ran him and he came in the second. Amin ad-Din! you in whom God shews how he can unite, as in one sheaf, liberality and every merit! I am one of those who bear eulogiums to your tribe (your dwelling), so that it (my poem) may ever continue to roam about and be recited (6). When your eulogium is indited by a kadi (by a competent judge), an adl (competent witness) (7) can bear testimony (to its truth). Accept this virgin (piece) from a father who never troubled his mind about seeking a husband for his daughter. I desire neither reward nor recompense; but I really see that you are worthy of praise. The impulse of friendship bears this (poem) towards you, and it goes, wishing to obtain a kind reception from your good opinion. Since it is difficult for me to reach you, let my heart answer for my sincerity; (that you can appreciate,) for you are a man of an excellent judgment. Continue to enjoy good health as long as the squadrons of darkness hover round the horizon! as long as the morning unshakes the blade (of its light)!

Amin ad-Din (Yakut) died at Mosul in the year 618 (A. D. 1221-2), at an advanced age. When he grew old, his penmanship changed (for the worse).

(1) Between forty and fifty pounds.
(2) The abode of welfare (Dar as-Salām) was the poetical name of Baghdad.
(3) This fashionable ribbon was perhaps named Nāṣīrīm in honour of the sultan Saladin, whose official title was al-Malik an-Nāṣir (the victorious king).
(4) Literally: and thus undo your knotting and untwisting. The expression, "to knot and untie," signifies "to possess sovereign authority, to have the power of nominating and deposing governors."
(5) The son of a crescent, in Arabic: Ibn Hildī. This was the patronymic appellation of the famous penman Ibn al-Bawwāb. (See vol. II, p. 282.)
(6) I read with one of my manuscripts, and the edition of Būlāk يُطَلِّبُ تَهَا وَيَتَلَّى لا مَكْسَى means: "has remained inconstant," and is evidently not to be accepted.
(7) The adl is an officer in the kadi's court; he writes out his judgements, signs them as a witness and draws up deeds. He must be a man of approved integrity and veracity.
YAKUT AR-RUMI THE POET

Abû 'd-Durr Yakût Ibn Abd Allah (1) ar-Rûmi (the Greek), surnamed Muhaddab ad-Din (pure in religion), was the maâla of a merchant named Abû Mansûr al-Jili. This celebrated poet, having studied the science (of law) and acquired extensive literary information, directed his genius to the composition of verses and attained proficiency in that art. When his talent raised him to distinction, he assumed the name of Abd ar-Rahmân. His place of residence, at Baghdad, was the Nizâmiya college. In the Zail (or supplement to as-Samâni's historical continuation), the author, Ibn ad-Dubaithi (vol. III. p. 102), mentions him among the Abd ar-Rahmânâns, and says: "He passed his early youth in Baghdad, where he learned by heart the sacred text of the Korân, got some acquaintance with general literature and learned to write a good hand. He used to recite verses of his own composition, most of which consisted in blandishments addressed to his mistress and in the expression of his passion. All these pieces are on love-matters and are full of tenderness: many people know them by heart." He (Ibn ad-Dubaithi) then gives some passages of his poetry and mentions that one of them was recited to him by the author himself. It begins thus:

O my two friends! I swear that the night never got dark without inspiring the lover with desire or with folly.

The rest of the piece may be found in the Majmû'a 's-Saghîr (the lesser compilation) (2). Ar-Rûmi's verses have got into general circulation and are sung to music. They are full of grace and tenderness. Here is one of his poems:

If your tears cease to flow after the departure of those whom you love, all (the passion) that you affect to feel is false and counterfeit. How can you admit consolation or forget their images (seen in your dreams), now that their dwellings and native soil are deprived of their presence? May God never afflict us with the departure of a tribe by whose removal full moons (handsome faces) and pliant branches (slender waists) disappeared from our eyes! They set out and my heart followed in the track of their caravan; all my provision of firmness was exhausted when they went away. Since they are gone, the earth never discloses its smiles (its flowers); the willow and the lotus-tree agitate their branches no more. On the morning of our separation. care
and sadness caused my tears to flow and lighted up a fire in my heart. All the waters of Noah's flood were (poured forth) from my eyes, and the flames which the Friend of God encountered (3) raged within my bosom. If solid rocks could feel such sorrow as I endure for my beloved, (the mountains of) Ohod and Lubãn (Lebanon) would shrink (4) before it; Yazbul would melt away under such pain as mine; Rudwa would be shattered to pieces, and Thahlân would sink under the weight (5). O thou whose splendid beauty holds me captive! the sovereignty of thy charms has shewed me no kindness. Be, however, as thou wilt! no one shall ever replace thee in my affection. Thou art for me a limpid fountain, and my heart is parched with thirst.

Here is another of his poems:

Who will bear to Baghdad the news of what I suffer for that maid and of the love I feel for her? Who will bear my salutation to the Abode of Welfare (6)? Breath of the zephyr! carry the salutation of an ill-starred wretch to her who has harassed me and who heeds not the promises she made me. Describe to her a part only of the love which she inspired me; perhaps she may have pity on one who is borne down by passion and delirium. Declare in the public place of az-Zaurâ (Baghdad) that I have there a fawn (a maiden) whose absence has driven sleep from my eye-lids and whose beauty is marvellous; when she departed, my firmness of mind departed also and, when she turned away, she turned me over to death. When she repelled me, sleep was repelled from my eyes, and, when she shunned me, the wine which I drank was mingled with tears. My life and death are in her hands; she is for me paradise or hell; she is the only fountain where I can calm my longing and allay my thirst. Her absence is my death; her presence is, for me, life, happiness and the attainment of my wishes. From her cheeks proceed the fires which consume me; her slender waist is the cause of my emaciation, and her languishing eyes make me languish in sickness. You who blame me cannot but excuse me: the grace of her movements indicates sufficiently that I was forced to love her and adore her.

I heard many jurisconsults in Syria and Irãk recite a piece of his which they knew by heart and which began thus:

O thou who excitest troubles in my bosom! since thy departure, my body is emaciated through the love I bear thee and will never be restored to health until thou givest consent to my wishes by saying: "Yes." O thou who, as often as censors have blamed my love, hast offered them my justification in (letting them see) thy flowing ringlets! Tell me if my tyrant is authorized by the Wajiz to slay me? Is it said so in the Tahdib or the Shâmil? Does the Muhaddab (7) say that a lover whose eyes are moist and whose tears flow in torrents deserves to be tormented? Have your seductive eyes told you it was lawful to take away our lives with glances whose magic is like that of Babel (8)?

The piece contains more verses than these, but I have here given all that I am able to recollect. A literary man recited to me, at Aleppo, some verses of Yakût ar-Rûmi's, one of which was as follows:

Art thou not sweeter in qualities than (all other) maids? Why then dost thou dwell in heart which is a hell (9)?
He mentioned also that some of the Baghdad critics objected to this verse. I reflected on the matter and then said to him: "Fault was found with it perhaps in this particular that her being sweeter in qualities than the other maidens did not necessarily imply that she should not be in hell; for she, being sweeter in qualities than they were, was not (to be counted as) one of them; and what is denied is merely that the maidens should be in hell." To this he replied: "You are in the right! that is the very point in which they found fault with him. (10)".—In the year 625 (A.D. 1227-8), I met at Arbea a man of eminent merit who related to me as follows: "I was in Baghdad, at the Nizâmiya college, in the year 620, and, one day, I found this Abû 'd-Durr (Yâkût) sitting at the door of that institution. I sat down beside him, and engaged in a conversation on literary matters. Whilst we were thus occupied, an elderly man, weak in body and in a very sorry plight, came up, leaning on a staff, and sat down near us. Abû 'd-Durr asked me if I knew who he was and, on my answering that I did not, he said: 'That is the 'mamlâk (white slave) on whom his master, (the poet) Hais Bais (vol. I. p. 559) composed these lines:

Put on what cap (14), what gown, what vest you please; you cannot add to the love which I bear you. Less love than that which you are worthy of possesses already the totality of my heart; if you wish to augment that (love), give (me) another heart (the one I have is insufficient to contain it).

"I turned to look at the man, observing his appearance and reflecting on the state to which he was reduced." I searched for these two verses in the diwân of Hais Bais’s poems, but was unable to find them. God best knows (if they be his)!—Abû 'd-Durr left a diwân of poems which, as I am told, forms a small volume. I have never seen it, but have met with numerous pieces taken from it. His verses are currently known in Irâk, in the province of the East (Mesopotamia) and in Syria; so, what we have given may suffice. In the life of al-Khidr Ibn Akîl al-Irbali (vol. I. p. 488) we have inserted three verses of ar-Rûmi’s.—Since the above was written, two copies of his diwân came into my possession; this was at Damascus, in the year 667 (A.D. 1268-9); the book is a small one, containing only ten quires (two hundred pages).—I read in a historical work of those latter times, that Abû 'd-Durr (Yâkût) was found dead in his lodgings at Baghdad, on the 12th of the first Jumâda, 622 (22nd May, A. D. 1225); but the people said that he had been
dead for some days. Ibn an-Najjār (vol. I. p. 11) mentions, in his History of Baghdad, that Abū 'd-Durr was found dead in his room, on Wednesday, the 15th of the first Jumāda of that year. He had left the Nizāmiya and gone to reside in a house situated in the Darb Dinār as-Saghīr (Lesser Dinār-street). It is not known at what age he expired but I am inclined to think that he was advanced in years (12).—Rūmī means belonging to the country of the Rūm (Greeks), which is a vast and celebrated region, filled with cities. This is a fit place for introducing a piece of curious information which is often needed and frequently asked for: The people of Rūm (the Greeks and the Romans) are designated also as the Banū 'l-Asfār (sons of the tawny one), and poets often employ this expression in their verses. Adī Ibn Zaid al-Ibādī (vol. I. p. 189) says, in one of his kastādas:

The noble sons of al-Asfār, kings of ar-Rūm, have left no remembrance of their deeds.

I frequently sought for the origin of this denomination, but could find no one capable of allaying the thirst I had (for that piece of information); till I at length met, by chance, with an old book entitled Al-Laff (the miscellany) (13), but, on which the name of the person who dictated its contents (i.e. the author) was not inscribed. I copy here a passage of it in which the narrator says: "Al-Abbās informed me that he heard his father make the following statement: In the first period (of the empire), the king of the Rūm died (14), leaving a wife. Rival chiefs aspired to the empire and great mischief was done between them. It was then agreed upon to take for their king the first person who would appear to them, and they held an assembly for that object. Now, a man had set out from Yemen for ar-Rūm, taking with him an Abyssinian slave. He (the slave) ran away and appeared before them. 'See,' said they, 'into what we have fallen!' They married him to that woman, and she bore a son whom they named al-Asfār (the Tawny). The master (of the slave) remonstrated with them and the boy (the slave) said: 'He has spoken the truth! I am his slave.' They tried to appease him (the master) and made him gifts till he was satisfied. The Rūm were therefore called the Sons of the Tawny, on account of the yellowness of the child, who was the son of an Abyssinian and a white woman."—God knows best (15)!

(1) The meaning of these names is explained at the beginning of the preceding article.
(9) This work is not known.
(10) According to the Korân, surat 31, Abraham, the Friend of God (Khalîl Allah), was cast by Nimrod into a fiery furnace and miraculously saved.
(11) The true reading is evidently لحم.
(12) Those are mountains of Arabia.
(13) The Abode of Welfare (Ddr as-Selâm) was one of the names by which Baghdad was designated.
(14) These are well-known treatises on law.
(15) The inhabitants of Babel were well-skilled in magic, as they had for teachers the fallen angels, Hârût and Mârût. (Korân, sur. 2, verse 96.)
(16) The poet's idea is: my heart is filled with the flames of love and yet I bear you in it.
(17) It is difficult to understand the objection and the author's explanation of it.
(18) For the meaning of the word شریش see Mr. Dozy's Dictionnaire des noms des vêtements des Arabes.
(19) طاغان is evidently the equivalent of غام.
(20) This work is no longer known.
(21) Or, according to other readings, was torn to pieces, was burned.
(22) The learned among the Musulmans and some of our European orientalists have offered various solutions of this problem, but none of their explanations is satisfactory. I am inclined to believe that the denomination Banû 'Asfar signified the sons of the emperor, and that it was given to the Greeks of the Eastern empire because their sovereign bore, amongst his other titles, that of Flavius, which had been transmitted by Vespasian to his successors. An interpreter, confounding Flavius with flavus, may have told the Musulmans that this name signified yellow (asfar).

YAKUT AL-HAMAWI

Abû Abd Allah Yakût Ibn Abd Allah, a Greek (of Asia) by origin and by birth, received the surname of al-Hamawi because he was enfranchised at Hamât, and obtained that of al-Baghdâdî because he made a residence in the city of Baghdad. He bore the honorary title of Shihâb ad-Dîn (flambeau of religion). When a child, he was carried off a captive from his native place and sold at Baghdad to a merchant named Askar Ibn Abî Nasr Ibn Ibrâhim al-Hamawi. His master sent him to school, with the intention of deriving profit from him later, in making him keep the accounts of his commercial transactions. This Askar could not write correctly and knew nothing except commerce. He inhabited Baghdad, got married there and had
a number of children. When Yākūt was grown up and had acquired some knowledge of grammar and literature, he was employed by his patron as a travelling clerk and, in that capacity, he went back and forward from Syria to Kīsā, Omann and the neighbouring countries. His master was then under the necessity of enfranchising him and turning him away, in consequence of a disagreement which took place between them. This happened in the year 596 (A.D. 1199-1200). Yākūt then commenced copying books for a salary and, by their perusal, he acquired considerable information. At a later period, he received some money from his patron, who had taken pity on him, and was sent off by him on a voyage to Kīsā. Finding, on his return, that his benefactor was dead, he realized part of what was in his hands and gave to the widow and orphans where withal to satisfy them. The remainder served him as a trading capital with which he travelled to different countries, and part of it he employed in the book-trade. The lecture of some kharījite books impressed on his mind a considerable portion of the doctrines (professed by these sectarians) and he conceived a strong prejudice against Allī, the son of Abū Tālib. In the year 613 (A.D. 1216-7) he went to Damascus, and, as he was sitting in one of the bazars, he got into a discussion with a partisan of Allī. In the course of the dispute, he was led to speak of Allī in a manner not to be borne and was assaulted so violently by the people that he had like to be killed. Having got out of their hands, he fled from Damascus, but not before the governor of that city had received intelligence of what took place and given orders to arrest him. Search was made for him, but without success. He reached Aleppō where he stopped, full of apprehension and waiting to see how things would end. On the first third or, by another account, on the second third of the latter Jumāda, 613 (Sep.-Oct. A.D. 1216), he left that city and went to Mosul, whence he proceeded to Arbela and from that to Khorāsān. He avoided entering Baghdad, knowing that the person with whom he had the discussion was a native of that place and fearing to lose his life if his adversary mentioned what he had said. On arriving in Khorāsān, he stopped there for the purpose of trading to the towns in that country, and fixed his residence at Marw (Merw). From that he proceeded to Nasa and then entered into the province of Khuwārezm where he encountered the invading army of the Tartars. This was in the year 616 (A.D. 1219-20). Having barely escaped with his life, he fled as naked as when he shall be raised from the dust of the grave on the day of the resurrection, and arrived at Mosul, after suffering on the way such hardships and fatigue as would even tire a narrator before he
could describe them all. Deprived of every resource, in want of even the vilest food and the coarsest clothing, he remained for some time at Mosul and then went to Sinjär. From that he removed to Aleppo and, having taken lodgings in the caravanserai outside the city, he continued to reside there till his death. The date of this event we shall give farther on.— I copied the following notes from the work compiled by Abū 'l-Barakāt Ibn al-Mustaфи (vol. II. p. 556) and treating of the history of Arbela: Yākūt arrived in that city, A. H. 617, in the month of Rajab (September, A. D. 1220). He had been residing in Khuwārezm, but left it after the battle which took place between the Tartars and Muhammad Ibn Tukush Khuwārezm Shāh, the sovereign of that country. As he had previously been occupied in making historical researches, he composed a work in four large volumes and entitled: Irshdd al-Alibbā ila marifa til-Udāb (Guide of the intelligent to an acquaintance with the learned). In the beginning of the work he says: “I have given in this work all the information I could obtain respecting the grammarians, the philologers, the genealogists, the eminent Koran-readers, the relators of historical facts, the annalists, the booksellers of note, the writers of renown, the authors of such epistles as have been collected into volumes, the persons distinguished for the beauty of their mansūb (2) handwriting, and all those who composed or compiled works on literature. In this task, I aimed at concision, though unable to remain within the limits of brevity, and I spared no pains in determining the dates of the deaths and fixing the days and the hours of the births. I mention the works composed by them, the more interesting of the anecdotes concerning them, their origin, their genealogy and some of their poetry. (I compiled this work) during my travels in various countries and my intercourse with the inhabitants. The isndds (3) I have suppressed except those which contain but a few names and which are easy to be learned; and, moreover, I did all in my power to have the exactness of these traditions certified by oral declaration and by the licences given to teach them. As it was my object to produce a small but useful work, I have indicated in it the sources whence I derived my information and the places where I found it: the books, for instance, composed by such of the learned as were considered sure authorities in these matters and on whose declarations all relied for the genuineness of these traditions.” He (Ibn al-Mustaфи) then states that Yākūt composed a work on the history of the poets both ancient and modern. Other works were written by Yākūt, such as the Mojam al-Bulddn (gazetteer or alphabetical list of places) (4),
the Mojam ash-Shuward (biographical dictionary of poets), the Mojam al-Udab (biographical dictionary of literary men), the Mushtariq wa'dan wa 'l-Mukhtalif sakdan (a dictionary of geographical synonyms) which is a useful book, the Kitab al-Mabda wa'1-Madl (the Commencement and the End), treating of history, the Kitab al-Dual (book of Empires), the collected sayings of Abû Ali '1-Farisi (vol. I. p. 379), an Onoda (title or preface) to the Kitab al-Aghdîn (vol. II. p. 249), the Mu'tadib fî 'n-Nisab (selection of genealogies) containing those of the Arabian tribes, an account of al-Mutanabbi (vol. I. p. 102) and a treatise entitled Kitab man lahu himma etc. (book for him whose high aspirations are directed towards the acquisition of knowledge) (5).—Al-Kadi '1-Akram (the honorable kaddi) Jamâl ad-Dîn Abû '1-Hasan Ali Ibn Yusuf Ibn Abd al-Wâhid as-Shabâni al-Kifti (vol. II. p. 491), who was vizir to the sovereign of Aleppo, states, in his Anbâ 'r-Ruwât fî Abnâ 'n-Nuhat, that Yâkût, on arriving at Mosul, whither he had fled on escaping from the Tartars, wrote to him a letter in which he describes his situation and relates what passed between him and these invaders. It begins by the invocation of the divine name and the praises of God, after which, it continues in these terms: 'Your mamlûk (humble servant) Yâkût Ibn '1-Abd Allah al-Hamawi, wrote this letter from Mosul, in the year 617 (A. D. 1220-1), on his arrival from Khuwârezm whence he was driven by the Tartars whom God exterminate! (He sent it) to the presence of his sovereign lord (6), the vizir Jamâl ad-Dîn al-Kadi '1-Akram Abû '1-Hasan Ali Ibn Yusuf Ibn Ibrâhim Ibn Abd al-Wâhid as-Shabâni at-Taimi (member of the tribe of Shabân and descended from) Taim Allah, who was the son of Shabâ, the son of Thalaba, the son of Okâba. May God cast his shelter around him and exalt his rank in the scale of domination (7). (To him), who is, at the present day, vizir to the sovereign of Aleppo and al-Awâsim (8) (is addressed) this account of what has passed in Khuwârezm and of what has happened to the writer. (It offers) a slight indication of the manner in which he began and ended (his career) on taking leave of your (excellence). He shrank from the idea of submitting it to your appreciation; such was his respect and veneration for your dignity and such his repugnance to offer you a document so unworthy of your exalted merit. But now, that a number of practitioners in the art of prose and verse have been informed of these (events) and have hastened, as I well know, to set them down in writing and to hurry in active competition towards the task of transmitting the knowledge of them (to future ages); now, that the generosity of him who holds me enslaved has, no doubt, unsealed these (epistles)
and assigned to their (authors) a high rank in his favour, I feel encouraged to pre-
sent this (notice) to my (honored) master and to a judgment which will shew how
exalted it is by perusing it and treating its imperfections with indulgence. For
(I am not a professed writer;) every person who fingers dirhems should not be
taken for a money-changer, neither is the man who acquires a pearl to be con-
sidered as a jeweller. Here follows my statement:

In the name of God, the Merciful, the Clement! may God render durable, for
the advantage of science and of those who cultivate it, for the prosperity of Islamism
and its sons, the gift which he has conferred, bestowed and granted to enjoy;
namely, the apple (and beneficent) shade of the lord vizir, whose partisans may
God exalt, whose glory and power may he redouble! whose ensigns and standards
may he maintain victorious! whose pen may he long allow to run (on the sur-
face of paper), so that it may direct towards all lands the flow of his donations!
May he prolong his life and exalt his glory to the heavens, whilst he surrounds
him with favours of which the freshness shall never fade and of which the num-
ber and the multitude shall never be restrained by limits. May his vigour and
his sword never be broken! may the love which all bear him and the number of
those who love him be never diminished! God prolong his rule for the advantage
of the world and of our religion! so that he may repair their disorder,
drive away their affliction, elevate their beacon and, by his salutary influence,
enable them to leave a lasting impression. May his light shine forth, his blos-
soms open, his flowers brighten and his lustre be augmented! May God extend
the shade of his (the vizir’s patronage) over the sciences and those who profess them;
over literature and those who cultivate it; over meritorious acts and those who
practise them; so that, by his well established bounty, he may exalt these (fair)
structures, adorn their diadems with the finest jewels of his glory, embellish their
duration with the mature (honours) of his exalted dignity, give them great im-
portance for mankind by the loftiness of his views, and establish in the highest
degree of merit their utility and their rank. By the efficiency of his orders he has
exalted the influence of the Muslim states; he presides as a guardian over the
foundations which support the dogmas of the faith, he exalts those who defend
them and abases those who attack them. By the excellence of his government
he strengthens the arms (9) (of the true doctrine) and, by his well-directed efforts,
he has smoothed for it the way to the attainment of its purposes. Thus, by the ex-
cellence of his administration, hath he become a brilliant star on the forehead of the age, and a model to be imitated by every man whom nature has formed for the exercise of justice and benevolence. Therefore shall he enjoy a fitting recompense as long as the two companions (light and darkness) shall subsist, as long as days and nights shall be renewed, as long as there shall be a sun to shine in the east, and a soul to rejoice at the prospect of conversing with his Excellence (10)!

"After these preliminaries, the humble slave (who writes this) exposes to (your) high and seigniorial dignity, to (your) right honorable and exalted station, which God favour with happiness long to endure, brilliant with lustre, satisfying all our wishes and embellished with every mark of excellence (11)—a state of things the relation of which is rendered unnecessary by your lordship's quick intelligence, and for the elucidation and description of which, the clear judgment you are gifted with might dispense me from employing (inda) the pen. But, let it be sufficient for him (the vizir) to recollect in what terms our blessed Prophet described the true believers: "Certainly," said he, "my people are fond of talking (12)." This letter is (merely) a disclosure of the writer's sincere devotion (to you) as a client, of the pride he feels in being an humble servant to (your) seigniorial presence and in being considered as such; for your quick genius suffices to prevent him from manifesting, out of what is laid up in his mind, sentiments which might have the appearance of adulation. Indeed, the proofs of your humble servant's zeal in the religious duty of clientship are evident to all the world, and the mark impressed on him by the stamp indicating the sincerity of his love for your honorable name is still apparent on the pages of time. So also is his faith in the sacred laws (of gratitude) imposed by that bounty (of yours) which, covering all the land, has rendered clearly visible, by its splendor, the edifice of noble deeds (which you erected). Your servant's repeating, in your praise, the recitals whose authenticity has been verified by personal experience, is well justified (13). He summoned the people of all lands to assert with zeal their faith in the supremacy of your (generosity, proofs of) which he has (often) received in his hand. Your friend, sincerely devoted to the belief in your superiority, and especially distinguished by the intention of collecting all the scattered (recollections), all the (accounts) wide-spread (of your bounty), was accustomed to toil in the sweat of his brow; so that, at length, he rendered you a kaaba of generosity towards
which it was not necessary to prescribe the obligation of pilgrimage for those who
were able to undertake the journey, neither was that duty incumbent on those
who possessed means, to the exclusion of the indigent and the way-worn traveler.
All of them obtain (from you) a need sufficient to fortify them, a portion
adequate to their wants and on which they counted. The grandees have drawn
from your source an abundant supply of noble deeds; the learned have found
examples of merit in those persons who are attached to your service; the poor
have received from you letters of protection against the vicissitudes of time and
the frowns of fortune; therefore have they prescribed as a sacred rite towards you,
the saluting and the glorifying of your noble and illustrious character, the touch
ing with their lips and the kissing of your generous hand. God is a witness that
your humble servant, in his journeyings and sojournings, in private and in public,
in conduct and in reputation, had always for his distinctive mark the custom of
perfuming the assemblies of the worthy and the meetings of the learned with
(the account of) the services which your Excellence has rendered and which were
obtained from your generosity. He made it his pride (to speak of them) before all people, and thus prepare an embroidery for the discourse he was about to utter:

"When I through cupidity, gave lustre to other men by my poems, I gave my verses lustre
by the mention of your name.

"They upbraid thee that they have embraced Islamism. Answer: Upbraid me
not with your having embraced Islamism; rather God upbraided you, that he hath
directed you to the faith. Avow the fact if you can speak sincerely (14). May God
never debar us, (the vizir's) trusty friends, from the ample stock of his continual
favours, nor preclude us all, who are his servants, from the constant flow of his
gifts! O God! Lord of the expanded earth, of the exalted heavens, of the swollen
seas and of the winds compelled to work (thy will) (15)! hearken to my invocation
and listen to my prayer! Help us up to that height in his favour which we desire
to reach and which we hope to attain, through the merits of Muhammad the pro-
phet and of his companions and of his kindred!

"When your humble servant left your noble presence and departed from the
abode of unsullied glory and exalted merit, he intended to conciliate frowning
Fortune and draw milk from the udder of this age, wicked and unruly as it is.
"For he was seduced by the idea that changing place — brings grace, — that passing into a foreign land — brings wealth to hand, — that dwelling with one's friends — disgrace and pain upon us sends, — and that the lover of home who stirs not apace, — is distanced in the race (17.)

"After stopping for a time in hesitation, I felt assured that death was preferable to poverty. So, I bade farewell to my family, whilst my heart was filled (with grief), and left my native land in the pursuit of wealth. My wife wept on our separation, and I said to her: 'Bear it with patience! death is surely better than a life of misery. I shall gain a fortune or die in a town where few tears will be shed over my grave.'

"Mounted on the steed (18) of hope, your servant rode off to a distant land, and placed his foot in the stirrup of peregrination with every company (that offered); he crossed the valleys and the hills till he nearly reached the Sudd (19); but peridious Fortune did not befriend him, neither did the times, now run mad, treat him with kindness:

"Ask the nights and the days to acknowledge their fault; they will not conceal that news.

"I was like a mote in the eye of fortune or a bone in her throat; so, to get rid of me, she deluded me in promising to fulfil my wishes and finished by casting me into the snares of death:

"He stopped not long in any land before he set out for another; his person was with (his fellow-travellers) but his mind was far distant. One day, he was at Huzwa; another, at-al-Akit; another, at al-Ozaib, and another, at al-Khalaisa. Now he went towards Najd and Awena, (near) the valleys of al-Hun, and then to the castle of Taima (20).

"But, alas! after all these lessons of adversity, how far was I from the accomplishment of my wishes and the attainment of my desire! The frowns of ill-luck drew smiles from cruel time, and I ceased not to blame Fortune and reproach her with her errors, till, instead of getting wealth, I was satisfied in reaching home (21). And, during all that, your humble servant tried to pass away those days and to get over them; deluding himself with the hopes of sustenance, covering his head with the veil of endurance and self-denial, arrayed in abstinence and in scanty fare, but not resigned to the wearing of such clothing; your brother was forced and had not strength to resist (22). He remained there, consoling himself in the society of his fellow-merchants whose humours he could support and from
whom he had no affronts to fear; he treated them with politeness and was happy to receive from them a pittance. Otherwise, no advantage could be expected from them and no harm could be feared:

"If I must absolutely have a family and a home, let it be in a place where I can have nothing to fear from those whom I meet, and they, nothing to fear from me.

"My mind had once formed the thought of assuming high airs, of riding on a spirited horse, of seeing my ambitious desires come forth from the egg, fledged and winged, and of striking fire (drawing profit) from every steel, whether lavish or sparing of its sparks; (but now):

"Instructed by experience, I care not if people shun me and if I never receive nor make a visit. Never, whilst I live, shall I ask if the army has marched or if the general has departed.

"The place where I stopped was called Marw ash-Shâhjân, which (latter) word, according to the explanation given by them, means the soul of the sultan. I found there some works treating of the sciences and of literature, volumes composed by men of intelligence, and, whilst I studied them, I forgot family and country, and thought no longer of sincere friends nor of my home. Amongst them I discovered some stray volumes which I had long sought for, and some works which I had ardently desired. To them I applied with the avidity of a glutton and, having assigned to them a place from which they could not easily depart, I began to browse in these gardens, to admire the beauty of their form and of their contents, to let my eyes rove freely over these pasture grounds, to enjoy these detailed accounts, these compendiums, and to think that I should remain in that quarter till I became a neighbour of (those who repose under) the earth:

"When adversity attacks me with troops having sadness and expatriation in the van, I lay for them an ambuscade of which the two chiefs are a lamp and a book; and I pass the night in relating, of Fortune's character, things so wonderful that their truth would excite doubt. I dispel my cares by quiet, as the cares of others are dispelled by wine.

"(So things continued) till the catastrophe arrived by which Khorâsân was overwhelmed with ruin, with evil all-destroying and with desolation. Now, I declare
on my life and by Allah! that it was a country beautiful in all its parts, charming in all its regions; a fertile garden enjoying an air pure and languishing (mild), and in which the trees inclined their branches with delight at the singing of the birds. In it the rivulets shed tears whilst each flower smiled at the other; the breath of the zephyr was sweet and the temperature of the climate healthy. Never shall I forget those delightful arbours and those trees sinking under (the weight of) their foliage. The southern gales bore thither its wine-skins filled with the liquor of the clouds; the meadows drank the wine of the dew, and on the flowers were formed drops like pearls fallen from the string. When the thirst of its groves was quenched with that liquor, their odour was the intoxicating breath of the zephyr; they drew near to each other, even closer than friend to friend, and embraced even more tenderly than lovers. In the intervals were seen anemones whose colours were mixed with that of the love-sick wooer (23) and which resembled the lips of two maidens who draw near, one to the other, for the purpose of giving and receiving an affectionate kiss. Their aspect sometimes deceived the most intelligent (nahrir), so that he took them for burning coals (jumr) on which drops of water were poured successively in order to extinguish them (intild/) (24). There you saw the ox-eye flourish so brilliantly that the eye of the spectator is cheered at the sight, whilst its blossoms glittered like little cymbals of gold or like dinars of that metal. Among them appeared the (white flowers of the) anthemis, shining like the teeth of the beloved when she bites the cheek of the lover. How rich (that land) in prospects which delight the eye and of which the colours are charming (rdik). It is, in a word, and without exaggeration, a copy of Paradise: there was to be found all the heart could wish for, all that could enchant the sight. Encircled with its noble endowments, it offered, throughout all its tracts, a profusion of rich products to the world. How numerous were its holy men pre-eminent for virtue (rdkat kharuhu)! how many its doctors whose conduct had for motive the conservation of Islamism! The monuments of its science are inscribed on the rolls of time; the merits of its authors have rebounded to the advantage of religion and of the world, and their productions have been carried into every country. Not a man of solid science and sound judgment but emerged like the sun, from that part of the East; not a man of extraordinary merit but took that country for his setting-place or longed to go and join its inhabitants. Every quality truly honorable and not fictitious was to be found among them and,
in (the garden of) their sayings, I was enabled to cull the roots of every generous impulse. Their children were men, their youths heroes, and their old men saints; the testimonies of their merit are clear; the proofs of their glory are manifest; yet, strange to say! the sultan who reigned over these provinces abandoned them with unconcern and said to himself: 'Take to the open country (25), or else you will encounter perdition.' So, he hastened off as a young ostrich runs away and, when he began to look about, where nothing was to be seen, he thought that he perceived a man or many men (in pursuit of him) (26). How many gardens, springs of water, fields of corn, honourable stations and advantages which they enjoyed, did they leave behind! But Almighty God did not give the same unto another people (27), because he averted those saints from the station of the wicked. But he put them to the proof, and found them grateful; he afflicted them, and found them patient; so he caused them to join the company of the holy martyrs and raised them to the lofty stations of the virtuous elect. Yet perchance ye hate a thing which is better for you, and perchance ye like a thing which is worse for you; but God knoweth and ye know not (28). The people of infidelity and impiety roamed through those abodes; that erring and contumacious race dominated over the inhabitants; so that those palaces were effaced off the earth as lines of writing are effaced from paper, and those abodes became a dwelling for the owl and the raven: in those places, the screech-owls answer each other's cry, and in those halls, the winds moan responsive to the simoom. 'Old friends who enter there are filled with sadness; Iblis himself would bewail the great catastrophe:

"(It is now) as if no charming companion, handsome as a statue, had ever been there; as if princely chiefs, lions in bravery (had never resided there). Yet, in generosity, they were Hātims and sons of Māma (29); if prudence were taken into count, they were Ahnafs (30) and Saads (31). But time, in its vicissitudes, hath hurled them to destruction, so that their fate is now a moral lesson, fitted to make our hearts bleed and those of our posterity.

We belong to God and to God we shall return! It was an event sufficient to break the back, to destroy life, to fracture the arm, to weaken the strength, to redouble sadness, to turn grey the hair of children, to dishearten the brave, to blacken the heart and to stupify the intelligence. Then did your humble servant turn back and retrace his steps. Filled with grief, he sought a friendly retreat where his mind might repose in security; (he fled,) his heart beating, his tears flowing, his
reason lost and his intelligence absent. It was with difficulty that he accomplished his purpose and arrived at Mosul, where he stopped, after encountering dangers, undergoing sufferings, supporting misfortunes with resignation, diminishing his baggage and, more than once, running the risk of his life. For he passed through drawn swords, troops flying in disorder, ranks broken, blood spilt with impunity. Every time he got on a camel’s saddle or crossed a desert, he had these words in his mouth (32): ‘In this journey we have met with misfortune, but praise be to God who has left to us the power of praising him, and who has conferred on us favours which surpass enumeration!’ In a word, if the term of my life had not been appointed for a later period, it would have been difficult for my friends to have said: ‘The unfortunate man has escaped or is arrived!’ and they would have struck their hands like people whose hopes have been disappointed; and he would have been joined to the millions of millions, or even more, who perished by the hands of the infidels. Then he would have left his dearest treasure, her who derives subsistence from his life:

Fortune does not appreciate my worth; she knows not that I have strength of mind and can make light of the events brought about by time. Adversity passes the night in shewing how she can transgress against me, and I pass it in letting her see what patience is.

Your humble servant now declares that he has no means of tranquillizing his mind, no promise by which to flatter his heart or his eyes, except in beguiling them with the hope that his afflictions shall disappear, once he stands in your noble presence.

Enjoy good health, continue (to do so) and pass your days in pleasure; for your existence will console (as all) for what is past and gone. You are the soul of glory; mankind is its body; you are a pearl, and we (possessing it) regret not the shell.

Your humble servant is now residing at Mosul and endeavouring to repair the harm done to him by this grave and disquieting event. He passes his time in the exercise of his profession, but Fortune is ready to say to him, in plain and intelligible language: ‘By Allah! you have fallen into your old mistake!’ For now, one object occupies his thoughts and, on my life and by Allah! that is nothing more than procuring a provision of books which he may transcribe and of (written) leaves which may serve him as companions;—in that occupation, his toil is great and his profit small;—then (he thinks of) travelling and resolves that, after accom-
plishing his task and attaining in some degree the object on which he has set
his mind (kαrdna), he will invoke divine assistance and journey forth (33) in
the hope of accomplishing his wish; namely, to appear in your presence, regale
his sight, even for a single moment, with the aspect of your greatness, and then,
casting away the staff of travel in your spacious hall, repose under the shelter of
your wing till he attain the hour which is to give him (everlasting) repose. He
will take his place among your Excellency's servants, for such he always professed
himself to be, even when far from your presence; and if your Excellency take him
by the hand, Fortune, becoming indulgent, may exalt him after having cast
him down. For, with his diminished strength, he is unable to accomplish his
projects and incapable of entering the lists and encountering new hazards (34).
Besides, the earth has now enclosed his brethren in its bosom and the succession
of days and nights has removed (most of) his contemporaries out of sight; grayness
has settled on his beard; his means are insufficient for (the satisfying of) his
wants; the falcon of hoary age has swooped at and seized on the raven (the black
hair) of his youth; the daylight of prudence has invaded and repelled the night
of ignorance; the services he rendered to his friends have been repaid with evil (35),
and the brilliant garment of youth he has exchanged for the tattered cloak of
hoary age:

"My youth departed and was ended before I enjoyed it; since it left me I can only expect death.
Old age precludes me from attaining what I seek for.

"Your humble servant composed the following elegy in verse on the loss of his
youth; but how little does it avail (ghand) a man to weep for those who are depon-
sited in the earth, amongst mouldering bones!

"Since my hair has turned gray, Fortune knows me no more, and the marks by which she
is distinguished can no longer be recognised by me (36). When my soul thinks of it (my
youth), it yearns for it with longing desire and my eyes pour forth tears; till a time comes to
embellish what has passed away and recollection supplies me with abundant sighs. Why
not? since nought (lamd) remains in the bottom of my drinking-cup but a mere mouthful,
filled with grounds. The contents of every goblet are clear at first, but in the bottom are
found only a few dregs (muzj’d hum-dt) and some sediment.

"Your humble servant hopes that the above example of senile garrulity will
obtain from you a glance of benevolence; for, assuredly, the judgment of our
lord and master, the vizir, of him who is the asylum of the human race, from
east to west, procures, when he applies it, according to his glorious custom, an
increase of rank and honour (for him who is the object of it. Receive my)
salutation."

I have lengthened greatly this article by the insertion of Yâkût's epistle, but it
was impossible to give it by extracts. My friend (tâhib) al-Kamâl Ibn as-Shiâr al-
Mausili (37) writes at follows, in his work entitled Oktâd al-Jumân (clusters of
pearls): "Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Mahmûd, generally known by the sur-
name of Ibn an-Najjâr (vol. I. p. 11) and the author of a history of Baghdad,
spoke to me in these terms: 'The above mentioned Yâkût recited to me the fol-
lowing three lines and told me that he had composed them on a young Turkish
slave who, having inflamed eyes, wore a black veil to protect them:

"That Turkish youth whose face might be taken for a full moon shining in all its refugence,
shades his eyes with the border of a veil (lit. of a protector) to prevent their brightness from
fascinating his admirers. But, by Allah! since these eyes have wounded hearts through
coats of mail, what is there to protect the protector!"

Yâkût was born in the country of the Greeks (Asia Minor), in the year 574 (A.
D. 1178-9), or 575." So says the author just cited. He died on the 21st of the
month of Ramadan, 626 (13th August, A. D. 1229), in a khân situated outside the
city of Aleppo, as we have already mentioned towards the beginning of this article.
He left his books as a wakf (38) to the mausoleum (mash-hed) of az-Zaidi (?), which
establishment is situated in Dinâr street (Darb dinâr), Baghdad. He delivered
them to Izz ad-Dîn Abû 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn al-Athîr (vol. II. p. 288), the author of the
great historical work, and this shaikh carried them to their destination. When
Yâkût rose to distinction and got into reputation, he changed his name into Yâkûb.
In the beginning of the month of Zu' 'l-Kaada, 626 (in the latter part of September,
A. D. 1229), I arrived at Aleppo for the purpose of pursuing my studies. This was
subsequent to Yâkût's death; and I found every one speaking in his praise, extolling
his merit and his great literary acquirements. It was not therefore in my destiny to
meet with him.

(1) The is'and of Kîs is situated at the entrance of the Persian Gulf, opposite to Ormus.
(2) See vol. II, p. 331.

(4) This and the Muhktarik are the only works of Yâkût which I have met with. The Mojam al-Buldan forms five or six folio volumes and contains much curious information. I understand that Mr. Wüstenfeld has prepared an edition of it which is now (1863) in the press.

(5) The loss of these compilations is much to be regretted.

(6) Literally : the master of his thraldom.

(7) This long letter contains very little information and was evidently composed with the intention of displaying the great command of language possessed by the author. Its style, though laboured and excessively affected, is by no means remarkable for elegance, though the vizir Ibn al-Kifî and Ibn Khallikân have inserted it in their respective works. Nothing can be conceived more verbose and more jejune than this pompous epistle. It is almost needless to say that the copyists did not always understand it and have committed numerous faults in its transcription. Some of these errors I have rectified, but a few passages remain of which the text cannot be amended though the meaning be tolerably clear.

(8) Al-Audsâm (the fortress) was the name given to that part of ancient Cilicia which borders on the north of Syria.

(9) The Arabic word signifies : the part of the arm on which the bracelet is worn.

(10) Literally : his illustrious presence.

(11) Literally : with a white forehead and white pasterns. These were considered by the bedwin Arabs as marks of a good horse.

(12) Literally : my people are speakers.

(13) Literally : his recital of the traditions of glory, the i-nedd of which are near (easy to be verified), is established by his personal observation.

(14) Korân, surat 49, verse 17. The application of this verse is by no means clear.

(15) and (16). The epithets here employed are taken from the Korân.

(17) These are rhyming proverbs.

(18) Literally : the camel's hump.

(19) The sudd or barrier of Gog and Magog was supposed to exist on the west side of the Caspian sea.

(20) All those places are mentioned in the poems composed by the bedwin Arabs and were situated in Arabia.

(21) Literally : instead of booty I was content to return. A well known proverb.

(22) For the explanation of this proverb, see Freytag's Maiddni, vol. I, p. 266.

(23) The text is corrupt but the meaning appears to be that which is given here. I read shda'ibd with one of the manuscripts.

(24) That means : the colour of these flowers was red with dark spots.

(25) Literally : to the air.

(26) For an account of Khuwârezm-Shâh's flight before the troops of Jenghiz-Khân, see Abâ 'I-Feda's Annals, A. H. 617.

(27) Korân, sur. 44, verses 24, 25. These verses apply to the Egyptians who went forth in pursuit of the Children of Israel. God gave their possessions to another people; so says the Korân; but our author remarks that God did not leave those of the Khorâsânites to the invaders, because he would not treat the Muslims like the people of Pharaoh.

(28) Korân, sur. 2, verse 213.
The generosity of Hātim at-Tāi is well known; Kaah Ibn Mâma, one of the principal chiefs of the tribe of Iyâd, was also noted for his liberality. See Freytag’s *Maiddni*, t. I, p. 325, and Mr. Caussin de Perceval’s *Essai*, t. II, p. 119.

Saad Ibn Hudaim ُهُذِّبُم died some years before the introduction of Islamism. He was so celebrated for his wisdom that the Beduin Arabs used to take him for judge in their contestations. (D’Herbelot, *Bibliotheque orientale*.)

Literally: this was his distinctive mark.

Literally: ride on the direction of the road.

Literally: times; i.e. vicissitudes of fortune.

The word خصص, which is not rendered in the translation, may perhaps signify: which is a case particular to him alone.

Or else: her favours are denials. The two words are also technical terms of Arabic grammar and, in that case, they signify: her definite (noun), i.e. gift) are, for me, indefinite; which may mean: I obtain them not.

Abû 'l-Barâkât al-Mubârak Ibn Hamdân Ibn ash-Shiâr surnamed Kamâl ad-Dîn al-Mausili (belonging to Mosul), composed a voluminous work on the poets of the seventh century of the Hijrâ. He died A. H. 654 (A. D. 1256-7).— (Hajji Khalifa; *Ghirbât an-Zamân*.)


---

**YAHYA IBN MAIN**

Abû Zakariya Yahya Ibn Main Ibn Aûn Ibn Zîâd Ibn Bâstâm Ibn Abd ar-Rahmân al-Murri, a native of Baghdad and a celebrated hâfiz, was a doctor of the highest authority, deeply learned and noted for the exactitude of his (traditional) information. He came, it is said, from a village situated near al-Anbâr and called Nakiya. His father was secretary to Abd Allah Ibn Malik (1) or, according to another statement, he was chief of the khardj (or land-taz) offices at Rai. He left, on his death, a sum of one million and fifty thousand dirhems (2) to his son Yahya. All this sum was spent by the latter in (collecting) Traditions, so that, at length, he had not a shoe to put on. Being asked how many traditions he had written down, he answered: “I wrote ‘down with my own hand six hundred thousand Traditions.” Ahmad Ibn Okba,
the person who related this anecdote, said: "And I believe that the relaters of Traditions had also written out for him six hundred thousand and as much more." *(When Ibn Mathn died)* he left one hundred and thirty cases filled with books and four water-jar stands filled with them also. He was the great master in the art of improbation and justification (3). The most eminent doctors learned Traditions from him and taught them on his authority. Amongst them were Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Isma'il al-Bukhāri *(vol. II. p. 594)*, Muslim Ibn al-Hajjāj al-Kushairi *(vol. III. p. 348)*, Abū Dāwūd as-Sijistānī *(vol. I. p. 589)*, and other ḥadīthīs. A close fellowship and intimacy subsisted between him and Ahmad Ibn Hanbal *(vol. I. p. 44)*, and they studied together all the sciences connected with the Traditions. This is a fact so well known that we need not expatiate on the subject. He *(Ibn Hanbal)* and Abū Khaithama (4) related Traditions on his *(Ibn Mathn's)* authority, and were his contemporaries. Ali Ibn al-Madini (5) said: "In Basra, the science *(of the law and the Traditions)* passed down to Yahya Ibn Abi Kathīr (6) and Katāda *(vol. II. p. 513)*; in Kūfa, it reached Abū Ishāk *(vol. II. p. 392)* and al-Aâmash *(vol. I. p. 587)*; the science of Hijāz passed to Ibn Shihāb *(vol. II. p. 581)* and Amr Ibn Dinār *(vol. I. p. 580)*. All these six were at Basra, and what they knew was transmitted to Said Ibn Abi Arūba (7), Shoba *(vol. I. p. 493)*, Mamar (8), Hammad Ibn Salama *(vol. I. p. 261)* and Abū Awānā (9). At Kufa the heads of the science were Sofyān ath-Thauri *(vol. I. p. 576)* and Sofyān Ibn Oyaina *(vol. I. p. 578)*; in Hijāz its head was Mālik Ibn Anas *(vol. II. p. 545)*; in Syria, its head was al-ʿAuzāi *(vol. II. p. 84)*. The knowledge possessed by these passed to Muhammad Ibn Ishāk *(vol. II. p. 677)*, Hushaim *(vol. I. p. 187)*, Yahya Ibn Said *(vol. II. p. 679)*, Ibn Abi Zaidā, Waki *(vol. I. p. 374)*, Ibn al-Mubārak *(vol. II. p. 12)*, who was the most learned of them all, Ibn Mahdi (10) and Yahya Ibn Aadam (11). The united knowledge of them all passed to Yahya Ibn Mathn." Ahmad Ibn Hanbal declared that every tradition which was not known to Yahya Ibn Main was not a *(true)* tradition. He said also: "There is in this place a man whom God created for the purpose of exposing the falsehoods of lying traditionists;" and the person whom he meant was Ibn Main. "Never", said Ibn ar-Rūmī (12) did I hear any one except Ibn Main speak equitably of the shaikhs *(the Traditionists)*; others fall upon them in their discourse, but Yahya *(Ibn Mathn)* would say: 'I never saw a man make a mistake without my casting a veil over his fault or trying to excuse him; and I never reproached a man, to his face, with anything that might
Wealth gained by lawful or unlawful means will all disappear, leaving nothing behind but the iniquities it wrought. The devout man does not really fear God unless he gains honestly what he eats and drinks. (His heart) concealed within him should be pure, as also the work of his hands, and his words should be employed only in virtuous discourse (13). Thus hath the Prophet spoken in the name of the Lord; so, the blessing of the Lord and his salutation be on the Prophet.

Ad-Dārakutni (vol. II. p. 239) mentions Yahya Ibn Main as one of those who delivered Traditions received by orally from as-Shaft (vol. II. p. 569). In our article on the latter, we have spoken of Ibn Main's conduct towards him and of what passed, on that occasion, between Ibn Main and the imām Ahmad (Ibn Hanbal). Ibn Main heard also Traditions delivered by Abd Allah Ibn al-Mubārak, Sofyān Ibn Oyaina and others of the same class. When he made the pilgrimage, which he frequently did, he used to go to Mekka in passing through Medina. The last time he went, he visited Medina on going and, on his return, he staid there three days. Having then set out with his fellow-travellers, he stopped with them at the first halting-place in order to pass the night, and he had a dream in which he heard a voice call out to him, saying: "O Abū Zakariya! dost thou then dislike my neig-
bourhood (14)?" When the morning came, he said to his companions: "Con-
tinue your journey; as for me, I return to Medina." They did so, and he went back to that city where he passed three days and then died. His corpse was borne to the grave on the bier which had been made use of at the Prophet's burial. The Khatib (vol. I. p. 75) says, in his History of Baghdad, that Ibn Main's death took place on the 23rd of Zū 'l-Kaada, 233, but he is certainly mistaken, as I shall here prove: Ibn Main went to Mekka and made the pilgrimage, after which, he returned to Medina and there died. But how is it possible that a man who has made the pilgrimage could die, the same year, in the month of Zū 'l-Kaada (15)? Had the Khatib said that he died in Zū 'l-Hijja, the thing had been possible. Some persons suppose that the mistake was committed by the transcriber of the work, but I found,
in two copies of it, that the passage is the same as we have just given. It is therefore difficult to admit that the error proceeded from the copyist. Further on, the same author says that he died before accomplishing the pilgrimage. In that case, the date which he gives might pass for correct; but I since met with a historical work entitled: Kitāb al-Irshād fi marifat Ulamā' il-Bilād (the directory, containing information respecting the learned men of all countries), and compiled by the ḥāfiz Abū Yala 'l-Khalil Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Ahmad Ibn Ibrāhīm Ibn al-Khalil al-Khalili (16), and, in it I read that Yahya Ibn Main died on the 22nd of Zū 'l-Hijja, in the year above mentioned (28th July, A. D. 848). From this, it appears that he did make the pilgrimage. The Khattāb states also that he was born in the latter part of the year 158 and then adds: "He died at the age of seventy-seven years, wanting ten "days." This cannot be, as will be found of the calculation be made. In another historical work I read that he lived to the age of seventy-five years. God knows best! The funeral prayer was said over the body by the governor of Medina and was afterwards repeated several times. Ibn Main was buried in the Bakī' cemetery. When they were carrying him to the grave, a man preceded them, crying out: "This is he who expelled falsehoods from the Traditions left by the Prophet of God." A Tradition composed on his death an elegy in which he said:

He is departed, that learned man who corrected the faults of every Traditionist, cleared up the contradictions in the isndās, and dissipated the doubts and ambiguities which perplexed the learned of all countries.

The word ماستم must be pronounced Matn.—Bistāmī has an i after the b; remarks on the other letters are needless.—I read in a historical work that Yahya Ibn Main was the grandson of Ghīṭāth, the son of Zīād, the son of Aūn, the son of Bistām, who was a muwāla of al-Junāid Ibn Abd ar-Rahmān al-Ghatafānī al-Murri, the same who governed Khorāsān in the name of the Omayyide Khalif Hishām Ibn Abd al-Malik. The genealogy given at the beginning of this article is that which is generally accepted as the more correct.—Murri means belonging to the tribe of Murra, who was a descendant of Ghatafān, being the son of Aūf Ibn Sa'ad Ibn Dabyān Ibn Baghid Ibn Raith Ibn Ghatafān. It is a large and famous tribe. A great number of Arabian tribes bear this name.—As-Samā'ī (vol. II. p. 156) says, in his Anṣāb: "ئنا may ‘be pronounced Nakiyā or Nakayā. It is the name of a village near al-Anbār. From
it came Yahya Ibn Matn an-Nakayi." The Khālit says that Pharaoh was a native of this village; God knows best!

(1) "In the year 199 (A.D. 807-8), Abd Allah Ibn Mālik marched with a body of ten thousand men against the Khurramiya (the partisans of Bábēk) who were stirring up troubles in Adarbajān. After killing and taking prisoners (many of the insurgents), he returned victorious." — (Nujūm.)

(2) Upwards of twenty thousand pounds sterling.

(3) The science called Tajrīth wa tādīl (improvement and justification) had for object to determine the degree of credibility to which every witness in a court of law and every reporter of Traditions were entitled. For that purpose, it was necessary to study the life of the individual. The requisite points in a Traditionist were good conduct, piety, veracity, exactness and a retentive memory.

(4) Abū Khālidma Zuhair Ibn Harb an-Nashī, an eminent Traditionist, was distinguished for learning and piety. Nasā was his native place, but he travelled to many countries and afterwards settled at Baghdad. He died in the month of Shawāb, 234 (March, A.D. 849). — (Nujūm; Huffds.)

(5) Ali Ibn Abd Allah, surnamed Ibn al-Madīnī, was a Traditionist of the highest authority. He died at Mecca in the month of Zū l-Ka‘a, 234 (May-June, A.D. 849). — (Nujūm; Huffds.)

(6) Yahya Ibn Abī Kathīr al-Yamānī, named also Sālih Ibn al-Mutawakkil, was a Traditionist of considerable reputation. He died A. H. 198 (A.D. 745-6), according to the author of the Nujūm; in the Tabakht al-Huffds, his death is placed a year later.

(7) Abū 'n-Nasr Sahl Ibn Abī Arūba, a Traditionist of Basra, died A. H. 156 (A.D. 772-3), or 157. — (Kitāb al-Madīrī; Huffds.)

(8) Māmār Ibn Rāshīd al-Harrānī al-Basri, a Traditionist of good authority, died A. H. 152 (A.D. 769), or 158. — (Huffds.)

(9) The hāḍīs Abū Awāna al-Waddāh Ibn Abd Allah, was a member, by enfranchisement, of the tribe of Yashkur. He died at Basra in the month of the 1st Rahl, 176 (June-July, A.D. 793). — (Nujūm; Huffds.)

(10) Abū Sahl Sahl ar-Rahmān Ibn Mahdi, an inhabitant of Basra and a hāḍīs of the highest authority, died in that city, A. H. 198 (A.D. 813-4), at the age of sixty-three years. — (Nujūm; Huffds.)

(11) The hāḍīs Abū Zakariya Yahya Ibn ‘Aadam was a Traditionist of the highest authority. He died A. H. 203 (A.D. 818-9). — (Huffds.)

(12) The Ibn ar-Rumī here mentioned speaks of Ibn Ma‘n as if he had conversed with him and could appreciate his merit. He cannot therefore be the poet of that name (see vol. II, p. 297), who was only twelve years of age when Ibn Ma‘n died.

(13) This hemistich may also be rendered thus: his discourse should consist in Traditions only.

(14) Muhammad’s tomb is at Medina.

(15) The pilgrimage takes place in Zū l-Hijja, the month which immediately follows Zū l-Ka‘a.

(16) Abū Ya‘la ‘l-Khali‘lī’s work treated of the persons who transmitted traditions. He composed another work bearing also the title of Irshād and containing a history of Kazwīn, his native place. As a hāḍīs, he held a high reputation. He died in the latter half of the fifth century of the Hijra (A. D. 1059-1106). — (Hajji Khalīfa; Huffds.)
YAHYA IBN YAHYA

Abû Muhammad Yahya al-Laithi was the son of Yahya, the son of Kathîr, the son of Wislâsen or Wislâs, the son of Shammâl, the son of Manghâyâ. He drew his origin from the Masmûda, a berber tribe which had contracted clientship with the Arabian tribe of Laith. He, for that reason, bore the appellation of al-Laithi. His grandfather, Abû Isa Kathîr, the first of the family who passed into Spain, fixed his residence in Cordova. It was there that he (Yahya) heard (the lessons) of Zîâd Ibn Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Zîâd al-Lakhami, surnamed Shahatun (1), who was a native of that city and the person who (there) knew best by heart and could dictate the contents of the Muvatta composed by Mâlik Ibn Anas (vol. II. p. 545). He heard also traditional information delivered by Yahya Ibn Modar al-Kaisî, a native of Spain. At the age of twenty eight years he travelled to the East and learned perfectly the Muvatta under the direction of Mâlik, with the exception of some paragraphs belonging to the chapter which treats of the spiritual retreat (2). Not being sure of having heard these passages well, he learned to repeat them correctly under the direction of Zîâd. At Mekka he heard (traditional information delivered by) Sofyân Ibn Oyaina (vol. I. p. 578) and, in Misr (Old Cairo), he received lessons from al-Laith Ibn Saad (vol. II. p. 543), Abd Allah Ibn Wâhâb (vol. II. p. 15) and Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn al-Kâsim (vol. II, p. 86). After attending assiduously the lessons of Mâlik and profiting greatly by his tuition, he studied the law under the principal disciples of that imâm, both those of Medina and those of Misr. Mâlik used to call him the adîkil (or intelligent man) of Spain. His motif for doing so is thus related: Yahya was, one day, at Mâlik's lecture with a number of fellow-students, when some one said: "Here comes the elephant!" All of them ran out to see the animal, but Yahya did not stir: "Why," said Mâlik, "do you not go out and look at it? such animals are not "to be seen in Spain." To this Yahya replied: "I left my country for the purpose "of seeing you and obtaining knowledge under your guidance; I did not come "here for the purpose seeing the elephant." Mâlik was so highly pleased with this answer that he called him the adîkil of the people of Spain. Some time after, Yahya returned to Spain and, having become chief (of the ulemd), he propagated through-
out all that country the system of law draw up by Mālik. It was accepted by immense multitudes, and the number of persons who taught the doctrines which they had learned from him was very great. The best edition (3) of the Muwatta and that which has the greatest reputation was given (orally) by Yahya Ibn Yahya. By his rectitude and piety he obtained the highest respect from the emirs (the men in power) and acquired great influence over them; such was his self-denial, that he scrupulously avoided accepting any office under government. The elevated rank which he held (in public estimation) was much superior to that of a kādi, and his refusal, through religious motives, to accept such an office gave him more influence over men in power than any kādi could possess. The Spanish writer, Abū Muhammad Ali Ibn Ahmad, generally known by the surname of Ibn Hazm (vol. II. p. 267), says: "Two systems of law were at first promulgated by persons in power and high station: that of Abū Hanifa (vol. III. p. 555) and that of Mālik. Abū Yūsuf Yā-kūb, the disciple of Abū Hanifa,"—we shall give his life,—"being appointed (chief) kādi, acquired the right of nominating all the others, and there was not a city, from the far East to the most distant of the African provinces, in which he did not establish, as a kādi, one of his own disciples or one of those who professed his doctrines. Here, in Spain, we adopted the system of Mālik for the following reason: Yahya Ibn Yahya was in high favour with the sultan, and his advice in whatever concerned (the nomination of) kādis was always followed. So, no kādi was ever appointed to act in any part of the Spanish provinces till Yahya had given his opinion and pointed out the person whom he preferred. He never designated any person for that office except one of his own disciples or of those who followed his doctrines. Now, as all men hasten towards that which is advantageous for them in the world, they adopted willingly what they hoped would conduce to their interest. I must add that Yahya Ibn Yahya never filled the duties of a kādi and would never consent to accept such a place. This line of conduct served to augment his influence with the men in power and disposed them to follow more readily his advice." The following anecdote is related by Ahmad Ibn Abi 'l-Faiyād (4) in the work composed by him: "The emir Abd ar-Rahmān Ibn al-Hakam, surnamed al-Murtada (5) and the (fourth) Omaiyide sovereign of Spain, convoked, by letter, the jurisconsults into his presence, and they all went to the palace. It was in Ramadān (the month of strict abstinence), and he, happening to look at one of his concubines whom he loved passionately,
"was so much excited (by her beauty) that he lost all self-command and had 
commerce with her. He then regretted deeply what he had done and con-
sulted these doctors respecting the mode of manifesting his repentance and 
expiating his sin. Yahya Ibn Yahya replied: 'A sin of that kind can be expiated 
by a fast of two consecutive months'. As he had hastened to give this opinion 
(fetwa) before the others had time to speak, they kept silent, but, on leaving Abd 
ar-Rahmân's presence, they spoke to each other of what had passed and then said 
to Yahya: 'What prevented you from giving a fetwa conformable to the doctrine 
of Mâlik?' That ijmâm said: 'He who sins thus has the choice of manumitting 
(a slave), of giving food (to the poor), or of keeping a fast.' To this he answer-
ed: 'Had we opened to him such a door as that, he would satisfy his passion 
every day and repair his fault by freeing a slave. So I imposed on him the se-
erest penalty in order to prevent him from relapsing.'"—When Yahya left 
Mâlik, with the intention of returning to his native country, he went to Misr and 
found there Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn al-Kâsim, who was occupied in making a written 
compilation of the doctrines which he had learned from Mâlik. (On seeing this col-
lection) he resolved on hastening back and hear Mâlik himself treat the questions 
which Ibn al-Kâsim had enregistered. He therefore travelled (to Medîna) a second 
time and, finding, on his arrival, that Mâlik was very ill, he staid with him till he 
expired. After attending the funeral, he returned to Ibn al-Kâsim, who recited to 
him the doctrines such as he heard them from Mâlik's own lips. Abû 'l-Walîd Ibn 
al-Farâdî (vol. II. p. 68) mentions that fact in his historical work, with some other 
particulars of the same kind.—When Yahya Ibn Yahya returned to Spain, he became 
the paragon of the age and had none to equal him in that country. He was a man 
of great intelligence. Muhammad Ibn Omar Ibn Lubâba (6) said: 'The (great) ju-
risconsult of Spain is Isa Ibn Dînâr (7); its most learned man is Abd al-Mâlik Ibn 
Habîb (8), and its most intelligent man is Yahya Ibn Yahya.'—Yahya, being sus-
ppected of having had a share in the (great) revolt (9), fled to Toledo and then solli-
cited a letter of protection, which was granted to him by the emir-al-Hâkam. He then 
returned to Cordova.—'Never,' said Ahmad Ibn Khâlid (10), 'since the time of 
the introduction of Islamism, did any of the learned in Spain enjoy such good 
fortune, such influence and such a reputation as Yahya Ibn Yahya.'—Ibn Bash-
kuwâl (vol. I. p. 491) says, in his historical work: 'The prayers which Yahya Ibn 
Yahya addressed to God were always fulfilled. In his appearance, dress and man-
"ner of sitting he greatly resembled Mālik. It is related that he said: 'I (one day) went to take hold of the stirrup of al-Laith Ibn Sa'ad (vol. II. p. 543), and his servant boy tried to prevent me, on which he addressed to me these words: 'You shall have all the learned men for servants;' and that I have lived long enough to witness.' The same author adds: 'Yahya Ibn Yahya died in the month of Rajab, 234 (Feb. A. D. 849). His tomb is situated in the cemetery of the Abbasides, and prayers are offered up at it in times of drought.' This cemetery lies outside Cordova. Abū Abd Allah al-Humaidi (vol. III. p. 1) informs us, moreover, that he died on the 22nd of that month. Abū 'l-Walid Ibn al-Faradi states that his death took place in 233, or, by another account, in 234 and in the month of Rajab. God knows best.—Wisāds or Wisādūn is a Berber word which signifies he hears them (11).—Shammāl is pronounced with an a after the sh and a double m.—Manghāyā signifies a killer in Berber (12). We have already spoken of the words Laithi (vol. II. p. 409), Berber (vol. I. p. 35) and Masmāda (vol. III. p. 215).

(1) I follow the orthography of one ms. and of the printed text of Makkari's Spanish History.—Abū Abd Allah Zīlād Ibn Abd ar-Rahmān al-Lakhmi, generally known by the name of Shabatūn, was a native of Cordova and a doctor of the rite of Mālik. It was he who first introduced into Spain the system of jurisprudence drawn up by that Imam and who taught there the Mawātī (vol. II. p. 548). Hishām Ibn Abd ar-Rahmān, the second Omaiyide sovereign of Spain wished to have him for a kādī at Cordova, but could never obtain his consent. Ibn Zīlād died A. H. 204 (A. D. 819-20), or 193, according to another statement. It was by his advice that Yahya Ibn Yahya travelled to the East for the purpose of studying under Mālik. (Gayangos's Makkari, vol. II. p. 100 et seg.)

(2) The spiritual retreat (iitiḥāf) consists in remaining some days and nights successively in a mosque and passing that time in prayer, fasting and meditation.

(3) Literally: recital. The contents of those classical works were taught orally, the professor knowing them by heart.

(4) This author is not mentioned by Hajji Khalīfa, and al-Makkari merely informs us that the subject of his work was historical. According to an indication given by Ibn al-Athir in his Kāmil, it contained information respecting the Abbāsid dynasty. See Mr. Dorsey's Historia Abbasidarum, IInd part, p. 84.

(5) This is a mistake; his surname was al-Muṣaffar.

(6) Muhammad Ibn Omar Ibn Lubāba (الليباب), a native of Spain, a teacher of Malikite jurisprudence and a Traditionist, died A. H. 314 (A. D. 926-7). (Gayangos's Makkari, and the Arabic edition of the same work.)

(7) According to al-Makkari, this Isā Ibn Dhūr was a juristconsult and composed a work entitled al-Hiddīya (the guide). He left Cordova during the reign of Hishām Ibn Abd ar-Rahmān, the second Omaiyide sovereign, and travelled to the East, where he studied the law under Mālik.

(8) Abū Marwān Abd al-Malik Ibn Ḥabīb was a native of Cordova and one of the Spanish doctors who travelled to the East for the purpose of studying under Mālik. He contributed to the introduction of that Imam's doc-
trines into Spain. Ad-Dabbi places his death in the month of Zäh'l Hijja, 989 (May, A.D. 854). See Cas-
leri's Bibliotheca Arabica Hispanica, t. II, p. 138. According to the authority followed by Mr. de Gayangos
(Makkari, vol. I, p. 943), he died at Cordova, A. H. 298, after composing not less than one thousand works
or treatises on various subjects.

(9) This is the famous revolt of the suburb (rabad) of Cordova which took place A. H. 198 (A. D. 814),
under the reign of al-Hakam Ibn Hishám. A full and exact account of this event, which led to the conquest
of Crete by these suburbians (Rabadis), is contained in Mr. Dozy's Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne, t. II,
p. 68 et seq.

(10) Ahmad Ibn Khālid, a doctor of the law and a traditionist, was a contemporary of Ibn Luhāba (see
note 8). The Omaiyide sovereign Abd ar-Rahmān an-Nastir esteemed him so highly that he had him brought
to Cordova and lodged in one of the houses belonging to the mosque near the palace. He allowed him a daily
ration of provisions and made him considerable presents. The enemies of Ibn Khālid reproached him for
accepting these favours, and he composed a work in vindication of his conduct. — (Makkari, arabic text,
vol. II, p. 108.)

(11) The word islasen is berber and signifies he heard them.

(12) In Berber, the root angh or angh (اًح) signifies to kill. A killer or murderer is designated by the
words inegh or inghda. The same root appears in the name of Manghdyd, which, however, has not a Berber
form.

YAHYA IBN AKTHAM

Abū Muhammad Yahya Ibn Aktham Ibn Muhammad Ibn Catun Ibn Samān Ibn Mushannaj at-Tamimi al-Uṣayyidī al-Marwāzi (a member of the tribe of Uṣayyid, which was a branch of that of Tamīm, and a native of Marw) drew his descent from Aktham Ibn as-Saifi, the judge of the Arabs (1). He was learned in the law and sagacious in his judgments. Ad-Dārakutni (vol. II, p. 239) mentions him as having been one of as-Shāfi'i’s (vol. II, p. 569) disciples, and the Khattīb (vol. I, p. 75) says, in his History of Baghdad: “Yahya Ibn Aktham was untainted with heresy and followed the doc-
trine professed by the people of the Sunna (the orthodox). He heard (Traditions) “from Abd Allah Ibn al-Mubārak (vol. II, p. 12), Sofyān Ibn Oyaina (vol. I, p. 578)
“and others.”—We have already related, in our article on Sofyān, what passed between Yahya and that doctor. — “Traditions were delivered on his authority by
“Abū ʿIsa at-Tirmīdī (vol. II, p. 679) and others.”—Talha Ibn Muhammad Ibn
Jaafar (2) said of him: "Yahya Ibn Akham was a man of note in the world; his proceedings and his history are well known; neither great nor small are ignorant of his merit, his learning, the high authority which he held and the skill with which he minded his own interests and those of the khalifs and sovereigns who were his contemporaries. He possessed an extensive knowledge of jurisprudence, great literary acquirements, singular skill in the conduct of affairs (3) and the talent of surmounting difficulties." He obtained such influence over al-Mamun's mind that no one could surpass him in that khalif's favour. Al-Mamun himself was versed in the sciences; so, when he knew the character of Yahya Ibn Akham and perceived that he held the highest station in learning, he set his whole heart on him and went so far as to appoint him to the office of kadi 'l-kuddt (4) and confide to him the administration of his subjects. The vizirs charged with the direction of public affairs took no decision without submitting it to Yahya for his approval. We know of no person's having ever obtained such complete influence over the mind of his sovereign except Yahya Ibn Yahya (p. 29 of this vol.) and Ahmad Ibn Abi Duwad (vol. I. p. 61). A person, noted for speaking with great elegance, being asked which of the two, Yahya Ibn Akham or Ahmad Ibn Abi Duwad, was the better man, he answered in these terms: "Ahmad was grave with his concubine and with his daughter; Yahya was gay with his adversaries and his enemies; Yahya was untainted with heresy and followed the orthodox doctrine, whilst Ahmad was quite the contrary."—Our article on Ahmad we have said some words of his religious belief and of his partiality for the Motazelites. Yahya was heard to say: "The Koran is the word of God, and whoever says that it is created should be invited to abandon that opinion; and if he do not, his head should be struck off." The jurisconsult Abú 'l-Fadl Abd al-Aziz Ibn Ali Ibn Abd ar-Rahman al-Ushnuhi (5), surnamed Za'in ad-Din, mentions, in his treatise on the partition of hereditaments (fardid), the problems designated by surnames (6), and, amongst them, that one which is called the Mâmânian (al-Mâmâniya) and which is the fourteenth in order. It runs thus: (A person died, leaving) father and mother and two daughters. Before the inheritance was shared (between them), one of the daughters died, leaving (as survivors) the other persons specified in the problem (7). It was called the Mâmânian for the following reason: (The khalif) al-Mamun wished to find a man fit to act as a kadi and, hearing of Yahya Ibn Akham's talents, he had him sent for. Yahya, being introduced, saw clearly that the khalif disdained him on account of his low stature; on which he said:
"Commander of the faithful! if it is for my learning that you require me and not
"for my stature, ask me a question." Al-Mâmûn proposed to him the one above
mentioned and Yahya answered: "Commander of the faithful! was the person who
"died first a male or a female?" The khalif perceived immediately that he was
acquainted with the problem and appointed him kâdi. In this problem, if the first
who died was a male, the two questions (to which it gives rise) can be resolved by (di-
viding the inheritance into) fifty-four (equal parts); and if the first who died was a
female, the grandfather (of the daughters) could not inherit in the second case (that
is, on the death of the daughter), because he is a father of a mother (the maternal
grandfather); and the questions (involved in the problem) can both be resolved by (di-
viding the inheritance into) eighteen parts (8). — The Khattâb says in his History of
Baghdad: "Yahya Ibn Aktham was nominated as kâdi of Basra at the age of
"twenty years, or thereabouts. The people of that city found him so young that
"they asked each other of what age he might be. Yahya, being informed of this,
"spoke (to them) as follows: 'I am older than Attâb Ibn Asid (9) whom the Prophet
"sent to act as a kâdi in Mekka; I am older than Moâd Ibn Jabal (10), whom the
"Prophet sent to act as a kâdi for the people of Yemen; and I am older than Kaab
"Ibn Sûr (11), who was sent by Omar Ibn al-Khattâb to act as a kâdi for the people
"of Basra.' In making this answer, he produced his own justification."— The
Prophet nominated Attâb Ibn Asid kâdi of Mekka, on the taking of that city, and he
(Attâb) was then twenty-one years of age, or twenty-three, according to another state-
ment. He became a Muslim on the day in which Mekka was taken, and addressed
these words to the Prophet: "I shall be your companion and never quit you;" on
which the Prophet said to him: "Would you not consent to my appointing you over
"the family of God?" Attâb continued to act as their kâdi till he died. (The Khattâb)
adds: 'Yahya remained a year without receiving any one as a (competent) witness (12.)
"One of the amîns (syndics of corporations) then went to him and said: 'O kâdi!
"you have put a stop to all proceedings and made too long a delay (13).'—' How
"so?' said Yahya.—' Because,' said the amîn, ' you who are the kâdi will receive
"no one as a witness.' In consequence of this remonstrance, he authorised, that
"very day, seventy persons of the city to act as witnesses." Another author states
that Yahya Ibn Aktham was appointed kâdi of Basra in the year 202 (A. D. 817-8).
We have already mentioned, in the life of Hammâd Ibn Abî Hanifa (col. I. p. 469),
that Yahya succeeded Ismail, the son of that Hammâd, in the kâdiship of Basra.
Omar Ibn Shabba (vol. II. p. 375) relates in his Kitāb Akhbār il-Basra (History of Basra) that the kadishship of Basra was taken from Yahya in the year 210. Muhammad Ibn Mansūr (14) relates as follows: "We were with al-Mâmûn, on our way to Syria, when he ordered a proclamation to made declaring metâ (temporary) marriages to be lawful. On this Yahya Ibn Aktham said to me and Abu 'l-Ainâ (vol. lume III. p. 56): 'Tomorrow morning, early, go both of you (15) to him and, if you find an opportunity of speaking with him on the subject do so; if not, remain silent till I go in.' We went there and found him with a toothpick in his hand and exclaiming, in a violent passion: 'Two metâs occurred in the time of the Prophet of God and in that of Abu Bakr; and shall I forbid the practise? Who are you, vile scarabee! to dare forbid me to follow what was practised by the Prophet of God and by Abu Bakr?' On this, Abu 'l-Ainâ made me a sign and said: 'Muhammad Ibn Mansûr! that is a man who is capable of attributing to Omar Ibn al-Khattâb what he has just said; how can we speak to him (16)?' So we held our peace. Yahya Ibn Aktham then came in and sat down. We sat down also, and al-Mâmûn said to him: 'Why do I see you look so troubled?' Yahya answered: 'Commander of the faithful! it is with grief for a novelty introduced into Islamism.' — 'What novelty?' said the khalif. — 'Yahya replied: 'A proclamation has been made declaring metâ marriages lawful, declaring fornication lawful.' — 'Fornication?' exclaimed al-Mâmûn. — 'Yes; metâ is fornication!' — 'On what authority do you say so?' — 'On that of the book of Almighty God and of a declaration made by his Prophet. God said: Now are the true believers happy, and so forth to the words: and those who keep themselves from carnal knowledge of any except their wives or the (slaves) whom their right hands possess; and who so coveteth any (woman) beyond these, they are transgressors (17). Commander of the faithful! a metâ wife is she a woman possessed by the right hand (a slave)?' The khalif answered: 'No!' — 'Is she a wife who can inherit and be inherited of lawfully in the sight of God? a wife bearing legitimate children? one whose marriage is regulated by lawful conditions?' — 'The khalif answered: 'No.' — 'Then,' replied Yahya, 'whoever passes these two limits is a transgressor. Commander of the faithful! there is az-Zuhri (vol. II. p. 581) who related on the authority of Abd Allah and al-Hasan, the sons of Muhammad Ibn al-Hanafiya (vol. II. p. 574), that they heard their father declare that he heard Ali Ibn Abi Tâlib say: The Prophet ordered me to proclaim that metâ marriages were forbid-
"'den and unlawful, after he had authorised them.'—Al-Mâmûn then turned towards us and said: 'Is it well ascertained that this tradition came from az-Zuhri?'—We replied: 'It is, Commander of the faithful! a number of Traditionists have related it, such as Mâlik (vol. II. p. 545), to whom God be gracious!'—On hearing this, he exclaimed: 'God forgive me! proclaim that mêtâ marriages are for-bidden!' and a proclamation to that effect was immediately made."—The kâdi Abû Ishâk Ismaîl Ibn Ishâk Ibn Ismaîl Ibn Hammâd Ibn Zaid Ibn Dirhim al-Azdi (18), who was a doctor of Malike jurisprudence and an inhabitant of Basra, said, in speaking of Yahya Ibn Aktham and extolling his merit: "'He one day did to Isla-mism a service the like of which no man ever rendered to it before.'—Yahya's works on jurisprudence are excellent, but so voluminous that they are neglected by readers. He composed some treatises on the fundamentals of jurisprudence and published a work against the people of Irâk (the Haneefites), to which he gave the title of at-Tanbîth (the warning). He had frequent discussions with Dâwûd Ibn Ali (vol. I. p. 501). When he was a kâdi, a man went up to him and the following dialogue ensued:

'May God preserve you! how much should I eat?'—Yahya replied: 'Enough to get over hunger and not enough to attain satiety.'—'How long may I laugh?'—'Till your face brightens, but without raising your voice.'—'How long should I weep?'—'Weeping should never fatigue you, if it be through fear of God.'—'What actions of mine should I conceal?'—'As many as you can.'—'What are the actions which I should do openly?'—'Those which may serve as examples to good and virtuous men whilst they secure you from public reprobation.'—On this, the man exclaimed: 'May God preserve us from words which abide when deeds have passed away! (19).’—Yahya was the most acute of men and the most skilful in the management of affairs. I read in a miscellany that Ahmad Ibn Abi Khâlid al-Ahwal (vol. I. p. 20), al-Mêmûn's vizir, was standing, one day, in the presence of his sovereign when Yahya came forth from a closet to which he had retired and stood (also in the khalif's presence). 'Come up,' said al-Mêmûn. He went up and sat with him on the sofa, but at the farthest end of it. Ahmad then said: 'Commander of the faithful! the kâdi Yahya is for me a friend to whom I confide all that concerns me, but he is changed from what he used to be for me.' On this, al-Mêmûn said: 'O Yahya! the ruin of a sovereign's prosperity is caused by the misintelligence which arises between his ministers. No one can equal you or Ahmad in my esteem; what...
"then is the motive of this mutual distrust?" Yahya replied: "Commander of the faithful! I declare, by Allah! that my feelings towards Ahmad are even more friendly than what he said; but he, seeing the rank which I hold in your favour, fears that, one day or other, I may turn against him and disserve him in your mind. I prefer telling this to you openly, so that he may be relieved from his apprehensions, and I declare that, even if he injured me to the very utmost, "I should never speak ill of him in your presence."—"Is that the fact?" said the khalif to Ahmad. He replied: "It is so." Al-Mâmmân then exclaimed: "God protect me from you both! I never met with men more shrewd and more intelligent than you."—No vice could be reproached to Yahya except a certain inclination which was attributed to him and of which he had the reputation (20); but God best knows how he may have been in that respect. The Khatîb (vol. I. p. 75) states, in his History of Baghdad, that Ahmad Ibn Hanbal (vol. I. p. 44), being informed of the imputations cast on Yahya Ibn Aktham's character, exclaimed: "Good God! who can say such a thing?" and denied the fact in the most positive manner. It is related, moreover, that the jealousy borne to Ahmad was excessive.—He was acquainted with a great number of sciences and, when he had a conversation with any one and found him skilled in jurisprudence, he questioned him on points relative to the Traditions and, if he discovered that he knew traditions by heart, he would propose to him some grammatical difficulty; then, if he found that he was acquainted with grammar, he would question him on scholastic theology; and all that for the purpose of confounding the man and bringing him to a stand. A very intelligent native of Khorâsân, who knew by heart many Traditions, went to see him one day and was drawn by him into a discussion. When Yahya discovered that he was versed in a variety of sciences, he asked him if he knew any Tradition which had served as a fundamental principle of jurisprudence. The other replied: "I learned from Shâīrîk (vol. I. p. 622) that Abû Ishâk (vol. II. p. 392) told him that al-Hârith (21) related to him that Ali caused a pederast to be lapidated." Yahya, on hearing this, stopped short and addressed not another word to the man. The Khatîb then relates that Yahya received a visit from the two sons of Massada (22), who were extremely handsome. Whe he saw them walking across the court of his house, he recited extemporaneous lines:

O you who have left your tents to visit me! may God grant you both long life with his
biographical dictionary.

blessing! Why have you come to me when I am unable to do either the lawful deed or the deed forbidden. It saddens me to see you stand before me and to have nothing to offer you except fair words.

He then made them sit down before him and kept them in amusing chat till they went away. It is said that he was dismissed from the kâdi ship on account of these verses (23). I read in a miscellany that Yahya Ibn Aktham was jesting, one day, with al-Hasan Ibn Wahb, the same person of whom we have spoken in the life of his brother Sulaimân (vol. I. p. 596), and who was then a boy. In playing with him, he tapped him on the cheek and, perceiving that he was displeased, he recited these lines:

O full moon, whose cheek I tapped and who, highly offended, turned away from me in anger!
If a scratch displease you or a bite, wear always, my master! a veil (to conceal your face).
Let not those locks appear as a temptation, nor let their ringlets cover your cheeks, lest you slay the wretched, or tempt the anchorites, or leave the kâdi of the Moslems in torment.

Ahmad Ibn Yûnus ad-Dabbi related as follows: "The kâtib Ibn Zaidûn, who was an extremely handsome youth, was writing under the dictation of the kâdi Yahyà Ibn Aktham, when the latter pinched his cheek. He felt much confused, blushed and threw away the pen. ‘Take up your pen,’ said Yahyà, ‘and write down what I am going to say to you.’ He then dictated to him" — the above mentioned verses. — The following anecdote was related by Ismail Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ismail as-Saffâr (24): "I heard Abû ‘l-Aínâ say, at one of Abû ‘l-Abbâs al-Mубarrad’s (vol. III. page 31) sittings (or conferences): ‘I was at one of Abû Aâsim an-... Nabil’s (25) sittings, and Abû Bakr, the son of Yahya Ibn Aktham, began to pull about a young slave who was there. The boy cried out; Abû Aâsim asked who was that man? and, being informed that it was Abû Bakr, the son of Yahyà Ibn Aktham, he said: If he be guilty of theft, his father hath been also guilty of ‘theft heretofore (26).’ This anecdote is given by the Kâtib, in his History of Baghdad. The same author relates, in that work, that al-Mâmûn asked Yahyà who was the author of this verse:

A kâdi who considers fornication as meriting corporal chastisement, and thinks a worse crime no

Yahyà replied: "Does the Commander of the faithful not know whom it is?" —
"I do not" said the khalif. "Well" said Yahya, "it was uttered by that pro-
fligate, Ahmad Ibn Abi Noaim, the same who said:

"I think that tyranny will never cease as long as the nation is governed by an Abbaside.

The narrator says that al-Mâmûn was confounded, and that, after a moment's
silence, he gave orders to have Ahmad Ibn Abi Noaim banished to Sind. These two
verses belong to a piece which I shall give here:

Fortune, which reduced me to silence, now permits me to speak of the afflictions which have
kept me so long astounded. Cursed be Fortune for exalting some men and depressing others!
May that nation never prosper,—that nation which deserves to suffer lengthened adversity and
lasting perdition!—if it consent to undergo the administration of Yahya, of a man who is
incapable of ruling it; a kâdi who considers fornication as meriting corporal chastisement and
thinks a worse crime no harm. He would judge in favour of his smooth-faced fondling and give
sentence against Jarîr and Abbas (27). God protect us! justice hath disappeared and little
honesty is to be found with mankind. Our emir takes bribes; our judge acts like the people
of Lot, and our head (the khalif) is the worst of rulers. Did religion prosper and flourish,
every just measure would be taken for (the welfare of) the people; but I am sure that tyranny
will never cease, as long as the nation is governed by an Abbaside.

I am inclined to think that this piece contained more verses than what are inserted
here, but these are all which the Khatib gives.—The Amâli (or dictations) drawn up
by Abû Bakr Muhammad Ibn al-Kâsim al-Anbâri (vol. III. page 53) contains an
anecdote which I shall now insert: "The kâdi Yahya Ibn Aktham said to a person
"whom he admitted into his familiarity and with whom he was accustomed to jest:
"Tell me what you heard the people say of me."—The other replied: 'They say
"nothing of you but what is good.'—Nay', said the kâdi, 'I do not make you this
"question for the purpose of obtaining from you a certificate of morality.' The
"man then answered: 'I never heard them accuse the kâdi of any thing except
"an irregular inclination.' Yahya laughed and said: 'I ask God's pardon for
"all the sins of which I am accused except that which you have mentioned (28),
"(for I never committed it).'"—Abû 'l-Faraj al-Ispahâni (vol. II. page 249)
relates, in his Kitâb al-Aghâni, a number of similar anecdotes concerning Yahya.
He says also: "Al-Mâmûn, having frequently heard imputations of this
"nature cast upon Yahya, resolved on putting him to the test and invited
"him to a private interview. He then said to a young mamlûk (white slave) who
"was a Khazarian by nation and remarkably handsome: 'You alone shall
attending us, and, when I go out, do not leave the room.’ When they met in
the sitting-room and had conversed together for some time, al-Mâmûn retired as
if on some necessary occasion and, having left the slave with Yahya, he concealed
himself in a place whence he could see what would happen. The slave, whom
he had told to jest and make sport with Yahya, did what he was ordered, and the
khalif well knew that Yahya would not dare to take liberties with the boy.
Having then heard Yahya say: ‘Were it not for you (who seduced us), we
should have been true believers!’ (Koran, sur. 34, verse 30), he came into the
room and recited these verses:

‘We hoped to see justice made manifest, but that hope was followed by disappointment.
How can the world and its inhabitants prosper, if the chief kâdi of the Muslims acts like the
people of Lot?’

The kâdhîb Abû Hakîma Râshid Ibn Ishâk Ibn Râshid, who was the author of these
verses, composed a great number of pieces on Yahya.—In the article on al-Mâmûn which al-Masûdi has given in his Murûd ad-Dahab, will be found some anec-
dotes concerning Yahya; we abstain from inserting them here because they are of
the same kind as those just mentioned.—A story is told of Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyân
which greatly resembles the one we have just related of al-Mâmûn’s asking who was
the author of a certain verse and of Yahya’s replying by another verse taken from
the same poem. When Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyân the Omaiyide was laid up with the
malady of which he died, he suffered so greatly that his life was dispaired of, and
one of Ali Ibn Abi Tâlib’s sons, whose name I do not recollect, went to make him
a visit. Moawia rallied all his strength and sat up in his bed, in order to receive
him and not give him the gratification of seeing how ill he was. Being too weak
to hold himself up, he at length leaned back upon a pile of cushions and recited
this verse:

I rally all my strength, so that those who are ready to rejoice at my sufferings may see that I
am a man whom misfortune cannot overcome.

The son of Ali immediately rose from his seat and went out, reciting this line:

When death grasps you in its clutches, you will find all your amulets of no avail.

The persons present admired greatly this repartee. The verses here mentioned
are taken from a long kasīdah which was composed by Abū Duwaib Khuwailid Ibn Khālid al-Hudali (the Hudailite) (29) on the death of his sons, five of whom were carried off, in one and the same year, by the plague. They had fled from their native place with their father and were going to Egypt. Abū Duwaib died on his way to that country, or, by another account, on his way to Ifrikiya (North Africa), whether he was accompanying Abū Allah Ibn az-Zubair.—I have since read, in the ninth chapter of Ibn al-Habbāriya’s (vol. III. p. 150) Falak al-Ma’dinī, that al-Hussain, the son of Ali Ibn Abi Tālib, went to visit Moawia during his illness, and that the latter said to his attendants: “Prop me up (with cushions)” and then recited the verse of Abū Duwaib’s, applying it to his own case. Al-Hussain saluted (on entering) and then repeated the other verse. God knows if this be exact. Abū Bakr Ibn Dāwūd az-Zāhirī (vol. II. page 662) relates the same anecdote in his Kitāb az-Zuhara, and attributes the reply to al-Hasan, the son of Ali. I must here observe that neither Ibn al-Habbāriya nor az-Zāhirī mention that Moawia was in his last illness when this happened, and such could not possibly have been the case, because al-Hasan died before Moawia, neither could al-Hussain have been present at Moawia’s death, for he was then in Hijāz and Moawia breathed his last in Damascus.—I since found, towards the beginning of the work entitled Kitāb at-Tadzi (book of consolations) and composed by Abū l-Abbās al-Mubarrad (vol. III. page 31), that this scene passed between al-Husain and Moawia. It was probably from this work that Ibn al-Habbāriya took his account of it.—An anecdote of a similar kind is related of Akil, the son of Ali Ibn Abi Tālib: Having abandoned his father, he joined the party of Moawia, who received him with great kindness and treated him with the highest honour; but that was merely for the purpose of annoying Ali. After the murder of Ali, Moawia remained sole possessor of the supreme authority and, finding Akil’s presence becoming irksome, he began to say in his presence things that might offend him and oblige him to go away. One day, at a levee where all the most eminent of the Syrian (Arabs) were assembled, Moawia said to them: “Do you know who was the Abū “Lahab of whom God (in his Koran, surat 111) spoke in these terms: The hands “of Abū Lahab shall perish?” The Syrians answered that they did not. “Well,” said he, “Abū Lahab was the paternal uncle of that man,” pointing to Akil. He had no sooner pronounced these words that Akil said: “Do you know who was Abū Lahab’s wife, of whom God said: And his wife also, the bearer of faggots, having on her neck a rope made of palm-tree fibres?” They answered that they did not:
"Well", said he, "she was the paternal aunt of that man", pointing to Moawiya. The fact was that Omm Jamil, Moawiya's aunt and the daughter of Harb Ibn Omaiyah Ibn Abd Shams Ibn Abd Manaf, was the wife of Abû Lahab Abd al-Ozza and the person who is indicated in this surat of the Koran. It was really a silencing answer.

—An anecdote similar to the foregoing is told of a certain king who laid siege to a city. He had with him an immense army of cavalry and infantry, with provisions in abundance. He sent a letter to the lord of the city, advising him to surrender the place or else he should be attacked. In this letter he spoke of his numerous troops and the great quantity of munitions which he had brought with him, and in it he inserted this passage of the Koran: *Until they came to the valley of the ants; and an ant said: 'O ants! enter into your dwellings lest Solomon and his forces tread you under foot and perceive it not'*(30)." The lord of the city, having received this epistle, pondered over it for some time and then read it to his officers. "Who", said he, "can return to that a proper answer?" One of the secretaries replied: "Let these words be written to him: *And he smiled, laughing at its words"* (31). This answer was approved of by all present.—An anecdote of a similar kind is thus related by Ibn Rashik al-Kairawani (*vol. I*, page 384), in his *Anmūdaj*: Abd Allah Ibn Ibrahim Ibn al-Muthanna at-Tusi, generally known by the surname of Ibn al-Muwaddib, belonged to a family of al-Mahdiya (32) and was a native of Kairawân. He had some reputation as a poet but led a wandering life, being always in search of minerals and the philosopher's stone. His manner of living was very miserable and parcimonious, as he spent (*in chemical operations*) whatever he was able to gain. Having left his country with the intention of going to Sicily, he was taken prisoner, at sea, by the Christians (*Rûm*) and remained a long time in captivity. Thika tad-Dawla Yusuf Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Muhammad Ibn al-Husain al-Kudai, the prince of Sicily, having concluded a truce with the Christians, obtained that all the captives should be sent to him. Ibn al-Muwaddib, who was one of the number, recited to Thika-tad-Dawla a poem in which he extolled his merit and thanked him for what he had done. Not receiving, in return, a gift adequate to his expectations and being inordinately desirous (*of obtaining money*), he spoke (*to that emir on the subject* and was most importunate (*in his demands*) (33). At that time, he was living concealed in the house of an alchemist with whom he was acquainted, and remained there a long while. Having then gone out (*one night*) in a state of intoxication, with the intention of purchasing sugar-plums (*to eat with his
wine), he was arrested before he was aware and carried before the chief of the shurta (police guards), by whom he was conducted to the governor. "You good-for-nothing fellow!" said the latter, "what is this I hear of you?" The poet replied: "A pack of lies! may God protect our lord the emir!" The prince then asked him who it was that said in one his poems:

The man nobly born is always plagued by scoundrels (34).

The poet replied: "It was the same person who said:

"The enmity of poets is the worst of acquisitions."

The prince remained silent for some time and then ordered him a sum of one hundred rubdis (35); but, fearing that he might again be irritated against him and punish after pardoning, he expelled him from the city.—The lines cited here are the second hemistichs of two verses belonging to that kastda of al-Mutanabbi's (vol. I. p. 102) which rhymes in na and which he composed in praise of Badr Ibn Ammar. It begins thus:

Love takes away from the tongue the faculty of speech, and the complaints which give most solace to a lover are those which he utters aloud.

It is a well-known poem. The verse to which the first hemistich belongs is as follows:

Impose silence on that adviser who, in accusing me, leads you into error. The man nobly born is always plagued by scoundrels.

The second verse is this:

The complots of fools turn against themselves, and the enmity of poets is the worst of acquisitions.

Having mentioned the name of Thika-tad-Dawla, we shall give here a poem composed in his praise by Abü Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Muhammad at-Tanukhi, generally known by the appellation of Ibn Kādi Mila (the son of the kādi of Mila). The poet recited it to him on the festival of the Sacrifice. This kastda, which is so remarkable for its originality, was not to be found complete, but I at length discovered
a copy of it written on the cover of a book. Till then, I knew only a part of it and
never heard of any person's knowing more. As it is so fine a poem and so rare, I
have decided on giving it here:

Love and my afflicted heart cause my tears to flow, whilst my eyes gather (a harvest of) that
passionate desire which is imposed (on every lover). True it is that I am called towards that
object which I wished to avoid and from whose abode I had departed; it is a soft-voiced gazelle
(maiden) adorned with ear-rings who invites me. Hers are the large, dark eyes, the languishing
glances, (the waist so slender that it leaves) the girdle empty, and the bracelet holding firmly
to the arm). The brackish water flowing from her country is (for me) sweet-tasted, and its
cold winds shed genial mildness. What makes me despair of our meeting are the dangerous
grounds which intervene and in which (even) the nocturnal breeze (loses its force and) dies.
The jealous spy abstains from sleep lest he should see, in a dream, (my) union effected (with
her whom I love). He passes the day regretting that, though our dwelling-place was near
(to him), his inattention prevented him from seeing what had passed. The atmosphere gives
us to expect a thunder-cloud, pouring down its showers and whose lightnings, like yellow serpents,
glance around. When it appeared and the thunder howled, and the eyelids of the black cloud
shed their waters, I was like a man stung by a scorpion: the thunder was the incantation of
the serpent-charmer, and theizzling rain was the saliva which he blew from his mouth; so
great were the sufferings I endured. By that was recalled to my mind the recollection of (my
beloved) Raiya and of what I had forgotten; I now remember (all), but that redoubles my affliction.

When we met in the sacred territory (of Mekka), Raiya rejoiced our hearts by the cry
of labbaika (here I am at your call); our camels then roamed freely; I looked at her, whilst
the humps of the camels were dropping blood (36), and she said (to her female companions):
"Does any of you know that young man? His gazing at me so long makes me uneasy. When
we are in march, he walks on a line with us, and when the camels' feet cease to move, he
also stops." I then said to her two companions: "Tell her that I am smitten with love
for her;" and they replied: "We shall manage (to do so) cautiously."—"Say also to her:
"O Omm Amr! is not this (the valley of) Mina? Wishes made in the vale of Mina are
never disappointed (takhlafo). It was for me an omen (tafīlato) of your fulfilling your
latest promise, when you let me see, as if by accident, the tips of your fingers dyed with
henna. In Arafat, I find what informs (me) of a favour I shall obtain; that of your heart's
inclining towards me. The (traces left by the) blood of the victims will always serve to
guide us, even when my reason is absorbed in converse with love. The kissing of the sacred
stone will announce to me the approach of good fortune and of a time favorable to our love." They bore (her) my message and she said, in smiling: "The words of augury are deceptive.

On my life! I did not tell you both that he arrays his discourse in the embroidered robe of
eloquence? Trust as little as you can to his insidious words and say (to him): 'Thou shalt
know, to-day, which of us is the better augur. You hoped, in (the valley of) Mina, to
obtain your wish, and, when in that vale, you injured my reputation. Our pilgrim's
sacred garment has announced that we are forbidden to meet and that I shall refuse to grant
what you desire. There (is my answer). And, when I cast the pebbles, that should have
informed you of my removal, by a distant journey, from the dwellings where you reside.
'Take care lest I disdain you, on the night of the departure; it will be quickly done, but
the persons skilled in augury are few.'" Never did I see two such devoted lovers as we
are; but tongues are sharp and have a double edge. Were it not for a sweet-voiced and slender-waisted maiden, for the brilliant whiteness of her teeth, for her large, dark eyes and her long eyelashes, the passionate lover would recover (his senses), he that could not close his eyes would enjoy sleep, he that despairs would hope, and he that was sick would cease (to suffer). Censurorous females sometimes reproach me for lavishing my wealth on those who awaited my gifts in silent expectation, and not on my companions who asked (them) with importunity. They said: "When you have spent all your money and are in want, who will give you more?" And my answer was: "Yūsuf! that illustrious descendant of Kūdā, whose generosity has sent to "grant in abundance that which calls forth gratitude." Whenever a cloud (of beneficence) which promised abundant showers; frustrated our hopes, we found that the rains of his bounty never disappointed us. When he and other princes toil to acquire glory, he succeeds easily, but they must labour hard and only obtain the gleanings. Always vigilant, he combines mildness with energy; his hands procure him what he wants and protect him against what he fears. He is a sword drawn to strike the enemies of the faith, and a protecting curtain lowered down over those who fear God. When in March, two armies accompany him: his prudence and his troops; he has for companions two swords: firm resolution and the sharp-edged steel. Always ready to chastise those who offend him, he regulates the actions of fate by his decisions. His foresight discovers that which no other can perceive, and arranges matters which could not be settled by the spear. May God protect him who guards, by his vigilance, religion's sacred ground and who protects the hills of Islamism even in the darkest night! (God protect) him who gives full career to his promises in the arena of glory and who regulates his threats conformably to the obligations of justice! him who cuts his enemies to pieces whilst their chiefs take to flight before the swords which fall upon their heads! He directed against them an army which levelled the earth by the very sound of its march; and the hills were unable to sustain the weight of all the arrows which oppressed them. His lances, in the brightness of the morning, were like serpents gliding through the thick vapours of the mirage; the brightness of his swords lighted up the darkness, and clouds of dust obscured the day. The light of the sun was hidden by the dust, but the action of his swords in striking foes men's necks was not interrupted. Every year you send against them an army, charged to claim from them (what you exact), and it obtains satisfaction at the point of the spear. When they concealed the wound which one year had inflicted and were recovered from their sufferings, you began again to open that wound (تنزف). How many (chiefs), with faces covered by the twisted braids of their hair, whom you left (on the field of battle), with their necks no longer covered (akshafo) by the beard of the chin (عيب). (Each of them) was a sword which cut deeply into the object on which it fell; yet they fled, and you may now see shortened those (bodies) which were so long. By my life! you transgressed against God by imploiring his favour (for you possessed it already), and you rendered services of which God (alone) knows the number. You pursued them for the sake of your people, till they were scattered far and wide; you invited them to the faith until they became orthodox believers (tahanniṣṭ). O Thika tal-Mulk! you whose empire is an arrow fledged and pointed for piercing the hearts of the enemy! may you enjoy this festival of which you are the ornament and which borrows from your brilliant qualities its noblest epithets. The (victim with) its sides marked, appeared in brilliant array, as if its back was covered with the variegated gauze of Irāk. After a year's absence, it (this festival) comes to visit you, because it longed to see you and looked anxiously forward to this day of meeting. You gave to it your glory to serve it for a collar and for ear-rings; and it thus appears before us decked in rings and jewels. The presence of your son Ja'far renders this day doubly fortunate; how admi-
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

rable the festival which enjoys the presence of two kings! May you never cease to be asked for favors and to grant them, to inspire hopes and to fulfil them, to be called on when misfortunes are impending and to avert them (37).

Here ends the *kastda*.—Thika tad-Dawla had a son named Tāj ad-Dawla Jaafar, who was versed in literature and had a talent for poetry. A well known piece of verse was composed by him on two pages, one of whom was dressed in red silk and the other in black. Here it is:

I see two rising moons (*faces*), each borne on a branch (*a slender body*) and in just proportion; they are arrayed in robes one of which is tinted like the cheek and the other like the pupil of the eye. Here, behold the sun in the red sky of evening, and there, the moon in the shades of nightfall.

These verses were composed by him in the year 527 (38).—On the tenth of Muharram, 215 (9th March, A. D. 830), al-Māmūn arrived in Mīsra (*Old Cairo*) and set out again, towards the end of the month of Safar (April). The kādi Yahya Ibn Aktham, whom he had taken with him and appointed to the kādiship of Mīsra, held that place during three days and then departed with his sovereign. It was for this reason that Ibn Zūlāk (*vol. I. p. 388*) has inserted his name in the History of the kādis of Egypt. It has been handed down that Yahya related the following extraordinary fact: "When I was in ar-Rūsāfa (*vol. I. p. 46*), said he, a man, who was a grandfather in the "fifth degree, claimed, at my tribunal, the inheritance of the grandson of his great "grandson (39)."—Abd as-Samad Ibn Abī Amr al-Muaddal Ibn Ghailān Ibn al-Muhārib Ibn al-Bohtori al-Abdi (*vol. I. p. 354*), the celebrated poet, went frequently to visit the kādi Yahya and used to drop in at his levees. One day, having found great difficulty in approaching him and undergone some humiliation, he ceased his visits. Being then pressed by his wife to renew them, he answered her in these terms:

She would oblige me to disgrace myself, thinking my dishonour a trifle in comparison with her advantage. "Ask favours," said she, "from Yahya Ibn Aktham;" and I replied: "Ask them "from the lord of Yahya Ibn Aktham."

This kādi continued to pass through many vicissitudes of fortune till the reign of al-Mutawakkil ala-Allah. When the kādi Muhammad, the son of the kādi Ahmad Ibn Abī Duwād (*vol. I. p. 66*) was dismissed from office, Yahya was appointed to suc-
ceed him and, on that occasion, the khalif invested him with five robes of honour. In the year 240 (A. D. 854), al-Mutawakkil deposed him, seized on his riches and nominated, in his place, a member of the Abbaside family named Jaafar Ibn Abd al-Wahid Ibn Jaafar Ibn Sulaiman Ibn Ali Ibn Abd Allah Ibn al-Abbas al-Hashemi. Jaafar’s secretary then went to Yahya and said: ‘Surrender up to me the administration with which you are charged.’ Yahya replied: ‘Not till two creditable witnesses shall declare that the Commander of the faithful sent me orders to do so.’ The administration was taken from him by force, and al-Mutawakkil, who was greatly incensed against him, seized on all his estates and ordered him to remain a prisoner in his own house. Some time after, he (Yahya) set out to make the pilgrimage and took his sister with him, as he intended making a residence in the holy city. Having then learned that al-Mutawakkil had forgiven him, he renounced the project of settling (at Mekka) and departed for Irak but, on reaching ar-Rabada, he breathed his last. This took place on Friday, the 15th of Zu ‘l-Hijja, 242 (14 April, A. D. 857), or, according to another statement, on the first day of the following year (30th April, A. D. 857). He was interred at that place, having then attained the age of eighty-three years.—Abu Abd Allah al-Husain Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Said related as follows: ‘The kadi Yahya Ibn Aktham was, for me, a sincere friend; he loved me and I loved him. When he died, I wished that I might see him in a dream, so that I might ask him how God had treated him. And, one night, I had a dream in which I saw him and asked him that question. He replied: ‘God has forgiven me, but he reprimanded me and said: ‘O Yahya! thy mind was alloyed (and turned) from me during thy dwelling in the world.’ I answered: ‘Lord! I place my reliance on a Tradition which was related to me by Abu Moawia ad-Darir (vol. I. p. 187), who had learned it from al-Aamash (vol. I. p. 587), who had heard it from Abu Sallih (40) who had heard Abu Huraira (vol. I. p. 570) say that the Prophet of God pronounced these words: ‘God said: I should be ashamed to punish in the fire a grey-headed man.’ On this, God said to me: ‘Yahya! I pardon thee; my Prophet said the truth, but yet thy mind was turned from me during thy abode in the world.’’’ This relation is given by Abu ‘l-Kasim al-Kushairi in his Risala (41).

—‘Aktam means a corpulent man or sated with food. This name is sometimes written Aktam, but, in both cases, the signification is the same.” So says the author of the Muhkam (vol. II. p. 272).—Katam and Samdn take the vowels here indicated.—I consulted a great number of books and of persons versed in this art (ety-
mology) respecting the word *Mushannaj* but could obtain no certain information about it. I then met with a correct copy of the Khatib's History of Baghdad, which had been written out under the dictation of a master who knew the work by heart, and I read there that *Mushannaj* should be written as here indicated. I since found the same pronunciation given in Abd al-Ghâni Ibn Said's *al-Mukhtalif wa 'l-Mâtalif* (vol. II. p. 169).—Usayyidi means belonging to the tribe of *Usayyid*, a branch of that of Tamim. Usayyid, the son of Amr, the son of Tamim, was the progenitor of this family.—We have already spoken of the relative adjectives *Tammi* and *Marwazi* (vol. I. p. 7).—The village of ar-Rabada is a dependancy of Medina. It lies on the great pilgrim road and is a regular halting-place for their caravans. It was to this place that Abû Durr al-Ghifârî was banished by Uthmân Ibn Affân (42). He remained there till his death; his tomb is still to be seen and is often visited (by pious pilgrims).—Mîla is a small town in one of the districts of Irîkiya; but God knows best (43)—The kâdi Jaafar Ibn Abû al-Wâhid bore the surname of Abû Abd Allah and died in the year 258 (A. D. 871-2), or, by another account, in 268 or 269.

(1) Aktham Ibn as-Saîfi, a chief of the Tamim tribe, was so highly renowned for his wisdom, that the Arabs of all the tribes used to take him for judge, in their contests. He died towards the fifth year of Muhammad's preaching, having then attained a very advanced age. — (See Mr. Caussin de Perceval's *Essai sur l'histoire des Arabes*, t. II. p. 879; Ibn al-Jawzi; Ibn Duraid.)

(2) Talha Ibn Muhammad Ibn Jaafar was one of the witnesses who signed the Khalif al-Mutt's (الطمع) abdication. This took place A. H. 868 (A. D. 974). — (Najâh.)

(3) The Arabic word is المعرضة, but one of the MSS. has المعارة. If this reading be adopted, the meaning is *speaking with elegance*.

(4) The kâdi 'l-kadîd (kadi of kadis or lord chief justice), resided in the capital and had all the other kadis under his jurisdiction.

(5) Abû 'l-Fadîl Abû al-Asf Ibn Ali al-Ushnuhi, a doctor of Shâiffin jurisprudence, was a native of Ushnuh, a village near Arbeia, in Adarbajân. He studied the law at Baghdad and composed, on the *farâid*, or partition of inheritances, a work of great repute. He afterwards returned to Ushnuh where he died in the first fifth of the sixth century (A. H. 501-529; A. D. 1107-1126). — (Tabâkit or-Shâiffin; ms. of the Bibl. imp. anciens fonds, n° 861.)

(6) In the science which treats of the partition of inheritances, some problems occur which are so remarkable that each of them is distinguished by a particular name; such, for instance, as the *Akdrion*, the *Gharriyan*, the *Malikian*, the *Himdrion*, etc. On this subject the reader may consult the 6th volume of Dr. Peron's translation of Sidi Khalîl's treatise on Malikite jurisprudence. This work is included in the collection entitled *Exploration scientifique de l'Algérie*.

(7) The parents and the two daughters were, each of them, entitled to a certain portion of the inheritance;
but, as one of the daughters died before the partition, her share was to be divided among the survivors. In this case, two separate calculations must be made.

(8) For the rules of inheritance partitions, see Dr. Perron’s Sldi Khallî, vol. VI; D’Ohsson’s Tableau général de l’Empire Ottoman, V, p. 388, and the Note sur les successions musulmanes, which was drawn up by Mr. Solvet and inserted in Mr. Bresnier’s Christomathie arabe.

(9) Abū Ibn Asld, a member of the Omayyide family, was appointed governor of Mecca by Muhammad. He died A. H. 13 (A. D. 634), the same day as Abū Bakr. — (Kildb al-Madrîj.)

(10) Moâd Ibn Jabal, of the tribe of Khazraj, was a native of Medîna and one of Muhammad’s companions. He died A. H. 18 (A. D. 639), aged thirty-eight years. — (Madrîj.)

(11) Kaab Ibn Sûr belonged to the tribe of Asd. He joined the party of Aâisha and lost his life at the battle of the Camel, A. H. 36 (A. D. 656). — (Madrîj.)

(12) According to the Mu’âlim law of testimony, none but persons noted for integrity and piety can be received either as witnesses in a court of justice or as witnesses to bonds and deeds.

(13) I read ترثت.

(14) This person is not known to the translator.

(15) The vulgar and incorrect form ٌغدًا, employed here instead of ٌغدًا, is worthy of remark.

(16) The text of this passage is corrupt. The edition of Bûhâk inserts رجل and قال before and two manuscripts read ٌكلمٌٌ and ٌكلمٌٌ instead of ٌكلمٌٌ. I believe the right reading to be ٌكلمٌٌ ٌكلمٌٌ, and, as such, I adopt it. The reading ٌكلمٌٌ ٌكلمٌٌ instead of ٌكلمٌٌ ٌكلمٌٌ is given by the edition of Bûhâk and one of the manuscripts.

(17) These verses are to be found in the beginning of the twenty-third sârat of the Korân.

(18) Ismâll Ibn Ishâk was appointed kâdi of Baghdad A. H. 262 (A. D. 873-c). — (Nuyûm.)

(19) The reading followed here is تقول قاطئ ويعل ظانٌ, which phrase signifies: “Word abiding "and deed transitory.”

(20) This innuendo is more than sufficiently explained, a little farther on.

(21) Al-Hârîth Ibn Kais was one of the Tâbînî, or disciples of Muhammad’s companions.

(22) One of these brothers was perhaps the Amr Ibn Maâdah whose life is given in this work, vol. II, p. 410.

(23) These verses have most certainly a double meaning; the expressions employed in them being very equivocal.


(25) Abû Asîm ad-Dahlîk as-Shaibani, surnamed an-Nabîl (the genius), was a traditionist of the best authority and a native of Basra. He died A. H. 212 (A. D. 827-8), or 213, at the age of ninety-one years. — (Nuyûm; Tabâkît al-Hufûz.)

(26) This is an application of the seventy-seventh verse of the twelfth sârat of the Korân, which refers to Joseph and Benjamin. Abû Asîm substituted in it the words his father in place of one of his brothers. For the theft committed by Joseph, see Sale’s note on this verse.

(27) This verse seems to mean that the kâdi would prefer the society of a vile minion to that of poets such as Jarîr (vol. I, p. 284) and al-Ashâb Ibn al-Ahnaîf (vol. II, p. 7). The whole piece is very obscure, as it contains expressions and allusions which can only be explained by conjecture.

(28) The true reading is: "ألمشهور عندي".
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

(90) Abû Duwaib Khuwailid Ibn Khâlid was a member of the tribe of Hudayl. He went to Mekka, with the intention of seeing Muhammad but, on arriving, he found him dead. In the khilafat of Omar he accompanied an expedition sent against the Greeks and died in that campaign. According to another statement, he died on his way to Mekka, when Othmân was khâlif. He was said to have been the best poet of the tribe of Hudayl, which was also the most poetical of all the Arabian tribes.—(Suyûti's Shawâhid il-Mughni.)

(90) Kordm, sûr. 97, verse 16.

(91) This is the continuation of the foregoing verse.

(92) Al-Mahdiya is a seaport town in the province of Tunis.

(93) This passage may also signify: He discoursed (on alchemy) and searched with great ardour (the philosopher's stone).

(94) Literally: by sons of fornication.

(95) I can discover nothing precise respecting the value of the coin called rubdi; which word, in Arabic, means a quadruple.

(96) Literally: were like noses dropping blood.—The camels intended to be sacrificed were marked with an arrow stuck into the hump.

(97) We do not possess another text of this very obscure poem; so that in many passages, I have been obliged to correct and translate by conjecture. It has been published, with a great number of various readings, by Mr. Amari, in his Bibliotheca Arabo-Sicula, p. 110 et seq.

(98) This date is false. The emir Tâj ad-Dawla succeeded to his father Thika tad-Dawla, A. H. 888 (A. D. 998), and abdicated on 410 (A. D. 1019-90). It is not probable that he could have composed this madrigal even in the year 427.

(99) By the Muslim law, the nearest surviving male ascendant has a right to a certain share in the property left by his descendant.

(100) Abû Sâlih as-Sammân, named also Dhakwân and surnamed az-Zayîât, was a muwatta of the tribe of Ghatafân and an eminent Traditionist. He died at Medina, A. H. 101 (A. D. 719-20).—(Nujûm, Hujjâta.)


(102) Abû Durâr Jundab Ibn as-Sakan al-Ghifârî, one of the earliest converts to Islamism, died at ar-Râbâda, A. H. 28 (A. D. 658-9).—(Nujûm, Mâdrîf.)

(103) The town of Mîla lies 18 or 20 miles N. W. of Constantina.

YAHYA IBN MOAD

Abû Zakariya Yahya Ibn Moâd ar-Râzî (a native of Rai and) a celebrated preacher, was one of the men of the path (vol. I. p. 259). Abû 'l-Kâsim al-Kushairi (vol. II. p. 152) mentions him in his (celebrated treatise, the) Risâla and includes him in the
number of the Shaikhs (the most eminent Sufi doctors). "He was," says he, "the only man, in his day, who had no model but himself; he was most eloquent on the subject of hope (in God's mercy); particularly when he discoursed on the knowing (of God)." He went to Balkh where he resided for some time and then returned to Naisapur, where he died. One of Yahya's sayings was: "How can he be abstemious (from worldly enjoyments) who is without the fear of God? respect that which is not thine and use with great moderation that which is thine." He used sometimes to say: "Hunger is a spiritual exercise for those who aspire (to the knowledge of God), a trial for those who are turning (unto God), a regular practise for those who abstain (from the enjoyments of this world) and a favour granted to those who have acquired the knowledge (of God's perfection). Solitude is the fit companion for the sincerely devout; missing the opportunity (of obtaining salvation) is worse than death; for missing (such a thing) is the being cut away from the truth, whereas death is only the being cut away from the living. Abstinence consists in three things: poverty, solitude and hunger. If a man thinks to deceive God by trying to cast a veil over his sins, God will tear off that veil and expose them to the public."

He learned traditions from Ishak Ibn Sulaiman ar-Razi (1), Makki Ibn Ibrahim al-Balkhi (2) and Ali Ibn Muhammad at-Tunafisi (3). A number of strangers belonging to Rai, Hamadan and Khorasan taught, on his authority, a few well-supported Traditions. The Khatib (vol. I. p. 75) says of him, in the History of Baghdad: "When he came to Baghdad, the shaikhs of the Sufis and the devotees gathered round him and, having set up a throne, they placed him on it, sat down before him and entered into a conference. Al-Junaid (vol. I. p. 338) then uttered some words, on which Yahya said: 'Be silent, my lamb! what have you to do with speaking when all the people are talking?'" The allusions and expressions which he employed were remarkably elegant. One of his sayings was: "A pious discourse is a fine thing, but its meaning is finer; its use is finer than its meaning; the recompense which it merits is finer than its use and, finer than its recompense is the favour of Him for whose sake that discourse was made." He said also: "True friendship cannot be augmented by kindness nor diminished by unkindness." Another of his sayings was: "He whose aspect is not as silver for the vulgar, as gold for the aspirants (to the knowledge of God), as pearls and rubies for those who know God and are advanced in his favour, that man is not one
of God’s sages who aspire to know Him.” He said also: “The finest thing in the world is a correct discourse uttered by an eloquent tongue and proceeding from a handsome face; a shrewd discourse, drawn from a profound ocean (the heart) by the tongue of an ingenious man.” He said also: “My God! how can I forget Thee, I who have no other lord but Thee? my God! never shall I utter the words: Never again shall I return (to sin), for I feel that my heart is liable to break its promises; yet shall I utter them, provided that I die before I relapse.” One of his prayers was as follows: “Almighty God! though my sins cause me to fear, my hopes in Thy mercy assure me against danger. Almighty God! Thy kindness has concealed my sins from this world, but is for me more necessary that they should be concealed from view on the day of the resurrection. Thou hast been bountiful towards me in preventing them from appearing before the company of true believers; do not, therefore, bring me to shame on that day, in the presence of all Thy creatures, O Thou most merciful of the merciful!”—A descendant of Ali who resided at Balkh and to whom he went to pay his respects, said to him: “Tell me, Master! and may God assist you! what is your opinion of us who are the people of the house (the members of Muhammad’s family)!” Yahya replied: “It is that which I would say of clay kneaded with the water of (divine) revelation and sprinkled (?) with the water of the (heavenly) mission: can it give out any other odour than the musk of true direction and the ambergis of piety?” The Alide (was so highly pleased with this answer that he) filled Yahya’s mouth with pearls. The next morning, Yahya received a visit from the Alide and said to him: “Your coming to see us is an effect of your goodness, and our going to see you was on account of your goodness; so, you, in visiting and being visited, are doubly good.” Another of Yahya’s sayings was: “To him who is going to see a true friend the way never appears long; he who goes to visit his beloved never feels lonely on the road.” He said also: “How miserable are the sons of Adam! if they feared hell as much as they fear poverty, they would all enter into Paradise.”—“No man,” said he, “obtained his utmost wish without longing for death as ardently as the hungry man longs for food. He sees causes of ruin approach, is uneasy about his family and his brethren and is just falling into a state which would trouble the soundest reason.” He said again: “He who neglects the minor duties of piety will not obtain the greater gifts (which God bestows).” Another of his sayings was: “Of the things which fall to the lot of those among you who are truly believers, the best are three, namely,
"that which, if it profits them not, will not harm them; that which, if it rejoices
them not, will not sadden them, and that which, if it does not gain them praise,
will not bring upon them blame." He said again: ("A man's) acts are like the
mirage; (his) heart is devastated (and deprived) of piety; (his) sins are equal in
number to the sands and the grains of dust; yet he desires to possess the high-
boysomed maidens of his time. Woe be to you! you are drunk, but not with
wine. How perfect would you be had you striven against (نافظت) your hopes!
how great, had you hastened in fulfilling your appointed duty! how strong,
had you resisted your passions!" On such subjects he uttered many fine
maxims. He died at Naisâpûr in the year 258. Muhammad Ibn Abd Allah said :
"I read these words on the tomb-stone of Yahya Ibn Moâd ar-Râzi: 'The sage of
the epoch, may God whiten his face and unite him with the blessed Prophet!
died on Monday, the sixteenth of the first Jumâda, 258 (30th March, A. D.
872), at Naisâpûr.'"

(1) According to the author of the Tobâdât al-Huffâz, Abû Yahya Ishâk Ibn Sulaimân ar-Râzi was a sure
and exact Traditionist, and a native of Kâfa. He settled at Rai and taught Traditions on the authority of
Mâlik and others. His piety and the holiness of his life led the people to consider him as one of those mys-
terious personages who were designated by the title of abdallâh and of whom Mr. Lane has given a very good
account in his translation of the Thousand and one Nights, chap. iii, note 62. This ascetic died A. H. 290
(A. D. 815-6), or 199, according to the compiler of the Nujâm.

(2) Makki Ibn Ibrâhîm al-Balkhi (a native of Balkh) taught Traditions on the authority of Jaafari as-Sâdik,
Abû Hanîfa, Mâlik and others. He died A. H. 214 (A. D. 829-30), or 215.—(Huffâz.)

(3) Ali Ibn Muhammad at-Tanâfsî, a Traditionist whose authority was cited by Ibn Mâja and other emi-
nent doctors, died A. H. 230 (A. D. 844-5).—(Huffâz, Nujâm.)

YAHYA IBN MANDA

Abû Zakariyâ Yahya al-Abî was the son of Abd al-Wahhâb, the son of the imâm
Abû Abd Allah Muhammad, the son of Ishâk, the son of Muhammad, the son of
Yahya, the son of Manda, the son of al-Walid, the son of Manda, the son of Battâ,
the son of Istandar, the son of Jihârbakht, the son of Firuzân. Manda is a surname; he who bore it was called Ibrâhîm. It is said that Istandar’s real name was al-Firuzân; God knows! Yahya Ibn Manda was a most distinguished hâfiz and one of the most eminent among the Traditionists. We have already spoken of his grandfather (vol. III. p. 7). Yahya was designated by the surname of Abû Zakariya, his father by that of Abû Amr, his grandfather by that of Abû Abd Allah, his great-grandfather by that of Abû Muhammad and his great-great-grandfather by that of Abû Yakûb. He was a native of Ispahân and a Traditionist, as were his father, his grandfather, his great-grandfather and his great-great-grandfather before him. Highly distinguished for his merit, his talents and his vast knowledge in traditional lore, he was also a trustworthy relator of Traditions, an accomplished hâfiz and one of those who were noted for the copiousness of their information and for their veracity. The works composed by him were numerous, his conduct exemplary and the duties he imposed on himself arduous. At that epoch, the family to which he belonged had not a member worthy of being compared to him. He published, for the first time, some collections of Traditions, part of which he drew from his own stock and the rest from the lips of the numerous shaikhs and teachers who resided at Ispahân. He heard Traditions delivered by Abû Bakr Muhammad Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Zaid ad-Dabbi, Abû Tâhir Muhammad Ibn Ahmad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Abd ar-Rahîm al-Kâtib, Abû Mansûr Muhammad Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Fadlallâh al-Ispahânî, his own father and his two paternal uncles, Abû ‘l-Hasan Obaïd Allah and Abû ‘l-Kâsim Abd ar-Rahmân. His other teachers were Abû ‘l-Abbâs Ahmad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ahmad Ibn an-Nomân al-Kassâs, Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn Muhammad al-Jassâs, Abû Bakr Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn al-Husain al-Haurdâni and Abû Tâhir Ahmad Ibn Muhammad ath-Thakafi. Having gone to Naisâpur, he there heard Traditions taught by Abû Bakr Ahmad Ibn Mansûr Ibn Khalaf al-Mukri and Abû Bakr Ahmad Ibn al-Husain al-Baihaki (vol. I. p. 57). At Hamadân he learned Traditions from Abû Bakr Muhammad Ibn Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Muhammad an-Nuhâwandi; at Basra he studied them under Abû ‘l-Kâsim Ibrâhîm Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ahmad as-Shâhid, Abd Allah Ibn al-Husain as-Saadâni and at great number of other professors. One of the works compiled by him was a (biographical) History of Ispahân. Having gone to Baghdad, on his way to the pilgrimage, he taught Traditions in that city and made dictations in the mosque of al-Mansûr. So great was his reputation and so high the rank which he held (as a Traditionist), that a crowd
of shaikhs went to note down his observations, and amongst them were Abû 'l-Fadl Muhammad Ibn Nâsir, Abd al-Kâdir Ibn Abî Sâlih al-Jili, and the grammarian Abû Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Ahmad Ibn Ahmad Ibn Ahmad al-Khashshâb. Traditions were delivered on his authority by the hâfiz Abû 'l-Barâkât Abd al-Wahhâb Ibn al-Mubârak al-Annââ, Abû 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn Abî Turâb az-Zankâwî al-Khâyiât, both of them natives of Baghdad, Abû Tâhir Yahya Ibn Abî al-Ghaffâr Ibn as-Sabbâgh, the hâfiz Abû 'l-Fadl Muhammad Ibn Hibât Allah Ibn al-Alâ, and a great number of others. The hâfiz Ibn as-Samââî (vol. II. p. 156) mentions him in the Kitâb az-Zail and says: "He wrote out for me a licence to teach all the Traditions which he himself had learned." He then adds: "The hâfiz Abû 'l-Kâsim Ismaîl Ibn Muhammad, whom I asked what he thought of him, extolled him highly and praised his good memory, his knowledge and his learning." Farther on he says: "I heard the hâfiz Abû Bakr Muhammad Ibn Abî Nasr Mansûr Ibn Muhammad al-Laatawnâî say: 'The family of Ibn Manda began by a Yahya and ended by a 'Yahya; meaning in the knowledge of the Traditions, in science and in merit.'

—Abd al-Ghâfir Ibn Ismaîl Ibn Abî al-Ghâfir al-Fârisi, the hâfiz of whom we have already spoken (vol. II. p. 170) mentions him in the Stâg (or continuation) of the History of Naisâpûr and says: "Abû Zakariya Yahya Ibn Manda was a man of great merit and came of a family noted throughout the world for learning and for the knowledge of Traditions. He travelled to many cities, met there the great doctors, and learned Traditions from their lips. He composed a work on the two Sâkhs (that of Muslim and that of al-Bukhârî)."—It is related on the best authority that one of the learned gave the following saying as Ibn Manda's: "Excessive laughter is a mark of folly; folly and precipitation result from weakness of mind; weakness of mind proceeds from want of judgment; want of judgment comes from a bad education, and a bad education draws down contempt. Helplessness is a sort of madness; envy is a malady for which there is no cure, and detraction engenders hatred."—It has been handed down from al-Asmâî (vol. II. p. 123), through a series of creditable narrators, that the following anecdote was related by Ibn Manda: "I was in the desert and went into a mosque. The imâm stood up to direct the prayer and then recited the passage of the Korân (sûr. 71, verse 1) in which God says: We sent Noah unto his people. Here he got embarrassed and continued to repeat the same words, on which a bedouin Arab, who was standing behind him and accompanying the prayer, exclaimed: 'Well, man! if Noah
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY. 57

"... has not gone there, send some one else." —Yahya Ibn Manda used often to repeat these lines of a poet:

I wondered how a man could purchase error at the price of true direction; but he who purchases worldly goods at the price of his religion is more to be wondered at. But still more wonderful is the man who sacrifices his religion to obtain the worldly advantages possessed by another; he is yet a greater loser than the two former.

He was born at Ispahân on Tuesday morning, the 19th of Shawwal, 434 (1st of June, A. D. 1043), and he died there on the feast of the Sacrifice, 512 (24th March, A. D. 1119). After his death, the Manda family never produced a man like him. —Ibn Nukta (vol. III. p. 101) says, in the Ikmdl al-Ikmdl, that his death took place on Saturday, the 12th of Zu l-Hijja, 511, and that his father Abd al-Wahhab was born in the year 386 (A. D. 996) and died in the month of the latter Jumâda, 475 (Oct.-Nov. A. D. 1082).—We have marked the orthography of his ancestors' names in our article on his grandfather Abû Abd Allah Muhammad (1).

(1) The passage here indicated is not to be found in our manuscripts.

IBN SAADUN AL-KORTUBI

Abû Bakr Yahya Ibn Saadûn Ibn Tammâm Ibn Muhammad al-Azdi al-Kortubi (a member of the Arabian tribe of Azd and a native of Cordova), bore the title of Sâin ad-Din (preserver of the faith) and was one of the imâms (or great masters), who, in latter times, were well versed in the Koranic readings, the sciences connected with the koranic text, the Traditions, grammar, philology, etc. He left Cordova in the flower of his youth and proceeded to Egypt. In Alexandria, he heard the lessons of Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Ahmad Ibn Ibâhîm ar-Râzi and, in Mîr (Old Cairo), those of Abû Sâdîk Murshid Ibn Yahya Ibn al-Kâsim al-Madani al-Misri (a native of Medina who had settled in Egypt). There also he studied under Abû Tâhir Ahmad
Ibn Muhammad al-Ispahâni, generally known by the appellation of as-Silafi (vol. I. p. 86) and other masters. In the year 517 (A. D. 1123-4), he arrived in Baghdad and read the Korân under the direction of the shâïkh Abû Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Ali al-Mukri (teacher of the Korân-readings), who was generally known by the designation of Ibn Bint as-shâïkh Abi Mansûr al-Khayyat (the son of the daughter of the shâïkh Abû Mansûr the tailor). He heard from the lips of that professor the contents of a great number of books, one of which was Sibawaih’s Kitâb (vol. II. p. 396). He read Traditions under Abû Bakr Muhammad Ibn Abd al-Bâki al-Bazzâr, surnamed Kâdi ‘l-Mâristân (the kâdi of the infirmary), Abû ‘l-Kâsim Ibn al-Hosain (الحسين), Abû ‘l-Izz Ibn Kâdis and other masters. He was religious and devout, remarkable for such gravity and dignity of bearing as inspired respect. As a Traditionist he was a sure authority, veracious and trustworthy; his talents were great, his words few, his good actions numerous and his discourse instructive. He resided at Damascus for some time and then went to inhabit Mosul, whence he removed to Ispahân. From that he returned to Mosul and all the shâïkhs (or eminent doctors) of the time went to hear his lessons. The hâfîz Ibn as-Samâni (vol. II. p. 156) mentions him in the Zail and says: “I met him in Damascus, where he gave lessons which (even) the shâïkhs under whom Abû Abd Allah ar-Râzi had studied, went to hear. I myself selected some choice passages out of his lectures. Having asked him the date and place of his birth, he replied that he was born in the year 486 (A. D. 1093-4) at Cordova, a city in Spain.”—I read in a book that his birth took place in the year 487, but the former date is the true one. Our shâïkh the kâdi Bahâ ad-Dîn Abû ‘l-Mahâsin Yusuf Ibn Râfi Ibn Tamîm generally known by the surname of Ibn Shaddâd and kâdi of Aleppo, took pride in stating that he had learned Traditions and Korân-readings from Abû Bakr al-Kortubi. To this we shall recur in our article on Ibn Shaddâd. “We used,” said he, “to read (the Korân) under him at Mosul, and, every day, we saw a man come in, salute him without sitting down, hand him a packet the contents of which were unknown to us and then retire. We tried to discover what was in it, and at length found out that it was a fowl ready plucked which the shâïkh purchased, every day, from that man, for his own use, and which, on returning to his house, he cooked with his own hands.” The same kâdi states, in his Dalâtî al-Ahkâm, that he read (the Korân) under him during the space of eleven years and finished in the year 567 (A. D. 1174-2). The shâïkh Abû Bakr al-Kortubi often repeated the following verses, tracing them, through a
regular series of transmitters, up to the author, the *kdšib* Abū 'l-Khair al-Wâsiti:

The pen of fate writes out what is to happen; so, whether we move or remain quiet, it is just the same. How foolish in thee to toil for sustenance! is not sustenance granted even to the embryo in the womb?

He said also: "The following verses were repeated to us by Abū 'l-Wafâ Abd ar-Razzâk Ibn Wahb Ibn Hassân, who stated that they were recited to him in Old Cairo by Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Manî (منيب) who gave them as having been composed by himself:

"I have a device by which calumny may be averted, but no device can serve against a liar. No stratagem of mine can avail against him who says things of his own invention."

The *shaikh* Abû Bakr al-Kortubi died al Mosul, on the day of the festival of the Sacrifice, 567 (4th August, A. D. 1172).

---

**YAHYA IBN YAMAR**

Abû Sulaimân, or, as some say, Abû Said, Yahya, the son of Yamar al-Adwâi al-Washki, was a grammarian of Basra and a *Tâbi* (one of those who had received lessons from a companion of Muhammad). He met (and knew) Abd Allah Ibn Omar (vol. I. p. 567), Abd Allah Ibn al-Abbâs (vol. I. p. 89), and others (of the Companions). Katâda Ibn Diâma as-Sadûsi (vol. II. p. 513) and Ishâk Ibn Suwaid al-Adawi handed down Traditions on his authority. He was one of the chief Korân-readers (1) of Basra, and it was from him that Abd Allah Ibn Abi Ishâk learned the manner of reading (that book). He removed to Khôrâsân and was appointed kâdi at Marw. The text of the Korân, the rules of grammar and the various dialects of the Arabs were equally familiar to him. He acquired his knowledge of grammar from Abû 'l-Aswad ad-Duwalî (vol. I. p. 662). It is related that, when Abû 'l-Aswad drew up the chapter on the agent and patient (the subject and object of the verb), a man of the
tribe of Laith added thereto some chapters and, having found, on examination, that there existed, in the language of the (desert) Arabs, some expressions which could not be made to enter into that (section), he stopped short and abandoned the work. It is possible that this person was Yahya Ibn Yamar who, having contracted an alliance, by oath, with the tribe of Laith, was considered as one of its members. He was a Shi'te of the primitive class, one of those who, in asserting the superior merit of the People of the house (2), abstained from depreciating the merit of those (Companions) who did not belong to that family. Aâsim Ibn Abi 'n-Najûd (vol. II. p. 1) the Korân-reader, related as follows: "'Al-Hajjâj Ibn Yûsuf (vol. I. p. 356), being informed that Yahya Ibn Yamar declared al-Hasan and al-Husain to be of the posterity of the Apostle of God, and that he was then in Khorâsân, wrote to Kutaiba Ibn Muslim (vol. II. p. 514), the governor of that province, ordering him to send Yahya to him. This was done and, when Yahya stood in his presence, he said to him: 'Do you pretend that al-Hasan and al-Husain were of the posterity of the Apostle of God? by Allah! I shall cast (to the ground) that part of you which has the most hair on it (3), unless you exculpate yourself.' — 'If I do so,' said Yahya, 'shall I have an amnesty?' — 'You shall,' replied al-Hajjâj. — 'Well,' said Yahya, God, may his praise be exalted! said: 'And we gave unto him (Abraham) Isaac and Jacob; we directed them all; and Noah had we before directed, and, of his posterity, David and Solomon, and Job, and Joseph, and Moses, and Aaron; thus do we reward the virtuous; and Zakarias, and John, and Jesus, and Elias; all of them were righteous. (Korân, sur. 6, verse 84.) Now, the space of time between Jesus and Abraham is greater that which separated al-Hasan and al-Husain from Muhammad, on all of whom be the blessing of God and his salvation!' — Al-Hajjâj answered: 'I must admit that you have got out of the difficulty; I read that before but did not understand it.'" — This quotation was most appropriate; how admirable the talent displayed by Yahya in adducing that passage! How finely he applied it! — 'Then,' said Aâsim, 'al-Hajjâj said to him: 'Where were you born?' — Yahya answered: 'At Basra.' — 'Where were you brought up?' — 'In Khorâsân.' — 'And this pure Arabic (which you speak), how did you come by it (4)?' — 'It was God's gift.' — 'Tell me if I commit faults in speaking.' — Yahya remained silent, but as al-Hajjâj insisted on having an answer, he at length said: 'O Emir! since you ask me, I must say that you exalt what should be depressed and depress what should be exalted (5).' — 'That, by
Allah! is a grave fault.' He then wrote these words to Kutaiba: 'When this, my letter, reaches you, take Yahya Ibn Yamar for your kādi. Salutation!'—Ibn Sallām (vol. II. p. 486) stated that he heard Yūnus Ibn Habīb (6) relate as follows: 'Al-Hajjāj said to Yahya Ibn Yamar: 'Do you remark any incorrection in my speech?'—'Yes;' replied Yahya, 'in one point.'—'What is that?'—'In reading the Korān.'—'That were shameful indeed! what is it?'—'In reciting this verse: Say, if your fathers and your sons, and so forth to the words be more dear (ahabba) to you than God (Korān, sur. 9, verse 24), you pronounce ahabbo.'—Ibn Sallām here observed: 'It would appear from this that, as the phrase was long, al-Hajjāj forgot how it commenced. Al-Hajjāj then said: 'be assured that you shall never hear me commit such a fault again.' Then, 'said Yūnus, 'he sent him to Khorāsān which, at that time, was governed by Yazīd, the son of al-Muhallab Ibn Abī Sufra.'—God best knows which of these statements is exact. —Ibn al-Jauzi (vol. II. p. 96) says, in his Shuṣur al-Okād (7): 'In the year eighty-four of the Hijra (A. D. 703), al-Hajjāj banished Yahya Ibn Yamar because, on saying to him: 'Do I speak incorrectly,' he received this answer: 'You do; but the fault is scarcely perceptible.'—'I give you three days,' said al-Hajjāj, and, if I find you, after that, in the land of Irāk, I shall put you to death.' In consequence of this, Yahya left the country.'—Abū Amr Nasr Ibn Ali Ibn Nūḥ Ibn Kays stated that the following relation was made to him by Othmān Ibn Mīhsan (n): 'The Commander of the faithful pronounced a khotba at Basra and, in this discourse, he said: 'Fear God! he that fears God incurs no huwdra.' The congregation did not understand what he said and asked its meaning from Yahya Ibn Yamar. He answered that the word huwdra signified loss and that the khalif meant to say: He who fears God shall sustain no loss.'—Al-Kazzāz (vol. III. p. 85) says, in his Kitāb al-Jāmiḥ: Hawdrat means dangers; its singular is havdra. —Ar-Rāżi said: 'I related this to al-Asmā (vol. II p. 123) and he answered: 'I never heard that till this very moment, now that you have told it to me. The rare expressions of the language are really very numerous, but that one I never heard.'—Al-Asmā related as follows: 'My father told me that Yazīd, the son of al-Muhallab, wrote, when in Khorāsān, a letter to al-Hajjāj Ibn Yūsuf in which he said: 'We met the enemy and forced him to take refuge on the summit (orora) of the hill, and we are at the foot of it (al-haddūd).'—'How,' said al-Hajjāj, 'did the son of al-Muhallab come by such words as these?' and,
being told that Yahya Ibn Yamar was with him, he said: 'Ah! that explains it.'

—Yahya composed poetry and was the author of this verse:

People concur only in hating my family; but, from the oldest times, people hate those who are good (8).

Khâlid al-Haddâ (vol. II. p. 588) stated that Ibn Sirîn (vol. II. p. 586) possessed a copy of the Korân in which Yahya Ibn Yamar had marked the wowel points. He spoke the purest Arabic, using the most elegant terms without effort and quite naturally. His adventures and remarkable sayings are well known. He died in the year 129 (A. d. 746–7 (9).—Yamar, or Yamar,—but this latter form is neither current nor correct,—is the present tense of the verb amîra, which signifies to live long. This name, like that of Yahya (he lives), was given to him as a presage of long life. —Adwânî means descended from Adwân, whose true name was al-Hârith and who was the son of Amr Ibn Kâis Ablân. He received the surname of Adwân (hostility) because he attacked his brother with the intention of killing him.—Washki means descended from Washk, who was the son of Aûf, the son of Bakr, the son of Yashkur, the son of that same Adwân.

(1) See vol. I, p. 152.
(2) See page 53 of this volume.
(3) That is: I shall strike off your head.
(4) The true reading is anna hâta laka.
(5) This passage signifies also : you put in the nominative what should be put in the accusative and vice versa. I suspect that Yahya employed this equivocal expression designedly.
(6) The life of Ibn Habîb is given in this volume.
(7) This was a historical work. Its title signifies : Golden beads for necklaces.
(8) Literally : the fat. —This verse is by no means clear, and its application is not evident unless we suppose it to have been uttered by one of the Alides.
(9) Dahabi, cited by the author of the Nujûm, places the death of Yahya Ibn Yamar in the year 89 of the Hijra.
AL-FARRA THE GRAMMARIAN

Abû Zakariya Yahya Ibn Zia'd Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Manzûr al-Aslami ad-Dailami al-Kûfi (a Dailamite by origin and a native of Kufa by birth), was generally known by the surname of al-Farrâ. He was a member, by enfranchisement, of the tribe of Asad, or, according to another statement, of the tribe of Minkar. Al-Farrâ was the most eminent of all the doctors of Kûfa and also the most distinguished by his knowledge of grammar, philology and the various branches of literature. Abû 'I-Abbâs Thalab (vol. I. p. 83) is stated to have said: "Were it not for al-Farrâ, pure Arabic would no longer exist; it was he who disengaged it (from the ordinary language) and fixed it (by writing). Were it not for al-Farrâ, good Arabic had gone to the ground; (before his time,) it was a matter of discussion; every one who pleased had the pretention of knowing it and discoursed on it as well as his intelligence and his genius would permit, so that it had nearly disappeared." He and al-Ahmar (1) learned grammar from Abû 'I-Hasan al-Kisâi (vol. II. p. 237); they were the most eminent of his disciples and also the most attached to him. Al-Farrâ, having resolved on entering into the service of (the khalif) al-Mâmûn, went a great number of times to the door of the palace (with the hope of obtaining admittance), and, one day, whilst he was waiting there, Abû Bishr Thumâma Ibn al-Ashras an-Numairi (vol. II. p. 475), a Motazelite doctor who was intimate with (the khalif) al-Mâmûn, went up to him. "I saw," said Thumâma, "a person in the attire of a literary man; so, I sat down beside him and commenced putting to the test his knowledge of philosophy. Finding that he was (in that branch), an ocean (of learning), I tried him in grammar and discovered that he had not his parallel; I then examined him in jurisprudence and perceived that he was a good legist and well acquainted with the conflicting opinions of those people (the jurisconsults); I ascertained also that he was an able astronomer, a learned physician, and well-versed in the history of the (desert) Arabs, their battle-days and their poetry. On this, I said to him: 'Who are you? you must be al-Farrâ!' He replied: 'I am he.' I immediately went in to the Commander of the faithful, al-Mâmûn, informed him of the circumstance and got the order to have al-Farrâ introduced without delay.
It was thus that he became acquainted with al-Mâmûn."—Kutrub (vol. III. p. 29) related as follows: "Al-Farrâ entered into the presence of (the khalif) ar-Rashid and made a discourse in which he committed solecisms. On this, Ja'far Ibn Yahya the Barmaide (vol. I. p. 301) said: 'Commander of the faithful! he speaks incorrectly.' The khalif said to al-Farrâ: 'You commit solecisms?' and received this answer: 'Commander of the faithful! it is in the nature of the (desert) Arabs to employ correctly the final inflexions, and in the nature of those who inhabit fixed abodes to employ them incorrectly; when I am on my guard, I do not commit faults but, when I return to my natural habit, I commit them.' The khalif was satisfied with this answer.—The Khatib (vol. I. p. 75) says, in his history of Baghdad: 'When al-Farrâ got acquainted with al-Mâmûn, the latter bid him draw up a work which should contain the principles of grammar and all the pure Arabic expressions which he had heard. He then ordered him to be confined in a chamber of the palace, and appointed male and female servants to attend him and furnish him with everything which he required; hoping, by this means, to deliver his heart from all preoccupations and to leave him nothing to wish for. They were even to inform him of the hours of prayer by chanting the adan (or call) at the proper times. He sent to him also a number of copyists and attached to his service confidential men and agents charged to pay the expenses. Al-Farrâ then dictated, and the copyists wrote down his observations; and this continued during two years, until they had finished the work. It was entitled al-Hudâd (the limits or chapters). Al-Mâmûn ordered this book to be transcribed (and placed) in his libraries. When al-Farrâ had finished his task, he went out in public and began the composition of the Kitâb al-Madînî (rhetorical figures employed in the Koran (?)). The narrator (of these facts) says: 'We tried to count the member of persons who assembled for the purpose of hearing him dictate (and publish) the text of the Kitâb al-Madînî, but, not being able to do so, (they were so many,) we counted the kâdis only and found that there were eighty.' He continued to dictate the work till he finished it. The copyists then withheld it from the public, so that they might make money of it, and declared that they would not communicate it to any person unless he consented to have it copied by them at the rate of one dirhem for five leaves (3). Al-Farrâ, to whom complaints were made on this subject, sent for the copyists and remonstrated with them. Their answer was: 'We attended your lessons in order to profit by
"your learning; of all your works this is the most essential; so, allow us to
"gain a livelihood by means of it.' He replied: 'Be more compliant with
"them; it will be for your advantage as well as theirs.' Finding that they would
"not follow his advice, he said to them: 'I shall let you see (what you do not
"expect),' and then announced to the public that he would dictate the Madni and
"join to it a complete commentary, with fuller remarks than those already given.
"He therefore held sittings and dictated one hundred leaves on the word al-hamd (4)
"alone. The copyists then went to him and said: 'We shall concede to the
"public what they demand and copy for them at the rate of one dirhem for ten
"leaves.'" What induced him to (compose and) dictate the Madni was, that one of
his disciples, who was then in the service of al-Hasan Ibn Sahl (vol. i. p. 408)
and whose name was Omar Ibn Bukair, wrote to him in these terms: "The emir
"al-Hasan is always asking me questions relative to the Korân, and I cannot readily
"call to mind the proper answers. Would you be pleased to lay down for me cer-
tain fundamental principles and compile, on that subject, a work to which I may
"refer." On reading this note, he invited his disciples to assemble and hear him
dictate a work on the Korân. On the appointed day, when all were present, he
came in to them and told a man who acted as a muwazzin in the mosque and who
knew well the Korân, to commence reciting (the text of that book). The man began
by the Fđthâ (5) and al-Fârrâ explained it, and this continued till they went over
the whole book; the muwazzin reciting and the professor explaining. This com-
mentary fills about one thousand leaves; nothing like it had ever been composed
before, and no person can possibly add to it.—Al-Mâmûn placed his two sons
under al-Fârrâ's tuition, so that they might be instructed in grammar. One day,
al-Fârrâ rose from his place, on some necessary occasion, and the two young princes
hastened to bring him his slippers. They struggled between themselves for the
honour of offering them to him, and they finally agreed that each of them
should present him with one slipper. As al-Mâmûn had secret agents who in-
formed him of every thing that passed, he learned what had taken place and
causèd al-Fârrâ to be brought before him. When he entered, the khalîf said to
him: "Who is the most honoured of men?" Al-Fârrâ answered: "I know not
"any one more honoured than the Commander of the faithful." —"Nay;" replied
"al-Mâmûn, "it is he who arose to go out and the two designated successors of the
"Commander of the faithful contented for the honour of presenting him his slippers,

vol. iv.

9
and at length agreed that each of them should offer him one.' To this al-Farrā answered: 'Commander of the faithful! I should have prevented them from doing so had I not been apprehensive of turning them away from some honourable example which they had already received or discouraging their minds in the pursuit of that high estimation to which they ardently aspire. We know by tradition that Ibn Abbās held the stirrups of al-Hasan and al-Husain, when they were getting on horseback after paying him a visit. One of those who were present said to him: 'How is it that you hold the stirrups of these striplings, you who are their elder?' To which he replied: 'Ignorant man! no one can appreciate the merit of people of merit except a man of merit.' Al-Māmūn then said to him: 'Had you prevented them, I should have inflicted on you the penalty of censure and reproach, and should have declared you in fault. That which they have done is no debasement of their dignity; on the contrary, it exalts their merit, renders manifest their excellent nature and inspires me with a favorable opinion of their character. No man, thought great in rank, can be dispensed, by his high position, from three obligations: he must respect his sovereign, venerate his father, and honour his preceptor. As a reward for their conduct, I bestow on them twenty thousand dinars (£. 10,000), and on you, for the good education which you give them, ten thousand dirhems (£. 500).'

The following anecdote is related also by the Khatīb: 'One day, al-Farrā was sitting in the house of the legist Muhammad Ibn al-Hasan, who was the son of his aunt, and happened to say that few men ever mastered one branch of science without finding the others quite easy. On this, Muhammad said: 'You, Abū Zakariya! have studied pure Arabic; so, I shall question you on a point of (canon) law.' — 'Let us hear your question,' said al-Farrā, (and I shall answer) with the blessing of God.' Muhammad then said to him: 'What do you say of a man who, in making the two satisfactory prostrations that some neglect in the accomplishment of the prescribed prayer rendered necessary, neglects, again, in these prostrations, something important?' Al-Farrā reflected for some time and then replied that the man incurred no obligation. 'Why so?' said his cousin. 'Because,' said he, according to us grammarians, a diminutive noun cannot be diminished again; and besides, the two prostrations are the completion of the prayer, and that which is complete requires no further completion.' On hearing this, Muhammad exclaimed: 'Now, I am sure that a descendant of Adam never engendered a son.
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

I already mentioned this anecdote in the life of al-Kisâî (vol. II. p. 238) and there referred to the account which I give of it here.—Al-Farrâ had a leaning towards the doctrine of the Motazalites. Salama, the son of Aâsim, related as follows: "Al-Farrâ told me that he and Bishr al-Marâisî (vol. I. p. 260), lived together, in the same house, for twenty-one years and that neither of them learned anything from the other."—Al-Jâhiz (vol. II. p. 405) said: "I arrived at Baghdad in the year 204 (A. D. 819-20), at the time of al-Mâmûn's entry into that city. Al-Farrâ used then to come to see me, and I wished him to learn scholastic theology (kalâm), but he had no desire of doing so."—Abû 'l-Abbâs Thalâb said: "Al-Farrâ used to hold public sittings in the mosque adjoining his own house. He philosophized (employed the philosophical style) in his works to such a degree that he introduced philosophical terms into his discourse."—Salama, the son of Ahmad and the grandson of Aâsim said: "I wondered at al-Farrâ's esteem for al-Kisâî whom he much excelled in grammatical knowledge."—"One of al-Farrâ's sayings was: "When I am dying, my soul shall undergo in some measure, the influence exerted by (the conjunction) hatta: it will be depressed, elevated and afflicted."—No verses have been handed down as his excepting the following, which were given by Abu-Hanîfa ad-Dinauri (vol. I. p. 455) on the authority of Abû Bakr at-Tuwâl:

Lord of a single acre of ground, you have nine chamberlains! You sit in an old ruin and have door-keepers to exclude visiters! Never did I hear of a doorkeeper in a ruined dwelling! Never shall the eyes (of men) see me at a door of yours; a man like me is not made to support repulses from door-keepers.

I since discovered that these verses are attributed to Ibn Mûsâ 'l-Maksûf; God knows best!—Al-Farrâ was born at Kûfâ, whence he removed to Baghdad, which continued to be his usual place of residence. He was so ardent in the pursuit of gain that he could not remain quietly at home and, when he had passed a whole year in hoarding up money, he would go to Kûfâ and pass there forty days with his people to whom he generously distributed the sum which he had collected. He composed a number of works, such as the Hudâd and the Madnî, of which treatises we have already spoken; two works, one much larger than the other, on the muskûl (or expressions of doubtful import) which occur in the Korân (?); the Kitâb al-Bâh (?), a small volume, of which I met a copy after drawing up the present article. It con-
tains the greater part of the terms which Abū 'l-Abbas Thalab inserted in his Fasth (vol. I. p. 84); it is of the same size as that book, and the only difference between them is, that the latter offers the same matters in another order: al-Farrā merely remodeled the work and made thereto a few additions. I may add that the Bāhi contains a few terms which are not to be found in the Fasth, but there is very little difference between the two books. His other works are the Kitāb al-Loghdāt (on dialectical expressions), the Kitāb al-Masādir, etc. (on the nouns of action which are found in the Korān), the Jamā wa-Tathniya, etc. (on the plurals and duals which occur in the Korān), the Kitāb al-Wādāf wa 'l-Ibtidā (on the full stop and the commencement of phrases), the Kitāb al-Fākhīr; var. al-Mufākhīr), the Kitāb Ala al-Kātib (the tool for secretaries), the Kitāb an-Nawāddīr (on rare expressions), the Kitāb al-Wād (on the copulative conjunction), etc.—Salama, the son of Aâsim, states that al-Farrā dictated (most of) of his works from memory; those dictated by him from copies which he held in his hand were the Kitāb Mulṣim (?) and the Kitāb yaṣā wa yafṣa (7). According to Abū Bakr al-Andārī (vol. III. p. 53), those two books contained about fifty leaves, and all his works filled three thousand leaves.—Muhammad Ibn al-Jahm (8) composed a poem in honour of al-Farrā; its rhymes are formed by an u followed the syllable hi; but I abstain from inserting it here, to avoid lengthening this article.—Al-Farrā died A. H. 207 (A. D. 822-3) on the road to Mecca, and at the age of sixty-three years. He was surnamed al-Farrā (the furrier), not because he manufactured or dealt in furs, but because he was a farrā (skanner or sifter) of words. So says as-Samānī in his Ansāb, and he cites for his authority the Kitāb al-Alkāb (9).—Abū Abd Allah al-Marzubâni (vol. III. p. 67) says, in his work (10) that Zīād, the father of al-Farrā, was maimed of his hand, it having been cut off in the war with al-Husain, the son of Ali. This assertion requires to be examined: al-Farrā lived sixty-three years and was therefore born in the year 144; the war with al-Husain took place in A. H. 61; so, between that event and al-Farrā's birth, eighty-four years must have elapsed; to what age then did his father live? If the person who lost his hand was al-Farrā's grandfather, the thing had been possible. منظور. —We have already spoken of the word Dailmī, and of the Banū Asad. —Minkar was the son of Obaid, the son of Mukāis, whose real name was al-Hārith, the son of Amr, the son of Kaab, the son of Saad, the son of Zaid Manāt, the son of Tamīm, the son of Murra. The tribe named after him is very numerous and has produced a great number of remarkable men, some of whom were
companions of the Prophet. They were all surnamed al-Minkari. Such were Khâlid, the son of Safwân, and Shabib, the son of Shabba (11). Safwân and Shabba were the sons of Abd Allah Ibn Omar Ibn al-Ahtam al-Minkari. Khâlid and Shabib were noted as good orators, speaking with elegance and precision. Khâlid had frequent sittings with the Commander of the faithful, as-Saffâh, as is well-known, and Shabib was often in the society of (the khalife) al-Mansûr, al-Mahdi and others. Mention has been made of them both in our article on al-Bohtori (vol. III. p. 657).

(1) Ali al-Ahmar (the red) was a soldier in ar-Rashid’s nûbd, or body-guard. His knowledge of pure Arabic was so extensive that al-Kisâlî got him appointed as tutor to that khalif’s children. He died on his way to Mekka, A. H. 194 (A. D. 809-10).—(Fügel’s Grammatische Schulen der Araber, 1st part, p. 184.)

(2) For the contents of this grammatical work, see Fügel’s Grammatische Schulen, p. 184.

(3) It is worthy of remark that a dirhem, or six pence, for ten pages of copy, was considered as an exorbitant price, at Baghdad, towards the beginning of the ninth century of our era.

(4) Al-Hamd is the first word of the expression which, in Arabic, means: “Praise be to God” and by which most Muslim books commence.

(5) The Fatihâ, or Opening, is the name given to the first sûrat of the Korân.

(6) These terms, in the language of the grammarians, signify: govern the genitive case, the nominative and the accusative.

(7) It is said that, in the whole Arabic language, no root furnishes two adjectives having the same signification and exactly similar in their form to the adjectives yâfî (عَفَّ) i.e. adult, and ya'dâ (عَقِدَ) which come from the root ya'd (عَقِدَ).

(8) An interesting anecdote of this member of the Barmekide family is given in the first volume, p. 63.

(9) In the bibliographical dictionary of Hajji Khalifa, four works are mentioned which bear this title.

(10) Hajji Khalifa gives the titles of five works composed by Abû Abd Allah al-Marzubáni.


ABU MUHAMMAD AL-YAZIDI

Abû Muhammad Yahya Ibn al-Mubârak Ibn al-Mughīra al-Adawi, surnamed al-Yazidi, was a teacher of the koranic readings, a grammarian and a philologer. He studied under Abû Amr Ibn al-Alâ al-Basri (vol. II. p. 399), the great teacher of
the readings, and succeeded him in that occupation. He inhabited Baghdad and there taught Traditions which he had learned from Abû Amr, Ibn Jurayj (vol. II. p. 116) and others. Traditions were received from him and transmitted down by his son Muhammad, by Abû Obaid al-Kâsim Ibn Sallâm (vol. II. p. 486), by Ishak Ibn Ibrahim al-Mausili (vol. I. p. 183), by a number of his own sons and grandsons, by Abû Omar ad-Dûri (vol. I. p. 401) (1), Abû Hamdân at-Taiyib Ibn Ismaïl (2), Abû Shoaiib as-Süsi (3), Aâmîr Ibn Omar al-Mausili (4), Abû Khallâd Sulaimân Ibn Khallâd and others. He differed from Abû Amr respecting the manner of reading a few words in the Korân, having adopted for them a manner of his own. As he had been preceptor to the children of Yazîd Ibn Mansûr Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Yazîd al-Himyari (5) (the khalîf) al-Mahdi’s maternal uncle, he was surnamed al-Yazîdî (the Yazîdîan). Hârûn ar-Rashîd, to whose service he was subsequently attached, confided to him the education of his son al-Mâmûn, who was still a child (6). Abû Muhammad al-Yazîdî was considered as a trustworthy Traditionist, a learned Korân-reader and an elegant speaker; he was well acquainted with the idioms of the (desert) Arabs, skilled in grammar and veracious (as a Traditionist). A number fine works were composed by him. His views were just and his poetry (so good that it) was collected into a diwân. The philological work entitled Kitâb an-Nawâdir (book of rarities) was drawn up by him on the plan of the Nawâdir which al-Asmâî (vol. II. p. 123) composed for Jaafar the Barmakide (vol. I. p. 301), and contains, designedly, the same number of leaves as that treatise. He obtained his knowledge of pure Arabic and of the history of the people (the adventures and quarrels of the Arabic tribes) from Abû Amr (Ibn al-Aldâ), al-Khalil Ibn Ahmad (vol. I. p. 493) and other learned men of that age. Abû Hamdân at-Taiyib related as follows: “I met the son of Abû ‘I-“Atâhiya (vol. I. p. 202) who had just taken down in writing a mass of information “which had been dictated to him by Abû Muhammad al-Yazîdî and all of which “the latter declared to have received from Abû Amr Ibn al-Alâ. It filled nearly “one thousand jîlds (or skins), each jîld forming about ten leaves; so there were “ten thousand leaves in all.” Al-Yazîdî obtained an immense quantity of philo-
logical information from al-Khalil Ibn Ahmad, and wrote down under his dictation the rules of prosody, which science that master had just began to discover; he placed, however, his principal reliance on Abû Amr, whose extensive acquaintance with pure Arabic he highly appreciated. At one time, he kept a school for boys, opposite to the house in which Abû Amr resided, and was then admitted into the fami-
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

liarity of that doctor, who became very partial to him on account of his quick intelligence. The information transmitted down by him is considered as perfectly genuine. His works are the: Naudhir of which we have just spoken, the Maksur wa l-Mamdid (on the short and the long alif), a compendium of grammar and a treatise on the vowels (mukat) and diacritical points (shakl). Ibn al-Munadid (7) related as follows: "I frequently asked about (the moral character of) of Abu Muhammad al-Yazidi, his veracity and his credibility as a relater of traditional knowledge. These questions I addressed to a number of our sheikhs, some of them professors of Arabic, others of Koran-reading and others of Traditions; and they all declared that he was trustworthy and veracious, and that he never felt fatigue nor dislike in the pursuit even of the slightest information which could be obtained from oral tradition." But, "said they, 'he was suspected of being inclined towards the doctrines of the Motazelites.'" Abu Obaid al-Kasim Ibn Sallam taught the text of the Gharib (unusual and obscure expressions of the Koran and the Traditions) on the sole authority of Abu Muhammad al-Yazidi, because he well knew the eminent merit of that doctor. In the reign of Ar-Rashid, al-Yazidi and al-Kisai (vol. II. p. 237) held sittings together and taught Koran-reading to the public. Al-Kisai was preceptor to al-Amin (the son of Ar-Rashid), and al-Yazidi to Al-Mamun (the other son). By the order of that khalif, al-Kisai taught his pupil the system of reading (harf) adopted by Hamza (vol. I. p. 478) and al-Yazidi taught his the system of Abu Amr (Ibn al-Alad). "Al-Yazidi," said al-Athram (vol. II. p. 568), "entered one day into the house of Al-Khalil Ibn Ahmad and found him seated on a cushion. Al-Khalil made room for him and invited him to sit down beside him. Al-Yazidi did so and then said: 'I am sure that I inconvenience you.'—'Nay,' replied Al-Khalil, 'no place is too narrow for two friends or too wide for two enemies.'"—Al-Mamun, having asked Al-Yazidi about something, received from him this answer: 'No; and may God accept my life as a ransom for yours, Commander of the faithful!'—"Well said!" exclaimed the khalif, "never was the word and better placed than in the phrase which you have just uttered (8)." He then made him a present."—"One day," said al-Yazidi, "I went to see Al-Mamun; all nature was smiling (9), and his female musician Nuam, who was one of the handsomest women of the age, was singing to him an air of which these were the words:

"You pretended that I had wronged you and, fled from me, but in flying, you shot an arrow which pierced me to the heart. You did well to fly; but be indulgent and pardon me;
"This is the spot where the proscribed finds a refuge; this is the place to which he whom love has afflicted may retreat, to which he whose eyes have been wounded by your beauty may run for protection. You have robbed my heart of its ease, yet, may God never paralyse the hand which committed that theft!

"Al-Mâmûn made her sing the same piece three times and then said: 'Tell me, 'Yazidî! can there be anything (in life) better than what we are now engaged in?' I answered: 'There is, Commander of the faithful!'—'What is it?' said he.—I replied: 'The giving of thanks to Him who has granted to you this great and signal favour.'—He answered: 'You are in the right and have said the truth.' He then, after making me a present, ordered one hundred thousand dirhems (£2,500) to be brought in, so that he might give it away in alms. I have still before my eyes the sight of the purses as they were brought in and of the money as it was distributed.'—Al-Yazîdi complained, one day, to al-Mâmûn of being in great need, by reason of debts which he had incurred. The khalif answered: 'We have not, at present, means of giving you wherewithal you may obtain (the deliverance) you desire.'—'Commander of the faithful,' said al-Yazîdi, 'I am reduced to great straits and my creditors are hard upon me. Think of some expedient for me.' Al-Mâmûn reflected a little, and it was then agreed upon between them that al-Yazîdi should come to the door of the palace, when the khalif was holding one of his familiar parties, and there write a note in which he would request to be admitted or to have one of the sovereign's boon companions sent out to him. When the company were assembled, al-Yazîdi came to the door and gave the servant a sealed letter. Al-Mâmûn, to whom it was brought in, opened it and found that it contained these lines:

Worthiest of brethren and of friends! I am here, as a parasite, waiting at your door. Let me make one of the society or send out to me one of my companions (to keep me company).

Al-Mâmûn read the letter to those who were present and said: 'It is not fit that such a parasite should enter here, in such a state (as we are).' He then sent out to him this message: 'Your entrance here, at this hour, is impossible; chose for yourself the person whom you wish for a boon companion.' When al-Yazîdi received this missive, he answered: 'I can make for myself no better choice than Abd Allah Ibn Tâhir (vol. II. p. 49).'' Al-Mâmûn then said to Abd Allah: 'His choice has fallen on you, so you must go out to him.' The other replied:
"Commander of the faithful! must I become the associate of a parasite?" The khalif answered: "I cannot possibly turn him from his intention; but you have the choice of going out to him or of avoiding that obligation by paying a fine."—"I shall give him ten thousand dirhems (£. 500)," exclaimed Abd Allah.—"I do not think," said al-Mâmûn that, for so small a sum, he will forego the pleasure of your company." Abd Allah then offered ten thousand more, and then another ten, whilst the khalif continued to say: "I do not think that enough for him."—When the offer mounted up to one hundred thousand dirhems, al-Mâmûn said: "Send them to him quickly." Abd Allah wrote a draught on his intendent for the sum and sent it off by a messenger. Al-Mâmûn then said (to al-Yazîdi): "In the present case, it is better for you to accept this sum than to carouse with Abd Allah Ibn Tâhir whilst he is in his present state."—Al-Yazîdi consented to receive the money. He (al-Mâmûn?) was very adroit in every thing he did.—Abû Ahmad Ja'far al-Balkhi (10) relates, in his book (11), that al-Yazîdi asked al-Kisâî's opinion respecting the following verses:

I do not think that a kharâb can be hatched from its egg by a falcon. The air is not a horse's foal (it is but) a foal.

—The word kharâb signifies a male bustard (12), and aîr means the male of the onager.—Al-Kisâî answered that (the last of the words) foal ought to be in the accusative, because it is the object of the verb to be (which, in Arabic, governs the accusative) (13); so, that being admitted, there is, in the rhyme, a fault of the kind called ikwâ (14).—"Nay," replied al-Yazîdi, "the verse is correct, for the phrase finishes with the second is not, which merely serves to corroborate the first. After these words, the poet enunciates a new proposition and says: The foal (is but) a foal." He then (bowed so low that he) struck the floor with his bonnet and exclaimed: "(It is) I, Abû Muhammad (who say so!)," Yahya Ibn Khâlid the Barmekide (who was there present, felt scandalised at this conduct and) said to him: "How dare you (be so familiar as to) pronounce your surname in the presence of the Commander of the faithful? By Allah! al-Kisâî's mistake joined to his good breeding, is better than your right answer, joined to your unpoliteness." To this, al-Yazîdi answered: "The sweetness of my triumph put me off my guard."—I must here observe that al-Kisâî was wrong in saying that the verse contained an ikwâ, for, in the technical language of the prosodians, the term ikwâ designates specially...
a change in the grammatical inflexion (or vowel) which accompanies the letter (or consonant) forming the rhyme, and this change consists in nothing more than the substitution of an o (the sign of the nominative) for an i (the sign of the genitive) or vice versa; that is, one of the rhyme-consonants takes an o and the other an i; but if the discordance exist between two verses, so that one rhyme-consonant takes an a (the sign of the accusative) and the other an o or an i, that irregularity is not called an ikวด but an isrḑf. — Abū 'l-Alâ al-Maarri (vol. I. p. 94) alludes to these irregularities in one of his longer poems containing a lament on the death of the sharif at-Tâhir, the father of ar-Rida (vol. III. p. 118) and of al-Murtada (vol. II. p. 256); he thus describes the croaking of the raven:

It is modelled on the itā and is devoid of ik куд, of ikfā and of isrḑf (15).

This verse being connected (by its meaning) with those which precede, cannot be rendered intelligible unless the others be cited, and that we think unnecessary to do here. I merely quote it as an example; that is all. Some say that the isrḑf is a variety of the ik куд; if that be so, al-Kisâî was right in what he said.—This paragraph is a superfluity, but contains some useful information.—The greater part of al-Yazdi’s poetry is good. Hârûn Ibn al-Munajjim (vol. III. p. 604) speaks of him in the Kitâb al-Bârî and gives some fragments of his composition; such, for instance, are the following satirical lines, directed against al-Asmâî al-Bâhili (vol. II. p. 123):

You who pretend to draw your origin from Asmâî, tell me how you are connected with that noble race? Are you not a man whose genealogy, if verified, proves that you descend from Bâhilî (16)?

“‘This last verse,” says Ibn al-Munajjim, “‘is one of the most satirical which have ‘been composed by the later poets.” ” I may add that the idea contained in it is borrowed from the following verse in which Hammâd Ajrad (vol. I. p. 474) attacked Bashshâr, the son of Burd (vol. I. p. 254):

You call yourself the son of Burd, though you are the son of another man; or, grant that Burd married your mother; who was Burd?

Here is another of his (al-Yazdi’s) satirical pieces:

Be careful not to lose the friendship of Abû 1-Mukâtîl, when you approach (to partake of) his meal. Breaking his crumpet, is, for him, as bad as breaking one of his limbs. His guests fast
against their will and without meaning to obtain the (spiritual) reward which is granted to fasting.

In our article on al-Mubarrad, we have given (vol. III. p. 36) a passage taken from one of al-Yazidi's poems and directed against Shaiba Ibn al-Walid. Amongst the numerous anecdotes and stories which he handed down, we may notice the following: 'A man, pretending to be a Prophet, was arrested and taken before (the "khalif") al-Mahdi: 'Are you a Prophet?' said al-Mahdi. — 'I am,' said the prisoner. — 'To whom were you sent (on a mission)?' — The man replied: 'Did you allow me to go to any person? why, the very moment I received my mission, you cast me into prison!' The khalif laughed and said: 'Go and be converted unto God.' — Al-Yazidi had five sons who became distinguished as men of learning, philologers, poets and narrators of historical anecdotes. Their names were Abū Abd Allah Muhammad, Ibrāhīm, Abū 'l-Kāsim Isma'il, Abū Abd ar-Rahmān Obaid Allah and Abū Yakūb Ishāk. All of them composed works on philology and genuine Arabic. Muhammad, who was the eldest, was also the best poet among them (17). According to Dibil al-Khuza'i (vol. I. p. 507), he was the author of these lines:

Why should you travel about when the person whom you love (and pursue) dwells in a fixed abode? That, assuredly, is an enormous fault. As long as you assist Fortune and Care against yourself, whom can you have to blame? (The lover answered:) I am miserable, yet shall I never think of her with indifference, neither will she be clement, though, by her, I am miserable.

He composed also these lines:

O thou whose dwelling is so far off! thou whose name is always on my tongue and whose image is in my heart (18). The vicissitudes of Fortune may remove thee to a distant land, yet still shall my desires bring near to me thy image.

He composed a great quantity of good poetry and assisted his father in the education of al-Māmūn. In the latter part of his life he became dull of hearing. When al-Māmūn set out for Khorāsān, he (Muhammad al-Yazidi) went with him, and remained in his service after their arrival in the city of Marw. He continued to reside there till the accession of al-Mutasim, whom he then accompanied to Egypt, where he died. His father, Abū Muhammad, died A. H. 202 (A. D. 817-8) in Khorāsān, and probably at Marw, whither he had accompanied al-Māmūn from Baghdad and where the latter had established his residence. — I since found in Abū Amr ad-Dāni's (19) Tabakāt al-Kurra (chronological list of Koran-readers), that he died at Marw
in the year just mentioned, but the author then adds these words: "Ibn al-Munâdî related that, according to what he had heard, he lived to within a few years of a century and died at Basra; but the first statement is the truest." God knows best!
—We have already spoken of his grandson Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Abi Muhammad al-Yazidi (vol. III. p. 50), and given the date of his death with some account of him and of his merit.—Adawi means belonging to the family of Adi, who was the son of Abd-Manât, the son of Odod, the son of Tâbikha, the son of al-Yas, the son of Modar, the son of Nizar, the son of Maadd, the son of Adnân. The descendants of Adi formed a numerous and celebrated tribe. Abû Muhammad al-Yazidi belonged to it in the quality of a maâla; his grandfather, al-Moghira, having been the enfranchised slave of an Adawide woman and having therefore been surnamed al-Adawi.—At the beginning of this article we have explained the meaning of the surname al-Yazidi and mentioned who Yazid was; I need not repeat that account here. Many of al-Yazidi's descendants were men of eminent talent and renown, authors of books and composers of charming and celebrated poems. Some of these pieces I should give here, were I not apprehensive of lengthening this article too much.—The posterity of al-Yazidi were highly proud of the work composed by his son Ibrâhîm and entitled Ma 'tafak lafsuh, etc. (list of homonyms). This treatise contains every term which has different significations. I saw a copy of it in four volumes. It is a most valuable work and affords an evident proof of the vast learning and extensive information possessed by the author. Other good and useful works were composed by the same person. This also may be said of the other members of his family: they composed works which are in great repute.—Yazid the Himyarite, who was the maternal uncle of (the khalîf) al-Mahdi, held a high rank under the Abbasides and acted as governor of Basra and of Yemen in the name of al-Mansûr. He died at Basra, A. H. 165 (A. D. 781-2). It was of him that Bash-shâr Ibn Burd said:

Abû Khâlid! you who, when young, were an able swimmer in the ocean (of generosity), are encamped on its border, now that you are grown old. You were formerly beneficent, but you fell back from that habit, till you went treading in the beaten path of ordinary men. The rank to which you attained is exalted to an extreme degree and, to an extreme also, has your fair renown declined; you are like Abd Allah's cat which, when young, was sold for a dirhem and, when old, for a kirât (30).

After searching uselessly for the anecdote of Abd Allah's cat in the works which I
imagined would have contained it, I consulted the persons who were versed in those matters, but could obtain no information on the subject. I then met with the following verses, the author of which was al-Farazdak (vol. III. p. 612):

I saw other people increase in honour, day by day, whilst your honour gradually declined. (You are) like the cat which, when young, bears a high value and, when old, is cheap.

It was from these verses that Bashshâr borrowed his idea; he did not mean a particular cat, but meant to say that every cat which, when young, was sold dear, lost its value when it grew old.

(1) The manuscripts and the printed editions read ʿAbd Amr, but I follow the excellent copy of the Tabakht al-Kurrd which is in the Bibl. imp., ancien fonds, no 748; see fol. 52.
(2) ʿAbd Hamdân at-Tabibī Ibn Isamīl ad-Dubîl, a native of Baghdad and a teacher of the Korân-reading was noted for the sanctity of his life. His date of his death is not given.—(Tab. al-Kurrd, f. 53.)
(3) ʿAbd Shoabī Sālih Ibn Zākī as-Sãhī, a Korân-reader of great authority, died A. H. 261 (A. D. 874-5), aged upwards of ninety years.—(Tab. al-Kurrd, f. 59.)
(4) ʿAbd ʿl-Ḥamīd Ibn ʿOmar, a native of Mosul, a teacher of the Korân-readings and a Traditionist, died A. H. 270 (A. D. 884-5).—(Tab. al-Kurrd, f. 60.)
(5) Our author speaks of this chief at the end of the present article.
(6) The Arabic merely says: He placed al-Mâmūn in his lap.
(7) ʿAbd ʿl-Husayn Ahmad Ibn Jaʿfar al-Manṣûdī, a celebrated Traditionist and Korân-reader, was highly esteemed for the exactitude of his information, his knowledge of history and his acquaintance with pure Arabic. He died in the month of Muharram, 336 (July-August, A. D. 947).—(Tab. al-Kurrd, f. 78.)
(8) Had the word and not been inserted, the phrase would have signified: May God not accept my life, etc.
(9) Such appears to be the meaning of the expression ad-dumūd ghadda, which signifies literally: the world was flourishing.
(10) ʿAbd Ahmad Jaʿfar Ibn Abd Allah al-Balkhi was a doctor of the hanafi sect and the author of some controversial works, the titles of which are given by Hajji Khallīfa, in his Bibliographical Dictionary. The year of his death is not mentioned.
(11) I am unable to indicate the title of this book, the author having composed more works than one.
(12) In Arabic, hubdura. Dr. Shaw has given a description of it in his Travels.
(13) Al-Kisî meant to say that muḥra, which is the last word of the verse and in the nominative case, should have been put in the accusative and pronounced muḥra.—He was mistaken.
(14) For the meaning of this technical term and those which occur farther on, see de Sacy’s Traité de prosodie arabe, and Freytag’s Darstellung der Arabischen Verskunst.
(15) These terms of prosody have probably other significations in the ordinary language, but it is not necessary to indicate them.
(16) “More despicable than a Babilite” was a common proverb among the Arabs.
(17) For an account of the members of the Yezidi family, most of whom were distinguished literary men, see professor Flügel’s Grammatik der Arabischen Sprache, p. 90.
(18) Literally: who are joined to my heart and to my tongue.

(19) See vol. III, p. 445.—One of ad-Dâni’s works is a manual for the student of the Koranic readings and is entitled the Mukni. Its contents have been made known to us by Mr. de Sacy, in the Notices et Extraits, t. VIII. See also t. XX, p. 456 of the same work, in the second part of my translation of Ibn Khal-dûn’s Prolegomena.

(20) By the term kirdt, the poet probably meant to designate the twenty-fourth part of the dirhem.

AT-TIBRIZI

Abû Zakariya Yahya Ibn Ali Ibn Muhammad Ibn al-Hasan Ibn Bistâm as-Shai-bânî at-Tibrizi (a member of the tribe of Shaibân and native of Tauris), generally known by the title of al-Khattib (the preacher), was one of the great masters in (the science of Arabic) philology, and possessed a perfect knowledge of polite literature, such as grammar and philology. He made his studies under Abû 'l-Alâ al-Maarri (vol. I, p. 94), Abû 'l-Kâsim Obaid Allah Ibn Ali ar-Rakki (1), Abû Muhammad ad-Dahhân the philologer (2), and other literary men. He heard Traditions delivered, in the town of Sûr (Tyre), by the legist Abû 'l-Fath Sulaim Ibn Aiyûb ar-Râzi (vol. I, p. 584), Abû ‘l-Kâsim Abd al-Karîm Ibn Muhammad Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Yusûf ad-Dallâl as-Sâwi (3), Abû ‘l-Kâsim Obaid Allah Ibn Ali Ibn Obaid Allah ar-Rakki and others. Traditions were delivered on his authority by the khattîb and hâfiz Abû Bakr Ahmad Ibn Ali Ibn Thâbit (vol. I, p. 75), the author of the History of Baghdad, by the hâfiz Abû 'l-Fadl Muhammad Ibn Nâsir (4), Abû Mansûr Mauhûb Ibn Ahmad al-Jawâllki (vol. III, p. 498), Abû ‘l-Hasan Saad al-Khâir Ibn Muhammad Ibn Sahl al-Andalusi (5) and other distinguished men. A great number of students commenced and finished their education under him. The hâfiz Abû Saad as-Samâni (vol. II, p. 156) speaks of him in the Zail and in the Ansâb; he enumerates his merits and says: "I heard Abû Mansûr Muhammad Ibn Abd al-

Malik Ibn al-Hasan Ibn Khairûn (6), the teacher of the Korân-readings, state that "Abû Zakariya Yahya Ibn Ali at-Tibrizi did not hold a satisfactory conduct; he then "related some things respecting him and said: 'I asked the hâfiz Abû 'l-Fadl Mu-
hammad Ibn Qāsir his opinion of what Ibn Khairūn had said (concerning at-
Tabrīzi's character), but he kept silent as if he would not contradict what had
been said (7), but he at length declared that at-Tibrizī, as a philologer, was a
sure authority and that the information which he handed down was worthy of
credit."—At-Tibrizī composed some instructive works on literature, such as a
commentary on the Hamāsa (vol. I. p. 348), a commentary on al-Mutanabbi's
(vol. I. p. 102) poems, a commentary on Abū 'l-Alā el-Maarri's (vol. I. p. 95)
Diwan entitled Sīkt az-Zand (8), a commentary on the seven Moallakas, a commen-
tary on the Mufaddaliyyat (9), a Tahdīb (or remodeling) of the Gharb al-Hadīth (10),
a Tahdīb of the Islāh al-Mantik (11). He is the author of a good introduction to
grammar, having for object the elucidation of the secrets of that art; this work is
very rare. He composed also a treatise on prosody and rhyme, entitled al-Kāf
(the sufficient), a treatise on the parsing of the Korān, to which he give the title of
al-Mulakkhhas (the summary), and a copy of which I saw in four volumes. His
commentary on the Hamāsa forms three works, the greater commentary, the
middle and the less (12). Other works also were composed by him. We have
related in our article on the Khatīb Abū Bakr Ahmad Ibn Ali what passed between
that historian and at-Tabrīzī, when the latter was studying under him at Damascus
and to that article we refer the reader (13). He (at-Tibrīzī) studied polite literature
at the Nizāmiya college in Damascus. The motive which induced him to go to
Abū 'l-Alā el-Maarri was, that, having procured a copy of Abū Mansūr al-Azhari's
(vol. III. p. 48) Kitāb at-Tahdīb, in four small volumes, he wished to verify the
correctness of its text under the direction of some person well versed in philology,
and Abū 'l-Alā was indicated to him as the fit man. He put the volumes into a
bag and carried them on his back from Tauris to el-Maarra, not having the means
of hiring whereon to ride. The transpiration penetrated from his back into the
books and left on them marks of humidity. They are now in a wakf (14) at
Baghdad and, when a person not acquainted with what happened, sees them, he
thinks that they must have remained for some time under water; these stains are,
however, nothing else that the sweat of at-Tibrīzī. So I find it related in the his-
tory of the grammarians composed by al-Kādi al-Akram Ibn al-Kīftī, the vizir of
Aleppo (vol. II. p. 494). God knows if his account be true! At-Tibrizī went to
Egypt when a young man and had there for a pupil the shāikh Abū '-Hasan Tāhir
Ibn Bābshād, the grammarian (vol. I. p. 647), to whom he communicated some
philological information. He then returned to Baghdad and continued to reside there till the day of his death. He taught from memory a great number of poems which he had learned from the author, Abū 'l-Hasan Muhammad Ibn al-Mozaffar Ibn Muhairiz (15) al-Baghdādi; such, for instance as the following piece, given by as-Samāni in that article of the Zā'il which treats of the Khatib al-Tabrīzī. It is the best known of that poet's productions:

O my two friends! how sweet were the morning draughts which I took on the bank of the Tigris and yet sweeter were those of evening at as-Surat (16). Near these two streams I drank the liquor of a vine; it was like melted coraelian, and they were like liquid pearls. Two moons were then present; one, that the heavens and the other a moon (a young beauty) of the earth; one inspiring desire for the sweets of love, the other enamoured. I kept filling the cup (for that earthly moon) and sipping nectar from her lips whilst she kept filling for me and drinking from my lips. I said to the full moon (of heaven): "Do you know who is this?" and she answered: "I do; it is my twin sister (17)."

These verses are the finest and the most elegant which poetry can Toffer. The idea expressed in the second verse is borrowed from Abū Bakr ad-Dāni Ibn Labbāna (vol. III. p. 192), who said, in a long kastda which he composed in praise of al-Motamid Ibn Abbād (vol. III. p. 182), the sovereign of Seville:

I asked his brother, the (bountiful) ocean, what he thought of al-Motamid, and he answered: He is my brother; but he is always tranquil and sweet.

It was not sufficient for the poet to represent that prince as the brother of the ocean, but he must add that he was tranquil and sweet, whereas, the ocean is agitated and salt. This is an example of pure and original eulogium. The kastda itself begins thus:

She wept on bidding me farewell, and her fellow-travellers knew not whether those tears were drops of dew or pearls fresh (from the shell). She was followed by a band (of maidens),—

Nay! I am wrong;—the word band cannot be said of stars shining through the darkness of night.

This poem is of considerable length, and I therefore abstain from giving it all, lest I should be drawn away from my subject. —The Khatib (at-Tibrizī) related that the following lines were recited to him by the author, who was the Ibn Muhairiz above mentioned:

Maidens of the tribe of Modar! (your companion) Salma is sister to the moon (in beauty). O may Salma never afflict me (with her disdain)! she has abandoned my eyes to unceasing
wakefulness. Whether she turn away from me or towards me, my heart's blood is equally in peril. I have lodged the whiteness of her teeth in the black (core) of my heart and (the pupil) of my eye.

He himself composed some poetry, such, for instance, as the following lines:

Some persons are surfeited with a day's travelling, but I am surfeited with dwelling in the same place. I have resided in Irak amongst the vilest of men, descendants of the vile.

He related also that al-Imād al-Faiyād wrote to him as follows:

Say to Yahya, the son of Ali, — though discourse assumes various characters, yet, mine contains neither falsehood nor deception; — (say to him): You are merit in person, when the eyes of men are turned towards merit; true merit has obtained, through you, its real value. All those who once existed are surpassed by you, and those who now exist are fatigued in following your footsteps. You were born under one of those conjunctions which occur after a lapse of many centuries. Other men, compared with you, are as cloudy weather compared to a clear sky. When inquiries are made respecting them, the accounts received are various; from what we have heard and seen, (some are like) level plains and (others like) rugged ground. If we weighed against you all who ever existed, (we would find you to be) a king (and them mean) artisans. What are now (the tribes of) Shaibān and Azd? all said respecting them is mere conjecture. You are the stem of (the tree of) learning and other men are only its branches. You are the ocean, and the men most distinguished for their merit are mere springs of water. The sword, if put (حمل) to the test, is far superior to scabbards. The moalla is not equal to the fadd, neither is Hajjūn to be compared with Mekka's temple (18). Mirth and levity may amuse, but serious affability is far above them. White females and brown are not on an equality in beauty. A married female may please, but nothing is so charming as a young virgin. I said to the envious: "Be whatever you wish to be; he who shoots farthest obtains the prize, "whether you be proud or humble." May your life endure as long as the definition of motion differs from that of rest! May your wishes be accomplished as long as birds dwell in nests! My affection for you has been carefully preserved from all admixtures which alter affection; in me its exterior manifestation is not in discord with the interior; nay, the love which my heart bears towards you is formed of sincerity. Make a wager (about it), for wagers are sometimes made on love-matters; if one man be deceitful, another is sincere.

Ibn al-Jawālīki (vol. III. p. 498) relates that his shaikh the Khatib Abū Zakariya (at-Tibrizī) said to him: I then wrote to al-Imād al-Faiyād these verses:

Say to al-Imād, the brother of high eminence: I am but a drop of water from your overflowing ocean. You have raised me to honour and gained me high renown, in bestowing on me so ample a vestment of açologium. Out your gracious bounty you have clothed me in a raiment of poetry, and I, proud of that attire, have marched about in the height (of glory) and in the gardens (of delight). I here give you a pebble in return for a pearl which was the produce of a cultivated mind. My genius would be at a stop, did it attempt any thing similar;
it could hardly produce a fraction (of such excellence as yours). How could a streamlet compete with the vast ocean? how could a pebble be compared with a pearl? You, the able horseman in (the career of) that jewel-adorned poetry and that prose which dissipate even the pains of sickness! you who, by your abilities, aim at the highest point (of perfection and attain it) I know that my talent cannot reach so far. Impose not upon me the task of giving you fitting praise; such a duty I am unable to fulfil. My talent has been always too feeble for poetry; I have often turned away from making verses, and even with great aversion. Be then so kind as to excuse me; I avow that, compared with your abundance, talent like mine is poverty.

At-Tibrizi was born in the year 421 (A.D. 1030); he died suddenly at Baghdad, on Tuesday, the 27th of the latter Jumâda, 502 (1st Feb., A.D. 1109), and was interred in the cemetery at the Abrez gate.—In Bistâm, the letter b is followed by an i.—We have already spoken of Shaibani (vol. I. p. 85) and of Tibrizi (vol. II. p. 644); so, we need not repeat our observations.

(1) Abû 'l-Kâsim Obaid Allah Ibn Ali Obaid Allah Ibn Zunain (زین) ar-Rakki (a native of Rocca, in Mesopotamia) and an inhabitant of Baghdad, was highly distinguished for his talents. He was versed in grammar, Arabic philology, polite literature and the art of calculating inheritance shares. He composed also a work on the theory of the rhyme, in prosody. One of his masters was Abû 'l-Alâ al-Maarrî. His death took place in the year 450 (A.D. 1058-9).—Suyûtî’s Biographical Dictionary of grammarians and literary men; ms. of the Bibl. imp., supplement n. 688.

(2) Our author has already noticed an Abû Muhammad Said Ibn al-Mubârak ad-Dâhhân (vol. I, p. 574), a grammarian of great celebrity; but the Abû Muhammad ad-Dâhhân of whom he speaks here, lived in the preceding century, and was the son of Muhammad Ibn Ali. He was an able grammarian, versed in Arabic philology, jurisprudence and the Korân-readings. In his lectures on jurisprudence, he adhered to the system followed in Irâk (the doctrine of Abû Hanîfâ), and, in dogmatic theology, he followed the system of the Motafilets. He taught also the Traditions and had at-Tibrizi for a pupil. He was very negligent in his dress.


(3) Various readings: as-Sayyâdî, as-Sayyâdî.

(4) Abû 'l-Fadl Muhammad Ibn Nâsir, one of the great Traditionists of Irâk, was born A.H. 467 (A.D. 1074 5). He became eminent as a grammatical, philologist, legist and historian. He died in the month of Sha‘bân, A.H. 550 (October, A.D. 1155).—(Tabakât al-Huffûdz.)

(5) Abû 'l-Hasan Saâd al-Khâir Ibn Muhammad al-Ansâri, a native of Valencia in Spain, received also the surname of as-Sîn (the Chinese), because he had gone to China in search of traditional information. After encountering many dangers in his travels, he fixed his residence in Baghdad, where he studied jurisprudence under the celebrated doctor Abû Hâmid al-Ghazzâli. Subsequently to a journey made to Ispâhân, where he heard Traditions taught by the doctors of that city, he returned to Baghdad, studied the belles-lettres under Yahyâ at-Tibrizi and died there, in the month of Muharram, 541 (June-July, A.D. 1148).—(Al-Mukkârî, Arabic text, vol. I, p. 898.)

(6) Abû Mansûr Muhammad Ibn Abd al-Malik Ibn Khairûn, a native of Baghdad and teacher of the Korâ-
readings, was noted for the surety of his information and the sanctity of his life. He composed a work on the readings, entitled al-Miftah (the key) and died in the month of Rajab, A. H. 539 (January, A. D. 1145), at an advanced age.—(Tabakât al-Kurdi, n. 742, fol. 148.)

(? Tabrizi's moral character does not appear in the best light, if we may judge after a piece of verse composed by him and given farther on. Ibn Khairûn must have been often scandalized by facts of this nature, as the most eminent doctors and many of the sovereigns who patronized poets and literary men, took the greatest pleasure in composing and listening to poems which cannot be transferred, undisguised, into any European language. Ibn Khalilīn himself cites, with complacency, verses which do not admit of a literal translation. Amongst the Muslim princes, ulëmd, kādis and poets, there were probably but few who could say, with Ovid: Amore puerorum tangor minus.

(8) See de Sacy's Chrestomathie arabe, t. III, p. 90.

(9) The Mufaddaliyyat is a collection of ancient poems. An edition of this rare and precious compilation with al-Marzūki's commentary, is to be published at Berlin by Mr. Gosche.

(10) Ghādib al-Hadîth means rare and obscure expressions occurring in the Traditions. A number of works were composed on this subject, but the most noted was that of Abû Obaid al-Kāsim Ibn Sallâm (vol. II, p. 487).

(11) The work entitled lslâh al-Mantîk (correction of discourse) was composed by Ibn as-Sikkîl, a philologer whose life will be found in this volume.

(12) Tabrizi's middle commentary on the Hamdua is that which has been published by Freytag. It is frequently diffuse and unsatisfactory. The information borrowed by the author from his predecessors is often very useful, but his own communications are generally philological futilities. In explaining the verses of the text, he darts on what is simple and evident, but seldom attempts to clear up a real difficulty.

(15) The passage to which our author refers is not to be found in any of the manuscripts. It is absent also in the printed editions.


(16) According to some MSS. Nafrî. The person who bore this name is not noticed in the works consulted by the translator.


(17) In this translation the word sister is placed for brother and the gender of certain pronoms has been changed. For the reason, see note (?).

(18) The Arabs of the desert made use of ten arrows in casting lots; each arrow had a particular mark and a particular name. That which gained the entire pool was called the ma'allâ; that which entitled the drawer to one seventh of the pool was called the fadd.—Hajûn was the name of a valley near Mekka.
IBN MOTI AZ-ZAWAWI

Abû l-Husain Yahya Ibn Abd al-Moti (1) Ibn Abd an-Nûr az-Zawâwi, surnamed Zain ad-Din (the ornament of religion), was a member of the Hanefite sect and one of the great masters of the age as a grammarian and a philologer. He resided at Damascus for a long time and had a great number of pupils to whom his tuition was highly profitable. Some useful works were composed by him (2). Having removed to Misr (Old Cairo), on the invitation of al-Malik al-Kâmîl (vol. III. p. 240), he opened a course of literature in the mosque called al-Jâmi‘l-Attûk, and received, for his pains, a fixed salary. He remained there till his death; he died in New Cairo, towards the end of the month of Zû ‘l-Kaada, 628 (September, A. D. 1231), and was buried, the next day, on the border of the Khandak (fosse) which is in the vicinity of the imâm as-Shâfi‘i’s mausoleum. His tomb is still to be seen. He was born in the year 564 (A. D. 1168-9).—Zawâwi means belonging to the Zawâwa (Zoaves), a great tribe which, with its numerous branches and subdivisions, inhabits the country outside of Bejâya (Bugia), a government (town) in the province of Ifrikiya.

(1) It is probably by error that this surname is here written Ibn Abd al-Moti. In the grammar of Ibn Malik, verse 5, and in the first verse of the author’s own grammar (see Hâjji Khalifa’s Bibliographical Dictionary, vol. I. p. 415) we read Ibn Moti, and such is the appellation by which he is generally known. In the Biographical Dictionary of the grammarians by as-Suyûtî, the surname given to him is also Ibn Moti.

(2) His grammatical treatise entitled the Alfya, because it consisted of about one thousand verses, was in great repute till outdone by the treatise of Ibn Malik which bears the same title. The Fasîl or aphorisms, another of Ibn Moti’s grammatical works, had a great number of commentators.

YAHYA IBN AL-MUNAJJIM

Abû Ahmad Yahya was the son of Ali, the son of Yahya, the son of Abû Mansûr, surnamed al-Munajjim (the astrologer), and whose real name was Abbân
BIODIGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

Hasds, the son of Urid, the son of Kâd, the son of Mihânidâd Hasis, the son of Farrûkhâdâd, the son of Asâd, the son of Mihr Hasis, the son of Yezdegird (the last of the Sassanide kings of Persia). He commenced his career as a boon companion of al-Muwaffak Abû Ahmad Talha, the son of the khalif al-Mutawakkil and the father of the khalif al-Motadid Billah. Al-Muwaffak never became khalif, but acted as the lieutenant of his brother, al-Motamid ala-Allah, and was constantly engaged in fighting against the Karmats. As his achievements in this war are well known and would furnish matter for a long narration, this is not a fit place for relating them. After (the death of) al-Muwaffak, Yahya (Ibn al-Munajjim) became the boon companion of the succeeding khalifs and, more particularly, of al-Muktafi Billah, the son of al-Motadid. He attained to a high rank in that prince's favour and was preferred by him to all the other courtiers and table-companions. He professed those doctrines of scholastic theology which were received by the Motazelites and wrote a number of treatises on that subject. Sittings were held by him in the presence of al-Muktafi, and many schoolmen attended them. Amongst the numerous works composed by him, we may notice the Bâhir (eminence), containing the history of such poets as had flourished under the two dynasties (that of the Omaiyides and that of the Abbâsides). It begins by an article on Bashshâr Ibn Burd (vol. I. p. 254) and ends with another on Marwân Ibn Abi Hafsa (vol. III. p. 343). His son Abû 'I-Hasan Ahmad Ibn Yahya terminated this work, which had been left unfinished, and had the intention of adding to it an account of all the modern poets. He, in consequence, gave in it notices on Abû Dulâma (vol. I. p. 534), Wâliba Ibn al-Hubâb (vol. I. p. 395), Yahya Ibn Ziâd (vol. II. p. 403), Muti Ibn Iyâs (vol. I. p. 438) and Abû Ali al-Hasir. Abû 'I-Hasan was a scholastic theologian and, as a legist, he adhered to the system of jurisprudence drawn up by Abû Jaafar at Tabari (vol. II. p. 597). The (other) works composed by him were, a history of his own family, in which he traced its origin up to the Persians, the Ilmâda (general agreement) treating of al-Tabari's system of jurisprudence, a Mudkhil (or introduction) to the study of that system and a vindication of its principles, a Kitâb al-Aukât (treatise on the hours of prayer (?), etc. His father, Yahya, had many curious and amusing encounters with al-Motadid; such, for instance as that which Abû 'I-Hasan Ali Ibn al-Husain Ibn Ali al-Masûdi (vol. II. p. 618) gives in his Murdâj ad-Dahab: "Yahya Ibn al-Munajjim," says he, "related as follows: I was one day in the presence of al-Motadid, who was then in an angry mood. His mauwa, Badr,
whom he was very fond, came in, and the khalif, having distinguished him at a considerable distance, laughed aloud and asked me who was the poet that said:

"In her face is an intercessor which obliterates the wounds she inflicted on our hearts; whenever she intercedes, she is heard with deference?"

"I replied: 'It was al-Hakam Ibn Amr as-Sāri (1) who said so.' On this, he exclaimed: 'He has expressed the thought admirably well! let us hear the whole piece.'—I, in consequence, recited to him these lines:

"O! how suffer from a person who has driven away my sleep, so that it will return no more, and who has added fresh torments to those which afflicted my heart! The sun seems to be rising out of her shoulders, so handsome is her face; or rather, the moon is rising out of her buttoned vest. She is looked on with kindness by her lover, despite the wrongs he suffered from her (cruelty), and whatever she does is forgiven. In her face is an intercessor which obliterates the wounds she inflicted on our hearts; whenever she intercedes, she is heard with deference."

Abū ʿl-Fath Ibn Kushājim (vol. I. p. 301), the celebrated poet, says, in that chapter of his work entitled al-Masādīd waʾl-Malārid which treats of hunting lions with arrows, that Abū Ahmad Yahya Ibn Ali Ibn Yahya al-Munajjim, who was the boon companion of (the khalif) al-Muktafi Billah, related as follows: 'The Commander of the faithful, al-Muktafi Billah, was displeased with me because, when he was about returning from ar-Rakka, I set out before him and made the first stage of the journey by water. This I had been induced to do by Abū ʿl-Abbās Ahmad, the son of Abd as-Samād (vol. II. p. 143) who asked me go in the same boat with him. I did not think that the khalif would be displeased by my doing so or offended at my leaving him and staying away. When we arrived at (the town of) ad-Dālīa, he gave orders that I should be taken back to Karkisiya and remain there till I had killed a lion and sent it to him. I was therefore obliged to return, and a number of the vocal musicians, who had taken the water-conveyance, were sent back with me. I then wrote to the khalif some verses, but could not induce him to relent; so, I returned to ar-Rahaba, and there went to lodge with Abū Muḥammad Abd Allah Ibn al-Ḥasan Ibn Saʿdī al-Kutrubulli. I passed the time with him in the enjoyments of life; and we had drinking parties, morning, noon and night. He was highly pleased with my society. One of our companions was Abū Jaʿfar Muḥammad Ibn Sulaimān, the grandson of (the vizir) Muḥammad Ibn
'Abd al-Malik az-Za'yiţ (vol. III. p. 249). I then wrote from ar-Rahaba to the vizir 'Abû 'l-Husain al-Kâsim Ibn Obaid Allah (vol. II. p. 299-300) and, in my letter, I enclosed a piece of verse which I requested him to read to al-Muktâfi. It ran as follows:

"Fortune would rather perish than procure us pleasure and unite us with our friends. She struck me and my brethren with an arrow which scared our souls and left them quite appalled. We were sent back when the rest of the company went forward on their way, and then our affliction was extreme. Were we told of such a misfortune as ours happening to any other, the recital would fill us with terror. We were ordered to hunt lions and, for my part, I should think it fortunate if the lion did not hunt us. Were we to disobey, then, you would find this proverb justified: What people can obey if taskèd above their force?

Every task may be imposed on a man except that which is impossible. Princes are always fond of jesting, but their jests are accompanied with speedy favours. The vizir neglected us, and we were ruined: a man's deserts (even) in serving the cause of God, are (sometimes) unrequited. We stretched forth our hands to him, and our hopes took refuge in his bounty. He is an intercessor whose prayer is never rejected, even when the request of the ablest intercessor is not granted. The sports of kings bring on familiarity and fructify into gifts of real value (3). You, the director of the khâliûf's empire! Render us a service and speak to him in our favour: the best of men is he who is the most obliging.

This letter was put into the government letter-bag and sent off with Muhammad Ibn Sulaimân, the dispatch-bearer. When (the vizir) al-Kâsim received it, he did not lay it out of his hand till he went in to al-Muktâfi and read to him both it and the poem. (The khâliûf) found the verses very good and gave orders that a letter should be immediately sent off, authorizing me to depart from the place where I was and to have myself provided with a conveyance, so that I might proceed to the (khâliûf's) court. In a very short time, the messenger brought me the letter and I started off. On arriving in Baghdad, I recited to al-Muktâfi the following verses:

"The nights which appeared to me so short in the Karkh (a suburb) of Baghdad, seemed very long when I was in Karkisiya. Was it well done to depart and leave me there, like a pledge, me a stranger and unwell! I was the only one punished, yet I had accomplices in my fault; but patience! God is the only protector I require. If God grant that I return safe to Baghdad, before grief kills me, and, if he let me see that the khâliûf al-Muktâfi, the descendant of the khâliûfs, he on whom our hopes are fixed, is still for me as he was, neither shewing me aversion nor disapprobation nor altered sentiments, then indeed, all the pains I suffered will appear light because they were inflicted with a good intention.

The khâliûf admired this piece and was much touched with its contents; I percei-
"ved even from his looks and tone of voice that he pitied me."—The anecdotes told of him are numerous and many of his productions are beautiful. He was born in the year 241 (A.D. 855-6), and he died on the eve of Monday, the 13th of the first Rabî, A.H. 300 (28th October, A.D. 912).—We have already spoken of his father Ali (vol. II. p. 312), of his brother Harûn (vol. III. p. 604) and of his nephew Ali (vol. II. p. 313). I did not then trace up their genealogy, not having discovered it till I was drawing up the present article. I give it here as I found it written in the Fihrist (vol. I. p. 630) of Abû 'l-Futûh Muhammad Ibn Ishak an-Nadîm, but I do not attempt fixing the orthography of the proper names, not having the means of verifying them; so I transcribe them here as I found them.

(1) In some of the manuscripts this name is written ask-Shdrî.
(2) Literally: saleable.

ABU BAKR IBN BAKI

Abû Bakr Yahya Ibn Muhammad Ibn Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Bakt, a celebrated poet and a native of Cordova in Spain, was the author of the muwashshahât (stanzas, sonnets) which are so much admired. Al-Fath Ibn Muhammad Ibn Obaid Allah al-Kaisi (vol. II. p. 455), speaks of him in these terms, in his Matmah al-Anfus (1): "He was expert in verse and prose, firm and regular in the texture of his style (2); he possessed (great) qualities and, by the beauties of his (productions), he embel-
lished the morning (assemblies and those of) the evening. In the career of perfection, he sped on and reached the goal, and he built (edifices) of information on the most solid columns. But Fortune refused him her favours, cut and severed the cord of his pasturing (in the enjoyments of life); she accomplished none of his projects, neither did she shed on him one drop of prosperity. She granted not to him (سً) a just share of respect, and established him not in the fertility of a (rich) pasture-ground. He therefore became a rider (a cresser) of mountains, a traverser of deserts; never halting for a single day and never finding people with
"whom he had a right to be pleased. And moreover, his mistrustful imagination was "not to be overcome by (the assurance of) safety; his mind was (fickle and) unstable, "like the pearls of a broken necklace. (This continued) till Yahya Ibn Ali Ibn al- "Kasim (3) snatched him out of that vacillation, granted to him the means of sub-

sistence, raised him to the heaven in which he himself stationed, watered him "with the stream of his bounty, furnished to him a retreat under the shelter of his "(patronage) and prepared for him a path of comfort in which he might expatiate "(as he liked). He (Ibn Bakt) lavished on him therefore (the finest of) his sayings, "and, in return for many gifts, ennobled him in his rhymes, bestowed on him "exclusively the most precious pearls (of poetry) and adorned his breast with the "collars of brilliant kasidas." The same author speaks of him again in the Kaldid al-Ikiydan and says: "It was he who bore aloft the standard of poetry, who pos-

sessed the talent (4) of open declaration and indirect allusion; it was he who estab-

lished the rules of that (art) and revealed its beauties; the (expressions the most) "untractable became obedient to his will. When he drew up verses, he put to shame "the row of pearls on a necklace, and produced (a poem) more beautiful than robes of "flowered silk; and (yet) his evil fortune domineered (لا) over him, and the "days of his (existence) never brightened up." —The following piece is attributed to Abû Bakr (Ibn Bakt), but I do not find it given by al-Fath in either of the above mentioned works. It is, however, a very fine poem, one of the best composed by the author and the most generally known:

Dearer to me than the life of my father is that gazelle (maiden) whom my eyes saw with admi-

ration, (as she roamed) between al-Ozaib and the banks of the (river) Bârik. I asked her to let me gaze yet longer and thus allay the thirst of my passion, and she answered by a promise soon to be fulfilled. We passed the night in darkness, under a canopy adorned with brilliant stars, and, whilst the night swept on, I handed to her (liquor,) dark as musk and, like it, fragrant to the smell. I held her to me (as closely) as the warrior grasps his sword; and her two long ringlets hung, like the sword-belt, round my neck. At length, drowsiness overcame her and I removed her (a little) from me whilst she clasped me in her arms. I placed her at a distance from the heart which loved her, so that she might not have under her head a palpitating pillow. When I saw the night drawing towards its end and perceived that its (dark) locks and the crown of its head were turning grey, I bade adieu to my beloved and said, with a sigh: "Give me the pain of seeing you depart."

The ḥāfiz Abû `l-Khattâb Ibn Dihya (vol. II. p. 384) has inserted some of these verses in the work which he entitled: Al-Mutrib min Ashâr ahl il-Maghrib (volume of amusement, extracted from poems composed by natives of the West). Another of Ibn
Baki's poems is a long *kāstāda* in which he praises Yahya Ibn Ali Ibn al-Kāsim, the same person who has been already mentioned in this article. Here is an extract from the eulogistic part:

There are two lights which cannot be hidden from mortals: nobleness of character and beauty of aspect. Both are united in Yahya; so, let him renounce to the (attempt of) concealing that superiority which is evident to all. In every land, his praises spread a perfume which surpasses that of the penetrating vapours arising from the censer. Add to his qualities; add to his generosity; you might as well add leaves to the forest, water to the rain-cloud (5). On that generous man rests the calm of gravity joined so such courage as is displayed by the lion in his den. He is like the sword which, even when hidden in the scabbard, appals the hearts of those who inhabit towns. He surpasses (in bounty) the dark cloud, shedding its rains without interruption; he bestows as it does, but prayers are never offered up to obtain his beneficent showers. He puts to shame the copious ocean; for, in each of his hands, are five seas. I am come to obtain a share of your beneficence, which is as the pouring forth of the rains, or rather, the pure water of paradise. I saw that the contenance of prosperity, near you, was (smiling and) white, and therefore, to reach you, I rode across the green waters of every sea. Towards you speeded the ship which bore an able poet (الَّذِي يَغْلِبُ نَاسٍ); it was (obedient), as the camel which is guided by a halter fastened to its nose. The daughters of Awaj (6) were fatigued with bearing me company; so many were the solitary deserts which they had to cross.

The author of the *Kalālid al-Ikīyān* gives the following fragment of a piece by the same author:

O thou who, of all mankind, art the most killing in glances and the sweetest in kisses! since when are aloes and honey combined in thee? Thy cheek is like the rising sun and, on its surface, is a rose to which wine and modest shame add fresh colours. Love for thee is, for my heart, an article of belief, and is confirmed by the letters which issue from thy cheeks and by the messengers coming from thy glances. If you know not that I have lately lost my liberty, command me what thou wilt: I shall do it and obey. Couldst thou see my heart, thou wouldst perceive therein a wound not yet healed up and inflicted by thy glances.

The *Kātib Imād ad-Din* (vol. III. p. 300) mentions him in the *Khartāda* and inserts there some extracts from his poems; then, at the end of the book, he speaks of him again and gives, as his, the following verses:

In a goblet was a cool (wine) which (in aspect,) resembled a cornelian sky, studded with stars. (*That liquor*) has built a *kaaba* (temple) for pleasure in the *haram* (sacred ground) of youth, and, to it, sports hasten on their pilgrimage from every side.

The poetry of Ibn Baki offers numerous beauties. He died A. H. 540 (A. D. 1145).—The word *Bakī* (بَكِّيَ) takes an a and a double t.
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

(1) Abū 'l-Fath, better known by the surname of Ibn Khākān, wrote in a style so affected, so full of obscure expressions and so extravagant in its metaphors, that the reader is very often in doubt respecting the true meaning of those turgid and pompous phrases. The extracts taken by Ibn Khallikān from his works have not been always reproduced correctly by the copyists, who evidently understood very imperfectly what they were writing. That may be seen in comparing the text of the passage here cited with that which al-Makkari, in his History of Spain, vol. II, p. 291 of the Arabic edition, gives of the same passage. The translation here offered is probably not always exact.

(3) Literally: numerous in the knotting of his threads and in the irregularity.

(3) I can find no information respecting this Yahya Ibn Ali Ibn al-Kāsim, but, from his names, I am almost inclined to suppose that he descended from the Hammūdite branch of the Idrīcide family.

(4) Literally: the sign; which probably means the distinguishing mark.

(5) The last hemistich, rendered literally, signifies: between the grove and the rain-cloud.

(6) Awaj was the name of a horse celebrated for his good qualities and the excellence of his breed.

MUIN AD-DIN AL-HASKAFI

Abū 'l-Fadl Yahya Ibn Salama Ibn al-Husain Ibn Muhammad, surnamed Muin ad-Dīn (aider of the religion) and generally known by the title of al-Khatib al-Haskafi (the preacher of Hisn Kaifa), is the author of a diwān containing poems, exhortations and epistles. Born at Tanza, he was brought up at Hisn Kaifa, whence he removed to Baghdad. In that city, he studied literature under the Khatib Abū Zakariya al-Tibrizī (page 78 of this vol.) and, by the solid information which he thus acquired, he rose to distinction. He studied also, with success, the Shāfite system of jurisprudence. Having left Baghdad with the intention of returning to his native place, he stopped at Maiyāfārikīn, where he fixed his residence and filled the office of a khattāb. He acted also as a mufti (expounder of the law) and gave public lessons which were highly profitable to those who attended them. The Kātib Imād ad-Dīn (vol. III, p. 300) mentions him in the Khartda and says: 'In science, the most learned man of the time; in talent for poetry and prose, the Maarri (vol. I, p. 94) of the epoch; his were the elegant assonances and the admirable paronomasias, the parallelisms and (their) exactitude, the style firm and delicate, the thoughts simple and profound, the perfect takṣīm (the expression of different ideas in the same verse) and
"the talent (of which the renown was) widely spread and lasting." The same writer then says, after making a long eulogium of the poet and enumerating his merits: "I wished to meet with him, and flattered myself that, on my arrival at Mosul, I should see him; for I was ardently desirous of instruction and most assiduous in frequenting men of talent, for the purpose of augmenting my acquirements. But the length of the journey and my inability of supporting fatigue were obstacles which prevented our meeting." He then gives a number of passages extracted from the poems of this author and, amongst them, the following:

I passed the evening in reprimanding a dissolute fellow, but he took my reproaches as a jest: "Wine," said I, "is a bad thing."—"He replied: "God preserve it from turning bad!"—"It brings on obscene discourse," said I.—"The pleasure of life is in such discourse," said he.—"It excites vomition," said I.—"I honour it," said he, "too well to discharge it by the ordinary passage; but, after all, I shall give it up."—"When?" said I.—"When I am laid in the tomb."

I may here observe that the Khatib borrowed the expression: discharging by the ordinary passage, from another poet with whose name I am unacquainted, but who composed the following (five) verses which are currently known:

A censor reproached me for loving wine, and I answered: "I shall drink it whilst I live and even in my grave. Arise! pour me out a liquor, red, clear and pure; though it is forbidden, I care not. Casuists declare that it is lawful when boiled down; but I have in my stomach a fire which will reduce it to one third (1). If they ask me why I cast it up, my answer is: I respect it too much to discharge it by the ordinary passage."

Imād ad-Din al-Ispahāni adds: "A person of merit recited to me, at Baghdad, some verses similar to the five which are so currently known. They are much admired for their natural turn and the art with which they are composed. Here they are:

"I complain of the two fires (which consume me); one proceeding from the cheeks of my beloved, and the other lighted up by her in my heart. (I complain) of two maladies; one which her glances have excited in my blood, the other which is settled in my body. (I complain) of two delators; one is my tears which, when I think of her, betray my secret; the other, the spy who always watches over her. (I complain) of a double weakness; one is that of my patience, when I think of her and of my love; the other, that of people who think her obedient to my will. She is so thin and slender that I exclaim, in admiration: Is that her waist or my little finger? is that her skin or my own?"
One of his good pieces is that in which he satirizes a vocal musician and which we here give:

A musician whose singing reduced him from riches to poverty; such a one I met with in an assembly of persons whom I liked to have for companions. When I saw him, my talent in physiognomy did not deceive me, and I said: "What is that? can such a countenance ever become pleasing?" To remain no longer in doubt respecting him, I spoke from amidst the company, saying: "Come, my man! sing us the air of: O for the days passed at Salā (2); the days passed at Salā are not to be despised." On this, he raised up one of his eyebrows, lowered the other, and emitted from his mouth a fetid gale which filled the room and which, whilst he marked the measure, was, for every soul of us, a cause of annoyance. When he began to speak (sing), a person who was listening in a dark corner of the hall (3) said: "He is not satisfied with modulating and confounding (notes), but must also sing false! There he is for you! will he never have done calling his servant scoundrel and drawing near to us (3)? He pretends to scan (to accent well the words of) the air and only gets more embroiled!" His intonation was a cry frightful beyond the bounds of description (4); he who had sent for him did not foresee the annoyance which the fellow would give to the company. Some of the assembly stopped their noses; others, their ears, and the rest covered their eyes, to avoid seeing him. I was so provoked that I could not refrain from expressing my indignation, and exclaimed: "Listen, sir! I or the singer must be heard! Now I declare that I shall not sit down unless this man be sent away! drag the dog out by the heels! he is (for us) a cause of sickness and malady!" They answered: "You have pitted our sufferings and delivered us from torture." Thus, in sending him out, I secured my own tranquility and obtained the thanks (of the company). When his face was turned from us, I recited this prayer at the head of the assembly: "Praise be to God who has delivered us from affliction."

In our article on the shaikh as-Shâtibi (vol. II. p. 500) we have given a piece of his, forming an enigma the word of which is bier. The idea of it is very good. Most of al-Maskâfi's poetry is remarkable for this kind of wit and for the neat manner in which the thoughts are expressed. He was attached to the Shiite doctrines, as may be easily perceived in his poems.—In the town of Aâmid, were two youths who had a great fondness for each other and were almost always together (5). One of them rode out to the country, set off at a gallop, the horse fell and he was killed. The other immediately sat down to drink wine, was choked by the liquor and died the same day. A literary man spoke of their fate in the following lines:

They shared between themselves the clear draught of life and the troubled draught of death. We never before saw two equal partakers in the same destiny. They continued in mutual love till the last moment of their existence, and seldom does fidelity in love last till the hour of death.
When the Khatib (al-Haskafi) heard these lines, he said: "The poet did not work out the idea, not having mentioned the cause of their death: but I did so in a piece composed on the same occurrence and said:

"(I should have given) my life to save the two brothers who lived in Áámíd and who received the stroke (of death) on a day unlucky and frowning (abús). One was killed by a horse and the other by wine (hándarís).

"Had he said: One was killed by a horse (sáfndát) and the other by liquor (sáfýdát), it would have been much better, on account of the assonance. The poet (adopted this correction and, to preserve the rhyme,) altered the first verse somewhat in this manner:

"My life etc..., who received the stroke of death on a day severe in its evils (adâdát)."

I since found the two first mentioned verses in the Kitáb al-Jindân, a work composed by al-Kádi ar-Rashíd Ibn ar-Zubair (vol. 1. p. 143), who there attributes them to the eminent legist and teacher of the Korán-readings, Abú Ali al-Husain Ibn Ahmad al-Maallim; but I met with the account above given in the handwriting of a contemporary (6).—The Khatib al-Haskafi left some fine moral exhortations and some choice epistles. He continued to hold a high rank (in public estimation) and to teach up to the day of his death. This occurred A. H. 551 (A. D. 1156-7), or in 553, according to another statement. He was born in or towards the year 460 (A. D. 1067-8). — Haskafi means belonging to Hím Kaifa, a strong and lofty castle situated between Jazírat Ibn Omar and Maiyáfárikín. Had this adjective been formed regularly, it would have been al-Hísmi, which term is even sometimes employed; but, when a relative adjective is formed from two nouns one of which governs the other in the genitive, the two are (generally) combined together so as to make one word and from that word the relative is derived, and so it was in the present case. It is thus that from Rús Atín has been formed Rasání; from Abd Allah, Abdali, from Abd Shams, Abshami, and from Abd ad-Dár, Abdari; the same rule applies to all other names of a similar kind. — Tanza (طنزة) is the name of village in Díár Bakr, situated higher up than Djazírat Ibn Omar. It has produced some eminent traditionists and other learned men, all of whom bore the surname of at-Tanzi. The Katib Imád ad-Dtn says, in the Kharída: "From this village came 'Ibráhim Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Ibráhim at-Tanzi, the same who composed these verses:
BIографical DICTIONARY.

"I still love the land of Tanza, though my townsmen, since I left them, deceived my expect-
ations. May God bless that land! could I again see its soil, I should take it as a collyrium
for my eyes, so dearly do I love it."

The same author adds: "This poet was still alive in the mouth of Ramadân,
568 (April-May, A. D. 1173).

(1) The Hanefite doctors declared that the juice of the grape, boiled down to one third of its of primitive
volume, was a lawful drink.
(2) According to the author of the Mārsid, Salā was the name of a place in the neighbourhood of Me-
dina.
(3) The text is here corrupt, the manuscripts offering a number of various readings. The translation is
probably not exact.
(4) The right reading appears to be ُلِكَ لِلْأَلْبَاءِ.
(5) This passage, in parenthesis, is omitted in most manuscripts.
(6) According to another reading: of a Maghrībin.

YAHYA IBN TAMIM AS-SANHAJI

Abû Tâhir Yahya Ibn Tamim Ibn al-Moizz Ibn Bâdis al-Himyari as-Sanhaji (vol. I. p. 283), was a sovereign of Ifrikiya and the neighbouring countries. We have al-
ready spoken of his father (vol. I. p. 281) and traced up their genealogy; some of
his ancestors also have been mentioned in this work. He was appointed to act as his
father's lieutenant at al-Mahdiya, on Friday, the 25th of Zu 'l Hijja, 497 (19th Sep-
tember, A. D. 1104), at the moment in which the seventh degree of Capricorn was
the ascendant. On the day of his father's death, when the supreme authority de-
volved on him, he was aged forty three years, six months and twenty days. He then
rode out (in state), according to custom, with all the officers of the empire around
him, and, on returning to the palace, he gave to every person connected with go-
vernment, such as the courtiers and the (chiefs of the) troops, magnificent robes of ho-
nour to replace the (mourning) dresses which they had put on in consequence of the
death of Tamim. He distributed also to the soldiers (jund) and (armed) negro slaves
large sums of money, and made them most flattering promises. In the Kitāb al-
Jumāl wa-l-Baiydn (collection and exposition) a work treating of the history of Kai-
rawān and composed by Izz ad-Din (the glory of religion) Abd al-Aziz Ibn Shaddād
Ibn Tamīm Ibn al-Moizz. Ibn Bādis, who was the son of Yahya’s brother, I found the
following passage: “The emir Tamīm, a very short time before his death, sent for
his son Yahya, who was then in the government palace (dār al-imāra) with his
officers and companions. Yahya entered with them all, and they found Tamīm in
the treasury room. He told them to sit down and said to one of the company:
‘Arise! go into that closet and look for a book of such and such an appearance;
it is in such and such a place; go and bring it here.’ The man went and
brought the book which, on examination, proved to be a collection of predictions
relative to the fate of empires (1). ‘That is it,’ said he, ‘count off from the be-
ginning so many leaves and read the page to which you come.’ There, the fol-
lowing words were found written: The king against whom treason shall be wrought
(al-malik al-maghḍūr) will be of a lofty stature, have a mole on the right thigh and a
black spot on the left side. The emir Tamīm then told him to shut the book and put
it back into its place. When that was done, he said: ‘Two of those marks I have
already seen, but the third remains to be discovered. Rise up, you, Shatfī! and
you, such a one, and procure me certain information respecting the third.’
They rose up and went with Yahya into a place where they could not be seen by
Tamīm. Yahya them uncovered his body and showed them, on his left side, a spot
shaped like a crescent. They returned to Tamīm and informed him of the cir-
cumstance, on which he said: ‘It is not I but God that has given him (the
power)!’ He then spoke to them in these terms: ‘I shall relate to you an ex-
traordinary occurrence; a slave-merchant offered me for sale the girl who
became that man’s (Yahya’s) mother. I found her handsome and, my mind
being inclined towards her, I purchased her and placed her in the hands of the
attendants of the palace. I then told the merchant to come to me another
time for payment, and I began to consider where I could find money pure (in
the sight of God) and acquired by lawful means, with which I might pay the price.
Whilst I was reflecting on the matter, I heard as-Sâmiki (2) calling out in a loud
voice and requesting permission to speak with me. I passed my head out of the
window and asked him what he wanted. He replied: ‘I was just this moment
digging in the (ruined) palace of al-Mahdi and found there a trunk closed with
"a padlock; so I left it as it was and am come to inform you of the fact." I sent
"with him a person in whom I could confide, and they found in the trunk a quan-
tity of robes embroidered with gold fringes and rotten with age. I ordered the
fringes to be melted down and thus obtained neither more nor less than the
price of the young girl." The persons present were filled with admiration on
hearing this recital and invoked on Tamīm the favour of God. Money and robes
were then distributed to them by his orders; after which, they retired."—Abd al-
Azīz the historian just mentioned, says also: "As to the book of which we have
spoken, I met with it since, in the possession of the sultan al-Hasan, now decea-
sed."—He meant al-Hasan the son of Ali and the grandson of Yahya.—He
then gives, from that book, a number of predictions which received their accom-
plishment. Let us return to our account of Yahya: Once seated on the throne,
he took the direction of affairs, governed his subjects with justice and reduced a
number of fortresses which his father had been unable to take. Abd al-Azīz says,
in his History: "Under his reign,"—that is, the reign of Yahya,—"the Mahdi Mu-
hammad Ibn Tūmart (vol. III. p. 205) arrived from Tripoli at al-Mahdiya, on his
return from the pilgrimage. He stopped at a mosque situated to the south of the
Masjid as-Sabt (the mosque of Saturday), and there a number of people from al-
Mahdiya gathered round him for the purpose of studying, under his direction,
some works treating of the fundamentals of the faith. He then took on himself
the task of putting a stop to the many scandalous acts which were publicly com-
mitted, and Yahya, to whom his conduct was reported, assembled a number of the
legists and had him brought before them. The humble appearance of Ibn Tū-
mart, his squalid dress and his profound learning made such an impression on the
emir that he asked the man for his blessing. The other replied: 'May God pro-
sper thee for the welfare of thy subjects and render their happiness profitable to
thy offspring.' Ibn Tūmart remained but a short time at al-Mahdiya and then
went to al-Monastir where he stopped for a while, and, from that, he proceeded
to Bugia."—In the life of Tamīm, the father of Yahya, we mentioned that Mu-
hammad Ibn Tūmart passed at Bugia whilst that prince was reigning; God knows if
that be true!—Farther on, Abd al-Azīz says: "In the year 507 (A. D. 1113-4),
some strangers arrived at al-Mahdiya and asked for an interview with Yahya;
pretending that they were practitioners of the great art (alchimy) and that they had
attained the end for which that art was instituted.—He allowed them to enter and,
when they appeared before him, he asked to see a specimen of their talent. To
this he replied: 'We can deprive tin of its dimness and its particular sound, so
that it is not to be distinguished from silver. Your Lordship has saddles,
swords, standards, tents and vases worth many quintals of silver; in place of
these we shall give you as much as you wish, as much as you can employ in
the important affairs which engage your attention (3); but you must allow us to
operate (before you) in private.' To this he consented and admitted them to a
place where they might work in his presence. The emir had no person with him
except the Shârîf Abû 'l-Hasan Ali and the general Ibrâhîm, commander of the
cavalry (4). The operators, who were also three in number, had agreed upon a
private signal; and as soon as they found a fair opportunity, one of them called
out: Ddrat al-bûtaka! (the crucible is upset!). Each of them then sprung forward,
with a dagger in his hand, and rushed upon the person opposite to him. The
emir was sitting on a sofa; he who attacked him exclaimed: 'I am a saddes,'
and struck him on the top of the head. The blow cut through some folds of the
turban but inflicted no wound. A second stroke, directed by an unsteady hand
against his breast, merely scratched the skin. The emir then struck the assassin
with his foot and threw him on his back. The servants, hearing the noise, open-
ed the door which gave on the room in which they were, and Yahya, having
gone in to them, bolted that door against his assailant. He who attacked the Shârîf
did not leave off till he killed him. The Kâid Ibrâhîm, having drawn his sword,
continued to fight against the three till the guards broke in the door which was at
their side, entered into the room and slew the assassins. As they wore the Spanish
(Moslim) dress, a number of persons thus attired were massacred in the city. The
emir Yahya went out immediately and walked through the streets till the tumult
was calmed.'—Yahya governed with justice; he was particularly watchful over the
interests of his people and knew exactly what were the receipts and the expenditure
of the administration; following thus the line of conduct which is marked out by an
intelligent mind and a sound judgment. In the books of predictions he is design-
nated by the title of al-Maghâr, and how justly it was applied to him is demonstra-
ted by the occurrence of which mention has been just made. He was well ac-
quainted with history and biography, having read many books treating of these
matters; he was a protector of the weak, kind and charitable to the poor, whom he
always provided with food in times of distress; he admitted into his familiarity the
men of learning and of merit, and kept in such order the (nomadic) Arabs who inhabited his territories, that they stood in awe of him and abstained from giving career to their avidity. He was well-skilled in the practise of astrology and the art of drawing judgments from the stars. His countenance was handsome; over one of his eyebrows was a black spot; his eyes were dark blue, his stature somewhat lofty and his legs thin. He had always at his court a number of poets, who went there to sing his praises and immortalize his renown in their dikāns. One of them was Abū Salīm Omaiyā Ibn Abd al-Azīz Ibn Abī ‘s-Salt, the same of whom we have already spoken (vol. I. p. 228). This poet obtained Yahya’s protection after having travelled over many countries and been lost by fortune from one place to another. He is the author of the well-known epistle which treats of Egypt, its wonders, its poets, etc., and he composed a great number of fine eulogiums on Yahya, on Abū ‘l-Hasan Ali, the son of Yahya, and on al-Hasan Ibn Ali, his grandson. Here is an extract from one of these poems:

Restrain your mind from every passion except that of bestowing and that of fighting: true glory is composed of bravery joined to liberality. Such is the conduct of Yahya, whose gifts revived our expiring hopes, by the fulfilment of his promises. He bestows a whole flock of camels at a time, camels slender-limbed and smooth, or horses sleek and strong, full-grown and robust. His are the lofty mind and the eye proudly glancing; his the tents pitched on a mountain (of glory), on the keystone of the vault in which culminate the Pleiades. When he appears seated (in state) on the imperial throne, you have before your eyes a Joseph (in beauty) stationing in the sanctuary erected by David. The race from which he sprung wore, for their usual clothing, coats of plated mail, and had for dwelling-place the backs of well-trained steeds, obedient to the rein. (They were) envied because they had none to equal them; and where shall we find a great man who is not exposed to envy! One common origin unites you all, but every sort of wood does not give out the perfume of the lignum aloes. I say to the rider who hurries on his camel, traversing the earth, from one desert to another: “Pass not by a source of which the waters are pure; expect not, from the solid rock, a spring to quench your thirst. Here are the fountains of Yahya which never run dry; this is the way which leads to them; it is always open. Let your sword decide your claims; the decision of the sword is not to be rejected (5).”

He composed other poems besides those.—Yahya died on Wednesday, the festival of the Sacrifice, 509 (25th April, A. D. 1116). His astrologer said to him (that) day: “The casting of your nativity to-day announces for you evil fortune; so, do not ride out.” Yahya followed his advice, and his sons proceeded (without him) to the Musalla (vol. I. p. 605), accompanied by the great officers of the empire. When the prayer was over, they all entered into the presence of the
sovereign for the purpose of offering him their salutations, according to the established custom. Chanters then recited passages of the Korân and poets repeated their verses; after which, the company proceeded to the great saloon and partook of a repast. Yahya stood up with the intention of going there but, on reaching the door, he made a sign to one of his slave-girls and leant upon her for support; he had then scarcely made three steps into the room when he fell down dead. His son Ali, whom he had appointed to act as his lieutenant at Sfax, a small town in Ifrikiya, was sent for and, on his arrival, received (from the people) the oath of fidelity. Yahya was buried in the palace (or citadel, kasr), according to custom; but, a year after, his remains were transported to Kasr as-Sîda, one of the castles within the walls of al-Monastir. This town is also in Ifrikiya. He left thirty male children. His son and lieutenant, Ali (Ibn Yahya) was born at al-Mahdiya on Sunday morning, the 15th of Safar, 479 (1st June, A. D. 1086). On the death of his father, who had given him the government of Sfax, the principal officers of the empire assembled and drew up a dispatch in his father's name, ordering him to come to him in all haste. He received this message at night and set out immediately, escorted by some of the chiefs who commanded the (nomadic) Arabs. He travelled with the utmost diligence and arrived on the noon of Thursday, the day after the festival of the Sacrifice. The first thing he did was to hasten the interment of his father and to say over him the funeral prayer. Yahya was buried on Friday morning, the 13th of Zû 'l-Hijja. The new sovereign then held a sitting for the reception of the people; and they all entered and saluted him with the title of emir (îmâra). He then rode out at the head of his troops and bands, after which, he returned to the palace. —It was under his reign that his brother Abû 'l-Futûh, the son of Yahya, went to Egypt, taking with him his wife Bullâra, who was the daughter of al-Kâsim (Ibn Tamâm), and his son al-Abbâs, who was then a child at the breast. On his arrival at Alexandria, he was lodged in a palace and treated with great honour, by the order of al-Aâmîr who, at that time, was the sovereign of Egypt. He died in that city after a very short residence, and Bullâra married al-Aâdîl Ibn as-Sallâr, whose true name was Ali and of whose we have spoken in this work (vol. II. p. 350). When al-Abbâs grew up, he was gradually advanced in dignity by al-Hâfiz, the sovereign of Egypt, and succeeded to al-Aâdîl as vizir. Our professor, Ibn al-Athîr (vol. II. p. 288), has an article in his history, under the head of various events of the year 502, in which he speaks of the three men who went to Yahya under
the pretext of conversing with him on alchemy. According to him, they attacked Yahya, that year, and then occurred what we have related. This event coincided with the coming of Abū 'l-Futūh and his companions fully armed, to the door of the palace; but they were refused admission. "Yahya," says Ibn al-Athīr, "was therefore convinced that they were all in the plot, and ordered Abū 'l-Futūh to be sent with his wife Būllāra to Kasr Zīād (a fortress situated between al-Mahdiya and Sfax), and there kept in confinement. Būllāra was his (Abū 'l-Futūh's) cousin. "On the death of Yahya, his son and successor (Aī) dispatched them by sea to Egypt and they landed at Alexandria." End of the extract.—Things continued to go on prosperously till the death of Aī, who expired on Tuesday, the 22nd of the latter Rāhīm, 515 (10th July, A.D. 1121). He was buried in the Kasr. Before dying, he designated his son Abū Yahya al-Ḥasan Ibn Aī Ibn Yahya as his successor in the supreme authority. Al-Ḥasan was born in the town of Sūsā and in the month of Rajah, 502 (February, A.D. 1109). On the day of his accession, he had attained the age of twelve years and nine months. The day after his father's death, he appeared in public and, having received the salutations and good wishes of the people, he rode out in the midst of his troops. The events which occurred during his reign are too numerous to be related and we shall only notice one of them. Roger the Frank, sovereign of Sicily, took Tripoli of Africa by assault, on Tuesday, the 6th of Muharram, 541 (18th of June, A.D. 1146), massacred all the (male) inhabitants, reduced to slavery the women and children, and seized on all their wealth. He then began to repopulate it and filled it with men and military stores. On Monday, the 12th of Safar, 543 (1st of July, A.D. 1148), he occupied al-Mahdiya, which had been evacuated by al-Ḥasan Ibn Aī. This prince, feeling his inability to resist an attack, had departed from the city, carrying off with him whatever objects of value could be easily transported. All the inhabitants fled with the exception of such as were too feeble to depart. The Franks took possession of the city and found there an immense quantity of money and treasure.—This family produced nine kings; the first, Ziri Ibn Manād (vol. I. p. 550), and the last, al-Ḥasan Ibn Aī, with whom fell the dynasty of the Bādisides, which had subsisted two hundred and sixty-eight years. Al-Ḥasan retired to al-Malga, a strong castle in the neighbourhood of Tunis (and near Carthage), which was then held by Abū Mahfūd Mahrīz Ibn Zīād, one of the Arab chiefs (6). He underwent there such vexation and annoyance from Mahrīz that he did not make a long stay and resolved on going to Egypt and putting
himself under the protection of al-Hāfiz, the Fatimide sovereign of that country. When the officer whom Roger had left in al-Mahdiya as his lieutenant heard of al-Hasan's intention, he set spies to watch his proceedings and fitted out twenty galleys for the purpose of seizing him if he retired by sea. Al-Hasan, being informed of this, gave up his project and resolved on going to Abd al-Mūmin Ibn Ali (vol. II. p. 182), in the city of Morocco. He therefore sent three of his sons to Bugia, a city lying at the extreme limit of Ifrikiya, with directions to ask from Yahya Ibn Aṣīs the sovereign of that city, the permission to set out from thence for Morocco. This prince, fearing that, if al-Hasan reached Abd al-Mūmin, they would both concert some plan detrimental to himself, dissimulated his real intentions and sent back the messengers with a letter filled with a profusion of fair promises and containing these words: "There is no necessity for your going to Abd al-Mūmin; I shall do for you every thing you can desire." Al-Hasan set out, in consequence, for Bugia; but, on arriving near that city, he found that the sovereign, instead of coming out to meet to him, had given orders to transport him to Algiers, a town situated beyond Bugia. Al-Hasan was taken to Algiers and lodged in a place by no means suitable to a person of his rank. The daily allowance of provisions assigned to him was quite insufficient for the number of his followers, and he was prevented from going about. It was in the month of Muharram, 544 (May-June, A. D. 1149) that he arrived in Algiers. In the year 547, Abd al-Mūmin took Bugia, and the sovereign of that city fled to Constantine (7). Roger, the sovereign of Sicily, died in the first third of the month of Zu 'l-Hijja, 548 (February, A. D. 1154), and had for successor his son William I (8). It was to the prince (William II) that Abū 'l-Fath Nasr Allah Ibn Kalākis, the poet of whom we have spoken (vol. III. p. 537), went to recite laudatory verses. This was in the year 563 (A. D. 1167-8). On the death of William, the authority passed to his daughter, who became the mother of the emperor of Germany (al-anberdār malik al-Lāmānā), the same who is still living. When she died, her son, who was then a child, obtained the supreme power. He has reigned a long time, is clever and intelligent, and keeps up a regular intercourse by letters and otherwise with al-Malik al-Kāmil (vol. III. p. 240), the sovereign of Egypt. God knows how far these indications may be true!—Abd al-Mūmin arrived before al-Mahdiya (which was then in the hands of the Franks) and took it after a most obstinate resistance. He made his entry into the city on the festival day of Aśhūra, A. H. 555, (21st of January, A. D. 1160) and established there a lieutenant (9). Al-
Hasan Ibn Ali (whom he had found at Algiers) accompanied him in this expedition and, being well acquainted with the resources of the country, was now left with that lieutenant for the purpose of assisting him in the direction of affairs. Two farms in the neighbourhood of the city were assigned to him for his support, and a house was given to him in which he might reside with his sons and followers. I have not been able to discover the date of his death (10). — Mahriz Ibn Ziâd, the chief above mentioned, was killed at the combat of Setif (11), on a Thursday, in the second third of the latter Rabî, 555 (April, A. D. 1160) (12). — It was for this al-Hasan Ibn Ali that Abû’s-Salt Omaiya Ibn Abd al-Azîz composed the work entitled al-Hadîka (vol. I. p. 228).

(2) I suppose that the word al-Kâf is a proper name.
(3)uggested, Wastâ’i, which is the reading of the manuscripts and is here followed.
(4) Literally: khid al-Ainâ (leader of the bridles).
(5) This last verse has no connexion with those which precede and must be out of its place.
(6) For a fuller account of these events and of the persons here named, see the second volume of my translation of the History of the Berbers, by Ibn Khaldûn.
(7) Ibn Khallikân has written, by mistake, al-Kostantiniya (Constantinople) instead of Kostantina (Constantine). See the Histoire des Berbers, t. II, p. 58.
(8) In the Arabic text this name is written خنف (Ghinta). The same name is written غلطة (Gulîlîm) in the inscription traced on the parapet of the old Norman palace called La Cuba, near Palermo. See Mr. Amari’s article in the Revue archéologique of 1849, p. 669.
(11) The combat of Setif, in which the Almohades, commanded by Abd Allah, the son of Abd al-Mûmin, defeated the Arabs of Ifrîkiya, took place in the year 546 (A. D. 1141-2). (Histoire des Berbers, t. II, p. 190.)
(12) According to the author of the same work, t. II, p. 194, Mahriz was killed at the battle of Kairawan, A. H. 556 (A. D. 1161).

YAHYA THE BARMEKIDE

Abû Ali Yahya, the vizir of Hârûn ar-Rashid, was the son of Khâlid and the grandson of Barmek. We have already spoken of his sons, Jaafar (vol. I. p. 301) and al-Fadl (vol. II. p. 459). Their ancestor Barmek was a Magian of Balkh and
the servant (officiating minister) of the Nābehār, a place of worship which the Magians had in that city. It was he who lighted therein the (sacred) fires. Barmek and his sons were generally designated as the sādins (or guardians) of that temple. He was a man of great authority among those of his religion. I do not know whether he became a Muslim or not. His son Khālid rose to power under the Abbasides and succeeded to Abū Salama Hafs al-Khallāl (vol. I. p. 467) as vizir to Abū 'l-Abbās as-Saffāh. We have spoken of him in the article on Jaafar and mentioned there the date of his death. Abū 'l-Hasan al-Masūdi says, in his Murūj ad-Dahab: "The height to which Khālid Ibn Barmek attained in prudence, bravery, learning, generosity, and other noble qualities was never reached by any of his sons: Yahya did not equal him in judgment and intelligence, nor al-Fadl, the son of Yahya, in liberality and disinterestedness, nor Jaafar, the son of Yahya, in epistolary writing and elegance of language, nor Muhammad, the son of Yahya, in nobleness and elevation of mind, nor Mūsā, the son of Yahya, in bravery and energy. When Abū Muslim al-Khorāsānī (vol. II. p. 100) sent Kahtaba Ibn Shābīb at-Tā’ī against Yazid Ibn Omar Ibn Hubaira al-Fāzārī, who was governing the two Irāks in the name of the (Omayyide khalif) Marwān Ibn Muhammad, Khālid was one of those who accompanied him. They halted, on the way, at a village and, whilst they were breakfasting on the terrace of one of the houses, they saw several flocks of gazelles and other wild animals coming from the desert and approaching so near that they got (into the camp) among the soldiers. 'Emir!' said Khālid, 'order the men to saddle and bridle!' Kahtaba stood up in amazement and, seeing nothing to alarm him, said: 'What do you mean, Khālid! by this advice?' The other replied: 'The enemy are in march against you; do you not see that, if these flocks of wild animals draw so near to us, they must be flying before a numerous body of men?' The troops were scarcely on horseback when the dust (raised by the approaching army) was perfectly visible. Had it not been for Khālid, they would all have perished." — As for Yahya, he was perfect in talent, judgment and noble qualities. Al-Mahdi, the son of Abū Jaafar al-Mansūr, placed his child, Hārūn ar-Rashīd, under his care and confided to him the boy's education. When Hārūn became khalif, he acknowledged his obligations to Yahya and said to him: "My dear father! it is through the blessings and the good fortune which attend you and through your excellent management that I am now seated on this throne; so, I confide to you the direction of affairs." He then handed to him his signet-ring. Allu-
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

sion to this is made in the following lines, composed by al-Mausili, a poet whom I suppose to be the same person as Ibrāhīm an-Nadim (vol. I. p. 20), or else his son, Ishak (vol. I. p. 183):

Did you not see that the light of the sun, once languishing (and dim), brightened up on the accession of Hārūn? (That happened) through the good fortune which attends God's trusty servant, Hārūn the beneficent; Hārūn is now chief of the state and Yahya is his vizir.

Ar-Rashid had so deep a respect for Yahya that, in speaking of him, he always called him my father, and authorised him to take the initiative in every affair and bring it to a conclusion. This lasted till he overthrew the Barmekides. Being then irritated against Yahya, he imprisoned him for life and put to death his son Ja'afar, as we have already related. Yahya was highly distinguished for wisdom, nobleness of mind and elegance of language. One of his sayings was: "Three things indicate the degree of intelligence possessed by him who does them: the bestowing of gifts, the drawing up of letters and the acting as ambassador." He used to say to his sons: "Write down the best things which you hear; learn by heart the best things which you write down; and, in speaking, utter the best things which you have learned by heart." He said also: "This life is a series of vicissitudes, and wealth is (given to us as) only a loan; let us follow the models (of virtue) offered by our predecessors and leave a good example to those who come after us."—Al-Fadl Ibn Marwān (vol. II, p. 476) states that he heard Yahya Ibn Khālid say: "As for the man to whom I have done no good, I have always before me the choice (of doing so or not), and as for him to whom I have done good, I am engaged to serve him (for the future)." The Kādi Yahya Ibn Aktham (page 33 of this vol.) related as follows: "I heard al-Māmûn say: 'Yahya Ibn Khālid and his sons had none (to equal them) in ability, in elegance of language, in liberality and in bravery; it was well said by a poet that:

"The sons of Yahya are four in number, like the elements; when put to the test, they are found to be the elements of (which) beneficence (is formed)!

"I said to him: 'Commander of the faithful! their ability, their elegance of language and their liberality we all acknowledge; but in which of them was courage?' He replied: 'In Mūsa, the son of Yahya; I had even the intention of establishing him as governor in the frontier province of Sind.'"—Ishak vol. IV.
al-Mausili, the son of Ibrāhīm an-Nadīm, states that his father made to him the following relation: "I went to Yahya, the son of Khālid Ibn Barmek, and complained to him of a (pecuniary) embarrassment. He answered: 'Alas! what I can I do for you? I have nothing at the present moment. However, I shall point out to you a thing which I hope you will be the man to execute: The agent of the governor of Egypt came to see me and requested me to ask a gift from his master for myself. I refused, but he still insists. Now, I am told that such a one, your slave girl, cost you three thousand (dinars); so here is what I may do: I shall ask him to make me a present of that girl and tell him that she pleases me very much; but do not you consent to sell her for less than thirty thousand dinars. You will then see what will happen.' Well, by Allah! I had scarcely time to look about me when in came the agent. He asked me how much I would take for the girl; I replied that I would not dispose of her for less than thirty thousand dinars; he continued bargaining with me and finished by offering twenty thousand. When I heard this sum mentioned, I had not the heart to refuse it and I sold her. Having received the money, I went to see Yahya, the son of Khālid. He asked me what I done in the sale of the girl, and I replied: 'By Allah! I could not refrain from accepting twenty thousand dinars, as soon as I heard the offer.' He answered: 'That was mean-spirited on your part; but the agent of the governor of Persia has come to me on a similar mission; so, here is your girl; take her back and do not sell her for less than fifty thousand dinars when he goes to bargain with you for her. He will certainly give you that price.' This man came to me, and I asked fifty thousand dinars. He began to bargain and, when he offered me thirty thousand, I had not the heart to refuse that sum and could scarcely believe my ears. I accepted his offer and then went to Yahya, the son of Khālid. 'For how much did you sell the girl?' said he. I told him, and he exclaimed: 'You unfortunate fellow! was your first (fault) not sufficient to prevent you from committing a second?' I replied: 'My heart was too weak to refuse a sum for which I could have never hoped!' Here, said Yahya, 'is your girl; take her and keep her!' I replied: I have gained by her fifty thousand dinars and am again become her owner. Bear witness that I declare her free and that I promise to marry her.'" — It is thus I found the anecdote related, but I since met with the history of the vizirs composed by al-Jihshārī (vol. II. p. 137), and there I read that Ibrāhīm al-Mausili was told by Yahya
not to accept less than one hundred thousand dinars and that he sold her for fifty thousand, and that, the second time, he was told not to accept less than fifty thousand and that he sold her for twenty thousand. — Al-Asmāî (vol. II. p. 123) related as follows: "I went, one day, to visit Yahya and he said to me: 'Tell me, Asmāî! are you married?' I replied that I was not. 'Have you a slave-girl?' he said. I answered: 'I should willingly be indebted to you for one.' He then ordered a young girl to be brought in; she was in the height of beauty, of grace and of elegance; and he said to her: 'I give you to this man;' and then he told me to take her. I thanked him and was wishing him every happiness when she burst into tears and exclaimed: 'O my lord! how can you give me away to such a man as that? do you not see how deformed and ugly he is?' He said to me: 'I will give you in exchange for her two thousand dinars.' I answered: 'I have no objection to that.' The money was given to me and the girl was taken back to Yahya's house. 'That girl,' said he, 'did something to displease me, and I meant to punish her in giving her to you, but then I had pity on her.'—'Why did you not inform me of that previously?' said I, 'so that I might have reassumed my pristine form; you should at least have allowed me to comb my beard, wipe my eyes, perfume my person and make myself handsome.' He laughed (at this sally) and ordered another thousand dinars to be given to me." The following anecdote was related by Ishak an-Nadim: "When Yahya, the son of Khâlid rode out, the usual gift which he bestowed on those who went up to him with an application was two hundred dirhems. One day, as he was riding out, a literary man, who was also a poet, drew near to him and said:

"'O thou who art the namesake of Yahya the chaste (saint John the Baptist) ! the bounty of the Lord hath assigned to thee a double paradise (one on earth and the other in heaven). Two hundred (dirhems) is the gift of every one who croseth thy path; but that sum is too little for a man like me; 'tis what he receiveth from thee who runneth the quickest!"

"Yahya replied: You say true; let this man be taken to my house." When he returned from the khalif's residence, he asked the man what was his business and received this answer: "'I have contracted marriage and am under the necessity of filling one of three obligations: either to pay the dowry (which I have settled on my wife and) which amounts to four thousand dirhems (£ 100), or to divorce
"' (her), or to pay (her) a pension till such time as I shall have the means of procuring the bride's outfit.' Yahya gave orders that he should receive four thousand dirhems for the dowry, four thousand for the purchase of a dwelling, four thousand for the requisite furniture of a house, four thousand for the reception of the bride and four thousand for future maintenance. He received the twenty thousand and departed." — Muhammad Ibn Munâdir (vol. I. p. 299), the celebrated poet, related as follows: "Ar-Rashid made the pilgrimage with his two sons, al-Amin Muhammad and al-Mâmûn Abd Allah. Yahya Ibn Khâlid accompanied him with his two sons, al-Fadl and Jaafar. When they arrived at Medina, ar-Rashid held a public sitting with Yahya Ibn Khâlid, and distributed to the inhabitants the customary donations. Al-Amin then held a sitting with al-Fadl and distributed donations; after which al-Mâmûn, accompanied by Jaafar, did the same. For this reason, the people of Medina named that year the year of the three donations. Never had they seen the like before. I composed, on this subject, the following verses (2):

"They are come to us, the descendants of the kings belonging to the family of Barmek. What good news! what a beautiful sight! Their rule is, to make, every year, an expedition against the enemy and a journey to the Temple ancient and pure. When they halt in al-Bat'ha, (the valley) of Mekka, that (city) is illuminated by their presence. Baghdad is then in darkness and, whilst they perform the pilgrimage, three moons dispel the shades which cover us in Mekka. Their hands were created for nothing else but deeds of liberality, and their feet were made for (treading) the boards of the pulpit."

The Khatib (vol. I. p. 75) says, in the article on Abu Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Omar al-Wâkidi (vol. III. p. 61) which he inserted in his History of Baghdad, that he (al-Wâkidi) related as follows: "I traded in corn at Medina and had in my hands one hundred thousand dirhems which has been lent to me in order that I might make them productive. This money I lost and then I went to Irâk for the purpose of seeing Yahya, the son of Khâlid. Having sat down in his antechamber, I entered into conversation with the servants and door-keepers, and asked how I could get to see him. They answered: 'When his dinner is taken in to him, no one is prevented from entering; we shall then admit you.' When the dinner was brought, they let me in and seated me with him at the same table.' "'Who are you?' said he, 'and what do require?' I told him and, when the dishes were removed, we washed our hands; after which I went over to him with the in-
tention of kissing him on the head, but he drew back from me. When I (retired
and) reached the place where the guests mount their horses on departing, a ser-
vant came to me with a purse containing one thousand dinars and said: 'The
vizir wishes you a good evening; he bids you help yourself out of your diffi-
culty with this and requests you to come to see him to-morrow morning.' I re-
turned to see him (the next morning) and sat down to table with him, and he
began to question me as he had done the day before. When the dishes were re-
moved, I went up to him for the purpose of kissing him on the head, but he
drew back from me. On my going to the mounting-place, a servant brought me
a purse containing one thousand dinars and said: 'The vizir wishes you a good
day, bids you help yourself out of your difficulties with this and requests you to
return to morrow.' I took the money, retired, and, the next day, went again
to see him. He then gave me as much as I had received the two days previously.
On the fourth day, I went to visit him as I had done before, and he then allowed
me to kiss him on the head. 'I did not at first permit you to do so,' said he, 'be-
cause I had not rendered you a service which intitled me to that mark of re-
spect. But now, I have been of some use to you.' (He then called his servants
and said :) 'Boy! let such and such a house be given to this man; Boy! fit it up
with such and such a set of furniture; Boy! give him two hundred thousand dir-
hems, the half to pay his debts and the other half to put him in better circum-
stance.' He then said to me: 'Become my companion and reside in my house.'
I replied: 'May God exalt the vizir! I hope you will allow me to return to Medina
that I may repay there what I owe; after that, I shall reappear in your presence;
that, for me, would be more befitting.' He gave his consent and furnished me
with every requisite for travelling. I went to Medina, paid my debts, and, ha-
ving returned, I never quitted him since.'—Abû Kâbûs al-Hîmyari went, one
day, to see him and recited to him the following verses:

May the plenitude of God’s favour descend on Yahya, who bestows such gifts as not a man
before him ever gave. He forgets the services which he renders, but never forgets his promise.

Yahya granted to the poet what he came to apply for and bestowed on him also a
sum of money. I may here observe that the (idea expressed in the) second verse was
afterwards (borrowed and) applied by Sharaf ad-Dawla Muslim Ibn Koraish (vol. III.
p. 143): A man said to him: ‘‘Emir! do not forget my demand,’’ and he replied:
"Not till I have fulfilled it." Muslim Ibn al-Walid al-Ansari (3) makes (honorable) mention of Yahya, the son of Khalid in the following passage:

Mayest thou (fair maid) be ever fortunate! Knowest thou not that during those nights which had borrowed their darkness from the colour of thy hair, I used to wait with patience till their obscurity was dispelled by the brightness of a face which shone like the face of Yahya, when (his son) Jaafar was mentioned (with commendation).

Yahya used to say: "Spend when Fortune turns towards you, for her bounty cannot then be exhausted; spend when she turns away, for she will not remain with you." He said also: "The benefactor who reminds (a person) of a service rendered, alloys the value of that service; and he who forgets a favour received is guilty of ingratitude and neglect of duty." Another of his sayings was: "The sincere intention (of doing a good action) and a legitimate excuse (for not doing it) are equivalent to its accomplishment." He said again: "In adverse fortune, wiles (and stratagems) lead to perdition." Al-Hasan Ibn Sahl (vol. I. p. 408) was heard to say: "When a man's conduct towards his brethren is changed on obtaining authority, we know that he is not fitted for that place (4); so said the president of the board of generous actions, Abu Ali Yahya, the son of Khalid Ibn Barmek."—Yahya had a private secretary whom he admitted into his familiarity. This secretary resolved on having his son circumcised, and people of all classes made preparations for being present at the ceremony. The great officers of the empire, the chiefs of the civil administration and the government-writers offered, all of them, presents suitable to their respective ranks. A friend of the secretary, being in reduced circumstances and unable to satisfy his desire of doing like the others, took two large and clean bags, filled one of them with salt, the other with perfumed potash, and sent them to him with a letter of which we give here a copy: "Could I fulfil my will, I should conform to the custom and, if my means permitted me to accomplish my ardent desire, I should outdo even the foremost in this race of generosity and surpass those who make the greatest efforts to shew you honour. But my means preclude me from doing what I wish and the narrowness of my fortune prevents me from engaging in a rivalry with the wealthy. Fearing, however, that the register of our gifts should be closed before the inscribing of my name therein, I send you some of that which, at the beginning (of a repast), brings good luck and a blessing, and of that which concludes (the repast) by its perfume..."
and cleansing quality. (In so doing) I bear with patience the pain which my in-
ability gives me, and support the anguish of not having the power to execute
(my intentions). But, as long as I find not the means of filling my duty towards
you, I shall offer, for my excuse, this word of almighty God: No blame
shall be incurred by those who are weak, or by the sick, or by those who find
not wherewithal to contribute. (Coran, sur. 9, verse 92). Receive my salu-
tations.” When Yahya Ibn Khalid arrived at the place where the festival was
held, his secretary shewed him all the presents which he had received and even the
two bags with the accompanying letter. The idea of sending these two objects ap-
peared to Yahya very good, and he ordered them to be filled with money and taken
back to the person who had sent them. The sum thus given was four thousand
dinars (£ 2,000).—A man said to Yahya: “By Allah! thou art milder in temper
than al-Ahnaf Ibn Kais (vol. I. p. 635),” and received this answer: “Those who
offer me more than I deserve shall not have a place in my favour.”—Ishak Ibn
Ibrahim al-Mausili called on one of his servant-boys and, not getting an answer
from him, he said: “I heard Yahya, the son of Khalid, observe that a man’s mild-
ness of temper is indicated by the ill-breeding of his servants.”—Yahya was one
day riding out with ar-Rashid when a man stopped before the Khalif and said:
“My mule is dead.” Ar-Rashid replied: “Let five hundred dirhems (£ 10) be
given.” On this, Yahya made him a sign and, when they dismounted, ar-Ra-
shid said to him: “Father! you made me a sign about something and I do not un-
derstand what it meant.” Yahya replied: “The mention of so small a sum as that
should never proceed from your lips; a person of your rank should say: five thou-
sand, or ten thousand.”—“Well,” said ar-Rashid, “and when a demand such as
that is made to me, what shall I answer?” “You must then say:” said Yahya,
“buy him a mule.”—To conclude, we may observe that the anecdotes related of
the Barmekide family are very numerous, and that an abridgment such as this will
not admit the insertion of any more.—When Harrūn ar-Rashid put to death Jaafar,
the son of Yahya the Barmekide, he reduced to ruin all that family and cast into
prison Yahya and al-Fadl, the son of Yahya. The place of their confinement was
ar-Rafika, called also Old Rakka and situated near the town of New Rakka, which
is a well-known place on the bank of the Euphrates. To designate both towns, they
say the two Rakkas, giving thus to one name a predominance over the other. Ex-
amples of a similar licence are offered by the names al-Omardni (5), al-Kamarāni (6)
and some others.—Al-Jihshiari relates, in his History of the Vizirs, that, when Yahya, the son of Khalid, was in prison, where they kept him closely confined, he had one day a longing to eat some sikhaja (7). Having obtained, with great difficulty, the permission to prepare some, he cooked it, but, when he had finished, the skillet in which he had made it fell from his hand and was broken to pieces. On this, he recited some verses, upbraiding Fortune and expressing his loss of every hope and every desire. He remained in the prison of ar-Rafika till his death, which event took place on the 3rd of Muharram, 190 (29th November, A. D. 805). He died suddenly, without any previous illness, being then seventy years of age, or seventy-four, according to another account. His son al-Fadl said over him the funeral service. He was buried on the border of the Euphrates, in the suburb called Rabad Harthama. In his pocket was found a paper on which was written in his own hand: "The accuser has gone forward (to the tribunal) and the accused will soon follow; the kadi will be that equitable judge who is never unjust and who has no need of taking evidence." Ar-Rashid, to whom this paper was sent, wept, the remainder of that day, and his countenance, for some days after, bore striking marks of sorrow (8).—Yahya settled a monthly pension of one thousand dirhems (£25) on Sofiyan ath-Thauri (vol. I. p. 576), and the latter used to say, when prostrated in prayer: "O Lord! Yahya has delivered me from the cares of this life; deliver him from the pains of the next." When Yahya died, one of his brothers saw him in a dream and asked him how God had treated him? To this he replied: "He forgave me in consideration of Sofiyan's prayers." Some say that the Sofiyan of this anecdote was Sofiyan Ibn Oyaina (vol. I. p. 578). God knows best!—"Ar-Rashid," says al-Jihshiari, "repented of his conduct towards the Barmekides and deeply regretted the manner in which he had treated (the prisoners)." He said, before some of his brothers that, if he could be assured of their fidelity, he would reinstate them in their places. He used also to say:—"Some people impelled us to punish our ablest and most faithful advisers, and they made us believe that they themselves were capable of replacing them; but, when we did what they wanted, they were not of the least use to us." He then recited this line:

"Infamous wretches (9) spare us your calumnies, or fill (with ability) the place which they filled (so well) (10)."

I may observe that this verse has for its author al-Hutaiya (vol. I. p. 209), and that, after it, comes the following:
BIographical DICTIONARY.

They were persons who, if they built, built well; if they took an engagement, they fulfilled it, and if they imposed an obligation, they rendered it binding.

Az-Zamakhshari (vol. III. p. 321) says, somewhat to this effect, in his Rabb al-Abrdr: "Under the bed of Yahya, the son of Khâlid, was found a paper on which was inscribed:

"By the reality of God! injustice is disgraceful; an unhealthy pasture-ground is that of injustice. We must go before Him who shall retribute every action on the day of judgment; all adverse parties must appear before God.

I must now say (11) that I have inserted in this compendium the quantity (of information) which it was possible for a person to give who had but little leisure. I have omitted under this letter, which is the Y, a considerable number of articles which I intended to have inserted, but had not time enough (ittasâd) to do so. I have kept them back, with a great deal of rough draughts, so that they may serve (â-âdâl) for another (akhôr) and a more extensive work which I mean to compile on the same plan, if God grant me time and if he aid me in my undertaking (wa waflak kil-amîl). It shall contain (mahtawian) a mass (jumma) of that information which is required by persons who occupy themselves with these matters, and will dispense the reader from the necessity of recurring to a great number of books (wa yastaghni man yutalidhu án murađdat kutub kathâra); for I have selected my notes from standard works of history and from the (authentic) accounts given of those who lived in ancient and in modern times. To the best of my belief (fî ma yaghib ala dhannî), I have not neglected to consult any of the noted works which are in the hands of the public or any of those which are less known (al-khâmila), whether they were voluminous or concise; and I have always taken care to select therefrom whatever seemed fit to enter into (fî) this work. It is my intention, with the will and the help of God, that it shall form more than ten (akthar min ashara) volumes; but assistance must be demanded from the Almighty and his aid must be implored to direct me (12).

(1) About five pounds sterling.
(2) Mr. de Sacy has given these verses in his Chrestomathie arabe, t. I, p. 18.
(3) This Muslin died A. H. 306 (A. D. 919-4). We have spoken of him in vol. I, p. 93.
(4) Literally : We know that authority is greater than he.
(5) Al-Omardnî (the two Omars) was a term employed to designate the two first khalifs, Abd Bakr and Omar.
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

(6) The term *al-kamardān* (the two moons) was employed to designate the sun and the moon.

(7) The *sikkājya* was a dish prepared with barley-meal, minced meat and vinegar.

(8) In some of the manuscripts, this biographical notice ends here.

(9) The arabic imprecation is: no father to your father, and seems to signify: may God's curse be on your ancestors.

(10) The manuscript belonging to Mr. CAussin de Perceval has أورهدوا النجیار, and the edition of Bīlāk أورهدوا البيجاء, which readings I do not understand.

(11) The following paragraph is to be found in professor Wüstenfeld's edition, but none of our manuscripts gives it except that which belongs to Mr. CAussin de Perceval. It is omitted in the edition of Bīlāk. I follow the text of Mr. CAussin's manuscript, that of the lithographed edition being very incorrect.

(12) The work which our author here promised never appeared. The articles which follow were added to the present work by Ibn Khallikān himself, some years after the appearance of the autograph copy. See the note by which he concludes this volume.

THE VIZIR IBN HUBAIRA

Abū 'l-Muzaffar Yahya Ibn Muhammad Ibn Hubaira Ibn Said Ibn al-Hasan Ibn Ahmad Ibn al-Hasan Ibn Jahm Ibn Amr Ibn Hubaira was 'surnamed Aūn ad-Dīn (aid of the religion) and drew his descent from Shaibān (the progenitor of the Arabic tribe which bears this name). His ancestor Hubaira was the son of Alwān, the son of al-Haufazān, whose real name was al-Hārith, the son of Sharik, the son of Amr, (or Matar) the son of Kais, the son of Shurahbil, the son of Morra, the son of Hammām, the son of DhuHul, the son of Shaibān. Thalaba, Shaibān's father, was the son of Okāba, the son of Saab, the son of Ali, the son of Bakr, the son of Wa'il, the son of Kāsit, the son of Hinda, the son of Afṣa, the son of Domī, the son of Jadila, the son of Asad, the son of Rabīa, the son of Nizār, the son of Maadd, the son of Adnān. —It is thus that his genealogy has been given by a number of authors, such as Ibn ad-Dubaihi (vol. III. p. 102) in his historical work and Ibn al-Kādisī (vol. I. p. 290) in his Kitiḥ al-Wuzurād (book of vizirs). It was not made public till some years after his accession to the vizirate, when it was mentioned by the poets in their eulogies. He was a native of Kīrya Bani Aukar, a village situated in that part of Irāk which is called Dujail. It is the same place which bore the name of Dūr.
Armānya, and which is now named, after him, Dār al-Ważīr (the monastery or village of the vizir). His father belonged to the jund (or military colony) (vol. II. p. 132) established there. Yahya professed the doctrine taught by Ahmad Ibn Hanbal. He learned Traditions, acquired considerable information in each branch of knowledge, learned the readings of the noble book (the Korān) and concluded that study by going over all the systems of Koran-reading and the different lessons which have been handed down. He studied grammar, became acquainted with the history of the desert Arabs and of their battle-days, cultivated assiduously the art of penmanship, got by heart the locutions employed by elegant speakers and applied himself to the acquisition of a good epistolary style. His master in polite literature was Abū Mansūr al-Jawālīki (vol. III. p. 498) and, in law, Abū 'l-Husain Muhammad Ibn Muhammad al-Farrā'. He was also a pupil of the preacher Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Yahya Ibn Ali Ibn Muslim Ibn Mūsa Ibn Imrān az-Zabīdī (1). He learned the Traditions respecting the Prophet from Abū Othsān Ismaiil Ibn Muhammad Ibn Kāla al-Iṣpahānī, Abū 'l-Kāsim Hībat Allah Ibn Muhammad Ibn al-Husain (الحمص) the kātib, and from those who came after them. He himself taught Traditions, some of which he had learned from the imām al-Muttafī li-Amr Illah, the Commander of the faithful. A great number of persons received Traditions from him and, amongst them, the hāfiz Abū 'l-Faraj Ibn al-Jauzi (vol. II. p. 96). The first office which he filled (under government) was the inspectorship of the plantations (ishrāf al-akriha) (2) situated on the west (bank of the Tigris); he then passed to the inspectorship of the taxes paid in kind (al-ikāndīt al-Makhzanīya), and was afterwards appointed inspector of the Makhzan or government stores (al-ishrāf bil-makhzan). This place he did not long hold, having been nominated, in the year 542 (A. D. 1147-8), clerk of the khalif's household (kitāba dīwān as-sīdīm), from which post he was raised to the vizirate. The author who compiled the biography of Ibn Husayn relates, in these terms, the motives which led to his nomination: "Amongst the things which increased his influence and raised him to the vizirship was the conduct held by Masūd al-Bīlālī, the shihna (or resident agent) whom the sultan Masūd Ibn Muhammad Ibn Malek Shāh the Seljūkide had established at Baghdad as his lieutenant. Al-Bīlālī was one of those Abyssinian slaves and eunuchs who held so high a rank in the (Seljūk) empire. He used to behave with great impoliteness in the presence of the khalif, transgressing the rules of etiquette which were always to be observed, and permitting his licentious followers to spread disorder
Kauwâm ad-Dîn Abû 'l-Kâsim Ali Ibn Sadaka, who was, at that time, the khalif's vizir, wrote a number of letters to the sultan Masûd, requesting him to reprimand al-Bilâli for his conduct, but could never obtain an answer. When Aûn ad-Dîn was appointed clerk of the household, the khalif spoke to him on the subject and bade him write to the sultan. Aûn ad-Dîn, knowing that the vizir had already written a number of letters and that they had remained unanswered, sent off request after request till he obtained a reply. The letter (which had this effect) was drawn up by himself, and I should insert it here, were it not so long; but I may mention, in a summary manner, that it contained good wishes for the sultan's welfare, reminded him of the exemplary conduct held by his predecessors towards the khalifs, of their sincere obedience, the respect which they always shewed them and the protection which they afforded them against those who dared to thwart them. He then complained of Masûd al-Bilâli, mentioned that he written a number of times on that subject without receiving an answer and spoke to a great length on this matter. It was in the mouth of the latter Rabî, 542 (September, A.D. 1147) that he wrote this letter. Very soon after, he received an answer containing the sultan's excuses with a formal disapproval of al-Bilâli's conduct. The khalif al-Muktâfi was highly pleased to have followed the advice of Aûn ad-Dîn and felt deeply obliged to him; so, Aûn ad-Dîn continued to enjoy his favour and was raised to the vizirate. The same author says: 'Another motive which conduced to Aûn ad-Dîn's nomination was, that, in the year 543 (A.D. 1148-9), two of the sultan's emirs, one of whom was al-Baksh al-Masûdi, lord of al-Lihf, which is a place in Irâk, and the other, Ildezzâs-Sultânî, came to Baghdad with a numerous body of troops and committed in it the greatest disorders. This will be found related in the books of annals (3). The vizir Kauwâm ad-Dîn Ibn Sadaka undertook to bring about an arrangement, but without success. Aûn ad-Dîn then asked and obtained the khalif's authorisation to treat with the invaders who had attacked him and, by his skilful management, he succeeded in putting a stop to their evil doings till such time as he had assembled sufficient forces to resist them, and enabled the people to seize on their riches. This event was a means employed by destiny for the elevation of Ibn Hubaira and the dismissal of Ibn Sadaka from the vizirate. Effectively, when this serious affair was terminated, the khalif al-Muktâfi summoned Ibn Hubaira to his presence by a notification (mutâ-
"lea), which was carried to him by two emirs of the empire. When Ibn Hubaira
read it, all his family made great demonstrations of joy (4) and, as he rode with
his followers to the khalif's palace, the public learned that he had been appointed
vizir. On his arrival at the door of the hujra (the khalif's cabinet), he was called in
and found al-Muktāfi seated, to receive him, on the right side of the Tāj (5). He
kissed the ground, saluted and had then, during an hour, a conversation with
the khalif which no other person could overhear. On retiring, he found a robe
of honour (tashrif) prepared for him, according to the custom followed towards
vizirs. He put it on and, being called in a second time, he kissed the ground and
invoked blessings on the khalif in a style which excited that prince's admiration.
He then pronounced these words:

"As long as my life endures, I shall thank Amr for services of which he never vaunted,
great though they were. He saw my indigence even there where it was concealed, and kept
it in sight until it disappeared."

I may observe that these are two verses of three which were composed by Ibrāhīm
Ibn al-Abbās as-Sūli (6). The verse which should have come after the first was:

A generous man whose wealth is never withheld from his friend, and who never manifests a
complaint if the shoe (fortune) slips from under him.

Aūn ad-Din, in reciting the two verses, altered the last half of the second, which
originally ran thus:

and it was like a mote in his eye, till removed.

Having thought fit to address the khalif in this style, he altered the expression,
through respect. When he retired, they brought him a bay horse, with white
patterns, a white spot reaching from the forehead to the nose, and a rich capar-
ison; such being their custom with respect to vizirs. The details of this cere-
mony I have abridged. He then rode forth, preceded by the great functionaries,
the officers of the empire, the emirs attached to the court, all the khalif's servants
and all the chamberlains of the divan; with drums beating before him and the mas-
nad (cushion) borne after him, according to the usual practise on such occasions.
He entered into the divan, dismounted apart and took his seat on the dest (sopha, cush-
ion). The shāikh Sadīd ad-Dawla Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Abd al-Karīm Ibn al-Anbārī then stood forward to read the diploma (of the vizir’s nomination). It was a remarkable piece of its kind and, were it not so long, I should insert it here; besides, it is well known and copies of it are in the hands of the public. When he finished, the Korān-readers chanted (passages of the Korān) and the poets recited pieces of their composition. Ibn Hubaira was installed in the vizirship on Wednesday, the 3rd of the latter Rabi‘, 544 (10th August, A. D. 1149). He bore at first the title of Jalāl ad-Dīn (grandeur of religion), but, on being appointed vizir, he received that of Aūn ad-Din. Eminent for learning and for merit, he displayed also an unerring judgment and a virtuous disposition; during his vizirship he conducted matters in a manner which attested the greatness of his abilities and the excellence of his counsels. This assured him (the khalif’s) gratitude, entitled him to high consideration and contributed largely to his good fortune. As he had a great respect for the learned, his receptions were attended by all men distinguished for talent, no matter in what line. Traditions were repeated in his presence and controlled by him and the shāikhs (professors) who were there; discussions were carried on and useful information was communicated to an extent which cannot be described.

He composed some works such as the Isdāh fi madni ‘s-Sahāh (elucidation of passages in [Jauhari’s Arabic dictionary,] the Sahāh), forming nineteen books (volumes?); a commentary on the Jamā‘ bain as-Sahthain (see vol. I. p. 420), with an exposition of the maxims uttered by the Prophet and contained in that work; the Kitāb al-Mukrid (which hits the mark) — this word takes an i after the s; a complete commentary on it, in four volumes, was drawn up by the celebrated grammarian Abū Muhammad Ibn al-Khashshāb (vol. II. p. 66); an abridgment of the Isdāh al-Mantik (7); the Kitāb al-Ibbādh, etc. (treatise on devotional rites), according to the system of canon law taught by the imām as-Shāfi‘i; an Arjūza etc. (technical verses) on the long and the short final a; an Arjūza on the art of penmanship (or orthography (l-γ)). — Our professor Izz ad-Dīn Abū ʿl-Hasan Ali, generally known by the surname of Ibn al-Athīr (vol. II. p. 288) gives, in his lesser historical work, that which treats of the Atābeks, a chapter concerning the siege of Baghdad in the month of Zū, ʿl-Ka‘ada, 553 (Nov.—Dec. A. D. 1158) by al-Malik Muhammad and Zain ad-Dīn.

He says there that al-Muktasī ʿl-Amr Illah made every effort to put that city in a good state of defense and that his vizir, Aūn ad-Dīn Ibn Hubaira, helped him in a manner of which no other person could have been capable. He adds: “By al-Muktasī's
order, a proclamation was made in Baghdad, promising five dinars (2 l. 10s.) to
every person who should be wounded during the hostilities, and, effectively, that
sum was given to every one who received a wound. A man of the people got
wounded and went to the vizir, who said: 'That is a mere scratch, not worth
a penny.' The man returned to the fight and got a stroke across his belly,
so the entrails were falling out; he then came back the vizir and said: 'My Lord!
will that satisfy you?' The vizir laughed, ordered him a donation and sent for a
doctor to dress his wound.' End of the extract. I must here make an observa-
tion: the Muhammad of whom Ibn al-Athir speaks was the son of Mahmud Ibn
Muhammad Ibn Malek Shab, the Seljukide, and the Zain ad-Din was Abû'l-Hasan Ali
Ibn Bektikin, generally known by the (Turkish) appellation of Kutchek (the little) and
the father of Muzaffar ad-Din, lord of Arbela (vol. II. p. 535). According to another
author, this Malik Muhammad was Muhammad Shab, and the event took place in the
year 552. God knows which of the two is in the right! It is Ibn al-Jauzi who says
so in his Shustur al-Okid, and he must have been better acquainted with what passed
than any other, for Baghdad was his native place and he was there all the time. I have
spoken of Muhammad Shab (8) in the article on his father. The imam (khalif) al-
Muktasfi li-Amr Illah Muhammad bore the surname of Abû Abd Allah and was the son
of al-Mustazhir; he died on the eve of Sunday, the 2nd of the first Rabi, 555 (12th
March, A. D. 1160). His son al-Mustanjid Billah Abû 'l-Muzaffar Yusuf was then
proclaimed khalif. Ibn Hubaira went in to him, took the oath of fealty, was recei-
vied honorably and confirmed in the vizirship. Fearing to be dismissed from office,
he never attempted to contradict his sovereign, and he continued in place till the
hour of his death. His praises were celebrated by the most distinguished poets of
the age, and one of them, Abû 'l-Fawaris Saad, surnamed Hais Bais (vol. I. p. 559)
and generally known by the appellation of Ibn Saifi, composed on him some exquisite
eulogiums. In one of these pieces he says:

Anecdotes of generosity excite him, even in his calmest mood, as the red intoxicating liquor
excites the drinkers of the nomadic village. He stands firm when other people spring from
their seats in dismay, and when the loftiest pinnacles (chiefs) tremble before the storms of
calamity. He interrupts vile discourse, avoids opprobrious language and is always taken up
with the love of glory. He is incapable of committing the slightest act of meanness, and his
bosom is unmoved by the dangers incurred in those deeds which lead to glory. When the
name of Abû-ad-Din Yahya is pronounced, the clouds flash forth their lightnings (harbingers
of rain), and the strong lances wave proudly (9).
It was the custom at Bagdad that, in the month of Ramadán, the great officers of the empire partook of a repast (sīmdī) given by the khalīf at the house of the vizir, and this repast was called the tabak. Hais Bais, who was a high-minded man and had all the noble pride of a true Arab, was one of the guests. Seeing that a number of persons, having no other merit than that of being paid functionaries, passed before him to a higher place, he was so highly offended that he wrote to the vizir Aûn ad-Dîn a letter in which he requested that (for the future) his absence might be pardoned.

(It ran thus:)

Thou who, in wealth and in poverty, wast always lavish of thy money! thou who, morning and night, furnishest provisions to (needy) travellers! Thou who convokest the persons enriched by thee to partake of an augmentation from thy bounty! In every house there is a table supplied with provisions by thy generosity, and yet thou invitest its master to the tabak. Thy gifts are poured forth like a torrent and, were those on whom they light not afraid of thy just severity, they would cry out: “Save us from drowning!” Thy noble qualities cover the land with a constant shower; even in the day of battle, thou drenchest the soil with the blood and the sweat of the horsemen. Spare my shoulders from being pressed in a manner which, if I resented, would expose my reputation and my character to sarcasms. If thou permittest it, such a humiliation will degrade me; and how often hast thou loaded me with a burden (of gifts) which I could hardly bear! I am sick of the fortune (which pursues me) and of her attacks; my noble pride alone preserves my life. Grant me the favour which I ask; (grant it as readily) as thou bestowest thy numerous gifts. To be liberal in granting honour is far above being liberal with money. The disk of the sun, exalted though he be, burneth yellow from grief, when obliged to descend towards the horizon. People consider as folly such (sensibility as mine); but often hath innate dignity been confounded with folly.

The vizir Aûn ad-Dîn received the present of an inkstand made of rock-crystal and inlaid with coral. Seeing at his levee a number of poets and, amongst them, Hais Bais, he observed that it would be well to compose a piece of verse on that object. One of the persons present, a blind man whose name I have not met with, then recited these lines:

Iron was, by divine favour, rendered soft for David, so that he wrought it at will into coats of mail (10). The crystal, though a stone, has been softened for you, yet bending it to one’s wish is hard and difficult.

Hais Bais here observed that the poet had spoken, not of the inkstand but of the maker; on which the vizir said: “Let him who finds fault change (it for the better).” Hais Bais did so in these lines:
Your inkstand was made of your two days (14), and these have been mistaken for crystal and for coral. One is your day of peace, which is white and pours forth abundance; the other is your day of war which is red, like red blood.

I since found the two first verses in the Kitāb al-Jīnān, a work composed by the shaikh al-Kādi ar-Rashīd Ahmad Ibn ar-Zubair al-Ghassānī, the same of whom mention has been made towards the beginning of this work (vol. I. p. 143). He attributes them to al-Kādi ar-Rashīd Ahmad Ibn al-Kāsim as-Sakalli (12), kadi of Mīsr, who, as he relates, went to the levee of al-Afdal Shāhanshāh Amīr al-Juyūsh (vol. I. p. 612) and, seeing before him an inkstand of ivory inlaid with coral, extemporized these lines:

Iron was, by divine favour, rendered soft for David, so that he wrought it, at will, into coats of mail. Coral, though a stone, has been softened for you, yet it is hard and disobedient to the will.

Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Bakhtyār, generally known by the name of al-Ablah (vol. III. p. 159) composed, in this vizir’s praise, a number of kāstdas, one of which I insert here because it is the finest:

The zephyr and the (pliant) willow (bān) of the sandhill have committed a falsehood: they offered themselves as the likeness (13) (of my beloved), but they forgot the ornaments (of her person) and her (graceful) neck. O thou who art a statue (in beauty)! thou whose ankles are too wide (14) for the instep and whom I am unable not to love! I once had tears and strength of mind; but now, neither tears nor strength of mind remain. Thou hast rendered my body a dwelling-place for sickness, since thou dwellest in al-Jara, after having departed from Taḥās (15). O (my friend!) thou who seest those gazelles (maidens) cross our way! know that my heart, and not the winding valley, is their pasture-ground. Her waist is pliant like a wand, and she polishes date-tree blossoms (her teeth) with a piece of drāk wood. When she holds discourse with you, she fails not to bring back (to you) the days of passionate love. Often have I passed the wine-cup to my companions, whose eyes shewed inebriation and who staggered in their gait. (We were then) in an arbour embellished with flowers, whose raiment was not (made of the silks) from Yemen or from Sanā. In the morning, I hastened with ardour to visit the soil of that spot (where I met my beloved; I was there) before the turtle-doves had mounted to the top of the bān-tree. The lightning-clouds shook over it their flashing swords, and the lake, through fear of them, put on a coat of mail (16). O thou who blamest me! load me, as you please, with reproaches sufficient to rend even the solid rock; but know that I was formed by nature for loving, just as the vizir was formed by nature for deeds of liberality.

The poet then makes his transition to the eulogium which, to avoid prolixity, I
suppress. Abû 'l-Fath Sibt Ibn at-Taawizi (vol. III. p. 162) composed also in his honour a single kastda which I here give:

May the rains descend on these vernal abodes and on these hills which, since the departure of their inhabitants, look sickly and emaciated like me. For her (who is absent) I have engaged that my eyelids shall be a fountain and pour from their angles an abundant flood of tears. Though her dwelling-place be much changed from the state in which I saw it, the love which is in my heart shall never be known to change. O my two friends! the aspect of that cloud whose lightnings gleam dimly over al-Ajraaln has renewed my affection for her and awakened my passion. My eyes and my sight have been delivered over to constant waking by the slowness of that procrastinating maid in the fulfilment of her engagements. When I said to her: "My body is emaciated by "love!" she would reply: "Where is the lover who is not emaciated?" When I said: "Let my tears bear witness to the sadness which you cause me;" she would answer: "Tears are "not witnesses whose evidence can be accepted." Blame me not, my two friends! if I weep in my foolish passion for one who always breaks her promise and always procrastinates. The heaviest affliction which a lover can undergo is the irksome indifference of his beloved and the fatiguing remonstrances of censorious friends. At the foot of you insulated sandhill are (the maidens) fair and incomparable, who played with those hearts of ours and with our reason, on the morning in their glances and our hearts met together and which was not free from the blood of wounded (lovers). O! how admirable is the valley of al-Árâk, where the perfume of your presence is revealed by the northern and the southern breezes. In that cool valley, morning and evening, as often as blew the zephyr, a love-sick heart found alleviation. I invoked indifference, but it would not aid me; I attempted to use patience (and to bear with her), but it was of no avail. Thou (my beloved) knewest all the causes of love and you heaped them on a back which was already loaded with misfortunes. The only profit I derived from the loving of fair maidens was watching the nights of longing desire, how slowly they passed over. How often did those nights inspire me with the hope of meeting a man renowned, dignified in manners, grave, prudent and not precipitate; in the enjoyment of whose favour I might proudly swing my body from side to side, and, in whose court, I might sweep haughtily along in training robes. Now I have been long accustomed to his gifts and only desire to kiss that beneficent hand; the generous character of Yahya the vizir gives me the assurance of that favour's being granted, and Aûn ad-Din is the very best of sureties.

This vizir frequently recited the following verses:

The secrets of love can be explained to you by no man, till it has procured for thee the vexation of being reproved. The love which I bear her will not consent that she should ever permit me to see in her even the slightest imperfection.

The shaikh Shams ad-Din Abû 'l-Muzaafar Yûsuf Ibn Kizoghli Ibn Abd Allah (vol. I. p. 439), who was a daughter's son of the shaikh Jamâl ad-Din Abû 'l-Faraj Ibn al-Jauzi (vol. II. p. 96) states, in his Mirât az-Zamân, a historical work of which I saw, in Damascus, a copy composed of forty volumes, all of them in the author's
own handwriting, that his father, Kizoghlī, was a white slave (mamīdāk) belonging to Ānūn ad-Dīn and that his mother was the daughter of the shaykh Jamāl ad-Dīn Abū'l-Faraj just mentioned. Their son was therefore a mawla (17) to him (Ānūn ad-Dīn). He states also that he heard his preceptors at Baghdad relate that Ānūn ad-Dīn gave the following account of his elevation: ‘I was in such straitened circumstances that, for some days, I remained without food. One of my family then advised me to visit the tomb of Marūf al-Karkhi (vol. III. p. 384), and there ask God’s assistance, because all prayers offered up at that tomb were fulfilled. So I went to the tomb of Marūf, prayed there and invoked (the help of God). I then retired, with the intention of returning to the town (beled)’—by the word town he meant Baghdad,—‘and I passed through Katufta’—a place near Baghdad,—‘and there I saw a deserted mosque. I went into it for the purpose of saying a prayer of two rakas, and saw there a sick man lying on a mat. I sat down by his head and asked him if he desired anything. He replied: ‘A quince.’ I went to a fruiterer’s, and got from him two quinces and an apple, for which I left my cloak (mizar) in pledge. The man ate part of a quince and bade me shut the door. When I had done so, he got off the mat and told me to dig there. I dug and found a jar. ‘Take it,’ said he, ‘for you are more deserving of it than any other.’ I asked him if he had not an heir, and he answered: ‘No; I had a brother whom I have not seen this long time and who, as I am told, is dead. We were natives of ar-Rusāfa.’ He was still talking to me when he died. I washed his body, put it into a shroud and buried it. Having taken the jar, which contained five hundred dinars (£250), I went to the Tigris with the intention of crossing over, when a waterman, dressed in rags and having an old boat, called out: ‘Come with me! come with me!’ I dropped down the river with him, and never did I see a man so like to the one that had just died. ‘Where do you belong to?’ said I. He answered: ‘To ar-Rusāfa. I have some daughters and am very poor.’—‘Have you any relatives?’ said I. ‘No,’ said he, ‘I had a brother, but it is very long since I saw him, and I know not what God has done with him.’—‘Hold your lap;’ said I. He did so, and I poured all the money into it. Seeing him greatly astonished, I related to him what had passed. He then bade me take the half of it, but I replied: ‘I shall not take even a single piece.’ I then went up to the residence of the khalīf, wrote a supplication (and sent it in.) It came out endorsed thus: ‘The inspectorship of the makhzen.’ From that
post I mounted to the vizirate."—Ibn Kizoghli continues thus: "My grandfa-
ther, Abū 'l-Faraj, relates, in his Muntazim, that the vizir begged of God to die a
martyr and, every time he found an opportunity of risking his life for the faith,
he encountered the danger. On Saturday, the 12th of the first Jumāda, 560 (27th
March, A. D. 1165), he was in good health. That night, he went to bed per-
fectly well, but, at day-break, he had a fit of vomiting and sent for a doctor. This
man attended him and gave him a draught which, some say, was poisonous,
and he died. About six months afterwards, this doctor drank poison and
then said repeatedly: 'That which I gave to drink has been given to me! till
he died.'—(Ibn al-Jauzi) says, in the Muntazim: 'On the night of the vizir's
death, I was sleeping, with my companions, on the roof of the house, and I had a
dream in which, methought, I was in the palace of the vizir and that he was there
seated. A man came in with a javelin in his hand and struck him with it between
the unthān (18), so that the blood gushed out like a fountain and struck the (op-
posite) wall. I then turned round and, seeing a gold ring lying on the ground,
I took it up and said: 'To whom must I give it?' (The answer was:) 'Wait till a
servant come forth and to him give it.' On awaking, I related the dream to
my companions and had scarcely finished when a man came up and said: 'The
vizir is dead.' One of those who were present exclaimed: 'That is impossible! I
' left him, yesterday evening, in the very best health.' Another man then came
and confirmed the news. The son of the vizir ordered me to wash the corpse. I
began to do so and, on lifting up the arm in order to wash the magḥābin,'—by this
word are designated the folds made by certain parts of the body, the armpits, for in-
stance; its singular is magḥbin;—'the ring fell from the hand to the ground and,
on seeing it, I marvelled greatly, by reason of my dream. Whilst washing the
corpse, I remarked on the face and on the body spots which denoted that he had
been poisoned. When the bier was brought out, all the shops in Baghdad were
closed and not a single inhabitant but accompanied the funeral. The prayer was
said over the corpse in the Mosque of the Citadel (Jāmē 'l-Kasr) and interred in
the college (madrasa) founded by the vizir himself, but of which even the ruins
have now disappeared. A number of poets composed elegies on his death.'
End of Ibn al-Jauzi's recital.—The author of the history of this vizir states that the
cause of his death was a sudden predominance of phlegm over his natural tempera-
ment. Having gone out to hunt with (the khalīf) al Mustanjid, he took a laxative
draught which was not sufficient to operate the evacuation of the phlegm. On Friday, the 6th of the first Jumâda, he rode back to Baghdad, supported on the saddle (by servants), and went to his pew in the mosque, where he attended the public prayer. After that, he returned to his house and, at the hour of the morning prayer, he had a recurrence of the attack and swooned away. The waiting-maids screamed out, but he recovered and told them to be silent. His son, Izz ad-Din Abû Abd Allah Muhammad, who was his lieutenant in the vizirship, being informed of what had passed, hastened to see him and said, on entering into the room: "The ustâd "ad-dâr (mayor of the palace) has sent different persons to know the cause of the outcry."—This ustâd bore the names of Abû 'l-Fârî Muhammad and the surname of Ibn Maslama; he was the son of Abd Allah, the son of Hibat Allah, the son of al-Muzaaffar, the son of the Râdis ar-Ruwaâd (vol. III. p. 48).—"The vizir smiled (on "hearing these words"), notwithstanding his state of suffering, and pronounced these lines:

"How many are those who, in their folly, will rejoice at my death and wield the sword with "tyranny after my decease. If they, poor fellows! were aware of the evils which shall befall them "when I am gone, they would die before me.

"He then swallowed a draught which brought on an evacuation, after which, he "called for water to make the ablution preparatory to prayer. He said the prayer "in a sitting posture and made the prostration, but, as he continued for a conside-"rable time without sitting up, the attendants shook him and perceived that he was "dead. The smâm (khalîf) al-Mustanjîd, being informed of this event, gave orders "for his burial." Aûn ad-Din left two sons, Izz ad-Dîn Muhammad, him of whom mention has been just made, and Sharaf ad-Dîn Abû 'l-Wâlîd al-Muzaaffar. As for his birth, Abû Abd Allah Ibn al-Kâdisî (vol. I. p. 290) states, in his History of the Vizirs, that this vizir, according to his own declaration, was born in the year 497 (A. D. 1103-4). One (of his contemporaries) said: "I saw him in a dream, "subsequently to his death, and asked him in what state he was? He replied:

"We are asked concerning our state, after undergoing a change of state and being for ever "concealed from sight. We have obtained a double reward for what we wrought in view of "our own salvation, and we found that the good we did to others was selected (and put aside "as the best)."

When the news of his death reached the mayor of the palace, Adud ad-Dîn Ibn al-
Muzaffar, the poet Sibt Ibn at-Taâwizî was present. He was a mauâla to the Muzaffar family, his father Nushîkîn having been a mamlûk (white slave) to one of its members. It was the son who changed the name of Nushîkîn into that of Abd Allah. Ibn at-Taâwizî, wishing to ingratiate himself with Adud ad-Dîn who, to his knowledge, was not on good terms with the vizir, extemporized these lines:

People told me that the vizir was dead: "Come," said they, "let us weep for Abû 'l-Muzaffar far Yahya." I replied: "That is for me the slightest of misfortunes and afflictions, since 'Ibn al-Muzaffar (Adud ad-Dîn) is alive (yâhîya)."

Another individual, whose name I do not now recollect, but who was a poet of some celebrity, pronounced these verses (on the same event):

O Lord! the noble (Yahya) Ibn Hubaira is dead and Yahya Ibn Jaâfar (19) is alive! With one Yahya have disappeared all meritorious and princely qualities, but, with the other Yahya lives (yâhîya) every folly and every vice.

My intention (in relating these anecdotes) is to show how numerous were the merits of Ibn Hubaira, and I have prolonged this article for the purpose of attaining that object.—I remarked in Abû 'l-Khattâb Ibn Dihya's (vol. II. p. 384) work, the Kitâb an-Nibrâs fi târîkh khulafa' bani 'l-Abbâs (the book of the lamp, on the history of the Abbaside khalîfs), an error which I am anxious to point out, lest those who read that book may suppose the author's statement to be correct. In speaking of the khâlif al-Muktashfî Lillah, he has something to this effect: "That khâlif was highly fortunate in possessing such a vizir as Abû 'l-Muzaffar Aûn ad-Dîn Yahya Ibn Muhammâd Ibn Hubaira, who was a descendant of the great emir Abû Hâfs Omar Ibn Hubaira, whose transcendent merit, loudly celebrated by all historians, was transmitted to his grandson Aûn ad-Dîn." He then relates something highly honorable for Omar Ibn Hubaira, who was governor of the two Irâks under the Omaiyïdes. Ibn Dihya thought that the vizir of whom we have here spoken was a descendant of that emir. I was greatly surprised at his making such a mistake: the vizir drew his origin from the progenitor of the tribe of Shaibân, as we have already shown at the beginning of this article, and the emir belonged to the tribe of Fazârâ, as will be seen in our article on his son Yazîd; and wide is the difference between Shaibân and Fazârâ. The author was, no doubt, led into this error by finding in the genealogy of the vizir an Omar Ibn Hubaira, which person he took for the emir. Such
BIographical Dictionary.

a fault, coming from a man like Ibn Dihya, is not to be pardoned; for he was a ḥāfiz (knowing by heart traditional information) and should have been well acquainted with general biography. The mistake is evident, but, to err is in the lot of humanity. —Most of the persons whose names occur in this article have been already mentioned in this (biographical) history and have, each of them, a separate article, but we have not spoken of az-Zabidi. This shaikh was a man of great influence, an active reformer of manners (20) and a person whose society was always profitable to the vizir. As I have not mentioned him in this work, I feel it my duty to direct towards him the reader's attention, for a man like him should not be passed over. He arrived in Baghdad A. H. 509 (A. D. 1115-6) and died in the month of the first Rabî 555 (March-April, A. D. 1160). Abû Abd Allah Ibn an-Najjâr (vol. I. p. 11) says, in his History of Baghdad: "He was born at Zabîd (in Yemen), on the eve of Wednesday, the 22nd of Muharrâm, 460 (3rd December, A. D. 1067); he died on Monday, the 1st of the first Rabî, 555 (11th March, A. D. 1160), and was buried in the cemetery adjoining the Djami (or mosque) of al-Mansûr at Baghdad."—As for the verse of the poet: "O lord! the noble (Yahya) Ibn Hubaira is dead and Yahya Ibn Jaafar is alive;" the last words refer to Abû 'l-Fadl Yahya Ibn Abî 'l-Kâsim Obaid Allah Ibn Muhammad Ibn al-Moammar Ibn Jaafar, surnamed Zâim ad-Dîn (the champion of the faith). He was appointed inspector of the Makhzen in the month of the latter Jumâda, 542 (Oct.-Nov. A. D. 1147), and remained in office till the year 567 (A. D. 1171). He was appointed vizir on the dismissal of Abû 'l-Faraj Ibn al-Muzaffar (21) and occupied that post till his death. His conduct entitled him to praise and gratitude, and he was a friend to men of learning. His birth took place at Baghdad after the last evening prayer of Thursday, the 20th Safar, 511 (2nd July, A. D. 1117). He died in Baghdad on the 20th of the first Rabî, 570 (19th October, A. D. 1174), and was interred in a mausoleum (tûrba) which he had erected for himself in the Harbiya cemetery.

(1) See towards the end of this article.

(2) The names of the offices mentioned in this paragraph are here rendered by their probable signification; as we do not yet possess any precise information respecting the internal administration of the khalifate in its latter days.

(3) liđeḏa was governor of Arrân and Adarbajân. He and a number of other emirs revolted against the sultan Masûd, marched towards Baghdad, defeated the khaliﬁ's troops and committed all sorts of atrocities. They then asked and obtained the khaliﬁ's pardon, retired and spread ravage and devastation over all the countries through which they passed.—(Ibn al-Athîr's Kâmîl; Mirkhond.)
The meaning of the text is doubtful.

The *Tujj*, or *crown*, was a pavilion adjoining the palace of the khalifs at Baghdad. — See M. de Sacy's *Christomathie Arabe*, tome I, page 74. It was in it that the khalif appeared in state, on the days of solemn audience.

Those verses are given in the *Hamduds*, page 79. The commentator, at-Tibrizi, says that they were composed by a native of Medina in honour of Amr Ibn Sa'd Ibn al-A'ash, who, as we learn by the *Naj'ud*, was put to death, in the year 69 (A. D. 688-9) by the Omaiyide khalif, Abd al-Malik Ibn Marwan. Ibrahim as-Sulami could not have composed this piece, for he died A.H. 248 (A. D. 867) and was not a native of Medina.

The life of Ibn as-Sikkit, the author of the *Ishih al-Mantik*, is given in this volume.

I read: Mahmud Shah; see vol. III, p. 334.

The copyists and editors, not having well understood this piece, have given it very incorrectly. In the third line, I read: *الْدَنَايَا* and, in the fourth, but with doubt, *طَفَّنَ فِيِّ *.  

*Kordu*, sur. 34, verse 10.

The meaning of this is explained in the next verse.

Ahmad Ibn al-Kasim, surnamed al-Kadi ar-Raahd, was a native of Sicily, from which country he removed to Egypt. He died A.H. 586 (A.D. 1191-2).—*History of the Kadi of Mier*; ms. of the Bibl. imp., anciens fonds, n° 694.)

Literally: they described thee.

I suppose that the poet wrote *وسعَت* and *ضيقات* "are wide," instead of "are tight," as thick ankles were probably not considered to be a point of beauty. — By the word *anklets* are meant the bracelets worn on the ankles by Muslim ladies. These ornaments are of a crescent shape and as thick as the thumb. They are hollow inside and contain a little ball of metal which, as it rolls about, makes a clinking sound.

Tabala was a village on the road leading from Mekka to Yemen; al-Jara lay probably at a great distance from that place.

That is: the surface of the water was wrinkled with waves. "The breeze has changed the water into a coat of mail," said al-Motamid Ibn Abbâd to Ibn Ammar, in one of his sportive moods. See Dory's *Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne*, t. IV, p. 159.

See introduction to the second volume.

*Untida* (*the two testicles*). It is difficult to conceive how such a wound could be inflicted. Did the author mean to write *thidâd* (*the two nipples*)?

The author speaks of this person at the end of the present article.

See vol. III, p. 216, note (5). The Arabic expression is: to command what is laudable and forbid what is reprehensible.

The same who was mayor of the palace. See page 135.
IBN ZABADA

Abū Tālib Yahya Ibn Abī 'l-Faraj Sa'd Ibn Abī 'l-Kāsim Hībat Allah Ibn Ali Ibn Zabāda tas-Shaibānī (belonging to the Arabic tribe of Shaiban) was a kātib (writer in a government office) and a munshi (a drawer up of official dispatches). His family belonged to Wāsīt, but Baghdad was the place of his birth, of his residence and of his death. He bore the surname of Kiwām ad-Dīn (support of religion) or, according to another statement, Amid ad-Dīn (column of religion). Eminent in rank and in talent, he obtained the highest reputation as a kātib, a munshi and an arithmetician; besides which, he possessed some skill in jurisprudence, dogmatic theology, the fundamentals of law and other sciences. As a versifier, he displayed great talent. When a student, he attended the lessons of Abū Mansūr al-Jawālīkī (vol. III. p. 498) and studied Koran-reading under the tuition of that professor and of his successors. He learned Traditions under some of the teachers and, from his early youth till the time of his death, he filled (successively) a number of places in the service of the Divān (the government of the khālīf). His epistles are remarkable for the graces of their style, the elegance of their thoughts, the beauty of their ornaments and the delicacy of their allusions. In drawing up dispatches, he paid more attention to the ideas than to the cadence; his letters are elegant, his thoughts just, his poetry good and his merits are so conspicuous that they need not be described. Being nominated director of the office which administered (the cities of) Basra, Wāsīt and al-Hilla, he continued to fill that post till the month of Muharram, 575 (June-July, A. D. 1179), when he was recalled from Wāsīt and appointed to act as ḥājib (chamberlain) at the Nūba door (1) and to render justice in all cases of appeal to the sovereign (2). In the mouth of the first Rabī, 577 (July-August, A. D. 1181), he was dismissed from all these offices and, in the month of the first Jumāda, 582 (July-Aug. 1186), he was restored to them again. When the mayor of the palace (Ostād ad-Dār) Majd ad-Dīn Abū 'l-Fadl Hībat Allah Ibn Ali Ibn Hībat Allah Ibn Muhammad Ibn al-Hasan, generally designated by the surname of Ibn as-Sāhib, was put to death (by order of khālīf an-Nāṣir), which event occurred on Saturday, the 19th of the first Rabī, 583 (29th May, A. D. 1187), Ibn Zabāda was appointed to succeed him. In the
year 585 (A. D. 1189-90), he was dismissed from office and sent back to Wāsit where he remained till the month of Ramadān, 592 (August, A. D. 1196), and was then recalled (to Baghdad). On Monday, the 22nd of Ramadān, he was appointed director of the official correspondence and obtained again the inspectorship of the board of government grants (mukhtadr), which places he held till his death. His conduct was exemplary and the line of life which he followed most praiseworthy. He was particularly careful in fulfilling his religious duties, and transmitted down a few Traditions. A great quantity of his prose writings and poetical compositions has been written down under his dictation by different persons. One of these pieces is as follows:

In times of trouble, the worthless are raised to such eminence that the affliction is general. When tranquil water is agitated, the dregs rise from the bottom.

By the same:

People never find me more firm than when I am in the power of sudden misfortunes. It is thus that the sun does not display all his force till he enters into the mane (3) of the Lion.

In the following verses, written by him to al-Mustanjid, he compliments that khalif on the arrival of the festival day (the 10th Zā'īl-Hijja):

Glorious prince! thy elevation is so great that our felicitations cannot reach thee; it is we who should obtain felicitations, reposing, as we do, under the shelter of thy favour. Thou art time (good fortune) itself; the day of the festival is a part of time, and it is not the custom to compliment time on the arrival of the festival.

By the same:

If you aspire to command, act uprightly; then, even if you wish to reach the heavens, you will succeed. The alif (א), one of the written letters of the alphabet, is placed at the head of the others because it is upright.

By the same:

Envy not those who are vizirs, even though they obtain from their sovereigns, by the favour of fortune, more than they ever expected. Know that a day will come when the solid earth shall sink from under them as it used to sink before them through awe. Aaron, the brother and partner of Moses, would not have been seized by the beard (א), had he not been (his brother's) vizir.
To Ibn Zabâda belonged every sort of elegant ideas. He left a diwân (or collection) of epistles; I saw a copy of it in my native place, but am unable to insert here any of its contents, as I cannot call them to mind. Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Said ad-Duqeithi (vol. III. p. 102) says, in his History: "Abû Tâlib Yahya Ibn Said "Ibn Hibat Allah,"—meaning Ibn Zabâda,—"recited to me from memory the following lines, as he told me, which had been repeated to him by Abû Bakr "Ahmad Ibn Muhammad al-Arajâni (vol. I. p. 134):

The eyes of that maiden had their attention divided (between two objects), whilst she was bewildered at departing and afflicted by the coming of the camels, which was announced to her by the burden of the driver's song. With one eye, she answered my salutation and, with the other, she watched the looks of the jealous spies. Seeing around her persons ready to denounce her, she suppressed her tears and withdrew into the asylum of her tent. On the morning in which I bade them farewell, whilst tears flowed from my eyes and my mind was troubled at being separated from my companions, the reflection of those tears appeared on her cheeks, and (our foes) were jealous, thinking that she wept at my weeping.

When Ibn Zabâda was dismissed from the inspectorship of Wâsit, the poet, Abû 'l-Ghanâim Muhammad Ibn Ali, generally known by the appellation of Ibn al-Mual-lim (vol. III. p. 168), wrote to him these lines:

When the rains refused to moisten the earth, you poured upon mankind the showers of your liberality. You were not removed from the province for a motive which might expose you to depreciation and neglect; but, when the torrents of your generosity seemed ready to overwhelm the land, they sent you away, in order to save the country from a deluge.

Al-Wajih Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn Abi Tâlib, generally known by the name of Ibn Suwaid, and who was a merchand of Takrit, related to me the following anecdote: "The shaikh Muhi ad-Din Abû 'l-Muzaffar Yûsuf, who was the "son of Jamâl ad-Din Abû 'l-Faraj Ibn al-Jauzi (vol. II. p. 96), the celebrated hâ-"fiz and preacher, was sent from Baghdad on an embassy to the court of al-Malik "al-Aâdil Ibn al-Malik al-Kâmîl Ibn Aiyûb (vol. III. p. 235), who was then reigning "in Egypt. Al-Malik as-Sâlih Najm ad-Din Aiyûb, the brother of al-Malik al-Aâ-"dil, was at that time detained as a prisoner in the fortress of al-Karak."—I have already spoken of this in the article on al-Kâmîl (vol. III. p. 246).—"When Muhi "ad-Din passed through Damascus, on his return to Baghdad, I happened to be "there and went to visit him with the shaikh Asil ad-Din Abû 'l-Fadl Abbâs Ibn "Othmân Ibn Nabhân al-Irbili (a native of Arbelâ), who was then chief of the
"(corporation of) merchants. We sat down and, in the conversation which ensued, he (Muḥt ad-Dīn) said: 'I prevailed on al-Malik an-Nāṣir Dāwūd, the lord of al-Karak, to swear that he would not allow al-Malik as-Sāliḥ to leave the prison, unless an order came to that effect from al-Malik al-Ādil.' On this, al-Asīl said to him: 'Tell me, master! I did you do so by the order of the August Divān (the khālif's government)?' Muḥt ad-Dīn answered: 'Was any authorization necessary for making such a demand? The welfare of the public required me to do so; but you, Asīl! are an old fellow (5).' To this, our master (al-Asīl) replied: 'It is true; I am an old fellow, and know not what I say; but I shall relate to your Worship an event which has some analogy to this and which I know to be very curious.'— 'Let us hear it;' said Muḥt ad-Dīn. Al-Asīl then spoke as follows: 'Ibn Rāis ar-Ruwāsā (6), being director of the administration at Wāsit, was bound to send (to Baghdad), every month, the sum of thirty thousand dinars (£15,000), as the contribution of Wāsit, and the custom was that no delay, not even of a single day, should be allowed. On one of these months, he was unable to make up the sum and, feeling uneasy on the subject, he consulted his naibs (lieutenants). They replied: 'There, my Lord! is Ibn Zābāda who is indebted (to the administration) for many times that sum; call him to an account and he will make up to you over and above what you have to send off.' He, in consequence, sent for Ibn Zābāda and said to him: 'Why do you not pay (your taxes) like the others?' Ibn Zābāda answered that he had a note in the khālif al-Mustanjīd's handwriting, dispensing him from paying. 'Have you a note in the khālif an-Nāṣir's handwriting?' said the other. 'I have not,' replied Ibn Zābāda. 'Be off!' said Ibn Rāis ar-Ruwāsā, 'and bring here what you owe.' Ibn Zābāda answered: 'I care for nobody and shall bring nothing!' He then stood up and walked out of the room. The naibs then said to their master: You possess the two cushions (emblems of civil and military authority (7)) and have the right of control over all the government intendants; no one has the high hand over you, and who is this man that he should return you such an answer? You would do well to enter by force into his house and seize on all that it contains; no one will dare to make any observation.' In pursuance of their advice, he ordered boats to be got ready for himself and his soldiers. Ibn Zābāda resided at that time on the other side of the river, opposite to Wāsit. When the boats were brought for Ibn Rāis ar-Ruwāsā and his men, a zebzeb (or yawl)
"was seen coming, as if from Baghdad. When he perceived it, he said: ‘This xebzeb must be coming on an affair of importance; let us see what it may be; after that we shall resume what we are about. As the boat drew near, some of the khalif’s servants who were in it cried out: ‘Kiss the ground! kiss the ground!’ He obeyed, and they handed to him a notification (mutalaq) containing this order: ‘We send you a robe of honour and an inkstand for Ibn Zabâda; place the robe on your head, hold the inkstand to your breast, and go on foot to him; clothe him in the robe and send him off to us, in order that he may be our vizir.’ He put the robe on his head, held the inkstand against his bosom and went off on foot. When he met Ibn Zabâda, he recited to him this verse:

‘Whilst a great man is living, people hope in him and fear him; but no one knows what is concealed in futurity.

He then began to make excuses and received this answer: ‘No blame on you for to-day.’ Ibn Zabâda then embarked in the yawl and set off for Baghdad. No other example is known of a person’s having had the vizirate sent to him. When he arrived, the first thing he did was to dismiss Ibn Râis ar-Ruwasâ from the inspectorship of Wâsit, saying that he was not fit for such an office. Now,’ said al-Asîl, ‘who can assure your Worship that al-Malik as-Sâlih will not get out of prison and obtain the throne? You may then be sent to him as an ambassador, and how will you be able to look him in the face without blushing?’ Muhî ad-Dîn answered him by this line:

‘(That will happen) when the two gatherers of acacia-berries shall return, and when Ku-laib shall be raised from the dead for the tribe of Wâil (7).

Very soon after, al-Malik as-Sâlih got out of the prison of al-Karak, obtained the government of Egypt, and then happened what happened. I was in Misr,’ said al-Wajih, ‘when Muhî ad-Dîn came there as ambassador to al-Malik al-Aâdil, but this prince having been arrested (by his officers), was replaced by al-Malik as-Sâlih. Muhî ad-Dîn went forth to compliment the latter; of that I was an eye-witness.’—It was in these terms that al-Wajih related to me the anecdote, but it contains a mistake, committed either by him or by al-Asîl: Ibn Zabâda was never appointed vizir; he filled no other places than those which I mentioned at the beginning of this article; so, if the narration be true, the thing happened when he was
sent for to act as munshi. God knows the truth! Ibn ad-Dubaithi says: "I asked ""Abū Tālib Ibn Zabāda when he was born, and he answered: On Tuesday, the ""25th of Safar, 522 (1st March, A. D. 1128). He died on the eve of Friday, the ""27th of Zū 'l-Hijja, 594 (30th October, A. D. 1198). The funeral service was ""said over him in the mosque of the Castle, at Baghdad, and he was interred near ""the mausoleum of Musa Ibn Jaafar (vol. III. p. 463).""—Zabāda means a bit of zabūd (civet), which is a perfume made use of by women.

(1) The state entrance of the khalīf's palace at Baghdad was called the Ṭūj. It was death for whoever dared to tread on the sill-stone of that door.

(2) See vol. I. p. 846, note (14).

(3) One of the lunar mansions is called the mane of the Lion.

(4) According to the Kūds, sur. 20, verse 95, Moses seized his brother Aaron by the beard, because he had suffered the Israelites to set up the golden calf.

(5) Literally: ""You are Tārēh;"" that is: You are as old as Tārēh! by which name Arabic historians designate Teraḥ, the father of Abraham.

(6) This name signifies: the son of the chief of chiefs. See vol. III, p. 48.

(7) For the meaning of this verse, which became proverbial, see Freytag's Meidanii Proverbia, t. I, p. 193.

YAHYA IBN NIZAR

Abū 'l-Fadl Yahya Ibn Nizār Ibn Sa'id al-Manbeji (a native of Manbej), is mentioned, in these terms, by the ḥāfiz Abū Saad Abd al-Karīm Ibn as-Samāni (vol. II. p. 156), in the Zail, a work which was composed as a supplement to the Khatīb's History of Baghdad (vol. I. p. 75): ""He composed poetry in a natural and unaffected style, and wrote down for me some of his verses. When I asked him the date of his birth, he answered: 'In the month of Muharram, 486 (February, A. D. 1093), at Manbej.'"" The same author then gives some of his pieces, one of which is as follows:

There was a clear-complexioned youth, the line of whose izdr (4) augmented the trouble and
the cares of his admirers. Oceans of beauty undulate in his cheeks and cast ambergris (2) upon their shores. Youth lets its waters flow over his cheeks, so that the borders of those streamlets produce myrtle (3).

It has come into my mind that there are things to be criticized in this piece: The poet says, in the second verse, that oceans of beauty undulate in his cheeks; why then does he say, in the third verse, that youth lets its waters flow over them? What congruity is there between the water of youth and oceans of beauty? Not content with committing that fault, he represents the water as flowing in streamlets, that is to say, in rivulets; but rivulets are not to be placed on a line with oceans. In the same verse, he compares the izzār to ambergris; why then, in the third, does he assimilate it to myrtle? It is true that poets, when they seek for objects to which the izzār may be compared, have the custom of designating it as ambergris or as myrtle, but they never bring both together in the same piece. At the time in which I studied polite literature, I heard two verses recited which pleased me much; they are by an author whose name I could not learn, and run thus:

O thou who reproachest me with admiring one whose cheeks are encircled with an izzār: know that the fertile and the sterile soils are not to be compared. A sea of beauty undulates on those cheeks and casts ambergris upon its shores.

In the beginning of the year 672 (July-August, A.D. 1273), a volume of the work entitled as-Sail wa ’z-Zail and composed by the kātib Imād ad-Dīn al-Iṣpahānī as a supplement to his Kharṭā al-Kāṣr (vol. III. p. 303), fell into my hands. In it I found an article on Yahya Ibn Nizār al-Manbeji in which is introduced a piece of ten verses composed by him in praise of the sultan Nūr ad-Dīn Mahmūd Ibn Zinki (vol. III. p. 338). As that piece contains the second of the two verses just mentioned, I perceived that the person who versified the idea contained in the second of the three verses above given was the author of those which are inserted in the Sail. Soon after, I received a visit from my friend Jamāl ad-Dīn Abū ’l-Mahāsin Yūsuf Ibn Ahmad, generally known by the surname of al-Hāfiz al-Yaghmūri, and, in the course of our conversation, mention was made of the two verses. On this, he observed that the author of them was Imād ad-Dīn Abū ’l-Manākib Husām Ibn Ghozzi Ibn Yūnus al-Mahalli (a native of al-Mahalla in Egypt) who had settled in Damascus. ‘‘I heard him recite them,’’ said he, ‘‘and he mentioned that they were of his own composing.’’—‘‘Nay,’’ said I, ‘‘the verse containing the idea (which we have re-
Ibn Khallikan's

"marked) was composed by Yahya Ibn Nizar 'al-Manbeji; Imad ad-Din al-Mahalli may have made the first verse for the purpose of introducing the other as a citation, as is customary in some cases; but he should have indicated that it was a citation, lest those who read them both might suppose it to be his. Observe that the first verse is not in the piece which Yahya al-Manbeji composed in honour of Nur ad-Din."—At a later period, it struck me that al-Mahalli's piece also was liable to censure: in the verse which prepares the way for the other he says that fertile and sterile grounds are not to be compared. Now, these qualities depend upon the presence or the absence of vegetation. Then, in the next verse, he assimilates the izdr to ambergris; but what analogy is there between plants and ambergris? The manner of introducing the second verse is therefore faulty. This critical remark is similar to that already made on the piece which consists in three verses.—A number of persons recited to me two (other) verses composed by al-Imad al-Mahalli and which I here give:

They said to me: "The hair sports with the cheeks of the youth whom you admire;" and I answered: "That is not a defect. The glowing coal of his cheek has burned the ambergris of his beauty-spot, and the smoke arising from it has formed the izdr."

The idea then crossed my mind that the same critical remark which I made on the other verses was applicable to these also. Observe that the poet, when told of the hair's sporting with the youth's cheeks, does not disapprove of it, but says: That is not a defect. He therefore admits that the hair was an excellent thing in its kind. Why then does he say in the next verse that the glowing coal of the cheek has burned the ambergris, etc. and that the izdr was formed of the smoke? What analogy is there between the smoke of ambergris and hair? To express the thought correctly, he should have said to those who spoke to him: That is not hair but the smoke of ambergris.—I had at Aleppo a friend and fellow-student named Aun ad-Din Abu 'r-Rabia Sulaiman Ibn Bahà ad-Din Abd al-Majid al-Ajami, who was a native of that city. He composed two verses in which he came near to the idea above mentioned and which I insert here:

When the flame of his cheek appeared to my eyes, my heart flew into it like a moth (into a candle). Burnt by that flame, it formed a beauty-spot and there, on the borders (of the cheek), is the trace of the smoke.

Here the idea is well brought out and cannot incur a censure similar to the pre-
leading, but the poet has fallen into another fault which deserves to be taken up: he represents the 'izdr as the smoke resulting from the burning of the heart, whereas, al-Imād al-Mahallī called it the smoke of the ambergris of the beauty-spot; now, there is certainly a wide difference between the two kinds of smoke; one smells sweetly and the other badly.—Our article on Abd Allah Ibn Sārā ash-Shantarīnī (vol. II. p. 59) contains two verses in which that poet has expressed a very original idea; he says:

(I think of her) whose waist was so slender and the borders (lineaments) of whose beauty so tender (delicate), that my heart was filled with a tender passion. It was not an 'izdr which clothed her cheek but rather a tint cast upon it by the dark pupils of (our) eyes (4).

The original source of all the pieces of this cast is a poem in which the kādīb Abū Ishak Ibrahim as-Sābī speaks of his page Yumn, who was of a swarthy complexion. We have already given it (vol. I. p. 32), but we reproduce here what relates to our subject:

Thou hast a face which my right hand seems to have traced, and words which deceive my hopes. In it is the image of the full moon, but over it have been cast the shades of night.

The thought contained in Aūn ad-Dīn’s two verses comes near to that which is expressed in the following lines, composed by Abū 'l-Husain Ahmad Ibn Munīr at-Tarāblusi (vol. I. p. 140):

Think not that the mole upon her cheek is a tear of blood fallen from my eyes. It was produced by a burning coal from the fire in my heart; immersed in that (cheek), it was extinguished and then rose to the surface.

I have here digressed from my subject and discoursed rather diffusely, but my observations are not devoid of utility.—Abū Saad as-Samānī says also (in the work above cited): “Yahya Ibn Nizār al-Manbeji recited to me the following verses and gave them as his own:

“Had she turned away from me through coquetry or through disapprobation, I should still hope to gain her affection and should forgive her. But, if she rejects me through satiety, I cannot hope to make her relent; it is difficult to mend a glass, once it is broken.”

He (Yahya Ibn Nizār) left other fine pieces of verse and expressed (therein) many
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

elegant ideas. The historical annals compiled by (Aṣf al-Dīn) Abū 'l-Faraj Sa-
daka Ibn al-Husain Ibn al-Haddād (5) contain a passage to this effect: "On the eve
" of Friday, the 6th of Zu 'l-Hijja, 554 (19th Dec. A. D. 1159), Yahya Ibn Nizār
" al-Manbedji died at Baghdad and was buried in the Wardiya cemetery. It is said
" that he felt a weight (or obstruction) in one of his ears and called in an administra-
" tor of theriac (a quack-doctor) to treat him. This operator sucked his ear and
" drew out of it a portion of the brain; that was the cause of the patient's death." As-Samāni says that he was the brother of Abū 'l-Ghanām, the famous merchant.
Of the latter he gives an account in a separate article of the Zail, and praises him
highly.—Imād ad-Dīn al-Mahalli was an elegant and refined literary scholar, if we
may judge from the anecdotes told of him. He left some good poetry, consisting of
short pieces only, and no kastdas. He knew by heart the Makāmas (of al-Hartrī,
see vol. II. p. 490), and explained their difficulties. His death took place at Da-
mascus, on the eve of Wednesday, the 14th of the first Rabī, 629 (9th January,
A. D. 1232). He was buried in the Sūfi cemetery. His birth is placed, by estima-
tion, in the year 560 (A. D. 1164-5). His early youth was passed at al-Mahalla and,
from that place, he drew his surname. The denomination under which he was gen-
erally known was that of Ibn al-Jamāl. — I found among my rough notes, and in
my own handwriting, two verses attributed to Wajih ad-Dīn Abū 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn
Yahya Ibn al-Hasan Ibn Ahmad, generally known by the surname of Ibn az-Zarawi
(vol. II. p. 555) the poet. Here they are:

Her ızār is the smoke of the aloes-wood of her beauty-spot; her saliva, the water of the ro-
ses of her cheek.

I then found the following verses attributed to Ibn Sana al-Mulk (vol. III. p. 589),
but they belong, in reality, to Asaad Ibn al-Mammāti (vol. I. p. 192):

A brunette who surpasses all others in complexion, in shape and in the sweetness of her lips.
Her breath is the vapour arising from the aloes-wood of her beauty-spot, and her saliva is the
rose-water of her cheek. Were the moon to write her a letter of compliments, the signature
would be "Your humble servant."

I found the following verses attributed to an inhabitant of Aleppo called Muhaddab
ad-Dīn Abū Nasr Muhammad Ibn Muhammed Ibn Ibrahim Ibn al-Khidr, generally
known by the surname of Ibn al-Burhān at-Taberi; he was a native of Taberistān,
a calculator and an astronomer:

Digitized by Google
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

Her waist was slender, the radiance of her face dazzling and her aspect charming to the eye. With the fire of her cheek she heated the ambergris of her beauty-spot and, from the smoke of that ambergris, resulted the izdr.

I then perceived that al-Mahalli had borrowed his idea from one or the other of those persons just mentioned.

(1) For the meaning of this word, I refer to the first volume, Introduction, p. xxxvi.
(2) The word ambergris is often employed as the synonym of izdr.
(3) See introduction to vol. I. p. xxxvi.
(4) In the translation already given of this piece and the following, the meaning has been so much softened down and disguised, that the observations here made by our author do not apply to them. It was therefore necessary to render them more literally.

YAHYA IBN AL-JARRAH

Abū 'l-Husain Yabya Ibn Abi Ali Mansûr Ibn al-Jarrâh Ibn al-Husain Ibn Muhammad Ibn Dâwûd Ibn al-Jarrâh, a native of Egypt,—this addition to the genealogy I found in the handwriting of a literary scholar, but am unable to certify its exactitude, and consider the first (links of the chain) as the surest,—was surnamed Tâj ad-Dîn (crown of the religion). During a long time he was employed as a writer (kâtib) in the correspondence office, under the government of Egypt. He wrote a great deal and in a beautiful hand. His talents, literary acquirements and varied information were of the highest order; his natural genius was fine, his poetry charming and his letters elegant. He heard Traditions in the frontier city of Alexandria, where he had for teachers the hâfiz Abû Tâhir as-Silafl (vol. I. p. 86) and Abû 'th-Thanâ Hammâd Ibn Hibat Allah al-Harrâni. Traditions were taught also by him to numerous auditors. An enigma was composed by him, of which the word was dumlujj (زلمج), a term serving to designate the object worn by women (the bracelet which encircles the ankle or the upper arm). As this riddle is a remarkable thing of the kind, I am induced to insert it here; it is in prose and runs thus: “What is
the thing (1), which, by inversion, becomes a stone; its face is a moon; if you
reject it, it takes patience and goes apart from mankind (or from the skin); if you
render it hungry, it will be satisfied with a date-stone; it folds itself around va-
cuity; if you glut it, it kisses your foot and becomes the companion of your servants
(your shoe-ties); if you perfume it, it is lost; if you take it to the bazar, it refuses
to be sold; if you let it be seen, it renders (its) possession agreeable (to you) and
embellishes the enjoyment (which it procures you); if you double its second
(letter) and reject the finals, it troubles life and renders necessary an alleviation
from praying; at the time of the asr, it causes anguish, at the fajr, it gives (you)
alleviation and repose but, to its good termination is joined a bad trace; if you
divide it, it prays for you and leaves a thing which, if you are borne upon it,
affrights you, though it aids you to accomplish your wishes, increases your
wealth and, by means of that which is a help for the poor, brings about for
you a good result. Receive my salutations.” — Any person, meeting with this
enigma and not knowing the way of solving it, would find great difficulty in
clearing it up; I shall therefore give here the elucidations which the subject
requires: The words: What is the thing which, by inversion, becomes a stone indicate the term dumluj (d, m, l, j, brace for the ankle or the upper arm), which, being inverted, gives j, l, m, d (jalmad, stone). The words: whose face is a moon mean that it is as round as the moon. In the expression: if you reject it, it takes patience and goes apart from the skin (b, sh, r), the word bashar is the plural of bashara (the skin of the body); now, when it is thrown off, it takes patience and quits the skin, because it has not the faculty of resisting; it therefore has patience and leaves the place where it was. If you render it hungry, it will be satisfied with a date-stone (nuwa); the word nuwa has two significations, namely, remoteness and a date-stone. In the provinces of Irâk, it is the custom to grind down date-stones with ripe or unripe dates and give them as forage to oxen; but here, the author, intended to disguise the meaning which he gave to the word: when the dumluj is taken off the arm or the leg, it may be said to be hungry because its belly (or interior) is empty, and to be resigned to its nuwa, or removal from the limb of its owner. People say: “Such a one is satisfied with a nuwa,” when he is so poor that he cannot procure a morcel to eat and makes up for that by sucking a date-
stone. This is often done by the inhabitants of Hijâz and of barren countries, when provisions are scarce. The author of the enigma had these two significations
in view when he made use of the word nuwa, and, in that, consists the tauriya (or disguising of the true meaning). In the expression: it folds itself around vacuity (2), the word khawa means emptiness; and, effectively, when it (the bracelet) has its interior empty, it is really khawi (vacuous). The word glutting, in the expression: if you glut it, it kisses your foot, means putting it on, for the owner, when he does so, has filled its interior, and it is then over the foot, as if it was kissing it. In the words: it becomes the companion of your servants, we find also a tauriya: khadam (servants) is the plural of khaddim and one of those plurals which occur very rarely. The active participle having the form faal (which is the type of the form khaddim) does not take a plural having the form faal (which the type of khadam) except in a few cases which are to be learned (not from rules but) by audition; such, for instance as ghadiib (absent), hdis (gardian), and j'amid (solid), of which the plurals are ghaiyab, haras and jamad respectively. It is by audition only that these plurals are to be learned. The same word khadam is also the plural of khadama, which means the strap bound round the pastern of the camel and to which is tied the thong which holds the leathern shoe (on the animal's foot). An ankle-bracelet is called a khadama because it is sometimes made of straps inlaid with gold and silver. Another plural of khadama is khidam. The expression: if you perfume it, it is lost has another meaning which is here disguised (though intended): the word dhida, having for its noun of action dhida, means to be lost, and signifies, when applied to perfumes, that their odour escapes (and spreads around). The words: if you take it to the bazar, it refuses to be sold, have here another meaning: as the word suk signifies not only the place where things are bought and sold, but also the legs, (the words which signify:) taking it to the bazar, (mean also) entering the leg into it: It refuses to be sold, because it is customary not to offer for sale an object of that kind until it is taken off the leg; we may therefore say that, before it is taken off, it refuses to be sold. The words: if you let it be seen, it renders its possession agreeable to you and embellishes the enjoyment (which it procures you) are so clear that they require no explanation (3). If you double its second (letter), which is the m, and reject the final, you obtain the word dumnel (boil, impostume), which troubles life by the pain it gives and therefore renders necessary an alleviation from (the fatigues of) praying. At the time of the asr, it causes anguish; the word asr has a double signification: it designates one of the (daily) prayers, and is also the noun indicating the action expressed by the verb
(asar, to press). Here again is a disguising of the meaning, and such is also the case with the word fajr which signifies the dawn of day and is, besides, the noun of action belonging to the verb fajar which signifies to let flow. When a man’s tumour is pressed, he feels anguish and trouble, and when he lets the humour run out of it, he obtains alleviation and repose. To its good termination is joined a bad trace; here the author designingly opposes the idea of badness to that of goodness and, no doubt, the discharge of the humour is a good thing and the scar left on the place a bad (or ugly) one. If you divide it, it prays for you; that is, if you cut the word dumuj in two, the first half is dum (endure!), which is prayer that a man may live long. And leaves a thing which, if you are borne upon it, affrights you; what is left is the syllable uj; now, the word ujj means the waves of the sea. In the first case, there is but on j and in the second, there are two; but licenses of this kind are pardoned when they occur in enigmas, conundrums (4) and riddles, and no attention is paid to them. As the sea is a fearful thing, the author said: it affrights you. It sometimes aids you to accomplish your wishes, because you arrive by it at the place to which you wished to go; it increases your wealth, because people embark for the purpose of trading. And, by means of that which is a help for the poor, it brings about for you a good result: by the words: that which is a help for the poor, is meant a ship, in as much as God said (Koran, sur. 18, verse 78): but the vessel belonged to some poor people who worked upon the sea; this vessel was therefore a help for them in their need and kept them from poverty. The word result (ma’ al) means the manner in which a thing terminates. God knows how far these explications are right. The word which signifies enigma has eight forms: loghz, loghuz, laghz, laghaz, olghuza, loghghuzû and loghuzá.—What we have said here is rather long, but it was requisite that no doubts should be left in the reader’s mind.—In a collection of pieces drawn up by a man of talent who was one of my acquaintances, I found two verses attributed to Yahya Ibn al-Jarrâh and I give them there:

I lift my hand towards my beard, with the intention of plucking out a white hair; but instead of the white one, it takes out a black. Since my own hand does not obey my wish, what must I think of my enemies? (5)

He (Ibn al-Jarrâh) was born on the eve of Saturday, the 15th of Shaabân, 541 (21st January, A. D. 1147), and died at Damietta (Dimydt) on the 5th of Shaabân
616 (16th October, A.D. 1219). The enemy (the Crusaders under John of Brienne), whose projects may God always confound! were then besieging that place.—

Jarrdh

is to be pronounced with a double r preceded by an a.—The enemy took Damietta on Tuesday, the 27th of the month just mentioned (7th November), but God knows if this date be right. The Moslems retook it in the month of the latter Jumâda, 618 (A.D. July-August, 1221).—I give here a note which I found in the handwriting of the professor and philologer Muḥaddab ad-Dīn Abū Tâlib Muḥammad Ibn Ali, generally known by the surname of Ibn al-Khaimi. He was a native of al-Hilla (in Meso-

potamia) and had settled in Misr (Old Cairo). He says: "'The enemy landed be-

fore Damietta on Tuesday, the 12th of the first Rabî, 615 (8th June, A.D. 1218); they landed on the eastern bank (of the river) on Tuesday, the 16th of Zâ'

'J-Kaada, in the same year (3rd February, A.D. 1219). This fortress was taken on Tuesday, the 26th of Shaabân, 616 (6th November, A.D. 1219), and was recovered from them on Wednesday, the 19th of Rajab, 618 (8th September, A.D. 1221). From the time of their landing till that of their departure, three years, three months and seventeen days elapsed. It is a remarkable coincidence that they landed on a tuesday, blockaded the town on a tuesday and took it on a tuesday. According to a tradition, God created on a tuesday all things disagreeable."—Dimydt is a Syrian word; its primitive form was Dhimidt (ذِمَیدَت), with a point on the d (ذ), and is derived from یمید, which means the power of the Lord (6). This seems an allusion to the junction of the two seas, that of fresh water (the Nile) and that of salt; but God knows best.

(1) Most of the words employed in this enigma have a double signification, one which is quite obvious but not appropriate, and the other, appropriate but less generally known. So the expressions of the author are, in themselves, a tissue of enigmas. The piece itself is a very poor one and not worth the long commentary in which Ibn Khallikân takes the trouble of explaining it.

(2) This idiomatical expression, when taken in its usual signification, denotes that a person supports patiently the sufferings caused by hunger.

(3) This phrase is so far from being clear that most of the copyists did not understand it; they write حمل
in place of حمل al-امتداع or حمل the امتداع in place of حمل.

(4) The word rendered by conundrum is تصييف. It means in reality, changing the diacritical points of a word; the result of which is that the consonants of the word are changed and its meaning also.

(5) This passage, though given in the printed editions, is not to be found in our manuscripts.

(6) The ancient Egyptians called this town Tamiût and the Greeks Tamiathis. The meaning assigned to this name by our author has nothing to support it.
IBN MATRUH

Abū 'l-Husain Yahya Ibn Isa Ibn Ibrahim Ibn al-Husain Ibn Ali Ibn Hamza Ibn Ibrahim Ibn al-Husain Ibn Matrūh, surnamed Jamāl ad-Dīn (beauty of religion) was a native of Upper Egypt (Ṣaṭīl). He there passed his youth and, after residing for some time in Kūs, he entered into the civil administration and filled successively various offices till he got attached to the service of the sultan al-Malik as-Sālih Abū 'l-Fath Aiyūb, surnamed Najm ad-Dīn (star of the religion). This prince, who was the son of the sultan al-Malik al-Kāmil (vol. III. p. 240) and the grandson of al-Aādil Ibn Aiyūb, was then acting in Egypt as his father’s lieutenant. When al-Malik al-Kāmil aggrandized his empire by the adjunction of the Eastern Countries (Irak, Mesoopotamia, etc.) and obtained possession of Aâmid, Hisn Kaïfa, Harrân, ar-Rohâ (Edessa), ar-Rakka, Râs Aïn, Sarûj and their dependencies, he sent there his son, al-Malik as-Sâlih, as his lieutenant. This took place in the year 629 (A. D. 1231-2). Ibn Matrûh, who was attached to the service of that prince, accompanied him in all his excursions throughout these provinces and continued to do so till his master returned to occupy the throne of Egypt. As-Sâlih made his entry into Cairo on Sunday, the 27th of Zūl-Ka‘āda, 637 (19th June, A. D. 1240). In the beginning of the year 639 (July-August, A. D. 1241), Ibn Matrûh came back to Egypt and received from the sultan the indention of the treasury. He continued to rise in favour and to gain the good will of his sovereign till the latter obtained possession of Damascus for the second time. This was in the month of the first Jumāda, 643 (Sept-Oct. A. D. 1245). Some time afterwards, the sultan established commissaries (nûba) in Damascus, and Ibn Matrûh, whom he sent there to act as vizir, rose thus to easy circumstances and an elevated position. Al-Malik as-Sâlih then set out for Damascus, where he arrived in the month of Sha‘bān, 646 (Nov.-Dec. A. D. 1248), and then dispatched an army against Hims (Emessa), for the purpose of taking that city from the commissaries who had been established there by al-Malik an-Nāṣir Abū ‘l-Muẓaffar Yusuf (vol. II. p. 445), surnamed Salâh ad-Dīn. This prince was the son of al-Malik al-Azīz, the son of al-Malik az-Zâhir, the son of the sultan Salâh ad-Dīn (Saladin), and lord of Aleppo. He had taken by force (the city of Hims) from the hands of its former
possessor, al-Malik al-Ashraf Muzaffar ad-Din Abû 'l-Fath Mūsā (vol. I. p. 628), the son of al-Malik al-Mansûr Ibrâhîm and the grandson of al-Malik al-Mujâhid Asad ad-Din Shirkhûh. As this prince was devoted to al-Malik as-Sâlih, the latter set out from Egypt with the intention of reinstating him in the possession of Hims. He then took from Ibn Matrûh the office which he held at Damascus, and sent him off with the army which was marching against Hims. Whilst al-Malik as-Sâlih was remaining in Damascus, where he resolved to await the result of the expedition, he received intelligence that the Franks were assembling in the island of Cyprus, with the intention of invading Egypt. He in consequence sent off to the troops which were blockading Hims the order to raise the siege and return to Egypt for the purpose of guarding its territory. The army went back to that country, and Ibn Matrûh, who had continued in the service of al-Malik as-Sâlih, now incurred that sultan’s displeasure, for some things which he had done. In the beginning of the year 647, the Franks landed in Egypt and, on Sunday, the 27th of Safar, in the same year (11th June, 1249), they obtained possession of Damietta (1). Al-Malik as-Sâlih encamped with his army at al-Mansûrâ, and Ibn Matrûh continued in his service notwithstanding the disfavour shewn to him. On the eve of the 15th of Sha‘bân, 647 (23 Nov. A. D. 1249) al-Malik as-Sâlih died at al-Mansûrâ and Ibn Matrûh went to Cairo (Miṣr) where he remained in his house till the day of his death. This is but a summary sketch of his history.—He possessed great talents, an amiable disposition and, to his merit and uprightness, he united the most estimable qualities of heart. An intimate friendship subsisted between him and me; when separated from each other, we kept up an epistolary correspondence and, when we met in a fixed abode (the city), we had sittings in which our time was passed in literary and amusing conversation. He composed a diwân of poetry, the greater part of which he recited to me. One of the pieces which I heard from him was a long and elegant ḫaṭâda, commencing thus:

Here is Râma (vol I. p. 200): take to the right of the valley, and let your swords repose in their scabbards; but beware of the glances shot from the large eyes of its maidens! how many lions (heroes) have been struck down by those arms! To him among you who feels sure of his heart (I shall only say that), in that place, I am not sure of my own. My two companions! at the sand-hill, in the (tribe’s) reserved grounds, a heart remains in captivity and has no one to redeem it. It was stolen from me on the day of the tribe’s departure, by the glances of an eye whose lashes were darkened with collyrium. In the tribe of her for whose love I am dying, are eyes always watching the proceedings of lovers. There also is a sweet-voiced
(maiden), with perfumed and honeyed lips, from whom, only for those jealous spies, I should have obtained my will. By what way can a meeting be effected with one who is so closely guarded by bright swords and yellow (shafted) spears? Her flowing hair dwells within a tent of hair, and her beauty always resides in the desert (2). They guard with the spear her whose waist, so slender and so gracefully bending, resembles the pliant (spear). A female (friend) said to us: The lock of hair pendant over her cheek and as strait as the letter alif (l), being joined to the mim (m) of her smiling mouth (3), will heal the thirst of the passionate lover.

The whole poem is very fine, but I limit my choice to this passage, through the necessity of being concise. Another piece of his is the following:

I am attached to a person of the family of Yarub, whose glances are sharper and more destructive than the swords of her noble Arab kinsmen. I have lodged her in the recess formed by my bosom, through love for her brilliant teeth and for the sweet water of her lips. Censors! you who blame the languor of her eyes; leave it for me; I am pleased with her very defects. She is pliant (in her movements), though the zephyr passes not by (to bend) her waist; she sheds perfume around, yet ambergris breathes not from her bosom.

Being taken ill, in one of his journeys, he stopped at a mosque on the road-side and said:

The doctor may be unable to cure me; so, thou, O Lord! who healest all woes, heal my illness though thy gracious bounty. I am detained here as thy guest, and beneficence towards guests is a quality of the generous.

After his death, these lines were found written on a piece of paper.—He related to me that he had, one day, a discussion with Abû 'l-Fadl Jaafar Ibn Shams al-Khilaфа (vol. I. p. 328), respecting a verse contained in a kastda which had been composed by the latter and which began thus:

Who will bring to me that pliant branch (maiden) who is engirdled with eyes (4), whose qualities, whose lips and whose voice are all sweet? Rich (i.e. large) in haunches, poor (thin) in waist; did you ever hear speak, in the world, of a rich person being poor?

The verse which gave rise to the contestation was as follows:

I say: “O sister of the gazelle!” and she answers: “May the gazelle perish I may it not survive!”

Ibn Shams al-Khilaфа pretented that is was his and that it belonged to one of the kastdas which were contained in his diwan. Each of the disputants had then a certi-
ficate drawn up, attesting the verse to be his, and these documents they had signed by a number of witnesses. Ibn Matrūh declared solemnly, that he had composed it, and he was a man very cautious in his affirmations and never known to claim a thing which did not belong to him; but God knows the secrets of all things!—One of my acquaintances recited to me the following lines, declaring that Ibn Matrūh had taught them to him and had mentioned that they were by himself:

O thou who hast forced me to put on the raiment of sickness, a sallow complexion marked with the red (blood) of tears! receive the last sighs of a heart which I should have expelled from my bosom, had it not melted away through grief for thy absence.

During the time of his remaining secluded in his house, whilst his mind was preoccupied and his heart saddened at having no longer any place to fill, he caught a disorder in his eyes which finished by nearly depriving him of sight. I used then to visit him very often, but, as I was at that time acting as the deputy of the chief kadi and magistrate of all Egypt, whose names were Badr ad-Dīn Abū 'l-Mahāsin Yūsuf Ibn al-Hasan Ibn Ali, surnamed the Kādi Sinjār, I was under the necessity of suspending my visits for a short period. He therefore wrote to me these lines:

O thou whom my eyes are longing to see; thou, the charms of whose society have never ceased to fill my heart! These eyes and this heart, in their present state, are always a dwelling for the moon and for the sun (5).

The following verses are taken from one of his long kastdas:

The (admirering) eyes which encircle that queen of beauty form her yatak; she takes our bosom for her tent and, in my heart, she has a sabak.

The idea expressed in the first verse is borrowed from al-Mutanabbi, who said:

The glances of admirers are fixed upon her waist; so that she is encircled with a girdle of eyes.

Yatak بطق is a Turkish word; it designates the company of soldiers who pass the night around the royal tent, and guard it when the prince is making an expedition (6). Sabak سق means the king's tent; when he is on a march, a tent is sent forward to the place where he intends to halt, so that, on his arrival, he may find every thing prepared and not be obliged to wait till the tent in which he had already stopped is brought up. — In the following verses, he introduces, with great elegance, a verse of al-Mutanabbi's:
When she smiled and let me sip intoxication from her lips, I called to mind what had passed between al-Ozaib and Bārik (7); her slender stature and the flow of my tears made me think of our (slender) lances couched against the foe and of the rapid course of our steeds.

We give here al-Mutanabbi’s verse, which forms the beginning of a long *kastda*:

I called to mind what passed between al-Ozaib and Bārik: there our lances were couched; there ran, with emulation, our rapid steeds.

Ibn Matrūh and Bahā ad-Din Zuhair (vol. 1. p. 542) were old friends. Their acquaintance commenced when they were boys and residing in Upper Egypt. They were as two brothers, neither of them having any worldly interest distinct from that of his companion. When they entered into the service of al-Malik as-Sālih, they maintained their mutual friendship and carried on a written correspondence in verse, containing an account of whatever occurred to them. Bahā ad-Din himself related to me that Jamāl ad-Din Ibn Matrūh wrote to him, one day, for the gift of a *darj* (a large sheet) of paper, being then in straitened circumstances. They were at that time in the East (Mesopotamia), as I believe. Here are the lines:

Sir! I am in want of a leaf (in Arabic: wrk); bestow on me a sheet as fair as your reputation.—If it comes to me with some ink (I shall say:) “Welcome to the (fair) cheeks and the dark "eye."

Bahā ad-Din informed me that the writer had placed two vowel points upon the *r* of the word *war*, *k*, so that it might be read either *warak* (leaf) or *warik* (money), and thus make known his distressed situation. Bahā ad-Din answered in these terms:

My master! I send you what you wrote for: a little ink and some *warik*. Yet the small quantity (8) of that is precious in my sight, since you compared it to cheeks and eyes.

In the life of Bahā ad-Din (vol. 1. p. 544) I have given two verses which Ibn Matrūh wrote to him and I related, after Bahā ad-Din’s own statement, the motive which led the author to compose them. Since I wrote that, an accomplished literary scholar arrived in Egypt and I mentioned to him, in conversation, what Bahā ad-Din had told me. I said also that he had recited to me the following verse, as having been composed by Ibn al-Halawi (vol. 1. p. 544):

You compose verses well and you reward those who praise you in verse. Tell us then whether you are Zuhair or Harim?
Here, that person said to me: "The *kašda* of which you speak was recited to me by the author, Ibn al-Halâwi, when we were in Mosul; but I read the verse in a different manner, for I heard it thus pronounced by him who composed it:

"You make verses well and you remunerate those who bring verses to you. Tell us then whether you are Zuhair or Harim?"

Ibn Al-Halâwi may, perhaps have composed this verse in the form given to it by Bahâ ad-Din and, afterwards, modified it in the manner indicated by the literary scholar; or, perhaps, one or other of these relaters may have made a mistake; but the verse is very good, both ways. The history of Zuhair Ibn Abî Sulma al-Muzâni (9) is so well known that we need not leave our subject for the purpose of giving a long account of this antislamic poet. He used to compose poems in praise of Harim Ibn Sinân al-Muzâni, a famous Arab chieftain in the times of paganism. Harim frequently bestowed rich presents on Zuhair and even swore that, every time the poet saluted him, he would give him, out of his property, something very fine, such as a horse, or a camel, or a male slave, or a female slave. Zuhair, not wishing to be onerous to Harim, never afterwards passed by a company where that chief was, without saying: "Salutation to you all, this morning! with the exception of Harim; the best among you, I leave him out."—Let us resume our account of Ibn Matrûh: I have been informed that, before his elevation to power, he wrote a petition to a *rådis* (or chief of a government office), requesting him to take charge a certain affair for one of his friends. The *rådis* sent out to him the paper with the following answer written on it: "To arrange such an affair would be a toil for me." To this Ibn Matrûh wrote as a reply: "Were it not for toiling *etc.*" The *rådis* understood the allusion and did the business. These words belong to a verse of al-Mutanabbi's which runs as follows:

Were rank to be gained without toil, every man would be a *rådis*; (*but they know that*) liberality impoverishes, and hardy daring is often fatal.

The hint was really very delicate.—Jamâl ad-Din Abû 'l-Husain Yahya Ibn Abd al-Azîm Ibn Yahya Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ali, a learned and highly accomplished philologist, who was generally known by the surname of al-Jazzâr al-Misri, recited to me an elegant *kašda* which he had composed in honour of Ibn Matrûh. It is rather long, so I shall merely give the amatory part of it:
Here is her vernal abode which my soul was longing to see again; stop the caravan so that I may fulfil my duty towards that spot (in offering it my salutations). According to the laws of love, it would be disgraceful for me if I treated with ingratitude a place which procured me so much happiness. I shall never forget the nights passed therein with her whom I loved, and those happy hours. If, since their departure, I am become the mere shadow of myself, yet the love which I feel for her has never ceased to be a reality. My friend, sincere and noble! at such a moment as this, the generous man never forgets his friends. Place your hand upon my heart; you may perhaps alleviate its palpitations within my bosom. My eyes have shed torrents of tears, since they last saw this abode of love, and how often have they wept when they saw (from afar) the lightnings (of the beneficent rain-cloud) glimmer over it. They have exhausted the pearls of their tears, and now, they scatter on the ground their rubies (drops of blood). Stay with me, and tell the caravan to wait; if it will not, let it go forward on its way; this a country which we can seldom hope to attain, and we have never missed attaining (overtaking) a caravan. How often, in these tracts, have I endeavoured to see her who, when she called her sister, astonished the moon (who thought that the call was addressed to her). The rose is disgraced by the redness of her cheeks, and the juice of the grape wishes to resemble (in flavour) the moisture of her lips. For her, beauty is well adapted and has always been so; and real worth has always been adapted to (the character of) Ibn Matrûh.

Ibn Matrûh was born at Usyūt on Monday, the 8th of Rajab, 592 (8th June, A. D. 1196); he died in Old Cairo on the eve of Wednesday, the 1st of Shaabân, 649 (19th October, A. D. 1251) and was buried at the foot of Mount Mukattam. I was present at the funeral service and the interment. One of his last injunctions was that the following quatrain (dâ-baîî), composed by himself during his last illness, should be inscribed on the headstone of his grave:

I am deposited, like a pledge, in the bottom of an excavation, possessing no other worldly goods than a shroud. O thou who includest all thy servants in thy mercy, I am one of thy servants who were sinners.

It is stated that, when he had breathed his last, a paper, on which were written the following lines, was found under his head:

Why standest thou in such terror of death, since the mercy of the Lord may always be hoped for? Hadst thou been guilty of every crime which mortals ever committed, the mercy of God can extend over them all.

The chief kâdi Badr ad-Din Yûsuf, he of whom we have spoken above, died in Cairo on Saturday, the 14th of Rajab, 663 (14th June, A. D. 1265), and was interred in the mausoleum which bears his name and lies near the mosque founded by him in the lesser Karâfa cemetery. He told me more than once, that he was born in the
mountains near the town of Arbela and that he drew his descent from a zerzär (or Greek patrician). — Usyūt is a town in Upper Egypt; some persons suppress the first letter of the name and pronounce it Suyūt.

(1) According to other accounts, saint Louis took Damietta on the 23rd of Safar (6th June).
(2) The translator may have perhaps mistaken the meaning of this verse.
(3) These two letters form the word mād, which signifies water.
(4) The meaning of these words is: on whom all eyes are fixed. The same idea is similarly expressed by al-Mutanabbi in a verse which is given in the next page.
(5) There is here an allusion to Ibn Khalilikān's title of Shams ad-Dīn (the sun of religion). By the moon is perhaps meant the kādī Sinjar who, as we have seen, bore the title of Badr ad-Dīn (the moon of religion).
(6) The primitive signification of the Turkish word yatak is bed.
(7) These are the names of two places in Arabia, but they signify also sweet water and flashing, by which terms poets sometimes designate the moisture of the lips and the whiteness of the teeth.
(8) To obtain the measure and the meaning of this verse, we must read yawmu یوم
(9) For the history of Zuhair, the author of one of the Muwalākas, see Caussin de Perseval's *Estai sur l'histoire des Arabes*, tome II, page 327 et seq.

---

**IBN JAZLA**

Abū Ali Yahya Ibn Isa Ibn Jazla, the physician, was the author of the *Kitāb al-Minhāj*, a work drawn up in alphabetical order and containing the names of plants, drugs, medicaments, etc., in great quantity. He was a Christian, but became a Muslim and then composed an epistle in which he confuted the Christians, exposed the foulness of their doctrines and extolled Islamism. In it he set forth arguments to prove that the latter was the true religion and adduced passages which he had read in the Pentateuch and the Gospel and which spoke of the apparition of Muhammad as a prophet to be sent by God. (According to him, these passages) were concealed by the Jews and the Christians, who never made them public and whose turpitudes he then enumerates. It is an elegant epistle and displays great talent. In the month of Zu 'l-Hijja, 485 (January, A. D. 1093), it was read (by students) under his direction (4). The manner of his conversion was, that he went to
study (logic?) under Abû Ali Ibn al-Walid the Mutazelite, whose lessons he attended assiduously and who never ceased exhorting him to embrace Islamism, adducing evident proofs which attested the truth of that religion. This continued till God directed him, and he then became a good musulman. He studied medicine under Abû 'l-Hasan Saïd Ibn Hibat Allah Ibn al-Husain (2) and profited by that doctor's tuition. He possessed a superficial knowledge of polite literature and wrote a good hand. A great number of works were composed by him for the imâm (khalif) al-Muktadi bi-amr Illah, such as the Takwîm al-Abdân (regimen of the body), the Minhâj al-Baiyân etc. (highway of exposition, treating of the (plants and simples) made use of by man), the Ishâ'âr fi talkhîs il-Ibâra (indication concerning the abridgment of the Ibâra (3), an epistle in praise of the medical art, demonstrating its accordance with the divine law and refuting the attacks directed against it, an epistle addressed to Alya (Elias(?)) the priest, when he (the author) became a Moslim. There are other works of his besides the above. He was one of those doctors who were famous for their theoretical knowledge of medicine and for the practise of that art. Abû 'l-Muzaffar Yusuf Sibt Ibn al-Jauzi (vol. I. p. 439) mentions him in the historical work entitled Mirât az-Zamân, and says: "When he became a Moslim, Abû 'l-Hasan, who was then kâdi of Baghdad, deputed to him the task of engrossing the judgements pronounced in court. He (Ibn Jazla) acted as doctor to the inhabitants of his quarter and the persons of his acquaintance; he took from them no retribution and carried to them gratuitously the potions and medicines which they required. He sought out poor people and made them the objects of his charity. Some time before his death, he made a wakf (4) of his books and deposited them in the mash-hed (or funeral chapel) of Abû Hanifa (vol. III. p. 555)."

— All this is mentioned under the year 493 (A. D. 1099-1100), and it was customary with that historian to place each of his biographical notices under the year in which the individual died; his book being drawn up in the form of annals. The author of the work entitled Kitâb al-Bustân al-Jâmî li-tawârîkh az-Zamân (the Garden, being a collection of historical dates) (5) states that Ibn Jazla died in the year 493, and Abû 'l-Hasan Ibn al-Hamadâni (vol. I. p. 280) informs us, besides, that his death occurred towards the end of Shaabân (beginning of July, 1100). This indication is borrowed from him by Ibn an-Najjâr in the History of Baghdad (vol. I. p. 11). Another author states that his conversion to Islamism took place in the year 466, to which Ibn an-Najjâr adds: "On Tuesday, the 11th of the latter Jumâda
(11th February, A. D. 1074).—Jazla is to be pronounced with an \(a\) after the \(j\); it takes no vowel after the \(z\), but the \(l\) is followed by an \(a\).

1. The Arabic may also signify: "it was read (before witnesses, so that it might serve as a proof) against "him (in case he relapsed)." This may, perhaps, be what Ibn Khallikân, or his authority, meant.

2. Said Ibn Hibat Allah, a celebrated doctor of Baghdad, was employed between the years 470-500 (A. D. 1077-1106), as physician to the khalifs al-Muktadi and al-Mustazhir Billah. Some of his pupils, such as Ibn Jazla, A'dhad az-Zamân and Ibn al-Tahmid, became highly distinguished.—(Wüstenfeld's Arabische Aerzte, n° 443).

3. The Ishdra and the Idrâ treated probably of medicine; Hâjji Khaîifa does not indicate them in his Bibliographical dictionary.

4. See vol. i. p. 49.

5. This work is not noticed by Hâjji Khaîifa.

SHIHAB AD-DIN AS-SUHRAWARDI

Abû 'l-Futûh Yahya Ibn Habash Ibn Amrâk, surnamed Shihâb ad-Din (flambeau of religion), was a native of Suhraward and a philosopher; the same who was put to death at Aleppo. Some say that his name was Ahmad (not Yahya), and others assert that the surname Abû 'l-Futûh was his real name. Abû 'l-Abbas Ahmad Ibn Abi Osaibia al-Khazrajî (1), the philosopher who composed the work called Tabakhût al-Atibba (classified dictionary of medical men), gives to this Suhrawardi the name of Omar and does not mention that of his father. The true name is, however, the one which I have indicated, and I have therefore placed his article here (among the Yahyas). I found in the handwriting of some persons versed in this branch of science (biography) that such was his name, and I received the same information from a number of others, the exactness of whose knowledge could not be doubted. That fortified my opinion and led me to place as-Suhrawardi’s article here.—He was one of the most learned men of that age. He studied philosophy and the fundamentals of jurisprudence under the shaikeh Majd ad-Din al-Jili, who was then teaching in the city of Marâgha, one of the governments in Adarbajân, and he continued with him.
till he attained pre-eminence in these two sciences. This Majd ad-Dīn al-Jīlī was the professor under whom Fakhr ad-Dīn ar-Rāzī (vol. II. p. 652) studied with such profit and completed his education; he was considered as a great master (iμdūm) in all those branches of science. The author of the Tabakāt al-Atībbā says, in that work: "As-Subrawardi was the first man of his time in the philosophical sciences, all of which he knew perfectly well. In the science of the fundamentals of jurisprudence he stood pre-eminent; he was gifted with great acuteness of mind and the talent of expressing his thoughts with precision. His learning was greater than his judgment." He then states that he was put to death towards the close of the year 586; at the age of thirty-six years. At the end of this article we shall give the true date of his death. After this, he says: "It is reported that he was acquainted with the art of stīmā (natural magic), and the following anecdote was related by a Persian philosopher who happened to travel with him from Damascus: 'When we reached al-Kābūn, a village which lies near the gate of Damascus, on the road leading to Aleppo, we came up to some Turkomans who had with them a flock of sheep. We said to the shaikh (as-Subrawardi): 'Master! we would like to have one of those sheep to eat (2).' He replied: 'I have with me ten dirhems (6 shillings); take them and buy a sheep.' We bought one from a Turkomān and proceeded on our journey, but we had not gone far whom a companion of this herdsman came up to us and said: 'Give back the sheep and take a smaller one; for that fellow (whom you got it from) did not know how to sell it to you; this sheep is worth more than the sum given for it.' We talked with him on the subject, and the shaikh said to us, on perceiving what was going on: 'Take the sheep and walk off with it; I shall stay with the man and give him satisfaction.' We proceeded on our way whilst the shaikh entered into conversation with the fellow, endeavouring to tranquilize him. When we had got to a short distance, he left him and followed us. The Turkomān ran after him, calling out to him to stop, but the shaikh did not mind him. Finding that could get no answer, he ran up to the shaikh in a passion and pulled him by the left arm, exclaiming: 'Do you mean to go away and leave me thus? The arm separated from the shoulder and remained in his hand, with the blood running out. Astounded at the sight, and forgetful of what he was about, the Turkomān threw down the arm in terror. The shaikh turned back to the arm, took it up with his right hand and then
"... followed us. The other continued to retreat, and the shaikh kept looking at him till he disappeared. When he came up to us, we saw in his right hand a towel and nothing else."—A great number of similar anecdotes are related of him, but God knows if they be true. He composed some works, such as the Tunkhdt (enucliations), treating of the fundamentals of jurisprudence, the Talwthdt (elucidations), the Kitáb al-Haidkil (book of temples) (3), the Kitáb Hikma til-Ishrāk (the philosophy of illuminism) (4), an epistle entitled: al-Ghurba tal-Gharība (extraordinary peregrination (?) and drawn up on the plan of Avicena's Epistle of the bird (see vol. I. p. 443) and on that of the Hai Ibn Yakhdîn composed by the same author (5). This epistle, which is elegantly written, treats of (what is called) the discourse of the mind (i.e. its ambitious suggestions) and whatever, in the system of the philosophers, is connected with that subject. Here are some of his sayings:

"Let your reflection be turned towards such an image of sanctity as may be a gratification to the seeker of enjoyment."—"The tracts of sanctity are an abode on whose (floor) the ignorant cannot tread."—"For the bodies darkened (by sin), the realm of the heavens is forbidden. Declare therefore the unity of God and be filled with veneration for him; remember him, for you are naked, though clothed in the raiment of existence."—"Were there two suns in the world, its columns would be destroyed."—"The order (of nature) refuses to be otherwise than it is."

"I bid myself and said: 'I am not visible;' and by my effort, I let myself be seen by all things that have being."—"If I was sure that we (and God) were never to meet, I should satisfy my passion in the enjoyment of Salma (6)."

"I implore thee, O Lord! to deliver my subtle part (the soul) from this dense (or material world)."—Some poems are attributed to him, one of which is on the soul and in the same style as the verses rhyming in aṭn which were composed by al-Husain Ibn Sina and which we inserted in his article (vol. I. p. 443). This philosopher (as-Suhrawardi) said (on the subject):

She divested herself of the temple (the body) at the sand-hill of the park (the world), and aspired with ardeur to regain her former abode. Impelled by passionate desire, she turned towards that dwelling-place, that vernal residence of which even the crumbling ruins had disappeared. She stopped to question it, and the echo (or screech-owl) replied: "There is no way (to effect) your meeting." She is like a flash of lightning glimmering over the park, and then disappearing, as if it had not gleamed.
A well known piece of his is the following:

Our souls are always turned towards you with tender affection; to meet with you would be their nosegay and their wine (7). The hearts of your lovers yearn for you and aspire after the pleasure of that meeting. O how lovers are to be pitied! they must conceal their feelings, and yet their passion betrays them. If they let their secret be known, they risk the shedding of their life's blood; for this only is shed the blood of lovers. Whilst they hide (their feelings), flowing tears tell their secret to the jealous spies. The symptoms of (love's) malady appear in their looks, and that suffices to dispel every doubt concerning them. (Your devoted lover humbly) abases the wing before you; it would be no crime in you to abase the wing (with indulgence) before him. To meet with you, his heart is always yearning; to please you, his eyes are ever watchful. Replace the darkness of your cruelty by the light of your kindness; your aversion is night, and your benevolence is day. She (the beloved) acted sincerely towards her lovers, and their hearts were sincere towards her; the light (shining) from those (hearts) was like a lamp burning in a niche. Their desires are ardent; the hour favours your approach; clear is the wine and clear are the goblets (for the feast). My friend! the lover is not to be blamed if the morning shines (if his joy appears) in the horizon of (happy) meeting; lovers are not in fault if their ardour overcomes their secrecy, so that their passion is increased and they reveal it. In risking their lives, they were prodigal, not sparing; for they knew that such prodigality was (followed by) success. The herald of (mysterious) truths called unto them and, from morning till evening, they continued obedient to that call. Whilst they rode along the way of fidelity, their tears formed an ocean on which the seamen were their passionate desires. By Allah! they sought not permission to approach the door of the beloved, till they were invited thither and had received the key. Never do they find pleasure in discourse of which the beloved is not the subject; all their time is therefore (continual) happiness. They appeared in the (beloved one's) presence, though every sign which could attest the existence of their persons had disappeared and, when they saw the beloved, they stood revealed and uttered a loud cry. He (the beloved) annihilated them from before him; the veils of existence which shaded them were removed and their souls were dissolved (8). Try to resemble them, if you are not like them; to resemble the generous (brings) good success. Arise, my boon companion! and bring the wine in its cup; for the goblets have already passed round; (let it be the produce) of the vine of nobleness (drawn) from the tun of piety; let it not be such wine as has been trod out by the husbandman.

He left some other elegant pieces, in prose and in verse; but we need not lengthen this article by inserting them. He was a follower of the rite introduced by as-Shâfi‘î (vol. II. p. 569) and had received the title of al-Murid bal-Malakât (the aspirant who desires the sight of the divine glory). He was suspected of holding heretical opinions, of disbelieving in God and of following the system professed by the philosophers of ancient times. These suspicions became so general that, when he arrived in Aleppo, the ulâmî of the city issued a fetwa in which they declared that he might be slain with impunity; so pernicious did his opinions appear to them. The most ardent of the assembly for his condemnation were the two shaîkhs Zain ad-Din and
Majd ad-Din, the son of Jahye. The shaikh Saif ad-Din al-Aamidi (vol. II, p. 235) relates as follows: "I met with as-Suhrawardi in Aleppo, and he said to me that he should certainly become master of the earth. I asked him how he learned that, and he replied: 'In a dream; methought I drank up the waters of the ocean.' I observed to him that the dream might signify being celebrated for learning, or something of that kind; but I saw that he would not give up the idea which he had in his mind. It seemed to me that he possessed great learning and little judgment."—It is related that when he was convinced that he should be put to death, he often recited these lines:

I see that my foot has shed my blood; my blood is now worthless; alas! of what avail was my repentance?

The idea in the first hemistich is borrowed from Abû 'l-Fath Ali Ibn Muhammad al-Busti (vol. II, p. 314), who said:

My foot bore me towards my death; I see that my foot has shed my blood; I did not cease to repent, but repentance has been useless to me.

This occurred in the reign of the sultan al-Malik az-Zâhir (vol. II, p. 443), son of the sultan Salâh ad-Din (Salâdîn) and sovereign of Aleppo. As-Suhrawardi was imprisoned by his order and then strangled, in pursuance to the sultan Salâh ad-Din's advice. It was in the castle of Aleppo, on the 5th of Rajab, 587 (29th July, A. D. 1191) that the execution took place. As-Suhrawardi was then eight and thirty years of age. Bahâ ad-Din Ibn Shaddâd, the kâdi of Aleppo, speaks of him, towards the commencement of his Life of Salâh ad-Din (9). After mentioning how orthodox that sultan was in his belief, he enters into a long discourse in which he praises him for the scrupulous observance of his religious duties and then adds: "He ordered his son, the sovereign of Aleppo, to put to death a youth just grown up, whom they called as-Suhrawardi and who was said to be an adversary of the divine law. (Az-Zdhir) had him arrested as soon as he was told of it, and acquainted his father with the circumstance. The latter ordered the prisoner to be put to death, which was done." The body was exposed on a cross during some days. Sibt Ibn al-Jauzi (vol. I, p. 439) has inserted in his historical work the following statement, which had been made by the same kâdi, Ibn Shaddâd: "On Friday, the 29th of Zû 'l-Hijja, 587 (17th January, A. D. 1192), after the hour of prayer, the corpse of Shihâb ad-Din as-Suhrawardi was carried out of the prison of Aleppo, and all
the partisans of that man dispersed and left him." I must here add that, when I was residing in Aleppo, where I passed some years, studying the noble science (the divine law), a great difference of opinion existed among the inhabitants respecting the character of as-Suhrawardi. Each of them spoke according to the dictates of his fancy: some declared him to have been a Zendik (10) and an infidel; others took him for a saint and one of those favoured persons who were gifted with miraculous powers; they said also that, after his death, they had witnessed things (prodigies) which justified their opinion. But the public, in general, considered him to have been an infidel who believed in nothing (11). May God pardon us our sins, grant us health (of mind) and preserve us from evil in this world and the next! may he permit us to die in the belief of those who know the truth and are rightly directed! — The date of his death given here is the true one, through it disagrees with that which I inserted, on another authority, in the beginning of this article. According to a third statement, his execution took place in the year 588, but that indication is of no value. — Both syllables of Habash are pronounced with an a. — Amtrek is a Persian word signifying petty emir; that people add the letter k to the end of nouns in order to form the diminutives. — We have already spoken of Suhrawardi in our article on the shaikh Abû Najîb Abd al-Kâhir as-Suhrawardi (vol. II. p. 150), and to that we refer the reader.

(1) Abû 'l-Abbas Ahmad Ibn al-Kâsim Ibn Khallâf Ibn Abî Osâbia (اصحابه), surnamed Muwaffak ad-Dîn and a member of the Arabic tribe of Khazarj, was born in Damascus, where his father was an oculist and his uncle, Rashîd ad-Dîn Abû 'l-Hasan Ali, director of the hospital for the treatment of the maladies of the eyes. He studied philosophy under Rida ad-Dîn al-Jîli, and profited greatly by the lessons of Abû Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Ahmad Ibn al-Baitâr, with whom he made a number of botanical excursions. Ibn al-Baitâr is the author of the Dictionary of Simples, a deservedly celebrated compilation of which Dr. Sontheimer published a German translation, at Stuttgart, in the year 1840. Ibn Abî Osâbia kept up for some time an epistolary correspondence with the celebrated physician and philosopher, Abd al-Latif. In the year 644 (A. D. 1246-7), he got an appointment in the hospital founded at Cairo by the sultan Salâh ad-Dîn (Saladin). Some years after, he accompanied the emir Isâ ad-Dîn Aidmor to Sarkhed, in Syria, and he died there, aged upwards of seventy years. His history of the physicians, entitled Oyûn al-Anbî fî Tabâbdt al-Atibât (sources of information concerning the physicians of divers classes), contains a number of curious and highly interesting articles. The list of its chapters has been given by Mr. Wattenfeld in his Geschichte der Arabischen Aertze, No. 327, and from that work are taken the indications given here. In the catalogue of the Bodleian library, tome II. p. 151 et seq. will be also found this list of chapters.

(2) The Arabic text has here, and farther on, "a head of sheep"; the word "head" is employed also in English to designate one individual of a species; we say: three head of oxen. In Arabic historians we some-
times meet with the expression: "he brought back many heads of prisoners," which means simply: many prisoners. In Turkish and in Persian, expressions of this kind are very common; "three chains of elephant" means three elephants.

(3) This work was probably a treatise on mysticism.

(4) For the signification of the word *ishrâk* see my French translation of Ibn Khaldûn's *Prolegomena*, tome III. p. 167.

(5) Another work bearing the title of Hai Ibn Yakhrân (or Yakhdân) was composed by Ibn Tufail and published by Pocock.

(6) That is: were I sure that there was no future life, I should indulge in sensual pleasures during this life.

—the preceding sentences are evidently borrowed from the Sûfis.

(7) All this piece has a mystic import: the beloved is God.

(8) The ultra-Sûf doctrine of the soul’s being absorbed into God and of its then losing the consciousness of its individuality is openly declared in this verse.

(9) See Schulten’s *Vita et res gesta Saladini*, pag. 7.

(10) The followers of Zoroaster’s doctrine were called Zendiks by the Musulmans; for them, this term is the equivalent of infidel.

(11) As-Suhrawardi was evidently a Sûfi, and very far advanced in pantheistical speculations.

ABU JAAFAR THE KORAN-READER

Abû Jaafar Yazîd Ibn al-Kakâa, the reader (1), was a *mawla*, by enfranchisement (2) of Abd Allah Ibn Aiyâsh Ibn Abi Rabîa al-Makhzûmi (3), and bore the surname of al-Madani (the inhabitant of Medina). He learned the manner of reading the Korân from Abd Allah Ibn Abbâs (vol. I. p. 89), by reciting it under his direction (عُرْضًا), and received instructions on the same subject from his patron, Ibn Aiyâsh, and from Abû Huraira (vol. I. p. 570). He heard it read by Abd Allah, the son of Omar Ibn al-Khattâb (vol. I. p. 567), and by Marwân Ibn al-Hakam (afterwards, the fourth Omaiyyide khalîf). It is said that he read the Korân under Zâid Ibn Thâbit (vol. I. p. 372). Korân-reading was taught on his authority by Nâfî Ibn Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Abi Noaim (vol. III. p. 522), Sulaimân Ibn Muslim Ibn Jammâz (4), Iṣâ Ibn Wardân (5) and Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Zîâd Ibn Aslam. He is the author of a system of readings. Abû Abd ar-Rahmân an-Nasî (vol. I p. 58) said: "Yazîd Ibn al-Kakâa is a sure authority. He taught korân-reading
to the people in Medina before the catastrophe of al-Harra (6)." — Muhammad Ibn al-Kâsim al-Mâliki said: "Abû Jaafar Yazîd Ibn al-Kâkâa was a mawla of Omm Salama, one of the Prophet's wives." He said also: "Some say that he was the same person as Jundub Ibn Fîrûz, a mawla of Abd Allah Ibn Aiyâsh al-Makhzûmi, and that he was a most holy man." — Sulaimân Ibn Muslim said: "Abû Jaafar Yazîd Ibn al-Kâkâa informed me that he taught korân-reading in the mosque of the Prophet at Medina, before the affair of al-Harra; and that battle (said he) took place towards the end (7) of the year 63, in counting from the time of the Prophet's arrival in Medina (8). He told me that he used to hold the (sacred) volume before his patron, Ibn Abbas (for him to read it). He was an excellent reader. Every day, I used to look over what he read (to us) and (thus) learned from him his system of reading. He related to me that, when he was a child, they brought him to Omm Salama, who stroked his head and invoked God's blessing on him." — "I asked him," said the same Sulaimân, "at what time he commenced korân-reading?" and he said to me: "Do you mean teaching it or learning it?" I answered: 'Teaching it;' and he replied: 'O! it was long before al-Harra; in the days of Yazîd Ibn Moawiya (the second Omaiyide khalif).'

The battle of al-Harra was fought fifty-three years after the death of the Prophet."

— Nâfî Ibn Abî Noaim said: "When the body of Abû Jaafar Yazîd Ibn al-Kâkâa, the reader, was washed after his death, they perceived that all the space from the neck to the heart was smooth and white like a leaf of the Korân, and every one present was convinced that it was the light of the Korân (which had produced that appearance)." Sulaimân Ibn Muslim related as follows: "Yazîd Ibn al-Kâkâa told me that, when Nâfî passed near him, he would say: 'Do you see that fellow? when a boy still wearing long hair, he used to come and read (the Korân) under my direction, but he afterwards treated me with ingratitude.' In relating this, he laughed." Sulaimân said also: "The concubine of Abû Jaafar declared that the whiteness which reached from his neck to his heart became afterwards a white spot between his eyes." He related again as follows: "I saw Abû Jaafar in a dream, after his death. He appeared to be on the top of the Kaaba, and I said: 'Is that Abû Jaafar?' He replied: 'It is I; offer to my brethren a salutation from me and tell them that God has placed me among the living witnesses who obtain regularly a portion (of the divine favour). Offer my salutation to Abû Hâzim (9) and tell him that Abû Jaafar says to him: 'Prudence! prudence!
"' for Almighty God and his angels are present, every evening, at your sittings.'"
—Mālik Ibn Anas (vol. II. p. 545) said: "Abū Ja'far the reader was a holy man
and acted as mufti (casuist) for the people of Medina."—Khalifa Ibn Khayyât
(vol. I. p. 492) said: "Abū Ja'far Yazid Ibn al-Kakâa died at Medina in the year
'132 (A. D. 749-750)." According to another tradition, he died in the year 128.
Abū Ali 'l-Ahwâzi (10) says, towards the commencement of his treatise on
the readings entitled al-Iknda (the satisfactory): "Ibn al-Jammâz said that Abū Ja'far
never ceased to be for the people their imam (great master) in Korân-reading, till
the year 133, when he died at Medina. Some say that his death took place in the
year 130, but God knows best."—As al-Harra has been mentioned in this article
more than once and as some readers, not knowing anything about it, may wish to
obtain information on the subject, I shall here say that the word harra (حَرْأٌ), in its
primitive signification, designates every spot of ground which is covered with black
stones. A tract of this kind is called a harra (the plural of which is hirâr); there are
a great number of hirârs. That which is here mentioned is the Harra of Wâkim,
which lies near Medina, to the east of the town. When Yazid the son of Moawia
Ibn Abî Sofyân held the supreme authority, he dispatched against Medina an army
commanded by Muslim Ibn Ocbâ al-Murri. That chief sacked the place, and the
inhabitants, who had gone out to this harra, engaged in a battle the details of which
would take us too long to relate; besides, they are to be found in the books of
annals (11). It is said that, after the catastrophe of al-Harra, upwards of one thou-
sand unmarried girls of Medina gave birth to children, in consequence of the infamous
punishment which they had undergone. When Muslim Ibn Ocbâ had mas-
sacred the inhabitants of Medina, he set out for Mekka and was seized by death
at a place called the Thaniya (or defile of) Harsha (حرشا). On this, he called in
Hosain (حسن) Ibn Numair as-Sakûni and said to him: "Come here, you ass (12)!
you are to know that the Commander of the faithful ordered me, in case I was on
the point of death, to give you the command; and now, that I am dying, I am
unwilling to disobey him (though I ought to do so) (13)." He then prescribed to
him a number of things which he should execute, after which he said: "If I go to
the fire (of hell) after (my good action of) having slain the people of al-Harra, I
shall be very unfortunate indeed!"—Wâkim (وَكِيم) is the name of one of the
otoms of Medina. Al-Otom (أَلْوَتَم) is a building like a castle and situated near al-
Harra; that place was (usually) called the Harra of Wâkim (14).
In the first century of Islamism, the true manner of reading the Korâân could only be learned by oral instruction. The reason of this has been already given, vol. I, p. 152.

See the introduction to the second volume, page ix.

Abû 'l-Harith Abd Allah Ibn Aiyâsh Ibn Abi Rabla al-Makhrûmi, the Korân-reader, is said to have seen the prophet. He learned the readings from some of the prophet's companions and taught them to a great number of other persons. It is stated that he was killed, in the service of God, A. H. 78 (A. D. 697-8), in Sijistân; but, by another account, he lost his life subsequently to the year 70.—(Tabakht al-Kurrd, Ms. of the Bib. imp., ancien fonds, no 748, fol. 8).—The author of the Nujum says that he was killed in India, A. H. 48 (A. D. 668-9).

The reader, Abû 'l-Rabîl (أبو الربيع) Sulaimân Ibn Muslim Ibn Jammâz was a mawla of the tribe of Zahra and a native of Medina. He generally followed the system of reading adopted by Nâfî. —(Tab. al-Kurrd, fol. 34 verso. The date of his death is not given.)

Abû 'l-Harith Isâ Ibn Wardân al-Haddâ (أبو الحارث إسحاق بن وردان الحداد, the camel-driver) was a native of Medina and a reader. He died probably before Nâfî. —(Tab. al-Kurrd, fol. 25 verso.)

Further on, our author speaks again of the battle of al-Harra.

The Arabic expression rds as-sana (the head of the year) means the end of the year. Ibn Khaldûn designates the end of a century by the words rds al-miya.

The battle of al-Harra was fought towards the end of the last month of the Muslim year. According to Abû 'l-Fedâ, in his Annals, it took place on the 27th of Zûl-Hijja, A. H. 63 (27th of August, A. D. 683).

By the surname of Abû Hâzûm may perhaps be meant a disciple of Muhammad's companions and a Tradionist of good repute whose names were Abû Hâzim Salama Ibn Dinâr. He was a native of Medina and a mawla of the tribe of Khazraj. He died A. H. 135 (A. D. 753-3), according to an-Nawawi, in his Tahâlîb (Wüstenfeld's edition), or, in 140, according to the author of the Tabakht al-Huffâs.

According to Hajjî Khalîfa, in his bibliographical Dictionary, the author of the treatise on the Korân-readings which bears the title of al-Iknda, was Abû Ali Hasan Ibn Ali Al-Ahwâzi, who died A. H. 446 (A. D. 1054-5).

See Abû 'l-Fedâ's Annals, tome I, p. 395, and Dozy's Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne, tome I, p. 100 et seq., where a full and satisfactory account of this battle is given.

Literally : You ass' packsaddle!

See Dozy's Hist. des Musulmans d'Espagne, tome I, page 127.

The text of this passage is, probably incorrect; if translated literally, it would signify : which place was therefore called the Harra of Wâkim. It is here rendered in a manner which excludes the absurdity.
BIографический словарь.

YAZID IBN RUMAN, THE KORAN-READER

Abū Rūḥ Yazīd Ibn Rūmān, the Korān-reader (1), was a mawla of the family of az-Zubair Ibn al-Awwām (vol. II. p. 199) and a native of Medina. He learned how to recite the Korān correctly by reading it aloud under the direction of Abd Allah Ibn Aiyāsh Ibn Abī Rabīḥ al-Makhzūmī (see page 162 of this volume), and he heart it read by Ibn Abbās (vol. I. p. 89) and Orwa Ibn az-Zubair (vol. II. p. 199). Korān-reading was learned from him by Nafī' Ibn Abī Noaim (vol. III. p. 522), who read aloud the text under his direction. Yahya Ibn Main (see page 24 of this vol.) declared that Yazīd Ibn Rūmān was a sure authority. Wahb Ibn Jarir (2) stated that his father related to him as follows: “I saw Muhammad Ibn Sirīn (vol. II. p. 586) and Yazīd Ibn Rūmān counting on their fingers the number of verses “from the Korān which they recited during the prayer (3).” Yazīd Ibn Rūmān related as follows: “I was praying by the side of Nafī', the son of Jubair Ibn Mut'am (4), and he made me a sign to prompt him; and we were then praying (5).” He stated also that, in the time of (the khalif) Omar Ibn al-Khattāb, the people made twenty-three prostrations during the prayer, when they were in the month of Ramadān (6). Yazīd Ibn Rūmān died in the year 130 (A. D. 747-8).

(2) Abū ʿl-Abbās Wahb Ibn Jarir, a traditionist of Basra, died A. H. 206 (A. D. 824-5). (Tabakht al-Huffah; Nuṣṣ.)
(3) When the Muslim performs the ceremonies of the canonical prayer, he must recite, in a low voice, at least three verses of the Korān. Devotees repeat even a whole chapter or a considerable number of verses, ten, twenty, one hundred, etc., each time. It appears from the anecdote here related, that counting on the fingers the number of the verses, as they are recited, was authorized by the example of two very eminent doctors, although it was probably considered as an irregular proceeding.
(4) The Kurashihs, Jubair Ibn Mut'am an-Naufali, one of the Companions, embraced islamism subsequently to the battle of Badr, and then accompanied Muhammad in some of his expeditions. His authority as a Traditionist is acknowledged by al-Bukhārī and Muslim. He was one of the most learned of the Kurashihs chiefs. His death took place at Medina, A. H. 54 (A. D. 673-4), according to the author of the Nuṣṣ, and of the Tahdīb al-Aṣmā. — Nafī', the son of Jubair, was considered as an imām of great merit and a learned and sure Traditionist. He died A. H. 99 (A. D. 717-8). — (Tahdīb.)
(5) This anecdote seems adduced to prove that the Muselman, in reciting a portion of the Korán during the prayer, may have himself prompted by his neighbours, in case his memory fail him.

(6) These prostrations are made in addition to those which are required in the ordinary form of prayer. The Hanafites make twenty; the Shafites, thirty-six. We learn here that, in the time of Omar, twenty-three was the usual number.

YAZID IBN AL-MUHALLAB

Abû Khâlid Yazîd al-Azdi was the son of al-Muhallab Ibn Abî Sufra. We have already mentioned his father, under the letter M (vol. III. p. 508), and, as we have there traced up and spoken of his genealogy, we need not repeat our observations here. Ibn Kutaiba (vol. II. p. 22) states, in his Kitâb al-Madrif, and a number of other historians also relate as follows: "Al-Muhallab, on dying, designated "Yazid as his successor. The latter was then thirty years of age. Abd al-" Malik Ibn Marwân (the Omaiyide khalif) dismissed Yazid from office by the advice " of al-Hajjâj Ibn Yûsuf ath-Thakefi (vol. I. p. 356), and appointed in his place, as " governor of Khorásân, Kutaiba Ibn Muslim al-Bähili (vol. II. p. 514). Yazid then " fell into the hands of al-Hajjâj." I must here make some observations: Al-" Hajjâj, who was married to Hind, the sister of Yazid and the daughter of al-Mu-" hallab, had conceived a great dislike for his brother-in-law, as he apprehended, from what he saw of his noble character, that the place which he then filled might, one day, be occupied by Yazid. So, to protect himself against his attacks, he never ceased to evil-entreat him. He was always consulting astrologers and other persons who cultivated the art (of divination), in order to learn by whom he should be suc-"ceeded, and they used to answer: "By a man named Yazid." He was then go-" vernor of the two Irâks and saw no one capable of replacing him in that office except this Yazid. And thus it fell out; on his death, Yazid obtained the command. So say the historians. Let us now resume our extract from the Madrif and finish it. " Al-Hajjâj inflicted tortures on Yazid, who at length escaped from prison and went " to see Sulaimân Ibn Abd al-Malik, who was then in Syria. That prince inter-
ceded with his brother *the khalif* al-Walid Ibn Abd al-Malik, and obtained a free pardon for Yazid. This put a stop to al-Hajjâj's conduct towards the latter. When Sulaimân obtained the khilifate, Yazîd received from him the government of Khorâsân and then took *the cities of* Jurjân and Dibistân. Having set out for Irân, he learned the death of Sulaimân Ibn Abd al-Malik and proceeded to Basra, where he was arrested by Adî Ibn Artâ (sîrjâ), who bound him in chains and sent him to Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz. Yazid was imprisoned by that khalif, but, having effected his escape, he went to Basra. On the death of Omar, he revolted against the new khalif Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik, who then sent against him his brother Maslama (Ibn Abd al-Malik). This general slew Yazid *'on the field of battle*.'—The *hâfs* Abû 'l-Kâsim, generally known by the surname of Ibn Asâkir (vol. II. p. 252), says, in his greater historical work: "Yazid, the son of al-Muhallab, had been appointed to govern Basra in the name of Sulaimân Ibn Abd al-Malik. Some time after, Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz conceived a dislike for him and was still incensed against him when Adî Ibn Artâ, to whom he had given the government of Basra, brought Yazid to him."—Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab taught some traditions which he had learned from Anas Ibn Malik (vol. II. p. 587), Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz and his own father al-Muhallab. Traditions were handed down on his authority by his son Abd ar-Rahmân, by Abû Oyaina, the son of al-Muhallab, by Abû Ishak as-Sabit (vol. II. p. 392) and by others.—Al-Asmâî (vol. II. p. 123) related that al-Hajjâj, having arrested Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab, inflicted on him grievous tortures and would not consent to suspend them unless he received, every day, from the prisoner, the sum of one hundred thousand dirhems (£ 2,500). When the money was not paid in, al-Hajjâj put Yazid again to the torture, that very day, and continued to torment him till the night set in. One day, Yazid had collected one hundred thousand dirhems, for the purpose of buying off that day's tortures, when the poet al-Akhtal (1) came in to him and said:

Abû Khâlid! Khorâsân has perished since your departure, and the needy all exclaim: "Where is Yazid?" Since you are gone, the two Marwâns have not received a drop of rain; not a tree is verdant in the two Marwâns. The throne of government has no splendour since your absence; beneficence has ceased, and there is no generous man to shower down his gifts.

By the two Marwâns, the poet meant Marw as-Shâbjân, which is the greater, and Marw ar-Rûd, which is the less. They are both well-known cities of Khorâsân.
We have already spoken of them in this work (vol. I. p. 50). — "On this," says al-Aスマ, "Yazīd gave the poet the one hundred thousand dirhems, and al-Hajjāj, " being informed of the circumstance, sent for him and said: 'Native of Marw! " art thou still so generous though in such a state? Well! I shall hold thee quit " of the tortures of this day and of those which follow it.'" So the anecdote is related by Ibn Asākir, but the more received opinion is that the author of the verses, he to whom this happened, was al-Farazdak (vol. III. p. 612); and I since found the verses in the collected poetical works of Zīād al-Aṣjami (vol. I. p. 631). God knows best! — The same ḥāfiz (Ibn Asākir) related as follows: 'When Yazīd fled from al-Hajjāj and went to find Sulaimān Ibn Ābd al-Malik, who was then at ar-Ramla, " he passed, on his way through Syria, by the tents of some Arabs and said to his " servant boy: 'Go to those people and ask them to give us a drink of milk.' " When the milk was brought, he drank it and said: 'Give them one thousand " dirhems (£. 25).' The boy observed to him that these people did not know who " he was [and that he need not give them so much]; and he replied: 'But I know " who I am; give them the thousand dirhems.' And that was done." The same author says: 'Yazīd Ibn al-Muhallab made the pilgrimage and (to conclude the " rites and ceremonies) he sent for a barber to shave his head. When the operation was finished, he ordered him a recompense of one thousand dirhems. " The man was amazed and astounded, but at length said: 'With this sum I shall " go and ransom from slavery my mother, such a one.' Yazīd said: 'Give him " another thousand.' The barber exclaimed: 'May my wife be divorced from " me if I ever shave any one's head after this!' — 'Give him two thousand more," said Yazīd.' Al-Mадāini said: Said Ibn Amr Ibn al-Āṣī (2) bore a fraternal affection to Yazīd Ibn al-Muhallab. When Omar Ibn Ābd al-Azīz caused the latter to be imprisoned and gave orders that no person should be allowed to see him, Said went to him and said: 'Commander of the faithful! Yazīd owes me the sum of fifty thousand dirhems, but you hinder me from seeing him; will you permit me to go and exact from him the payment?" The khalif consented, and Said entered into the chamber of Yazīd, who was rejoiced to see him. 'How did you " get in?' said he. Said informed him of the stratagem. 'By Allah!' exclaimed Yazīd, 'you shall not go away without that sum.' Said refused, but Yazīd declared in the most solemn manner that he should accept the money and sent to
his house for fifty thousand dirhems which he gave to him. — Another author, in
relating this anecdote, adds: A poet said on that subject:

I never saw a noble prisoner give presents to a visitor, except Yazid. He bestowed fifty
thousand on Sa'Id Ibn 'Amr, who went to see him; and the money was paid down without de-
lay to Sa'Id.

Abū 'l-Faraj al-Moaffā Ibn Zakariya an-Nahrawāni (vol. III. p. 374) relates, in his
Kitāb al-Anṣa wal-Jalīs, an anecdote which he learned from Abd Allah Ibn al-Kūfī
and which we insert here: Sulaimān Ibn Abd al-Malik (the Omaiyyide khalīf) re-
quired from Omar Ibn Hubaira (3) the payment of one million of dirhems (£. 25,000),
out of (what the latter had gained in) his expeditions on sea. Omar (not being able
to pay that sum) went to see Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab (4), who had been appointed
governor of Irāk, and took with him Othmān Ibn Haiyān al-Murri, al-Kakā (الکمات)
Ibn Khālid al-Abṣi, al-Hudail Ibn Zu'far al-Kilābi and some other persons belonging
to (the tribe of) Kāis. When they arrived at the door of Yazid’s pavilion, the cham-
berlain obtained permission to introduce them (adāna lahom al-hājib) and informed
them that his master was washing his head. Yazid at length came in, threw
himself upon his bed and then said: “What has brought you all together?”
Othmān replied: “Here is our shaikh and master, Ibn Hubaira; al-Walid (the late
khalīf) furnished him with money and troops when he was about undertaking an
expedition on sea, and a debt of one million of dirhems is now made out against
him. We therefore said: Yazid is the chief of the Yemenites, the vizir of Su-
lampān and the lord of al-Irāk; he has delivered from similar difficulties persons
who were far from being similar to us. By Allah! if the wealth of the tribe of
Kāis had been sufficient, we should have taken the payment upon ourselves.”
Al-Kakā then spoke and said: “Son of al-Muhallab! this is an excellent affair
sent to you by God, and no one deserves such a favour more than you. Act
therein according to your former doings; let not stint or parcimony hinder you
from fulfilling this duty; we have come to you with Ibn Hubaira, on account of
a debt with which he is loaded. Give therefore to us our money and hide our
shame from the Arabs.” Al-Hudail Ibn Zu'far then spoke as follows: “Son of
al-Muhallab! had I found a pretext for not coming to you, now, that you have
riches in Irāk, I should have staid away. You once came to us when you feared
danger and you remained with us as a guest; did we then allow you to retire in
sorrow? By the right hand of God! though we left (neglected to visit) you when you were in Syria, we have now come to you (landtannak) in Irâk; that (distance) is only a short step and renders indispensable the fulfilling of our duty (towards you)." Ibn Khathama then spoke and said: "I shall not repeat to you, son of al-Muhallab! what the others have just said; (for their words would give me to understand) that you (anna anta) are not strong enough to deliver Ibn Hubaira from his burden; and on whom then could we count? By Allah! the case is not so (and I shall merely say that) the tribe of Kais is not in a situation to help him; their wealth is insufficient, and the khalif will grant him no respite." Ibn Hubaira then spoke and said: "As for me, my affair is done if my request succeed, and (I am done for) if it be rejected; since I find no one (to whom I could think of applying), either before or after you. This business did indeed preoccupy my mind, but (I am convinced that) you have already arranged it." On hearing these words, Yazid laughed and said: "Hesitation is the brother of avarice; there shall be no difficulties raised (by me); juge (for yourselves and say how much you require)." Al-Kââ said: "The half of the sum," and Yazid replied: "I take charge of it. Boy! let us see what there is for breakfast." The repast was brought in and we (said the narrator) let our disappointment appear to him more than we were aware of (fankarna mdho akhtar mamma arafna). When we had finished (falamma faraghna), he ordered us to be perfumed and arrayed in handsome robes. The narrator continues his recital thus: We then withdrew and, as we passed (the door), Ibn Hubaira said: "Tell me who, after Ibn al-Muhallab, will take charge of paying the remainder? God has (surely) reduced your credit and your influence! By Allah! Yazid knows not the difference between half and whole; for him, one is the same as the other. Go back and speak to him of what remains (to be paid)." The narrator continues in these terms: Yazid suspected that they would come back to him for the entire sum, and he therefore told the chamberlain to admit them, if they returned. When they came and were introduced, Yazid said to them: "If you regret your agreement, I shall cancel it, and if you think the sum which I offered too little, I shall increase it." Ibn Hubaira then said: "Son of al-Muhallab! when a camel is heavily loaded, his very ears are a weight for him; and I am heavily loaded with what remains for me to pay." Yazid replied: "I take the whole burden on myself." He then rode to Sulaimân and said: "Commander of the faithful! you established me in authority for the
“purpose of attaining your ends through my means; I hesitate at nothing, as long
as the money (which you furnish me) is sufficiently ample; but I have not now in
my hands even the least trifle belonging to you, wherewithal I may render ser-
vices (to the needy) and (thus) erect monuments of (your) generosity; were you not
there to help me, the undertaking of the smallest thing would cripple me.” He
then said: “Ibn Hubaira has come to see me, with his principal companions.”
Sulaimān (here interrupted him and) said: “Take care and touch not the money
which belongs to God (the money of the state); that man is all duplicity and
cunning, a collector (of wealth) and a refuser (of it to others), a deceiver and a
miser, a man to be avoided. And what did you do?” Yazid answered: “I
undertook to pay his debt (kāl : hamalto ḍnho).” — “(You were in the wrong),”
said Sulaimān; “you should have carried the money (kāl : ḍhmiλo) to the public
treasury.” — “By Allah!” replied Yazid, “I did not take charge of it with the
intention of defrauding (the state); I shall carry the money to the treasury to-
morrow.” This he did, and Sulaimān, being informed of it, sent for him.
When he saw him (come in), he laughed and said: “It is for you that my fire has
burned and that my tinder-box gave out sparks (ذكَتْ بِن ناري ووريت بِبُن زنادَي); the charge is for me and the honour for you. My oath (that the cash should be
paid in) is fulfilled (قد وَفِتْ لِي يُمِيني). Go now and take back your money.”
This he did.—Yazid said, one day: “By Allah! I prefer life to death and an ho-
nourable reputation to life; could I obtain a gift never yet granted to mortal, I
should wish to have an ear by means of which I might hear what people say of
me after my death.” We have mentioned this saying in the life of his father
al-Muhallab (vol. III. p. 508), to whom we attributed it, and not to Yazid; God
Ibn al-Muhallab’s intendants sold, for the sum of forty thousand dirhems (£ 1,000),
the melons produced in one of that emir’s farms. When Yazid was informed of
the circumstance, he said to the interdict: ‘You have converted us into green-
grocers! were there not old women enough in the tribe of Azd among whom
you might have shared them?’” — Omar Ibn Lajā (5) the poet praised Yazid
in the following terms:

Trace up the genealogy of the Muhallabs; you will find them all, from father to son, noble
and generous. How many the envious who detested them unjustly for their merit, and who
could not reach, nor even approach, the height to which that family has risen by its virtues.
But you always see illustrious chiefs exposed to envy whilst no one envies the vile. 'Were it said to Glory: 'Turn from them and leave them; since thou art all-powerful in the world;' she would not obey. Noble sentiments are souls of which no men but the Muhallabs are the bodies.

Al-Asmâi relates that some members of the tribe of Kudâa went to visit Yazîd Ibn al-Muhallab, and one of them recited to him these verses:

By Allah! if the request which we address to you fails, we know not to whom we can direct our prayer. We have travelled over many lands and found none but you who had the reputation of being generous. Persevere in the conduct to which you have accustomed us; or, if not, tell us towards whom we shall go.

He ordered one thousand dinars to be given to the poet, who, the following year, came back and said:

Why are the doors of other men abandoned whilst yours is crowded like a market? Is it through affection that they come to you or through respect? or did they leave distant countries in search of a pasturage, announced by the lightnings of beneficence which they saw flashing from your hands? I know that you take pleasure in noble deeds and that those who do so are very few.

Yazîd ordered ten thousand dirhems to be given to the poet. — Persons versed in history all agree that, under the Omaiyyides, the most beneficent family was that of the Muhallabs, and, under the Abbasides, that of the Barmekides. God knows best! They displayed great bravery in many famous conflicts. Ibn al-Jauzi (vol. II. p. 96) relates, in his Kitâb al-Azktâ (book for the intelligent), that a serpent fell (from the roof of a hovel) upon Yazîd Ibn al-Muhallab and that he did not push it away; on which, his father said to him: 'You have lost your judgment in retaining your courage.' — When Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn al-Ashâth Ibn Kais al-Kindî took up arms against al-Hajjâj, — the history of this event is well known (6), — he went to Toster where many persons joined him and, mention being made of the Muhallab family, much abuse was directed against its members. On this, Abd ar-Rahmân said to Harîsh Ibn Hilâl al-Kuraiâî (7), who was one of the company: 'What is the matter with you, Abû Kudâma? why do you not speak out your mind?' and received from him this answer: 'By Allah! I know of none who are so careful of themselves as they when they are in easy circumstances, and so indifferent for their personal safety when they are in distress.' — Abd ar-
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

Rahmân Ibn Sulaim al-Kalbi went to visit al-Muhallab and, seeing that all his sons, from the oldest to the youngest, were on horseback, he said to them: “May God accustom the Moslems to see a continual series of you; by Allah! though you are not grandchildren of the Prophet, your are grandchildren of a malhama (8).—Habib, one of al-Muhallab’s sons, lost a male child and charged Yazid to recite the funeral service over the corpse. On this, some person said to him: “Why do you confide that duty to your brother? are you not his elder and is not he that is dead your son?” Habib replied: “My brother is honoured by the people; he bears a high reputation among them, and all the Arabs have their eyes fixed on him. I should regret to abase that (reputation) which God has exalted.”—Mustarraf Ibn Abd Allah Ibn as-Shikhkhîr (9), seeing, one day, Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab walking about in a silk robe, of which the train swept the ground, said to him: “What meanest this manner of walking? it is odious to God and to his Prophet!”—“Dost thou know me?” said Yazid.—“I do,” replied the other, “thy commence ment was a filthy drop (of sperm), thy end shall be a nasty carcass, and during the interval, thou wearest the excrement (of a worm).”—This thought has been versified in the following manner by Abû Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Muhamm ad as-Sâmi, a native of Khorasân:

I gazed with wonder on him who was proud of his shape and who, before that, was but a nasty drop. To-morrow, when that handsome shape is gone, he will be a filthy carrion in the earth. Nay, with all his self-love and pride, he carries excrements between his flanks.

The ḥāfiz generally known by the surname of Ibn Asâkir (vol. II. p. 252) says, in that article of his greater historical work which treats of Abû Hirâsh Makhlad, the son of Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab: “This Makhlad was one of those whose liberality procured them universal praise. He went to see Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz for the purpose of speaking to him in favour of his father; who had been imprisoned by that khalif. He had been appointed by his father to the government of Jurjân. On his way, he passed near Kûfâ and there received the visit of Hamza Ibn Bair al-Hanafi (10), who came to him with a number of the inhabitants. This famous poet then stood before him and recited these verses:

“We are come to you for an affair which we request you to arrange; say to us: ‘Welcome!’ so that another welcomer may answer you. Refer us not to people who, when they make a promise, tell a lie. You are the head of a family before whom the East and the
West have bent in submission and under whose care you were educated; excellent, I declare, were the lessons which they gave! In your eleventh year, you possessed that wisdom which is rarely acquired but by hoary chieftains; your thoughts were always turned towards serious affairs, whilst the thoughts of those as old as you were fixed on sport and play. You were so beneficent that I exclaimed: 'Does there yet remain a petitioner to ask a favour? an applicant who has something to demand?' From you, gifts flowed upon solicitors, and also from those in your antechamber, when their generosity was invoked.

'Let me hear your affair;' said Makhlad. He immediately arranged it and then ordered one hundred thousand dirhems (£. 2,500) to be given to the poet.'—A man who had already visited Makhlad and received from him a present adequate to his deserts, went to see him again, and Makhlad said to him: 'Did you not already come to us, and did we not make you a gift?' 'It is true;' replied the visitor. —'What then,' said Mukhallad, 'has brought you back?' —'Those words,' replied the man, 'which al-Kumait (vol. III. p. 373) pronounced, in speaking of you:

He gave, then gave again; we returned to him and he gave; then I returned, and he renewed his gift. (This happened) many times. I never return to him but he receives me with smiles and treats me with honour (11).

This reply obtained for him that made it a gift double of the former.'—Kabisa Ibn Omar al-Muhallabi related as follows: 'Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab effected the conquest of Jurjân and Tabaristân, and took prisoner one their great chiefs named Sûl.'—I may here observe that this Sûl was the prince of Jurjân and the grandfather of two celebrated and good poets, Ibrahim Ibn al-Abbâs as-Sûli (vol. I. p. 22) and Abû Bakr Muhammad Ibn Yahya as-Sûli (vol. III. p. 68).—Yazid found there a great quantity of treasure and other valuable objects. He therefore wrote to (the khalif) Sulaimân Ibn Abd al-Malik a letter in which he said: 'I have taken Tabaristân and Jurjân, places which none of the Chosroes dynasty and none of their successors had ever been able to conquer. I am sending you so many files of camels (12) loaded with money and presents that, when the first of them reaches you, the last will be still here with me.' Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz, who succeeded to the khalifat on the death of Sulaimân, required of Yazid the fulfilment of this promise and cast him into prison. Makhlad, the son of Yazid, went to intercede with Omar in favour of the prisoner. —Kabisa continues thus: 'From the time of Makhlad's leaving the city of Marw Shâhjân till he reached Damascus, he gave away in presents one million of
"dirhems (£, 2,500). When he was about to appear before Omar, he put on a
suit of shabby clothes (which he tucked up), and a dirty old cap (13). Omar, on
seeing him, said: 'I perceive that you have tucked up your clothes;' to which
Makhlad replied: 'If you tuck up yours or let them hang down, we shall do the
same.' He then addressed him thus: 'You have extended your clemency to
all men; why then keep you this man in prison? If there be a legal proof
of his culpability, adduce it and then pronounce sentence; if not, make
him take oath (that he is not guilty), or else be reconciled with him on condition
of his giving up to you all his landed estates.' Yazid, on hearing this,
exclaimed: 'As for the oath, it shall never be said by the Arabs that Yazid, the
son of al-Muhallab, was obliged to take one by necessity; as for my landed
estates, they are of sufficient value to pay what is claimed of me.' Makhlad
died at the age of twenty-seven years and (on this occasion) Omar said: 'Had
'God meant well towards the father, he would have left this youth with
'him.' - It is stated that Makhlad died of the plague. The funeral service
was recited over him by Omar Ibn Abd al-Aziz, who said, on finishing: 'To-day
'is dead the most gallant youth of all the Arabs.' He then pronounced the
following lines of a poet, applying them to the circumstance:

"Our souls are going off in sighs for the loss of Amr, and the faces of all the people are
darkened and soiled with dust."

— An elegy, composed on his death by Hamza Ibn Baid al-Hanafi, the poet above
mentioned, contains the following lines:

The thrones (of state) will no longer be occupied by you; and, to-day that your (grave-) clo-
thes only, (not your chamberlains,) prevent you from being seen, the only throne on which
you repose is the bier (14). The last time we saw you was at Dabik, on the day in which they
poured upon you the crumbling mould (of the grave).

Al-Farazdak (vol. III. p. 612), said, in an elegy on his death:

Never did the bier which they carried off hold the like of Makhlad! Never did grave-clothes
cover a man like him. Thy father is one whose name sufficed to put a hostile squadron to
flight, though in it (every lance-head) (14) was fully a span in length. The foe knew that,
when he girded his loins, he was the lion of the forest that never fled from danger (بالإعر).''

The passage given above proves that Makhlad, the son of Yazid, died on or about
the year 100 (A. D. 718-9), for Omar Ibn Abd al-Aziz was raised to the khalifate
in the month of Safar, A. H. 99 (Sept.-Oct. A. D. 717) and died in the month of Rajab, 101 (Jan.-Feb. A. D. 720) (16). It was in Omar’s residence that he expired. Hamza’s elegy proves also that Makhlad died at Dâbik, which is a village situated in the government of Aleppo, and to the north of the city. It gives its name to a large meadow (mary) in the neighbourhood. Sulaimân Ibn Abd al-Malik died at that place and there also is his tomb, a well-known monument. —Let us resume our account of Yazid. Abû Ja’far at-Tabari (vol. II. p. 597) says, in his great historical work: “Al-Mughira, the son of al-Muhallab, acted as his father’s lieutenant at Marw, and held the government of that city and of the province.” —He died in the month of Rajab, 82 (August-Sept. A. D. 701), as we have said in the life of al-Muhallab. —“When this news reached Yazid, he told it to the military (chiefs), but kept it from al-Muhallab’s knowledge; preferring that he should learn it from the women. Al-Muhallab, hearing their lamentations, asked what was wrong and, being informed that al-Mughira was dead, he exclaimed: ‘From God we came, and to God we must return!’ His grief was so excessive that he let it appear, and was reprimanded, for that reason, by one of his domestic officers. He then called in Yazid and sent him off to Marw, after giving him instructions for his conduct. During all this time, his tears were trickling down over his beard. Al-Hajjâj wrote to him a letter of condolence for the loss of al-Mughira, who was truly an able chief.” —I may here mention that al-Mughira had a son named Bishr of whom Abû Tammâm (vol. I. p. 348) speaks in the first part of his Hamdsâ (p. 119), and some of whose poetry he inserts in that work. One of these pieces, composed by him on (his uncle) Yazid, we here give:

The emir (al-Muhallab) has treated me ill and so did al-Mughira; Yazid also has turned his back upon me. All of them have got (governments) wherewith to sate their appetite; yet it is disgraceful for a man to be sated when his companion suffers from hunger. Use me gently, dear uncle! and employ me when an untoward event arrives; time (as you know) is an assemblage of vicissitudes. I am your sword and, though swords may sometimes rebound (without cutting), yet the sword of a man like me will never rebound, to the detriment of your cause. At what door shall I ask permission to enter, if I be repelled from the door of which I was the guardian?

Let us return to at-Tabari’s narration: “On the day of al-Mughira’s death, al-Muhallab was stopping at Kish (or Kiss), in Transoxiana, being engaged in war
"with the people of that place. Yazid set out with sixty horsemen and met, in
"the desert, with a body of five hundred Turks. A desperate conflict ensued, and
"Yazid was wounded in the thigh by an arrow. After that, al-Muhallab made
"peace with the inhabitants of Kish, on receiving from them a (sum of money, as)
"redemption. He then left them and set out for Marw. On arriving at Zaghul,
"which is a village in the government of Marw ar-Rud, he was attacked by pains
"in the bowels. He then called in Habib and such of his other sons as were
"with him. Some arrows, tied up so as to form a bundle, were brought in, by
"his order. 'What think you?' said he, 'could you break them all, now that they
"are tied together?' They answered that they could not. 'And if they were
"separated?' — 'Certainly,' said they, 'we could break them.' — 'Such,' conti-
"nued he, 'is the effect of union!' He then made them a long exhortation," —
"which it is needless for us to repeat here, — 'and finished by saying: 'I nominate
"Yazid as my lieutenant and appoint Habib to the command of the jund (the
"Arab troops), until he led them to Yazid, whose authority they will all ac-
"knowledge. His son al-Mufaddal then said: 'Had you not placed him at
"our head, we ourselves would have done so.' Habib received his dying in-
"junctions and, after saying the funeral prayer over the corpse, he proceeded
"to Marw. Yazid wrote to Abd al-Malik, informing him that al-Muhallab
"was dead and had chosen him as his successor.' — This nomination was con-
"firmed by al-Hajjaj, who afterwards, in the year 85 (A. D. 704), revoked it and

gave the government to al-Mufaddal, Yazid's brother. His motive for so doing was
this: Having gone (some years before) to visit (the khalif) Abd al-Malik, he passed
on his way back by a monastery at which he halted. Being then informed that a
very old and learned Christian was residing there, he had him brought in and said
to him: 'Tell me, shaikh! do you find in your books any thing concerning you
and us?' — 'I have,' replied the other; 'we find therein all that has already
happened to you and the mention of your present state and of what it will be.'
— 'Are we designated by our names or are we merely described?' — 'All is
"described without being named, but there is a name without a description.' —
"What description do you find of the Commander of the faithful?' — 'We find
"that, for the time in which we are, he is a bald sovereign before whom every one
"who stands in his way must fall prostrate.' — 'What do you find next?' — A man
"named al-Walid (17).' — 'And what then?' — 'A man whose name is that of
"a prophet and by whom God will display his power to men."—That was Sulaimàn, the son of Abd al-Malik. —"Do you know what will happen to me?" —"I do." —"Who will succeed to me in the authority?" —"A man called Yazid." —"Will that be in my life-time or after my death?" —"I do not know." —Do you know his description?" —"He will act with perfidy; that is all I know." —The person (who related this anecdote) said: Al-Hajjâj was struck with the idea that the person thus indicated was no other than Yazid, the son of al-Muhallab and, during the remainder of his journey, which required seven days, he never ceased thinking of the old man's words. On his arrival, he wrote to Abd al-Malik, requesting permission to resign the government of Irâk and received from him a letter containing these words: "I see very well what your intention is; you wish to discover how you stand in my opinion." He then mainly employed every means for the purpose of bringing about Yazid's deposition, till one of al-Muhallab's cavalry officers, named al-Khiâr Ibn Sabra and who was then in the service of Yazid, came to see him and was asked by him how that emir was getting on. Al-Khiâr replied: "His obedience (towards the khâlif) and the mildness of his administration are most exemplary." —"That is a fib!" exclaimed al-Hajjâj, "tell the truth." His visitor then said: "God alone is greater and more mighty than he; he has saddled (the steed of independence) and has put no bridle on (to restrain it)." —"You now speak the truth!" replied al-Hajjâj, and, at a later period, he gave to al-Khiâr the government of Omân (in Arabia, or of Ammân, in Palestine?) (18). He then wrote to Abd al-Malik, blaming the conduct of Yazid and of all the Muhallab family; in short, he addressed him so often on that subject that he received from him a letter containing these words: "You are always speaking against Yazid and the family of al-Muhallab; point me out another man capable of governing Khorâsân. Al-Hajjâj named Majâa (or Muyjda) Ibn Saad as-Saadi. To this, Abd al-Malik returned the following answer: "The same motive which impels you to effect the ruin of the Muhallab family has induced you to propose Majâa Ibn Saad. Look out for a man of decision, and capable of executing your orders." Al-Hajjâj sent him the name of Kutaiba Ibn Muslim al-Bâhili (col. II. p. 514) and received for answer: "Appoint him." When Yazid learned that al-Hajjâj had effected his deposition, he said to the members of his family: "Who, do you think, will receive from al-Hajjâj the government of Kho-râsân?" They answered: "Some man of (his own tribe) the Thakif." —"Not
"at all!" replied Yazīd, "one of you will receive from him a letter appointing him to that place and, when I am gone to meet him (and am in his power), he will replace that person by another, and Kutaiba Ibn Muslim is the fittest man."

The narrator of this anecdote said: When al-Hajjāj obtained from Abd al-Malik the authorisation to depose Yazīd, he felt that he would do wrong if he announced to him by a letter that the command was taken from him, and therefore wrote to him a dispatch in which he said: "Leave (your brother) al-Mufaddal as your lieutenant and come here." Al-Hosain (الحسن) Ibn al-Mundir, whom Yazīd consulted on receiving this letter, advised him to give a pretext for remaining where he was, "Because," said he, "you stand very high in the good opinion of the Commander of the faithful. This is a stroke aimed against you by al-Hajjāj. If you delay your departure, I am in hopes that the khalif will write to him the order to confirm you in your post." To this Yazīd replied: "We are of a family whose fidelity (towards the khalifs) has always been for it a benediction; I detest disobedience and opposition to orders." He then commenced making preparations for his departure. Al-Hajjāj, thinking that he delayed too long, wrote these words to al-Mufaddal, Yazīd's brother: "I have appointed you to the government of Khorāsān." Yazīd, whom al-Mufaddal then pressed most earnestly to depart, said to him: "Al-Hajjāj will not leave you in place, once I am gone; his only motive in acting as he does is the fear of my resisting his orders."—"You are mistaken," replied al-Mufaddal, "and are jealous of my good fortune."—"I am not jealous of you," replied Yazīd, "and that you shall soon have reason to know." In the month of the latter Rābī', 85 (April-May, A. D. 704), Yazīd left Khorāsān, and al-Hajjāj replaced al-Mufaddal by Kutaiba Ibn Muslim.—Hosain Ibn al-Mundir, or according to another statement, Firūz Ibn Hosain, said, in speaking of Yazīd:

I advised you to take a decided step, but you would not near me; and now, that you are stripped of your commandment, you regret (your folly). But I shall not weep for you through fondness, neither shall I pray that you return home safely.

When Kutaiba Ibn Muslim arrived in Khorāsān, Hosain was asked by him what he had said of Yazīd and made the following answer:

I advised you to take a decided step, but you would not hear me; blame then yourself, if you mean to blame. If al-Hajjāj learns that you resist his orders, you will find that his power is overwhelming.

vol. iv.
Kutaiba then asked him what was the advice he gave, and Hosain replied: "I told him not to keep a single yellow or white (piece of money), but to send them all to the emir (al-Hajjâj)." — The following verses by Abd Allah Ibn Hammâm as-Salûli were composed on the replacement of Yazid by Kutaiba:

We said, Kutaiba! the morning you came here: "Assuredly, we have got in you a one-eyed substitute for Yazid. Your father in no way resembled al-Muhallab; your (family), compared to his, is mean and despicable. Wide is the difference between one who rose to fortune by castanets and one who brandished the sword amidst the fires of war. Here come the squinting Bâhilites under whose domination liberality has perished and infamy flourishes.

The expression a one-eyed substitute (badal aawar) is figuratively applied to a man generally despised who succeeds, in office, to one who always deserved praise. They say also, in the same sense: a one-eyed successor (khalaf aawar). The word castanets alludes to the fact that Kutaiba, in his youth, was a (public dancer and) player on those instruments. Kutaiba is here called a squinter (ahwaal), and so he was; the plural form of this adjective is analogous to those of aswad, akmar, etc. which are sa'dan, humrân. — Some say that these verses were composed, not by Abd Allah Ibn Hammâm, but by Nahâr Ibn Tausîa al-Yashkuri (19). — At-Tabari says, under the year 90 (A. D. 708-9): "Al-Hajjâj went forth against the Kurds, who had occupied the entire province of Fars. He took with him Yazid and his brothers al-Mufaddal and Abd al-Malik. When he encamped, he had them placed in a tent, near his own lodgings, and under a guard of Syrian troops; this tent was surrounded with a sort of ditch. He exacted from them a sum of six millions (£ 150,000) and put them to the torture (in order to enforce payment). Yazid suffered those pains with such firmness as provoked the anger of al-Hajjâj. It is said that he (Yazid) had been wounded by an arrow, the head of which remained in his thigh, and that, if any thing touched him there, he would cry out; even if it was moved in the slightest manner, he would utter a cry. Al-Hajjâj ordered him to be tormented and receive strokes on the thigh. This was done; Yazid cried out, and his sister Hind, who was then with her husband al-Hajjâj, heard the cry and began to scream and to lament. On this, al-Hajjâj divorced her. He afterwards let them alone and began to ask money from them. They commenced furnishing it and, during that time, they made arrangements for effecting their escape. Having sent to (their brother) Marwân Ibn al-Muhallab, who was then in Basra, they told him to put horses at their
disposal and to give the public to understand that he meant to offer them for sale; they bade him also ask so high a price for them that no one would buy them. 'They will be for us,' said they, 'a means of escape, if we succeed in getting out of this place.' Marwân did so, whilst his brother, Habîb, also was undergoing tortures at Basra. Yazîd then ordered a copious repast to be served to the guards and had them provided with wine. Whilst they were drinking and unmindful of their charge, he put on the clothes of his cook, placed a false white beard over his own and went out. One of the guards saw him and said: 'That is Yazîd’s manner of walking (20).’ He then went up, looked at him in the face,—it was in the night,—and seeing the white beard, he turned away, saying: 'This is an elderly man.' Al-Mufaddal followed his brother without being remarked and they went to a boat which was kept ready for them in the swamps (al-Batâh) by their directions. They were then at the distance of eighteen parasangs from Basra. When they reached the boat, they waited for Abd al-Malik who had met with something to detain him, and at length Yazîd said to al-Mufaddal: 'Get into the boat with us and let him follow.' To this, al-Mufaddal, who was born of the same mother as Abd al-Malik, replied: 'By Allah! I shall not stir from this spot till my brother come, even should I be taken back to prison.' Yazîd stopped till Abd al-Malik came up; they then embarked and voyaged the remainder of the night, until daybreak. The next morning, the guards discovered that their prisoners had escaped and sent to inform al-Hajjâj of what had happened: He was dismayed at the news and, imagining that they had fled in the direction of Khorâsân, he sent off, by the post horses, to Kutaibâ Ibn Muslim, a dispatch in which he gave him warning of their approaching arrival, ordered him to make preparations for resisting them and to send messengers to the commanders of all the districts (kûrdân) and frontier stations, enjoining them to hold themselves in readiness and to keep a look-out for the fugitives. He sent also another dispatch to (the khalîf) al-Walid Ibn Abd al-Malik, informing him of their evasion and expressing his opinion that they intended to go to Khorâsân, and not elsewhere. He continued thinking of what they intended to do and would sometimes say: ‘I am sure that Yazîd’s mind prompts him to act like Ibn al-Ashâh.’—I may here observe that Ibn al-Ashâh, whose names were Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Muhammad Ibn al-Ashâh Ibn Kais, of the tribe of Kinda, revolted against Abd al-Malik Ibn
Marwân. His history is well known and is to be found in the books of annals.—
“When Yazîd” (and his companions), says at-Tabari, “drew near to al-Batâîh (21),
the horses which had been kept in readiness were brought to them, and they
rode off with a guide who took the way which crosses (the desert) of as-Samâwa.
Two days later, al-Hajjâj learned that they were on the road to Syria, that their
horses were fatigued with the journey and that a person had seen them travelling
wards the desert. He immediately sent off this news to al-Walid. Yazîd
continued his route till he reached Palestine and there he stopped at the
dwelling of Wuhaib Ibn Abd ar-Rahmân al-Azdi, a person whom Sulaimân Ibn
Abd al-Malik (the khalif’s brother) held in high esteem. Wuhaib took his guest
to Sulaimân and said: ‘Here is Yazîd; his brothers are at my house; they have
fled hither from al-Hajjâj and they seek refuge under your protection.’—‘Bring
them to me,’ said Sulaimân, ‘I answer for their safety. He (al-Hajjâj) shall
never lay hands on them, as long as I live.’—Wuhaib brought them and thus
placed them out of danger. Al-Hajjâj then wrote to al-Walid Ibn Abd al-Malik,
saying: ‘The family of al-Muhallab have defrauded the treasury; they esca-
ped from me and are now with Sulaimân.’ When al-Walid knew that Yazîd
was with Sulaimân, his uneasiness of mind was diminished to a certain degree,
but he was greatly incensed at the loss of the money and therefore wrote to his
brother Sulaimân, asking where Yazîd was. ‘He is with me,’ replied Sulaimân,
and I have engaged myself for his safety. He owes no more than three mil-
lions of the six which al-Hajjâj required of them. They have paid three and owe
three, which I shall take upon myself.’—Al-Walid returned this reply: ‘By
Allah! I shall not pardon him till you send him to me chained.’ To this,
Sulaimân answered: ‘If I send him to you, I will go with him; but, for God’s
sake! do not dishonour me or bring me into disgrace.’—Al-Walid wrote back
as follows: ‘By Allah! if you bring him to me, I shall not forgive him.’—
Yazîd then said (to Sulaimân): ‘Send me to him; by Allah! I do not wish to
raise enmity and hostile feelings between you and him, or to let you and your
brother gain a bad reputation on my account. Send me to him; let your
son come with me and write to him (the khalif) as mild a letter as you can.’
Sulaimân dispatched his son Aiyûb with him and, as al-Walid has ordered
the prisoner to be brought in chains, he said to his son: ‘When you enter
into the khalif’s presence, appear before him bound in the same chain as
BIPOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

"Yazid." When they reached the place where al-Walid was, they appeared before him in that state, and the khalif, on seeing his brother's son attached to the same chain as Yazid, exclaimed: 'By Allah! we have offended Sulaiman!' The youth (Aiyad) then handed him his father's letter and said: 'Commander of the faithful! may my life be laid down to save yours! do not cast dishonour on my father, you who are our natural protector; do not deprive us of the hope that people shall always continue to expect safety under the protection of us who are so closely allied to you; do not disappoint those who hope to gain honour in becoming attached to us who derive our honour from you.' He then read his father's letter, which ran as follows: 'To the servant of God, al-Walid, Commander of the faithful; from Sulaiman, the son of Abd al-Malik. Here is the point: Commander of the faithful! I certainly think that, if an enemy who revolted against you and resisted were to solicit my protection and place himself under my safeguard, you would not dishonour my guest and bring my right of protection into discredit; how then should it be if the person whom I received as my guest had always been devotedly obedient to your will and rendered, not only he but his father and all the members of his family, the most signal services to Islam? I have now sent him to you and, if you wish (taghza) to come to a rupture with me; to annul my credit as a protector and to injure me in the gravest manner, you have the power of doing so and may do it. But I implore you, in God's name! to avoid a rupture, to refrain from casting a blemish on my honourable reputation and to continue the kindness and friendship which you have hitherto shown me. By Allah! Commander of the faithful! you know not how long my life and yours may endure, neither do you know when death shall part us. If the Commander of the faithful, whose happiness may God prolong! be inclined to retard the moment of my death, to act kindly towards me, to respect my rights and to abstain from hurting me, I pray him to do so. By Allah! Commander of the faithful! there is nothing in the world, after my duty towards God, in which I find more delight than in your good will and your happiness; it is by deserving your benevolence that we all hope to obtain the favour of God. Commander of the faithful! if you deign, even for a single day, to give me joy, to be friendly towards me, to maintain my honour and to respect my rights, you will pardon Yazid for my sake, and all
"you reclaim of him shall be paid by me." When this letter was read, the khalif said: 'We have been too severe on Sulaimân.' He then called his nephew over to him, and Yazid began a speech in which, after extolling the Almighty and praising the Prophet, he said: 'Commander of the faithful! we appreciate to the utmost degree the kindness you have always shown us; others may forget favours, but we, never; others may be ungrateful, but we cannot. The toils which we have undergone in the service of your noble family, the strokes we have inflicted on your enemies in many great battles, both in the Eastern countries and in the West, are surely good titles to your benevolence.' The khalif then made him sit down, granted him a full pardon and left him free. Yazid returned to Sulaimân, and his brothers tried to raise the money which was claimed of him. Al-Walid wrote to al-Hajjâj, saying: 'I did not attempt to touch Yazid and the members of his family, because they were with Sulaimân (and under his protection). So do you let them alone and cease writing to me about them.' When al-Hajjâj received this letter, he discontinued his attacks against them and even renounced to one million of dirhems which were owing to him by Abû Oyaina (another of al-Muhallab's sons). He also set at liberty Habîb, the son of al-Muhallab. Yazid passed nine months with Sulaimân, enjoying an agreeable life and great tranquillity of mind. His protector never received a present (of money), but sent him the half of it. Being asked by one of his usual companions why he did not build a house for himself, he replied: 'What should I do with it? I have always a dwelling ready prepared for me.' — 'Where is that dwelling?' said his friend. He answered: 'If I hold a commandment, it will be the government palace; and if I be out of place, it will be the state prison.' He said also: 'I should feel no pleasure in being free from worldly cares and having fortune submissive to my will;' and, being asked his reason, he answered: 'Because I should detest adopting lazy habits.' In the month of Shauwâl, A. H. 95 (June-July A. D. 714) and subsequently to these events, al-Hajjâj died. Some say that his death took place on the 25th of Ramadân, and that he had then reached his fifty-third or fifty-fourth year. When he was on the point of death, he charged Yazid Ibn Abi Kabsha to replace him in the administration of the two cities (al-Misrâni), that is, of Kûfa and Basrah, and to take the direction of military affairs and the presidency of the public prayer.
"To Yazid Ibn Abi Muslim (see next article) he confided the administration
of the land-tax [kharḍāj]. Those two nominations were confirmed by al-Walid,
who approved also of all the other appointments made by al-Hajjāj. According
to another account, it was from al-Walid himself that they received their
appointment. Al-Hajjāj held the government of two Irāks during twenty
years. Al-Walid Ibn Abd al-Malik died on Saturday, the 15th of the lat-
ter Jumāda, A. H. 96 (25th February, A. D. 715) at Dair Marān."—I may
observe that this monastery is situated on the slope of Kāsiūn, the mountain
which lies near Damascus. He was buried in the cemetery outside the gate
called Bāb as-Saghīr. Sulaimān Ibn Abd al-Malik was proclaimed khalif on
the day of his brother al-Walid's death and, in that year,—I mean the year 96,
—he took the government of Irāk from Yazid Ibn Abi Muslim and gave it to
Yazid, the son of al-Muhallab. Khalifa Ibn Khayyāt (vol. I. p. 492) says: "In the
year 97 (A. D. 715-6), Yazid united in his own hands the commandment of
the two cities,"—meaning Kūfah and Basra. God knows best. "Sālih Ibn
Abd ar-Rahmān received from him the administration of the land-tax with
the order that he should put to death the members of the Akil (22) fa-
mily, that to which al-Hajjāj belonged. He, in consequence, arrested them
and had then put to the torture, under the direction of Abd al-Malik, the
son of al-Muhallab."—Al-Walid intended to have taken from Sulaimān the
right of succeeding to the khalifate and of transferring it to his own son Abd
al-Aziz. Al-Hajjāj had taken a solemn engagement to second the khalif and
so also did Kutaiba Ibn Muslim al-Bāhili, the same who replaced Yazid Ibn
al-Muhallab in the government of Khorāsān. When Sulaimān obtained the
khalifate, Kutaiba was apprehensive that his government would be taken from
him and given to Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab. He therefore wrote to Sulaimān
congratulating him on his accession, condoling with him on the death of al-Walid,
mentioning the services which he himself had rendered to the state and vaunting
his fidelity to Abd al-Malik and al-Walid. He then added that he would be equally
serviceable and obedient to the new khalif, provided that the government of
Khorāsān were not taken from him. He addressed to him also another letter in
which he spoke of the conquests he had effected, of his elevated position and of his
influence over the foreign kings, "whose bosoms, said he, are filled with terror
at my name." He then attacked the sons of al-Muhallab and declared solemnly
that if Yazid was named governor of Khorâsân, he himself would repudiate the authority of the khalif. In a third letter he declared that he had repudiated his authority. These three dispatches he sent off by a man of his tribe to whom he gave the following instructions: "When the khalif has read the first letter, he may probably hand it to Yazid, if the latter be present. In that case, give him the second letter and, if he hand it also to Yazid, after reading it, give him the third. If, on the contrary, he reads the first letter and put it up without passing it to Yazid, do not give him the two others (but keep them up)." The narrator says: Kutaiba's messenger arrived, found Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab with Sulaimân and delivered the first letter to the khalif, who read it and passed it to Yazid. He then gave the second letter which was read and passed also to Yazid. On this, he gave the third. Sulaimân read it, changed colour and, having called for (sigillary) clay, he sealed it up and kept it in his hand. According to Abû Obaida Mâmar Ibn al-Muthanna (vol. III. p. 388), the first letter contained an attack on Yazid, accusing him of perfidy, ingratitude and thanklessness; in the second was an eulogium on the same person and, in the third, were written these words: "If you do not confirm me in the place which I now occupy and give me the positive assurance that I have nothing to fear from you, I shall cast off your authority as I cast off my slippers, and shall certainly fill it (the land) with horse and foot to attack you."—Sulaimân then ordered Kutaiba's messenger to go down to the guest-house, and, when the evening set in, he sent for him and gave him a purse of dinars (gold pieces), saying: "This is to requite your trouble and here is a diploma containing your master's nomination to the government of Khorâsân; set out, and a messenger of mine shall accompany you." The Bâihilide (Kutaiba's emissary) departed with the khalif's messenger and, on reaching Hulwân, they were told by the people that Kutaiba had revolted. On this, Sulaimân's agent turned back after delivering the diploma to Kutaiba's man, who pursued his journey. When Kutaiba saw the messenger, he consulted his brothers on the line of conduct which he should follow, and they replied: "After what has occurred here, Sulaimân can no longer have any reliance on you." Some time after, Kutaiba was slain, as we have related in our account of him (vol. II. p. 516); this occurrence we mentioned in a summary manner, because the details would have led us too far.—Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab, having then obtained the government of Irâk, reflected (on the state of that province) and said to himself:
"Irak has been ruined by al-Hajjaj; the people of that country place all their hopes in me, yet, if I go there and begin to exact the payment of the khaddaj (land-tax), I shall be obliged to act with great severity, become (for them) as bad as my predecessor and plunge them into a civil war. God forbid that I should bring down upon them again the afflictions from which He has just delivered them! and yet, if I did not furnish to Sulaiman the same amount (of revenue) as he received from al-Hajjaj, he would reject what I send, though it came from me." He therefore went to the khalif and said: "I can point out to you a man who well understands the administration of the khaddaj and to him you might confide that duty. His name is Salih Ibn Abd ar-Rahman, and he is a mawla of the tribe of Tamim." Sulaiman replied: "I accept your recommendation." Yazid then set out for Irak, whither Salih had preceded him and was then stopping at Wasit. On drawing near the town, he met all the inhabitants, who had gone forth to receive him, but Salih did not appear till he had nearly reached the place. It was only then that Salih set out, preceded by (a guard of) four hundred Syrians. He returned to the town with Yazid and, on entering, said to him: "There is a house which I have cleared out for you." Yazid stopped there, and Salih proceeded to his own residence. (From that moment) he stinted Yazid (in money matters) and would not allow him to meddle, even in the slightest degree (with the finance department). Yazid caused one thousand tables to be got ready, so that he might give a repast to the inhabitants; Salih took them from him (and did not restore them) till Yazid said: "Write down the expense to my own account." Yazid purchased a great quantity of objects and, having drawn bills on Salih for the amount, he sent to have them cashed. They were not accepted, and the bearers returned to Yazid, who got into a passion and said to himself: "This is of my own doing." Soon after, he received the visit of Salih and made room for him on his own seat. "What are those bills?" said Salih, "the khaddaj administration cannot take charge of them; a few days ago, I accepted a bill of yours for one hundred thousand dirhems (£ 25,000) and I have already advanced you the amount of your salary. Other sums you asked of me, and I gave them. "Matters cannot go on so; the Commander of the faithful will never approve of these proceedings and you will be certainly called to an account." Yazid replied, in laughing: "Come now, Abu 'l-Walid! accept these last bills," and wrought him into a so good humour that he said: "Well! I shall accept them, but do not draw
two many on me.” “I shall not,” replied Yazid.”—Sulaimān, having given to
Yazid the government, not of Khorāsān but of Irāk, said to Abd al-Malik, the son of
al-Muhallab: “How would you act were I to appoint you to the government of Kho-
rāsān?” Abd al-Malik replied: “Commander of the faithful! you would always
find me acting according to your wishes.” The khalif then turned the conver-
sation to another subject, and Abd al-Malik sent to some of the military chiefs in
Khorāsān, who were attached to him, a letter in which he said that the Commander
of the faithful had offered to him the government of that province. Intelligence of
this reached Yazid, who was disgusted with the government of Irāk on account
of the restraint in which he was held by Sālih, with whom he found that he
could do nothing. He therefore called in Abd Allah Ibn al-Ahtam and said to
him: “I want your advice concerning an affair which preoccupies my mind,
and wish you to free me from the uneasiness it gives me.” Ibn al-Ahtam
answered: “I shall obey whatever order you are pleased to give.” Yazid
then spoke to him in these terms: “You see in what restraint I am kept here
and may imagine the annoyance which it gives me. Now, the government of
Khorāsān is vacant and I have been informed that the Commander of the faithful
spoke of it to Abd al-Malik Ibn al-Muhallab. Is there any means (by which I
might obtain it)?” “There is, most certainly;” replied the other, “send me
to the Commander of the faithful and I am sure that I shall return here with your
appointment to that post.” “It is well,” said Yazid, “but be careful not
to speak of what I have told you.” He then wrote a letter to Sulaimān in which
he described the state of Irāk and praised highly Ibn al-Ahtam, as being a man
perfectly well acquainted with the affairs of Khorāsān. He authorised Ibn al-
Ahtam to travel by post and gave him thirty thousand dirhems (£ 750). Ibn
al-Ahtam was seven days on the road. On arriving, he went to Sulaimān’s
residence with the intention of delivered to him Yazid’s letter. Being introduced,
he found him at breakfast and therefore sat down in a corner of the room. Two
(roasted) pullets were then brought to him and, when he had finished eating,
Sulaimān said to him: “You shall have an audience later, do not miss it.” One
third (of the day) had passed when the khalif sent for him and said: “Yazid Ibn
al-Muhallab informs me by his letter that you are well acquainted with the state
of Irāk and of Khorāsān, and he speaks of you with commendation. How
did you acquire your information respecting these countries?” Ibn al-Ahtam
replied: 'No man knows them as well as I do; I was born and brought up
in Khorâsân.'—'Ah!' said Sulaimân, 'the Commander of the faithful is in
great want of a man like you, whom he may consult respecting these two pro-
vinces. Whom would you recommend as a fit person to govern Khorâsân?'
Ibn al-Ahtam replied: 'The Commander of the faithful knows whom he would
like to appoint; if he deign to name the person, I shall tell him whether he is
fit for the place or not.' Sulaimân mentioned a man of the tribe of Kuraish,
and the other said: 'That it not the man for Khorâsân.' The khalif then named
Abd al-Malik, the son of al-Muhallab. Ibn al-Ahtam replied: 'He will not
answer till he knows how to levy a body of troops (23).' Among the last whom
the khalif named was Wâki (ودک) Ibn Abi Sûd. 'Commander of the faithful'
said the other, 'Wâki is a man of great bravery, decision and gallantry, but he is
not of that (country) and, besides, he has never commanded a body of three
hundred men and has always been under the orders of a superior.'—
'You say true,' replied Sulaimân, 'but come now! tell me who is the fittest
man.' Ibn al-Ahtam answered: 'One whom I know, but whose name you
did not pronounce.'—'Who is that?' said the khalif. —'I shall not mention
his name unless the Commander of the faithful promise to keep the secret to
himself and to protect me against the ill-will of that person.'—'I promise it to
you,' said the khalif, 'name him.'—'Yazid, the son of al-Muhallab;' replied
Ibn al-Ahtam. The khalif said: 'But that man is in Irâk and prefers residing
there to being in Khorâsân.'—'You know him well, Commander of the
faithful!' replied the other, 'but you may oblige him to accept and authorise
him to leave a lieutenant in Irâk when he is about to set out.'—'You have hit
on it!' exclaimed Sulaimân. He then had a diploma drawn up, by which Yazid
was constituted governor of Khorâsân, and, to it he joined a letter in which he
said: 'Ibn al-Ahtam is, as you mentioned, a man of intelligence, piety, talent
and judgment.' Ibn al-Ahtam received the letter with the diploma and, after
a journey of seven days, he rejoined Yazid: 'What news do you bring with you?'
said the latter. Ibn al-Ahtam handed him the letter. 'Nonsense, man!'
exclaimed Yazid, 'have you any news?' The other handed him the diploma.
Yazid immediately gave orders to make preparations for his departure and, having
called in his son Makhlad, he sent him on before, to Khorâsân, that very day.
Yazid then set out and stopped in Khorâsân three or four months, after which
he invaded and took Jurjân, Tabaristân and Dibistân. This was in the year 98 (A. D. 716-7). Having lost five thousand men in besieging one of the fortresses of Jurjân, he swore, by a most solemn oath, to slay so many of the enemy that the blood would suffice to turn a mill. He therefore massacred numbers, but it was necessary to pour water on the blood in order to make it flow and turn the mill. He then ate bread made of the flour which had been ground by means of their blood. Sulaimân Ibn Abd al-Malik died soon after. His death took place at Dâbik, on the eve of Friday, 19th of Safar, A. H. 99 (1st October, A. D. 717), or, according to another statement, on the 10th of that month. Dâbik is a village lying to the north of Aleppo. Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz, whom he appointed as his successor, took the government of Khorâsân from Yazîd and gave it to Adî Ibn Artâ 'l-Fazârî, who immediately arrested his predecessor, bound him in chains and send him to the new khalîf. Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz detested Yazîd and all the members of that family: "They are a domineering set," said he, "and I do not like such people." Yazîd, on his part, declared that he thought Omar to be a hypocrite. When Yazîd was brought before Omar, the latter said to him: "What has become of the money about which you wrote to Sulaimân Ibn Abd al-Malik?" Yazîd answered: "You know on what footing I was with Sulaimân; I wrote him that story merely that he might tell it to the people, for I knew very well that he would be incapable of calling me to an account, if he heard any thing against me, or of treating me in a manner which I should not like." Omar replied: "I see that this affair of yours will bring you to prison. Have therefore the fear of God before your eyes and pay the money which is claimed of you; it belongs by right to the Muslim people and I cannot possibly avoid exacting it." He then sent him back to prison (24).—Al-Balâdî (vol. I. p. 438) states, in that chapter of his Book of Conquests which treats of Jurjân and Tabaristân, that Yazîd, having finished with Jurjân, went to Khorâsân and received on the way the usual presents. He then confided to his son Makhlâd the government of Khorâsân and went to see Sulaimân, after writing to him that he had with him twenty-five millions of dirhems. This letter fell into the hands of Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz who, in consequence, arrested Yazîd and cast him into prison. God knows the exact truth!—Omar then sent for al-Jarrâh Ibn Abd al-Malik al-Hakami and dispatched him to Khorâsân. Makhlâd, the son of Yazîd, then came to Omar and had with him the conversation which we have already related. When Makhlâd left the
room, Omar said: "In my opinion, that youth is better than his father." Makhlad died very soon after. As Yazid refused to pay the money which was claimed of him, Omar had him clothed in a woollen cloak and placed on the back of a camel. He then said: "Take him off to Dahlak."—Dahlak is an island in the Sea of Aidâb (the Red Sea), and not far from Sawâkin. The khalifs used to confine there the persons with whom they were displeased.—The narrator continues: When Yazid was taken forth and saw the people passing near, he exclaimed: "Good God! have I not relations and friends enough to prevent me from being "taken to Dahlak, where none are sent but scandalous criminals?" Salânu Ibn Noaim al-Khaulâni (who heard these words) went in to Omar and said: "Com- "mander of the faithful! let Yazid be taken back to prison; for I fear that, if you "send him off to Dahlak, his people will take him by force out of our hands. I "saw some of them, and they were indignant at the manner in which he was "treated." Yazid was taken back to prison and there he remained till he was "informed of Omar's sickness. It is said that Adi Ibn Artâ had caused Yazid's "hands to be chained to his neck and his legs to be fettered; after which, he "delivered him up to Wakî Ibn Hassân Ibn Abi Sûd at-Tamimi, who had orders to "transport the prisoner to Ain at-Tamar, whence he was to be taken before Omar. "A troop of Azdites stopped Wakî, with the intention of taking Yazid from him by "force; but he drew his sword, cut the cable of the boat, took away the prisi- "oner's sword and said: "I declare my wife divorced if I do not strike off his "head! therefore disperse and leave him." Yazid then called out to them and "informed them of Wakî's oath, on which they dispersed. Wakî pursued his route "and delivered the prisoner to the jund (or detachment of Arab troops) at Ain at- "Tamar. The jund took him to Omar, who put him into prison. When Yazid was "detained in Omar's prison, he received the visit of al-Farazdak the poet who, "seeing him in chains, recited these lines:

Your chains hold in bondage liberality and beneficence, the man who paid for others the price of blood and who wrought every virtuous deed; one who never gave way to insolent joy when worldly goods were heaped upon him; one who is patient under affliction and refers his cause to God.

On this, Yazid exclaimed: "Alas! what have you done? you have done me "harm."—"How so?" said the poet. Yazid replied: "You praised me and I "in such a state!" Al-Farazdak answered: "I saw that you were now held cheap
"and I meant to obtain you (your favour) in exchange for my (poetical) merchandise." Yazid then threw him his ring and told him to sell it: "That," said he, "is worth one thousand dinars, which will serve as the interest of a capital to be paid to you later." He remained in prison till the year 101 (A. D. 749-20) when Omar was taken ill, and he was filled with dread at the prospect of Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik's succeeding to the khilifate. When he, the son of al-Muhallab, had obtained the government of Irak, he had cruelly persecuted, as we have already said, the family of Abu Akil, the same of which al-Hajjaj was a member. The mother (niece) (25) of al-Hajjaj was the daughter of Muhammad Ibn Yusuf Ibn al-Hakam Ibn Abu Akil and had married Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik. She bore him a son named al-Walid, the same who was (afterwards) called the Fasiik (debauched reprobate) of the Omaiyide family. She was the daughter of al-Hajjaj's brother. He, Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik, had promised her that, if ever God placed Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab in his power, he would cut off one of his limbs. The son of al-Muhallab, fearing that this threat would be executed, took measures for escaping from prison and sent to his clients the order to keep camels in readiness, so as to facilitate his flight. Omar Ibn Abd al-Aziz fell sick at Dair Saman. When the illness grew serious, Yazid descended from the prison, went to the place where the camels were stationed, according to agreement, and rode off. When he had got out of danger, he wrote these words to Omar: "By Allah! if I was sure that you would survive, I should not have left my prison; but I cannot be otherwise than afraid of Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik." On this, Omar said: "Almighty God! if Yazid mean to be wicked towards the people, protect them from his wickedness and turn his arts ofice against himself." It was thus that Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab effected his escape. - Al-Wakidi (vol. III. p. 61) says that Yazid did not fly from prison till after the death of Omar. I found in the rough copy of the kadi Kamal ad-Din Ibn al-Adim's History (vol. I. p. 247) that Omar imprisoned Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab and his son Moawia at Aleppo and that their evasion took place there. God knows best! Omar Ibn Abd al-Aziz died at Dair Saman on Friday, — some say on Thursday, — the 25th of Rajab, 101 (10th February, A. D. 720). Others say that he died on the 20th of that month. He was then aged thirty-nine years and some months. Other accounts say that he died at Khunaisira, an ancient village in the neighbourhood of Aleppo and of which al-Mutanabbi has spoken in the following line:
I love the country between Emessa and Khunaisa; every man loves the spot where he passed his early life.

Omm Aâsim, the mother of Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz, was the daughter of Aâsim, the son of (the khalîf) Omar Ibn al-Khattâb. He (Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz) was called the Omaiyide with the scar on the forehead; having been wounded in that part by one of his father’s horses. Nâfê (vol. III. p. 524) the mawla of (Abd Allah), the son of Omar Ibn al-Khattâb, relates as follows: "The son of Omar was often heard to say: 'I should be glad to know that descendant of Omar who is to have a mark on his face and who will fill the earth with (his) justice.'"—Sâlim al-Aftas related as follows: "Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz received a kick from a horse, at Damascus, when he was a little boy. He was taken to his mother Omm Aâsim, who clasped him in her arms and began to wipe the blood off his face. She had not finished, when seeing his father come in, she turned towards him in a passion, and began to reproach and upbraid him: 'You have killed my child,' said she, 'because you would not give him a servant or a nurse to protect him from accidents such as this.' He replied: 'Be silent, Omm Aâsim! what a benediction will it be for you if this boy turn out to be the Omaiyide with the scarred forehead.'"—Hammâd Ibn Zaid made the following relation: "Omar Ibn al-Khattâb passed by an old wooman, in the milk-market, who had milk to sell, and he said to her: 'Old woman! deceive not the true believers and the visitors of God's holy house, by mixing water with your milk.' She replied: 'I shall obey.' Some time after, he passed near her again and said: 'Old woman! did I not forbid you to water your milk?' She answered: 'By Allah! I never do so.' Her daughter, who was within the booth, then spoke to her and said: 'Is it thus that you draw down upon yourself the double reproach of fraud and falsehood?' Omar overheard her and intended punishing the old wooman, but spared her on account of her daughter's words. He then turned to his two sons and said: 'Which of you will marry that girl? Almighty God may produce from her an offspring as virtuous as herself.' His son Aâsim replied: 'I will marry her;' and did so; and she bore him a daughter whom they named Omm Aâsim. This daughter became the wife of Abd al-Azîz Ibn Marwân and bore him Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz. After her (death), her husband took another wife whose name was Hafsa, and of whom it was (proverbially) said: Hafsa is not one of the women who are like Omm
"Adsim."—The shaikh Shams ad-Din Abû 'l-Muzaffar Yusuf Ibn Kizoghli (vol. I. p. 439), a daughter's son to Jamâl ad-Din Abû 'l-Faraj Ibn al-Jauzi (vol. II. p. 96), states in his Kitâb Jawara taz-Zamân fi tazkira tis-Sultân (26), that Ibn Omar related as follows: "Whilst my father was patrolling at night the streets of Medina, he heard a woman say to her daughter: 'Rise, my girl! and water the milk.' The other answered: 'O Mamma! did you not hear the Commander of the faithful's public cryer forbid the mixing of milk with water?' To this the mother replied: 'His cryer is far from you now!' and the daughter answered: 'If he see me not, the Lord of that cryer will see me.' Omar wept and, when the morning set in, he sent for the two women and asked the daughter if she was married. The mother answered that she was not, and Omar then said to me: 'O Abd Allah! marry that girl; if I stood in need of a wife, I myself would take her.' To this I replied that I (was already provided for and) could do without her. He then said: 'Abû Aâsim! do you marry her.' Abû Aâsim (whose other name was) Abd al-Azîz the Omayyide, married her and she became the mother of Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz."—On the death of Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz, Yazîd Ibn Abd al-Malik was raised to the khilafate. Yazîd Ibn al-Muhallab then proceeded to Basra, seized on that city, imprisoned Abî Ibn Artâ, the officer who governed it in the name of the new khilaf and, having openly rejected the authority of Yazîd Ibn Abd al-Malik, he aspired to obtain the khilafate for himself. One of his concubines then went to him, kissed the ground before him and said: "Hail to the Commander of the faithful!" On which he recited this verse:

Return to your place I wait till you see what will happen when this dark thunder-cloud clears off.

—I must observe that this verse is taken from a piece composed by Bishr Ibn Katîa (?) al-Asadi. It is not necessary for us to give the particulars of this event (the revolt of Yazîd), which we here indicate in a summary manner.—Yazîd Ibn Abd al-Malik then placed his brother Maslama and his nephew al-Abbâs Ibn al-Walîd at the head of the troops and sent them against Yazîd Ibn al-Muhallab. This chief marched forth to encounter them and established his son Moawwâ in Basra, as his lieutenant, leaving with him troops, money and the prisoners. He sent on before him his brother Abd al-Malik, who proceeded to al-Akr, where he halted (27). This place is called also the Akr of Bâbel; it lies near Kûfâ and not far
BIOGRAFICAL DICTIONARY.

from Kerbelal, the spot where al-Husain, the son of Ali, was slain. Al-Akr was originally the name of this castle. There are four places which bear this name, but we need not mention the others, as Yākūt al-Hamawi (see page 9 of this vol.) has noticed them in his Mushtārik.—At-Tabari says : Maslama Ibn Abd al-Malik advanced and took position opposite to Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab. The troops drew up in line and engaged the combat. The people of Basra charged those of Syria, threw them into disorder and forced them to retreat, but their adversaries rallied, attacked them and put them to flight. Abd al-Malik, who commanded the van-guard, retreated after this check and went to join his brother Yazid. The people (of Basra) had taken the oath of fealty to Yazid and sworn, on the Book of God and the Sunna of his prophet, that they would support him, provided that he hindered (his) troops from entering into their territory or their city (بيت الله) and that he should not recommence towards them the conduct followed by that reprobate al-Hajjāj. Marwān Ibn al-Muhallab, who was in Basra, excited the people to march against the Syrians and join his brother Yazid. Al-Hasan al-Basri (vol. I. p. 370) tried to dissuade them and said, in one of his public sittings: "I marvel at a reprobate from among the reprobates, an impious man from among the impious, who has passed some time in submitting this people to every dishonour, and that too, in the name of God, and who, in God's name also, commits every sin. What they (his partisans) devour is devoured by him, what they take is taken by him and, when a mouthful is refused him, he swallows it (by force). He said to you: 'I am filled with (a virtuous) anger (for the cause of God), and be you also filled with anger.' He has set up a long cane with a rag tied to it (for a standard) and drawn after him a sickle (رجعية), wild and silly band of youths, who have not the least intelligence. He says: 'I summon you to follow the path traced by Omar Ibn Abd al-Azīz!' but were that path followed, he would be fettered in chains and cast into the place where Omar had already put him."

Here a man said to him: "How now, Abū Sa'īd! are you making an apology for the Syrians?"—meaning the Omaiyides. —To this he replied: "I make their apology! may God never forgive them! Sa'id, the son of al-Abbās, related as follows: 'The Prophet of God said: 'Almighty God! I declare sacred in Medina all those things which You declared sacred in your town of Mekka.' And yet the people of Syria entered into it for three days, and not a door was locked but they burned it (the house) and all that was in it; things went so far that (vile) Copts
"" and Nabateans intruded upon Kuraishide women, tore their veils off their heads "" and their bracelets off their ankles. Their swords were suspended from their "" shoulders whilst the Book of God was trodden by them under foot! Shall I let "" myself be killed for the sake of (one or other of) two reprobates who dispute the "" possession of (worldly) authority? By Allah! I should be delighted if the earth "" were to swallow them both up."" Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab, being informed of what al-Hasan had said, disguised himself, with some of his cousins, and went to the mosque where he held his sittings. After saluting, they took him aside, and the assembly looked on with apprehension. Yazid then commenced with him a discussion in which he was joined by one of his cousins. Al-Hasan said to the latter: ""Who are you? what do you mean, you son of a slutish mother!"" The other drew his sword and, being asked by Yazid what he intended to do, he replied: ""To kill that fellow."" — ""Sheath your sword,"" said Yazid, ""for, by Allah! if "" you kill him, the people who are now for us will turn against us."" — I may here observe that Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab is the person meant in that verse of the Duraidiya, or Maksāra, of Ibn Duraid (vol. III. p. 37), which runs thus:

And, before my time, Yazid aspired to reach the height of power, and he was neither feeble nor irresolute.

The commentators of the Duraidiya have all discoursed on this verse and related the history (of Yazid). — Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab remained (with his army) in position during eight days, from the time of his meeting (the army of) Maslama. On Friday, the 14th of Safar, 102 (24th August, A. D. 720), the boats were burned by the order of Maslama; the two armies met and the fire of war was lighted up. When (Yazid's) people saw the smoke and were told that the bridge of boats was burning, they fled in disorder. Yazid, being informed that they had taken to flight, asked why they did so and, having learned that the bridge was on fire and that not one of them had kept his ground, he exclaimed: ""May God curse them for mosquitoes, "" that fly away before smoke!"" He himself had not the slightest thought of retiring. Being then informed that his brother Habib was slain, he said: ""Life "" will have no value for me after the loss of Habib; I abhorred the idea of "" retreating when my troops took to flight, and now, by Allah! I abhor it more than "" ever! March forward!"" One of his companions said (afterwards): ""We knew "" that the man intended to get killed, so those who disliked fighting hung back.
and went off, one after the other. But a good troop still followed him whilst he dashed forward. Every band of horsemen which he met was put to rout; not a troop of Syrians but turned aside to avoid him and the lances of his companions. Abû Rûba 'l-Murji then went up to him and said: 'The rest of our people are gone off; what think you of returning to Wâsit, where you may hold out till you receive reinforcements from the people of Basra and till the people of Omân and Bahrain come to you in their ships. You might entrench yourself (and wait for them)! Yazīd replied: 'Confound your advice! do you pretend to say that my death will be easier there than here?' The other answered: 'I fear for your life; see you not the mountains of iron (the masses of armed men) which surround you?'—'I care not for them,' exclaimed Yazīd, 'no matter whether they be mountains of iron or of fire. Leave us, if you are not inclined to fight on our side.' He then advanced against Maslama, without caring to attack any other, and the latter, on seeing him approach, called for his horse and mounted him. The Syrian cavalry gathered round (Yazīd) and his companions; Yazīd was slain with his brother Muhammad and a number of his partisans. Al-Kahl (Jâlûn) Ibn Aiyāsh al-Kalbi exclaimed, on seeing Yazīd: 'I shall kill him or he shall kill me but, as it will be difficult to get at him, some of you must charge with me and occupy his companions till I reach him.'—'We will charge with you'; exclaimed some of his comrades. They dashed on in a body and, after an hour's fighting, when the dust cleared off, the two parties separated, leaving Yazīd dead and al-Kahl Ibn Aiyāsh at his last gasp. Al-Kahl made a sign to his companions, pointing out where Yazīd was lying. The head of Yazīd was brought in by a mawla of the Murra family who, being asked if it was he who slew him, answered: 'No.'—Whilst the combat was going on, al-Hawāri Ibn Zîād saw a horse without a rider and exclaimed: 'Hurrah! there is the horse of that reprobate, the son of al-Muhallab; God grant that he may be dead!' They looked for him, and his head was brought to Maslama, who did not recognise it. On this, Haiyân an-Nabati said: 'Think what you please, but think not that the man has fled; he has most certainly been killed.'—'What sign is there of that?' said Maslama. The other replied: 'In the time of Ibn al-Ashath, I heard him say: 'Shame on Ibn al-Ashath! raising dust (in flying before his enemies) was his main occupation. How could he prove himself superior to death unless he died honorably?''—I may here observe that the emir Abû Nasr Ibn Mâkula
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

says, in that section (of the work entitled al-Ikmâl) which is headed by the words al-
Kahl, al-Fahl: "Kahl is similar (in its written form) to fahl, except that the first let-
ter has two points (instead of one). He (al-Kahl) was the son of Aiyâsh Ibn Hassân
Ibn Samîr Ibn Sharâhil Ibn Ozair. He slew Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab. Each of
them struck his adversary and slew him". — When Yazid's head was carried to
Maslama, no person could say whether it was his or not; some one then advised him
to have it washed and a turban put on it. That was done, and he recognised him.
Maslama sent it to his brother Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik; the bearer was Khâlid Ibn
al-Walid Ibn Ocha Ibn Abî Moaît. — Khalifa Ibn Khâiyât says: "Yazid, the son of
al-Muhallab, was born in the year 53 (A. D. 673); he was killed on Friday, the
12th of Safer, 102 (22nd August, A. D. 720)." God knows best! — When those
who fled reached Wâsit, Moawia, the son of Yazid, had thirty-two prisoners in his
power, These he caused to be brought out of prison and beheaded. One of them
was Asî Ibn Artâ. He then marched out of the town, and the people (his soldiers) said
to him: "Out upon you! we see clearly that you intend to have us all killed; has
not your father been killed?" He advanced as far as Basra, carrying with him
the money and the treasures. Al-Mufaddal, the son of al-Muhallab, and the other
members of the family were all assembled at Basra, as they feared the disaster which
really took place. They then prepared sea-going ships and embarked all sorts of
military stores. Moawia wished to obtain the commandment over the rest of the fa-
mily, but they assembled and chose al-Mufaddal for their chief. "Al-Mufaddal",
said they, "is our senior and you are still a boy like some others of the family." Al
Mufaddal held the commandment over them till they reached Kermân where there
were many scattered bands of soldiers who had escaped from the battle, and he united
all those troops under his orders. An army, sent in pursuit of them by Maslama
Ibn Abd al-Malik, overtook them at a defile in (the province of) Fars and attacked
them with great vigour. Al-Mufaddal and a number of his officers lost their lives
in that combat. All the other members of the Muhallab family were afterwards kil-
led, with the exception of Abu Oyaina and Othmân Ibn al-Mufaddal who took refuge
at the court of the Khâkân (chief of the Khazars) and of Retbil (prince of Kabul).
Maslama sent their heads to his brother Yazid who was then encamped near Aleppo.
When the heads were stuck up on poles, Yazid went out to look at them and said
to his companions: "That is the head of Abd al-Malik; that is the head of al-Mufad-
dal; by Allah! he looks (as tranquil) as if he were sitting with me and conversing."
— Another author, not at-Tabari, says: “When the head of Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab was brought to Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik, one of the courtiers began to depri-
ciate the character of Yazid, the son of al-Muhallab; but the khalif said to him:
‘Hold your tongue! Yazid aspired to greatness, encountered dangers and died ho-
‘norably.’” — When Maslama had finished the war against the Muhallabites, he
obtained from his brother Yazid, that very year, the united governments of Kûfa,
Basra and Khorâsân. — The death of Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab was lamented in a num-er of fine elegies composed by his favorite poet, Thâbit Kutna. In one of these
pieces he said:

All the (Arab) tribes swore to second you in what you undertook; they followed you and
marched (to battle). But when the lances shocked together and you exposed your troops to the
point of the spear, they abandoned you and fled. You were slain, but not disgracefully; and
how many the violent deaths which are disgraceful!

This Thâbit was one of the best poets and warriors of Khorâsân. He lost one of
his eyes and, as he kept its socket always filled with cotton (kûn), he became known
by the name of Thâbit Kutna. Having received, at one time, from Yazid Ibn al-
Muhallab the government of a canton in Khorâsân, he mounted into the pulpit, but
felt so confused and troubled that he was unable to utter a word and got down. The
people having then gone to visit him at his house, he said to them:

I cannot stand up among you as your orator, but, when battle rages, I am an able orator with
my sword.

When they heard this, they exclaimed: “By Allah! had you said so when in the
pulpit, you would have been the very best of orators.” — Ibn Kutaiba speaks of
him in the *Tabakât as-Shuward*. It was against Thâbit that Sâhib al-Fil al-Hanafi,
with whom he was often engaged in satirical conflicts, directed these lines:

Abû ‘l-Âlâ! you met on Friday last with a misfortune: you were troubled and like to choke.
Your tongue turned (in your mouth) when you were going to speak, and made a slip like that
of a man who stumbles down from a mountain’s top. When the eyes of the congregation were
fixed on you in broad day-light, you were nearly strangled in clearing your voice.

Ibn al-Kalbi (vol. III. p. 608) says, in his *Jamhâra*: “This Thâbit (came of a
very noble family being) the son of Kaab Ibn Jâbir Ibn Kaab Ibn Kermân Ibn Tarafa
Ibn Khallikan's

"Ibn Imran Ibn Amr Muzaiya Ibn A'mir M at-Samā. — An author, but not at-Tabari, says that Yazid was killed by al-Hudaii Ibn Zufar Ibn al-Harith al-Kilābi. — Al-Kalbi says also: 'When I was a boy, the people used to say: 'The Omaiyides exposed religion (to ignominy) on the day of Kerbela (when al-Husain, the son of Ali, was killed), and they injured generosity on the day of al-Akr!'. — Muhammad Ibn Wāsī (Wāsī al-Asghur) related as follows: 'When we received the news of al-Yazid's death, a woman of Oman, who was a professional weeper at funerals, came to me and made in my presence a lament for those of the Muhallab family who had been killed.' — Ibn Abbād said: 'During more than twenty years after the death of the Muhallabs, not a girl was born in our family and not a boy died.' — Khalīfa Ibn Khaytār says: 'In the year 102, on Friday, the 12th of Safar (22nd August, A. D. 720), Yazid, the son of al-Muhallab, was slain, at the age of forty-nine years. He was illustrious by his noble character, his generosity, his rank and his bravery.' — It is related that the khalif Yazid received a visit from his brother Maslama, at the time of Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab's revolt, and, seeing him dressed in coloured robes (as if to enjoy a party of pleasure), he said to him: 'Why do you wear such clothes, you who are one of those whom the poet designated in this verse:

"People who, when engaged in war, tighten their garments around them (and abstain) from women; leaving them to pass the night in a state of purity.

Maslama answered: 'We fight against our equals, those who belong to the Kuraiish family; but, when a raven croaks, we do not mind it.' — I may add that the author of this verse was al-Akhtal al-Talhibi, a Christian and a celebrated poet.

(2) This Sa'd must have been the son of the conqueror of Egypt, but I can find no information respecting him.
(3) Omar Ibn Hibaib 'I-Fazārī was one of the most active generals and provincial governors whom the Omaiyides had in their service. He died in the year 106 (A. D. 724-5).
(4) The recital which follows is omitted in the edition of Bulaq. I give it after three manuscripts and indicate the corrections which should be made in the lithographed text of Wolfgang. The piece is curious, as it offers specimens of the sententious and elliptical style of speaking for which the ancient Arabs were remarkable.
(5) Omar Ibn Lajâ was a contemporary of the poet Jarîr, whom he sometimes satirized. — (Ibn Duraid's Ishikdâk.)

(6) The fullest account which we have of Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn al-Ashadh's revolt is given by Price, in his Retrospect of Mohammedan History, vol. I, p. 455 et seq.

(7) This Harsh brought to the tribe of Tamîm and was one of their bravest warriors. He distinguished himself highly in Khorasan. — (Ibn Duraid's Ishikdâk.)

(8) These last words appear to mean: you are a band which will bring about a catastrophe.

(9) Mutarrif Ibn Abd Allah Ibn as-Slihâhkhâr was the son of one of the Prophet's companions. He died subsequently to the year 97 (A. D. 716). — (Ibn Kutaiba's Madrîf.) From what is related of him here, he seems to have been a rigid and puritanical Muslim.

(10) The poet Hamza Ibn Bâd al-Hana'î was a native of Kûfâ. He celebrated the praises of al-Mubahâb, of that emir's sons and of the kâdi Bûlân Ibn Abi Burdâ. The gifts which he received for his eulogiums were immense. — (Klid al-Aghdâni.)

(11) The expression here rendered by treating with honour signifies literally: doubling the cushion; which was done probably for the purpose of seating the visitor more commodiously. It occurs again in the article on Yazîd Ibn Omar Ibn Hûbârâ.

(12) The manuscripts all read Qatarân. This plural form of the word Qatar is not mentioned in the dictionaries.

(13) The austerity of Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz, his detestation of worldly pomp and his rigid piety are well known.

(14) The word sarâf signifies throne and bier. The poet employs it here in the two meanings.

(15) This parenthesis is supplied by conjecture.

(16) This passage is important in a philological point of view: it proves that the expression في حدود signifies on or about.

(17) The son and successor of Abd al-Malik.

(18) Khîrâ was put to death at Omân by Zîdâd, the son of al-Mubahâb. — (Ishikdâk.)

(19) Nâhâr Ibn Taüsfa was one of al-Mubahâb's favorite poets. He died A. H. 103 (A. D. 721-2).

(20) Yazîd had been lamed by an arrow.

(21) The immense marches which extend from Basra to the Persian gulf are called the Battânah.

(22) According to Ibn Duraid, in his Ishikdâk, the name يقلب should be pronounced Akhl. In the life of al-Hajjâj (vol. I, p. 356), it has been transcribed Okail. In the genealogy given there Ibn Okail must be replaced by Ibn Abî Akhl.

(23) The Arabic text says: till he can count men.

(24) This relation is taken from the Annals of Tabari.

(25) This passage is not found in most manuscripts. The indication given in it, and corrected by the translator, is evidently erroneous.

(26) This work is not mentioned in Hajjî Khallîfa's bibliographical dictionary. The title signifies: Gem of the age, being a commemoration of the sultan. I do not know of what subject it treats.

(27) The recital is evidently taken from at-Tabari's Annals.

(28) This seems to mean that the death of the Mubahâbies brought good luck to the people.
Abû 'l-Alâ Yazid Ibn Abi Muslim Dinâr, a member, by enfranchisement, of the tribe of Thakîf, was a mawla of al-Hajjâj Ibn Yûsuf (vol. I. p. 356) and his secretary. It was for the talent and abilities which he displayed in the management of affairs, that al-Hajjâj raised him to eminence. We mentioned, in the life of Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab (page 183 of this vol.), that al-Hajjâj, in his last illness, appointed Ibn Abi Muslim to act as his deputy in the administration of the khārij (land-tax) of Irâk. On the death of al-Hajjâj, he was confirmed in that post by (the khalif) al-Walîd Ibn Abd al-Malik, and no modifications were made in his attributions. Some say that he held his appointment from al-Walîd, subsequently to the death of al-Hajjâj, and that al-Walîd said: "I am, with regard to al-Hajjâj and Ibn Abi Muslim, like a man who lost a piece of silver and found a piece of gold." Sulaimân, the brother and successor of al-Walîd, dismissed Ibn Abi-Muslim from office and sent Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab to replace him. Ibn Abi Muslim was brought before the khalif with his hands and neck enclosed in a wooden collar (نامة). Being low-set, and ungainly (مذموم), with an ugly face and a large belly, he presented to the eye a very despicable appearance. Sulaimân, on seeing him, said: Are you Yazid "Ibn Abi Muslim?" The other replied: "I am; may God direct the Commander of the faithful!"—"The curse of God be on him," exclaimed Sulaimân, "who shared his trust with you and confided to you authority on his own responsibility."—"Commander of the faithful!" replied Ibn Abi Muslim, "make not (such a wish); you see me now that things have turned badly for me, but, if you saw me in prosperity, you would admire, not despise, think highly of me and not scorn me." On hearing these words, Sulaimân exclaimed: "Curse on the fellow! what a quick intelligence he has and what a sharp tongue!" He then said to him: "Tell me, Yazid! your master al-Hajjâj is he still falling down to hell, or has he already reached the bottom of it?" He replied: "Commander of the faithful! say not such things; al-Hajjâj was a foe to your foes and a friend to your friends; he lavished his blood for you, and his place, on the day of the resurrection, will be on the right hand of Abd al-Malik and on the left of al-Walîd; so,
"put him where you think fit."—According to another relation, he replied: "To-
morrow, on the day of the resurrection, he will be between your father and your
brother; so, place them where you will."—"Curse on the fellow!" said Sulai-
mân, "how devoted he is to his master! it is such men as he that should be admitted
into favour." One of the khalif's social companions here said: "Commander
of the faithful! take that man's life; do not spare it." Ibn Abi Muslim asked
who that person was and said, on hearing his names: "By Allah! I have been told
that his mother had not always her ears hidden by her hair (1)." Sulaimân, on
hearing these words, could not refrain from laughing and ordered the prisoner
to be set at liberty. He then caused an enquiry to be made into his conduct and
thus learned that he had not defrauded the state even of a dinar or of a dirhem. He
even thought of taking him for his secretary, but Omar Ibn Abd al-Aziz (who was
afterwards khalif) said to him: "Commander of the faithful! I implore you, in
God's name, not to revive the recollections left by al-Hajjâj by taking his secretary
for yours." Sulaimân replied: "Abû Hafs! I had his conduct examined into
and have not found in it the least trace of peculation." Omar replied: "I could
find for you an individual who cares as little as he for dinars and dirhems."—
"Who is that?" said the khalif.—"Satan;" replied Omar; "he handles neither di-
inars nor dirhems, and yet he brought ruin upon mankind." Sulaimân aban-
donned his project.—Juwairiya Ibn Asmâ (2) related as follows: "Omar Ibn Abd al-
Aziz, being informed that Yazîd Ibn Abi Muslim had set out on an expedition with
some Muslim troops, wrote to the amîl (or superintendent) of the army, an order
for his recall. 'I detest,' said he, 'the thought of gaining victories by means of an
army in which that man is.'"—The hâfîz Abû 'l-Kâsim Ibn Asâkir (vol. II. p. 252)
gives, in his (biographical) history of Damascus, an article on Yazîd Ibn Abi Muslim,
in which he relates as follows, on the authority of Yâkûb (3): "In the year 101
(A. D. 719-20), Yazîd was appointed to the government of Irîkiya (Mauritania),
in which post he replaced Ismail Ibn Obaid Allah Ibn Abi 'l-Muhâjir, a mawla of
the tribe of Makhzûm. Yazîd acted in the most commendable manner and was
killed in the year 102." Here is, however, what at-Tabari (vol. II. p. 597) relates,
in his great historical work: "He resolved, it is said, on acting towards them (the
Musulmans of Mauritania) in the same manner as al-Hajjâj Ibn Yusuf had treated
those members of the population of Sawâd (Babylonia) who had embraced Isla-
mism and settled in the cities of Irâk: al-Hajjâj sent them back to the districts of

vol. IV.
which they were natives and exacted from them the poll-tax, such as they had
to pay before their conversion. Yazid resolved on doing like him, but the people
consulted together and decided on killing him, which they did. They then pla-
ced at the head of affairs Yazid's predecessor in the government and wrote to (the
khalif) Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik a letter in which they said: 'We have not cast off
our allegiance, but Yazid Ibn Abu Muslim treated us in a manner which neither
God nor the Muslims could brook. We therefore slew him and reinstated
in office your former governor.' To this, Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik replied by a
letter in which he said: 'I disapprove of Yazid Ibn Abu Muslim's conduct and
cannot confirm the appointment of Muhammad Ibn Yazid to the government of Ifrikiya.
This was in the year 102.' Al-Waddah Ibn Khithama related as follows:
Omar Ibn Abd al-Aziz ordered me to set at liberty some people who were in prison,
and Yazid Ibn Abu Muslim was among them. Him I left where he was, but let
out all the others. This he could never forgive me. When we were in Ifrikiya,
we heard that Yazid was coming to act as governor, and I therefore took to
flight. He, being informed of the place where I was, sent persons to arrest me
and bring me to him. When I was taken before him, he said: 'For a long time
I have been asking Almighty God to place you in my power.' To this I replied:
'For a long time I have been asking Almighty God to protect me from you!' 
'God has not protected you,' said Yazid, 'and, by Allah! I shall kill you. Were
the angel of death to come for you, I should hasten to take your life before he
did.' He then called for the sword and the nadj (4). They were brought in,
and al-Waddah was placed on the nadj by his order, with his hands tied behind his back. A man holding a sword stood behind him and (at that very mo-
moment) was heard the call to prayer. Yazid went out to join the congregation and,
as he was making the prostration, the swords (of the conspirators) took away his life.
A man then came in to al-Waddah, cut his bonds and set him at liberty. Muham-
mad Ibn Yazid, a mawla of the Ansars, was re-established in the government.—So
says at-Tabari; he names Muhammad Ibn Yazid, but Ibn Asakir gives that of Isma'il
Ibn Obaid Allah. God knows best! — I may here observe that al-Waddah was
chamberlain to Omar Ibn Abd al-Aziz. Being ordered by that khalif, who had been
taken ill, to set at liberty all the prisoners, he let every one of them out, with the
exception of Yazid. On the death of Omar, al-Waddah fled to Ifrikiya, through fear
of Yazid, and then took place what has been related.—Omar fell sick at Khunaisira.
The word *جَامِعَة* (jamed) employed above, where mention is made of Yazid Ibn Abi Muslim’s being brought before the khalif, means a collar by which the hands are fastened to the neck.—The د in the word دامِم (damim) which occurs in the expression (rendered by) low-set and ungainly, is written without a point and signifies ugly. Omar (the khalif) said: ‘‘Give not your daughters in marriage to ugly (دامِم) men, for that which, in men, pleases women is the same which, in women, pleases men (i.e. ‘‘beauty’’).’’ دامِم (damim) with a point on the د signifies blamable. Ibn ar-Rûmi (vol. II. p. 297) employed the word rightly when he said:

Like the fellow-wives of a handsome woman; they say of her face, unjustly and through envy, that it is ugly (damim).

I have indicated the right orthography of the word because it is often incorrectly written.—*Khundisira* is the name of an ancient village in al-Ahass, which is a district in the province of Aleppo. It lies to the south-east of that city, near Kinnisrin. Omar Ibn Abd al-Aziz acted there as governor, in the name of (the khalif) Abd al-Malik Ibn Marwan and in that of Sulaimân, the son of Abd al-Malik. It is this place which is meant in the following verse of al-Mutanabbi:

I love the country between Emessa and Khundisira; every man loves the spot where he passed his early life.

The celebrated poet Adi Ibn ar-Rikâ al-Aâmili (5) mentions also this place in his well-known *kastda* which rhymes in د; he says:

When the vernal flowers follow in succession, may the rains water abundantly the Khundisira of al-Ahass.

(1) This seems to mean that her hair had been cut off at one time to punish her for being a prostitute.
(2) The Traditionist Juwairiya Ibn Asmâ, a member of the Dubalâ (عسكرة) tribe, died A. H. 378 (A. D. 799-90).
(3) A number of Traditionists bore the name of Yâkûb, but we have not means of determining which of them it was whose authority is cited by Ibn Askkir.
(4) The *sâd* was a circular carpet of leather, having round the border a running string by means of which it might be drawn up into the shape of a bag. The executioner made use of it to receive the blood of those whom he beheaded.
YAZID IBN OMAR IBN HUBAIRA

Abū Khālid Yazīd Ibn Abī 'l-Muthanna Omar Ibn Hubaira Ibn Moaiya Ibn Sukain Ibn Khadij Ibn Baghdad Ibn Mālik Ibn Saad drew his descent from Adī, the son of Fāzāra, whose genealogy is so well known (1) that we need not lengthen this article by its insertion. According to Ibn Duraid (vol. III. p. 37) Moaiya (موي) is the diminutive of mīan (ميان) which itself is the singular of the word amāda, which signifies the intestines. This opinion is, however, rejected by others who consider the word as the diminutive of (the proper name) Moawta.—The vowels of Sukain are an u and ai; in Khadij and Baghdad the first vowel is an a. The other names are so generally known that it is not necessary for us to mark their pronunciation. — According to the ḥāfiz Abū 'l-Kāsim Ibn Asākir (vol. II. p. 252), he (Yazīd) was a native of Syria and governed Kinnisrin in the name of (the Khalif) al-Walid Ibn Yazīd Ibn Abd al-Malik. He accompanied Marwān Ibn Muhammad, the last of the Omayyades, when that prince took the city of Damascus (A. H. 127, A. D. 744-5), and then obtained from him the government of all Irāk. He was born in the year 87 (A. D. 705-6). Ibn Aiyāsh (vol. I. p. 553) mentions him in the list of those governors who ruled in Irāk and held under their orders al-Misrān (the two cities) that is to say, al-Basra and al-Kūfa.—Ibn Kutaiba (vol. II. p. 22) says the same thing in his Kitāb al-Madrīf, where he names those emirs who governed simultaneously the two Irāks. The first name on the list is that of Ziyād Ibn Abī Alīh (vol. I. p. 364) who acted there as the lieutenant of Moawia Ibn Abī Sofyān, and the last is that of Yazīd Ibn Omar Ibn Hubaira, the subject of this article. The same writer adds: "No other, after these, ever held the united governments of the two Irāks." In the same work, he had already spoken of him, in the article on Omar Ibn Hubaira. There he says: "Abū "Ja‘far al-Mansūr besieged Yazīd in Wāsit during some months and obtained the surrender of the city by granting him amnesty and protection. When Yazīd rode forth, at the head of his household, to meet him, he said: 'No empire could 'prosper with such a man in it;' and had him put to death." — Khalīfa Ibn Khaiyāt (vol. I. p. 492) says: "In the year 128 (A. D. 745-6), Marwān Ibn Muhammad dispatched Yazīd to Irāk, as governor. This was subsequently to the
BIIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

"death of ad-Dahhak." — He means ad-Dahhak as-Shaibani Ibn Kais the kharijite (2). — "Yazid went as far as Hit, and there stopped. He was tall and corpulent, brave, liberal, a good orator and a great eater, but inclined to envy." — Abû Jaafar at-Tabari mentions him in his History, under the year 128: "In this year," says he, "Marwân Ibn Muhammad sent Yazid Ibn Omar Ibn Hubaira to Irâk, for the purpose of warring against the Kharijites who were in that country." He then, under the year 132 (A. D. 749-50), speaks of the revolt got up by Kahtaba Ibn Shabib, one of the Abbaside missionaries (or political agents), subsequently to the triumph of that party in Khorâsân and the adjoining countries. Abû Muslim al-Khorâsânî, the same of whom we have already spoken (vol. II. p. 100), was the principal abettor of that movement and continued to be its main-spring till the Abbasides had fully established their authority. The history of these events is well known, and, as we have given some account of them in our article on Abû Muslim, we need not enter into further particulars. Kahtaba revolted in Irâk and marched against Yazid Ibn Omar Ibn Hubaira. Some encounters, too numerous to be related, took place between them, and we may state, in a summary manner, that Kahtaba forded the Euphrates (with his army), in the neighbourhood of al-Falûja, a well-known village in Irâk, and advanced to attack Ibn Hubaira, who was on the opposite bank of the river. Kahtaba was drowned. This occurred on Wednesday evening, the 8th of Muharram (27th Aug. A. D. 749), towards sunset, and his son, al-Hasan, replaced him as chief of the army. This is not a fit place for relating this celebrated battle, as a full account of it would be too long. Maan Ibn Zâida as-Shaibani (vol. III. p. 398) was one of Yazid Ibn Hubaira's partisans and his ablest assistant in all affairs, either of war or otherwise. It is said that in the night of the battle, he struck Kahtaba Ibn Shabib with his sabre on the head or, according to another statement, on the shoulder, so that he fell into the water. He was taken out alive and said (to his people): "If I die, let the water be my grave, so that no one may know what has become of me." Other relations are given respecting the manner in which he was drowned, and God best knows the truth! — Let us return to our account of Ibn Hubaira: Seeing his troops vanquished and put to flight by the army of which Kahtaba, and then al-Hasan, the son of Kahtaba, was the commander, he took refuge in Wâsit and fortified himself in that city. Abû 'l-Abbâs Abd Allah, the son of Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn Abd Allah Ibn al-Abbâs Ibn Abd al-Muttalib, and surnamed as-Saffâh, then arrived from al-Humaima with his brother Abû
Jaafar Abūd Allah Ibn Muhammad (the same who was) surnamed al-Mansūr. The village of al-Humaima, situated on that part of the Syrian frontier which extends from the territory of al-Balkâ to Kūfa, was then the residence of the Abbasides, and there were assembled a number of their partisans, their agents and the persons who were assisting them in establishing the Abbaside dynasty and overthrowing that of the Omaiyides. The chief of the latter dynasty and the last of its sovereigns was, at that time, Marwân Ibn Muhammad Ibn Marwân Ibn al-Hakam. He bore the surname of al-Jaadi and was designated familiarly by the nickname of al-Himâr (3). When they arrived at Kūfa, Abū 'l-Abbâs as-Saffâh was solemnly acknowledged as sovereign. The inauguration took place on Friday, the 13th of the latter Rabī, 132 (29th November, A. D. 749). Another account places that event in the month of the first Rabī, but the preceding date is the true one. The cause of the Abbasides then began to triumph and their power augmented whilst that of the Omaiyides declined. (Abū Jaafar) al-Mansūr, being then dispatched by his brother, as-Saffâh, with the order to besiege Yazid Ibn Omar Ibn Hubaira in Wāsit, joined the army which was then posted near the city, under the orders of al-Hasan Ibn Kahtâba. At-Tabari says, in his great historical work: "Frequent messages passed between Abū Jaafar al-Mansūr and Ibn Hubaira. The latter then demanded by letter that an amân (or full pardon) should be given to him. A paper to that effect was drawn up and sent to him. He passed forty days in consulting doctors of the law (on its validity), before he consented to accept it. Abū Jaafar, to whom it was then brought back, sent it to as-Saffâh, who ordered him to ratify it in Yazid's favour. Abū Jaafar's intention was to fulfil all the conditions granted, but as-Saffâh never took a decision without the approbation of Abū Muslim al-Khorâsâni, who was the chief director of the Abbaside party and had a spy who informed him by letter of all as-Saffâh's proceedings. Abū Muslim then wrote these words to as-Saffâh: The best of roads is a bad one if there be stones on it, and, by Allah! no road is good in which one meets with Ibn Hubaira." When the letter of immunity was signed, Ibn Hubaira left the city at the head of thirteen hundred Najârites (4) and was proceeding to enter on horseback into the enclosure (surrounding Abū Jaafar's tent), when the door-keeper stood up and said: 'Welcome, Abū Khalid! dismount quietly!' Ten thousand of the Khorasanide troops were then drawn up about the enclosure. Yazid dismounted, asked for a cushion so that he might sit down and then, at his request, the chiefs of the troop who came
BIографICAL DICTIONARY.

"with him were admitted. The door-keeper now said to him: Abû Khâlid! you
"may go in." The other replied: 'Do you mean me and those who are with
"me?' The door-keeper answered: 'I asked permission for you alone to enter.'
"Yazîd stood up and went in. A cushion was placed for him and he conversed
"for some time with him (Abû Ja'far). As he was withdrawing, Abû Ja'far kept
"his eyes fixed upon him till he disappeared. (Yazîd) then went to visit him every
"second day, accompanied by a troop of five hundred horse and three hundred foot.
"Yazîd Ibn Hâtim (see the next article) then said to Abû Ja'far: 'Emîr! this
"Ibn Hubaira is capable of coming and intimidating (our) troops, for he has lost
"none of his influence.' Abû Ja'far, in consequence, ordered the door-keeper
"to inform Ibn Hubaira that, in coming again, he ought not to bring with him all
"his troop, but merely his usual attendants. Ibn Hubaira changed colour on re-
"ceiving this message and came (the next time,) with a suite of about thirty persons.
"On this, the door-keeper said to him: 'You seem to have come prepared (for
"what ever may happen). The other replied: 'If you tell me to come on foot,
"I shall do so.' — 'Nay, said the door-keeper, 'I mean nothing disrespectful,
"and the emîr has given no orders but for your advantage.' After that, Yazîd
"made his visits every third day. Muhammad Ibn Kathîr related as follows:
"One day, in a conversation between Ibn Hubaira and Abû Ja'far, the latter
"made use of the expression: 'I say, you sir!' or: 'I say, my man!' and
"then added, as if to correct himself: 'Emîr! I merely employed the terms in
"which I not long ago heard people address you, and my tongue has outrun
"my thought.'—Abû 'l-Abbâs as-Saffâh insisted on Abû Ja'far's putting Ibn Hu-
"baira to death and, on his persisting to refuse, he wrote to him these words: 'By
"Allah! you must kill him, or else I shall send a person who will take him out
"of your enclosure and put him to death.' This letter decided Abû Ja'far on ta-
"king Yazîd Ibn Hubaira's life. He therefore caused all the rooms of the public
"treasury (in Wdît) to be sealed up and sent for the principal officers in Ibn Hu-
"baira's service. When they came, his door-keeper stepped forward and called out
"the names of two eminent chiefs, Ibn al-Hauthara and Muhammad Ibn Nubâta.
"They stood up, went in, and were immediately deprived of their swords and hand-
cuffed by three officers whom Abû Ja'far had posted within the precincts of his tent,
"with one hundred men. Then two other chiefs were introduced and treated in
"the same manner. Two others were then let in and underwent a similar treatment.
"This was done also with the rest. Mūsá Ibn Ākil (who was one of them) said: 'You took an engagement with us in God's name and have betrayed us; but I hope that God will punish you.' Ibn Nubāta (intending to express his contempt) made a noise with his lips, as if breaking wind (5), on which Ibn al-Haurāna said to him: 'That will avail you nothing.' The other replied: 'This I had almost foreseen.' They were all put to death and their signet-rings taken off. Háṣim, al-Ḥaitham Ibn Shāba and al-Āghlab Ibn Sālim then took with them about one hundred men and, having gone to Ibn Hubaira's residence, they sent in to him this message: 'We must have your treasures.' He told his door-keeper to go with them and point out where they were deposited. They placed guards at each of the doors and began to search every corner of the house. Ibn Hubaira had then with him his son Dāwūd, his secretary Omar Ibn ʿAyyūb, his door-keeper, some of his mawlas and, in his arms, he was holding a young child, one of his sons. Alarmed at the sight of these people, he exclaimed: 'I declare, by Allah! that the looks of those men portend nothing good.' They went up to him, the door-keeper placed himself before them and said: 'Stand off!' on which al-Ḥaitham Ibn Shāba gave him a blow on the shoulder (with his sabre) and brought him to the ground. Dāwūd then attacked them but was killed; the mawlas also lost their lives. On this, he ( Ibn Hubaira) laid down the child, exclaiming: 'Take care of the boy!' and prostrated himself (in prayer). He was slain whilst in that position. Abū Jaʿfar, to whom their heads were carried, ordered a general amnesty to be proclaimed. Abū ʿl-ʿAlā as-Sindi, whose real name was Marzūk or ʿAlḥā, and who was a mawla of the tribe of Asad, lamented Ibn Hubaira's death in the following lines:

"The eyes which shed not over thee abundant tears, on the (fatal) day of Wāsit, were surely concealed. On that evening the female mourners stood forward, whilst bosoms and cheeks were torn in the presence of the assembly. The court before thy dwelling is now deserted, but often did visitors station there, band after band. From those who came to visit thee, thou didst never keep away; but alas! how far away are those who repose under the earth."

I may observe here that Abū Tammām at-Taḥ (vol. I. p. 348) has given this piece in his Hamāsa, section of elegies. Here finish the indications borrowed from at-Tabari; they are roughly put together, having been extracted from different parts of his work. Another author says: "When Abū Jaʿfar joined al-Ḥasan Ibn Kaṭaba (under the walls of Wāsit) the latter gave up his tent to him and went some where
else. Hostilities continued for some days; Ibn Hubaira, seconded by Maan Ibn Zâida, held out firmly and sustained a long siege. Abû Jaafar happened to say that Ibn Hubaira, in sheltering himself behind ramparts, acted like a woman, and the latter, who was told of this, sent him a message to the following effect: 'If you said so and so, come out and meet me (in single combat). You will then see (what I am).' Abû Jaafar answered in these terms: 'I know of nothing to which I and you can be compared except a lion who met a wild-boar. The boar said to him: 'Come and fight me;' the other answered: 'You are not my equal in rank; if I encounter you and get a hurt, I should be disgraced, and, if I killed you, it would only be the killing of a boar, and I should obtain for that neither praise nor honour.' The boar said: 'If you come not out to fight me, I shall tell the other animals that you were afraid to meet me.' The lion answered: 'It will be easier for me to bear with your false imputations than with the disgrace of defiling my claws with your blood.' Al-Mansûr, having opened a correspondence with Ibn Hubaira and the other chiefs, they asked to capitulate and drew up a model of a treaty of peace and safeguard. Al-Mansûr sent this document to his brother, as-Saffâh, who ratified it, after inserting the following clause: 'If Ibn Hubaira break his word or infringe this agreement, the engagements taken with him and the amnesty granted to him shall be null and void.' Al-Mansûr's intention was to act with good faith towards Ibn Hubaira.' — Abû 'l-Hasan al-Madâinî (vol. I. p. 438) says: 'When the treaty of peace was written out, Ibn Hubaira went to visit al-Mansûr, who had a curtain drawn before him, and spoke in these terms: 'Emir! your dynasty has only commenced; so, let the people taste of its sweetness and spare them its bitterness; love for your family will thus penetrate into their hearts and the mentioning of your names will be agreeable to their tongues. We always thought your cause would succeed.' When he had finished, al-Mansûr caused the curtain to be drawn from between them and said to himself: 'How strange that he (my brother) should order me to kill such a man as this!' Ibn Hubaira, in his last days, went to dine and sup with al-Mansûr, taking with him only three of his companions, and was treated with utmost regard (6). It is said that he engaged in a correspondence with Abd Allah, the son of al-Hasan, the son of al-Hasan, the son of Ali Ibn Abî Tâlib, that he tried to gain partisans for the cause of the Alides and intended to overthrow the power of the Abbasides. He (as-Saffâh) then received a letter from Abû Muslim, vol. IV.
urging him to put Ibn Hubaira to death, and as-Saffāh, in consequence, wrote to
al-Mansūr the order to take his life. Al-Mansūr replied: 'I shall not do so; I
am engaged towards that man by a treaty and a promise of protection; these I
shall not break at the word of Abū Muslim.' As-Saffāh answered: 'I do not
order his death in consequence of a word from Abū Muslim, but because he has
infringed the treaty and is carrying on a secret intrigue with the family of Ali
Ibn Abī Talib; his blood is lawfully forfeited.' To this al-Mansūr returned no
answer, declaring that such a deed would be the ruin of the empire. As-Saffāh
then wrote to him, saying: 'If you do not put him to death, I shall break off all
connection with you.' Al-Mansūr then said to al-Hasan Ibn Kahtaba: 'Do you
kill him?'—'I will not,' replied al-Hasan. On this, Ḥāzim Ibn Khusaima
declared that he was willing to do the deed. He therefore took with him some of
the Khorasanide chiefs, entered into the castle where Ibn Hubaira was and found
him in company with his son Dāwūd, his secretary and his mawla. He had on
an Egyptian shirt and a rose-coloured mantle; a barber was with him and about
to cup him. When he saw them come in, he prostrated himself (in prayer) and
was slain by them, as also his son Dāwūd, his secretary and those who were with
him. His head was borne to al-Mansūr. Maan Ibn Zāida escaped the same fate,
being then with as-Saffāh. Al-Mansūr sent the head to his brother. This took
place in the year 132 (A. D. 749-50).''—Al-Haitham Ibn Adi (vol. III. p. 633)
related as follows: 'When Ibn Hubaira was killed, a Khorasanide said to one of
that chief's followers: 'What an enormous head your master had!' and received
this reply: 'Your granting him a safeguard was even more enormous.'''—The
khattb Abū Zakariya al-Tabrizi says, in his commentary on the Hamasa, section of
elegies, after giving the verses rhyming in d which were composed by Abū Atâ
as-Sindi on the death of Ibn Hubaira: 'Al-Mansūr had sworn to act with good faith
towards him and confirmed that engagement by a most solemn oath (7). When he
killed him, the head was brought to him and he said to the guard (who came with
it): 'Look at the enormous size of his head;' and to this, the guard replied:
'The safeguard granted to him was a greater enormity than his head.' Al-Man-
sūr destroyed the castle of Wāsit.'''—The ḥāfiz Ibn Asâkir says, in his greater
history: 'Every morning, when Ibn Hubaira awoke, they brought him an ʿiss (عص),
—this word means a large bowl,—'containing some honey, or else some sugar, on
which milk had been drawn (from the camel). He would drink it off and towards
the hour of morning prayer, would remain seated in the oratory till the proper
time for saying it came. After that he would retire and, when the milk ope-
rated, call for breakfast. At this repast he ate two fowls, two ḥādīs,—or young
pigeons,—half a kid and flesh-meat drest in a variety of ways. He then went out,
examined into the applications made to him, and, at noon, when he retired, he
would send for some of his officers and of the chief men of the place, and then call
for dinner. Placing a napkin over his breast, he would swallow large morcels
without stopping. When he finished, the company retired and he went in to
the women, with whom he remained till the hour of the after-noon prayer. He
would then come out to pray, after which, he would give audience to applicants,
examine into their affairs and say the asr prayer. A throne being then set up
him and chairs placed for the others, all sat down, and bowls (ṣūdā) of honied milk
and other drinks were brought in. The cloth being spread for the people and co-
vered with dishes of meat, a table was set on an estrade for himself and his compa-
nions. They eat with him and, after sunset, they went to attend the evening
prayer. When the prayer was over, the persons who were to pass the evening with
him would assemble in a room and sit there till called in. Conversation would
then be carried on till the night was far advanced. Every evening, he allowed ten
services to be asked of him, and these were all granted the next morning. His
(yearly) salary was six hundred thousand dirhems (£. 15,000). Every month he
would distribute large sums to his companions, to the legists and to the members of
respectable families. Abd Allah Ibn Shuburma ad-Dabbi, the kādī and juris-
consult of Kūfa, who was one of those who were admitted to his evening conver-
sations, said:

When the night was advanced and sleep was overcoming us, Aiyād would bring to us one
of the two reliefs.

Aiyād was his door-keeper and the two reliefs were the permission of going in
(to the emir) or of retiring. (At these social meetings) he had no napkin and,
when he called for one (it was a signal for) the company to rise up (and retire).”
A shaikh of the Kuraish tribe related as follows: “On a very hot summer's day, Yazid
Ibn Omar Ibn Hubaira admitted some people (who were waiting to be introduced).
He had on an old tunic the breast of which was patched. They looked at him
Ibn Khallikan's

"with wonder and he, remarking their astonishment, recited this verse of Ibrāhīm Ibn Harmā's (8), applying it to himself:

A gallant youth can attain to glory, though his robe be torn and his tunic patched.

His generous deeds, his noble qualities and the anecdotes related of him are numerous and well-known.—Khalifa Ibn Khayyāt says: "Ibn Hubaira was put to death " at Wāsit, on Monday, the 16th of Zū 'l-Kaada, 132 [26th June, A. D. 750]." —In at-Tabari's historical work, the death of al-Hasan, the son of Kahtaba, is placed under the year 181 (A. D. 797-8).

(1) This genealogy is given by M. Causin de Peroval in his Essai sur l'histoire des Arabes. According to the tables, Fazārā drew his descent from Maad Ibn Adnān, by Ghatafān.

(2) There were two generals bearing the names of ad-Dahhak Ibn Kais. One of them was a Kuraishite, of the family of Fihr; he governed the district of Damascus in the name of Moawia Ibn Abi Sofān, joined the party of Abd Allah Ibn az-Zubair, then had himself acknowledged as khalīf by his own troops, the Kaisides. He was slain at Marj Rāhit, A. H. 84 (A. D. 683-4) in fighting against the khalīf Marwān the first (see vol. I, p. 100). The other belonged to the tribe of Shaibān. He put himself at the head of the Harārites, a branch of the Khārijite party in Mesopotamia, took the city of Kūfa from Abd Allah, the son of Omar Ibn Abd al-Aziz, and then marched against Marwān the second. He was slain in battle at Kafratūtha in the month of Safar, 128 (November, A. D. 745). —Notwithstanding Reiske's recommendation, one of these chiefs has been sometimes confounded with the other, a fault of which there is an example in this work, vol. II, p. 169; the note (15) should be struck out.

(3) Al-Hīmadr means the ass. Marwān received this nickname for the tenacity of his character.

(4) The Najjārites formed a branch of that religious and political party, the Khārijites, who may be considered as the Puritans of Islamism.

(5) The Arabic signifies literally: pepedit in barba sua. This noise, made with the lips, was probably meant to express contempt.

(6) Literally: and the cushion was doubled for him. See page 199, note (11) of this volume.

(7) This passage is omitted in Freytag's Hamasa. It must have existed in the larger Hamāsa, but not a copy remains of that work.

(8) Abd Ishāk Ibrahim Ibn Ali Ibn Harmā, a member of the tribe of Kuraish, inhabited Medīna and bore a high reputation as a poet. He was born A. H. 90 (A. D. 708-9); in A. H. 140 (A. D. 757) he recited to the khalīf al-Mansūr a kadda of his composition. He was notorious for his fondness of wine and his avarice. His death took place in the year 186 A. D. 809. —(Kitāb al-Aghāni; Nujām.)
YAZID IBN HATIM AL-MUHALLABI

Abû Khâlid Yazid was the son of Hâtîm Ibn Kabista Ibn al-Muhallab Ibn Abî Suf- ra al-Azî. The rest of the genealogy has been already given in our article on his (great-) grandfather al-Muhallab (vol. III. p. 508). We have spoken of his brother Rûh Ibn Hâtîm (vol. I. p. 529), of his father’s uncle, Yazid Ibn al-Muhallab (p. 164 of this vol.) and of his descendant, the vizir Abû Muhammad al-Hasan Ibn Muham- mad al-Muhallabi (vol. I. p. 410). They belonged to an eminent family which pro- duced a great number of illustrious and distinguished men. Ibn Jarîr at-Tabari vol. II. p. 597) says, in his Annals, that the khalif Abû Ja’far al-Mansûr took the government of Egypt from Humaid Ibn Kahtaba and gave it to Naûf al Ibn al-Furât, whom he replaced, A. H. 143 (A. D. 760-1) by Yazid Ibn Hâtîm. In the year 152 (A. D. 769), al-Mansûr appointed Muhammad Ibn Saîd as the successor of Yazid. Abû Saîd Ibn Yûnus (vol. II. p. 93) says, in his Annals, that Yazid Ibn Hâtîm ob- tained the government of Egypt in the year 144, and another author adds: “in the middle of the month of Zû ‘l-Ka’ada.” “Then,” says he (at-Tabari), “in the year 154 (A. D. 771), al-Mansûr went to Syria and visited Bait al-Makdis (the house of the holy place, Jerusalem) and, from that place, he dispatched Yazid Ibn Hâtîm to Ifrikiya, with an army of fifty thousand men, for the purpose of carrying on the war against the Kharijîtes, who had killed Omar Ibn Hafs, his governor in that country (1). Yazid held the government of Ifrikiya from that moment (till his death). He vanquished the Kharijîtes and then made his entry into Kairawân, A. H. 155 (A. D. 771-2), the year of his arrival in Ifrikiya. By his liberality and his princely disposition he drew numerous visitors to his court; all spoke loudly in his praise and a number of poets who extolled his merits received from him magnificent rewards.” Abû Osâma Rabî’a Ibn Thâbit ar-Rakki (vol. I. p. 530), a member of the tribe of Asad, or, by another account, a mauwa of the tribu of Sul- laim, went to visit Yazîd Ibn Osâid, who was then governor of Armenia and who held that place for a long time under the khalifate of Abû Ja’far al-Mansûr and of that prince’s son and successor, al-Mahdi. The genealogy of this Yazîd is as follows: Yazid Ibn Osâid Ibn Zâfir Ibn Asmâ Ibn Osâid Ibn Kunfud Ibn Jâbir Ibn Kunfud
Ibn Malik Ibn Aīf Ibn Amr il-Kais Ibn Bubtha Ibn Sulaim Ibn Mansūr Ibn Ikrīma Ibn Khasafa Ibn Kais Ghailān Ibn Modar Ibn Nizār Ibn Maadd Ibn Adnān. He held a very high rank in the tribe of Kais, of which he was one the bravest warriors and the ablest politicians. The Rabia above mentioned praised him in a poem of considerable merit but, not having received from him an adequate retribution, he composed another on Yazid Ibn Hātim, the subject of this article, and was treated by him with the utmost munificence. He, in consequence, recited a kasīda in which he extolled Yazid Ibn Hātim and depreciated Yazid Ibn Osaidd. As the latter had an imperfection in his speech, he alluded to this defect in the poem and said:

I declare by an oath which will admit of no subterfuge, by the oath of a man who swears without intending to prevaricate, that wide is the difference in generosity between the two Yazids, him of the tribe of Sulaim and the illustrious son of Hātim! Yazid of Sulaim is a savor of money, but that hero, the brother of the Azdites, is not a savor of his. Profusion is the Azdite hero's only aim, but the Kaiside's passion is to hoard up dirhems. Let not the stammerer suppose that I satirize him; I merely assign pre-eminence to men of merit. O thou who strivest to reach the height attained by him whose generosity is (not less copious than) oceans full to overflowing! Thou hast vainly endeavoured to imitate, in munificence, the son of Hātim; thou wert often remiss, but the Azdite was so never. Be satisfied with (admiring) the edifice of noble deeds raised by the son of Hātim whilst he toiled in delivering captives and faced the greatest dangers. Son of Osaidd! strive not to rivalize with the son of Hātim; if you do, you will gnash your teeth with regret. He is the ocean; if you attempt to enter it, you will perish in the shock of its waters. I foolishly hoped to find honour in the tribe of Sulaim; what an idle, what a visionary thought! But the family of Muhallab is a brilliant constellation and, in war, it leads yours (like a camel) by the bridle. The family of Muhallab are as the nose on the face; all others are as the soles of the feet, and the nose is far exalted above the soles. I have declared them worthy of all glory and justly pronounced them superior to all other men. They alone possess the noblest of qualities, liberality and bravery in battle. Even in adversity, they set no value on their money; even when borne on the bier, they gave protection to every outlaw.

Dibil Ibn Ali 'l-Kluzâi, the poet of whom we have already spoken (vol. I. p. 507), related the following anecdote: "I said to the poet Marwân Ibn Abi Hafsa: 'Tell me, Abû 'a-Simt! who is the best of all your modern poets?' He replied: 'The man who, of them all, composed the simplest of verses!— Who is that?' said I. "' — He answered: 'The man who said:

"' How different in generosity are the two Yazids, he of the tribe of Sulaim and the illustrious son of Hātim.'"

I already gave some of these verses in the life of Rûh Ibn Hātim (vol. I. p. 530),
Yazid’s brother, but since met with a more complete copy of the poem and then decided on giving a separate notice of Yazid himself; for, in the case of a person so important, the slight account of him which we inserted in the life of his brother was really insufficient.—Rabîa Ibn Thâbit ar-Rakki had gone to visit Yazid some time before this, but did not obtain from him the favorable reception which he expected. He therefore composed a piece of verse in which was the following line:

I render God due thanks; but here I am returning with the boots of Hunain(2), as a gift from the son of Hâtim.

When Abû Jaafar al-Mansûr gave the government of Ifrikiya to Yazid (Ibn Hâtim) Ibn al-Muhallab and that of Egypt to Yazid (Ibn Osaid) of the tribe of Sulaim, they both set out together, and the former defrayed the expenses of the troops (which escorted them). To this, Rabîa ar-Rakki alluded in these verses:

Yazid, the bountiful! your namesake, the Yazid of our tribe, is not so lavish of his gifts as you. 
He leads a troop of horse; you, another; yet both of them are payed by you.

This proves that Sulaim was the tribe to which Rabîa belonged, for he says that Yazid (Ibn Osaid) was of his tribe. Ashab (3), he who was so notorious for his cupidity, visited Yazid (Ibn Hâtim), who was then in Egypt, and sat down with the company assembled in the saloon. Seeing him whisper to a servant-boy, he went over to him and kissed his hand. "Why do you so?" said Yazid. Ashab replied: "Because I saw you whisper to your boy and thought that you were telling him to give me something." Yazid laughed and said: "I told him no such thing, but I shall do it." He therefore made him a present and treated him with kindness. — Abû Tortûshî (vol. II. p. 665) says, in his Sirâj al-Mulâk: "Sahnûn Ibn Saïd (vol. II. p. 131) declared that Yazid Ibn Hâtim was truly a sage because he used to say: 'By Allah! I fear nothing so much as a man whom I may have wronged and who, to my knowledge, has no one to protect him except God. What I dread is, that he may say: 'May God call you to an account! may he judge between me and you!'" — Abû Saïd as-Samâni (vol. II. p. 156) says, in his Kidb al-Ansâb: "The poet al-Mushahhar at-Tamimi went to visit Yazid, who was then in Ifrikiya, and recited to him these lines:

"That I might reach you sooner, I shortened my prayers by half, during a month's jour-
"ney and another month added to that. I fear not that the hopes which I placed on you
shall be frustrated; but the sweetest gift is that which comes soonest.

"On this, Yazid gave orders to bring money for the troops which he had in his
pay and which formed an army of fifty thousand men. He then said: 'Those
who wish to please me will lay aside two dirhems out of his pay for this man who
has come to visit me.' He thus made up for him the sum of one hundred thou-
sand dirhems, to which he himself added as much more.'—I must here observe
that I found these two verses attributed to Marwân Ibn Abi Hafsa.—Abû 'l-Kâsim
Ibn Asâkir (vol. II. p. 250) says, in his History of Damascus, after giving an ac-
count of Yazid's life and mentioning the government which he held: "Yazid Ibn
Hâtim said to the persons who were sitting in his company: 'Let me hear from
you three choice verses.' Safwân Ibn Safwân, a member of the Banû Harith
family, which is a branch of the tribe of Khazraj, said to him: 'Must they be on
you?'—'Let them be on whom you please;' replied Yazid. One would have
thought that the poet had them ready in his sleeve, for he recited immediately
these lines:

"I never knew what beneficence was except by hearsay, till I met with Yazid, the asylum
of mankind (an-Nâsî). I then met the most beneficent of those who walk upon feet; he was
arrayed in an ample robe of liberality and bravery (wa 'l-Bdsî). If glory could be procured
by beneficence (4), you would be its (sole) possessor and be more worthy of it than...

"There I stop, (said the poet) — 'Finish the verse', said (Yazid) by the words the
Abbasides (sali Abbâdsî). The poet answered: 'That would not be proper.'—
"He (Yazid) then said: 'Let no one ever hear you recite this piece.'"—Yamût
Ibn Muzarra (5) related as follows: "I went, one day, to salute al-Asmâî (6) and hear
him recite pieces composed by the good eulogistic poets of Muslim times, and I
said to him: 'Tell me, Abû Othmân! Ibn al-Mawla, was he a good eulogistic
poet?' To this he replied: 'He was; and I have been kept awake all last night
by that fine passage in which he praises Yahya Ibn Hâtim and says:

"If honour could be bought or sold, others might sell it but Yazid would be the purcha-
ser. When the lightning prepares to flash from the cloud of his (beneficence), the hands
of those who invoke such showers are held forth before the flash appears. When you
(Yahya) do a noble act, you accomplish it with hands whose generous gifts are always
un alloyed. When people count those who are the bravest among the horsemen, every
finger points you out as one of the number.'"
BIографICAL DICTIONARY.

Ibn al-Mawla went to see Yazid, when the latter was governor of Egypt, and recited to him the following verses:

Thou who, of all the Arabs, standest alone, without an equal! did another like thee exist, there would not be a poor man in the world.

Yazid, upon hearing these verses, called for his treasurers and asked them how much money he had remaining in his chests. They replied: "There are gold and silver pieces to the amount of twenty thousand dirhems (£ 500);" he told them to give the whole sum to the poet, whom he then addressed in these terms: "Brother! I ask pardon of God and next of you; did I possess more, I should not with hold it from you." Ibn al-Mawla was the surname of the poet Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Muslim. Al-Asmāʾ (vol. II. p. 123) related also (7) that, when Yazid was in Ifrikiya, a courier came with the news that a son was born to him in Basra. On hearing this, he said: "I give him the name of al-Mughira." (The poet) al-Mushahhar al-Tamimi, who was present, exclaimed: "God grant that this child be a blessing to you and that his sons be as great a blessing to him as his father has been to his grandfather." — Yazid held the government of Ifrikiya till his death. He died at Kairawān, on Tuesday, the 18th of Ramadān, 170 (13th March, A. D. 787), and was buried near the city gate called Bāb Salm. His son, Dāwūd, was appointed by him as governor of Ifrikiya, but was removed from office, in the year 172 (A. D. 788-9), by Hārūn ar-Rashīd. His successor was Rūḥ (Rauh) Ibn Hātim.

(2) See vol. III., p. 578.
(3) Ashab Ibn Jubair, a native of Medina, was always expecting to receive presents, even from persons whom he did not know. Numerous anecdotes are related of his infatuation. See Abū ʿI-Fadd’s Annales, t. II., p. 639, and Freytag’s Meidami, t. II., p. 50. He died A. H. 154 (A. D. 771).
(4) The text says: If beneficence could be obtained by glory. All the manuscripts agree in the reading, but it is not satisfactory.
(5) The life of Yamūt will be found in this volume.
(6) This is certainly a mistake; al-Asmāʾ died eighty-eight years before Yamūt, and we find, lower down, that the latter gives him the surname of Abū Othman, not of Abū Sa’d. Our author probably meant to name Abū Othman al-Jāhīs (vol. II., p. 498), who was Yamūt’s uncle.
(7) The insertion of the word also (الم) is probably a mistake of the author’s. See the preceding note.

VOL. IV.
YAZID IBN MAZYAD AS-SHAIBANI

Yazid, surnamed Abû Khalid and Abû Zubair, was the son of Maziyad Ibn Zâida as-Shaibani and the nephew of Maan Ibn Zâida, him whose life we have already given (vol. III. p. 398). The remainder of the genealogy is there set forth in full, so, we need not repeat it here. This Yazid was a famous chieftain, renowned for bravery. He was governor of Armenia, but, in the year 172 (A.D. 798-9), he was deposed by Hârûn ar-Rashid. Eleven years later, that khalif appointed him to the united governments of Armenia and Adarbajân. We have already related something of his history in our account of al-Walid Ibn Tarif (vol. III. p. 668); it was Yazid who conducted the war against that Khârijite and slew him. Al-Walid took up arms against Hârûn ar-Rashid in the year 178 (A.D. 794-5). He revolted in al-Jazîra (Mesopotamia), the province situated between the Euphrates and the shatt (or river) of Mosul (the Tigris). His partisans, the Shurât, became so numerous that they overran all that country and killed the governor of Diâr Rabia, who had marched against them. They then invaded Diâr Modar and besieged Abd al-Malik Ibn Sâlih Ibn Ali the Abbaside (vol. I. p. 316) in ar-Rakka. Ar-Rashid asked the advice of Yahya Ibn Khalid the Barmekide, as to whom he should send to carry on the war against the insurgents. Yahya replied: "Send Mûsa Ibn Hâzim of the tribe of Tamim, for Pharaoh's real name was al-Walid and he was drowned by Mûsa (Moses)." Ar-Rashid placed this chief at the head of a numerous army and sent him off. Al-Walid and his partisans advanced against him, put his troops to flight and slew him. When this news reached ar-Rashid, he dispatched against him Mâmar Ibn Isa al-Abdi. A number of encounters took place between the two armies, in the territory of Dârâ (a city) in Diâr Rabia; hostilities continued for a considerable time, and the bands of al-Walid increased to such a degree that he became extremely powerful. Ar-Rashid then said: "No person is capable of conducting this war except that bedwin Arab, Yazid Ibn Maziyad as-Shaibâni. The poet Bakr Ibn an-

"Send not against (the tribe of) Rabla any other than a Rabianite; iron cannot be cut except by iron."
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

Ar-Rashid placed Yazid at the head of a numerous army and ordered him to go and give battle to the rebel. Yazid went in pursuit of al-Walid who, being full of craft and cunning, endeavoured to circumvent him. A number of conflicts ensued; ar-Rashid, being informed that Yazid was dilatory in his movements, sent him one troop of cavalry after another, and then dispatched an officer to reprimand him. Yazid went therefore in pursuit of the enemy and, having stopped in order to say the morning prayer, he was surprised, before finishing, to see al-Walid come up with his troops. The cavalry, on both sides, fell into rank, the soldiers marched forward and the battle was engaged. At that moment, Yazid called out and said: "Al-Walid! why do you take shelter behind your men? come out and fight with me."—"That I will!" replied al-Walid. On this the armies halted, and not a man stirred from his place; the two champions tilted against each other, and the conflict lasted for some hours, without any advantage to either. At last, Yazid found an opportunity, and gave his adversary such a stroke on the leg that he felled him to the ground. He (Yazid) then cried out to his cavalry, which dashed forward, and they cut off his (al-Walid's) head.—Abu Yakub Ishak Ibn Ibrahim, surnamed Ibn al-Kirab (2) al-Harawi, says, in the historical work of which he is the author, that al-Walid Ibn Tarif was killed by Yazid Ibn Mazyad at al-Haditha, a place situated near A'ana (عانت), in the territory of the Euphratian al-Jazira (Mesopotamia). It is called Haditha tan-Nura, lies at the distance of some parasangs from al-Anbar and must not be confounded with the Haditha of Mosul. Yazid sent his son Asad (اسد) to ar-Rashid with al-Walid's head and a letter announcing the victory. On this occasion, the celebrated poet, Muslim Ibn al-Walid al-Ansari (vol. 1. p. 25), who was wholly devoted to Yazid, pronounced these verses:

The khalif found among the descendants of Modar a sword so sharp that it separated bodies from heads. Were it not for Yazid,—and esteem has always a motive,—al-Walid would have flourished many more years than two. Noble is Yazid, and so were his fathers before him! To perpetuate their glory, they left (the recollection of) battle-days followed by battle-days.

When Yazid returned to court, ar-Rashid called him forward, assigned to him a place of honour and said: "Yazid! most of the Moslim emirs belonged to your tribe." To this, Yazid replied: "They did; but, instead of mounting into pulpits (to say the khotba, as they hoped to do), they were mounted upon trunks of palm-trees." By these words he meant the posts to which their bodies were atta-
ched when they lost their lives.—Al-Walid Ibn Tarif was slain in the year 179 (A.D. 795), as we have said in his article. Al-Fârêa, his sister, lamented his death in those admirable verses which we have there given and alluded again to it in the following piece:

Children of Wâîl! the sword of Yazid has cast you into affliction by striking al-Walid. Had another sword than that of Yazid attacked him, it would not have been so fortunate. The children of Wâîl cannot be slain but by each other; iron cannot be notched except by iron.

It is related that Hârûn ar-Rashid, on sending Yazid Ibn Mazyad against al-Walid, gave him Zû 'l-Fakâr, the sword which had belonged to the Prophet. "Take it, Yazid! by it you will be victorious." He took it, departed, and then occurred what we have related of al-Walid's defeat and death. To this, Muslim Ibn al-Walid alludes, in the following verse of a kastâda composed by him in praise of Yazid:

You caused the Prophet's sword to recollect his way of acting and the bravery displayed by the first (Musulman) who ever prayed and fasted.

By these last words he meant Ali, the son of Abû Tâlib, for he was the person who dealt blows with it.—Hishâm Ibn al-Kalbi (vol. III. p. 608) mentions, in his Jamhara tan-Nisâb, something which refers to Zû 'l-Fakâr and, as it is a piece of useful information, I insert it here. In treating of the genealogy of the Kuraish family, he says: "Munabbih and Nabih, the sons of al-Hajjâj Ibn Aâmîr Ibn Hudhaifa Ibn Saad Ibn Sahm the Kuraishide, were the chiefs of the Sahm family previously to the introduction of Islamism. They were slain at the battle of Badr and died in their infidelity. As chiefs, they were greatly respected. Al-Aâsî, the son of Nabîbîh, was killed with his father. To him belonged Zû 'l-Fakâr. Ali slew him on the day of Badr and took that sword from him." Another author says that Zû 'l-Fakâr was given to Ali by the Prophet. I must observe that fakâr, with an a after the f, is the plural of fakra, which means a vertebra of the back. The plural forms are fakâr and fakârat. The name of this sword is also pronounced Zû 'l-Fikâr; the word fikâr is the plural of fikra (vertebra). We find in the language no other word of a similar form in the singular having such a plural form except ibra (needle), the plural of which is ibâr. —Let us return to our account of Zû 'l-Fakâr. The manner in which it came into the hands of Hârûn ar-Rashid is thus related by at-Tabari (vol. II. p. 597), in a traditional account which he traces up to Omar, the son of
(the khalif) al-Mutawakkil. The mother of that prince had been in the service of Fátima, the daughter of al-Husain, the son of Ali, the son of Abû Tâlib. She said: ‘Zû ’l Fakâr was borne by Muhammâd Ibn Abd Allah Ibn al-Hasan Ibn al-Hasan Ibn ‘Ali Ibn Abi Tâlib on the day in which battle was given to the army of Abû Jaafar al-‘Mansûr the Abbaside.’—The history of this event is well known (3). — ‘When he felt death to be near, he gave Zû ’l-Fakâr to a merchant who had followed him and to whom he owed four hundred dinars (£ 200). ‘Take this sword,’ said he, ‘any member of the Abû Tâlib family whom you may meet with will buy it from you and give you the sum to which you are entitled.’ The sword remained with the merchant till (the Abbaside prince) Jaafar the son of Sulaimân Ibn Ali Ibn ‘Abd Allah Ibn al-Abbâs Ibn Abd al-Muttalib obtained the governments of Ye- men and Medina. He, being informed of what had happened, sent for the merchant, took the sword and gave him four hundred dinars. It remained with Jaafar till al-Mahdi, the son of al-Mansûr, was raised to the khalifate. This sovereign, having learned where the sword was, got possession of it. From him it passed to Mûsa al-Hâdi and, from Mûsa, to his brother Harûn ar-Rashîd.’—Al-Asmâî (vol. II. p. 123) related as follows: ‘I saw ar-Rashîd at Tûs with a sword suspended from his neck, and he said to me: ‘Asmâî! would you like see Zû ’l-Fakâr!’—I replied: ‘Most willingly; may God accept my life as a ransom for yours!’ He then bade me draw the sword which he was wearing. I did so and found on it eighteen fakâras (4).’—We have digressed from our subject, and must now return to the history of Yazîd Ibn Mazyad. The khattâb Abû Bakr Ahmad Ibn Ali Ibn Thâbit al-Baghîdâdi (vol. I. p. 75) relates, in his History of Baghdad, that Yazîd, having gone to visit ar-Rashîd, was addressed by him in these terms: ‘Tell me, Yazîd! who was the person that composed on you these lines:

‘No perfumes are on his hands or on his hair, neither does he wipe antimony powder from his eyes. He has taught the birds (of prey) a custom in which they have full confidence; so they follow him in all his expeditions.’

Yazîd replied that he did not know, and ar-Rashîd exclaimed: ‘How can it be that verses such as these should be composed in your honour without your knowing the author?’ Yazîd felt quite abashed and, having returned to his dwelling, he said to the chamberlain: ‘Is there any poet at the door?’ The other answered: ‘Muslim Ibn al-Walîd al-Ansâri is there.’—‘How long have you
kept him waiting?" said Yazid. — "For a long time," replied the chamberlain, "I prevented him from coming in because I knew that you were not now in easy circumstances." — "Let him in," said Yazid. The poet was introduced and recited to him the entire kasida. When he had finished, Yazid said to his intendant: "Sell such and such a farm of mine; give the poet one half the price obtained for it and put up the remainder for my own expenses." The property was sold for one hundred thousand dirhems, of which Yazid gave fifty thousand to Muslim. Ar-Rashid, being informed of the circumstance, sent for Yazid and questioned him on the subject. Having learned the particulars, he said: "I shall order you a sum of two hundred thousand dirhems; with one hundred thousand you may repurchase your farm; add fifty thousand to those which you gave to your poet and keep fifty thousand for yourself." — Abū Bakr Ibn al-Anbārī (vol. III. p. 53) said: "My father declared that Muslim Ibn al-Walīd stole the idea from an-Nābigha ad-Dub-"yānī (5) who said (in one of his poems):

"When those chiefs go on an expedition with their troops, flocks of birds, led on by other flocks, hover in circles over them. They accompany them till the inroad be effected; for they are well trained and accustomed to blood. They are ready to swoop down, being certain that the tribe of those chiefs will be victorious, when two hostile troops meet in battle. They have learned from those chiefs a custom and know well to practise it when the lance is couched (and projects) over the horse's shoulder (kaudāthib)."

Kaudāthib is the plural of kāthiba and signifies that part of the horse's back which is before the pommel of the saddle. — Muslim's poem began thus:

I roamed, free as a libertine, and courted the fair (6), whilst my censors thought to upbraid me but abstained.

The eulogistic part of it contains this passage:

The khalif possessed, in one of the sons of Matar, a sword of which the blade corrected those who swerved (from their duty). How many were the (princes) who, but for the Yazid of the tribe of Shābān, had never domineered from the exalted pinnacles of an empire. When war shews its curved teeth, the imām (khalīf) shews his by (setting forward) Yazid, a chief who smiles in the heat of battle (7), when the faces of the bravest warriors change colour. He obtains by mildness what defies the efforts of all other men; like death, he attains quickly to his aim, though he proceeds with slowness. People would not travel (to obtain gifts), were there not in his tent (an object which), like the temple (of Mekka), forms the meeting-point of every road. He clothes his swords in the souls (the blood) of those who break their engagements,
and, with their heads, he makes crowns for his pliant spears. In the morning, he marches forth, bearing death on the points of his lances which, when couched, announce to the foe that his last hour is come. When a band (of rebels) is too proud to advance and do homage to the (khalif), he holds their death (ready prepared and) hidden behind his swords and spears. Even in peace, you will always find him armed in a double coat of mail; for he trusts not Fortune and is ready to act at the first call.

Abū 'l-Faraj al-Ispahānī (vol. II. p. 249) relates as follows in the article on Muslim Ibn al-Walid which he gives in his Kitāb al-Aghānī: "Ar-Rashīd, " said Yazid Ibn Mazyad, "sent for me one day, at an hour in which it was not usual (for him) to require the presence of (chiefs) such as me. So, I went to him with all my armour on and ready to execute whatever he might order. When he saw me, he laughed and asked me who was the person that composed the following verses in my praise:

"Even in peace, you will always find him armed in a double coat of mail; for he trusts not Fortune and is ready to act at the first call. God established on earth (the family of) Hāshim as a mountain (of glory); and the supports of that mountain are you and your son.

"I replied that I did not know; on which he exclaimed: 'It is a shame for you, the chief of a great people, not to know the person from whom you received such an eulogy. It has come to the knowledge of the Commander of the faithful; he has heard it recited and recompensed the author. That man is Muslim Ibn al-Walid.' On my return home, I sent for the poet, made him a present and treated him kindly." — The two verses here mentioned are taken from the kaṣida of which we have just given a fragment. It is related that Maan, the son of Zāida, preferred his nephew Yazīd to his own children, and was reproached by his wife for doing so. "How long," said she, "will you continue to put forward your nephew Yazīd and keep back your sons? if you advanced them, they would get on well; if you raised them to some authority, they would continue to rise in rank." He replied: "Yazīd is nearly related to me and has a right to my treating him as a son, for he is my nephew. Nevertheless, my own children are dearer to my heart and nearer to my affection, but I do not find in them that talent of being useful which is possessed by Yazīd. If the services which he did for me were rendered to a stranger, he would gain his affection and, if rendered to an enemy, he would convert him into a friend. This very night, I shall let you see something which will induce you to excuse me: Page 1 go and
"send here Jassās, Zāïda, Abd Allah," — he here named all his sons. In a short time, they came, dressed in perfumed waistcoats and Sindian shoes, though more than one third of the night had gone by (8). They saluted and sat down. He then said: "Page! go and call Yazid." Very soon after, Yazid arrived, sheathed in armour and, leaving his lance at the door, he entered into the saloon. "Abū Zu-bair!" said Maan, "why are you thus apparelled?" The other answered: "Emir! a messenger came to me from you, and my first impression was that you required my presence for some important affair; I therefore put on my armour and said to myself: 'If my conjecture be right, I shall not be obliged to return back, and, if I be mistaken, it will be very easy for me to strip off this apparel.'" Maan then said: "You may all retire and God protect you!" — When they had withdrawn, his wife declared that he well deserved to be excused. On this, he recited the following lines, applying them (to his nephew):

Isām's noble mind raised Isām to power, taught him to advance and change the foe, and made of him a princely hero (9).

It was to this circumstance that Muslim Ibn al-Walid alluded when he said: "Even in peace, you will always find him arrayed in a double coat of mail." It is related that, when Muslim came to this verse in reciting his poem, Yazid, in whose honour it had been composed, said to him: "Why did you not express yourself in the same manner as the Asha of (the tribe of) Bakr Ibn Wāil did (10) when he celebrated the noble deeds of Kais, the son of Madi Karib? He said:

"When a troop of horse approaches, so dark and serried that warriors clothed in mail shun its encounter, you dash forward, without even taking a shield, and, proclaiming your name, you strike down the bravest with your sword."

Muslim replied: "What I said is better; for that poet extolled his patron's imprudence (khurk)," — this word signifies ignorance of the right manner of acting. — "and I extolled your resolution." — The Kais whom al-Asha eulogized was the father of al-Ashath Ibn Kais al-Kindi, one of the Prophet's Companions. — We have already mentioned the verse:

He has taught the birds a custom in which they have full confidence etc.

And stated that the idea was borrowed from an-Nābigaha; the same was done
by a number of other poets, Abû Nuwâs, for instance. Omar al-Warrâk related as follows: "I heard Abû Nuwâs recite his kasîda which rhymes in r and begins thus:

"O thou who art visited by a demon! thou shalt not be of my evening parties nor with those who converse therein. I drive not birds away from a tree of which I found, by experience, that the fruits were bitter.

"These verses excited my jealousy (but I suppressed my feelings) till he came to the following passage:

"When the lances were dripping with gore and death appeared in her proper form, then at evening, came home, proudly stalking (yuthanni fi) his coat of mail, a lion, the points of whose claws were stained with blood. The birds of prey journey forth on the morning of his departure, being certain of being gorged with the flesh of his victims.

"I then said: 'You have left to an-Nâbigha nothing out of that verse of his:

"When those chiefs go on an expedition with the troops, etc.'

"To this he answered: 'Hold your tongue! if I am not good at invention, I am not bad at imitation.'" — The same idea was taken up by Abû Tammâm Habib ibn Aûs at-Ta'i (vol. I. p. 348), who said:

In the morning, the eagles of his standards were overshadowed by eagle-birds, accustomed to quench their thirst in blood; they kept close to the standards and seemed like a part of the army, only they did not fight.

Abû 't-Ta'iîb al-Mutanabbi also said (something similar) in the following verse:

The birds (of prey), encouraged by their frequent feeding on the slain, were ready to swoop down upon the living.

In the description of a troop given by the last-named author, we find an idea which comes near to the preceding; he says:

(On came,) with a stunning noise (a troop of hunters), before which the possessors of wings fled but could not escape, and from which the wild beasts, starting from their coverta, were not safe. The sun passed over that (troop), but with a feeble light, and he could scarcely be seen, for the wings of the vultures. When his rays found an opening through the (crowded flock of) birds, his round disk appeared like a dirhem over the helmets.
When Yazid held the government of Yemen, he received the visit of Marwân Ibn Muhammad, a well-known poet who was a mawla to Marwân Ibn Muhammad al-Jaadi, the last of the Omaiyide khalifs. This poet’s surname was Abû Muhammad, but he was usually known by the appellation of Abû ’s-Shamakmak (the son of the man tall and active). He arrived on foot, in ragged attire, and recited to Yazid an eulogium, in which he described his own state of misery, saying:

Those who are in search of beneficence saddle their camels to visit you, but the camel which bore me to you were my sandals (14). I took them for my steed, having no other, in order to get through my journey. That steed outruns even the most active and, in its rapid course across the desert wilderness, it leaves behind the mehari camels, thin-flanked and full-chested. It goes to visit him who has the noblest reputation of all the family of Wâlî, (him who is) a dome erected to the glory of that tribe. It is Yazid whom I mean, the sword of the family of Muhammad, Yazid who dispels every misfortune which a man can dread. He has two days (for acting); one luxuriant with gifts and favours, the other, copious with bloodshed and the taking of lives. I have come to him with confidence, being assured that he will hear an eulogium and not defer its recompense.

To this he replied: ‘‘You say the truth; I never, on receiving an eulogium, defer its recompense; give this man one thousand dinars (£500).’’ — A long and excellent poem, rhyming in b, was composed in his praise by Abû ’l-Fadl Mansûr Ibn Salama an-Namari (12), a well-known poet. It contains this passage:

Had the tribe of Shaibân no other title to honour than Yazid, it would yet surpass all the others. Men know full well that liberality repels contumely, but he (not content with being munificent), dilapidates his wealth.

Abû ’l-Abbâs al-Mubarrad (vol. III. p. 31) relates, in his Kâmîl, that Yazid Ibn Mazayd, meeting, one day, with a man who had a great flowing beard which covered his breast and was dyed (with hinna), said to him: ‘‘That beard of yours must put you to some expense.’’ The man replied: ‘‘It certainly does and, for that reason, I say:

‘‘Every night, it costs me a dirhem for pomatum and another for hinna; thus one piece (of money) outruns the other. Were it not for the gifts of Yazid Ibn Mazayd, the scissors (jâlamôni) would have to twang around its borders.’’

Harûn ar-Rashid said to him one day: ‘‘I count upon you, Yazid! for an important business,’’ and received this reply: ‘‘Commander of the faithful! God has prepared for you, in me, a heart sincerely devoted to your service, a hand ready
BIографICAL DICTIONARY.

"to obey you and a sword whetted to slay your foes. If you have any order to give, speak." Al-Masudi states, in his Muruj ad-Dahab wa Maddin al-Jauhar (meadows of gold and mines of jewels), that this conversation passed between Harun ar-Rashid and Maan Ibn Zaid, the uncle of Yazid; then, farther on, he adds that, according to some, it took place between ar-Rashid and Yazid Ibn Mazyad. I must observe that it could not possibly have passed between ar-Rashid and Maan, because the latter lost his life when Abu Jaafar al-Mansur was khalif, as we have already mentioned in his (Maan's) biographical notice, and, though there be some difference of opinion respecting the precise date, it is certain that the event occurred not long after the year 150 (A.D. 767). How then could he have held this conversation with ar-Rashid who did not obtain the khalifate till the year 170 (A.D. 786-7)? Ibn Aun relates the following anecdote in his work entitled al-Ajwiba al-Muskiya (silencing answers) (13):

"Ar-Rashid was one day playing at mall and told Yazid to take the side of Isa Ibn Jaafar (14). On Yazid's refusing, he got angry and said: 'Are you too proud to be his partner?' Yazid replied: 'I swore to the Commander of the faithful that I would never be against him, either in sport or in earnest.' I read in a compilation of anecdotes that some person related as follows: 'I was one night with Yazid Ibn Mazyad and we heard a voice exclaim: 'O! Yazid Ibn Mazyad!' He ordered the man who uttered that cry to be brought into his presence and then said to him: 'What induced you to call out that name?' The other replied: 'I used up my mule and spent my stock of money; then hearing a poet recite a verse, I drew a good omen from it.' Yazid bade him repeat the verse, and he recited as follows:

"If honour, generosity and beneficence require a supporter, call with a loud voice upon Yazid Ibn Mazyad.

"When Yazid heard these words, he treated the man with affability and asked him if he knew that Yazid. The other replied: 'By Allah! I do not.'--'Well,' said Yazid, 'I am he.' He then gave him one hundred dinars and a pied horse which was a great favorite of his."--We have been rather prolix in this article but discourse will branch into digressions, each of them connected with the other. The anecdotes told of Yazid's noble conduct are very numerous. He died in the year 185 (A.D. 801). An elegy was composed on his death by Abu Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Ayub (15), a well-known poet of the tribe of Taim; some
persons attribute it to the well-known poet Muslim Ibn al-Walid al-Ansari, but they are mistaken. We give it here:

Is it true that Yazíd is no more? Tell us, you who announce so loudly tidings of death! Do you know him whose death you proclaim? how have your lips been able to utter his name? may your mouth be (for ever) filled with clay (16). Is the champion of (our) glory and of Islamism dead? Woe be to thee, o Earth! why hast thou not shuddered? See if the pillars of Islamism be not shaken and if the children’s hair has not turned grey (with affright). See if the swords of the tribe of Nizář be reposing in their scabbards and if the saddle-cloths have been taken off the horses. See if the heavy clouds continue still to water the land with their showers and if the trees are still covered with verdure. When he died, did Nizář not feel the shock? It did, and its edifice of glory has fallen to the ground. When he was laid in the grave, the glory he had acquired and his hereditary honours were there entombed. By Allah! my eyes shall never cease pouring forth floods of tears for his loss. The vile may abstain from weeping, but the eyes of worthy men shall never remain dry. Can the female mourners be parimious with their tears after the death of Yazíd? can they spare their cheeks (and not tear them)? Let the pavilion of Islamism lament him, for the cords of that tent are now weakened, as also its support. A poet from whom he never withheld his wealth now weeps over him, and laudatory poems have lost their value. Yazíd is dead; but every living being is near to death or is hurried towards it. Let it be a consolation for (the tribe of) Rabla that it never again can meet with (so sad) a day as this.

The idea enounced in the last verse has been employed by a number of poets. Mutí Ibn Iyás (vol. I. p. 438) said, in an elegy on the death of Yahya Ibn Ziád al-Iláriithí (vol. II. p. 403):

(Say to Death :) You may now carry off whom you please; misfortunes can no longer give us pain, now that Yahya is no more!

Abú Nuwás (vol. I. p. 391) said, in a lament composed on the death of (the khalif) al-Amin:

His death was the only thing I feared, and nothing now remains for me to dread.

Ibrahim Ibn al-Abbás as-Súli (vol. I. p. 22) said, on the death of his father:

Thou wast dear to me as the apple of my eye; for thee (alone) my eyes shed their tears. Die now who may, since thou art gone; thou wast my only care.

The article on Muslim Ibn al-Walid, which Abú 'I-Faraj al-Ispahání (vol. II.}
p. 249) has given in the Kitāb al-Aghdānī, contains the following piece of information, which is traced up by the author of that work to Ahmad Ibn Abī Said. "Yazīd Ibn Mazyad was eating his dinner when he received the present of a slave-girl. "Immediately on finishing, he had intercourse with her and died in her arms. He "was then in Bardāā and there he was buried. He had with him Muslim Ibn al-"Walīd and a number of his ordinary companions. Muslim lamented his death "in these lines:

"There is a tomb in Bardāā and, in the grave which it covers, is hidden worth unequalled. "On his death, Fortune left (the tribe of) Rabīa in such sorrow that, by Allah! it will never "be exchanged (for joy). He always led on the Arabs in the path of glory; how much then "were they astounded when death overtook him! On his death, the saddles (the travellers) "lost every hope of gaining wealth (17), and the cities recalled those who had left them "in order to visit him. Depart (in peace, O emir!) depart like the rain-cloud, which leaves "the plains and the hills extolling its beneficence."

This last verse is said to be most the most expressive of any that are to be found in an elegy. The piece itself is given in the Hamīṣa, section of elegies. نبر (Bardāā) is the name of town situated at the furthest extremity of Adarbajān; so I find it mentioned in books of history, but natives of that place say that it is in the province of Arrān. Bardāā is written with a pointed or an unpointed ḍ (ṣ or ẓ), and such also is the case when the same word is employed to designate the pad which is placed under the saddle. — Some say that this elegy was composed by Muslim Ibn al-Walīd on the death of Yazīd Ibn Ahmad as-Sulami (18). According to another statement, he composed it on the death of Malik Ibn Abī al-Khuṣāī, and the first verse ran thus: There is a tomb in Hulwa, etc.; the person whose death he lamented having died in that place. Hulwa is a city in Sawād (Babylonia), or in one of the governments into which Irāk is divided. God knows best which of these statements is true! Abū Abd Allah al-Marzubānī (vol. III. p. 67) says, in his Mojām as-Shuward (alphabetical dictionary of poets), that Abū ʿl-Balhā Umair Ibn Aʿmīr, who was one of Yazīd's mawlas, composed the following lines:

How excellent the hero by whose death the vicissitudes of time brought down affliction upon his brethren, on the day he was interred (19). The access to his court was easy when you alighted at his door; his hands were prodigal and his servants polite. When you see his friends and his brothers, you cannot tell which of them are his blood-relations (they are all so deeply afflicted).
Abū Tammâm at-Tai has given this piece in his *Hamds*, section of elegies (20), and attributes it to Muhammad Ibn Bashîr al-Khârijî (21). According to some, we must read *Yasr* (بشیر) in place of *Bashîr* (بشير). *Yasr* is an adjective derived from *yosr* (opulence); *Bashîr* comes from *bishâra* (good news). He bore the surname of al-Khârijî, not because he was a Khârijite, but because he belonged to the tribe of Khârij, a branch of that of Adwân. God knows best! — Here is another elegy on the death of Yazîd; it was composed by Mansûr an-Namârî and is given in the *Hamds* (page 440):

Abû Khâlid! what an awful stroke fell upon (the descendants of) Maăd, on the day in which you were consigned to your last home! By my life! if the enemies (of the empire) now look cheerful and and display an insulting joy, they must have passed by the court of your dwelling and found it empty. Time hastened to terminate your existence, but your renown will exhaust (the efforts of) time.

Yazîd Ibn Mazyad had two sons, both of them illustrious by their noble character and exalted rank. One of them was the Khâlid Ibn Yazîd whose praises were celebrated by Abû Tammâm at-Tai. This poet composed in his honour some beautiful pieces which we should insert here, were they not to be found in his collected poetical works. The other son was Muhammad Ibn Yazîd, who was noted for his liberality: he never sent away an applicant (empty-handed); if he had not money to give, he would never say "No," but "Later," and would then hasten to fulfil his promise. Ahmad Ibn Abî Fanân Sâlih Ibn Sa'id composed verses in his praise. I since found the following lines in the *Kitb al-Bâri*, where they are attributed to Abû's-Shîth (الشیث) al-Khuzâî (23):

Noble actions were his passion and the occupation of his time; but few are those who love to do noble deeds. He opened a market for (the purchase of) eulogy, but markets for eulogy are not considered as markets. He scattered good offices throughout the land, and thus drew, from all quarters, a rich harvest of praise.

Khâlid Ibn Yazîd was appointed governor of Mosul by (the khalif) al-Mâmûn. He arrived there in company with Abû 's-Shamâmk, the poet already mentioned in this article. When he entered Mosul, the staff of his standard, which had been planted on the top of the city gate, was broken in two. He was about to draw a bad omen from this accident, when Abu 's-Shamâmk extemporized to him these lines:
The breaking of the standard denotes neither danger to be feared nor evil to come suddenly. Being deprived of its force at the aspect of this petty government, it declared that Mosul was much too small.

The khalif, being informed of what had passed, wrote these words to Khālid:

"We have added to your government that of all Diār Rabla, because your standard found Mosul too small." Yazid was delighted with the news and bestowed an ample reward on the poet. In the reign of al-Wāthik, the affairs of Armenia fell into great disorder, and Khālid Ibn Yazid was dispatched to that province with a numerous army. Being taken ill on the way, he died at Daibil, a town in Armenia. This was in the year 230 (A.D. 844-5).

(1) Abū Wāli Bakr Ibn an-Natāh, a member of the Yemenite tribe of Hanifa, led for some time the life of a vagabond and then entered into the service of Abū Dulaf (vol. II, p. 502), one of al-Māmūn's generals, who admitted him into the jund, or armed militia and assigned to him a regular pay out of the coffers of the state (riskan sultānān). Ibn an-Natāh was an excellent horseman, eminent for courage and intrepidity, and possessing a good talent for poetry. In his verses, he frequently vaunted his own prowess. He always remained attached to Abū Dulaf. — (Kīdāb al-Ayhdānī)

(2) In the manuscripts this name is written in various manners; one reads "al-Kīdāb or al-Kardāb", another "al-Fardāt", a third "al-Ghardī", etc. Hajji Khalīfā does not mention this author in his Bibliographical Dictionary.

(3) This is the celebrated Alīde surnamed an-Nafs az-Zukiya, who revolted against the khalif al-Mansūr in the year 145 (A.D. 763-5).

(4) The word ḥaddra must here designate either a sort of waving ornament engraved on the blade or else a notch on its edge. It is doubtful which is meant, probably the latter.

(5) De Sacy has given an account of the antemuslim poet, an-Nabīgha ad-Dubayhī, in the second volume of his Chrestomathie arabe.

(6) The true reading of this hemistich appears to be: "Aqrāt ḥabīb al-sīva qazil".

(7) Literally: when war shews its teeth.

(8) They had been at a party of pleasure.

(9) Isām, was vizir to an-Nomān, the king of Hira. See de Sacy's Chrestomathie arabe, t. II, p. 393.

(10) For the history of this poet, who was a contemporary of Muhammad, see de Sacy's Chrestomathie arabe, t. II, p. 471.

(11) Literally: and I travelled towards you on a sandaled camel.

(12) Abū 'l-Fadl Mansūr, qualified d'en-Nemr parce qu'il était issu de Nemr Ibn Kācit, poète du temps des Abbassides. Sa patrie était la Mésopotamie. El-Fadl, fils de Yahya, ne fit venir à Bagdad, à Haroun-er-Rasbid dont Mansūr acquit bientôt les bonnes grâces. Mansūr avait compris le goût de Haroun en fait de poésie par la faveur que ce prince accordait à Merwān, fils d'Abū Haifa. Il avait senti que le calife désirait qu'on joignit à son éloge quelques traits contre la famille d'Ali, comme le faisait Merwān, de manière à montrer qu'on ne reconnaissait à cette famille aucun droit à l'imâmät. Mansūr imita Merwān en suivant cette voie; mais il ne lançait aux
Ibn Khallikan's

232

Aliés que des traits indirects et ménagés, parce qu'il était au fond leur partisan, tandis que Merwân attaqué franchement et avec énergie les descendants d'Ali, contre lesquels il était animé de sentiments hostiles par conviction autant que par ambition.

Mansûr en-Nemri mourut à Râs-el-Atn sous le règne de Haroun. (Mr. Caussin de Perceval, gives this note on the authority of the Kitâb al-Aghâni. The author of that work says that the name of Mansûr's father was Zibrikân.)

(13) A work bearing this title is attributed to Abû Hâmid al-Ghazzâli (vol. II. p. 621) by Haji Khalifa in his Bibliographical Dictionary, but that author takes no notice of Ibn Atn.

(14) Isa Ibn Jaafar was the grandson of the Khalif al-Manṣûr.

(15) Abû Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Alyâb, a member of the tribe of Taim Allât, was one the poets who flourished under the Abbasides. He was patronized by al-Amin. Died A. H. 209 (A. D. 824-5). — (Nujôm.)

(16) The expression : earth in your mouth! is equivalent to : I wish you were dead!

(17) This verse is cited by our author so incorrectly that it scarcely admits of a reasonable explication. See it correctly given in Freytag's Hamâda, p. 428.

(18) We should perhaps read : Yazid Ibn Osâid as-Sulami (member of the tribe of Sulaim). See p. 213 of this volume.

(19) Literally : on the day of al-Bakt. Al-Bakt was the name of the principal cemetery of Medina, but the poet employs it here to designate the cemetery of Bardâa, the town where his tutor died.

(20) See Hamâda, p. 376.

(21) Mohammed, fils de Bechir, qualifié d’el-Khâredji parce qu’il descendait de Khâredja, fils d’Adwan, poète du Hijzâ. Son prénom était Abû Souleymân. Il vécut sous les Omeyyades (et peut-être aussi sous les Abbâsides, mais je l’ignore). Il fut particulièrement attaché à Abû Obeïda, fils d’Abû Allah, fils de Rabia, Coraychite de la famille d’Abû el-Orza. Les panégyriques et élégies funèbres qu’il a composés pour ce personnage sont les meilleures de ses poésies. Il habitait le plus ordinairement les déserts voisins de Médine et l’endroit nommé er-Rauha. — (Note by Mr. Caussin de Perceval.)

(22) According to the author of the Nujôm, the poet Abû 's-Sls Muhammad Ibn Rezzân died A. H. 196 (A. D. 811-2).

Ibn Mufarrigh

"Abû Othmân Yazid was the son of Ziâd, Ibn Rabia Ibn Mufarrigh Ibn Zîl-
"Ibn Masrûk Ibn Zaid Ibn Yahsub al-Hîmyari (the Himyerite). The remainder of
the genealogy, from Yahsub upwards, is well-known, so, there is no need of our "giving it." It is thus that Ibn al-Kalbi (vol. III. p. 608) traces up Yazid Ibn Mufarrigh's genealogy in the Kitāb al-Jamhara, but he does not mention his surname which, however, is given by the author of the Aghānī (vol. II. p. 249). Most of the literati say that this Yazid was the son of Rabia and the grandson of Mufarrigh; thus suppressing the name of Ziād. The author of the Aghānī says: "His grandfather Mufarrigh received this name because he made a wager that he would drink the whole contents of a skin filled with milk, and he did not lay it down till he emptied it. He was therefore called Mufarrigh (the emptier)." The same author relates, in the article of the Aghānī which contains the history of as-Sāiyid al-Himyar (vol. II. p. 241), who was Mufarrigh's grandson, that Ibn Abī Ačīcha (1) said: "Mufarrigh was the same person as Rabia; Mufarrigh being merely a surname. Those who say that Rabia was the son of Mufarrigh are mistaken."—God knows best!—Al-Fadl Ibn Abd ar-Rahmān an-Naufalī says that Mufarrigh was a blacksmith in Yemen; he made a lock for his wife on the condition that, when he had finished it, she would bring him a skin of milk. She did so and, when he had drank some of its contents, he laid it down. She told him to give her back the skin, and he replied: "I have nothing to empty it in." She insisted on having it and he emptied it into his belly. "O!" said she, "you are an emptier (musfarīr)!" and, by this nickname he became generally known. According to the members of his (Yazid's) family, he belonged to the tribe of Himyar. Ibn al-Kalbi and Abū Ubaida (vol. III. p. 388) state that Mufarrigh followed the trade of a patcher and mender at Tabāla. I must here make some observations: Tabāla is a village on the road which leads from Mekka to Yemen. It is situated in a very fertile spot and is often mentioned in historical relations, proverbs and poems. This was the first government which al-Hajjāj Ibn Yusuf ath-Thakafi (vol. I. p. 356) ever obtained. Till that time, he had never seen it. He set out for it and, on getting near it, he asked whereabout it was. They answered: "It is behind that hill." On this, he exclaimed: "A government that can be hidden by a hill is worth no-thing!" and he turned back and left it. From that time the Arabs said proverbially of any thing despicable: It is more contemptible than Tabāla was for al-Hajjāj. The narrator (of Ibn Mufarrigh's adventures) (2) says: He pretended that he drew his descent from Himyar. He was affiliated by oath to the family of Khālid Ibn Osaid Ibn Abī 'l-Iris (الميس) the Omaiyide. According to another statement, he was a
slave to ad-Dahhak Ibn Aûf al-Hilâli by whom he was treated with kindness. Ya-
zd was a poet and composed good amatory (and satirical) pieces. One of his de-
scendants was as-Saiyid al-Himyari, whose name was Ismail and whose father, Mu-
hammad, was the son of Bakkâr and the grandson of this Yazid. So it is stated by
Ibn Mâkûla (vol. II. p. 248) in his Ikâmê. His title was as-Saiyid (the chief) and his
surname Abû Hâshim. He was one of the heads of the Shitite party. The history of
his proceedings in that cause and the poems composed by him in support of it are
well known. — One of the finest passages in Yazid's poems is to be found in a
kasâda containing the praises of the Omayyade prince Marwân Ibn al-Hakam, by
whom he had been generously treated. Here it is:

You opened a market for (the purchase of) eulogy, at a time that eulogy was not considered
as a marketable ware. God seems to have granted to you the privilege of taking lives and of
distributing gifts.

The first of these verses has been given in our article on Yazid Ibn Mazyad Ibn
Zâida (page 230 of this vol.); it is there attributed to Ahmad Ibn Abî Fanân and said
to be taken from a kasâda in which that famous poet (3) extolled the merits of Khâ-
lid, the son of Yazid Ibn Mazyad. God knows best! — When Said, the son of (the
khâlif) Othmân Ibn Affân, was appointed governor of Khorâsân, he invited Yazid
Ibn Mufarrigh to accompany him thither. Yazid refused, as he preferred becoming
the retainer of Abbâd (4), the son of Ziâd Ibn Abîh (5). On this, he said to him:
"Since you refuse bearing me company and prefer following Abbâd, hearken to
the advice which I here give you: Abbâd is a man of a low mind; avoid there-
fore being too familiar with him, although he encourage you to make free; for
he then only means to delude you. Visit him seldom, for he is greatly in-
clined to find irksome (the presence of visitors). Do not bandy arguments with
him, even though he attack you, for he will not bear with such observations
coming from you as you would have to bear with if they came from him."
He then sent for some money and gave it to him, saying: "Let this help to defray
your travelling expenses. If you perceive that you are not on a good footing with
Abbâd, recollect that, with me, you shall always find a favorable reception and come
to me." Said then departed for Khorâsân, and Ibn Mufarrigh set out with Abbâd.
When Obaïd Allah, the son of Ziâd and he governor of the two Irâks, was informed
that his brother Abbâd was taking Yazid with him, he felt very uneasy and went
out with the people to see him off. Whilst they were saying farewell to the travellers, he went to take leave of his brother and, having called Ibn Mufarrigh over to him, he said: "You asked Abbâd to take you with him and he granted your request; now, that is a thing which annoys me greatly." — "God protect the emir!" said Ibn Mufarrigh, "why should that annoy you?" — Obaid Allah replied: "A poet is not to be satisfied with such attentions as ordinary men shew one to another; he is led away by his imagination, what he imagines he takes for certain and he never overlooks an affront, even when he ought to do so. Now, Abbâd is going to a country which is the seat of war, and he will be so greatly taken up with the direction of his troops and the collecting of the landtax that he will not think of you. Such neglect you will not forgive and (in your satires) you will cover us all with obloquy and shame." Yazid answered: "Emir! I am not what you think; I am profoundly grateful for the kindness which he has already shewn me, and, besides, if I forget myself (in my conduct towards him), I shall always find a ready pardon." — "That you will not," replied Obaid Allah, "so you must promise me that if he delays giving what you expect from him, you will not hasten to attack him but write to me." — "That I promise you;" said the poet. "It is well;" said Obaid Allah, "so, now depart under favorable auspices." The narrator (in the Kitâb al-Aghâni) continues thus: Abbâd arrived in Khorâsân, or as some say, in Sijistân, — and was there so deeply engaged in warfare and in the collecting of the imposts that Ibn Mufarrigh thought the attention to which he was entitled very long in coming. So, without writing a letter of complaint to Obaid Allah, as he had engaged to do, he gave free career to (the virulence of) his tongue and attacked Abbâd with sarcasms and satire. That emir had so great a beard that it resembled a fodder-bag. The poet was travelling with him, one day, and, seeing the beard shaken and tossed about by the wind, he laughed and said to a man of the tribe of Lakhm who was (riding) at his side:

O, that his beard was hay! we might then fodder all the Moslim cavalry.

Abbâd, to whom the Lakhmite perfidiously related what the poet had said, flew into a passion: "It does not become me now," said he, "to chastise him whilst he is in my company; but, though I defer his punishment, I intend later to gratify my revenge; many are the times in which he cast abuse on my father." Ibn Mufarrigh, being informed of this, said: "I perceive the odour of death
"(for me proceeding), from Abbâd!" He then went in to him and said: "Emir! I was with Said Ibn Othmân, whose good opinion of me you have learned; you know also the favorable impression which he has left on my mind. I preferred you to him, but, as yet, I have derived from you no advantage. I therefore request permission to depart; I have no need of being your retainer." Abbâd replied: "As you chose me, so also did I choose you; I took you into my service because you asked me to do so. You now hasten to prevent me from taking proceedings against you, and therefore you ask permission to depart. But you mean to return to your people and give them the most unfavorable opinion of my character. Well, you have that permission and may make use of it when I have treated you according to your deserts." Being then informed that his honour and reputation were attacked by Ibn Mufarrigh, he encouraged some of the poet's creditors to cite him before (the tribunal presided by) himself, and the result was that he put him into prison and had him severely beaten. After that, he sent to him this message: "Sell me al-Arika and Burd." Al-Arika was a female musician belonging to Ibn Mufarrigh and Burd was his slave-boy. He had brought them up from their childhood and was greatly attached to them. The poet sent back by the same messenger an answer to this effect: "Ask the emir, if a man can possibly sell himself or his child." Abbâd them took them from him (by force) or, according to another account, he sold them, against their owner's will, to a native of Khorâsân. When the two slaves entered into this man's house, Burd, who was very intelligent and had received a good education, said to him: "Do you know what you have bought?" The other answered: "I do; I have bought you and that girl." — "No, by Allah!" replied Burd, "you have bought for yourself nothing but shame, ruin and contumely, which will endure as long as you live." The man was alarmed at these words and exclaimed: "Woe betide you! how can that be?" Burd answered: "We belong to Yazid Ibn Mufarrigh, and, by Allah! nothing has reduced him to the state in which he now is but his evil tongue. You are aware that he dared to satirize Abbâd, who is the emir of Khorâsân (6), whose brother, Obaid Allah, is the emir of the two Irâks, and whose uncle is the khalif Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyân. (He attacked him) because he thought him too slow (in granting favours); will he then withhold his tongue from you that have bought me and a girl who is as dear to him as his heart within his bosom. By Allah! I know of no man into whose dwelling has entered a more fatal
"acquisition than that which has now entered into yours." The man answered:
"I take you to witness that I declare you and her to be still his property; if you
wish to go away, you may depart; I fear greatly for myself if Ibn Mufarrigh
learns what has happened; if you wish to stay with me, both of you, you may." Burd said to him: "Write those words to my master." The man wrote to Ibn Mu-
farrigh, who was still in prison, informing him of what he had done, and the
other replied by a letter in which he thanked him for his conduct and requested
him to keep the two slaves at his house till such time as God should set their master
at liberty. Abbâd then said to his chamberlain: "I do find that the fellow," —
meaning Ibn Mufarrigh, — "is much annoyed at being in prison; sell his horse,
his arms, all his effects, and distribute the price between his creditors." This or-
der was executed, but there still remained unpaid a part of the debt for which Ibn Mu-
farrigh was imprisoned. He composed the following lines on the selling of his slaves:

I sold (šaritâ) Burd, and, had his sale depended upon me, I should not have sought an ad-

daject for myself in selling him. Were it not for that bastard (Abbâd) and for the misfortunes

which have befallen me, I should never have been separated from him. O Burd I never before
did time bring on me so painful a stroke as this; never before did it oblige me to sell (one whom
I considered as) my child.

Šaritâ here means: I sold; it is one of those verbs which have two opposite signi-
fications, as it means to sell and to buy. — The piece to which these verses belong
contains many more, but I omit the remainder. — Ibn Mufarrigh, having (at length)
perceived that, if he continued, whilst in prison, to insult and satirize Abbâd, he
would only do more harm to himself, used then to answer in these terms to the per-
sons who asked him what was the cause of his imprisonment: "(I am) a man to
whom his emir is giving a lesson, for the purpose of correcting his extravagance
and allaying his violence. That, I declare, is better than if he drew the skirt of
his robe over the traces of his retainer's faults. " Abbâd, being informed
of this, took pity on him and let him out of prison. Yazîd then fled till he reached
Basra, whence he proceeded to Syria, where he continued to err as a fugitive from
one city to another, and to recite satires against Ziâd and his son (Abbâd). In one
of those pieces, which we give here, the poet alludes to his abandoning Saîd Ibn
Othman Ibn Affân for the purpose of following Abbâd Ibn Ziâd, and he mentions in
it the forced sale of Burd:
After some days passed at Râma, you (O poet!) broke the bonds which attached you to Imâma. The winds drop tears for her affliction whilst the lightning smiles from the cloud. O! how I regret committing an act which has terminated in repentance. I left the generous Sâdî and his palace which is supported by lofty columns; (I left him who is) a lion in battle and who gives up the pleasures of love for the purpose of marching against the foe. Samarkand was conquered by his prowess and, in its precincts, he erected his pavilions, whilst I followed a slave belonging to the family of Ilâj (7). Such things are signs foreboding the end of the world. With him (with the poet) went an Abyssinian maid so small of ears (sakkâ) that she might be taken for an ostrich; one of those dark-complexioned females whose faces bear the mark of an inferior race. I sold Burd! O that, after (losing) Burd, I had become an owl (8) or its female, which invokes the echoes between al-Mushakkâr and al-Yamâmâ. But a man must encounter what he most fears, if he wish to escape from ignominy and oppression. Slaves only should be beaten with the stick; a reprimand had sufficed to correct a freeman.

The family of Ilâj belonged to the tribe of Tâîf. We shall speak of it again, in this article, when we give an account of al-Hârîth Ibn Kalada. Abû Bakr Ibn Duraid (vol. III. p. 37), makes a similar statement in his Kitâb al-Ishtîkâk (9), and cites the following lines to prove the fact:

Come to your senses, family of Abû Bakr! is the sun to be compared with a candle? It is better to be a mawla to the Prophet than to claim relationship with the family of Ilâj.

We shall speak of Abû Bakr Naﬁâ Ibn Hârîth in this article and mention the circumstance which gave rise to these verses. (Ibn Mufarrigh) says, in the last (10), verse of his piece that this Abyssinian maid resembled an ostrich in the smallness of her ears. They (the Arabs of the desert) say of a small ear, that it is sakkâ; this word designates also such female animals as have no (apparent) ears. The same Arabs say: "Every sakkâ lays eggs, and every sharkâ brings forth its young alive." By the word sharkâ is meant animals having long ears. These Arabs consider it as a general law that every animal having visible ears is viviparous and that every animal without visible ears is oviparous. — The narrator continues in these terms: Ibn Mufarrigh then persisted in satirizing (Abbâd) Ibn Zîâd, so that his poems were publicly sung by the people of Basra. Obaid Allah (Ibn Zîdd) caused an active search to be made for the poet, who narrowly escaped being taken and succeeded in reaching Syria. — Narrators do not agree as to the person who delivered the fugitive to (Obaid Allah) Ibn Zîâd; one says it was Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyân; another contradicts him and declares that it was Yazîd, the son of Moawia. It must have been the latter, for he was already reigning when Abbâd was appointed to the government of Sijistân.
— The author of the Aghâni relates, farther on, that Sa'id, the son of Othmân Ibn Affân, went to visit (the khâlit) Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyân and said to him: "Why have you nominated (your son) Yazid as your successor, to my exclusion? By Allah! my father was a better man than his; my mother was better than his, and I am better than he. We raised you to power and have not deposed you; through us you obtained what you have." To this Moawia replied: "You are right in saying that your father was a better man than his; I freely acknowledge that Othmân was better than I am; you say that your mother was a better woman than his; (to that I re-
ply: a woman's worth must be appreciated by her remaining with her family, by her deserving the good will of her husband and by giving birth to noble-minded boys. You say that you are better than Yazid. To this, my son! I answer that, if I was offered in exchange for Yazid as many persons like you as would fill the Ghûta (11), I should feel no pleasure in accepting the proposal. You say that your people raised me to power and did not depose me; (to that I answer that) I received my (first) command from one who was better than you, from Omar Ibn al-Khattâb, and your people confirmed my nomination. Moreover, I have not been a bad governor for you: I revenged your wrongs, killed the murderers of your father, elevated you to power and authority, enriched those among you who were poor and raised the lowest of you to high stations." Yazid then spoke in his favour and obtained for him the government of Khorâsân. — Let us return to the history of Ibn Mufarrigh. The narrator says: He continued passing from one town of Syria to another and satirizing the sons of Ziâd. His poems having reached Basra, Obaid Allah Ibn Ziâd, the emir of the two Irâks, wrote on that subject to (the khâlit) Moawia, or, by another and more correct account, to Yazid (the son and successor of Moawia). In this letter he said: "Ibn Mufarrigh has satirized Ziâd and the sons of Ziâd; calumniating the former in his grave and cover- ing the latter with eternal dishonour. From them he has passed to Abû Sofyân, whom he stigmatizes as a fornicator, and whose sons he attacks in the foulest lan-
guage. He escaped from Sijistân, and I caused such strict search to be made for him that he fled the country (12)." He has now reached Syria where he mangles our reputation (13) and tears our honour to pieces. I send you the satires which he has directed against us, so that you may be induced to do us justice." He then sent (to the khâlit Yazid) all the poems that Ibn Mufarrigh had composed on them. Yazid gave orders that search should be made for the offender who, being
thus obliged to fly from one place to another, was driven out of Syria. He then went to Basra and stopped at the house of al-Ahnaf Ibn Kais. — Of this person, whose real name was ad-Dahhák, we have already spoken (vol. I. p. 635); his prudence became proverbial. — Al-Ahnaf, of whom he asked protection, replied in these terms: "Were I to promise you my protection against the son of Sumaiya (14), I should only be deceiving you (faughirraka); I can protect any man against his own family but not against the person under whose authority he is (15)." The poet then went to others, none of whom would engage to protect him, but he at last obtained from al-Mundir Ibn at Jārūd al-Abdi (16) a promise to that effect. As Obaid Allah Ibn Zīàd was the husband of al-Mundir's daughter and respected no man so much as her father, the latter, presuming on his influence over him, gave, incon siderately, an asylum to the poet. Obaid Allah was already informed of the fugitive's arrival in Basra, when he learned that he had taken refuge at al-Mundir's. He sent for the latter and, when he appeared before him, he dispatched to his house some of the police guards. The dwelling was searched, Ibn Mufarrijh arrested, and his protector knew nothing of the matter till he saw the prisoner standing beside him. On this, he rose up, went over to Obaid Allah and spoke to him in favour of his guest. "'Emir!' said he, 'I implore you, in God's name, not to dis credit my right of protection: I promised that man to be answerable for his safety." Obaid Allah answered: "Mundir Allah! (17) I have no objection to that man's composing verses in praise of your father and you, but he has satirized both me and my father, and yet you try to screen him from my vengeance. God forbid that he escape me! that shall never be, and I shall not pardon him." Al-Mundir replied in an angry tone and received this answer: "You presume too much on your daughter that is with me; by Allah! if I please, I shall separate from her and signify to her a full and absolute divorce. " Al-Mundir retired and Obaid Allah then turned towards the poet and said: "'Evil for Abbād has been your fellowship with him." The prisoner replied: "'Evil for me has been his fellowship! I preferred him to Saïd Ibn Othmân and spent, in accompanying him, all that I possessed. I imagined that he was not devoid of intelligence such as Zīàd's, of mildness such as Moawia's and of liberality such as that of the Kuraish; but he disappointed all my expectations, treated me with indignity and made me suffer every thing disagreeable, imprisonment, (prosecution for) debt, upbraiding and beatings. I was like the man who watched delusive lighnings proceed-
"...ing from a cloud without rain; he hoped that it would pour showers upon him and he died of thirst. I fled from your brother because I feared that he would act in a manner of which he would have to repent. Now, I am in your power; do with me what you please." Obaid Allah sent him to prison and then addressed to Yazid Ibn Moawia a letter in which he asked permission to put the poet to death. Yazid wrote back to him in these terms: "You must avoid putting him to death, but you may inflict on him a chastisement that may serve him for a lesson and make your authority to be respected, without endangering his life. He has relations in my army (jund) and among the persons of my court: were he put to death, they would be displeased with me and nothing would calm them except retaliating on you. Avoid that; know that all things are taken seriously by them and by me and that they would make you responsible for his death. Without going so far as to take his life, you have sufficient latitude for satisfying your anger." Obaid Allah, on receiving this letter, gave orders that the prisoner should be obliged to drink some sweet nabid (grape-juice) containing an infusion of shubrum (euphorbia), — or, as some say, of turbid (turbith). This produced a diarrhea and, whilst he was in that state, they paraded him through the city, with a sho-cat and a sow tied on his (shoulders). The drug began to operate and the little boys ran after him, hooting and shouting. The evacuation persisted with such violence that he lost his strength and fell to the ground. Obaid Allah being then told that they could not answer for his life, ordered him to be washed and taken back to prison. When they were washing him, he recited this verse:

Water can wash away what I have done, but my words (satires) shall remain, even when your bones are mouldered into dust.

Obaid Allah, being asked why he chose such a punishment for the poet, answered:

"He cast his filth on us and I intended that the sow should discharge her filth on him" (18). Out of the numerous verses directed by Ibn Mufarrigh against Abbād Ibn Ziād, we may cite the following:

Now, that Moawia, the (grand-) son of Harb, is dead, announced to your wise (your influence?) already cracked, that it will soon be (completely) broken. I now declare, (O Zaid!) that your mother (did not lay) aside her veil (her dress) in order to have intercourse with Abū Solyān; but a thing occurred of a doubtful nature, and in (a moment of) great fear and trepidation.
The following verses are by the same poet:

Come! announce to Moawla, the son of Sakhr (Abû Sofyân), a message from the man of Yemen (19). Are you angry when people say that your father was chaste, and pleased, when they call him an adulterer? (In that case,) I declare that your relationship (rihm) to Ziâd is like that of the elephant to the foal of the ass. I declare that the female gave birth to Zaid and that Sakhr never approached Sumaiya.

The expression: *I declare that your relationship to Ziâd, etc.*, is borrowed from the following verse, belonging to a poem which was composed by Hassan Ibn Thâbit al-Ansârî (20), surnamed Abû 'l-Walîd, or, according to some, Abû Abd ar-Rahmân:

I declare that your relationship (ill) to the family of Kuraish is like the relationship of the young camel (sakb) to the young ostrich (rdl).

The word *ill* has the same meaning as *rihm*; *sakb* means a camel's foal; *rdl* means a young ostrich. — The following verses were composed by Hassan Ibn Thâbit on Abû Sofyân (Ibn al-Hârith) (21):

Come! announce to Abû Sofyân a message from me to him; for that which was hidden has been brought to light. You lampooned Muhammad and I answer in his defense; my recompense for that I shall find with God. How dare you attack him, you that are not his equal? May the worst (sharr) of you two be sacrificed to save the best (khâir)! Assuredly, my father, my father's father and my honour are sufficient to protect the honour of Muhammad against your insults.

The phrase: *may the worst of you two*, etc., gave rise to a discussion among the learned, because the words *khâir* and *sharr* are terms which express superiority and require to be associated (*with a complement*) (22). Hassan Ibn Thâbit composed this answer by order of the Prophet. — I may here observe that, in the Prophet's family were five individuals who resembled him in their looks; namely, this Abû Sofyân (Ibn al-Hârith Ibn Abd al-Muttalib), al-Hasan Ibn Ali Ibn Abi Tâlib, Jaafar Ibn Abi Tâlib, Kotham Ibn al-Abbas Ibn Abd al-Muttalib, and as-Sâib Ibn Obaid Ibn Abd Yazîd Ibn Hâshim Ibn Abd al-Muttalib Ibn Abd Manâf, the ancestor of the imâm as-Shâfi (23). This Abû Sofyân became a Muslim on the day in which Mekka was taken; that happened in the eighth year of the Hijra. His subsequent conduct attested the sincerity of his conversion. He accompanied the Prophet during
the campaign of Taif and Hunain. When the Moslems were routed at the battle of Hunain, Abû Sofyân was one of the seven who stood firm and remained with the Prophet, till those who had fled rallied and came back. They then obtained the victory and a booty of five thousand captives. These the Prophet set at liberty. An account of this battle would form a long narrative, for which this is not a fit place. On that day, Abû Sofyân held the Prophet's mule by the bridle, without ever letting go his hold; and the Prophet used to say: 'I hope to find in him one capable of replacing Hamza Ibn Abd al-Muttalib.' He declared also that Abû Sofyân would be one of those who were to enter into Paradise. He said also: 'Abû Sofyân Ibn Al-Hârith is one of the youths of Paradise,' or (according to another statement), 'the chief of the youth of the people of Paradise.' Most of the learned consider the surname (Abû Sofyân) to be his real name and say that he had no other; but some of them declare that his name was al-Mughîra. Others again say that al-Mughîra was the name of his brother, that he was called Abû Sofyân and nothing more. It is stated that, from the time of his conversion to Islamism, he never dared to look the Prophet in the face, so much was he ashamed of having satirized him at a former period. — Let us resume our account of Ibn Mufarrigh. He is one of the poets who are mentioned in the Hамâsa. We find there (24) this piece of his:

Behold! Zainab visited me towards the close of the night (and I said to her): 'Blessings be upon you! are they come back, the (happy) days I passed (with you)?' She replied: 'Avoid us and approach us not.' (I answered): 'How can I avoid you who are the sole object of my wishes? People ask if the sports of love continue when thirty years are passed, and I answer: Can they exist before the thirtieth year. The arrival of hoariness would be a great misfortune if, when it appears, the palanquin (-riders?) were precluded from every sport.'

The Spanish author al-Muzaffar (25) says, in his great historical work, that, joined to those verses (min jumla hâdi 'l-abyâd) were the following:

Were my body (26), when it grows weak, to become the sport of noble princes (?) or (the prey) of lions or of wolves, that (thought) would alleviate my sufferings and console me in my misfortune; but (I cannot be consoled because) she who was the most cruel to me (27) exists no more.

When al-Husain, the son of Ali Ibn Tâlib, was informed of Moawia Ibn Abi
Sofyân's death and the accession of Yazid, the son of Moawía (to the khalifate), he resolved on proceeding to Kûfa, whither he had been invited by a letter addressed to him by a number of the inhabitants of that city. This is one of the well-known circumstances of the affair which cost al-Husain his life. During that time, he often recited and applied to his own case the following verses of a poem composed by Yazid Ibn Mufarrigh:

May I never spread terror through the flocks and herds by an incursion made at morning's dawn, if I call not Yazid (to simple combat) on the day in which, not without fear, he does (me) an injustice! May the fates watch (to seize) me, if I avoid (the combat) (28).

The persons who heard him discovered from this that he intended to have a struggle with Yazid Ibn Moawía for the supreme power. He set out for Kûfa and, when he drew near it, the governor, Obâd Allah Ibn Zîâd, sent against him a body of troops commanded by Omar Ibn Saad Ibn Abi Wakkâs. Al-Husain was slain at Taff and then happened what happened. It is related that (before this) Moawía had written to him in these terms: “I am certain that you have taken into your head the idea of assailing (our government) and that you will be unable to conceal it. If I be then living, I shall most willingly forgive you.” It is stated that (the Omaiyide khalif) Omar Ibn Abd al-Azîz said: “Were I one of al-Hussain’s murderers and were God pleased to pardon me and to admit me into Paradise, I should not enter there, so much I would feel ashamed in the presence of God’s apostle.” Obâd Allah Ibn Zîâd said to al-Hârîthah Ibn Badr al-Ghudâni (29): “What think you will happen to me and to al-Hussein on the day of the resurrection?” Received from him this answer: “His father and his grandfather will intercede for him; your father and your grandfather will intercede for you. Learn from that what you want to know!” —The Mirât az-Zamân (mirror of time), a historical work drawn up in the form of annals and composed by Shams ad-Din Abû 'l-Muzaffar Yûsuf Ibn Kizoghli, surnamed Sibt Ibn al-Jausî (30), because he was the son of Abû 'l-Faraj Ibn al-Jausî's (vol. II. p. 96) daughter, and the autograph of which, in forty volumes, I saw at Damascus, contains, under the year 59 of the Hijra, an account of what passed between Yazid Ibn Mufarrigh and the sons of Zîâd. He then adds: “Yazid Ibn Mufarrigh died in the year 69, that is to say, of the Hijra (A. D. 688-9). God knows best (31)! Abû 'l-Yazkân (vol. II. p. 578) says, in his Kitâb an-Nisâb (book of patronymics): “Abbâd Ibn Zîâd died A. H. 100 (A. D. 718-9) at Jârûd.”
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

— Jârûd is a village situated in the dependencies of Damascus and lying in the government of Hims (Emessa). Onagers are extremely abundant in that country. When the division of Egyptian troops entered into Syria, A. H. 660 (A. D. 1261-2) and marched against Antioch with the troops of Syria, it halted for a short time at Damascus, where I then was, and from that it returned back. The army entered into Damascus towards the end of the month of Sha'aban of that year (July, 1262). A person belonging to that army related to me a circumstance so curious that it may very well be mentioned here. They had halted at Jârûd, the place of which we are speaking, and hunted down a great number of onagers. So, at least, they said. A soldier, having killed one of them, proceeded to cook its flesh in the usual manner. Being unable to bring it to a proper state of coction, he added wood to the fire and augmented the flame; but that produced no effect, although the fire was kept up for a whole day. Another soldier then rose, took up the animal’s head and found on the ear an inscription which, when he read it, proved to be the name of Bahrâm Gûr. When they arrived at Damascus, they brought me the ear. I found the mark to be quite visible, the hair on the ear being as fine as the smallest shreds. The writing was Kûfic. This Bahrâm Gûr was one of the (ancien) kings of the Persians and lived a long time before our prophet. When that prince took more animals at the chase than he required, he would mark some of them and let them go. God knows how old this onager was when Bahrâm captured it and to what age it would have reached, had they set it at liberty and not killed it. The fact is that the onager is one of the long-lived animals. This individual must have lived upwards of eight hundred years (32). — In the territory of Jârûd is situated the famous mountain called al-Mudakhkhan. It is mentioned by Abû Nuwâs (vol. I. p. 391) in the poem wherein he names the places at which he halted on his way to Egypt, where he intended to visit al-Khasib (33). He says:

Towards the East I saw the temples of Tadmor (Palmyra) and found them empty; they are walls facing the summit of al-Mudakhkhan.

This name must be pronounced Muddakhan (34). The mountain was so called because it is always capped with clouds which appear like a mass of smoke (dukhân).

— I since read the following passage in the Masūṭh al-Olâm (the keys of the sciences), a work composed by Muhammad Ibn Ahmad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Yusuf al-Khowârezmi: “Bahrâm Gûr was the son of Bahrâm, the son of Sâpur
IBN KHALLIKAN’S

“al-Junûd, the son of Sâpûr Zâ ‘l-Aktâf. He was called Bahrûm Gûr because he was fond of hunting the afr. This last word serves to designate both the wild and the domestic ass (35).” Having calculated the duration of their dynasty from that period to the Hijra, I found it to be two hundred and sixteen years. This onager must therefore have lived for more than eight hundred years, if we count from the time it was marked by Bahrûm Gûr till the year 660, when it was killed. But God knows best! — In this article, frequent mention has been made of Ziûd, of his sons, of Sumaiya, of Abû Sofýân and of Moawla, as also of the poems composed upon them by Ibn Mufarrigh; now, as readers not acquainted with the facts may desire some information respecting them, I shall give here a summary account of the affair. There was a king of Yemen called Abû ‘l-Jabr, of whom Ibn Duraid (vol. III, p. 37) has spoken in the following verse of his celebrated kasîda which is entitled the Maksûra:

And sadness mingled with the soul of Abû Jabr, till death joined him to the number of those whom it had already seized.

The surname Abû-‘l-Jabr was his real name; some say that his name was Yazid and that he was the son of Shurabbil the Kindite; others state that Abû-‘l-Jabr was really his name and that he was the son of Amr. Having been dethroned by his subjects, he went to Persia for the purpose of obtaining from Kisra (Chosroes) the assistance of a body of troops. The Persian king sent with him a band of his Asâwira (cavalry). When they reached Kazíma and saw the sterility and unproductiveness of Arabia, they said: “Where is this man taking us to?” and then delivered some poison to his cook, promising him, at the same time, an ample recompense, if he put it into the meat which was to be served before the king. This was done, and the food had no sooner settled in his stomach, than he felt intense pain. When the Asâwira were informed of this, they went in to where he was and said to him: “Since you are reduced to such a state, give us a letter for king Chosroes, in which you declare that you have authorised us to return.” He wrote a letter for them to that effect and, feeling some alleviation, he proceeded to Tàif, the town situated in the vicinity of Mekka, and put himself under the care of al-Hârîth Ibn Kalada the Thakifite, who was the great physician of the Arabs and who resided there. Ibn Kalada treated and cured him, for which service he received from his patient a rich present which in were included (a slave-girl named) Sumaiya and
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY. 247

(a slave named) Obaid. Kisra had given them to Abu 'l-Jabr. The latter then set out for Yemen but, having had a relapse, he died on the way. Ibn Kalada gave Sumaiya in marriage to Obaid, and she had a son whilst Obaid was still living (36). Her son was called by various names, such as Ziad Ibn Obaid, Ziad Ibn Sumaiya, Ziad Ibn Abth (Ziad, the son of his father) and Ziad Ibn Ommih (Ziad the son of his mother) (37). Those were the appellations by which he was known before his adoption (into the Omayyide family) by Moawia, an occurrence of which we shall speak farther on. Sumaiya had also by al-Harith Ibn Kalada a son named Abu Bakra Naft (نفع) Ibn al-Harith, whom some persons call Naft Ibn Masruh and who became known, under the name of Abu Bakra, as one of the Prophet's companions. She had also two other sons, one named Shibli Ibn Mabad, and the other Naft (نفع) Ibn al-Harith. These were the four brothers who bore witness against al-Mughira Ibn Shoba as being an adulterer. When we finish our account of Ziad, we shall speak of that affair. In the time of heathenism, Abu Sofyan Sakhr Ibn Harb the Omayyide and the father of Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyan, had incurred (disreputable) suspicions in consequence of his frequent visits to Sumaiya. It was in the time of their acquaintance that she gave birth to Ziad, but she had still her husband Obaid (38). When Ziad grew up, he displayed great talents and command of language, and became an orator whose eloquence, sagacity and intelligence filled the Arabs with admiration. It was for that reason that Abu Musa al-Ashari, on being appointed to the government of Basra by Omar Ibn al-Khattab, took Ziad Ibn Abih for his secretary. Some time after, Ziad brought a message from Abu Musa to Omar, who was so highly pleased with him that he ordered him a present of one thousand dirhems (£ 25). When Ziad was gone, Omar thought of the money (he had given) and said: "There is one thousand lost, since Ziad has "'gotten it.'" The next time that Ziad came to see him, he said to him: "What "'has become of your thousand?'" Ziad answered: "'I purchased a little slave (obaid) "'with them and gave him his liberty.'" By the word obaid he meant his own father (who was so called). Omar replied: "'Your thousand has not been spent uselessly. "'Will you bear to Abu-Musa al-Ashari a letter in which I order him to take another "'secretary in place of you?'" Ziad answered: "'Most willingly; provided that the "'order does not proceed from a feeling of anger (against me).'" — "'It does not "'proceed from any feeling of anger;" replied Omar. "'Why then, said Ziad, do "'you send him such an order?'" [When dispatches were brought to Omar from
Basra, he preferred that Ziâd should be the bearer of them, because he was sure of obtaining from him satisfactory information.] He then gave him a government in the dependencies of Basra and, soon after, took it from him, saying: "It is not as a disgrace that I depose you, but I am unwilling that your superior intelligence should contribute to the oppression of the people (an ahmit ala'n-nâsi fadl 'akkî)." Abû Mûsa, having dismissed Ziâd, took for secretary al-Husain Ibn Abi 'l-Hurr al-Anbari. A dispatch, written by the latter, was received by Omar who, finding in it a fault of orthography, wrote back these words to Abû Mûsa: "Give a flogging to your secretary." Ziâd, being sent by Omar to quell some troubles which had broken out in Yemen (accomplished his mission so promptly that he) had scarcely arrived when he set out again. On his return, he addressed the people in a speech the like of which they had never heard before. Amr Ibn al-Aâsi then said: "By Allah! did that youth belong to the family of Kuraish, he would (force the "Arabs to obey and) drive them before them with his stick." Abû Sofyân, hearing this, said: "By Allah! I know the man who deposited him in his mother's womb." — "Tell me," said Ali Ibn Abî Tâlib, "who he was." — "It was I," replied Abû Sofyân. — "Take care of what you say, Abû Sofyân!" said Ali. To this the other answered by the following lines:

By Allah! were I not afraid, O Ali! that a certain person might look on me as his enemy, I, Sakhr Ibn Harb, should reveal the secret, even had there been no question of Ziâd. Long ago I was on good terms with (the tribe of) Thakif and I then left among them a proof of my affection (39).

When Ali obtained the supreme authority, Ziâd was sent by him to Persia, where he reduced all the country to obedience, protected it against attacks, collected the imposts and remedied abuses. Moawia then wrote to him with the intention of turning him against Ali, but this letter had no effect and was sent to Ali by him whom had received it. In it were some verses which I abstain from inserting here. Ali wrote back to Ziâd in these terms: "I appointed you to the commandment which you hold, because I thought you worthy of it. In your present career, you cannot obtain the object you have in view unless you act with patience and a sincere conviction. Under the rule of Omar, Abû Sofyân committed a fault by which no relationship or right of inheritance can be established. As for Moawia, he can circumvent any man; so, be on your
"guard against him; be on your guard! Receive my salutation." When Ḥiād read
this letter, he exclaimed: "I swear by the Lord of the Kaaba, that the father of al-
"Husain (i.e. Ali) bears witness in favour of me." It was this (communication) which
emboldened Ḥiād and Moawia to act as they (afterwards) did. Al-Hasan, the son of
Ali, having obtained the khilafate after the murder of his father, gave up the supreme
authority to Moawia, a fact which is well known. Moawia then endeavoured to
gain over Ḥiād and acquire his good will, so that he might be induced to serve him with
the same fidelity that he had shewn to Ali. This, joined to the words which escaped
from his father in the presence of Ali and Amr Ibn al-Aāsi (produced the desired effect
and), in the forty-fourth year of the Hijra (A.D. 664-5), Ḥiād was acknowledged by Moa-
wia (as his brother) and became known by the name of Ḥiād Ibn Abi Sofyān. When
Abū Bakra was informed that his brother had been adopted, with his own consent,
into the family of Moawia, he declared most solemnly that he would never speak
to him again. "That fellow," said he, "declares his mother to be an adulteress and
"disavows his father. By Allah! I do not think that Sumaiya ever saw Abū
"Sofyān. Evil befell him! how will he manage with Omm Habība, the daughter
"of Abū Sofyān and the widow of the Prophet? If he goes to visit her, she will re-
fuse him admittance, and thus disgrace him, and, if she receive him, she will be
"guilty of an act injurious to the profound respect which all have for the Prophet."
Under the reign of Moawia, Ḥiād went to Mekka for the purpose of making the pilgri-
mage and meant to visit Omm Habība under the pretext that he and Moawia consid-
ered her as his sister; but he then thought of what Abū Bakra had said and abandoned
his intention. According to another account, Omm Habība refused to receive him,
and, if we are to believe another statement, he made the pilgrimage but paid no visit
in consequence of the words uttered by Abū Bakra. "May God reward Abū Bakra!"
said he, "he never, in any case, gives bad advice." — Having gone to see Moa-
wia, for whom he was acting as lieutenant, he took with him a magnificent present
containing, amongst other objects, a collar of pearls so valuable that it excited Moa-
wia's admiration. He then addressed him in these terms: "Commander of the
"faithful! I have subdued for you that country,"—meaning Irāk, —"I have col-
"lected for you its tribute, both by land and by sea, and have brought you
"the almond with its shell." On this, Yazīd Ibn Moawia, who was sitting in the
room, said to him: "If you have really done that, we shall transfer you from (the
"tribe of) Thakif to (that of) Kuraish, from Obaid to Abū Sofyān and from the rank

vol. iv.
of a secretary to that of a governor (40)." Moawia, on hearing these words, said to Yazid: "That is quite enough! you are the flint I wanted for striking fire from my steel (41)." — Abû l-Hasan al-Madâinî (vol. 1. p. 438) states that the kâtib Abû 'z-Zubair told him that Abû Ishâk related to him what follows: "Ziād, after purchasing his father Obaid, went to see Omar, who said to him: "What did you do with your pay, the first time you received it?" Ziād replied: "I purchased my father with it." This answer gave great pleasure to Omar. The anecdote (told above concerning Yazid and Ziad) is in contradiction with the statement that it was Moawia who declared Ziâd a member (of the tribe of Kuraish). — When Moawia acknowledged Ziâd (as his brother), the Omayyids went to see him (and remonstrate). One of them, named Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn al-Hakam, and brother to Marwân Ibn al-Hakam, then addressed him in these terms: "Moawia! had you found none but negroes (Zenj) to adopt, you would have (taken them for members of your family and) outnumbered us by (an act of) meanness and degradation." Moawia (on hearing this reproach), went up to Marwân, Abd ar-Rahmân's brother, and said: "Turn out that blackguard." Marwân replied: "By Allah! (for you to say) that he is a blackguard is not to borne." Moawia answered: "By Allah! were it not for my mildness and clemency, I should teach you that it must be borne. Did he not send me verses composed by himself against Ziâd and me?" Hear them from my lips:

"Come! say to Moawia, the son of Sakhr: 'We cannot suffer what you have done. Are you angry when people say that your father was chaste and pleased when they say he was an adulterer?'

We have already given the rest of this piece (page 242 of this vol.) and attributed it to Ibn Mufarrigh; but there is a difference of opinion respecting its author: some say that it was composed by Ibn Mufarrigh, and others, by Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn al-Hakam. In the former case, the first verse is that which has been previously given; in the latter, it must be read as it is here. — Ziâd, on his adoption by Moawia, was treated by him with great favour, obtained a commandment and became one of his most effective supporters in the contestations with the sons of Ali Ibn Abi Tâlib. It is related that, when he was governor of the two Irâks, he caused active search to be made for a man named Ibn Sarh who was a partisan of al-Hasan, the son of Abû Tâlib. The name of this person had been included in the act of amnesty granted to the
companions of al-Hasan, when the latter abdicated the khalifate in favour of Moawia. Al-Hasan, in consequence, wrote the following letter to Ziâd: "From al-Hasan to Ziâd: You know that we obtained an amnesty for our partisans, and yet Ibn Sarih informs me that he has been exposed to your attacks. I therefore request that you act towards him only for his good. Receive my salutation." This letter commenced by the writer's name and did not give to Ziâd the surname of the son of Abû Sofyân. Ziâd was offended at it and replied in these terms: "From Ziâd, the son of Abû Sofyân, to al-Hasan: I received your letter concerning a reprobate who is now harboured by others, by partisans of yours and of your father. By Allah! I shall pursue and arrest him, even were he (hidden) between your skin and your flesh. The flesh that I most wish to devour is that of which you are a part." When al-Hasan received this epistle, he sent it to Moawia who, on reading it, was so indignant that he wrote to Ziâd a letter containing these words: "From Moawia, the son of Abû Sofyân, to Ziâd: Al-Hasan, the son of Ali, has sent to me a letter written by you in answer to one in which he spoke to you concerning Abû Sarih. Its contents surprised me greatly and I perceived by it that you have two ways of judging matters, one which you inherited from Abû Sofyân, and the other from Sumaiya. That which you owe to Abû Sofyân is all prudence and precaution; the other, for which you are indebted to Sumaiya, is just such as should be expected from one like her. It was the last which produced the letter in which you revile al-Hasan and treat him as a reprobate. Now, by my life! you are more deserving of that epithet than he. If, through a sentiment of superiority, he commenced his letter by his own name, that could not derogate from your merit; but, by rejecting the application made by him in favour of a person whom he thought deserving of his intercession, you have thrown off your own shoulders a task which shall be executed by one who has a better right to accomplish it than you. On the receipt of this, my letter, restore to Ibn Sarih the property of his which is in your hands and do not attempt to injure it. I have written to al-Hasan, informing him that, if he pleases, the fugitive may either stay with him or return to his own country, and that you have been prohibited from harming him either by word or deed. In your letter to al-Hasan, you call him by his name without mentioning of whom he is the son; I therefore let you know, inconsiderate fellow! that al-Hasan is above the reach of contempt [42]. Did you then think that his father was so contemptible a person? but that person
"was Ali the son of Abū Tālib; or did you think it (not) worth while to join his name to that of his mother? but his mother was Fātima, the daughter of the Apostle of God, and, if you have any intelligence remaining, you must acknowledge that therein he excels us all. Receive my salutation." — The word rajāwēnī is a dual which (has a plural signification and) means places of danger. — I must here observe that the same anecdote is related in another form, and shall therefore give it here: Said Ibn Sarh was a mawla to Kuraiz Ibn Habib Ibn Abd Shams, one of Ali Ibn Abi Tālib's partisans. When Ziād, the son of his father (Ibn Abth) arrived at Kāfa in the capacity of governor, he persecuted Ibn Saad and caused strict search to be made after him. Ibn Saad then went to Medina and alighted at the door of al-Hasan Ibn Ali, who said to him: "What has forced you to quit your residence and come here?" The fugitive told his story and described the conduct of Ziād towards him. Al-Hasan therefore wrote to Ziād in these terms: "You engaged towards a certain Musliman that he should partake of all the advantages enjoyed by those of his belief, and incur the same obligations which are imposed on them. Yet you have pulled down his house, seised on his property and arrested the members of his family. Therefore, when this, my letter, reaches you, rebuild his house, and restore to him his property and the members of his family; I have given him hospitality and have been requested by him to interfere in this matter." To this Ziād replied: "From Ziād, the son of Abū Sofyān, to al-Hasan the son of Fātima: I received your letter, in which you commence by placing your own name before mine, and yet you request of me a service; you, a man of the people, from me, a sovereign (sulād)! You write to me in favour of a reprobate whom none would harbour except a reprobate like himself; and, what is still worse, he has found in you a patron (tawallihi tādka)! You have allowed him to reside with you, him disaffected (to government) and taking pleasure in being so! But, by Allah! you shall not save him from me, even were he hidden between your skin and your flesh; and certainly the flesh that I should most like to devour is that of which you are a part. Deliver him up by the halter (43) to one who has a better right to him than you. If I then pardon him, it shall not be in consequence of your intercession and, if I put him to death, it shall be on account of the love you bear him." When al-Hasan read this epistle, he wrote to Moawia an account of Ibn Sarh's affair and enclosed in the letter (a copy of) his own to Ziād and the answer which he had received. He wrote also a letter to Ziād
BIographical Dictionary.

(and addressed it) thus: "From al-Hasan, the son of Fātima, who was the daughter of the Apostle of God, to Zīād, the son of Sumaiya, who was a slave of the tribe of Thakif, (to Zīād) legitimate by birth and yet the son of an abandoned adulterer." When Moawia read al-Hasan’s letter (he was so much ashamed that) Syria seemed too narrow to hold him, and he wrote to Zīād in the terms which we have already mentioned (44). — Obaid Allah Ibn Zīād declared that, of all the verses directed against him, none wounded his feelings so much as the following, which were composed by Ibn Mufarrigh:

Reflect! for reflection may give you a moral lesson. Are you not indebted for all your honours to your nomination as governor? As long as Sumaiya lived, she never suspected that her son belonged to the tribe of Kuraish.

Katāda (vol. II. p. 513) relates that Zīād, when on the point of death, said to his sons: "O, that your father had been a shepherd leading his flocks to countries far and near, and that what he came by had never befallen him!" — The verses directed by Ibn Mufarrigh against Zīād and his sons are all of the same cast: he treats them as pretenders and goes so far as to say of the sons of Sumaiya:

Zīād, Nāf and Abū Bakra are for me a cause of wonder. These three were formed in the same womb and had all the same father, yet one says that he is a Kuraishide, the other is an enfranchised slave, and the third has an Arab for his uncle.

As these lines require explanation, I shall give here what is related by persons versed in history: Al-Hārith was the son of Kalada Ibn Amr Ibn Išāl Ibn Abī Sālama Ibn Abī al-Ozza Ibn Ghiriara Ibn Aūf Ibn Kasi. This last was the same person as Thakif. It is thus that Ibn al-Kalbi exposes this genealogy in his Jamhara. Al-Hārith was a celebrated physician among the Arabs. He died soon after the promulgation of Islamism, but the fact of his conversion has not been ascertained. It is related that the Prophet of God ordered Saad Ibn Abi Wakkās to go and take the advice of al-Hārith Ibn Kalada on a malady by which he had been attacked. This proves the lawfulness of consulting, on medical questions, persons who are not Moslims, provided they be of the same nation as the sick man (45). His son, al-Hārith Ibn al-Hārith, was one of those whose hearts had been reconciled (46), and he counts as one of the Prophet’s companions. It is said that al-Hārith Ibn Kalada was incapable of begetting children and that he died in the khilafate of Omar.
The Prophet, when he laid siege to Tā'if, made this declaration: "Whatever slave
"lets himself down (from the wall) and comes to me shall be free." Abū Bakra
then lowered himself down from the fortress by means of a bakra (pulley), — which
is a thing traversed by a rope and placed over a well for the purpose of drawing wa-
ter. It is called a bakara by common people, but this pronunciation is not correct,
although the author of the Mukhtasir al-Ātn (abridgment of the Ātn) (47) gives it as
good. It has, however, so little to recommend it that no other philologer ever
authorised it. — The narrator continues: He received therefore from the Prophet
the surname of Abū Bakra (the pulley-man), and used to say that he was a mawla
of the Prophet of God. His brother, Nāfi', was also going to lower himself down
when al-Hārith Ibn Kalada said to him: "Remain, and I adopt you as my
"son." He therefore remained and was surnamed Ibn al-Hārith. Abū Bakra,
before his conversion to Islamism, bore also that surname, but, when he became a
good Muslim, he gave it up. On the death of al-Hārith Ibn Kalada, Abū Bakra
abstained, through self-mortification, from receiving any part of the inheritance.—
This, I must observe, might have been the case, were we to admit the statement of
those who say that al-Harith died a Muslim, for, if he did not, Abū Bakra would
have been excluded from inheriting, on account of the difference of religion (48).
— (The narrator continues:) Ibn Mufarrigh was induced to compose the three verses
above-mentioned because Ziad pretended to be a Kuraishite on the plea of his adop-
tion by Moawia; because Abū Bakra declared himself a mawla of the Prophet, and
because Nāfi' used to say that he was the son of al-Harith Ibn Kalada, of the tribe of
Thakif. They were, besides, born of the same mother, the Sumaiya already men-
tioned. It was also for that reason that the poet composed on the family of Abū
Bakra the two verses which commence by the words: Come to your senses, family
of Abū Bakra! (page 238 of this vol.). Ilaj was the grandfather of al-Hārith Ibn
Kalada, as we have already stated. This is an abridged account of the affair of
Ziad and his sons. — I must again make an observation: these words of Ibn Mu-
farrij in the second verse: they had the same father, are not true, for no one ever
said that Ziad was the son of al-Harith Ibn Kalada; on the contrary, he was the son of
Obaid, having been born on his bed (in his lifetime). As for Abū Bakra and Nafi', they
were considered as the sons of al-Hārith. How then could the poet say with truth
that they had all the same father? Weigh these observations. — Ibn an-Nadim (49)
says, in the work entitled the Fihrest, that Ziad was the first person who com-
BIографICAL DICTIONARY.

piled a work containing things disreputable to the Arabs. Ziād Ibn Abih having been calumniated and seeing his genealogy impugned, composed that book for the use of his sons and said to them: "Defend yourselves with this against the Arabs, and they will cease to attack you." — The anecdote concerning al-Mughira Ibn Shoha the Thakifide and the evidence given against him must now be related: Al-Mughira, having been named governor of Basra by Omar Ibn al-Khattāb, used to go out of the government palace every day, at the hour of noon. Abū Bakra, having met him said: "Where is the emir going?" and received this answer. "I am going on business." To this Abu Bakra replied: "An emir receives visits but never makes any." He (al-Mughira) was going, it said, to see a woman named Omm Jamil, who was the daughter of Amr and the wife of al-Hajjāj Ibn Atīk Ibn al-Hārith Ibn Wābb al-Jushami. — Ibn al-Kalbi states, in his Jamhara, that Omm Jamil was the daughter of al-Afkam Ibn Mihjan Ibn Amr Ibn Shatha Ibn al-Huzam, and he counts this family among those of the Ansār. Another author furnishes this additional information: "Al-Huzam was the son of Ruwaiha Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Hilāl. Ibn Aâmir Ibn Sasāa Ibn Moawia Ibn Bakr Ibn Hawāzin." God knows best! — The narrator continues: Abū Bakra was in an upper room with his brothers, Nāfi', Ziād and Shībl Ibn Mabad, who were all sons of the same mother, her who was named Sumaiya. Omm Jamil was in a chamber opposite to theirs, and, the wind happening to blow open her door, they saw al-Mughira in the act of carnal intercourse with her. On this, Abū Bakra said: "There is a calamity for you! look at that." They looked till they were convinced, and Abū Bakra then went down stairs and sat there, waiting till al-Mughaira came out. When he saw him, he said: "You know full well what you have done, so you had better quit us (and leave the city)." — The narrator says (farther on): Al-Mughira went to say the afternoon (zuhr) prayer at the head of the congregation, and Abū Bakra rose to go out, saying: "By Allah! you shall not preside at our prayer after what you did!" — "Let him go on with the prayer," said (some of the) people, "for he is our emir. Write down your complaint and send it to (the khalif) Omar." He and his brothers did so, and Omar summoned al-Mughira to appear before him, and them also as witnesses. When they arrived, Omar took his seat and cited them all forward. Abū Bakra advanced, and (the khalif) said to him (50): "Vidistine illum inter femora mulieris?" Respondit: "Per Deum! latera duo femorum divaricata adhuc mihi videre videor." Tunc eundem (testem) compellavit al-Mughira dixitque: "Callide aspexisti!" Res-

— Dico hanc locutionem proverbium esse, Arabibus notum, sed illum exponere haud convenit, praestim cum in hoc capite oratio nostra latius diffusa sit. — Tradidit narrator: Dixit ei al-Mughira: "Ziade! Dei excelsi memor esto coram quo staturus es in die resurrectionis. Certè Deus, et liber ejus, et Propheata ejus et imperator fidelium effusionem sanguinis mei prohibebunt, dummodo de is quae vidisti ad ea quae non vidisti transire noles; cave ne propter rem turpe quam vis disti transeas ad rem quam non disti. Per Deum! si inter ventrem meum etven-" trem illius (mulieris) fuisses, me mentulam in illam intromittentem haud vidisses." Tradidit narrator: "Tunc Ziadus, cujus oculi lacrymabant et facies rubore suffum-" debatur, dixit: "Imperator fidelium verum esse quod alii pro vero dererunt, di-" cere non possum; sed vidi consessum, audivi suspiria crebra et occasionem arrep-" tam; vidi illum super illam recubantem." Dixit Omar: "Vidistine rem inser-" tam in vulva sicut stylum in pyxide?" Respondit: "Haud vidi." Furtur etiam Ziadum dixisse: "Vidi illum pedes mulieris sustollentem; vidi testiculos ejus oscil-" lantes super femora mulieris, cum impetu vehementi." Omar then exclaimed: 
"Praise be to God!" Al-Mughira, being told by him to go over and beat them (for having borne false witness against him), inflicted on Abù Bakra eighty strokes
and flogged also the (two) others. Ziād gave, by his deposition, great satisfaction to Omar, as it averted from al-Mughīra the penalty (of lapidation) fixed by the law. Abū Bakra exclaimed after undergoing his punishment: "I bear witness that al-Mughīra did so and so" (repeating his former evidence). Omar was about to have him chastised a second time; when Ali Ibn Abī Tālib said to him: "If you beat him, you must lapidate your friend (52)." He therefore let him alone and told him to repent of his sin. "Do you bid me repent," replied Abū Bakra, "so that you may receive whatever evidence may be given by me later?" Omar answered: "Such is my motive," and Abū Bakra replied: "I shall (therefore) never serve as a witness between two parties, as long as I live." When he was undergoing the legal penalty, al-Mughīra addressed him thus: "Glory and praise be to God who has thus brought shame upon you! Not so," said Omar, "but may God bring shame upon the place in which these (people) saw you!" — Omar Ibn Shabbā (vol. II. p. 375), states, in his history of Basra, that, when Abū Bakra was beaten, his mother caused a sheep to be flayed and the skin applied to his back. This made people say that, assuredly, the strokes must have been very heavy. Abd ar-Rahmān, the son of Abū Bakra, related that his father swore never to speak to Ziād as long as he lived. One of Abū Bakra’s dying injunctions was that Ziād should not be allowed to say the funeral service over him, and that Abū Barza al-Aslāmi, a person to whom he had been united in brothership by the Prophet of God, should discharge that duty. When Ziād was informed of this, he (left the place and) went to Kūfa. Al-Mughīra was greatly pleased with Ziād’s conduct (at the trial) and testified to him all his gratitude. At a later period, when the pilgrims had assembled in Mekka, Omar received the visit of Omm Jamīl and said to al-Mughīra, who was present: "Tell me, Mughīra! do you know this woman? — "I do," replied the other, "she is Omm Kullūm, the daughter of Ali." On hearing these words, Omar exclaimed: "Do you intend to make me believe that you do not know her? by Allah! I now think that Abū Bakra did not accuse you wrongfully and, when I see you, I fear lest stones should be thrown down on me from heaven (for saving you from lapidation)."—The Shaikh Abū Ishak as-Shirāzī (vol. I. p. 9) says, in his Muhaddīdab, towards the commencement of the chapter on the number of witnesses (required by law): "Testimony was given against al-Mughīra by three persons: Abū Bakra, Nāfi’ and Shibli Ibn Mabād. As for Ziād (the fourth witness), he (merely) said: "Vidi culum resilientem, (audivi) anhelitum fortem et (vidi) pedes duos (erectos) ad
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

''' instar aurium asini; quid fuerit ultra, nescio! Omar caused therefore the three witnesses to be chastised and did not punish al-Mughira.''—Legists have discussed what Ali meant when he said: ''' If you beat him, you must lapidate your friend;''' and Abū Nasr Ibn as-Sabbâgh (vol. II. p. 164) writes, in his Shāmil, a treatise on the (Shafite) system of jurisprudence: ''' He (Ali) meant to say: 'That sentence (of yours) can only be (applicable) in case of your counting what he said for another (a fourth) deposition; but then, the number (of depositions requisite for the confession of al-Mughira) would be complete; if it (your sentence) applies to the first deposition (made by Abū Bakra, it cannot be executed, because) you have al-ready punished him for it.''—Omar Ibn Shabba relates as follows, in his history of Basra: ''' Al-Abbâs, the son of Abū al-Muttalib, said to Omar Ibn al-Khattâb: '''The Prophet of God made me a grant of (the province of) al-Bahrain! — 'Who was witness to that?' replied Omar. Al-Abbâs named al-Mughira Ibn Shoba, but Omar refused to admit such an evidence.''' This article has run to a great length, but it contained a number of facts that required elucidation, and our statements took therefore a wide spread. They are not, however, devoid of utility.

(1) Abū Abd ar-Rahmân Abd Allah Ibn Muhammad was generally known by the surname of Ibn Aâisha, because he was the son of Aâisha, the daughter of Taîha Ibn Obâd Allah at-Tamlimi, one of Muhammad's principal Companions and the same who was slain at the battle of the Camel, A. H. 36 (A. D. 656). As a traditionist and a transmitter of historical and literary information, he enjoyed a high reputation. It was at Baghdad that he gave his lessons. To his natural talents, philological knowledge, piety and a perfect acquaintance with the history of the times (or encounters) of the desert Arabs, he joined great bodily strength. It would appear that he was an orthodox Muslim, believing that the Korân was God's uncreated word, for it is stated that the khalif al-Mâmûn, a great adversary of that doctrine and a cruel persecutor of those who professed it, had him severely flogged. An accident which happened to him whilst undergoing this punishment gave to that reprobate poet, Abû Nuwâs (vol. I. p. 391), the idea of composing on his misadventure a piece of verse which became generally known. He died A. H. 228 (A. D. 843-4).—(Nujûm.)

(2) The Kitâb al-Aghâni has a long article on Ibn Mufarrigh. That is the source from which our author has extracted, verbatim, the greater part of the information which is contained in this article.

(3) Of Ibn Abî Fanân little or no information has yet been found, except a few indications given by Ibn Khallikân and the author of the Kitâb al-Aghâni. He seems to have been one of the poets who flourished in the time of Hârûn ar-Rashîd.

(4) Abûbâd Ibn Zîâd was named governor of Sijsîn by Moawâla in A. H. 53 (A. D. 673), and he was still holding that place in the year 69 (A. D. 688-9).—(Nujûm.)

(5) In this article will be found an account of Zîâd's origin.

(6) The narrator probably meant to say: of Sijsîn.
BIographies DICTIONARY.

(7) Abbad's grandfather was a slave. The history of his origin is given further on.

(8) One of the superstitious ideas of the pagan Arabs was that the souls of the dead passed into the bodies of screech-owls.

(9) See page 186 of Wüstenfeld's edition of that work.

(10) The verse to which our author refers is now followed by others which have been added at a later period.

(11) The country surrounding Damascus and covered with gardens is called the Ghouta.

(12) Literally: that the country spat him out, i.e., rejected him, was too hot to hold him.

(13) Literally: where he devours our flesh.

(14) Ziad, the father of Abbad, was the son of Sumaiya. See her history farther on.

(15) Lit.: but not against his sultan.

(16) Abū 'l-Ashāth al-Mundir Ibn al-Jārīḥ al-Abdi was appointed governor of Istakhar by Ali Ibn Abi Talib; and, in the year 63 (A.D. 681–2), he was nominated to the government of Sind by Obaid Allah Ibn Ziad, who was then emir of Irak. Al-Mundir died in Sind.—(Madrif, Nuṣām, Balḍorī.)

(17) Mundir Allah means: monitor of God. Was that Ibn al-Jārīḥ's real name?

(18) From this we should infer that it was not the poet but the sow, which had taken the purgative draught.

Muslim writers are sometimes very inattentive.

(19) The poet was proud of belonging by birth to the powerful party of the Yemenites.

(20) Hassan Ibn Tahbite, one of the poets employed by Muhammad to satirize his adversaries, lived to the age of one hundred and twenty years, as his father, grandfather and great-grandfather had done before him. He died A.H. 54 (A.D. 673–4).—(Nuṣ̱ām.)

(21) See lower down, in the same page.

(22) The author means to say that they are really adjectives in the comparative degree, although they have not the form proper to such adjectives. Formed according to rule, they would have been akhayr and asharra.

(23) This genealogy agrees with that given by Ibn Duraid in his Ishtīkāk. The same genealogy, as it occurs in the life of as-Shaft (vol. II, p. 569), is faultless,—some of the names being incorrectly spelled.

(24) See Freytag's Hamāda, page 578.

(25) Abū Bakr Muhammad Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Muhammad Ibn Maslama, the second Aftasid sovereign of Badajos, bore the title of as-Muṣaffar (the victorious). He composed a work in fifty volumes, forming an encyclopedia of all the sciences, historical annals, biography, literature, etc. This immense compilation was named after him the Muṣaffarian. The author died A.H. 460 (A.D. 1068).—Makkari, vol. II, p. 258 and 768 of the Leyden edition, and vol. I, p. 147 of the English translation by Gayangos.

(26) Literally: my flesh.

(27) Lit.: the most ardent in worrying my flesh.

(28) In this piece the words wa la daaoutu Yastada seem equivalent to illa (or in la) daaoutu Yastada. The translator adopts this opinion; the more readily as the expression la min kada wa la min kada does not mean: neither of this nor of that; but: not only this but that. For examples, see the Arabic text of Ibn Khalid's Prolegomena, Paris edition, tome I, p. 247 and 567, and tome III, p. 270.

(29) Al-Ghuddīnis (العذابي) is the right reading: see Ibn Duraid's Ishtīkāk, page 146. That author informs us that al-Hāritha Ibn Badr, surnamed Abū 'l-Anbas, was distinguished for his courage, his love of good wine and the rectitude of his judgment. Ziad (Ibn Abdi), with whom he was a great favorite, had his name inscribed on the roll of the Koraishite troops (in order that he might receive a higher pay). He had been designated by Omar Ibn ar-Rabi as commander of the troops which were to be sent against the Asārīka (vol. IV.
p. 514) of al-Ahwás, but al-Muhallab (vol. III. p. 506) forestalled him. He was drowned at that place. For more information respecting the character, conduct and death of this Arabic chieftain, see the first volume of Dory's Histoire des Musulmans d'Espagne, tome I, pages 139, 140, 141 et seq.


(31) Here the author finishes his account of Ibn Mufarrigh, without informing us what became of him when he was delivered up to Abbád. Had he continued his extracts from that poet's biography as given in the Kitb al-Aghádari, he would not have left his readers in the dark. In order to repair his omission I insert here an abridged account of Ibn Mufarrigh's subsequent adventures, as related in the Aghádari. During his detention in the prison to which Obaid Allah had sent him, he never ceased composing satires on the family of Zád. Obaid Allah, being informed of this, had him taken, under escort, to his brother Abbád. (Here, in the Aghádari, the names of the two brothers are displaced, one being put for the other.) The guards had orders to pass with him to every caravanserai (khana) at which he had stopped on flying from Abbád, and to force him to efface all the satirical verses which he had written on the walls of the chambers in which he had lodged. As they would allow him no instrument with which he might scratch out the writings, he had to employ his nails and, when these were worn out and the tips of his fingers used to the bone, he was obliged to efface the obnoxious lines with his blood. Abbád, to whom he was then delivered, put him into close confinement. The poet succeeded, however, in discovering a man who, for a recompense, went to Damascus and there recited aloud, in one of the most public places, (the ms. has درب دمشق) two verses by which the Yemenite troops were informed that their countryman and relative was kept in prison by the son of Zád. These Arabs, yielding to the spirit of party which animated the Yemenites against the Kaisides, could not suppress their indignation and carried their complaint before the khalif Moawia. He at first refused to grant what they demanded and sent them away, but then, listening to the dictates of his usual prudence, he had them called back and granted their request. A letter sent by him to Abbád procured the poet his liberty. Ibn Mufarrigh then waited on Moawia and obtained from him a full pardon with a gift of ten thousand dirhems (£ 250), on the condition of his not attacking the family of Zád. Having received from him also the permission of inhabiting whatever province he pleased, he proceeded to Mosul and from that to Basra. He then went to see Obaid Allah Ibn Zád and offered him his excuses. These were well received and procured for him the authorisation of going to the province of Kermán. Some time after, he returned to Irák and continued passing from one place to another till he at length obtained the favour of Mansür Ibn al-Hakam (?). He returned to Basra when Obaid Allah fled from that place to avoid being murdered by the inhabitants who, seeing the troops of Abd Allah Ibn az-Zubair everywhere victorious, had resolved on taking their governor's life. Obaid Allah was killed at the battle of the Záb, A. H. 67 (A. D. 687), in fighting against al-Mukhátr. For the history of the latter, the first volume of Dory's brilliant and conscientiously written work on the Spanish Muslims may be usefully consulted. When Ibn Mufarrigh returned to Basra, he renewed his attacks against the Zád family. Some time afterwards, he received abundant presents from Obaid Allah, the son of Abd Bakra, and settled at al-Ahwás where he continued to spend his wealth with the greatest liberality. — The article of the Kitb al-Aghádari is very long and contains a great quantity of verses, anecdotes and digressions which are here omitted.

(82) The inscription was perhaps traced on the ear after the death of the animal.

(83) Abd Nasr Khashb Ibn Abd al-Hamíd was appointed intendant of the finances in Egypt, by the khalif Hárún ar-Rashíd. According to Elmacin (al-Makht), page 419, and the author of the Raud al-Akhýr, cited by Reiske in the Annals of Abulfeda, t. III, p. 751, Khashb's nomination took place in the year 190 (A. D.
This fact I do not find mentioned in the Nujām, a work of which the main subject is the history of Egypt. Al-Khaṭṭāb was noted for his generosity and highly praised by the poets of the day.

This appears to be an error: the measure of the preceding verse requires the redoubling of the third consonant, not of the second.

Gdr is the Persian name of the onager or wild ass. Our author has written Jdr.

Literally: she brought forth a son on the bed of Obaid. The Muslim law term: a child born on the bed of such a one, indicates that it was born in wedlock.

The three last denominations indicate that he was considered as a bastard, begot by an unknown father. Zīād was so named by his enemies.

Lit.: she brought him forth on Obaid's bed.

Lit.: the fruit of my heart.

Literally: from the pen to the pulpit. In the manuscripts we read madībīr (pulpits).

That is: you hit precisely on my idea.

The Arabic words have this meaning, but their literal signification is: the two sides (rajāudnai) cannot bandy him about; that is, he is not to be cast from side to side. Lower down, the author explains rajāudnai by its figurative signification.

This is a common proverbial expression; it refers to the practise of leaving the halter on the animal which is sold, in order that the purchaser may lead it away without difficulty.

The edition of Būlāk and some of the manuscripts insert here another copy of Moawia's letter, with a few slight changes in the wording of the text. As these alterations are of no importance, the letter is suppressed in the translation.

The text may also signify: provided they be regular physicians.

After effecting the conquest of Mekka, Muhammad made large presents to some of the vanquished who had embraced his religion. He thus hoped to gain their hearts. (Kūrān, sur. ix, verse 60.)

The author of this work was Abū Bakr az-Zubaidi, see vol. III, p. 82.

According to the Muslim law, persons of different religions cannot inherit one of the other.

Abū 'l-Faraj Muḥammad Ibn Isḥāk, suruṣnāīd Ibn an-Nadīm (the son of the boon companion) and Ibn Abī Yakūb al-Warrātāk (the stationer), was a native of Baghdad. He composed in the year 877 (A. D. 987-8) a sort of encyclopedia, full of literary, bibliographical, biographical, and historical information, to which he gave the title of Fihrist (list or index). The fullest and most satisfactory account of this highly important and rare work has been given by professor Flügel in the thirteenth volume of the German Oriental Society's journal (Zeitschrift der Deutschen Morgenländischen Gesellschaft).

The rest of the story, containing an account of the trial and the evidence of the witnesses, cannot be rendered into English; so it is given here in a Latin translation. That the observations addressed by Omar to al-Mughira may be well understood, it is necessary to recall to mind that the Muslim law punishes adultery by lapidation and that a most formal declaration by four eye-witnesses is requisite for the proof of the crime. Omar, with all his austerity and uprightness, tried every means to save his friend and had the witnesses severely punished although he well knew that their depositions were true. His conduct in that business was very unfair and not such as his great reputation for integrity would have led us to expect.

This proverb is explained by al-Maḍīdī; see Freytag's edition, vol. II, p. 482. The speaker meant to say that he would be a lost man if Zīād, the fourth witness, deposed against him.

These words of Ali's are explained farther on.
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

IBN AT-TATHRIYA

"Abū 'l-Makshūh Yazid Ibn Salama Ibn Samura Ibn Salama tal-Khair Ib., Kushair Ibn Kaab Ibn Rabia Ibn Aāmir Ibn Sasāa, generally known by the surname of Ibn at-Tathriya and a celebrated poet." It is thus that Abū Amr as-Shaibâni (vol. I. p. 182) traces up his genealogy. The appellation of al-Khair (the good) was given to his (great-)grandfather because Kushair had another son who was called Salama tas-Sharr (Salama the bad). The same author states that the name of this Yazid’s father was al-Muntashir Ibn Salama. According to Ibn al-Kalbi (vol. III. p. 608), Yazid was the son of Simma, who was one of the sons of Salama tal-Khair. The learned men of Basra held him to be the son of al-Aawar Ibn Kushair, which person is spoken of by Abū 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn Abd Allah at-Tūsī (4) towards the commencement of Ibn at-Tathriya’s Divân (collected poetical works) of which compilation he was the author. Here are his words: "Ibn at-Tathriya was a poet by nature, intelligent, elegant in language, well-educated and of a noble, manly disposition; never did he incur either reproach or blame. He was liberal, brave, and held, by the nobleness of his family and character, a high rank in his tribe, which was that of Kushair. The Omayyides had him for one of their poets and treated him with great favour." Another author says: "Yazid Ibn at-Tathriya was surnamed al-Muwaddik (the exciter) on account of his handsome face, the beauty of his poetry and the sweetness of his discourses. People used to say that, when he sat in the company of women, he excited them to love. In speaking of a female, the verbs istaudakat (in the tenth form) and wadakat (in the first form) are employed to signify that a female desires the approach of the male. This verb, taken in its primitive signification, was only applied to animals having hoofs, but it was subsequently employed in speaking of human beings. A muwaddik is a person who inspires woman with an inclination for him. He frequented the company of females and liked conversing with them. It is said that he was impotent, incapable of having intercourse with a woman or of begetting children." Abū Tammān at-Tai (vol. I. p. 348) mentions this highly distinguished poet in different places of his Hamdāsa; thus, in the section of amatory poetry (p. 588), he has inserted as his the following lines:
(I think of) that Okailide female whose (ample forms) enveloped in her gown are (in shape, smoothness and colour) like a sand-hill, and whose waist is like a wand. She passes the summer within the tribe’s reserved grounds and, in the afternoon, she makes her siesta at Namâ, in the valley of Arâk. The glance which I cast at her, is it for me a very slight (satis/action)? By no means! a (pleasure coming) from her is never slight. Friend of my soul! thou except whom I have no other sincere friend! O thou for whose sake I have concealed my love, disobeyed (the advice of thy) enemies and placed no faith in the words of those (intri-guers) who interfered against thee! Is there no way of reaching a place near thee, where I may complain of the great distance (which lay between us) and of the dread (in which I stood) of (jealous) foes? May my life be the ransom of thine! Numerous are my enemies, wide is the distance (between us), few are the partisans whom I have near thee. (If I die of grief,) take not the fault thereof upon thyself, for thou art too weak (to bear it); to answer for my blood on the day of judgment would be a heavy responsibility! When I went (to see thee,) I had always a pretext, but now, that I have exhausted all my pretexts, what can I say? I have not every day a business which may take me to your country; every day, I cannot send there a messenger.

Abû 'l-Faraj al-Ispahâni, the author of the Kitâb al-Aghâni, formed also a diwan of Ibn at-Tathiyya’s poetry and attributes to him the following piece:

I should sacrifice my father for the safety of one who inspired me such love that my body is quite extenuated; for one on whom all eyes are fixed and who is the object of my passion! for one whose charms never cease augmenting desire and who is never to be seen unless under the protection of a watchful guard. If I am forbidden to hold converse with her, if I should have to encounter enemies and combats in case I tried to meet her, yet I shall continue to extol the beauty of Laila in eulogiums brilliant with the ornaments of rhyme and sweet to hear from the lips of the public. Dearest Laila! take care not to diminish my strength (by thy disdain) and permit me, though far away and an outcast, to hope that I retain a share in your affection. Let me still give lasting trouble to jealous spies, as they have given constant annoyance to me. If you fear that you cannot support the bitterness of love, restore to me my heart; our visiting place is near.

The same author attributes to Ibn at-Tathiyya the piece which here follows:

I should sacrifice my life for the safety of one whose cool hand, if passed over my breast, would heal my pains. (I devote myself) for her who always fears me and whom I always fear; for her who never grants me a favour and from whom I never ask one.

Abû 'l-Hasan at-Tusi gives the following verses as Ibn at-Tathiyya’s:

I should blush before God were I to be seen succeeding to another in the affections of a female or replaced therein by a rival. (I should be ashamed) to quench my thirst at a lake of which the borders are become like a beaten path, or to be a suitor for such love as you could grant, love too weak to endure.
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

I met these verses elsewhere and found that, after the first, was inserted another which I give here:

Water filled with dregs and troubled by the frequent visits of those who come to drink inspires me with disgust.

At-Tūsi gives also the following verses as his:

Many hope for a thing and cannot obtain it, whilst it is granted to others who sit (quietly and make no effort). One man toils for a favour and another receives it; he to whom it is granted had given up all hopes when it came.

The same author extracts this passage from a piece of verse composed by our poet:

I persist in turning away from her, though much against my will; and, when she is absent, I avoid listening to those who saw her or heard of her. Love for her came to me before I knew what love was, and it found a lasting abode in a heart till then unoccupied.

He gives also the following verses by the same poet:

And (I pronounced) a word which, when she (whom I loved) accused me of numerous crimes, dissipated every foul imputation. (I said) : "If I am innocent, you do me wrong; if guilty, I have repented and merit pardon." When she persisted in rejecting my excuses and let herself be pushed to the utmost extreme by the lies of vile defamers, I discovered that indifference could console me when suffering from her disdain, and I no longer wished to approach one who refused me her love. I acted like the man who, afflicted with a malady, looks for a physician and, not finding one, becomes his own doctor.

The piece which we now insert is given as Ibn at-Tathriya's by Abū Abd Allah al-Marzubâni in his Mojam as-Shuward (vol. III. p. 67), and is also to be found in the Hamāṣa (page 584); but some persons attribute it to Abd Allah Ibn ad-Dumaina al-Khathami (2):

- I should sacrifice my life and my family for the safety of her who, when unjustly wronged, knew not what to answer. She tried not to justify herself as one would do who is innocent, but remained astounded, so that people said: "How very suspicious!"

In the same work, al-Marzubâni gives also as his the piece (which begins) as follows (3):


BIographiesal DICTIONARY.

Though you long to see Raiya, you postpone the day of your meeting with Raiya! and yet you both belong to a branch of the same tribe!

I must here observe that, in this piece, the poet has attained the height of tender-ness and elegance. It is given by Abu Tammam in his Hamâsa, towards the commencement of the section which contains the amatory poetry. That author attributes it, however, to as-Simma Ibn Abd Allah al-Kushairi; God knows if he be right! Abu Amr Yusuf Ibn Abu al-Barr, the author of the Istidh, which work contains the history of the Prophet's Companions,—we shall give his life (wa sayâti athikruhu),—says in (another work of his), the Bahija tal-Majdilis (the beauties of sittings, or conferences): "As-Simma Ibn Abd Allah Al-Kushairi composed the following lines:

"Had you remembered me as faithfully as I remember you, I declare that you would not have refrained from tears. She replied: "By Allah! 'tis quite the contrary; (I ever remem-
ber you and the sadness of) that recollection would burst even a solid rock (4)!

Farther on, the same writer says: "Most of the literati consider him to be the "author of: Though you long to see Raiya." He then gives all the verses, just as they are to be found in the Hamâsa, and adds: "Some persons however attribute them "to Kais Ibn Darih (5); others consider them as the production of al-Majnûn (6), "but the majority say that as-Simma is the author. God knows best!" From this we see the difference of opinion respecting the person who composed these verses; was it Ibn at-Tathriya, or as-Simma Ibn Abd Allah al-Kushairi, or Kais Ibn Darih, or al-Majnûn? God knows best! — Al-Marzubani mentions our poet in his Muwath-thak (7) and says: "Abu 'I'-Jaish recited to me the following lines as the composi-
tion of Yazid Ibn at-Tathriya:

"After nightfall, my camel moaned through (grief and) longing for its companion; O what "dismay I felt, whilst her moans cast despondency into my heart! I said to her: Suffer with "patience; the female of every couple must, sooner or later, be separated from the male."

He gives also the following verses and attributes them to the same author:

How can I receive consolation (when separated from you) who are the most amiable of beings that walk (on earth)? My soul is afflicted and your dwelling—place far away. My life is in your hands, if you wish to take it; my soul you can heal, if you choose to heal it. When
you shewed no compassion for a man afflicted, you knew full well that, were I to visit a distant land, my soul should never admit of consolation and forget you.

Here is another piece cited by him as our poet’s:

When I went (to visit her), I adorned myself not with ornaments, through fear of hostile spies; but she appeared in all her beauty. I never salute her first and, to escape their malice, I never ask them how she is.

The same author gives a great many more pieces composed by this poet, but we may confine ourselves to what is inserted here. — In the Ansâb al-Ashrâf (genealogies of the Sharifs), the author, Abû Bakr Ahmad Ibn Yahya Ibn Jâbir al-Balâdori (vol. I. p. 438) says, after relating the events of the year 126 (A. D. 743-4) and the death of the Omâyiye khalif al-Wâlid Ibn Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik Ibn Marwân:

"Whilst those things were going on, al-Mundalith Ibn Idris of the tribe of Hanîfa was killed and, with him, Yazid Ibn al-Tathriya (8). This happened near a village called al-Falaj and situated, I believe, in (the province of) Yamâma." — I then found the following passage in the work which Abû Bakr al-Hâzimi. (vol III. p. 11) composed on the names of places: "Falaj is a large village belonging to the Banû Jaada and having a pulpit (9). It is also called Falaj al-Aflâj, and is situated in Yamâma." — According to another author, Falaj is at six days' journey from Hajar, the capital of al-Bahrain, and nine days' journey from Mekka. — Abû Ishak az-Zajjâj (vol. I. p. 28) says, in that part of his Madni 'l-Korân (rhetorical figures of the Korân) which contains his observations on the sourât of al-Forkân (the 25th): "Ar-Rass, a valley in Yamâma, is named also Falaj." From what he says, this may be the village of which we are now treating. A place (of nearly the same name) is mentioned in a verse which we here give:

They whose blood was shed at Falaj were the men! the best of men, O Omm Khâlid!

But, in this name, the vowel a is omitted after the l. It is a valley on the road leading from Basra to the Hima (or reserved grounds) of Dariya, which is a village near Mekka. A Falja is mentioned in (the following passage of) a poem composed by an Arab of the desert:

Fair are the landmarks of Falja at morning, and fair the tents set up on its hills, at either side (wa khoimun rowâbi hillataha 'lamunassabu). They say that the soil of Falja is salt and the water brackish; 'tis true, but the water, though salt, is sweet unto the heart.
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

Falja is the name of two places, one lying between Mekka and Basra, and the other in (the valley of) al-Akit. — The combat (which cost Ibn at-Tathriya his life) took place in the year of al-Walid Ibn Yazid the Omaiyye's death. Now, al-Walid was killed on Thursday, the 27th of the latter Jumâda, 126 (16th April, A. D. 744), at al-Bakhrâ. Abû 'l-Hasan at-Tûsî says, in speaking of this combat, that the standard was borne by Yazid Ibn at-Tathriya. When al-Mundalîth was killed and his partisans were routed, Ibn at-Tathriya stood his ground with the standard. He was dressed in a silk gown which got entangled in an oshara-tree (asclepia gigantea), — The oshara is a thorny plant and produces gum. — This accident caused him to fall, and the Banû Hanifa then kept striking him till he died. This combat is mentioned subsequently to the account of al-Walid's death and in the same year; so, the death of Ibn at-Tathriya must be placed between that of al-Walid and the end of the year 126. Abû 'l-Faraj al-Ispahâni says, towards the commencement of the volume (diwân) in which he has given the collection of Ibn at-Tathriya's poetical works, that he was killed by the Banû Hanifa under the khalifat of the Abbasides; but the former indication is nearer to the truth. The following elegy was composed on the poet's death by al-Kuhaif Ibn Omair (10) Ibn Sulaim an-
Nida Ibn Abd Allah al-Okaili:

Let the noble sons of Kushair weep for the loss of their chief and their hero. O Abû 'l-Maksâb; now that you are gone, who is there to protect (us) who is there to hurry on the (war-)
camels whose feet are already used and worn by travel?

Al-Kuhaif composed also a lament on the death of al-Walid Ibn Yazid. The fol-
lowing verse on the death of Ibn at-Tathriya was composed by his brother Thaur
Ibn Salama:

I see that the tamarisk, my neighbour in the valley of al-Akit, still holds itself erect (and
yields not to grief), though fate has taken Yazid by surprise and overwhelmed him.

This verse belongs to a choice piece of poetry which Abû Tammâm has inserted
in the Hamûsa (page 468). He attributes it to Zainab Bint at-Tathriya, but others
say that it was composed by the poet's mother. At-Tûsî states that the combat
above-mentioned was fought at al-Akit. We find in Yakût al-Hamawi's Mushtarik
that there were ten places of this name. According to al-Asmâî (vol. II. p. 123)
the Aîkka (which word is the plural of akik) are valleys in which there is running
water. In enumerating the places bearing this name, Yākūt says: "The third is "the Akik of Aārid, in al-Yamāma. It is a large valley near al-Arama, and into it "flow all the streams of al-Aārid. It abounds in sources and villages." He then says: "Al-Akik, a town in al-Yamāma, belongs to the Banū Okail. It is called "the Akik of Namira and lies on the road leading from al-Yamāma to Yemen." The valley of al-Akik mentioned in the foregoing verse, is perhaps the first of the places thus indicated, or perhaps the second. God knows best! — Ibn al-Tathriya was called Abū 'l-Makshūh because he had on his kashh a scar caused by a burn. The word kashh signifies the side. — Yazid's mother was called at-Tathriya(11) and he was surnamed after her. She was one of the children of Tathr Ibn Anz Ibn Wāil. "The word tathr signifies fertility and abundance of milk. It is said that "she was born in a year of which that was the distinguishing character, but others "contradict this statement and say that she gave birth to her son in a year of that "kind. Others again relate that she toiled in extracting butter from milk and was "named at-Tathriya because the tathr of milk is its butter." This account is, in itself, quite objectionable: all say that the poet's mother was of the family of Tathr Ibn Anz, whence we must conclude that she was named after that tribe, and declare that the words "she was born in a year of such a character" or "she gave birth "to him in a year of such a kind" or "she extracted butter from milk" are here quite inapplicable. We submit these remarks to the reader; but it is evident that there were two opinions on the subject; according to one, she was named after her tribe and, according to the other, for the reasons stated in the second place. — A great number of poems are attributed to Zainab Bint at-Tathriya, the sister of Yazid. Such is the eulogistic piece which we here give:

He is proud when you go to ask of him a favour, and he bestows on you whatever he holds in his hand. Had he nothing to give but his life, he would bestow it; so let those who apply to him take care lest (by taking away his life), they offend God.

These verses have been attributed to Ziād al Aajam (vol. I. p. 631). The second is also to be found in the diwān of Abū Tammām's poems, where we meet with it in the kastāda which begins by these words:

Vernal abode! thou of which the inhabitants have departed! it is, alas! too true that the rains (?) have effected upon thee that (destruction) which they intended.

But, in all that, God best knows the truth!
(1) Abū l-Hasan Ali Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Sīhān at-Taimi (of the tribe of Taim Allah) at-Tūsī (a native of Tūs), was a man of learning and a narrator of anecdotes concerning the (Arabian) tribes, of poems and of (the adventures of) heroes (fābāl). He met (and was taught by) the great masters (mashdikīh) who professed at Basra. The preceptor whose sitting he most frequented and from whom he received the greater part of his information was Ibn al-Abrābī. (Pheres.) — Ibn al-Abrābī died A. H. 291 (A. D. 894). (See vol. III, p. 25.) We here learn from Ibn Khallikān that at-Tūsī collected the poems of Ibn at-Tathiriya into a diary.

(2) Abd Allah Ibn ad-Dumaina al-Khathami was one of the early Muslim poets and lived probably in the first century of the Hijra. Having learned that Mużāhim Ibn Kais of the tribe of Salūq was paying court to his wife, he assassinated the lover, somothered the woman some time afterwards, and then killed his young daughter because she wept for her mother. He was detained for a long time in the prison of Tahdla (page 232 of this vol.) but was finally liberated because the charge could not be made out against him. At a later period he was killed by the son of him whom he had murdered. — (Aghdānī, Shāh Shāhīd al-Moghānī).

(3) This piece consists of nine verses and is to be found in the Hamdsrā, page 538.

(4) Literally: Nay, by Allah! a recollection which, if poured upon the solid rock, it (the rock) would split asunder.

(5) Abū Zaid Kais Ibn Darth al-ʿLibīhī, belonged to a beduin family which lived in the desert outside of Medina, and was the foster-brother of al-Husayn, the son of Ali. He married Lubna, the daughter of al-Hubabb, but as their union was not fruitful, he was forced by his father to divorce her after ten years' cohabitation. He then took another wife of the same name, but sore against his will and, soon after, he died of grief for being separated from his first love. He composed on Lubna a number of poems, passages of which are given in the article of the Kitāb al-Aghdāni wherein his history is related. An abridged and tolerably fair translation of the prose account offered by the Aghdānī will be found in the second volume, page 412, of von Hammer-Purgstall's Literaturgeschichte der Araber. The author of the Nujām states that Ibn Darth died on or about the year 65 (A. D. 684-5).

(6) Al-Majnūn (the insane, the possessive) is the surname by which was designated a poet whose love for Laila became proverbial. His name, it is said, was Kais Ibn al-Malāh, but his existence has been generally doubted. De Sacy, in his Anthologie grammaticale arabe, page 150, has a note on this subject. But that as it may, a number of amatory poems pass under the name of al-Majnūn.

(7) The orthography of this name is not certain.

(8) It appears, from the Kitāb al-Aghdānī, that the tribe of Hanifa and that of Okail had, for some time, been carrying on against each other a war of surprises and predatory incursions. In one of these encounters Ibn at-Tathiriya lost his life.

(9) A town cannot have a pulpit on a cathedral mosque, unless it be the capital of a province or of a considerable district. The governor, who is also the khalif's representative, has alone the privilege of pronouncing the khotba from the pulpit.

(10) The Paris ms. of the Aghdānī reads Ḥimyar instead of Omair. In this translation the reading of Ibn Khallikān and of the author of the Kāmūs is adopted. He history of al-Kuhaif, who was a contemporary of Ibn at-Tathiriya and belonged to the same tribe as he, offers nothing deserving of being noticed here.

(11) According to the author of the Kāmūs, this name should be pronounced at-Tathariya, with an a after the š.
YAKUB AL-MAJISHUN

Abū Yusuf Yakūb, the son of Abū Salama Dinār, or Māmūn, according to some, bore the surname of al-Majishūn and stood allied (by clientship) to the Banū Taim, a branch of tribe of Kuraish (al-Kurashi at-Taimi). He was a mawla of the Munkadirs, a family of Medina. Traditions were taught to him by Ibn Omar (vol. I. p. 567), Omar Ibn Abd al-Azīz (afterwards khalīf), Muhammad Ibn al-Munkadir (vol. II. p. 119) and Abd ar-Rahmān Ibn Hormuz al-Aaraj (1); traditions were taught on his authority by his sons Yusuf and Abd al-Azīz Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Abī Salama. "Al-Majishūn," says Yakūb Ibn Shaiba (2), "was a mawla of the Hudair family (3)." When Omar Ibn Abd al-Azīz was governor of Medina, Yakūb al-Majishūn knew him and used to converse with him familiarly. Omar, on his elevation to the khalifate, said to al-Majishūn, who had come to visit him: "I have given up your acquaintance, because I have given up wearing silk clothes," and then turned away from him (4). Muhammad Ibn Saad (vol. III p. 64) says, in his Tabakāt, that Yakūb Ibn Shaiba related as follows: "Musāb (vol. I. p. 186) said: Al-Majishūn used to side with Rabia tār-Rāi (vol. I. p. 517) against Abū 'z-Zinād (vol. I. p. 580), because the latter was hostile to Rabia, and that Abū 'z-Zinād was heard to say: 'What passes between me and Ibn al-Majishūn is similar to that which is related of the wolf. That animal used to enter into a village and devour children. The inhabitants, at last, assembled and went after him, but he fled away and they gave up the pursuit. One of them, a dealer in earthen ware, continued, however, to follow him, on which the wolf stopped and said to him: 'I can excuse the others (for pursuing me), but what have I done to you? I never broke a single pot of yours!'" Now, as for that 'al-Majishūn, I never broke any of his kabars (tambourines) or of his bar-bats (guitars)!'" Al-Majishūn's son related as follows: "The soul of al-Majishūn was taken up aloft (i.e. his animation was suspended) and we placed the body on a bench, so that it might be washed (according to the prescription of the law). We then informed the people that we were going to carry forth the corpse (to the grave), when the washer (of the dead) came in and perceived, whilst he was
"operating, that an artery was still beating in the lower part of the foot. He came
"out to us and said: 'I find an artery still beating; so, I advise you not to hasten
"the interment.' On this, we induced the people to retire by informing them of
"what we had seen and, the next morning, when they returned, the washer went
"in and found the artery beating as before. We again made excuses to the people,
"and, during three days, my father remained in the same state. He then sat up
"and said: 'Bring me some porridge.' We brought it and, when had supped it
"up, we asked him if he could tell us what he had seen? He replied: 'I can;
"when my soul was taken away, the angel mounted with me to the heaven of this
"earth and ordered the door to be opened. It was opened to him and he pro-
"ceeded (successively) through the other heavens till he reached the seventh.
"There he was asked whom he had brought with him, and he answered: 'Al-
"Majishûn.' On this, a voice said to him: 'He has not yet received permission
"to come here, he has still to live such and such a number of years and of
"months and of days and of hours.' Whilst I was a carrying down, I saw the
"Prophet, with Abû Bakr on his right hand, Omar on his left, and Omar Ibn Abd
"al-Azzîz (sitting) at his feet. I said to the angel who was with me: 'Tell me
"who is that?' and he answered: 'Omar Ibn Abd al-Azzîz.' On this, I said:
"'He is allowed to sit very near the Apostle of God'" and I received this answer:
"'He acted uprightly in an age of perversity, as the two others did in an age
"of righteousness.'" This relation is given by Yakûb Ibn Shaiba in his ar-
"ticle on al-Majishûn. Abû 'l-Hasan Muhammad Ibn Ahmad al-Kauwâs al-Warrâk
states that Yakûb al-Majishûn died in the year 164 (A. D. 780-1). — I have
taken all this information from the work designed, by the hâfiz Abû 'l-Kâsim
Ibn Asâkir (vol. II. p. 252), to serve as a (biographical) history of Damascus. — Ibn
Kutaiba says, in the article on Muhammad Ibn al-Munkadir which he has given in
the Kitâb al-Mâdîf (5), that one of Ibn al-Munkadir's mawlas was Yakûb Ibn
Majishûn. He states also that he (Yakûb) was a legist, and then adds: "Al-Mâ-
'jishûn had a brother named Abd Allah Ibn Abi Salama, whose son, Abd al-Azzîz
'Ibn Abd Allah, was surnamed Abû Abd Allah. He (al-Majishûn) died at Bagh-
dadd; (the khalîf) al-Mahdi said over him the funeral service and had him buried
in the Kuraish cemetery. This was in the year 164." — We have already given
in this work an article on his (nephew's) son and mentioned there what has been said
by the learned respecting the signification of al-Majishûn; it is therefore needless to
repeat their words here. — In the expression: "I never broke any of his kabars or "of his barbats," occur two words which require explanation. The kabar is a drum having only one face (or head), and the barbat is a sort of lute (aūd), the musical instrument so called. Its name is derived from bar, which signifies breast in Persian, joined to the (Arabic) word batt (duck), the well-known fowl so called. As this instrument bears a resemblance to the breast of a duck, it was so denominated. In Arabic, it is called al-aūd and al-mizhar; in Persian, it bears the name of barbat, as we have just said.

(1) Abū Dawūd Abū-Rahmān Ibn Hormuz, surnamed al-Aarsaj (the lame), was a native of Medina and a mawla of a Kuraish family, that of al-Hārīsh Ibn Abī al-Muttalib, or that of Omar Ibn Abī Rablà. He handed down a quantity of traditions, most of which he had received from Abū Hurairah (vol. 1, p. 570). Traditions were given on his authority, which was considered as perfectly sure. He died at Alexandria, A. H. 117 (A. D. 735-6). — (Dahabi’s Tahālib.)

(2) Abū Yūsuf Yakūb Ibn Shaiba Ibn Asūr, of the tribe of Sādus and a native of Basra, fixed his residence at Baghdad and composed a musnad, or collection of authenticated Traditions, which work was very extensive, but remained unfinished. As a Traditionist, he was considered to be a good authority. His Musnad formed five volumes, and a collection of traditions, which he traced up to Abū Hurairah, filled two hundred quires of paper. He was nominated kādd of Irāk but did not fill that office. His death took place in the first Rabī, 246 (May-June, A. D. 860). — (Dahabi’s Hудfs.)

(3) Al-Munkadir Ibn Abī Allah, the father of Muhammad Ibn al-Munkadir, was the son of al-Hudair. — (Kāmīr.)

(4) It appears from this and from an anecdote related lower down, that al-Majishūn was a man of pleasure who dressed finely and was fond of music.

(5) See the Kūd̄ al-Mad̄rīf, page 234.

---

THE KADI ABU YUSUF

The kādī Abū Yūsuf Yakūb al-Ansārī (a descendant of one of the proselytes of Medina) was the son of Ibrāhim, the son of Habīb, the son of Khunāis, the son of Sa’d, the son of Hābītā, who was one of the Prophet’s Ansārīs. "Sa’d was known amongst the Ansārīs by the surname of Ibn Hābītā (the son of Hābītā); being thus denomi-
Biographical Dictionary

273

nated after his mother. Malik, the father of Habta, belonged to the family of Amr Ibn Aûf the Ansarian. Aûf, the father of Saad Ibn Habta, was the son Bahir, who was the son of Moawia, the son of Salma, the son of Bajila, who was allied, by an oath of fraternity, to the family of Amr Ibn Aûf the Ansarian. It is thus that the genealogy of Saad Ibn Habta is traced up in the Istiâb (1). The Khatib Abû Bakr al-Baghdâdi (vol. I. p. 75) says, in the historical work composed by him, that Saad was the son of Bahir, the son of Moawia, the son of Kuhâfa, the son of Balîl, the son of Sadûs, the son of Abd Manâf, the son of Abu Osâma, the son of Shahma, the son of Saad, the son of Abd Allah, the son of Faddâd, the son of Thalaba, the son of Moawia, the son of Zaid, the son of al-Ghauth, the son of Bajila. Abû Yûsuf, a kâdi and a native of Kûfa, was one of Abû Hanifa’s (vol. III. p. 555) disciples, a legist, a learned scholar and a ḥâfiz (possessing great traditional information). He heard Traditions from the lips of Abû Ishak as-Shaiîbani (2), Sulaimân at-Tâmi (3), Yahya Ibn Said al-Ansâri (vol. II. p. 549), al-Aâmash (vol. I. p. 587), Hishâm Ibn Orwa (vol. III. p. 606), Atâ Ibn as-Saîb (4), Muhammad Ibn Ishak Ibn Yasâr (vol. II. p. 677) and other Traditionists of the same class; he attended also the sittings (or lectures) of Muhammad Ibn Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Abi Laila (vol. II. p. 584) and afterwards, those of Abû Hanifa an-Nomân Ibn Thâbit (vol. III. p. 555). The system of jurisprudence taught by Abû Hanifa was that which he preferred, though he differed, in many points, from that master. Traditions were delivered on his authority by Muhammad Ibn al-Hasan as-Shaibînî al-Hanâfi (vol. II. p. 590), Bishr Ibn al-Walid al-Kindi (5), Ali Ibn al-Jaâd (vol. I. p. 476), Ahmad Ibn Hanbal (vol. I. p. 44), Yahya Ibn Main (page 24 of this vol.) and others. Whilst he resided at Baghdad, he acted there as a kâdi during the reigns of three khâlifs, al-Mahdi, al-Hâdi, the son of al-Mahdi, and Hârûn ar-Rashîd. By the latter he was treated with great honour and respect, and he continued to enjoy under him the highest favour. He was the first who bore the title of Kâdi ’l-Kuddât [the kâdi of the kâdis, Chief Justice], and it is said that he was also the first who changed the dress of the learned (the ulemâ) and gave it that form which it retains to this day. Before his time, persons of all classes dressed in the same manner, so that they had nothing in their attire to distinguish them one from the other. Yahya Ibn Main, Ahmad Ibn Hanbal and Ali Ibn al-Madînî (vol. II. p. 242) agreed in considering him a sure and trustworthy Traditionist. Abû Omar Ibn Abd al-Barr, the author of the Istiâb, says, in his work entitled Kitâb al-Intîkâh fî fâdîl
ath-thaldha tal-Fukahd (the choice selection, treating of the merits of the three logists) (6), that Abū Yūsuf was eminent as a hāfiz, his memory being so retentive that he would attend the lessons of a Traditionist, learn from him fifty or sixty Traditions, then stand up and go to dictate them to other scholars. The quantity of Traditions which he knew by heart was very great. "Some Traditionists," says Ibn Jarir at-Tabari (vol. II. p. 597), "mistrusted the Traditions delivered by him, because he was much inclined to resolve points of law by rational deduction (rādī), drawing consequences from the maxims of the divine law; besides which they disapproved of his having frequented men in power (sultān) and undertaken to fill the duties of a kādī (7)."

— The Khatib Abū Bakr states, in his history of Baghdad, that Abū Yūsuf related as follows: "When I first applied to the study of Traditions and law, I was very poor and ill dressed. One day, whilst I was at Abū Hanifa's lectures, my father came, took me out and said to me: 'My son! do not try to march in step with Abū Hanifa; he has always his bread ready baked, whilst you are in need, without the means of subsistence.' In consequence of this, I abstained from the pursuit of knowledge, thinking it preferable to shew obedience to my father. Abū Hanifa, having remarked my absence, asked what had become of me; so, I recommenced attending his sittings. The first day of my appearing there after a considerable absence, he said to me: 'What kept you away from us so long?' and I answered: 'Seeking a livelihood and shewing obedience to a father.' I then took my place and, when the class broke up, he handed to me a purse saying: 'Make use of this.' I looked into it and found there one hundred dirhems (£2. 10 s). He then said: 'Follow my class regularly and, when you have emp tied that, let me know.' I attended the class assiduously, and soon after, he gave me another hundred. From that time, he continued to repeat his gifts without my ever informing him of my penury or of my having spent what I had received. Whenever my money was gone, is was as if he had been informed of the circumstance, (and these acts of beneficence continued) till I was able to do without assistance and had become rich." The Khatib then says: "According to another statement, Abū Yūsuf was a child when his father died, and it was his mother who disapproved of his attending Abū Hanifa's lectures." Further on, the same author gives a relation which he traces up, through an unbroken series of narrators, to Ali Ibn al-Jaad (8), who said that the kādī Abū Yūsuf made to him the following statement: "My father died, leaving me an infant in my mother's arms. Some time
"after, she put me to service with a fuller, and I used to leave (the shop of) my master and go to Abū Hanīfa's class, where I would sit down and listen. My mother sometimes came, took me by the hand and led me back to the fuller. My assiduity in attending Abū Hanīfa's lessons and my zeal for acquiring knowledge interested him in my favour. My mother finding, at length, that those escapades of mine were too frequent and too long, said to him: 'You alone are the ruin of this boy; he is an orphan possessing nothing; I procure him food with the produce of my spindle, and my sole hope is that he may soon be able to gain a penny for his own use.' Abū Hanīfa answered her in these terms: 'Go away, you silly talkative woman! your son is here learning how to eat 'falādaj (9) with pistachio oil.' On this she turned away from him and went off, saying: 'You are an old dotard and have lost your wits.' From that time I attended Abū Hanīfa's lessons regularly and, with the help of God, I acquired learning, rose in the world, obtained the kadiship, was admitted into the society of ar-Rashīd and ate at his table. One day, some /falādaj was set before ar-Rashīd and he said to me: 'Abū Yakūb! eat of this; it is not always that the like of it is prepared for us.' I said to him: 'What is it? Commander of the faithful!' He replied: 'Falādaj with pistachio oil.' On hearing this, I laughed. 'What makes you laugh?' said he. I answered: 'Commander of the faithful! it is all right (it is nothing).' He said: 'You must tell me,' and he insisted to such a degree that I related to him the whole story, from beginning to end. It pleased him so much that he exclaimed: 'By Allah! science is profitable in this world and in the next. May the mercy of God light upon Abū Hanīfa! he could see with the eye of his intelligence that which was invisible to the eye of his head.'" — Ali Ibn al-Muhassin al-Tanūkhī (vol. II. p. 567) states that his father said to him: My father related to me as follows: 'Abū Yūsuf's intimacy with ar-Rashīd was brought about in the following manner. The former came to Baghdad subsequently to the death of Abū Hanīfa, and a certain kāid (military chief), who was afraid of having committed a perjury, was then looking out for a mufti (casuist) whom he might consult on the matter. Abū Yūsuf being brought to him, declared that the oath was not infringed, and the kāid bestowed on him some gold pieces and procured for him a house near his own. Some days after, the kāid went to visit ar-Rashīd and, finding him in low spirits, asked him the cause of his sadness. (The khalif) replied: 'What afflicts me is a matter which concerns
"religion; look out for a legist whom I may consult." The *kadid* brought him toward Abū Yūsuf. Here is the latter's account of what passed: 'When I entered the alley which lies between the (two lines of) houses (forming the khalif's residence), I saw a handsome youth of a princely appearance, confined in a chamber. He made signs to me with his finger as if asking me to assist him, but I did not understand what he wanted. When I was brought into the presence of ar-Rashīd and stood before him (waiting for what he had to say), he asked me my name and I answered: 'Yākūb; may God favour the Commander of the faithful!' — 'What say you, said he, of an *imām* (khalif) who saw a man commit adultery? must he inflict on him the punishment fixed by law (10)?' I replied: 'No.' When I pronounced that word, ar-Rashīd prostrated himself on the floor, so it struck me that he had seen a member of his family committing that act, and that the young man who made signs to me as if imploring my assistance was the guilty person. Ar-Rashīd then asked me on what authority I had pronounced my decision and I answered: 'From those words of the Prophet: 'Reject (the application of) penalties in cases of doubt. Now, in this case there is a doubt which suppresses the penalty.' On this, Ar-Rashīd said: 'How can there be doubt, since the act was seen.' I answered: 'Seeing is not more effective than knowing for authorising (the application of) a penalty, and the simple knowing (of a crime) is not sufficient to authorise its punishment. Besides, no one is allowed to do justice to himself even though he knew (that the right was on his side). The khalif made a second prostration and then ordered me a large sum of money. He told me also to remain in the house (the palace?), and I did not leave it till a present was brought to me from the young man, another from his mother, and others from the persons attached to his service. That was the foundation of my fortune. I continued to remain at the house and one servant would come to consult me on a case of conscience; another, to ask my advice, and I at length rose so high in ar-Rashīd's favour that he invested me with the kadiship (of Baghdad)." — I must here observe that this statement is in contradiction with that which I have already given and in which it is said that he held the kadiship under three of the khalifs. God knows the truth! Talha Ibn Muhammad Ibn Jaafar (11) said: 'The history of Abū Yūsuf is well known and his great merit is evident to all. He was Abū Hanīfa's pupil; the ablest legist of that time, and none of his contemporaries surpassed him
"(in talent). He attained the highest point in learning, in wisdom, in authority
and in influence. It was he who, the first, composed works on the fundamentals
of jurisprudence, according to the Hanifite system. He dictated and developed
the problems of which that science treats, and he spread the doctrines of Abû
Hanifa over all parts of the world." — "Of all Abû Hânîfa's disciples, there
was none," said Amnâr Ibn Abî Mâlik, "who could be compared with Abû
Yûsuf. Had it not been for him, no one would ever have heard of Abû Hanifa
or of Muhammad Ibn Abî Laîla (vol. II. p. 584). It was he who put their op-
inions into circulation and spread abroad their learning." — Muhammad Ibn
al-Hasan (vol. II. p. 590), one of Abû Hanifa's disciples, said: "Abû Yûsuf was
taken so dangerous ill, whilst Abû Hanifa was still living, that fears were enter-
tained for his life. Abû Hanifa then went to visit him and we went with him.
On retiring he put down his hand on the threshold of the door and said: "If that
youth die, the most learned of those who are on that" — pointing to the ground,
— will disappear." — Abû Yûsuf related the following anecdote: "Al-Aâmash
(vol. I. p. 587) questioned me on a point of law and I resolved it for him. 'Where
'did you find that solution?' said he. I replied: 'I took it from one of the
'Traditions which you taught us;' and then repeated it to him. 'Yakûb.'
said he, 'I learned that tradition by heart before your father ever consorted with
'your mother, but I did not understand its application till now!'" — Hilal Ibn
Yahya (12) related as follows: "Abû Yûsuf knew by heart the explanations of the
'Korân, the history of the (Moslim) wars and of the encounters which took place
between the Arabs of the desert; the science of which he knew the least was that
'of law. Amongst the disciples of Abû Hanifa, there was not one to be compared
'to Abû Yûsuf." — In the work entitled al-Jâlîs wa'l-Anîs, the author, Abû 'l-
Faraj al-Mu'âfa an-Nahrâwâni (vol. III. p. 374) states that as-Shâfi'î (vol. II. p. 569)
made the following narration: The kâdi Abû Yûsuf absented himself from Abû Hanîfa's lessons for some days, in order to hear Muhammad Ibn Ishak (vol. II. p. 677)
and others relate (traditional accounts of) the expeditions (undertaken by the early
Moslims). When he returned to Abû Hanîfa's lessons, the latter said to him: "Abû
'Yûsuf! tell me the name of Goliath's standard-bearer." Abû Yûsuf replied:
'You are an imâm (a master of the first rank); yet, if you do not abstain from
making such questions, I declare by Allah! that I shall ask you in the presence of
'all the class, which of the combats occurred first, that of Badr or that of Ohod?
"I am sure that you do not know which of them preceded the other." Abù Hanîfa then let him alone. — It is stated in the same work that Ali Ibn al-Jaâd related the following anecdote: "The ḥâdî Abû Yûsuf was one day writing a letter, and a man who was (sitting) at his right hand kept looking over what he was writing. Abû Yûsuf perceived this and, when he had finished, he turned round to the man and asked him if he had remarked any faults in the letter. The other answered: 'By Allah! not a single word mispellet.' Abû Yûsuf then said to him: 'I am much obliged to you for sparing me trouble of revising my letter,' and recited this verse:

"One would think, from his bad education, that he had been converted to Islamism by (the lecture of that chapter in the book of Traditions which is entitled: On) bad manners (13)."

Hammâd, the son of Abû Hanîfa (vol. I. p. 469) said: "I saw Abû Hanîfa one day, with Abû Yûsuf on his right hand and Zufar (14) on his left. These two were discussing a question and one could not advance an assertion without being refuted by the other. This continued till after the hour of noon, when the mueddin called to prayers. Abû Hanîfa then rose his hand, clapped Zufar on the thigh and said: 'Hope not to obtain the first place as a legist in any town where Abû Yûsuf may be;' declaring thus that Abû Yûsuf had the advantage over Zufar. After the death of Abû Yûsuf, Zufar had not his equal among the disciples of Abû Hanîfa." — The following anecdote was related by Tâhir Ibn Ahmad az-Zubairî: "There was a man who attended Abû Hanîfa's lessons without ever uttering a word. Abû Yûsuf at length said to him: 'Do you never intend to speak (and ask a question)?' The man answered: 'By no means; and I shall now ask you at what time he who keeps a fast should break it?' Abû Yûsuf replied: 'When the sun has set.' — 'Well' said the man, 'and if he do not set till midnight?' Abû Yûsuf laughed and said: You were right in remaining silent, and I was wrong in asking you to speak.' He then pronounced the following verses as applicable to the circumstance:

"I admired the indifference of that man who was so careless about himself, and wondered at the silence of a person who knew well how to speak. For the indifferent man, silence serves as a veil (to hide his ignorance), and for him who can speak well it is a docket indicating his talent."
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

One of Abū Yūsuf's sayings was: "Associating with one who fears neither disgrace nor shame, will be the cause of disgrace and shame on the day of the resurrection." — He said also: "There are three chief blessings: that of being a Moalim, without which, no other blessing is complete; that of health, without which there is no pleasure in life, and that of wealth, without which life cannot be completely enjoyed." Ali Ibn al-Ja'ad related that he heard Abū Yūsuf say: "Science will not give to you a portion of itself unless you give yourself totally up to it; and if you do so for the purpose of obtaining (15) a mere portion, you commit a grave error." — Abū Yūsuf was one day riding, and his servant-boy was running on foot after him. A man then said to him: "Does the law permit you to make your boy run after you and not give him whereon to ride?" Abū Yūsuf replied: "Do you admit that I may consider my boy in the light of a muqāri (16)?" The other replied: "I admit that you may." — "Well," said Abū Yūsuf, "in that case, he must run at my side, as a muqāri should do." — Yahya Ibn Abd as-Samad relates that al-Hādi, the Commander of the faithful, brought before the kādi Abū Yūsuf a suit relative to a garden of which he was in possession. His claim, at first sight, appeared just, but it was, in reality, ill founded. (Some time after,) he said to the kādi: "What have you done in the affair which we submitted to your judgment?" The kādi answered: "The Commander of the faithful's adversary requires of me that I make you declare, upon oath, that your witnesses have truly deposed." — "Do you think that he has a right to do so?" said al-Hādi. — Ibn Abi Laila is of that opinion," said the kādi. "Then," replied al-Hādi, "let the garden be restored to the man." This was a device imagined by the kādi (in order to get out of the difficulty), for he knew that al-Hādi would not swear. — Bishr Ibn al-Walīd al-Kindī states that the kādi Abū Yūsuf made to him the following relation: "Yesterday evening, when I had got into bed, I heard a violent knocking at the door. I wrapped the sheet about me and went to see who was there, and lo! it was Harthama Ibn Aâyān (17). I saluted him and he merely said to me: 'Answer the call of the Commander of the faithful.' I replied: 'Abū Hātim! I know that you have some regard for me; the time is now late, as you see, and I am afraid that the Commander of the faithful wants me for some serious matter. Could you not try and have the affair put off till tomorrow morning? perhaps he may then have changed his mind.' Harthama answered: 'That I have not in my power
to do.' I asked him then what was the cause of his being sent, and he replied:

'The eunuch Masrūr came out and ordered me to bring you before the Comman-
der of the faithful.' I said to him: 'Will you allow me to make the (funeral) lo-
tion and perfume myself; if the affair be grave, I shall be prepared for the
worst, and that (precaution) will do me no harm if God, in his bounty, deliver
me from danger.' Having obtained his consent, I went into my chamber, put
on new clothes, perfumed myself with such odours as were at hand. We then
went out together and proceeded to the residence of the Commander of the faith-
ful, Hārūn ar-Rashid. We found Masrūr standing there, and Harthama said to
him: 'I have brought you the man.' I then addressed Masrūr in these
terms: 'Abū Hāshim! (I owe you) my humble respects, my service and my
friendship. This is a painful moment; can you tell me what the Commander
of the faithful wants me for?' He answered that he could not. I then asked him
who was with the khalif, and he replied: 'Isa Ibn Jaafar.' — 'And who
else?' said I. — 'There is no third person,' was the answer. He then said to
me: 'Go forward and, when you are in the vestibule, you will find him sitting
in the porch. Scrape your foot on the ground; he will ask who is there and
you will answer: 'It is I.' I went in and did as I had been told. He (Ar-
Rashid) said: Who is that? ' and I answered: 'Yakūb.' He told me to enter
and, when I went in, I found him seated, with Isa Ibn Jaafar on his right hand.
I made him the salutation; he returned it and said: 'I think that we must
have alarmed you.' I replied: 'You did, by Allah! and have alarmed
those also whom I left behind me.' — 'Sit down,' said he. I sat down
and, when my apprehensions were allayed, he turned towards me and said:
'Abū Yakūb! do you know why I sent for you?' I replied: 'I do not.' — 'I
sent for you,' said he, 'so that you might receive the declaration which I am
going to make against this man who is here. He possesses a slave-girl; I asked
her from him as a present, and he refused; I asked him to sell her to me, and
he refused. Now, by Allah! if he do not (consent to my demand), I shall take
his life.' On this, I turned towards Isa and said: 'See what God has effected
by means of a girl (19)! you refuse giving her to the Commander of the faithful
and are therefore reduced to this extremity.' He replied: 'You have spoken
before knowing what I have to say.' I asked him what he could say for himself,
and he answered: 'I am bound by oath to divorce my wife, to liberate my slaves
"...and to distribute to the poor all I possess, in case I sell that girl or give her away.'

Ar-Rashid then turned towards me and said: 'Has he any means of getting out of that?' I replied that he had. 'And how so?' said he. I answered:

'Let him give you the half of her and sell you the other half; he will then have neither given her nor sold her. 'Is that the law?' said Isa. I replied that it was. 'Then,' said he, I take you to witness that I give him the half of her and sell him the other half for one hundred thousand dinars (£ 50,000).

Ar-Rashid answered: 'I accept the gift and purchase the half of her for that sum.

'Bring in the girl.' She was brought in and the money also. Isa then said:

'Commander of the faithful! receive her, and may you find in her a blessing from God.' When he had taken the money, ar-Rashid said: 'Abû Yakûb!

'one thing still remains to be done.' — 'What is it?' said I. — 'She is a slave,' said he, 'and I cannot approach her till she has had her next monthly infirmity; now if I do not pass this night with her, I think my soul will quit my body.' I replied: 'Commander of the faithful! declare her free and marry her; for a freewoman is not bound by that obligation.' He said: 'I declare her free; who will marry me to her?' I answered: 'I.' On this, he called in Masrûr and Husain (to serve as witnesses). I recited the khotba (invocation), praised God and then married them, on the condition of his giving her a dowry of twenty thousand dinars (£ 10,000). He sent for the money and gave it to her, after which, he said to me: 'Yakûb! you may retire.' He then looked up to Masrûr, who replied: 'I am at your orders.' To him he said: 'Carry to Yakûb's house two hundred thousand dirhems (£ 10,000) and twenty chests of clothing.' That was done. Here Bishr Ibn al-Walid said: 'Abû Yûsuf then addressed me, saying: 'Do you see anything wrong in what I did?' I answered: 'No.' 'Then,' said he, 'take your fee (for this consultation).' I asked him how much was my fee, and he replied: 'The tenth (of the whole).' I thanked him, prayed for his happiness and was about to stand up (and withdraw) when an old woman came in and said: 'Abû Yûsuf! (one who considers herself as) your daughter sends me to salute you and to say, in her name: 'By Allah! all I received last night from the Commander of the faithful was the dowry which you know of; I here sent you the half of it and reserve the rest for my own use.' The kâdi said to the woman: 'Take the sum back to her; by Allah! I shall not accept it. I delivered her from servitude,
Ibn KhALLiKAN’S

"... married her to the Commander of the faithful, and she thus shows me her satisfaction" (20). I and my uncles remonstrated with him till he accepted, and he then ordered one thousand dinars to be taken out of the sum and given to me."

—Abū Abd Allah al-Yūsufi related as follows: "Omm Djaafar Zubaida, the daughter of Jaafar (21) and the wife of ar-Rashid, wrote a letter to Abū Yūsuf in which she asked his opinion relatively to something the legality of which, said she, is, for me, highly desirable."

He returned her a favorable decision, and she sent him a silver case containing a number of silver boxes placed one over the other and containing, each of them, a different species of perfume. With that came a vase filled with silver money, in the midst of which was another vase filled with gold. One of the company then reminded him that the Prophet had said: When a man receives a present, his companions must be sharers in it. To this (hint), Abū Yūsuf replied: ‘Those words were said at a time when the usual presents consisted of milk or dates.’"

Yahya Ibn Main (gives us another version of the same story); he says: ‘I was at the kādī Abū Yūsuf’s, and with him were a number of Traditionists and other (learned) men. A present was then brought to him from Omm Jaafar; it consisted of boxes containing flowered and plain stuffs, liqueurs, perfumes, little figures composed of odorous paste for fumigations, and other objects. One of the persons who were in the room then repeated to me the saying of the Prophet: When a man receives a present, the by-sitters must be sharers therein. Abū Yūsuf overheard these words and said: ‘How can that apply? The Prophet said so a time when presents consisted of curds, or dates, or raisins, and not of objects such as these. Up with them, boy! and take them to the store-room.’ — I shall now give a passage which I found in a work bearing the title of al-Laft (the Miscellany), but in which the name of the author is not mentioned: ‘Abd ar-Rahmān Ibn Mus-hir, the brother of Ali Ibn Mus-hir (23), was the kādī of al-Mubārak.’ —Al-Mubārak is a village situated on the bank of the Tigris, between Baghdad and Wāsit. — ‘This kādī, having learned that ar-Rashid was going to Basra, in his barge, with Abū Yūsuf, requested the inhabitants of his village to speak in praise of him when the khalīf and Abū Yūsuf would be passing by. As they refused to do so, he put on his (outside) clothes, with a high-peaked cap and a black scarf (thrown over it). He then went to the landing-place and, when the barge approached, he bawled out: ‘Commander of the faithful! we have an excellent
BIographical DICTIONARY.

"kādi, a kādi of sterling worth." From that he proceeded to another landing-place and repeated the same words. On this, ar-Rashid turned round to Abū Yūsuf and said: 'The worst kādi on earth must be here! a kādi who, in the place where he resides, can find only one man to speak well of him.' Abū Yūsuf replied: 'The Commander of the faithful would be still more surprised if he were told that it was the kādi who praised himself.' Ar-Rashid laughed heartily and said: 'He is a clever fellow and must never be dismissed from office.' From that time, whenever he thought of this kādi, he would say: 'That fellow shall never be deposed.' Abū Yūsuf was asked how he could have nominated such a man, and he replied: 'He was for a long time (a suitor) at my door, complaining of poverty, and I therefore gave him an appoint-ment.' — Abū 'l-Abbās Ahmad Ibn Yahya, surnamed Thalab (col. I. p. 83) says, in his Fāṣth: 'One of my companions informed me that ar-Rashid said to Abū Yūsuf: 'I am told that all those whose depositions you receive when they appear before you to give evidence, are considered by you as hypocrites and that you say so.' The kādi answered: 'That is the truth.' — 'How so?' said ar-Rashid. The kādi replied: 'People who are really respectable and truly honest have no occasion to know us, nor we them; those whose (profligacy) is evident and whose (bad) character is well known never appear before us as witnesses, neither would their evidence be received. One class only remains, and those are the hypocrites who put on the appearance of virtue in order to hide their vices.' Ar-Rashid smiled and said: 'That is the truth.' — Muhammad Ibn Samā'a (24) relates that he heard Abū Yūsuf utter these words on the day of his death: 'I declare, my God! that I never pronounced intentionally an unjust sentence, when judging between two of Thy servants; in my decisions I always endeavoured to follow the prescriptions of Thy book and those of Thy Prophet's Sunna; in every case which was doubtful, I placed Abū Hanīfa between me and Thee, for I solemnly declare that I considered him to have been a man well acquainted with Thy commandments and never deviating from the truth, when he knew it.' There is here an idea borrowed from a saying of Abū Muhammad Abd Allah, the son of al-Hasan and the grandson of al-Hasan Ibn Ali Ibn Abi Tālib: He passed his hand over his boots (when making the ablution for prayer, and did not take them off in order to wash his feet), and a person said to him: 'Do you pass your hand over your boots?' His reply was: 'I do; Omar Ibn al-Khattāb
"did so; and he who places Omar between himself and God has secured himself "from danger."" It is Ibn Kutaiba who mentions this in his Kitāb al-Madārif, where he speaks of Ali. — The anecdotes related of Abū Yūsuf are very numerous, and the doctors of the law enlarge upon his merit, his preeminence and the respect to which he is entitled. In the Khatib's greater history of Baghdad, we find things said of Abū Yūsuf which are shocking to hear and which we therefore abstain from mentioning. They are given on the authority of Abū Allāh Ibn al-Mubārak (vol. II. p. 12), Wāki Ibn al-Jarrāh (vol. I. p. 374), Yazīd Ibn Hārūn (vol. I. p. 374), Muhammad Ibn Ismail al-Bukhārī (vol. II. p. 594), Abū 'l-Hasan ad-Darakutnī (vol. II. p. 239) and others. God knows best! — The kāddi Abū Yūsuf was born in the year 113 (A. D. 731-2); his death took place at Baghdad on Thursday, the 5th of the first Rabi A. H. 182 (26th April, A. D. 798), at the first hour of the afternoon; some say, but erroneously, that he died in the year 192. He was appointed kāddi in the year 166 (A. D. 782-3), and died in office. — His son Yūsuf studied and practised the application of rational deduction (rādi) to questions of law. He learned Traditions from Yūnus Ibn Abī Ishāk as-Sabīlī (25), as-Sarī Abī Yaḥya and others. He was appointed kāddi of the western suburb of Baghdad in his father's lifetime and, by the order of ar-Rashīd, he presided at the Friday prayer in the city of al-Mansūr (the suburb of al-Karkh). He held the kadishīp till his death. That event occurred at Baghdad, in the month of Rajab, 192 (May, A. D. 808). — The Khatib of Baghdad states that, when the kāddi Abū Yūsuf died, ar-Rashīd nominated in his place Abū 'l-Bakhtārī Wahīb Ibn Wahīb al-Kurashi, the same of whom we have given an account (vol. III. p. 673). Abū Yakhūb al-Khuzaimi a poet of some celebrity and an intimate friend of Abū Yūsuf and his son, having heard a man say, on the death of the former: "To-day jurisprudence is dead," recited the following lines:

O thou who announcest the death of jurisprudence to the members of its family, because Yakhūb has ceased to live, thou art not aware that jurisprudence is not dead but has merely passed from one bosom to another; from Yakhūb to Yūsuf; from goodness to purity. Whilst he (Yusūf) remains and wherever he stops, it will stop (with him; when he dies), it will descend to the tomb.

— Khunais is the diminutive form of akhnas, which (adjective) signifies: having the nose sunk into the face and the point of it slightly prominent. The masculine is akhnas and the feminine khansd. This form of the diminutive is called the apoco-
Biographical Dictionary.

*pated* (tarkhtm); to obtain it, the rule is that the servile letters are to be suppressed and that the regular diminutive form is to be given to what remains of the word. It is thus that *Azhar, Aswad* and *Ahmad* have for apocopated diminutives *Zuhair*, *Suwa'id* and *Humaid* (26). — Instead of the name *Bahtr*, some persons read *Bujair*, but they are in the wrong. — I turned over law-books and other treatises in hopes of discovering the meaning of the word *Habta*, but did not succeed in my search. — The other names (in the genealogy) are so well known that we need not indicate their orthography. — *Saad* *Ibn* *Khabta* was one of those volunteers who, on account of their extreme youth, were dispensed by the Prophet from fighting at the battle of Ohod. The others were *al-Bara* *Ibn* *Adiz* (27) and *Abu* *Said* *al-Khudri* (vol. II. p. 208). — At the battle of the Intrenchment, the Prophet remarked *Saad* *Ibn* *Khabta* who, though very young, was fighting with great bravery. He called him over to him and asked him his name. The other replied: "*Saad* (happiness), the *son* of *Habta*;" on which the Prophet stroked his head and said: "*May* God "grant you happy fortune." — *Hunais* was the person after whom was named the open place in *Kufa* which is called the *Tchihar Sâh* of *Khunais*. *Tchihâr Sâh* are Persian words and mean *four streets*. This place was effectively an open square from which streets branched off in four directions.

(1) See the life of *Ibn* *Abd* *al-Barr*, in this volume.

(2) *Abu* *Ishak* *Sulaimân* *Ibn* *Firdos*, a member of the tribe of *Shaibân*, a traditionist and a native of *Kufa*, died A. H. 143 (A. D. 759-9), or 142. — (Huffaz.)

(3) *Abu* 'l-Kasim *Sulaimân* *Ibn* *Tarkhan al-Tâmi*, one of the *Tibis*, or disciples of *Muhammad*’s Companions, was most assiduous in the practice of piety. The author of the *Nujum* places his death in the year 143 (A. D. 760-1).

(4) *Abu* *‘a-Shâib* *Atâ* *Ibn* *as-Sâib* *Ibn* *Mâlik*, a member of the tribe of *Thakif* and a native of *Kufa*, was a traditionist of good authority. He died in the year 186 (A. D. 793-4), or thereabouts. — (Huffaz.)

(5) *Abu* *Bakr* *Bishr* *Ibn* *al-Walid* *Ibn* *Khâlid* *al-Kindi*, one of the most eminent of *Abu* *Hanîfa*’s disciples, was highly distinguished for his learning, his piety and the austerity of his life. In the year 208 (A. D. 823), he was appointed by *al-Mamûn* to act as *kaddi* in the quarter of *Baghdad* which was then called *Askar* al-*Mahdi*, and which became afterwards known by the name of *ar-Rusâfa*. When he held that place, he incurred the displeasure of *Yahya* *Ibn* *Akhtham* (page 83 of this vol.), because he refused to execute a judgment pronounced by that powerful magistrate. Being cited for that reason before *al-Mamûn*, he declared that the unfavorable character which he had received of *Yahya* from that *kaddi*’s own townspeople prevented him from obeying his mandates. *Yahya* asked the khalif to depose the *kaddi*, but his request was not granted. *Bishr* *Ibn* *al-Walid* became *kaddi* of *Baghdad* and of the suburb of *al-Karkh* under the khalifate of *al-Motazim*, but was afterwards persecuted and confined to his house by that prince because he refused to declare that the *Koran*, which is the word of God, was created and not eternel. The khalif *al-Mutawakkil* set him at liberty.
and authorised him to give opinions on points of law and teach Traditions. He lived to an advanced age and died A. H. 238 (A. D. 852-3). — (Lives of the Hanafite doctors; ms. of the Bib. imp. of Paris, supplement, n° 699, fol. 95. — Nujûm.)

(6) The three legists of which this work treat were Mâlik, Abû Hanîfa and as-Shâfi‘i.


(9) Fatûdaj, in French nougat, is a cake or hard paste made of almonds and honey.

(10) An adulterer cannot be punished unless four witnesses declare that they saw him in the act. Here the question is, if the khâlif, as chief of the religion, had the right of inflicting the punishment, because he witnessed the commission of the crime.

(11) Talha Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ja’far was one of the witnesses to the act by which the Khalîf al-Muti’ abdicated in favour of his son at-Tâl. This document was signed the 19th of Zû ‘l-Ka’da, 369 (20th August, A. D. 974). — (Nujûm.)

(12) Harîl Ibn Yahya Ibn Muslim, a native of Baṣra and surnamed Harîl ar-Râl (clear-sighted Hîlî) on account of his great learning and intelligence, studied jurisprudence under Abû Hanîfa and Zufar (see note 14). He died A. H. 245 (A. D. 859-60). — Lives of the Hanafites, fol. 97.)

(13) The translation of the last verse is conjectural.

(14) The imâm Zufar Ibn Hudhayl Ibn Kais, a native of Basra and an eminent doctor of the Hanafite sect, was one of Abû Hanîfa’s oldest disciples. He was appointed to the kadiship of Basra, the inhabitants of which place esteemed him highly, and he died there in the year 158 (A. D. 774-5), at the age of forty-eight years.

— Lives of the Hanafites, fol. 80.)

(15) The word min seems to stand here for fl.

(16) The mukdri keeps an ass, a horse or a mule for hire, and accompanies on foot the person who hires the animal.

(17) Harîmah Ibn Aṭayn was one of ar-Rashid’s principal generals.

(18) Isa Ibn Ja’far was the grandson of the khâlif al-Mansûr and the cousin of ar-Rashid.

(19) The Arabic expression is here translated by conjecture.

(20) It is not clear whether the addî thought the sum too little or meant to show his disinterestedness.

(21) This Ja’far was the son of the khâlif al-Mansûr.

(22) Literally: his by-sitters.

(23) Ibn Durâid informs us, in his Ishtikhd, that Ali Ibn Mus‘îr was addî of Mosul. We see from the passage quoted by our author, that he lived under the khâlatate of Hârûn ar-Rashid.

(24) The imâm Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Samâa Ibn Obaid Allah at-Talmî, a learned Traditionist and doctor of the Hanafite sect, studied jurisprudence under Abû Yûsuf. He composed a number of works such as the Guide for Kadi (Adab al-Kaddî), the Conversations (Muhaddîdî), models of acts (Si’ilîdî) and Anecdotes (Nawdîrî). In the year 192 (A. D. 807-8), on the death of Yûsuf, the son of Abû Hanîfa, he was appointed addî of Baghdad by al-Mâmûn. He died in the year 238 (A. D. 847-8), at the age of one hundred and three years. — (Lives of the Hanafites, fol. 93.)

(25) According to ad-Dahâbi, the Traditionist Yûnus Ibn Abî Ishak as-Sabîl died in the year 159 (A. D. 775-6).

(26) The regular diminutives of these words would be Uskaiyîr, Uswayîd and Uhmâyîd.

(27) Abû Omâra al-Barî Ibn Aâdîzîb, one of the Ansars, died A. H. 71 (A. D. 690-1). — (Nujûm.)
YAKUB AL-HADRAMI

Abū Muhammad Yakūb Ibn Ishāk Ibn Zaid Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Abi Ishāk al-Hadrāmi (a ḥadramite) by clientage and a native of Basra, was a celebrated teacher of the Koran-readings (vol. I. p. 152) and the eighth of the ten Readers (1). The system of readings taught by him (2) is well known and has been regularly handed down by oral transmission. He came of a family which produced men learned in the Readings (3), in grammar and in the (pure) language of the Arabs, men distinguished for having transmitted down a great quantity of various readings and for their knowledge of the law. Yakūb was one of the most eminent Readers, and those of the two holy cities (Mecca and Medina), of the two Iraks, of Syria and of other countries, learned his system by heart, either with or without the ismāds (vol. I. introd. p. xxii). He obtained a full acquaintance with the readings (or editions) by reciting them aloud to able masters, such as Sallām Ibn Sulamān at-Tawīl (4), Mahdi Ibn Maimūn (5) and Abū `l-Ashhab al-OTāridi (6). He taught some lections (ḥurūf) (7) which he had learned from Hamza (vol. I. p. 478); he heard lections taught by Abū `l-Hasan al-Kisā́i (vol. II. p. 237) and he heard also (traditions taught by) his grandfather Zaid Ibn Abd Allah and by Shoba (vol. I. p. 493). The ismād of the reading adopted by him reaches up to the Prophet in the following manner: he read under Sallām’s tuition, Sallām under that of Aāsim Ibn Abi ‘n-Nujāḥ (vol. II. p. 1), Aāsim under that of Abū Abd ar-Rahmān as-Sulāmī (vol. II. p. 4), Abū Abd ar-Rahmān under that of Ali Ibn Abi Tālīb, and Ali under that of the Prophet. A number of Readers handed down that reading after learning it from Yakūb and reciting it under his direction; such were Rauh Ibn Abd al-Mumin (8), Muhammad Ibn al-Mutawakkil (9), Abū Ḥātim as-Sijistānī (vol. I. p. 603) and others. Az-Zafarānī (10) heard it from his (Yakūb’s) lips and, after the death of Abū Amr Ibn al-Alā (vol. II. p. 399) the most eminent of the Basra literati approved the choice which he had made, and all or most of them adopted his system. Tāhir Ibn Abd al-Mūmin Ibn Ghalbūn, the ismād of the great mosque of Basra, never recited (to the congregation) any other reading of the Koran than that of Yakūb. According to Abū `l-Husain Ibn al-Munāḍī (p. 77 of this vol.),
Yakûb read the Koran under the tuition of Abû Amr, but there he is mistaken. Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Abî'l-Hâtim stated that Ahmad Ibn Hanbal (vol. I. p. 44), being asked his opinion of Yakûb al-Hadrâmi, answered: "Veracious" (11), and Abû Hâtim as-Sijistâni said: "Of all the persons whom we have seen or met with, Yakûb al-Hadrâmi is the best acquainted with the lectures, the differences (observable in the text) of the noble Koran, the manners of conciliating these differences and the systems followed by the grammarians in analyzing the text of the Koran." He (Yakûb) composed a work which he entitled the Jâmî (collector) in which he noted all the differences which exist between the various manners of reading the Koran, and indicated the persons to whom each of those readings could be traced up. In a word, we may say that, in his time, he was for the people of Basra, the chief doctor in the Readings. He would sometimes question his disciples respecting the number of verses contained in the Koran and, if any of them made a mistake in the enumeration, he would order him to stand up (and leave the class). He died in the month of the first Jumâda, 205 (oct.-nov. A. D. 820); those who place his death in the month of Zû 'l-Hijja are mistaken. He, his father Ishak, and his grandfather Zaid, lived each of them to the age of eighty-eight years. His father's grandfather, Abd Allah Ibn Abî Ishak al-Hadrâmi, was one of those great and distinguished doctors (in law and grammar) whom all point at, for their learning. Abû Obaida Mamar Ibn al-Muthanna (vol. III. p. 388) says, that the first person who laid (the foundations of) Arabic grammar was Abû 'l-Aswad ad-Duwâli (vol. I. p. 662); after him came Maimûn al-Aкраn (12), who was succeeded by Anbasa tal-Fil (13), who was followed by Abd Allah Ibn Abî Ishâk al-Hadrâmi. In another version of this statement, Anbasa's name is placed before that Maimûn. God knows best which reading is preferable. Abd Allah Ibn Abî Ishak was a contemporary of Isa Ibn Omar ath-Thakaﬁ (vol. II. p. 419) and Abû Amr Ibn al-Âlâ, but died before them. Abû Allah Ibn al-Marzûbâni (vol. III. p. 67) says in his Muktâbâs (information picked up), which work contains an account of the celebrated grammarians, that al-Mubarrad (vol. III. p. 31) said: "All agree in considering Abû 'l-Aswad ad-Duwâli as the first who laid down the principles of Arabic grammar and that he learned them from Ali Ibn Abî Tâlib. Abû 'l-Aswad taught them to Anbasa Ibn Maâdân al-Mahri, who transmitted them to Maimûn al-Aкраn by whom they were communicated to Abd Allah (Ibn Abî Ishak) al-Hadrâmi, from whom they passed to Isa Ibn Omar (14), then to al-Khalî
BIOGRAphICAL DICTIONARY.

Ibn Ahmad (vol. I. p. 493), then to Sibawaih (vol. II. p. 396) and then to al-Akhfash. Bilal Ibn Abi Burda (vol. II. p. 2), the son of Abû Musa 'l-Ashari (vol. III. p. 633), was governor of Basra when he brought about a conference between Abûd Allah (Ibn Abi Ishâq) and Abû Amr Ibn a'Alâ. The latter said (in his account of what then passed): "Ibn Abi Ishak got the better of me in a discussion concerning the (letter) hamza, but I afterwards studied the question and attained superiority." This Abûd Allah frequently objected to al-Farazdak (vol. III. p. 612) the faults which he committed in his poems, and the latter at length said: "By Allah! I will compose against him a satirical verse which will obtain currency among literary men and be quoted by them as a proverb." He then made this verse:

If Abûd Allah was a (simple) mawla, I should satirize him; but Abûd Allah is a mawla of a family which are mawlas.

He said so because Abûd Allah was a mawla of the Hadramis, which family was federated by oath (halt/) with that of Abû Shams Ibn Abû Manâf. The Arabs of the desert say that the word halt/ is the equivalent of mawla, and they cite verses in proof of their assertion. Some of these passages I should give here were I not apprehensive of lengthening this article too much; besides which, this is not a fit place for them.

(1) We find frequent mention of seven principal Readers and also of ten. Were we to class the ten by the dates of their deaths, Yakûb would hold, not the eighth place, but the ninth, and we should obtain a list arranged in this order: Ibn Aämîr, Ibn Kathîr, Aàsim, Yâzîd, Abû Aâmîr, Hamza, Nâfî, al-Kissâî, Yakûb and al-Bazzâr. The biographers place Yakûb as the eighth on the list and create thus a difficulty of which the solution has not yet been found by the translator. The list called that of the seven Readers, should be arranged thus, if the chronological order were to be followed: Ibn Aâmîr, Ibn Kathîr, Aàsim, Abû Aâmîr, Hamza, al-Kissâî and Nâfî. To make up the list of ten, the names of Yâzîd, Yakûb and al-Bazzâr were added.

(2) The Reading, or rather, the system of readings or lections adopted by each of the seven or ten Readers, may be considered as an edition of the Koranic text.

(3) See vol. I, page 152.

(4) Abû 'l-Mundir Sallâm Ibn Sulaimân, a native of Basra and a mawla of the tribe of Muzaina, was known as a Reader and a grammarian. He spoke with elegance and was considered as veracious (sadâk) in what he taught. His death took place in the year 174 (A. D. 787-8). Persons not well informed have confounded him with Abû Sulaimân Sallâm at-Tawîl al-Madâni as-Saâdi, surnamed al-Khorsânî. (Kildb Masrita tâl-Kurâd, ms. of the Bb. imp., n° 742, fol. 80.) — Has Ibn Kballîkân fallen into the mistake pointed out by Shams ad-Din Muhammad Ibn Ahmad ad-Dahabî, the author of the Kurâd?

(5) Abû Yahya Mahdi Ibn Maimûn al-Azdi, a mawla and a native of Basra, is placed by ad-Dahabî among the Traditionists. He died A. H. 174 (A. D. 787-8) or 172. (Huffds.)

VOL. IV.
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

(6) Abū 'l-Ashhab Jaafar Ibn Haiyān al-Ótrádî died in Basra, towards the year 165 (A. D. 781-9), at a very advanced age. — (Kitâb al-Madrîf, Huffâs.)

(7) The word harf is employed as a technical term in the science of the Readings and has then two different significations. It designates the systems of Korān-reading, that is, the editions of the Koranic text taught by the great masters, and also the various readings or lections which are found in the different texts of the Korān. The plural is huruf.

(8) Abū 'l-Hasan Raúh Ibn Abd al-Mumin, a native of Basra and one of Yakūb's disciples in Korān-reading, died towards the year 234 (A. D. 848-9). — (Kurrd, fol. 58, verso.)

(9) Muhammad, the son of the khalîf al-Mutawakkil, was distinguished, as a poet and died A. H. 292 (A. D. 895-6). He may perhaps be the person indicated here.

(10) Abū Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Hâshim az-Zafarānî (a native of the village of Zafarān near Baghdad), was a teacher of the readings. The date of his death is not given by the author of the Kurrd.

(11) Mufîs, or casuists, when consulted on a doubtful point, always draw up their answer in the most concise manner possible.

(12) Little or nothing is known of Maimūn al-Akran.

(13) Little is known of Abū 'l-Aswad Ansba Ibn Madān al-Fîl. He possessed some grammatical knowledge and transmitted down orally a great number of poems, amongst which were many composed by Jarîr and al-Farazdak. He must therefore have lived in the second century of the Hijra. His father was called Madān al-Fîl, because he had received one of those animals as a present from the governor of Irâq, Zîâd Ibn Abâhî, of whose children he was the preceptor. The title of al-Fîl passed to his son. — (Fluegel's Grammat. Schule der Araber.)


ABU AWANA THE HAFIZ

Abû Awâna Yakûb Ibn Ishâk Ibn Ibrahim Ibn Yazîd, an inhabitant of Naisâpûr [Naisāpūr] and afterwards of Isfârân [Isfârânî], is the author of the book entitled al-Musnad as-Sahîh (collection of authentic Traditions), the materials of which he extracted from the work of Muslim Ibn al-Hajjâj (vol. III. p. 348). He was one of those hâfîzes who travelled about and gathered up a great quantity of Traditions. He rambled over Syria and Egypt and visited Basra, Kûfa, Wâsit, Hijâz, Mesopotamia, Yemen, Ispâhân, Rai and Fars. The hâfiz Abû 'l-Kâsim, generally known by the surname of Ibn Asâkir (vol. II. p. 252) says of him, in the History of Damascus:
"Abū Awâna heard, at Damascus, the lessons of Yazîd Ibn Muhammad Ibn Abd as-Samad, Ismail Ibn Muhammad Ibn Kirât (1), Shoaib Ibn Shoaib Ibn Ishak and others. In Egypt, he heard Yûnus Ibn Abd al-Aala (2), Ibn Akhi Ibn Wahb (3), al-Muzani (vol. I. p. 200), ar-Rabi' (vol. I. p. 519), Muhammad Ibn al-Hakam and Saad Ibn al-Hakam. In Irâk he heard Saadân Ibn Nasr, al-Hasan az-Zafarâni (vol. I. p. 373), Omar Ibn Shabba (vol. II. p. 375) and others. In Khorásan, his teachers were Muhammad Ibn Yahya ad-Dhuhli, Muslim Ibn al-Hajjâj, Muhammad Ibn Rajâ as-Sindi and others. In Mesopotamia he heard Ali Ibn Harb and others. Traditions were taught on his authority by Abû Bakr al-Ismailî (vol. I. p. 8), Ahmad Ibn Ali ar-Râzî (4), Abû Ali al-Husain Ibn Ali, Abû Ahmad Ibn Ali, Sulaimân at-Tabarâni (vol. I. p. 592), Muhammad Ibn Yakûb Ibn Ismail the hâfs, Abû 'l-Walîd the legist and his own son Abû Musab Muham- mad Ibn Abî Awâna. He made the pilgrimage five times." — "When I was at al-Missîsâ, " says Ibn Abî Awâna, "my brother, Muhammad Ibn Ishak, wrote to me a letter in which were these lines:

"If we meet before (our) death, we shall cure our souls of the pains caused by our mutual reproaches; and if the hand of death anticipates us, (we can only say ') how many of our absent friends are now under ground."

Abû Abd Allah al-Hakam (vol. II. p. 681) declared Abû Awâna to be a learned and most exact Traditionist, one of those who travelled over the regions of the earth in search of Traditions. He died in the year 316 (A. D. 928-9). Hamza Ibn Yusuf as-Sahmi (vol. I. p. 25) mentioned that, in the year 292 (A. D. 904-5), Abû Awâna was seen in Jurjân. The hâfs Abû 'l-Kâsim Ibn Asâkir states that the following narration was made to him by the holy and fundamentally learned shaikh (as-Shaikh as-Sâlih al-Astâlî) Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Omar as-Saffâr, a native of Isfarâîn: "The tomb of Abû Awâna, at Isfarâîn, is visited by all pious people, and considered as bringing a blessing on those who go to it. At the side of it is the tomb of the scholar by whom his Traditions were handed down, I mean Abû Noaim Abd al-Mâlik Ibn al-Hasan al-Azhari of Isfarâîn. These tombs are in the same mausoleum; it lies within the city, on the left hand of the person who enters by the gate of Naisâpûr. Near that mausoleum is another containing the tomb of the ustâdî (or master) Abû Ishak al-Isfarâîni (vol. I. p. 8); it is on the right hand of the person who enters the city by the gate.
"just mentioned. Beside it is the tomb of Abū Awāna's disciple and inseparable companion in life and death; I mean the ustād (master) Abū Mansūr al-Baghḍādi, who was eminent as an imām, a legist and a dogmatic theologian. They both assisted each other in defending religion by means of arguments and logical proofs. I heard my grandfather, the imām Omar Ibn as-Saffār, to whom God be merciful! say, after looking at the tombs which surrounded that of the ustād Abū Ishak, and pointing at the mausoleum: 'It is said that forty imāms and legists of the Shafite sect are there reposing, every one of whom was worthy of governing the sect and of giving opinions conformable to his, as-Shāfi'i's, views and decisions.' The people visit the mausoleum of the imām Abū Ishak more frequently that of Abū Awāna, that great imam and Traditionist whose worth they do not appreciate because he died a long time ago; they know Abū Ishak's merit because he died but lately. Abū Awāna was, however, the first to make known at Isfarā'īn the doctrine of the imām as Shāfi'i. This he did on his return from Egypt, where he had studied under Abū Ibrāhīm al-Muzani (vol. I. p. 200).

When my grandfather passed near the mausoleum of the ustād (Abū Ishak), I remarked that he never entered into it, through a feeling of reverence, and that he was satisfied with kissing the threshold, to which there were a number of steps leading up. He would remain there standing for some time, like a man penetrated with respect and veneration, and then pass on with the look of a man who has just said farewell to a person of high dignity. When he reached the mausoleum of Abū Awāna, he would display more respect, reverence and veneration than he had done at the other, and would remain there a longer time." — As we have already spoken of the adjectives Naisāpūri (vol. I. p. 61) and Isfarā'īn (vol. I. p. 55), we need not repeat our observations here.

(1) Ismail Ibn Muhammad Ibn Khrāt the Traditions died A. H. 397 (A. D. 1006-7). — (Nujūm.)
(2) The life of Yūnus Ibn Abī al-Abā will be found in his volume.
(3) The manuscripts offer the reading which we give here; the edition of Boulaq has: Ibn Akhī Wābī.
(4) Abū Bākra Ahmad Ibn Ali ar-Rāzi (a native of Rai), was an eminent ḥafiz. He died in the year 468 (A. D. 1042-3). — (Huffūz.)
IBN AS-SIKKIT

Abû Yûsuf Yakûb Ibn Ishak, generally known by the surname of Ibn as-Sikkit (the son of the taciturn), is the author of the (philological work entitled) Islâh al-Manâthik (the correcting of the language) and other treatises. The hâfiz Ibn Asâkir (vol. II. p. 252) says of him, in the History of Damascus: "He delivered (his philological) information on the authority of Abû Amr Ishak Ibn Mirâr as-Shaibâni (vol. I. p. 182), Muhammad Ibn Muhanna, and Muhammad Ibn Subh Ibn as-Sammâk the preacher. The same information was received from him and taught to others by Ahmad Ibn Farah al-Mukri (1), Muhammad Ibn Ajlân al-Akhbâri, Abû Ikrima ad-Dabbi, Abû Said as-Sukkari (2), Maimûn Ibn Hârûn the kâtib, and others. He gave lessons to (the Khalif) al-Mutawakkîl's sons, and he said: 'Muhammad Ibn as-Samnâk uttered this saying: 'He who knows mankind humours them; he who has not that knowledge thwarts them, and the main point, in humouring mankind, is to abstain from thwarting them.'" Ibn as-Sikkit taught also philology on the authority of al-Asmâī (vol. II. p. 123), of Abû Obaida (vol. III. p. 388), of al-Farrâ (p. 63 of this vol.) and of many others. His works are good and full of sound information. Such are the Islâh al-Manâthik, the Kitâb' al-Alfâz (vocabulary), the Madînî's-Shiar (ideas currently used in poetry) and the treatise on grammatical permutations and substitutions (al-Kalb wa'l-Ibût). As a grammarian, he wanted penetration. In his religious belief he inclined towards the opinions and doctrines of those (the Shîites) who assigned preeminence to Ali Ibn Abî Tâlib. The following relation was made by Ahmad Ibn Obaid (4): "Ibn as-Sikkit consulted me on the propriety of his becoming one of al-Mutawakkîl's social companions, and I advised him to refuse. He attributed my counsel to envy and accepted the proposal made to him. One day, whilst he was with al-Mutawakkîl, (that prince's two sons) al-Motazz and al-Muwaiyad came in, and al-Mutawakkîl said to him: 'Tell me, Yakûb! which you like best, these two sons of mine or al-Hasan and al-Husain (the sons of Ali)?' Ibn as-Sikkit answered by depreciating the merit of the two princes and giving to al-Hasan and al-Husain the praise to which they were well
entitled. On this, al-Mutawakkil ordered his Turkish guards to chastise him, "and they (threw him down and) trod on his belly. He was then carried to his house, where he died two days afterwards. This happened in the year 244 (A. D. 858-9)." Abd Allah Ibn Abd al-Azîz, a person who also had advised Yakûb (Ibn as-Sikkit) not to enter into the service of al-Mutawakkil, said on this occasion:

I advised you, Yakûb! to avoid the proximity of a gazelle which, if it attacked a lion, would overcome him. Taste therefore and swallow that which you preferred to drink (mu stahsa-i-tahn)!. I shall not say, if you miss your footing: "God set you up again!" but shall say: "May (you fall dead and flat) on your hands and your mouth!"

It is related that al-Farrâ asked Ibn as-Sikkit what was his native place and received this answer: "I am a Khûzian, God bless you! and come from Daurak." Daurak is a village in Khûzistân and forms a district in the province of al-Ahwâz. — I may here observe that Ahwâz forms also a part of Khûzistân. — Al-Farrâ then remained in his house during forty days, without letting himself be seen by any of his acquaintances, and, being asked why he did so, he replied: "I should be ashamed to meet with Ibn as-Sikkit, for I asked him what was his country and, though he answered me truly, there was in his reply a shade of reprehension (5)." — Abû'l-Hasan at-Tûsî (6) related as follows: "We were at a sitting held by Abû'l-Hasan Ali al-Lihyânî (7), who proposed dictating to the company such rare and curious philological anecdotes as he was acquainted with, though very feeble he was in the art of dictating. One day, he said: The Arabs (of the desert) make use of this expression: 'A heavily loaded (خُلّ camel) helps itself up with its chin (بَذْنْ bi-dekenihi)." On this, Ibn as-Sikkit, who was then a mere youth, rose up (went over) to him and said: 'Abû'l-Hasan! the correct expression is: A heavily loaded (camel) helps itself up with its two flanks (بِدَفْنَ bi-deffâhi); and it means that, when a camel rises with its load, it gets up with the help of its two sides.' Abû'l-Hasan ceased dictating that day. Having resumed his lessons at another sitting, he said: 'The Arabs (of the desert) say: Such a one is my next-door neighbour (مَكْدَشِير); on which Ibn as-Sikkit again stood up to him and said: God bless you, sir! what does mukâshir mean? the right expression is: Such a one is my mukâsir; in as much as the kasr, or side of his tent touches the kasr of mine.' Al-Lihyânî ceased to dictate and never commenced
Ibn as-Sikkit related that a man wrote to a friend of his in these terms: "A case of necessity has occurred which obliges me (to have recourse) to you (kibalak). If I succeed, I shall find therein my share (of good fortune) and the rest shall be your share. If you ask to be excused (I shall only say that every thing) good may always be expected of you and that I now offer beforehand my excuses. (Receive my salutation (8)."

The following anecdote was copied from a note in his (Ibn as-Sikkit's) handwriting: Sulaimân Ibn Rabiâ al-Bâhili (9) was reviewing his cavalry (man by man) and, when Amr Ibn Madi Karib az-Zubaidi (10) passed before him on horseback, he said to him: "Your horse is of a base breed." — "Nay," replied Amr, "he is a blood-horse." On this, Sulaimân ordered that the animal should be kept from water till it got thirsty, and had then a large basin brought out, filled with water. The blood-horses to which it was offered drank out of it, and so did the horse of Amr, but in bending the leg. "Do you see that?" said Sulaimân. "I do;" replied Amr, "one base-born animal has recognised another." Omar Ibn al-Khattâb, to whom this was told, wrote to Amr in the following terms: "I have been informed of what you said to your superior officer, and am told that you have a sword which you call Simsâma. Now, I also have a sword the name of which is Simsim and, by Allah! if I lay it across your head, I shall not withdraw it till it has reached your rahâba. If you wish to know whether I say truth or not, you have only to recommence. Receive my salutation." The term rahâba takes the same vowels as the word sahâba (cloud) and designates that bone of the breast which is shaped like a tongue and is situated above the stomach. — Abû Othmân al-Mâzini said: "I met Ibn as-Sikkit at the house of the vizir Muhammad.
Ibn Abd al-Malik az-Zaiyât (vol. III. p. 249), and the latter said to me: Pro-
pose a question to Abû Yûsuf (Ibn as-Sikkit). Being unwilling to do so, I hesi-
tated and delayed, fearing to displease Ibn as-Sikkit, who was my intimate friend.
The vizir insisted and asked why I did not obey; so, I endeavoured to choose an
easy question and thus do him a friendly act. I therefore said to him:
What is the grammatical form of the verb nakâtal in that passage of God's
book where it is said: Send our brother with us, so that we may have (corn) mea-
sured to us. (Korân, sâr. 12, verse 63). He replied: 'Its form is nafa'il.' On this,
I observed to him that, if it were so, the preterite (or root) of the verb would be
kâtal. I do not mean that, said he, the form is nafa'il. On this, I asked him how
many letters there were in nafa'il (when in Arabic characters), and he answered :
'five.' And how many,' said I, are there in nakâtal? He answered: 'Four.'
How then, said I, can a word of four letters have the same form as one of five?'
Being unable to answer, he coloured up and remained silent (11).’ On this,
Muhammad Ibn Abd al-Malik said to him: 'You receive, every month, a salary of
'two thousand dirhems (£. 50), and yet you cannot indicate the form of nakâtal.'
When we withdrew, Yakûb (Ibn as-Sikkit) said to me: 'Abû Othmân! do you
'know what you have done?' I replied: 'By Allah! I endeavoured to find for you
'an easy question, and do you a service.'’ — Abû 'l-Hasan Ibn Sida (vol. II.
p. 272) states, in his Muhkam, towards the beginning of his preface, that this scene
passed in the presence of (the khalif) al Mutawakkil. God knows best! — An author,
but not Ibn Asâkir, says that Ibn as-Sikkit and his father kept a school for children
of the lower order in that street of Madina tas-Salâm (Baghdad) which is called Darb
al-Kantarâ (Bridge-Street), and, wanting to gain something more, he applied to the
study of grammar. It is related that the father, having made the pilgrimage and the
circuits around the House (the Kaaba), and the running (between Safa and Marwa),
prayed God to render his son learned in grammar. (Ibn as-Sikkit), having studied
grammar and philology, used to visit regularly some persons who resided in (the street
of) al-Kantarâ, and he received from them, each time, the sum of ten dirhems (5 shil-
lings) or somewhat more. He then went regularly (to teach) Bishr and Harrûn, who
were employed as scribes by Muhammad Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Tâhir al-Khuzâi (12), and
he continued to go to them and their children. Ibn Tâhir, being then in want of a
person capable of bringing up and educating his children confided them to the care of
Ibrahim Ibn Ishak al-Musabi, and engaged Yakûb at a (monthly) salary of five hun-
dred dirhems, which sum he afterwards increased to one thousand. — Abû al-
Abbâs Thalab (vol. I. p. 83) said: "Ibn as-Sikkit was skilled in various branches
of knowledge. His father, who was a virtuous man and had been one of Abû
'l-Hasan al-Kisâi's (vol. II. p. 237) disciples, was well acquainted with pure
Arabic. The motive which induced people to attend Yakûb's sittings was this:
I found that he had collected the poems of Abû 'n-Najîm al-ijli (13) and amelio-
rated the text; so, I asked him to lend me the volume in order that I might copy
it. 'Abû 'l-Abbâs!' said he, 'I have sworn that my wife shall be divorced from me
if that volume ever gets out of my sight; but there it is before you; so, you may
(begm to) copy it (here) and return to me on Thursday next (to resume your task).
My going to see him induced a number of persons to do the same, and the news,
having spread about, brought crowds to his lessons." Thalab said also: "Our
masters were unanimous in declaring that, since the time of Ibn al-Àârâbî (vol. III.
p. 23), there had not appeared a more learned philologer than Ibn as-Sikkit."—
Being obliged by al-Mutawakkil to become the preceptor of his son al-Motazz Billah,
he went to that prince's room and said, on taking his seat: "What does the emir wish
that we should begin by?" To this al-Motazz replied: "By departing."— 'Then,
said Yakûb, I shall rise (and retire)."— "I shall be more active in rising than
you," said al-Motazz, and he stood up in such haste that his feet got entangled in his
trousers, and he fell on the floor. Yakûb, to whom he then turned, quite ab-
ashed and blushing with shame, recited to him these lines:

"A man may be punished for a slip of the tongue, but is never chastised for the slipping
of his feet. A slip of the tongue may cost him his head, but a slip of the foot is cured by
repose.

"Al-Mutawakkil, to whom Yakûb went the next morning and related what had
passed, ordered him a gift of fifty thousand dirhems but observed that he had al-
ready heard these two verses." — Yakûb used to say: "I am a better gramma-
rian than my father, but he surpasses me by his acquaintance with poetry and
(pure) Arabic." — Al-Husain Ibn Abd al-Mujîb al-Mausili said: "I heard Ibn as-
Sikkit recite the following verses at a sitting held by Abû Bakr Ibn Abi Shaiba (14):

"There are persons who love you ostensibly with a love not to be diminished; and yet, if
you ask them for ten farthings, they would refer their dear friend to the bounty of the all-
knowing God."
Ibn as-Sikkít composed some poetry capable of giving confidence to a dejected mind. Such, for instance, was the following:

When the heart is filled with despair and the widest bosom is too narrow to hold the grief which invades it,—when afflictions have lodged therein and taken up their dwelling,—when you find no means of escaping from misery and perceive that all the address of the most experienced is useless,—assistance will come to you, whilst you are in despair, as a favour from the bountiful being who hears the prayers of the wretched. When misfortune has reached its height, deliverance is at hand.

It was said by the learned that the Isldh al-Mantik was a book without a preface and the Adab al-Kdtb of Ibn Kutaiba (vol. II. p. 22) a preface without a book; the fact is that the preface of the latter work is very long, but it contains much useful information. One of the learned said: "There never crossed the bridge (of boats) " at Baghdad such a treatise on philology as the Mantik." It is certainly an instructive and useful work, containing a great quantity of philological information, and there does not exist, as far as we know, a treatise of the same size and on the same subject. A number of persons have made it the special object of their studies: the vizir Abú 'l-Kásim al-Husain Ibn Ali, surnamed Ibn al-Maghribi (vol. I. p. 450), made an abridgment of it, the khattâb Abû Zakariya at-Tibrizî (p. 78 of this vol.) remodelled it, and Ibn as-Siranî (vol. I. p. 377), composed, on the verses cited in it, an instructive work. The other productions of Ibn as-Sikkít are: The Kitab az-Zibrij (book of precious ornaments), the Kitâb al-Alfdz (a vocabulary), the Kitâb al-Amthâl (book of proverbs), the Kitâb al-Mâksûr wa'l-Manda'd (on the short and the long final a), the Kitâb al-Mudhakkar wa'l-Muwânnath (on masculine and feminine nouns), the Kitâb al-Ajâds (on the different species of animals), which is a large work, the Kitâb al-Fârs (on the difference between the names given to the members of the human body and to those of animals), the Kitâb as-Sarj wa'l-Lizjâm (on the saddle and bridle), the Kitâb fâdl wa'Afsâal (on the difference of significations between verbs of the first and the fourth form), the Kitâb al-Hashardât (on reptiles and insects), the Kitâb al-Aswât (on the cries of men and animals), the Kitâb al-Adhâd (on words which have two opposite significations), the Kitâb as-Shâjr wa'n-Nabât (on trees and plants), the Kitâb al-Wâlâsh (on wild beasts), the Kitâb al-Ibl (on camels), the Kitâb an-Nawâdir (on expressions of rare occurrence), the Kitâb Madânî's-Shíar al-Kabîr (the greater work...
on the ideas occurring in poetry), the Kitāb Sarakht as-Shunawrāt wa m'attaafakhs alaih (on the plagiarisms of poets and the thoughts in which they agreed unintentionally), etc. The reputation of this author is so great that we need not expatiate on his merits. The manner of his death has been related otherwise than in the account which we have given: according to some, al-Mutawakkil often attacked the character of Ali Ibn Abi Tālib and of that khalīf’s sons, al-Hasan and al-Husain. — His detestation of them has been already noticed in some verses which we inserted in the life of Abū 'l-Husain Ali Ibn Muhammad surnamed Ibn Bassān (vol. II. p. 303). — Ibn as-Sikkit (on the contrary), shewed for them the utmost veneration and attachment. In the conversation of which we have spoken, he said (it appears), to al-Mutawakkil: “Kanbar, Ali’s slave, was better than you and your sons.” On this, al-Mutawakkil ordered his tongue to be plucked out from the back of his neck, and the order was obeyed. This occurred on the eve of Tuesday, the 5th of Rajab, 244 (17th October, A. D. 858); or according to others, in 243 or 246. God best knows the true date! Ibn as-Sikkit had then attained his fifty-eighth year. When he died, ten thousand dirhems were sent to his son by al-Mutawakkil, as the price of the father’s blood. — The grammarian Abū Ja'far Ahmad Ibn Muhammad, generally known by the appellation of Ibn an-Nahhās (vol. I. p. 81), states that al-Mutawakkil’s conversation with Ibn as-Sikkit began in a jesting tone, which then turned to earnest. According to another account, al-Mutawakkil ordered him to revile and disparage a certain Kurash and, perceiving his unwillingness to do so, he caused the Kurashi and to revile Ibn as-Sikkit. — The latter replied to this attack; on which al-Mutawakkil said to him: “I gave you an order and you refused to obey; and, on ‘being insulted by this man, you did what I wanted.” He then had a beating inflicted on Ibn as-Sikkit, who was immediately afterwards carried out of the room and dragged (home) prostrate (on the ground). — God knows which of these accounts is the true one. — An anecdote similar to the one related above has been already given by us in the life of Abd Allah Ibn al-Mubārak (vol. II. p. 12), who had been questioned respecting the relative merits of Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyān and Omar Ibn Abd al-Aziz. — The surname of as-Sikkit was given to the subject of this notice because he was very taciturn and would remain a long time without speaking. All words of the forms fādil and fādil take an i after the first letter (15). — Khāzī means belonging to Khāzistān, which a region lying between Basra and Fars.
(1) Abū Ja'far Ahmad Ibn Farah Ibn Jibrīl, a teacher of the Koran-readings, a Traditionist and an expounder of the Korān, was a blind man and a native of Baghdad. His vast learning and the exactitude of his information brought him into great repute. As a Traditionist, he is considered to be sure and trustworthy. He died A. H. 303 (A. D. 915-6) at the age of nearly ninety years. — (Kurād, fol. 65.)

(2) Abū Said al-Hasan Ibn al-Husain as-Sukkari studied at the schools of Kūfa and Basra, acquired great philological, grammatical and historical information and published high-y esteemed editions of the ancient poets. He composed some treatises on philological subjects and an extensive work on the poems of Abū Nuwās. Born A. H. 912 (A. D. 827-8), died A. H. 975 (A. D. 888-9). — (Fihrist; Fluegel’s Grammatik der Araber, p. 89.)

(3) This maxim is probably inserted here because the neglect of it cost Ibn as-Sikkit his life.

(4) Abū Ja'far Ahmad Ibn Obaid, surnamed Abū 'Askāl, was one of the learned men of Kūfa and preceptor to al-Muntasir and al-Mutanawwāl, the sons of al-Mutanawwāl. He composed some philological works and died A. H. 973 (A. D. 886-7), or 978, by another account. — (Fihrist; Fluegel’s Gram. Schule der Ar., p. 161.)

(5) Al Farrā, on opening his course of lectures, asked each of his scholars what was his name and from what country he came. Ibn as-Sikkit answered frankly that he was from Khūzistān, a country the inhabitants of which, according to Yakūt, were notorious for their avarice, their stupidity and the whilens of their inclinations. It was said that a year’s residence in that country sufficed to change the cleverest man into an idiot. — (Dictionnaire géogr. de la Perse, translated from the Arabic of Yakūt by Barbir de Meynard.)

(6) See p. 289 of this volume and Fluegel’s Gram. Schule der Ar., p. 156.

(7) Abū 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn al-Mubārak al-Libyānī, was al-Kisā’i’s servant-boy. Having had frequent opportunities of meeting with men of learning and Arabs of the desert who spoke their language with elegance, he picked up a great quantity of literary information, and composed some works. Abū Obaid al-Kāsim Ibn Sallām (vol. II, p. 486) received lessons from him. He died probably towards the commencement of the third century of the Hijra (A. D. 912). — (Fihrist, fol. 64.)

(8) The epistolary style of the Arabs during the first and second centuries after Muhammad, was highly admired by philologists for the subtility of the thoughts and the elegant concision of the style. To Europeans this elliptical style appears obscure and affected.

(9) This was one of the khilaf Omar’s generals.

(10) This celebrated chieftain was a contemporary of Muhammad and the first khilaf. For his adventures, see Causin de Perceval’s Essai sur l’histoire des Arabes.

(11) Arabic scholars will easily understand the question; so, we shall merely state that Ibn as-Sikkit’s second answer was right; unfortunately, he had forgotten that verbs having a vowel for one of their radicals, lose it in the conditional mood.

(12) Abū 'l-Abbās Muhammad, the son of the celebrated emir, Abī Allah Ibn Tāhir, left Khorazm in the year 237 (A. D. 851-2) and obtained from the khilaf al-Mutawakkil the government of Irāk. He fixed his residence at Baghdad and, in the year 248 (A. D. 862-3) he was appointed commander of the shorta (the police guards), and received, in addition to the government of Irāk, that of the two holy Cities (Mekka and Medina). He died A. H. 353 (A. D. 867). His talents, literary acquirements, bravery and generosity rendered his name illustrious. — (Nujūm.)

(13) The poet Fadl Ibn Kudāmā al-Ijīl, surnamed Abū 'n-Najm (the father of the star), was contemporary with the Omayyade khilaf Hishām Ibn Abd al-Malik. — (De Hammer’s Literaturgeschichte der Araber, vol. II, p. 568.)
(14) The ḥāfiṣ Abū Bakr Abd Allah, surnamed Ibn Abī Shaiba, was a mawla of the tribe of Abas and a native of Kūfah. As a Traditionist, his authority is cited by al-Bukhari, Muslim, Abū Dāwūd and others. He died in the month of Muharram, 235 (July-August, A.D. 849). — (Husayn.)

(15) As examples of the first of these forms, we may give اكريل (iḥrīl) and سملك (siḥt); for the second form we have صيبي (ṣiḥṭ), صفي (ṣifi), and جبال (iḥrāl).

YAKUB IBN AL-LAITH AS-SAFFAR

Abū Yūsuf Yakūb Ibn al-Laith as-Saffār al-Khārīji (the insurgent); of this chief and of his brother Amr, historians make frequent mention: they speak of the countries which they conquered, of the numbers which they slew and of the conflicts which took place between them and the khaliṣfs. It is from these accounts that I have extracted the information given in the following pages. Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn al-Azhar al-Akhbārī (1) says: "Ali Ibn Muhammad, a person well-acquainted with the proceedings of (Yakūb) Ibn al-Laith as-Saffār and with the history of his wars, related to me as follows: Yakūb and his brother Amr were sāffārs (coppersmiths) in their youth and, at that time, they made a great show of piety. A native of Sijistān then attracted attention by undertaking, of his own accord, to wage war against the Khārījites (2). This volunteer in God’s service came from the town of Bust and bore the name of Sālih Ibn an-Nadr al-Kināni (of the Arabic tribe of Kināna). The two brothers became his partisans and rose to fortune by his means. Yakūb, having lost his brother, was slain by that sect of Khārījites which was called the Shurṭ, was appointed by the above-mentioned Sālih to act as his lieutenant. On the death of Sālih, another of the volunteers (Mutawwakl) named Dirhem Ibn al-Husain occupied his place, and Yakūb remained with him, as he had done with Sālih. Dirhem, having then fallen into a snare which had been laid for him by the governor of Khurāsān, was sent by him to Baghdad and there imprisoned. When set at liberty, he entered into the sultan’s service, but afterwards confined himself to his house and mani-
Ibn Khallakan's

"fasted great piety, devotion and the intention of making the pilgrimage. "This continued till Yakûb became powerful." — Our professor Izz ad-Din Abû 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn Muhammad, surnamed Ibn al-Atâr (vol. II. p. 288), says, in that section of his Annals which contains an account of Yakûb's proceedings and which is placed under the year 237 (A. D. 851-2): "In this year, a native of Bust whose name was Sâlih Ibn an-Nadr made himself master of Sijistân. With him was Yakûb Ibn al-Laith. Tâhir Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Tâhir Ibn al-Husain, the governor of Khorasân, marched against him and delivered the province from the invaders. Some time after, a man named Dirhem Ibn al-Husain, who was also one of the volunteers, made his appearance in the same country and subdued it, he was, however, unable to provide for his troops, and so glaring was his incapacity that his partisans rallied around Yakûb Ibn al-Laith, who held the command of the army, and placed him at their head, having already remarked the talent with which he administered, governed and maintained order. — Dirhem, being informed of this, offered no resistance and abdicated in favour of Yakûb. The new chief subdued all the country and became very formidable; reinforcements came to him from every quarter, and his authority increased in the manner which we shall relate." — Let us resume and terminate the recital made by Ali Ibn Muhammad: "When Dirhem Ibn al-Husain arrived in Baghdad, Yakûb took the command of the volunteers, and continued the war against the Shurûd Khârijites. These sectaries he succeeded in vanquishing and destroying, and in laying waste their villages. By his skill and address he obtained from his partisans such obedience as they had never shown to his predecessors. His power and might then became so great that he was able to effect the conquest of Sijistân, Herât, Bu-shandj and their dependencies. There was in the frontier territory of Sijistân a Turkish tribe called the Darâri and governed by a king named Rebul (see page 196 of this vol.). Yakûb, incited by the inhabitants of Sijistân, who stated that this people did even more harm than the Shurûd Khârijites and better deserved to be punished, marched against them, slew their king and three princes, all of them bearing the title of Rebul. He then returned to Sijistân with the heads of these princes and some thousands more. Having become formidable to all the kings of the countries around him, he obtained the humble submission of the sovereigns who reigned over Mûltân, ar-Rûkhkhâj, at-Tabasain, Zâbulistân, as-Sind, Mekrân and other places. His expedition against Herât and Bu-shanj took place in the
"year 253 (A. D. 867). At that time, the emir of Khorasan was Muhammad Ibn Tahir Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Tahir Ibn al-Husain al-Khuza'i. The officer who commanded for him in these cities, and whose name was Muhammad Ibn Aûs al-Anbâri, marched against the invader at the head of a numerous force, magnificently-equipped and armed. In the battle which ensued, he fought bravely and kept his ground, till Yakûb, by a skilful manœuvre, intercepted his communications with Bushanj and thus obliged him to make a precipitate retreat. It is said that (Yakûb), in all his battles, never met with a more obstinate resistance than that offered by Ibn Aûs. He then occupied Bushanj and Herât. Having got into his power a number of Taherians, persons so called because they were attached to the family of Tahir Ibn al-Husain al-Khuza'i, he took them with him to Sijistân and kept them prisoners. The Khalif al-Motazz Billah obtained their liberty by sending to him a letter, the bearer of which was a Shi'ite named Ibn Balam. I was informed, said Ibn al-Azhar al-Akhbâri, by Muhammad Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Marwan, that Ibn Balam related to him as follows: I set out with a letter for him from al-Motazz Billah and, on arriving at Zaranj, — the capital of Sijistân, — I asked permission to see him. The authorisation being granted, I went in without saluting and sat down in his presence without his inviting me to do so. I then delivered the letter to him and, when he received it, I said to him: 'Kiss the letter of the Commander of the faithful.' That he did not do, but broke the seal and opened it. I then retired walking backwards, towards the door of the saloon in which he was, and said: 'Salutation to the emir and the mercy of God [3]. He was so much pleased with this that he lodged me well, made me a present and set the Taherians at liberty.' The same Ibn Balam related as follows: I went, one day, to visit Yusuf as-Saffâr, and he said to me: 'There is a man coming to me from Fars, or that quarter, for the purpose of obtaining my protection, and he has with him three or four others; nay, there are five in all.' This declaration of his I did not believe and remained silent; yet, before I was aware, the chamberlain entered and said: — 'Emir! there is a man at the door who comes to ask protection, and with him are four others.' The visitor being introduced by Yakûb's order, informed him; after saluting, that he had with him four companions. These also were admitted. I turned to the chamberlain and asked him if this was a juggling trick of his? He replied with a solemn oath that the men had arrived quite suddenly and that no one had been
aware of their coming. Some time after, I asked Yakūb about it: 'Emir I said I,
I remarked something said by you which was really surprising; how did you know
of this supplicant's coming with his companions?' He replied: 'I was thinking of
Fars when I saw a raven alight on a spot fronting the road which leads to that
country, and I felt in one of my toes a twitching which passed successively to
each of the others. Now, as toes are not noble members of the body, I
knew that some people from that quarter would come to see me, either sup-
pliants or envoys of little consequence.' Ali Ibn al-Hakam related as follows:
I asked Yakūb Ibn al-Laith as-Saffār how he came by the scar which disfigured
him so much and which extended from the bridge of his nose across his cheek.
He replied that he got the wound in one of his encounters with the Khārijites; a
man whom he had wounded with his lance turned upon him and struck off (with
a sabre) one half of his face. The piece was then replaced and sewed on. 'Du-
ring twenty days' said he, 'I remained with a tube in my mouth, which had to be
maintained open lest the inflammation should extend to the head, and my food
consisted of liquids which were poured down my throat.' His chamberlain
added: 'Notwithstanding this wound, the emir went out as usual to direct the
mouvements of his troops and fought (like the others).' — Yakūb sent to al-
Motazz Billah a magnificent present and, amongst other objects, a portative
mosque made of silver and large enough to hold fifteen persons at prayers. He
asked that the province of Fars should be given to him, and engaged (to
pay a yearly tribute of) fifteen millions of dirhems in case he succeeded in expelling
from that province Ali Ibn al-Husain Ibn Kuraish, him who governed
it (4). Yakūb, having sent this letter to al-Motazz, left Sijistān with the intention
of proceeding to Kermān, and halted at Bam.' — This place marks the point
which separates Sijistān from Kermān. — 'Al-Abbās Ibn al-Husain Ibn Kuraish,
the brother of the above-mentioned Ali Ibn al-Husain, then departed from Kermān
with Ahmad Ibn al-Laith al-Kurdi and took the road of Shīrāz. Yakūb
placed a body of troops under the orders of his brother Ali Ibn al-Laith and sent
him forward to as-Sirjān whilst he himself remained at Bam.' — As-Sirjān is a
town in Kermān. — 'Ahmad Ibn al-Laith al-Kurdi then turned from his way, with
a numerous body of Kurds and other troops, and proceeded to Darabjird.' — This
name is common to three localities, of which the first is the capital of a vast district
in Fars, and the second a village of Fars, in the district of Istakhar, at which there
is a mine of quicksilver. It must have been to one of these two places that they went, for the third is at Naisápûr in Khorášán, to which province it is probable that they did not go, since it has no connection with Fars. — The narrator continues thus: "Ahmad Ibn al-Laith then met with a band of Yakûb's troops who were on a foraging party, killed some of them and put the rest to flight. The heads of the slain he sent to Fars, where they were stuck up by Ali Ibn al-Husain. Yakûb, on learning what had happened, entered into Kermân. Ali Ibn al-Husain sent against him Tauk Ibn al-Mughallis at the head of five thousand Kurds and the troops which Ahmad Ibn al-Laith al-Kurdi had brought with him. He marched to Onás (5), a city in the province of Kermân and there halted. Tauk then received a letter from Yakûb in which he was told that he had made a mistake in coming into a province which did not belong to him, and to this he replied: 'You are more skilled in the working of copper than in the work of war.' This gave great offence to Yakûb. There was in Tauk's army three hundred of the Abnâ (6). When Yakûb reached the city of Onás, he gave battle to Tauk, killed part of his troops and put the rest to flight; but the Abnâ stood their ground so bravely that Yakûb had pity on them and offered to spare their lives. This proposal they rejected and continued fighting till they died. In this battle, Yakûb slew two thousand men, took one thousand prisoners and, with them, Tauk Ibn al-Mughallis. The latter he put into light chains and provided abundantly with food and other necessaries, but obliged him to deliver up his treasures. Having then left Onás, he entered into the government of Fars, and Ali Ibn al-Husain retroferred himself in Shíráz. This took place on Tuesday, the 17th of the latter Rabî, 255 (14 April, A. D. 869). Ibn al-Husain then wrote to Yakûb a letter in which he declared that he had not ordered Ibn al-Mughallis to act as he had done and that hostilities had been commenced by that chief without authorization. 'If you intend to take Kermân,' said he, 'you have turned your back to it; if you wish to obtain possession of Fars, produce a letter from the Commander of the faithful ordering (me) to give it up; then I shall retire.' Yakûb answered that he had a letter from the sultan (7), but would not deliver it till he had entered the town and that, if he (Ali Ibn al-Husain) would evacuate the place and give it up, he would do an act of piety and remove all cause of evil. If not, said he, 'the sword must decide between us, and our place of meeting shall be the marj of Senkân.'
This is a large and moist tract of land at the distance of three parasangs from Shiráz. — "The post-master and the chief men of the place then wrote to Yakûb, saying: For you to whom God has given a spirit so devoted to his service and so zealous for the interests of religion, for you who have slain the Khârijites and expelled them from the provinces of Khorâsân and Sijistân, it is not befitting to be hasty in the shedding of Moslem blood. Ali Ibn al-Husain will not give up the town unless he receives a written authorisation from the khalif." The people of Shiráz then prepared to sustain a siege. When the troops of Tauk had been put to flight, three of Yakûb’s partisans fell into the hands of the fugitives and were imprisoned by Ali Ibn al-Husain. As for Tauk, he had purchased, previously to marching against Yakûb, a house in Shiráz for which he paid seventy thousand dirhems (£1,750) and had allotted another sum of money to be spent upon it. He now wrote these words to his son (who was in the town): 'Do not suspend the work of the masons; for the emir Yakûb treats me with honour and kindness. Obtain the liberation of his three partisans; that is what he asks for. And he has promised, if it be done, to set me at liberty.' Ali Ibn al-Husain (being informed of this), said: 'Write to Yakûb and tell him that he may crucify Tauk Ibn al-Mughallis, for I prize the meanest of my slaves more than him.' Tauk, whom Yakûb questioned respecting the means of which Ali Ibn al-Husain could dispose, represented them as very inconsiderable and, to gain Yakûb's favour, he offered him the money which he had in Shiráz and said that he would write to his family the order to send it. 'This,' said he, 'will help you to war against him.' Being told to do so by Yakûb, he wrote to his son, but the letter fell into the hands of Ali Ibn al-Husain, who immediately seized on the money and other things which were in Tauk's house, and had them carried to his own. Yakûb then began his march and Ali Ibn al-Husain levied troops." Ahmad Ibn al-Hakam relates as follows: 'Yakûb said to me: 'Ali Ibn al-Husain is he a Moslem or not?' I answered that he was. On this he said: 'How can you consider him to be a Moslem who brings into the land of Musulmans troops of infidel Kurds, for the purpose of killing the true believers, carrying off their women and seizing on their wealth? Know you not that Ahmad Ibn al-Laith al-Kurdi put seven hundred men to death in Kermân, to avenge the murder of a single individual, that the Kurds violated two hundred virgins of the best families and carried out of the country upwards of two thou-
sand women? Do you consider him to be a Muslim who permits such doings?"

"I replied that Ahmad had acted so without Ali's orders. In another conference,
"Yakūb bid him take this message to Ali Ibn al-Husain: 'I have brought with me a
"people of freemen, and cannot send them away unless I give them what they
"want. Let me have therefore wherewithal to satisfy them and send me also
"such a gift as is fitting for a person of my rank. If you do so, I shall be for
"you as a brother and lend you my assistance against those who may attack you;
"I shall deliver Kermān over to you, so that you may gorge upon it, and shall
"return to my own government.' Yakūb, having departed, halted at a village
"called Khūzistān (sic) and, on Tuesday, the 8th of the first Jumāda of that year
"(24th April, A.D. 869), Ahmad Ibn al-Hakam rejoined Ali Ibn al-Husain, and
"delivered to him Yakūb's letter. Ali Ibn al-Husain, said Ibn al-Hakam, was so
"greatly astounded at the news which I brought him that he could understand
"nothing of it. The contents of the letter were, in a summary manner, what we
"here relate: The writer began by good wishes for the person to whom it was ad-
dressed and then said: 'I have well understood the purport of your letter and
"your allusion to my arrival at this most important town without having received
"the Commander of the faithful's authorisation. Know that I am not one of those
"persons whose minds aspire to act unjustly; I am not capable of such conduct;
"so I thus deliver you from the trouble of ruminating over that point. The
"town belongs to the Commander of the faithful, and we are his servants who
"act by his orders throughout his land and his dominions, and who are obedient
"towards God and towards him. I have heard the observations of your envoy,
"and leave to him the task of delivering to you my answer to the message which
"you charged him with, and of communicating to you a reply which, I hope, will
"tend to your advantage and to mine. If you act as I advise, you will assure
"your own welfare, please God! and, if you refuse, (recollect) that the will of God
"is not to be resisted or avoided. As for us, we place ourselves under the pro-
tection of the Almighty, so that we may be saved from perdition; we have
"recourse to Him against the dictates of injustice and the strokes of disappoint-
ment. We hope that, in His bounty, he will assure our happiness in this world
"and in the next. May God grant you long life! Written on Monday, the 1st of
"the first Jumāda, 255 (17th April, A.D. 869).'

The two armies then marched
"against each other; that of Ali Ibn al-Husain consisting of fifteen thousand
men. On Wednesday morning, the 4th of the same month, he sent forward
Ahmad Ibn al-Laith with the vanguard. On Thursday, Yakûb's vanguard came
up and the two armies met. The first charge had no result, but, in the second,
Ali Ibn al-Husain's partisans were driven from their positions and, after an obsti-
nate conflict, they were thrown into disorder and every man of them fled without
once looking back. Ali Ibn al-Husain followed his troops, crying after them:
'Stop, in the name of God! come back!' but they did not mind him, and he
remained with only a few of his companions. The fugitives reached the gates of
Shiráz on the evening of the same day. It was shortly after the hour of noon
that the battle took place. The gates being too narrow to admit the crowd,
numbers of them ran through the outskirts of the town, nor did they stop till
they reached al-Ahwáz. In that battle they lost about five thousand men. Ali
received three wounds from some of Yakûb's cavalry, who hacked at him with
their sabres, brought him out of the saddle to the ground, and were just going
to kill him outright when he exclaimed: 'I am Ali Ibn al-Husain.' On this,
they took off his turban-cloth, tied it about his waist and led him to Yakûb.
The soldier who took him prisoner asked for a reward and was offered ten thou-
sand dirhems (£. 250), but rejected that sum, and Yakûb said to him: 'You
brought me a dog which you took, and I have nothing more for you than what
I offer.' The man went away. Yakûb then gave the prisoner, with his own
hand, ten strokes of a whip over the head, seized his chamberlain by the beard
and plucked nearly all of it off; having then ordered that Ali should be fettered
with irons of twenty pounds' weight, he had Tawk Ibn al-Mughallis fettered also
and confined them both in the same tent. Immediately after, he marched towards
Shiráz, and the partisans of Ali Ibn al-Husain fled in all directions. He made his
entry into that city with drums beating before him, and the inhabitants, think-
ing that he would do them harm, by shedding their blood and plundering
their wealth, because they had warred against him, did not dare to utter a word.
He had, in fact, promised to his troops that they should have permission to sack
the city, in case he was victorious. The people, being aware of that, shut them-
selves up in their houses. He returned to his camp, the same night, after
having perambulated the city and, the next morning, he caused an amnesty to be
proclaimed, and the inhabitants, being informed that they might go out into the
market-places, took advantage of the permission. He then announced by procla-
BIOPGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

mation that whoever sheltered any of Ali Ibn al-Husain's secretaries would be outlawed by the fact. When Friday came (he went to the mosque and) offered up the prayer for the imām (khalif) al-Motazz Billah, but without naming himself, and, as this was remarked to him, he replied: 'The emir (or governor) has not yet arrived (8). He said to them also: 'I shall stay with you only ten days and then return to Sijistān.' His brother, whom he sent to the house of Ali Ibn al-Husain, took out of it the carpets and other furniture, but was unable to discover where the money was hid. On this, he (Yakūb) had Ali brought before him and induced him, by threats and promises, to declare that he would point out the place where he had concealed his treasures. Ali, being then taken to his house, drew forth four hundred badras (9), or one thousand, according to another account. This sum Yakūb distributed to his troops, instead of the pillage which he had promised them, and each man obtained for his share three hundred dirhems (£. 7, 10s). He then inflicted on Ali tortures of various kinds, caused his testicles to be compressed and bound the two glands (?) to his cheeks. The prisoner said to him: 'You have already taken from me furniture and other objects, to the value of forty thousand dinars (£. 26,000);' but Yakūb persisted in torturing him and had him bound in fetters of forty pounds' weight. Ali then pointed out to them a place in his house where they found four millions of dirhems (£. 100,000) and a great quantity of jewels. He was again tortured and informed that he (Yakūb) would not be satisfied unless he obtained an additional sum of thirty thousand dinars (£. 15,000). Ali, though now deranged in mind by the violence of his sufferings, was delivered over to al-Hasan Ibn Dirhem, who beat, tortured and reviled him; Ta'uk Ibn al-Mughallis, was tortured also by Ibn Dirhem, and shut up with Ali in the same chamber. On Saturday, the 28th of the first Jumāda of the same year (14th May, A. D. 869), Yakūb departed from Shirāz for his own country, and took with him Ali Ibn al-Husain and Ta'uk Ibn al-Mughallis. On reaching Kermān, he had them dressed in party-coloured clothes, with women's bonnets on their heads, and paraded them about whilst a public cryer walked before, announcing who they were. After that, he cast them into prison and went on to Sijistān. On the third of Rajab, the same year (17th June, A. D. 869), the khalif al-Motazz Billah was deposed, and, on the same day, the imām al-Muhtadi Billah was raised to the khalifate. This prince also was deposed, on the afternoon of Tuesday the 16th of Rajab, 256
(19th June, A. D. 870), and al-Motamid ala Allah was solemnly acknowledged as khalif. During the khalifate of al-Muhtadi, Yakûb as-Saffâr did nothing of importance; he merely continued making predatory incursions, warring against the neighbouring princes who reigned in Sijistân and its dependencies, and making irruptions into the districts of Khorásân, those of Kûhistân which were in that vicinity and those dependencies of Herât and Bûshanj which were contiguous to Sijistân. He then returned to Fars and, having gathered in its crops, he returned to Sijistân with about thirty millions of dirhems (£ 750,000). Muhammad Ibn Wâsil was left by him in Fars to direct the military operations in that country, collect the taxes, correspond with the khalif and transmit to him part of the money which he gathered in. The khardj (or land-tax) of Fars, which he was to send to his master every year was fixed at five millions of dirhems (£ 125,000). That country he (Yakûb) held by right of conquest, and the khalif would not have confirmed him in its possession had he found amongst his dependants any one capable of taking his place. In the month of the latter Jamâda, 258 (April-May, A. D. 872), news was received (at Baghdad) of Yakûb’s entry into Balkh. From that city he proceeded to Naisâpûr, where he arrived in the month of Zu’l-Kaada, 259 (Aug.-Sept. A. D. 873), and made prisoners Muhammad Ibn Tâhir al-Khuzâi, the emir of Khorásân and a number of Taherides. In the month of Muharram, 260 (Oct.-Nov. A. D. 873), he left that country, taking with him as prisoners Muhammad Ibn Tâhir and upwards of sixty persons attached to that family. He then marched towards Jurjân, with the intention of encountering the Alide prince, al-Hasan Ibn Zaid, who was the emir of that country and of Tabaristân. Al-Hasan, being informed that Yakûb was coming to attack him, raised thirteen millions of dirhems (£ 325,000) out of the land-tax (khardj), by calling in the arrears and exacting advances on the imposts of the following year, after which, he retired from Jurjân to Tabaristân. Yakûb entered into Jurjân and dispatched some of his partisans against Sâriya, (the capital) of Tabaristân, which place they took. In Jurjân the daily rations of his cavalry amounted to one thousand bushels (kafsâ) of barley. He then set out for Tabaristân, and al-Hasan Ibn Zaid marched against him with a large body of troops. Yakûb, having declared to his partisans that he would put to death whoever fled from the enemy, set out to fight, accompanied with five hundred of his slaves, and, having encountered the troops
of al-Hasan, he charged them with such vigour that he put them to rout. Al-
Hasan Ibn Zaid, who was a heavy, corpulent man, had already provided for his
safety by causing horses and mules to be kept in readiness at each village on the
road by which he intended to retreat. Yakūb, having rallied his partisans, set
out at the head of five hundred horse (djarīda) in pursuit of al-Hasan who,
however, effected his escape. The treasures which the latter had with him and
which consisted of three hundred (horse-) loads of wealth, most of it coined
money, fell into the hands of Yakūb and, besides that, a number of persons des-
cended from Ali Ibn Abī Tālib. These he treated with great cruelty and cast
into prison. This encounter took place on Monday, the 26th of Rajab, 260 (17th
May, A. D. 874). After this victory, Yakūb pushed forward and entered A'amul,"
the capital of Tabaristān. — "Al-Hasan Ibn Zaid fled to a city called Sālūs,
but, not obtaining from the inhabitants as favorable a reception as he had been
led to expect, he departed and left them. Yakūb set out from A'amul in pursuit
of al-Hasan and had already made one day's march when he received intelli-
gence of the occupation of Marw ar-Rūd by al-Husain Ibn Tāhir Ibn Abī Allāh
Ibn Tāhir, aided by the lord of Khwārezm at the head of two thousand Turks.
This obliged him to give up his project and cease advancing into the heart of the
country. He, in consequence, abandoned the pursuit of al-Hasan Ibn Zaid
and retraced his steps. In the month of Zu 'l-Hijja, 260 (Sept.-Oct. A. D.
874), he wrote to the emir of Rai the order to leave that place, stating that
he himself had been appointed governor of it by the khalif. When the khalif
was informed of this, he declared Yakūb's assertion to be false and chastised
such of the dependants of that chief as were in Baghdad, by casting them into
prison and seizing on their money. In the month of Muharram, 261 (Oct.-
Nov. A. D. 874), Yakūb, who was in Tabaristān, set out for Jurjān and had an
encounter with al-Hasan Ibn Zaid, whom he met near the (Caspian) sea and
who had with him a body of troops from Dailam, al-Jibāl and Tabaristān.
Al-Hasan dispersed Yakūb's partisans, killed all those whom he was able to over-
take and obliged their chief to take refuge in Jurjān. A terrible earthquake then
occurred by which two thousand of Yakūb's men lost their lives. Al-Hasan Ibn
Zaid retook Tabaristān, that is, A'amul, Sāriya and their dependancies. Yakūb
remained in Jurjān where he oppressed the people by levying heavy taxes (khārdj)
and seizing on their wealth. The earthquake lasted three (days), and a number
of the inhabitants of Jurjân retired to Baghdad. These refugees being asked
what Yakûb as-Saffâr was doing, spoke so loudly of his tyranny and oppression that
the khalif resolved on marching against him, and made preparations accordingly.
As-Saffâr (Yakûb) had returned to the neighbourhood of Rai, and the pilgrims
were come back from the fair (of Mekka) when the khalif al-Motamid ala
Allah wrote to Obaid Allah, the son of Abd Allah Ibn Tâhir Ibn al-Husain, who
was then governor of Irâk, ordering him to assemble the pilgrims of Khorâsân,
Tabaristan, Jurjân and Rai, and to read to them a letter which he sent to
him. Obaid Allah assembled those pilgrims who had come from the farthest
parts of the empire, and read to them a letter by which the Commander
of the faithful ordered the people to war against as-Saffâr. Thirty copies of
this document were drawn up, one of which was given to the people of
each province, so that the news might be spread throughout all the country.
When Yakûb as-Saffâr was informed of the imprisonment of his servants and
learned that Obaid Allah had assembled the pilgrims at his palace and delivered
to them copies of this letter, he perceived evidently that the khalif intended to
march against him and, judging that his troops were not sufficiently numerous
to resist those of his adversary, he returned to Naisâpûr. On his arrival in that
city, he extorted money from the inhabitants and, in the month of the first
Jumâda, 261 (Feb.–March, A. D. 875), he set out for Sijistân. When he arri-
vod there, letters came from the khalif by which all the princes of Khorâsân and
all the men possessed of means and influence were declared, each of them, go-
vernor of the place in which he resided. When these letters arrived, as-Saffâr's
partisans were scattered (in detachments) throughout the province of Khorâsân.
As-Saffâr then went to Askar Mukram, in Khûzistân, and (having collected his
troops, he) wrote to the khalif a letter in which he demanded the governments of
Khorâsân, Fars and all the provinces which had been possessed by the family of
Tâhir Ibn al-Husain al-Khuzaî. He asked also for the commandment of the
shurta of Baghdad and that of Sarra-man-râa, and required his nomination to
the governments of Tabaristan, Jurjân, Rai, Kermân, Adarbajân, Kazvin, Sijistân
and Sind. He demanded also that those to whom had been read the letter copies
of which had been made at the palace of Obaid Allah Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Tâhir should
be assembled and another letter read them, annulling the former. All this was
done by al-Muwaṣṣak Billah Abû Ahmad Talha, the son of al-Mutaḍawakkil ala
"Allah and the brother of the khalif al-Motamid ala Allah. This al-Muwaffak was also the father of al-Motadid Billah, the khalif who succeeded to al-Motamid. The entire direction of public affairs was in the hands of al-Muwaffak, who left nothing of the khalifian authority to his brother except the mere title. He (al-Muwaffak) granted to him (Yakāb) what he demanded, and, having assembled the people, he read to them a dispatch by which he complied with as-Saffār's request and nominated him to the offices for which he asked. This answer, rendered in the khalif's name, to what was exacted by as-Saffār, caused great perturbation among the Mawlas (10) [in garrison] at Sarra-man-rāa and threw them into a ferment. As-Saffār cared so little for what was granted to him that he entered into Sūs, a city forming one of the districts of Khuzistān and situated near Askar Mukram. On arriving there, he took the resolution of attacking the khalif al-Motamid who, on his side, made preparations for embarking (with his troops) on the Tigris and going down to give him battle. When the two armies advanced against each other, the Mawlas, struck by the conduct of al-Muwaffak, thought that as-Saffār's approach was the result of the letters which he had sent him: 'If it be not so,' said they, 'it is most extraordinary that a rebel should set out from Zaranj,' — the capital of Sijistān, which country separates Sind from that of the Turks and Khorāsān, — 'should come into Irāk with an army well-equipped, for the purpose of waging war against the khalif whose empire, of old, extended from the eastern to the western extremities of the earth. As-Saffār alone advances with his army, having no other chief to support him or to share with him in this enterprise.'

The khalif, being informed of what passed, called for the mantle and the rod [or sceptre] which had belonged to the Prophet, took his bow with the intention of being the first who shot an arrow against the enemy, and pronounced a male- diction on as-Saffār. By this, he quieted the minds of the Mawlas. On Sunday morning, the 9th of Rajab A. H. 262 (8th April, A. D. 876), as-Saffār's troops arrived, in order of battle, at a village called Istarband and situated between as-Sib and Dair al-Aakūl, in the province of central Nahrawān. He then assembled his companions, with the intention of leading them to the charge as he used to do, and proceeded forward, wearing a tunic of black brocade. When the two armies were in presence, the kāid Khishitij, who was one of the Mawlas, advanced between the two armies, and harangued as-Saffār's troops in these terms: 'Men
of Khorásán and of Sijistán! you were hitherto known to us for your obedience
towards the sultan, for your assiduity in reading the Korán, for your zeal in per-
forming the pilgrimage and in studying the Traditions; but know that your faith
will not be perfect till you follow (the orders of) the imám (khalif). That
reprobate has, no doubt, deceived you by false statements and told you that
the sultan invited him hither by letter. Now, here is the sultan himself who has
come forth against him. So, let those among you who hold to the right and
are firmly attached to their religion and the laws of Islamism, abandon the
man who has misled them, for he is a rebel and wages war against the sultan.'
This speech produced no effect. Khishtij was remarkable for his courage and in-
trepidity. We have already mentioned that as-Saffar had taken prisoner Muham-
mad Ibn Tâhir Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Tâhir Ibn al-Husain, the governor of Khorásán, and
carried him into bondage. When he recovered his liberty, Khishtij addressed him
in these terms: "Son of Tâhir! you purchased me with your money and gave
me as a present to the Abbaside family. They chose me for their lieutenant, put
me in possession of landed estates and wealth; I even obtained the command of
their armies and fought for the integrity of the Muslim empire. And now, be-
fore my departure from the world, I, aided by our lord, the Commander of the
faithful, have attacked as-Saffar for your sake, emir of Khorásán! have delivered
you from captivity and heavy chains, have conducted you from city to city,
mounted on a well-harnessed mule, and have taken you back from Irák to
Khorásán. Praise be to God for the favour which he granted us in delivering
you, and for his signal bounty in letting us possess you again." — We may now
resume and finish our account of as-Saffar. The narrator says: "When as Saffar's
army was reviewed, its camp was found to cover the space of one square mile; the
cavalry was in excellent condition and amounted, it is said, to more than
ten thousand men. The khalif distributed to his soldiers the (customary)
donative (or pay), caused the trees and brushwood which were on his line of
march to be cut down and prepared for action. The troops displayed great
ardour in getting ready and were told that they must fight for victory, because
their defeat would be the ruin of the empire. The khalif al-Motamid took his
station, having at his horse's side Muhammad Ibn Khâlid," — the grandson of
the Yâsid Ibn Mazyad Ibn Zâida as-Shaibâni, of whose life we have given an
account in this volume (page 218). — A number of other warriors, noted
“for bravery and intrepidity, stood beside the khalif. The archers advanced before
him, shooting off their arrows, and his brother al-Muwaffak, having uncovered
his head, cried out: ‘I am the boy of the Hashemides!’ and charged upon the
partisans of as-Saffār. Numbers were slain on both sides. As-Saffār, seeing
how matters were turning, retreated from the field, leaving there his treasures,
wealth and riches, and fled strait before him, without being accompanied by any
of his followers. Not a man of his army but received an arrow-wound,
and such was the disorder and press that, when the night overtook them, they
fell into the canals and were covered with wounds. Abū 's-Sāj Dīvdād (11) Ibn
Dost, the same whose name was borne by the Sādijājān at Baghdād, said to as-
Saffār subsequently to his flight: ‘You did not show the least skill in war; how
could you expect to vanquish an adversary after placing in your front the bag-
gage, the treasure and the prisoners and invading a country with which you
were ill-acquainted? You had not even a guide to show you the way through
the marshes and canals. You fought on a Sunday, and had the wind in your
face; you took forty days to march from as-Sās to Wāsīt with an army badly
provided for, and, when they received provisions and money and were brought
into good order, you marched them from Wāsīt to Dāir al-Aākūl in two days,
and then retreated at the moment you had an opportunity of obtaining the
victory. You fled when you should have kept your ground.’ To this as-Saffār
replied: ‘I did not think that I should have been obliged to fight; I had no
doubt of obtaining what I wanted, and imagined that envoys would come to me
in order to avert the danger (which threatened the khalif) and that I then might
have obtained whatever I pleased!’ — End of the extract from Ibn al-Azhār’s
recital. What follows I have taken from the work composed by Abū 'l-Husain
Obād Allah as a continuation of his father Ahmad Ibn Tāhir’s (vol. I. p. 291) his-
tory of Baghdād. As the accounts given by that writer are very prolix, we
abridge them and suppress the repetitions: ‘Yakūb Ibn al-Laith,’ says he,
having attacked Dirhem Ibn an Nadr,’—so the last name is written (instead of al-
Husain), — took Sijjistān from him on Saturday, the 5th of Muharram, 247 (21st
March, A. D. 861). Dirham had governed three years, after having expelled
from that country, in the month of Zā 'l-Hijja, 237 (May-June, A. D. 852) (12),
Sālih Ibn an-Nadr, an Arab of the tribe of Kinnânā. Yakūb remained in Sijjistān,
where he continued to wage war against the Shurdt and the Turks, in the osten-
sible character of a volunteer in God's holy cause. He set out for Herāt in the
year 253 (A. D. 867) and then proceeded to Bushanj, which place he besieged and
took by assault. This happened in the khalifate of al-Motazz. When al-Motazz
died, no change had taken place in Yakūb's conduct, and things continued so
till the reign of al-Motamid ala Allah. He then entered into Balkh, whence he
marched to Rāmhormuz, making, all the time, an outward show of obedience to
the khalif al-Motamid. This was in the month of Muharram, 262 (Oct-Nov. A.
D. 875). He then dispatched envoys to Baghdad, where they made their entry
on the 14th of the latter Jumāda of the same year (15th March, A. D. 876). After
that, he went to Wāsit where he installed a lieutenant. On Saturday, the 8th of
Rajab (7th April, A. D. 876), he proceeded to Dair al-Aakūl and from that to
Istarband where he made a halt. Al-Motamid, being informed of what was going
on and learning that Yakūb was directing his march towards Baghdad, assembled
troops from all quarters for the purpose of combating the invader, and, having
left Sarra-man-rāa, he entered Baghdad on Sunday, the 24th of Zu 'l-Hijja, of
that year (18th September, A. D. 876). Abū 'l-Faraj, who was secretary to the
kādī Abū Omar, related as follows: When the Khalif set out to attack as-Saffār, he
continued, during his march, to dispatch letters by which that chief was ordered
to retire, warned of the danger to which his conduct exposed him and informed
that the Commander of the faithful was in march with troops, arms and ammu-
nition, for the purpose of encountering him. The answers returned by him
were all of this cast: 'I know that the Commander of the faithful has set out,
but it is with the intention of doing me honour and indicating the high esteem
in which he holds me.' The khalif then drew up his troops in order of battle at
the village above-mentioned, and caused the road by which as-Saffār has passed
to be laid under water. This was the main cause of his (as Saffār's) defeat, for he
was not aware that his retreat had been cut off. The two armies then drew up
for action and attacked each other in repeated charges till (that of) as-Saffār was
put to flight. An immense quantity of baggage fell into the hands of the victors
who, thinking that it had been left there as a snare to entrap them, did not pur-
sue as-Saffār, as they should have done. A person who had been present at this
battle informed me that the number of arrows shot off in it by the regiment of
Mawlas amounted to twenty thousand. The khalif returned full of joy at the
victory which God had granted him. Amongst the persons who, on that day,
were delivered from the captivity in which as-Saffār held them was Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Tāhir, the emir of Khorāsān. The khalif before whom he appeared with his chains still on, caused them to be struck off and clothed him in an imperial robe. Al-Motamid related that, on the night before, he had a dream in which he saw a man come and inscribe on his bosom these words (of the Kordan):

'We have granted to you a signal victory.' He related this to his intimates and said: 'I reckon with confidence on the aid of the Almighty.' Previously to the battle, letters were received from as-Saffār in which he gave the assurance of his profound submission and declared that he was merely coming to offer his humble respects to the Commander of the faithful, in whose presence he wished to have the honour of appearing and whose aspect he longed to contemplate. To this he added that he was ready to die at the side of the imperial stirrup. Al-Motamid said, on receiving this communication: 'We are still in the midst of his stratagems; let him know that I have nothing for him but the sword.'

He gave orders also that a letter should be sent to Abū Ahmad Obaid Allah, the son of Abd Allah Ibn Tāhir and the uncle of Muhammad Ibn Tāhir Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Tāhir, informing him of the deliverance of his nephew. Abū Ahmad was then holding the commandment of the shurta of Baghdad in the capacity of lieutenant for his nephew; the latter being not only governor of Khorāsān but commander of the Baghdad shurta and that of Sarra-man-rāa."

As the paragraphs of this letter are very long, we shall give here a simple summary of its contents: The writer enumerates the crimes of as-Saffār, the favours and marks of kindness which he had received from the khalif, who had invested him with the government of Khorāsān and the countries of which mention has been already made, who had raised him to a lofty station, who had ordered that, in the dispatches addressed to him, he should be designated by a title of honour, who had conceded to him a number of fine landed estates and who had done every thing possible in order to gain his good-will. This, however, only served to increase his perversity and disobedience: when things were refused to him which he demanded, he would march against the seat of the empire, for the purpose of exciting troubles and domineering (over the government). The Commander of the faithful, not thinking proper to comply with his demands, sent him letter after letter, enjoining him to retire into the magnificent provinces of which he had been appointed governor, and advising him not to attempt acts which would bring to an end all the blessings
conferred on him by almighty God. He was informed that if he persisted in the resolution of approaching the imperial residence, he would be guilty of an act of disobedience, of rebellion and of revolt. Another time, the Commander of the faithful sent a band of kadis, legists, and military chiefs to remonstrate with him on the same subject, thinking that this deputation would induce him to return to his duty. But he (as-Saffdr) still persisted in following the same path, that of iniquity, contumacy and disobedience; he would not be turned from it by good advice, but allowed himself to be circumvented by Satan, who was leading him towards his ruin and making him swerve from the path of salvation towards the precipice of perdition. When the Commander of the faithful perceived that such was really the case, he thought fit to act towards him in the same (hostile) manner, and marched against him, putting his trust in God and convinced that, with the divine aid, he would turn from the execution of (pernicious) projects a reprobate who was advancing, by forced marches, towards the battle-field wherein he was destined to be vanquished. The rebel was already half-way between Baghdad and Wâsit, bearing standards on some of which were crosses: he had called the polytheists to his assistance against the true believers, and openly displayed the secret enmity which he bore in his heart towards God, so that the Lord might deliver him over by the bridle (to the hands of perdition). He abandoned the laws of Islamism and its maxims, broke every covenant, violated every engagement and let all men see that he was in open revolt. This obliged the Commander of the faithful to send forth his brother Abu Ahmad al-Muwaffak Billah, the acknowledged successor to the khalifate, and with him a body of those imperial Mawlas whose fidelity God had tested and whose views were fixed on the necessity of defending the empire. He accompanied them with his best wishes, praying God to assist them and render them victorious over the enemy. In all the times and all the conjunctures wherein God knew the sincerity of his heart, he pronounced maldictions against the rebel and abandoned him to the fatal consequences of his conduct. The Commander of the faithful continued to superintend the proceedings of his brother, of his Mawlas and of his partisans, and to send them reinforcements and supplies. Al-Muwaffak Billah took his station in the center of the army, whilst the accursed, the enemy of God, surrounded by those who partook his errors, had arrayed himself in the vest of disobedience and the trousers of iniquity, confiding in the number of his troops and the multitude of his followers. When the two armies were in presence,
the enemy of the faith and his partisans brandished their arms and hastened to
attack the Mawlas and the supporters of the Commander of the faithful; but,
against that accursed and misguided man were directed the trenchant blades
of the good cause, its piercing lances and its penetrating arrows. The wretch was
covered with wounds, and his followers, seeing what had happened to him, hasten-
ed to cry out: "All is lost!" (lit. woe and ruin!) The Commander of the faith-
ful's Mawlas and partisans followed in their pursuit, killing some and taking others
prisoners, and God hurried to the fire (of hell) an immense number of the rebels.
This continued till Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Tāhir, the servant of the Com-
mander of the faithful, was delivered unharmed from the hands of the enemy, who
had been driven from all his positions. The survivors took to flight in great disor-
der, without once looking behind them. God allowed them and the accursed to
escape, but all their gains and plunder, gathered up in former days when God per-
mitted them to hold the regions of the earth (were taken from them); treasures,
goods, effects, camels, beasts of burden, mules and asses became the prey of the
Mawlas and the other partisans of the khalif. Those objects the (victors) removed to the
place where they had deposited their baggage. — As this letter is very diffuse, we
have been obliged to abridge it. At the end of it were these words: "Written by
"Obaid Allah Ibn Yahya, on Wednesday, the 12th of Rajab, 262 (11th April, A.
"D. 876)." The historian then adds: "As Saffār fled to Wāsit, and his troops
pillaged all the villages on the line of their retreat. The victorious army seized
on the arms and baggage of the vanquished, but the Mawlas did not con-
tinue the pursuit, fearing that as-Saffār might turn and attack them; they were,
besides, too much occupied in collecting the booty and the spoil. The khalif
returned to his camp, and as-Saffār went back to as-Sūs, where he levied con-
tributions. From that he proceeded to Tustur, which place he besieged and took.
"Having installed there one of his lieutenants, he assembled again a multitude of
"troops and set out for Fars, in the month of Shauwāl (July). The khalif returned
"to al-Madāin, where he stopped two days, and then departed for Baghdad, whence
"he proceeded to Sarra-man-rāā. He arrived there on Friday, the 13th of Shabān
"(12th May, 876)." The historian then mentions that, on Tuesday, the 14th
"of Shauwāl (11th of July), the khalif received the news of Yakūb Ibn al-Laith's
death. The quantity of money found in his treasuries amounted to four millions
of dinars (£. 2,000,000), in gold pieces, and fifty millions of dirhems (£. 1,250,000)
in silver. On Thursday, the 22nd of Shauwâl, Ahmad Ibn al-Asbagh arrived there. He had been sent by the khâlîf for the purpose of arranging matters with Yakûb and was just reaching Wasit, on his return, when he learned the news of that chief's death. Yakûb had been acknowledged by the khâlîf as governor of Khorâsân, Fars, Kermân, Rai, Kumm and Isphâân; he was commander of the two shurtas, that of Baghdad and that of Sarra-man-râa, and was authorised to place these troops under the orders of whom he pleased. In return, he engaged to pay in two thirds of the taxes furnished by all the provinces which he governed. His brother Amr Ibn al-Laith succeeded to his authority by the unanimous consent of the army, and then wrote to the khâlîf's brother, al-Muwaffâk, a letter in which he declared himself the humble and obedient servant of the khâlîfate, provided that he was confirmed in the possession of the offices held by his brother. To this a favorable answer was returned and his nomination took place in the month of Zu 'l-Kaâda of that year (July-August, A. D. 876). To judge from the context of this history, Yakûb Ibn al-Laith as-Sâffâr died in the latter part of the year 262, for the author says, in relating the events of that year: "Shortly after Yakûb's defeat in the month of Shauwâl, news was received of his death."

This appears to denote that he died in that year, but what I have learned from a number of historical works does not agree with that indication: Abû 'l-Husayn as-Salâmi says, in his account of the governors of Khorâsân, towards the beginning of the chapter which he devoted to Amr Ibn al-Laith: "The cause of Yakûb Ibn al-Laith's death was this: he had an attack of colic and was advised to follow a treatment; but he refused and preferred dying. His death took place at Jundi Sâpur, in Khuzistân, on Tuesday, the 14th of Shauwâl, 265 (9th June, A. D. 879). Abû 'l-Wafâ al-Fârisi relates that he read on the flag of marble which is placed over the tomb of Yakûb Ibn al-Laith:

"I ruled over Khorâsân and the regions of Fars; neither did I despair of ruling over Irâk.
But now, farewell to the world and to the sweetness of its zephyrs! Yakûb no longer sits therein."

In some rough notes written by myself I found the following passage: "Yakûb Ibn al-Laith as-Sâffâr died in the year 265 (A. D. 878-9) at al-Ahwâz. His bier was carried to Jundi Sâpur and there he was interred. On his tomb were inscribed these words:
This is the tomb of poor Yakûb.

"You confided in Fortune because she favoured you, and you feared not the evils which destiny might bring on. Fortune befriended you and you were deceived by her; days of prosperity are followed by days of trouble."

I then found in another note written by myself that he died at Jundi Sâpûr and was interred in the hippodrome of that city. He was then on his way to Irâk. The date of his death as before. "He died of a cholic; the doctor told him that there was no remedy for it but an injection; this he refused to take and preferred dying. His malady, which was a cholical accompanied with hiccup, lasted sixteen days. He reigned over Sijistân and the provinces in that quarter during fourteen years and some months." Our shaikh Ibn al-Athîr (vol. II. p. 288) says, in his Annals, under the year 265: "Yakûb Ibn al-Laith died on the 19th of Shauwâl of this year (14th June, A. D. 879)." He mentions also the cholic and Yakûb's refusing to take an injection, and then adds that he died at Jundi Sâpûr, which is a district in the province of al-Ahwâz. I may observe that Jundi Sâpûr is a district of Khuzistân, lying between Irâk and the province of Fars. He says also: "The khalif al-Motamid, being desirous of conciliating his good-will, sent him an agent with a letter by which he nominated him governor of Fars. When this envoy arrived, Yakûb, though unwell, held a sitting to receive him. At his side he had a sword, a small loaf made of unbolted flour and some onions. The ambassador being introduced, delivered his message and Yakûb answered him in these terms: 'Tell the khalif that I am sick and that, if I die, he and I will be delivered from the uneasiness which each of us gives to the other; but, if I recover my health, nothing shall settle matters between us except this sword. If he must try for vengeance, if he succeed in ruining my power and reducing me to poverty, I shall return, as before, to bread and onions such as these.' The messenger departed and Yakûb died shortly after."—Ibn Haukal (13) says, in his work entitled al-Masâlik wa'l-Mamâlik (routes and realms): Jundi Sâpûr is a fortified city abounding in all the necessaries of life. Its date-tree plantations and tilled grounds are very extensive. Yakûb Ibn al-Laith chose it for his residence on account of its ample resources and the constant abundance of its supplies."—Yakûb was so steadfast in purpose that the Alide prince, al-Hasan Ibn Zaid, designated him by the nickname of as-Sîndân (the anvil): He was seldom seen to smile and was noted for intelligence and resolution. One of his sayings was: "If you keep company with a man during forty
days without discovering his true character, you will not discover it in forty
years." — Amr (Yakūb’s brother), having obtained the supreme authority, go-
verned his subjects with such ability that people said: "Since a very long time,
no person attained to the height reached by Amr Ibn al-Laith in the art of admi-
"nistrating an army and practising the rules by which an empire should be go-
"verned." As-Salāmi, in his History of Khorāsān, speaks very often of his great
abilities and his skill in applying the maxims of good government, but I omit these
observations lest I should be led too far. He payed his troops every three months
and then never omitted to be present. When he passed them in review, he took
his seat and had the money placed before him in the presence of all the army. A
crier then called out the name of Amr Ibn al-Laith, who immediately sent forward
his horse fully equipped, and presented him for inspection. The agent examined
the animal and ordered the owner a donative of three hundred dirhems (£ 7,10 s.),
measured by weight. This sum was carried to him in purse which he took and
kissed, saying: "Praise be to God who hath held me in obedience to the Commander
of the faithful so that I deserved this gratification!" He then placed it in one of
his boots and left it to the servant who pulled them off. All those who received a
fixed pay were then called forward, according to their rank, and they appeared be-
fore the inspector fully equipped and having with them their vigorous steeds. They
were then examined in order to obtain the certitude of their having about them every
object, large or small, which is requisite for a horseman or a foot-soldier; and, if
even one of those things was missing, the delinquent was deprived of his pay. One
day, at a review, Amr saw a horseman pass before him with a very lean steed, and
said to him: "Fellow! how dare you take our money and spend it all upon your
wife? You fatten her up and allow the horse to grow lean on which you go to
war and which gains for you your pay? Go off! I have nothing for you." The
trooper replied: "My life for yours! were you to pass my wife in review, you would
find that my horse is fatter than she is." Amr laughed at this, and told the
man to take his pay and get another horse. — The kādi Kamāl ad-Dīn, better
known by the surname of Ibn al-Adim of Aleppo (14), relates, in his history of that
city, an anecdote which deserves to be inserted here on account of its similarity
to the preceding: Kisra Anūshrewān, the son of Kobād (and king of Persia) confided
the administration of the army to an eminent kātib (or civil officer), highly distin-
guished for intelligence and talent, and whose name was Bābek Ibn Nahrawān.
This officer then said to Kisra: "O king! you have charged me with a duty which, to be well executed, requires that you support patiently such severity as I may use towards you. I have to pass your men in review every four months; I must see that those of each class be provided with the arms required by their rank, and examine the conduct of the instructors who teach the soldiers horsemanship and archery, so that I may retribute them well if they do their duty and punish them if they neglect it. By that means, my administration will hold the course which it ought to follow." Kisra replied: "He whose request is now granted cannot be more happy than the granter; they both partake of the advantages (procured by that arrangement); the granter will still continue to enjoy repose, and therefore gives his assent to what you ask." A platform was then built by his order at the place where the reviews were to take place, and over it were spread magnificent carpets. The inspector took his seat upon it and a cryer summoned all the soldiers to present themselves. When they were assembled, the inspector dismissed them because he did not see Kisra among them. The next day, he acted in the same manner, on account of Kisra's absence and, on the third day, he had a proclamation made to this effect: "Let not a single soldier remain absent from the review, even were he one of those who are honoured with the diadem and the throne. It is a review in which no indulgence or respect of persons will be shown." Kisra, being informed of this, put on his armour, got on horseback and passed before Bâbek. Every horseman was obliged to exhibit a tijâf (horse-armor), a coat of mail, a breastplate, a helmet with its neck-piece in chain mail, two armlets, two cuishes, a spear, a buckler, a mace stuck in the belt, a tabarzîn (battle-axe), a mace, a case containing two bows with their strings, thirty arrows, and two bow-strings rolled up and suspended behind the helmet. Kisra appeared completely armed before the inspector who, missing the bow-strings which ought to have been behind the helmet, did not inscribe his approval after the sovereign's name. Kisra then recollected the bow-strings, attached them to his helmet and passed again before Bâbek, who then gave his approval and said: "For the chief of the men in armour, four thousand dirhems (£ 100) and one dirhem." The highest pay was four thousand, but he gratified Kisra with one dirhem more. On rising from his seat, he went in to the sovereign and said: "O king! blame me not for my severity; I only wished to introduce the custom of proceeding with justice and equity, and to eradicate the habit of showing respect to certain persons." Kisra replied:
"The man is not severe for us who acts with the intention of correcting our faults or of rendering a service to the government. Why should we not submit to his rigour as the sick man submits to take a nauseous medicine in the hope of its doing him good." — Let us resume our account of Amr Ibn al-Laith. As-Salami says: "Râfi Ibn Harthama was a follower of Abû Thaur, who was one of Muhammad Ibn Tâhir's generals. When Yakûb as-Saffâr arrived at Naisâpûr, Abû Thaur was one of those chiefs who sided with him against Muhammad Ibn Tâhir. Yakûb then returned to Sijistân, and Abû Thaur went with him, accompanied by Râfi Ibn Harthama. The latter was an ugly man with a long beard and a stern, gloomy aspect. He went, one day, to see Yakûb who, when he had retired, said: 'I feel no inclination for that man; let him leave us and go where he will!' Râfi then sold all his effects and returned to his residence at Bâmiân, which is a village in the district of Kanj-Rustâk. There he remained till Ahmad Ibn Abd Allah al-Khojistânî sent for him." — Khojistân is a village in the mountains of Herât and situated in the district of Bâdghis. — "Al-Khojistânî was one of Yakûb's followers, but, having repudiated his authority, he effected the conquest of Naisâpûr and Bistâm in the year 261 (A. D. 874-5). He affected to be inclined towards the Tâhirite party, in order to gain the good-will of the inhabitants of Naisâpûr and went so far as to sign his letters with the words: Ahmad Ibn Abd Allah the Tâhirite. He then wrote to Râfi Ibn Harthama, who was still in his native place, inviting him to come and join him. Râfi complied and received from him the command of the troops." — The wars and battles in which al-Khojistânî was engaged are very famous, but it does not suit our purpose to speak of them here. — Some time after, two of his (al-Khojistânî's) pages conspired against his life and murdered him whilst he was asleep and drunk. This happened on the eve of Wednesday, the 23rd of Shauwâl, 268 (16th May, A. D. 882). Râfi, who was then absent, went to join al-Khojistânî's troops and was acknowledged by them as their chief. They took the oath of allegiance to him in the city of Herât, or of Naisâpûr, by another account. In the year 271 (A. D. 884-5), al-Muwaffak Billah deprived Amr Ibn al-Laith as-Saffâr of the government of Khorasân and gave it to Abû Abd Allah Mohammed Ibn Tâhir. The latter, who was then residing in Baghdad, appointed Râfi Ibn Harthama to act as his lieutenant in that country, and Nasr Ibn Ahmad Ibn Asad as-Sâmânî was established by al-Muwaffak as Mohammed Ibn Tâhir's lieutenant in the provinces of Transoxiana. Some time af-
ter, Râfi received dispatches from al-Muwaffak by which he was ordered to make an expedition against Jurjân and Tabaristan, both of which had belonged to al-Hasan Ibn Zaid, the Alide, and had fallen, on the death of that prince, A. H. 270 (A. D. 883-4), into the hands of his brother, Muhammad Ibn Zaid. In the year 274, Râfi marched against the latter and, finding that he had abandoned these places and taken refuge in Astarâbâd, he blockaded him in that city during two years. Muhammad then left it by night with a few partisans and fled to Damascus. In the year 277 (A. D. 890-1), Râfi was master of Tabaristan. In the month of Rajab, 279 (Sept. — Oct. A. D. 892), the khalif al-Motamid ala Allah died and the supreme authority passed into the hands of Abû 'l-Abbâs al-Motamid ala Allah, the son of al-Muwaffak (who had died two years before). On the death of Nasr Ibn Ahmad al-Samâ'îlide, his brother, Abû Ibrahim Isma'il was appointed governor of Transoxiana by al-Motamid." — I may here observe that Nasr died at Samarkand on the 23rd of the latter Jumâda, 279 (20th Sept. A. D. 892). — The historian continues: "He (al-Motamid) took from the above-mentioned Nasr Ibn Ahmad the government of Khorâsân and gave it to Amr Ibn al-Lâith. Râfi continued to reside at Rai and, having entered into friendly relations with the princes of the neighbouring countries, he gained their assistance against Amr Ibn al-Lâith. He then marched towards Nisâpur and, in the month of the latter Râbi, A. H. 283, (May-June, A. D. 896), he had an engagement with Amr and was defeated. Being closely pursued by the victor, who followed him to Abiward, he left that city with the intention of going either to Herât or to Marw. Amr having then learned that he was setting out for Sarakhs, resolved on taking the same direction and cutting off his adversary's retreat. Râfi, being informed of his design, departed from Abiward with a guide who led him across the mountains of Tûs and brought him to the gates of Nisâpur. He entered into that city and Amr came back to besiege him. (A combat ensued in which) the partisans of Râfi were defeated, and that chief, accompanied by a small troop of adherents, all mounted on dromedaries, succeeded in reaching the province of Khwârezm with his baggage and his treasures. This took place on Saturday, the 25th of Ramadân, 283 (5th Nov. A. D. 896). The emir of Khwârezm dispatched an officer to render him every service and provide him with whatever he required till he reached (the capital of) the province; but that agent, finding Râfi accompanied with a very feeble escort, took the opportunity and killed him. This oc-
the 7th of Shawwal, 283 (17th Nov. A. D. 896). He then cut
off his head and sent it to Amr Ibn al-Laith, at Naisapur, by whom it was dispatch-
ed to al-Motadid Billah. Rafi was not the son of Harthama (as his surname
seems to imply); Harthama was his stepfather and, as his name was a usual one,
Rafi adopted it as a surname. His real father bore the name of Tumard."—Ibn
Jarir at-Tabari says, in his Annals, under the year 283: "On Friday, the 22nd of
Zul-Kaada (31st December, A. D. 896), letters were read from all the pulpits,
announcing the death of Rafi Ibn Harthama, and, on Thursday, the 4th of Mu-
harram, 284 (11th Feb. A. D. 897), a courier sent by Amr Ibn al-Laith as-Saffar
arrived at Baghdad with Rafi's head. Al-Motadid caused it to be set up in the
eastern quarter of the city and, in the afternoon, it was removed to the western
quarter, where it remained exposed till nightfall. It was then carried back by his
order to the palace of the khalifs (adr as-sultan)."—As-Salami says: "All Kho-
rasan, up to the border of the Jaihun, fell thus into the power of Amr Ibn al-
Laith."—Al-Bohtori (vol. III. p. 657), the celebrated poet, composed an eulog-
ium on Rafi Ibn Harthama, to whom he gives the surname of Abu Yusuf. He sent
this poem to him from Iraq and received, in return, a gift of twenty thousand dir-
hems (£. 500).—As-Salami says: "When Amr Ibn al-Laith sent Rafi's head to
al-Motadid, he demanded that the province of Transoxiana should be conceded to
him on the same conditions by which Abd Allah Ibn Tahir held his command-
ments, and he received a promise to that effect. Some time after, whilst he was
in Naisapur, a magnificent present was sent to him by al-Motadid, but this he re-
fused to accept unless the promise already made was executed. The messenger
who brought those gifts wrote back to al-Muktasib Billah, the son of al-Motadid,
informing him of Amr's declaration. That prince was then at Rai with a num-
ber of his father's officers, and it was decided by them that the diploma of Amr's
nomination should be made out. This document was brought to him with the
presents which he had refused to accept and among which were seven robes of
honour. When all was placed before him, the envoy clothed him in the seven
robes, one after the other, and, as each was put on, (Amir)prostrated himself and
made a prayer of two rakas. The diploma being then presented to him, he asked
what it meant, and the envoy informed him that it was the thing he asked for.
To this Amr replied: "Of what use will it be to me? Ismail Ibn Ahmad will not
deliver up that province unless (I enforce my demand) by one hundred thousand
BIOPHICAL DICTIONARY.

"' swords.' To this the envoy answered: 'It was yourself who asked for it; so,
' get ready to take possession of the province and govern in his place.' Amr
then received the diploma, kissed it and laid it down before him; after which,
he sent to the envoy and his suite a gift of seven hundred thousand dirhems
(£. 17,500) and dismissed them. He then equipped an army for the purpose of
attacking Isma'il Ibn Ahmad; who, on learning this, crossed the Jaihûn, to meet
them, cut to pieces a part of them and put the rest to flight. Amr Ibn al-Laith was
then in Naisâpûr. This engagement took place on Monday, the 17th of Shauwâl,
286 (26th Oct. A. D. 899). Isma'il returned to Bokhara, a city forming one of
the districts of Transoxiana." — "Amr Ibn al-Laith," says as-Salâmi, "had
charged Muhammed Ibn Bishr (15) to lead this army against Isma'il. When the
latter crossed the Jaihûn, Mûsa as-Sijazi (16) went into the place where Ibn Bishr
was and, finding that he was getting his head shaved, he said to him: 'Did you
obtain leave from Isma'il to have your head shaved?' giving him thus to un-
derstand that by attempting to contend with Isma'il, he had already rendered that
chief the master of his head. To this Mohammed Ibn Bishr replied: 'Begone
' out of my sight, and may the curse of God light upon you!' The next morning,
Mohammad's troops were put to rout and he himself was taken prisoner and had
his head cut off. Isma'il, to whom this and the other heads were brought, char-
ged some of Muhammad's partisans to examine them and point out the head of
their chief. One of these persons then related to Isma'il what Mûsa as-Sijazi had
said, and this ill-omened prognostic caused him great surprise." — In at-Taba-
ri's Annals, under the year 287, is a passage to this effect: "On Wednesday,
the 25th of the first Jumâda (28th May, A. D. 900), the sultan (17) received, it is
said, a letter announcing that a battle had taken place between Isma'il Ibn Ahmad
and Amr Ibn al-Laith, that the army of the latter had been completely routed and
that he himself had been taken prisoner. Here is an account of what passed be-
tween them: The sultan, being asked by Amr for the government of Transoxiana,
granted his request and sent to Naisâpûr, where he (Amr) was residing, the robe
of investiture and the standard under which he was to hold that province and
carry on the war against Isma'il Ibn Ahmad. On this, Isma'il wrote to him (Amr)
in these terms: 'You have obtained the government of a vast country and I pos-
'sess Transoxiana; be satisfied with what you have and let me remain in this
' frontier province.' Amr refused to accept his proposal and, being spoken to, res-
"pecting the river of Balkh (the Oxus) and the difficulty of crossing it, he answered: 'Were I inclined to make a dike across it with bags of money and pass over on that, I could do so.' Ismail, having given up the hope of turning Amr from his project, assembled all the dikkâns (landed proprietors) who were under his authority and crossed over to the western side of the river, whilst Amr Ibn al-Laith posted himself in Balkh. He then occupied the neighbouring country, and Amr, perceiving that he was in some measure blockaded, regretted what he had done and, it is said, requested a suspension of arms. This, Ismail refused to grant, and, although no considerable combat took place between them, Amr found himself obliged to make a hasty retreat. On his way, he came up to a jungle and, being informed that a shorter road passed through it, he told the main body of his troops to follow the highway, and then engaged in the wood with a small escort. The animal which he rode got into some marshy ground and fell, leaving him without the means of escape, whilst his companions pushed forward without minding him. Some of Ismail's troops then came up and took him prisoner. When al-Motadid was informed of what had passed, he praised Ismail's conduct, blamed that of Amr and said: 'Let Abû Ibrahim Ismail be invested by patent with all the authority which appertained to Amr!' The robes of investiture were then sent off to him." — At-Tabari says, under the year 288: "On Thursday, the 1st of the first Jumâda (23rd April, A. D. 901), Amr Ibn al-Laith arrived in Baghdad. I have been told that Ismail Ibn Ahmad gave him the choice of remaining with him as a prisoner or of being sent to the Commander of the faithful, and that he was taken to the Commander of the faithful because he preferred it." — As-Salâmi says, in his History of Khorâsân: "Amr, having proceeded to Balkh, had there an encounter with Ismail and was taken prisoner. This happened on Tuesday, the 15th of the first Rabî 287 (20th March, A. D. 900). Ismail had him put into irons and taken to Samarkand." — This city lies (in Transoxiana), on the other side of the river which is called the Jaihûn. — His (Ismail's) brother, Abû Yusuf, being placed by him at the service of the prisoner, remained with him till Abd Allah Ibn al-Fath arrived with Ismail's nomination to the government of Khorâsân, bringing with him the diploma, the standard, the diadem and the robe of investiture. This was in the year 288. He was accompanied by Ashnâs (18) who was charged to transport Amr Ibn al-Laith to Baghdad. The prisoner was given to him by Ismail and taken to that city."
— Ibn Abi Tāhir (vol. I. p. 291), the historian already cited, says: "Amr Ibn al-Laith as-Saffār was defeated and a great number of his partisans were slain. The battle was fought at the gates of Balkh, on Wednesday, the 17th of the latter Rabī', 287 (21st April, A. D. 900). Previously to the encounter, his secretary, Ibn Abi Rabia, passed over to Ismail, and was accompanied by one of the generals with a large body of troops. On the morning of the day on which the battle took place, Amr was informed of this desertion and, finding that most of his partisans had gone over to Ismail, he lost courage and took to flight. Ismail, whose attention was engaged by the state of his army, sent a detachment after Amr. They found him on horseback, but at a full stop (19), and took him prisoner. Ismail, to whom they brought him, sent a dispatch to al-Motadid, informing him of what had occurred and stating that Amr should be sent to Samarqand (and be detained there) till the Commander of the faithful's answer arrived. The khalīf was highly pleased at this news and granted to Ismail, in addition to the government which he already held, all the provinces over which Amr had extended his authority. Abd Allah Ibn al-Fath then set out for the purpose of receiving the prisoner. When he arrived, Ismail had Amr brought in and sent him off bound in chains. One of his soldiers was placed at the side of Amr, with a drawn sword in his hand, and to Amr was said: 'If the people attempt to deliver you, we shall throw to them your head.' Not a man stirred. They arrived at Nahrawān on Tuesday, the 26th of the second Rabī, 288 (19th April, A. D. 901) and there took off Amr's chains. On Thursday, the 1st of the first Jumādā (23rd April), the troops (of the city) rode forth to meet him. He arrived in a palanquin the curtains of which were let down (so as to prevent him from being seen). On arriving at (the gate called) Bāb as-Salāma, he was taken out of that conveyance, clothed in a brocade gown and placed, with the bonnet of displeasure (20) upon his head, on the back of a camel with two humps (a drome-dary), an animal which, when large and strong, is called a fālīj. This camel was one of the presents which had been formerly sent by him to the khalīf; it was (then) covered with silk housings and adorned with tresses and harness, all inlaid with silver. They led him through Baghdad, down the high street, till they reached the Kāsr al-Husna (the abode of bliss), which was then the khalīf's residence. During that time, he held his hands up in prayer and uttered words of resignation and humility; but that was through craftiness, for the purpose of
exciting commiseration. Effectively, the people abstained from reviling him. He was then taken before the khalif, who held a special sitting for the purpose of receiving him and had convoked to it a great number of persons. He stopped at the distance of about fifty cubits from the khalif, who merely said to him: 'This is what you have been working for, O Amr!' After that, he was led to a cell which had been prepared for him.'—Yâkûb as-Saffâr married an Arab woman of Sijistân who, after his death, became the wife of his brother Amr. She died without children and had then in her possession one thousand seven hundred female slaves.—A person of that time related as follows: 'I was with the Traditionist Abû Ali al-Husain Ibn Muhammad Ibn Fahm [21], when a student in Traditions came in and said: Abû Ali! I saw yesterday Amr as-Saffâr mounted on one of the dromedaries which he sent, three years ago, to the khalif as a present! On this, Abû Ali pronounced the following lines:

"As a man of talent and of rank it is sufficient to indicate as-Saffâr. Morning and evening he marches at the head of an army. He gave camels as presents, but knew not that he should be mounted upon one and led as a prisoner."

Ali Ibn Muhammad Ibn Nasr Ibn Bassâm, a poet of whom we have already spoken (vol. II. p. 301), composed the following lines on the same subject:

O thou who art deluded by thy worldly prosperity! didst thou see Amr? After possessing a kingdom and great power, he was forced to ride on a dromedary and to wear the bonnet of displeasure as a humiliation. With hands raised up, he prayed God aloud and in his heart, begging to be saved from death and allowed to work again in copper.

At-Tabari says: 'Al-Motadid Billah died on the eve of Monday, the 21st of the latter Rabî, 289 (4th April, A. D. 902). The khalifate devolved to his son, al-Muktafi Billah Abû Muhammad Ali, who was then absent, at ar-Rakka.

After his return to Baghdad, he gave orders, on Tuesday, the 8th of the latter Jumâda (20th May), that the subterraneous cells which his father had caused to be made for the reception of criminals should be filled up. The next morning, Amr Ibn al-Laith as-Saffâr died and was buried in the neighbourhood of the Kasr al-Husna. When Motadid was lying speechless on his death-bed, he ordered by signs and indications that Amr should be executed. Those signs he made by placing his hand on his neck and then on his eye; they meant: 'Kill the one-eyed man!' Amr
"had lost an eye. Sāfī al-Harami to whom this order was given, did not fulfil it, "being unwilling to take Amr's life because he knew that the khalif would soon "breathe his last. It is related that al-Muktasfi had no sooner arrived in Baghdad "than he asked of (the vizir) al-Kāsim Ibn Obaid Allah (vol. II. p. 300) if Amr was "still alive, and was highly pleased to learn that he was. 'I wish,' said he, "'to do him good.' During his residence at Rai, in the life-time of his father, "he had received from Amr a great quantity of presents and numerous marks "of good-will. It is said that al-Kāsim, disliking to be questioned about the "prisoner, caused him to be murdered. Amr governed nearly twenty-two "years." — Yakūb was called as-Saffār because he had been a worker in sufr (copper), that is to say, in nahās (brass). At that time, his brother Amr kept asses for hire. The syndic of the copper-smiths related as follows: "'When "Yakūb was a boy, in the shop, learning to work in copper, I often perceived "between his eyes the sign of his future greatness.' Being asked what he had "remarked, he said: "'I used to look at him from a place in which he could "not perceive me, and I always saw him with his eyes cast down, like a person full "of thought and absorbed in his reflexions. After that, he became what we have "seen.'" The kātib Ali Ibn al-Marzubān al-Ispahāni made the following relation: "'I once asked a partisan of the Saffaride family what had been the trade "of Amr Ibn al-Laith, the brother of Yakūb. Amr was then imprisoned in "Madīna tas-Salām (Baghdad). The man returned me no answer, but, on the "death of Amr, he said to me: 'It would not have been prudent in me, had I "given you any information on that subject whilst Amr was still to be feared or "to be hoped in. But now, I may tell you that he continued to hire out asses till "his brother rose to power and got possession of Khorāsān. He then went to "join him and gave up that trade!'" — A number of historians relate, in their works, that Abū Ahmad Obaid Allah Ibn Tāhir Ibn al-Husain al Khuzāi, the same person of whom we have spoken (vol. II. p. 79), would sometimes say: "'Three are "the wonders of the world; first, that which happened to al-Abbas Ibn Amr al- "Ghanawī (vol. III. p. 417) and his army of ten thousand men: they were all put "to death and he alone had his life spared; secondly, Amr Ibn al-Laith's army of fifty "thousand men; all of them escaped and he alone was taken prisoner; thirdly, my "being out of office and my son Abū 'l-Abbas being employed to administer (the "tolls received at) the two bridges of boats which are at Baghdad.'" The history of
al-Abbâs Ibn Amr al-Ghanawi was this: When the Karmats became powerful, they invaded the neighbouring countries and indulged to the utmost in the shedding of blood. In the year 287 (A. D. 900), al-Motadid Billah sent against them an army under the orders of al-Abbâs al-Ghanawi. A battle ensued in which Abû Sâd al-Kirmât (vol. I. p. 427), the chief of the Karmats, took al-Abbâs and all his army prisoners. The next day, he had them all brought before him, put them to death and had their bodies burned. Al-Abbâs, whom he set at liberty, was the only one of the army who returned to al-Motadid. This was towards the end of Sha'âbân (end of August) in that year. The encounter took place between Basra and al-Bahrain, and furnished matter to a long and well-known relation. We present here a mere summary of it, because this is not a fit place for entering into particulars. If it please God, we shall give a full relation of it in our great historical work (22).

— The first of the two verses which were said to have been inscribed on Yakûb's tomb and which we have already given, terminates with a hemistich borrowed from the piece of verse which was sung by Moawwâb Ibn Abî Sofyân the Omaiyide, when he had established his domination in Syria and received the visit of Jarîr Ibn Abî Abd Allah al-Bajâli, who had been sent to him from Kûfâ by Ali Ibn Abî Tâlib. Moawwâb heard the message from Jarîr and, when the sitting was over, had him lodged in a chamber near his own. That night, he sung the following verses, so that Jarîr might hear them and repeat them to Ali:

Long and uneasy is my night, vague the suppositions which assail me, since the arrival of a visitor who came to me with vain and futile talk (turrahât basâbîs). Jarîr has come, though events are crowding on, with proposals equivalent to the amputating of our noses. I bear with him, but the sword is still between me and him; for I am not a man to put on the raiment of ignominy. Syria has offered me the same obedience which I already received from Yemen, and the chiefs of that country declare it boldly in their assemblies. If they act (as they promise), I shall attack Ali with a band (jabha) which shall break down, to his harm, all the branches, green or withered (which afford him shelter). I hope for the greatest advantage which any man ever obtained, neither do I despair of ruling over Irâk.

— The word turrahât signifies futilities; in its primitive acceptation, it designates the paths which branch off a highway. Turraha, its singular form, is a Persian word arabicized (turréhé). Being subsequently employed to signify futilities, it gave rise to the expression turrahât basâbîs. — The word jabha means a troop of men. The poet, in using it, gave to understand that he would attack Ali with a body
of horse and foot. The other words of the poem are so well known that they do not require explanation. — I found the following indications in the handwriting of a person who cultivated this branch of science (history): When Amr Ibn al-Laith was taken prisoner, his grandson, Tahir Ibn Muhammad Ibn Amr obtained the government of Fars. This took place on the 17th of Safar, 288 (10th February, A.D. 901). In the year 296 (A.D. 908-9), he and his brother Yakub Ibn Muhammad were arrested by Sebuk as-Sebukri, a chief who had been one of their grandfather's pages, and were sent by him to Madina tas-Salam (Baghdad). The authority then passed to al-Laith Ibn Ali Ibn al-Laith, a nephew of Yakub and Amr, who made the conquest of Sijistan, A.H. 296. A number of conflicts had passed between Tahir and Sebuk as-Sebukri, who finally obtained possession of the country. Al-Muaddel (Ibn Ali) Ibn al-Laith, who governed Sijistan in the name of his brother al-Laith (Ibn Ali), then invaded Fars, and Sebuk fled to the khalif for assistance. In the month of Ramadân, 296 (May-June, A.D. 909), al-Mukhtadir Billah sent off troops, under the orders of Munis at-Muzaffar, Badr al-Kabir and al-Husain Ibn Hamdan. These generals encountered al-Laith Ibn Ali, routed his army and took him prisoner with his brother Muhammad and his son Ismail. Munis returned to Baghdad with the prisoners and arrived there in the month of Muharram, 297 (Sept.-Oct. A.D. 909). Al-Laith Ibn Ali was paraded through the city on an elephant, and al-Muaddel Ibn Ali obtained the government of Sijistan. Ahmad Ibn Ismail the Samanide then marched against him with a numerous army of horse and foot, and deprived him of that province. After that, Sebuk as-Sebukri possessed it for some time and was subsequently carried prisoner to Baghdad with Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn al-Laith. Thus ended the power of the Saffarides.

(1) I am inclined to believe that the historian whose names are here given by our author is the same who is designated in the Paris manuscript of the Fihrist, anc. 874, fol. 200 v, by the surname of Ibn Abi 'l-Azhar and by the names of Abu Bakr Muhammad Ibn Ahmad Ibn Maryad an-Nahwî (the grammarian), al-Akhbari (the historian), al-Bashantî (native of Bashanto, a village at about thirty miles from Herât). In A.H. 913 (A.D. 926-7), he was thirty years of age and lived, probably, much longer. He left a collection of anecdotes concerning the khalif al-Mustain and his successor al-Motam, an account of those among the ancients who spoke their language with elegance and a history of such men as were distinguished for their talents and the immorality of their lives. According to the author whose authority is followed by professor Flugel, in his Grammatische Schulen der Araber, p. 97, he died A.H. 935 (A.D. 948-7), aged upwards of ninety years (7), and had been one of al-Mubarrad's favorite disciples.
Nearly all the provinces of the Muslim empire were, at that time, in the power of chiefs who, though acknowledging the supremacy of the khalif, were, in fact, independent sovereigns. Such were the Taberides in Khorasan and the Thulunides in Egypt, whilst the Alides of Taberistan, the Kharijites of Mosul and of the countries to the north of Persia rejected completely the authority of the khalif. The south of Irak was ravaged by the Zenj.

This singular proceeding was perhaps conformable to the etiquette observed by all the khalif's ambassadors.

Ali Ibn al-Husain Ibn Kuraish had been appointed governor of Fars by the khalif, but, though he acknowledged the authority of the court of Baghdad, he acted as an independent prince.

The editions and manuscripts read Aiyds instead of Ods, but the orthography given by the geographical dictionary entitled the Mardviiid, seems preferable.

The word abd signifies sons. It was generally employed to designate persons one of whose parents was an Arab and the other of a foreign race. At the time of Muhammad and afterwards, there was in Yemen a great number of abd whose progenitors were Persians and whose mothers were Arabs.

It is remarkable that in this ancient relation and in the account given by the historian at-Tabari, the khalif is designated, not by the title of imam, but by that of sultan. This latter term generally serves to indicate sovereigns who possess, not the spiritual, but the civil authority.

Yakub wished to propitiate the khalif by refusing to take the title of emir, till authorized to do so by the court of Baghdad.

The badra or purse contained one thousand dirhems (L. 25), according to some, ten thousand, according to others.

The word ghilma, here rendered by dependants, means boys, servants, pages. Those whom Yakub had in Baghdad were perhaps slaves or mawlas who traded there on his account.

These mawlas were the Turkish slaves or mamluks who formed the khalif's guard.

The editions and manuscripts read Aba 'l-Saj Dostol, but it is well ascertained that the name of this chief was Dostol (God's gift). We have spoken of him in the first volume, p. 500. A history of the Sajites has been published by M. Defrémery in the Journal asiatique for 1847. The Sajite jonds were probably regiments of cavalry which Abu 'l-Saj had formed and kept up at his own expense. Kamal ad-Din Ibn al-Adim takes notice occasionally of this chief in his history of Aleppo. See Freytag's Selecta ex historia Halebi.

There is here some error in the dates.

Abu 'l-Kasim Muhammad Ibn Haukal, a native of Baghdad and the author of a very remarkable geographical work, entitled al-Masalik wa l-Mamalik, put his last corrections to that treatise in the year 866, A. D. 976-7). He travelled over many countries and appears to have been a secret agent of the Fatimides. The date of his death is not known.

Kamal ad-Din Omar Ibn Ahmad, surnamed Ibn al-Adim and chief kddi of Aleppo, wrote a biographical dictionary in which he noticed all the remarkable men who had been in that city. Another good work of his, the History of Aleppo, has been analyzed by professor Freytag in the Selecta ex historia Halebi, which contains also a long extract from Kamal ad-Din's treatise, with instructive notes. Kamal ad-Din was born A. H. 588 (A. D. 1195), and died at Cairo, A. H. 660 (A. D. 1261-2). He had been driven from Aleppo by the invasion of the Tartars. For a full account of his life, see p. xxxvi of the introduction to Freytag's work. — The anecdote related by Ibn Khallikan is borrowed from Tabari.
(15) In the editions and the manuscripts this name is preceded by the word ـئـ, which must be suppressed.
(16) The diacritical points of the word which I read Sījazī (native of Sījazī) vary greatly in the manuscripts.
(17) Here the word sūlūn is employed by Tabari to designate the khalif. See above, note (7).
(18) The orthography of this proper name is uncertain.
(19) The Arabic words may also signify: they found him standing upon a horse. If this be the true meaning, the horse was his own, which had sunk into the mud.
(20) This was a sort of fool's cap which criminals were obliged to wear when exposed to public view.
(31) Abū Ali al-Husain Ibn Muhammad Ibn Fāhīm, a learned Traditionist and a native of Baghdad, died A. H. 289 (A. D. 900), aged seventy-eight years. — (Huffaz.)
(32) This work was probably never published.

YAKUB IBN YUSUF IBN ABD AL-MUMIN.

Abū Yūṣuf Yakūb, the son of Abū Yakūb Yūsuf and the grandson of Abū Muhammad Abū al-Mūmīn al-Kāisi al-Kūmī (1), was sovereign of Maghrib (2). We have spoken of his grandfather Abū al-Mūmīn (vol. II. pag. 182), and shall give an article on his father Yūsuf. [He was of a very light tawny complexion (3), rather tall (4) and well-looking; his mouth wide, his eyes large and very dark, his limbs bulky, his voice loud and his discourse fluent. He was the most veracious of men, the most elegant in language and the most fortunate in his suppositions. He managed affairs with skill whilst acting as vizir to his father and watched over his provincial governors and other public officers so attentively that he acquired a perfect acquaintance with all the details of the administration.] On the death of his father, the shaikhs (or chiefs) of the Almohades and of the descendants of Abū al-Mūmīn agreed on placing him at the head of affairs and, having tendered to him the oath of allegiance, they instituted him chief of the empire and saluted him by the appellation of Emīr al-Mūmīnīn (Commander of the faithful) (5), the same which was borne by his father and his grandfather. They gave him also the surname of al-Mansūr (the victorious). He governed with great ability, displayed
(to the world) the glory of the (Almohade) empire, set up the standard of the holy-
war (against the Christians), settled the balance of justice on a firm basis and estab-
lished throughout the land the application of the prescriptions enounced in the
divine law. He watched over the interests of religion and of piety, corrected pu-

cubic morals by ordering the people to do what was commendable and avoid
what was reprehensible; the penalties fixed by law were applied by him not only to
his subjects in general but even to the members of his own family and to his nearest
relations. His reign was therefore prosperous and his conquests extensive. When
his father died (A. H. 580 — A. D. 1184, at the siege of Santarem), he was with
him, and, from that moment, he took into his own hands the administration of
the empire. In the space of two months, he re-established order in (Moslim)
Spain, ameliorated greatly the state of that country, placed garrisons in the centers
of administration and did all that might promote the welfare of the people.
He gave directions that the Fātiha, when recited in the public prayer, should be
preceded by the Bismilla (6), and orders to that effect were sent by him to all the
Moslim countries under his rule. These orders some complied with, but others
disobeyed. He then returned to Morocco, which city was the capital of the (Al-
mohade) empire. After that, in the month of Shabān, 580 (Nov.-Dec. A. D. 1184),
the Almoravide prince Ali Ibn Iskāk Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn Ghānīa (7) depart-
ed from the island of Majorca and took possession of Bugia and the neighbouring
country. The emir (8) Yakūb (he who is the subject of this article) sent against him
a fleet and an army of twenty thousand horse; then, in the beginning of the
year 583 (March, A. D. 1187), he set out himself and recovered the countries
which had been taken from him. He then returned to (the city of) Morocco and,
in the year 586, he learned that the Franks (the Spanish Christians) had obtained
possession of Silves, a city in the west of Spain. He, in consequence, set out
thither in person and, having retaken it, he immediately dispatched on an expedi-
tion a body of Almohade (Berber) troops and of Arabs. This army entered into the
country of the Franks and took from them four cities of which they had effected
the conquest forty years before. The sovereign of Toledo (Alphonso IX, king
of Castile) then conceived such fear of Yakūb that he asked for peace and
obtained a truce of five years. Yakūb then returned to (the city of) Mo-
rocco. The truce had nearly expired when some Franks, at the head of a
numerous army, invaded the Moslim territory, plundering and slaying all before
them and committing horrible depredations. When this news reached the emir Yakûb, who was then in Morocco, he levied a numerous body of troops among the Almohade (Berber) and Arab tribes, for the purpose of going to meet the enemy, and after a rapid march, he passed the Straits and landed in Spain. This was in the year 591 (A. D. 1195). The Franks, being informed of his approach, collected, from far and near, a great multitude (of warriors), and advanced to encounter him. — I must here relate that, towards the close of the year 668 (July, A. D. 1270), I saw, in Damascus, a notebook in the handwriting of Tâj ad-Dîn Abd Allah Ibn Hamawaih who had acted there in the capacity of shaikh of the shaikhs (chief of the professors) and who, having travelled to Spain, had written down, during his residence there, some notes concerning the proceedings of that (the Almohade) administration. The book of which I am speaking contained on that event, a chapter which must be inserted here:

Towards the close the year of 590 (A. D. 1194), when the truce expired which the emir and sovereign of the West (Morocco and Spain), Abû Yûsuf Yakûb, the son of Yûsuf and the grandson of Abd al-Mûmin, had concluded with Alphonso (Alphonso) the Frank, who possessed the western part of the Spanish peninsula and who had Toledo for the seat of his government, the former, who was then in (the city of) Morocco, took the resolution of passing into Spain for the purpose of encountering the Franks. He, in consequence, wrote to the governors of his provinces and the chiefs of his troops, ordering them to join him. He then proceeded to Siâ (Sallees), outside of which town the troops were directed to assemble. It happened, however, that he was taken seriously ill and the physicians lost all hopes of his recovery. This (untoward occurrence) interrupted the organizing of the army, and the emir Yakûb was carried back to Morocco. The (nomadic) Arabs and other tribes who stationed in that neighbourhood, being encouraged by this to ravage the country, spread, throughout all quarters, ruin and devastation, whilst Alphonso did the same in the territory of the Spanish Moslims. The result was that the army of the emir Yakûb had to be broken up and sent, in detachments, east and west, for the purpose of protecting these countries and quelling the insurrection. Alphonso then conceived such hopes of conquering the provinces (of Muslim Spain) that he sent to the emir Yakûb an ambassador charged to exact from him, by threats and menaces, the surrender of a certain fortress (or some fortresses) situated in the vicinity of the Christian territory. He wrote to him also a letter which had been drawn up (in Arabic) by one of his
"vizirs named Ibn al-Fakkhār and which ran thus: 'In thy name, O God!
creator of the heavens and of the earth! His blessings be upon the Lord
Messiah, the Spirit of God, his word and his eloquent messenger (9).
Now, to the point (10): It cannot escape the attention of whoever is gifted
with a penetrating intellect and a good understanding that you are the emir of
the hanifite (11) community as I am that of the Christian one. You well
know how the chiefs of the Spanish Moslems have abandoned and deserted
each other, how they neglect the care of their subjects and how greatly they
are inclined to enjoy repose. (You know that) I make them undergo the law
of the strongest, expelling them from their abodes, carrying their children into
captivity and making an example of their men. You have at present no
excuse to offer for not coming to their assistance, since the hand of Provi-
dence has given you the means of doing so. You pretend that Almighty God
has prescribed to you as a rule that, when we kill one of your people, you
must kill ten of ours. But God has now alleviated you (from that necessity),
because he knew that you have among you many men so weak and feeble
that, if we were to slay ten of yours in order to avenge the death of one of ours,
they would be incapable of resistance and unable to defend their lives. I was
informed that you had prepared for war and ascended to the summit of the hill
of battle (12); yet you procrastinate, year after year, making one step forward
and the other backward. I know not whether you be detained by cowardice
or by the intention of belying the promises made by thy Lord. But, being
told that you could not find an opportunity of passing the sea on account
of a circumstance which, as long as it subsists, will prevent your engaging
in such an undertaking, I shall now make you a proposal which will set
you at ease and deliver you from the blame of not fulfilling your promises
and engagements and of not furnishing a great number of guarantees: send
me some of your servants with ships, galleys, transports and mistics (13), so
that I may pass over to you with my bands and fight with you in the place
which you like best. If you gain the victory, an abundant spoil shall have
thus been brought to you and a magnificent present set before you; if I am
victorious, I shall hold a high hand over you and deserve to be the emir of the
two communities and the sovereign of the two continents. It is God who pre-
pares success and who facilitates the accomplishment of wishes. There is no
"'lord but he, no good but what comes from him; God's will be done!'"

"The emir Yakûb, on receiving this letter, tore it to pieces and wrote these words on the back of one of the fragments: 'Return to them; for we shall certainly go unto them with troops which they shall not be able to withstand, and we will expel them from their (possessions), humbled and despicable (14). My answer you shall see, not hear!' Under this, he wrote the following verse:

"He has no letters to send but swords; no other ambassadors than the fivefold host (i. e. the army which is drawn up in five divisions)."

— This is a verse of al-Mutanabbi's. — "'He then dispatched letters, calling the people to arms and ordering up the troops established in the cities; on that very day, he caused his tents to be pitched outside the town. Having assembled his army, he proceeded to the sea which is called Zokák Sibta (the straits of Ceuta), crossed from thence to Spain and penetrated into the country of the Franks. Having met the enemy, who were already assembled and prepared for battle, he made them suffer a most disgraceful defeat. This took place (at al-Arcot) in the year 592 (A. D. 1196)." — End of the extract made from the note-book above-mentioned. — I then met with a work composed by Abû 'l-Hajjâj Yûsuf Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ibrâhîm al-Ansâri al-Baiyâsi (15) and entitled Tazkîr al-Adkîl wa Tanbût al-Ghâfil (i. e. remembrancer for the intelligent and advertiser for the negligent), and, in it I found this letter ascribed to Adfônch Ibn Ferdîland (Alphonse IX, the son of Ferdinand), who addressed it to the Commander of the Musulmans, Yûsuf Ibn Tâshîfta, a sovereign whose life we shall give. Yûsuf's answer was drawn up in the same terms as that which we have just given. God knows where the truth lies! Al-Baiyâsi then adds an indication which seems to prove that he borrowed them from a document in the handwriting of the Egyptian kâtib Ibn as-Sairâsi (16), and, if that be true, the message could not have been sent to Yakûb Ibn Yûsuf, for as-Sairâsi lived long before the time of that sovereign. I met with a number of learned Maghribins who considered the date given above as incorrect (17) and related what we shall here expose: "'The Franks, having assembled an immense army, marched against the emir Yûsuf who, being informed of their approach, hastened to encounter them, without being alarmed by what he had heard of their multitude and of their advancing against him. The
two armies met in the Marj al-Hadid (the iron meadow), which is a plain in the
neighbourhood of Kalat Rabâh (Calatrava), and lying to the north of Cordova.
This plain is traversed by a river which Yakûb passed in order to encounter the
Franks and draw up his troops in order of battle. This was on Thursday, the 9th
of Shabân, 591 (19th July, A.D. 1195). He thus followed the example of his father
and grandfather who generally gave battle on a Thursday, and commenced their
campaigns in the month of Safar. The engagement began by champions sallying forth
to encounter their adversaries in single combat, whilst the armies kept their ground,
till the emir Yakûb, at length, ordered the Almohade cavalry and the Arab chiefs
to charge. They did so, routed the Franks and put them to the sword. All
were exterminated, except their king, who escaped with a few followers, and, had
the night not set in, not a man of the enemy had remained alive. The
mass of booty taken by the Musulmans was immense; it is said that the num-
ber of coats of mail which fell to the share of the Bait al-Mal (the public treasury)
amounted to sixty thousand (18). Beasts of burden of all kinds were taken in
such quantities that it was impossible to count them. Never was such a defeat
heard of in Spain. It was the custom of the Almohades to make no prisoners when
their adversaries were polytheists; even if they took a great king, they would
strike off his head and those of the other captives, no matter how numerous they
might be. The next morning, the Mosliim army went in pursuit of the fugitives
and found that they had evacuated Kalat Rabâh, so great was their terror. The
emir Yakûb occupied the fortress, placing in it a vali (governor) with a
garrison. The quantity of booty which fell into the hands of the victors was
so great that Yakûb was unable to advance farther into the territory of the Franks
and therefore turned his arms against Toledo. This city he blockaded and
attacked with great vigour; he caused the trees in the neighbourhood to be
cut down, sent detachments to ravage the country all around and took a great
number of castles situated in the environs of the place. The garrisons of these
posts were put to the sword, the women carried into captivity, the walls and
buildings demolished. After reducing the Franks to such an extremity that they
did not once dare to make a sally against him, he returned to Seville, where he
remained till the middle of the year 593 (April-May, A.D. 1197). He then
entered, for the third time, into the country of the Franks and acted there as he
had done before. That people, unable to resist him and finding the earth, wide
"as it was, too narrow for them (19), sent to ask for peace. He consented to
their prayer on account of the news which had reached him respecting Ali Ibn
Ishâk (Ibn Ghânta) the Majorcan," him of whom mention has been already made
in this article. "That chief had invaded the territory of Ifrikiya (20), ruined a
number of its towns and was advancing towards al-Gharb (the west, i.e. the empire
of Morocco), in the hope of taking the city of Bugia; for he knew that the emir
Yakûb's attention was totally engaged by the state of Spain and by the holy war
which he was carrying on in that country. He knew also that he had been
absent from al-Gharb during three years. Yakûb granted therefore a truce of
five years to all the Spanish kings, on the conditions which they themselves had
proposed, and returned to (the city of) Morocco towards the end of the year 595
(Oct.-Nov., A. D. 1197). On his arrival, he gave orders for the construction of
"cisterns and watering-places (on the line of his intended march), and to prepare all
the materials and provisions necessary for an expedition into Ifrikiya. The
"shaikhs (chiefs) of the Almohades then waited on him and said: 'Sire! we have
made a long absence in Spain; some of us have been there five years, others four,
and others three. favour us therefore with a respite and let the expedition be
put off till the beginning of the year 595.' He granted their request and then
went to Sla (Sallee) where he witnessed a magnificent pageantry got up for his
reception. He had already founded near that place another large city to which
he gave the name of Ribât al-Fath (the redoubt or station of victory, now called
"Rabât), and which he had constructed on the plan of Alexandria, the streets being
wide, the quarters well distributed, the edifices solid, the whole city handsome
and well fortified. It was built near the Surrounding sea (the Atlantic), on the
southern bank of a river and opposite to Sla. After visiting all parts of that
country and admiring its beauties, he returned to Morocco.' — [I must here
observe (21) that accounts vary greatly respecting his proceedings after this epoch:
some say that he abdicated the throne and wandered through the land till he arrived
in the East, where the meanness of his appearance prevented him from being recog-
nized, and where he died in obscurity. Other relate that, after his return to (the
city of) Morocco, he died there on the 1st of the first Jumâda, 595 (1st March, A. D.
1199), or on the 17th of the latter Rabî (15th February) or on the 1st of Safar
(3rd December, A. D. 1198). Some say that he died at Sla (Sallee). God knows best!
I may add that, in the year 680 (A. D. 1281-2), a number of persons spoke to me
at Damascus of a mausoleum situated close to al Hamâra, which is a village not far from al-Mijdal, a town in the dependancies of al-Bekâa al-Azizi (Cecosyria). This monument is called the tomb of the emir Yakûb, king of al-Gharb. The inhabitants of the place all agree on this point. The tomb is at the distance of two parasangs from al-Mijdal, in a south-western direction.] — Yakûb was a just and beneficent king and a strict observer of the holy law; he obliged all men, without respect of persons, to hold a laudable conduct; he presided regularly at the five public prayers and wore (the simple) woollen (garment of the devotees); he would stop to hear the complaints of women and of poor people, and render them justice. His dying injunction was that he should be buried at the road-side, so that the travellers who passed by might pray God to have mercy on him. I heard an anecdote respecting him which deserves to be inserted here: The emir and shatkh Abû Muhammad Abd al-Wâhid, who was the son of the shatkh Abu Hafs Omar and the father of the emir Abû Yahya Ibn Abd al-Wâhid (the Hafside), held the government of Ifrikiya. He had married the sister of the emir Yakûb, and she dwelt with him. A quarrel then arose between them, and she removed to the house of her brother, the emir Yakûb. The emir Abd al-Wâhid sent to bring her back and, on her refusal to return, he addressed a complaint to Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn Marwân (kâdi of the community (22) at Morocco). The kâdi had an interview with the emir Yakûb and said to him: "The shaikh Abd al-Wâhid demands that his wife (23) should be restored to him." The emir Yakûb kept silent. Some days afterwards, Abd al-Wâhid met the kâdi in the emir Yakûb's palace at Morocco and said to him: "You are the (chief) kâdi of the Moslims; I asked to have my wife restored to me, but she is not yet come." On this the kâdi went to see the emir Yakûb and said to him: "Command of the faithful! Here is twice that the shaikh Abd al-Wâhid has asked to get back his wife." The emir Yakûb returned no answer. Some time after, the shaikh Abd al-Wâhid met the kâdi in the same palace, whither he had gone for the purpose of presenting his respects to the emir Yakûb, and said to him: "Kâdi of the Moslims! I told you twice, and now tell you for the third time, that I asked them to restore to me my wife and that they will not let me have her." The kâdi had then an interview with the emir Yakûb and said: "Sire! the shaikh asked that his wife should be restored to him and he has now renewed his request. So you must either send her to him or accept my dismission from the kâdiship." The emir Yusûf remained silent for a time, — or, according to another account,
he said: "Abū Abd Allah! this is really becoming too troublesome." — He then called forward an eunuch and said to him secretly: "Take Abd al-Wāhid's wife back to him." That was done the same evening. Yakūb was not offended with the kādi, neither did he say a word to displease him. In this, he acted according to the prescriptions of the divine law and executed its injunctions. It was a good action which (on the day of judgment), will surely be put to his account and to that of the kādi. He certainly did his utmost to maintain erect the beacon of justice. The same emir was particularly strict in obliging his subjects to say the five daily prayers, and he sometimes put to death those who drank wine. He inflicted the same punishment on the governors who, by their misconduct, excited the complaints of those whom they administered. He gave orders that all the secondary maxims (deduced from the main principles of the law and received by the orthodox community) should be laid aside, and that the muftis (consulting-lawyers, casuists) should draw their decisions directly from the noble book (the Koran) and from the Sunna (or Traditions concerning the acts and opinions) of the Prophet. His injunctions were that they should pay no attention to the decisions of the mujtahid ināms who lived in former times, but judge according to the maxims which they themselves could deduce, by the exercise of private judgment, from the Koran, the traditions, the general agreement of the Muslim community and analogical deduction (24). A number of Maghrībin doctors whom I met here (at Damascus) followed that system; such were Abū 'l-Khattāb Ibn Dihya (vol. II. p. 384), his brother Abū Amr (vol. II. p. 386, and Muḥt ad-Din Ibn al-Arabī (25), a settler at Damascus. He (Yakūb) punished those who stayed away from the (five public) prayers and had proclamations made in the streets ordering all to go to the mosque; those who absented themselves through inattention, or the necessity of working for their livelihood, received a sound flogging. His empire was vast and his realm so extensive that all the regions of Maghrib, from the Surrounding ocean to Barka, acknowledged his authority and formed provinces of his empire. He possessed besides a part of the Spanish peninsula. Yakūb was beneficent and friendly to the learned (in the law); he favoured literary men, listened willingly to poems composed in his praise and rewarded generously the authors. It was for him that Abū 'l-Abbās Ahmad Ibn Abd as-Sālām al-Jerāwī compiled the Safwā tāl-Adāb wa Dīwān al-Arāb (Choice selection of literature and collection of poems composed by the Arabs). The pieces which form this miscellany are remarkably well chosen. The gold maghrībin
coins which are called Yakabian were so named after this sovereign. In the year 587 (A.D. 1191-2), the sultan Salah ad-Din (Saladin) Abu 'l-Muzaffar Yusuf Ibn Aiyub, a prince whose life we shall give, dispatched a member of the Munkid family as ambassador to the emir Yakub, for the purpose of obtaining his assistance (26) against the Franks who had come from the countries of the West to invade Egypt and the maritime provinces of Syria. (In his dispatch) he did not give Yakub the title of Emir al-Muminin (Commander of the faithful), but that of Emir al-Muslimin (Commander of the Moslems). This gave Yakub great offence and prevented him from granting the demand (27). The ambassador's names were Shams ad-Daula Abu 'l-Harith Abd ar-Rahman, the son of Najm ad-Daula Abu Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Murshid. The rest of the genealogy has been already given in our article on his uncle, Osama Ibn Munkid (28). The hadiz Zak1 ad-Din Abd-al Azim al-Mundiri (vol. i. p. 89) mentions him in his Takhila al-Wafayat (supplement to the Obituary) (29) and says: 'He died in Cairo, the year 600 (A.D. 1203-4); he was born at Shaizar in the year 523 (A.D. 1128-9). He composed some pieces in prose and in verse.'—Let us resume our account of Yakub. One of the poets who frequented his court was Abu Bakr Yahya Ibn Abd al-Jalil Ibn Abd ar-Rahman Ibn Mujir, a native of Murcia in Spain. I looked over his collected poetical works and found the greater part of them to be in praise of the emir Yakub. In one of these poems he says:

Think you that the poet will cease to extol the fair whilst he is still in his youth and has reached the height of manhood? He was always captivated by the charms of graceful maids and, never, from the age of reason, did he allow indifference to occupy his heart. He cannot admire the character of him who, having once tasted (the sweets of) love, can become indifferent. You who censure me! little do I care! I am so occupied that I heed not your reproaches. My ear is deaf to your reprimands, though never deaf to the call of love. It can hear a fond discourse though held in whispers, but it cannot hear words of blame. My eyes, to their misfortune, directed (towards her) glances which (for me) were equivalent to death (31). On the morning in which I appeared before her, she left me as an example to show what love might be. 'Twas she who robbed me of (the bloom of) youth, (so that the darkness of my hair disappeared) and became the dark colouring of her eyelids (31). The magic of her glances annihilated the reality of all that belonged to me; that magic was not unreal. She turned from me through coquetry and, when she perceived my affliction, she turned away in confusion; as if she had been frightened by something which excited fear. She thought I meant to burn her, when she saw the grayness of my head shine like a flame. . Noble chieftains of the tribe! you who are the fittest in the world to encounter the greatest dangers! we halted in your neighbourhood; we were grateful for your protection, and yet your gazelles (maidens) faced us boldly and filled us with fear and dread. You answered for the safety of your guests, but you did not provide for the safety of your roads.
BIографICAL DИCTIONARY.

You intended to ravish away our souls by scattering among them glances from (maidens') eyes. Better would it have been for us had we plunged into the midst of swords than to have encountered these large eyes! A band of your maidens attacked us and thus infringed the pact which we made (with you). They were Thoalites (skilful archers) with their glances, though they never heard of Thoal (32). Those delicate nymphs levelled against us the graces of their movements when we levelled our pliant lances (for the fight). Their glances struck us successively, and we cast away helmet and spear. They shot at us with arrows, and yet we saw nothing about them but female ornaments and robes. Aided by beauty, they rifled all the hearts which had been ensnared in the toils of love. These graceful maids stripped me of my firmness, and yet I deck them with the jewels of amatory verse. I obliged my soul to face temptations and told her to be firm, but she could not resist them. She (who tempted me) then said: "You "must surrender your soul to love, either as a booty or as a gift;" and I replied: "She (my "soul) belongs to the Commander of the faithful, and (I shal) therefore not (give her up to "you). Never did a king like him appear before our eyes; he who sees him has attained his "utmost hopes. Benignity has established in his cheek a fountain of kindness whose waters "heal every indisposition; when he is moved by generosity, gifts burst forth from his right "hand and flow like a torrent."

The kasda from which we have taken this extract is rather long, as it contains one hundred and seventy verses; so, we shall confine our choice to what we have here given. This poet died at Morocco in the year 587 (A. D. 1191-2), at the age of fifty-three years. [Abû Ishâk Ibrâhîm Ibn Yakûb al-Kânîmi (33), a negro who was a good literary scholar and a poet, entered, one day, into the presence of the emir Yakûb and recited to him these verses:

He caused the curtain to be drawn which concealed him from my sight, yet he seemed to be still veiled by a curtain, such was the awe which he inspired. He allowed me, through condescendance, to draw near, and that awe (mahâbatuhi) disappeared when I approached him.

The race of Negroes called the Kânîm and that of the Takrûr are cousins. Neither of them derive their name from a maternal or a paternal ancestor: Kânîm is the name of a town situated in the territory of Ghâna, and is the metropolis of the Sûdân (or Blacks) who reside to the south of al-Ghârb (the states of Morocco). The Kânîm are so called after this town. Takrûr is the name of a territory and is borne also by those who inhabit it. They are all descended from Kûsh the son of Ham, the son of Noah. ] — When the emir Yakûb received the visit of death and expired, his son Abû Abd Allah Muhammad was proclaimed sovereign under the title of an-Nâsir (the defender). This prince marched into Ifrikiya, routed the troops of Ibn Ghâna and recovered al-Mahdiya from the lieutenants of that adventurer.
had been taken by Ibn Ghânita when Yakûb was occupied in waging war against the enemies (of the faith). Muhammad (an-Nâsir), the son of Yakûb, then made an expedition into Spain and fought the battle of al-Okâb (Las Navas) in the year 609 (A. D., 1212). He died on the tenth of Shâhân, 610 (25th Dec., A. D. 1213). He was born in the year 576 (A. D. 1180-1). The Maghribins state that Muhammad Ibn Yakûb had told the slaves who were employed to guard his garden at Morocco, that they might lawfully kill whoever they found there at night. Wishing then to know what case they made of his orders, he put on a disguise, one night, and went to walk in the garden. When the slaves saw him, they attacked him with their spears, and, though he cried out to them: "I am the khalif! I am the khalif!" they would not believe him, but took his life. God knows if that be true (34). The supreme authority then passed to his son Abû Yakûb Yûsuf Ibn Muhammad, the grandson of the emir Yakûb, who took the title of al-Mustansir BillaH. He was born on the first of Shauwâl, 594 (6th August, A. D. 1198). There was not, among all the descendants of Abd al-Mûmin, a handsomer man than he or a more eloquent pulpit orator; but he was so fond of his ease that he never stirred from his capital. Therefore, under his reign, the empire founded by Abd al-Mûmin began to decline. He died without issue in the month of Shauwâl (Oct.–Nov.), or of Zu‘l-Kaâda, 620 (Nov.–Dec., A. D. 1223). The principal officers of the state then agreed to nominate as their sovereign Abû Muhammad Abd al-Wâhid, the son of Yûsuf and the grandson of Abd al-Mûmin. They fixed their choice on him because he was advanced in age and highly intelligent; but as he soon showed his inability to govern and knew not how to humour the inclinations of the chiefs who held a high rank in the administration, he was deposed by them and strangled, after a reign of nine months. When he was proclaimed sovereign at Morocco, his authority was rejected at Murcia by Abû Muhammad Abd Allah, the son of the emir Yakûb, who, thinking himself better intitiled than he to the supreme power, invaded the Spanish provinces situated in the neighbourhood of his own, took possession of them without difficulty and assumed the (imperial) surname of al-Addîl. When Abd al-Wâhid was strangled at Morocco, the army of this Abd Allah was attacked by the Franks and underwent a most disgraceful defeat. He himself took to flight and embarked with the intention of going to Morocco, after authorizing his brother Abû ʿl-Alâ (or Ola) Idrîs, the son of the emir Yakûb, to act at Seville, as his lieutenant. On his way to Morocco, he was greatly harassed by the nomadic Arabs
and, on his arrival there, he found every thing turn against him and was imprisoned by the inhabitants of that city. A conference was then held by them respecting the choice of a person to whom they might confide the power, and they finished by electing Abû Zakariya Yahya, the son of Muhammad an-Nâsir and the grandson of Yakûb. This prince was incapable of governing, as might have been seen from his looks, and had not the least talent for business. A few days only elapsed from his accession to the throne when news arrived that Abû 'l-Âlâ Idrîs had caused himself to be proclaimed khalîf at Seville and received the oath of allegiance from the inhabitants of the Spanish provinces (which belonged to the Almohades). Yahya’s affairs then took so sad a turn that he was besieged in Morocco by the Arabs; his troops underwent so many defeats that the people of the city got tired of him, lost patience and expelled him from the capital. He took refuge in the mountain of Deren (the Atlas) and then entered into a secret correspondence with some of the Moroccans for the purpose of obtaining his recall and the death of the chiefs who directed Ibn Abû 'l-Âlâ’s party in that city. He subsequently arrived there and had them all killed. Abû 'l-Âlâ had now come from Spain, where the emir Muhammad, the son of Yûsuf Ibn Hâd al-Judâmi (35), had revolted and proclaimed the supremacy of the Abbasides. The popular feeling being in his favour, the cause of Abû 'l-Âlâ Idrîs was abandoned (in Spain). The latter, on arriving at Morocco, found there the emir Yahya Ibn an-Nâsir and gave him battle. Yahya was defeated and fled to the mountain, whilst Abû 'l-Âlâ took possession of Morocco. He then assembled a body of troops and marched against Abû 'l-Âlâ, who was still in that city, but, being defeated in a number of encounters, he was forced to take refuge among some people who held a castle in the neighbourhood of Tilimsân (Tlemcen). A servant-boy (ghulâm) who was there, and who had to avenge the death of his father, lay in wait for Yahya, one day that he was riding out, and killed him (36). Abû 'l-Âlâ, having then obtained the supreme authority, took the title of al-Mâmûn. He was brave, resolute, intrepid and audacious in his enterprises. He died a natural death, in one of his expeditions, but I have not been able to discover the date of that event. I have been since told by some people from that country that he died in the year 630 (A. D. 1232); God knows best (37) ! His son Abû Muhammad Abd al-Wâhid concealed his death till he had made all requisite arrangements and provided for his own
safety. He then assumed the title of ar-Rashid, subdued his elder brother and took the supreme command. Abū 'l-Alā had caused the name of the Mahdi Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Tūmart (vol. III. p. 205) to be suppressed in the khotba, at Friday prayers, but this order was revoked by his son, who thus gained the hearts and the affection of the Almohades. Ar-Rashid continued to reign over Ulterior Magrib and a part of Spain till the year 641 (A. D. 1243-4). What happened to him since, I am unable to say, having no knowledge of it. — Since this article was written out, I met a native of Morocco, a man of talent and information, who had lately quit that city, and I learned from him that, in the year 640 (A. D. 1242-3), ar-Rashid was drowned in a pond of his garden, at Morocco, the seat of the empire. His death was kept secret for some time by the chamberlain, so that the month in which it occurred is not known. Ar-Rashid was succeeded by his half-brother, Abū 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn Idris, who took the title of al-Motadid, but was generally known by the appellation of as-Satd. Some time after, he made an expedition in the direction of Tilimsân (Tlemeen) and, having laid siege to a castle (Temsezdekt), at the distance of one day’s march from that city, he was killed there, whilst riding about. This took place in the month of Safar, 646 (May-June, A. D. 1248). He was succeeded by al-Murtada Abū Hafs Omar, the son of Abū Ibrahim (Ishdik) and the grandson of Yusuf. This was in the month of the latter Rabī (July-August) of that year (A. D. 1248). On the 21st of Muharram, 665 (22nd Oct. 1266) al-Wāthik Abū 'l-Ala Idris, the son of Abū Abd Allah Yusuf Ibn Abd al-Mūmin (38), and generally designated by the name of Abū Dabbūs (the man with the club or mace) entered into Morocco, and al-Murtada fled from thence to Azemmor (39), a place in the dependencies of that city. The governor of Azemmor had him arrested, and sent a dispatch with this intelligence to al-Wāthik, who gave orders that the prisoner should be put to death. Al-Murtada was executed on one of the last ten days of the latter Rabī, 665 (between the 18th and the 28th of January, A. D. 1267), at a place called Kétama and situated at the distance of a three days' journey from Morocco. Al-Wāthik maintained his power during three years and lost his life in the war which had broken out between him and the Merinides who reigned at Tilimsân (40). With him fell the dynasty which had been founded by Abd al-Mūmin. Al-Wāthik was killed at a place situated three days' journey north of Morocco, and in the month of Muharram, 668 (September, A. D. 1267). The Merinides then took possession of the empire. Their sovereign, at the present
time, is Abû Yusuf Yakûb Ibn Abd al-Hakk Ibn Hammâma; but God knows best. — Let us now speak of Ali Ibn Ishâk, (Ibn Ghânîa) the Majorcan of whom frequent mention has been made in this article. His father, Abû Ibrahim Ishâk Ibn Hammâ Ali the Sanhaijan, surnamed Ibn Ghânîa, was sovereign of Majorca, Ivica (Yàbisa) and Minorca, three islands situated near each other and lying in the Western sea (the Mediterranea). He died in the year 580 (A. D. 1184-5) and left four sons (41) one of whom, named Abû Abd Allah Muhammad, proceeded to Spain, after the death of his father, and joined the party of the Almohades. They received him with the utmost cordiality and gave to him the city of Denia. Ali and Yahya, two other of these brothers, left their country and invaded Ifríkiya, where they committed such deeds of war and devastation as excited astonishment, and of which the recollection still subsists. Ali died, I know not in what year, but he was alive in the year 591 (A. D. 1195) (42). His brother Yahya pursued the same career and continued it for a long time. The hâfiz Zaki ad-Din Abd al-Azîm al-Mundiri mentions him (Yahya) in the Kitâb al-Wafâydt and says: “He left Majorca in the month of Shabân, 580 (Nov.-Dec., A. D. 1184), conquered many countries and gained high renown by his courage and enterprising spirit. His death took place towards the end of the month of Shauwâl, 633 (June-July, A. D. 1236), in a desert region situated at some distance from the city of Tilimsân. His attacks were directed against the dynasty of Abd al-Mûmin (the Almohades). The youngest brother, Abû Muhammad Abd Allah, remained in Majorca till the year 599 (A. D. 1202-3), when Muhammad an-Nâsir, the son of Yakûb, sent a fleet against him. The troops landed on the coast of Majorca, and Abd Allah, who was a noble-minded and brave warrior, advanced to give them battle. In the encounter, his horse fell under him, and he was beheaded by the invaders. His body was then suspended to the wall (of the city) and his head was sent to Morocco. Majorca was then conquered by the Almohades and remained in their possession till the year 627 (A. D. 1230), when it was taken by the Franks (the Catalonians). Horrible deeds were then perpetrated by them, such as massacring the inhabitants and reducing them to slavery.” — Adîûnch (43) was the name borne by the principal king of the Franks. He is now master of Toledo.

(4) Al-Kaïri al-Kâmi, means member of the Arabic tribe of Kais and of the Berber tribe of Kâmiya. The sovereigns of the Ziride, Almoravide, Almohade and other Berber dynasties were always too proud to acknow-
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

ledge their real origin and readily found genealogists who could show that their family descended from one or other of the noble Arabian tribes. Ibn Khaldûn declares positively, in his Histoire des Berbers, t. I, p. 281, that the genealogy given as that of Abd al-Mûmin is a forgery.

(2) By Maghrib (the West) and Maghrib al-Acna (the exterior West) is meant the country which is now called the empire of Morocco.

(3) The text of this paragraph is not to be found in our manuscripts.

(4) For the signification of the expression مأهار see de Sacy's Grammaire arabe, t. I, p. 348.

(5) This title was given to khalifs only. The Almohades of Morocco and the Almohade Hafsid of Tunis considered their sovereigns as khalifs and designated them by that title.

(6) The fâtiha is the first surât of the Khorân and contains only seven verses. The bismilla is the invocation placed at the beginning of all the surâts except one, and which may rendered thus: « In the name of God, the merciful, the clement! » In the orthodox Muslem prayer, the fâtiha should not be preceded by the bismilla, but, in the Almohade sect, this, and a number of other irregularities were authorized.

(7) For a full account of the Ghânâla family and of their wars against the Almohades, see Ibn Khaldûn's Histoire des Berbers, tome II. The same volume contains a satisfactory account of the Almoravides and the Almohades.

(8) The orthodox Muslem historians give to the Almohade sovereigns the title of emir or emir al-Muslimin.

(9) This invocation has nothing in it to offend the orthodoxy of a Muslem. The letter is evidently drawn up by a Musulman, but, from internal evidence, I am inclined to consider it as a forgery.

(10) This is the usual form by which, in Arabic letters, the writer enters into the subject, after commencing by a pious invocation or a series of compliments and good-wishes. It was approved of by Muhammad himself. In North Africa, the form ﷺ (yaâth, i.e. after which follows), is very generally employed.

(11) Mohammad designated himself and his followers as hanifites, which term, according to the Muslem doctors, signifies the followers of the ancient orthodox religion.

(12) This metaphorical expression signifies: preparing for flight.

(13) Mistsas are small vessels with lateen sails.

(14) Korda, surât 27, verse 87.

(15) An account of al-Baiyâzî will be found in this volume.

(16) The historian as-Sairafi was living A. H. 507 (A. D. 1113), as we have remarked in vol. II, page 376, note (8); and we learn here that he died a long time before the reign of Yûkîb Ibn Yusuf the Almohade, who mounted the throne A. H. 589 (A. D. 1194). We may therefore suppose that he died A. H. 525 (A. D. 1130-1).

(17) The date of the battle of Alarocs, given above, is certainly incorrect; the battle was fought on the 8th or the 9th Shabân, 591 (18th or 19th July, A. D. 1195).

(18) As the share of the Bait al-Mal was a fifth, three hundred thousand Christian knights, if we are to believe the narrator, must have fallen in that battle. Muslem historians have no idea of numbers.

(19) This is a Coranic expression and signifies being reduced to dispair.

(20) Frîkiya or, as it is generally pronounced, Frêtîya, is the name given to the province of Tunis. In former times, the kingdom of Frîkiya included also the provinces of Tripoli, Constantinâ and Bugia.

(21) This passage is not to be found in our manuscripts.

(22) In Spain and in the states of North Africa, the chief of the kddi, or lord chief-justice, was called the kddi of the community.
BIographersICAL DICTIONARY.

(33) The *adlis*, instead of saying *wife*, made use of the word *family* (*ahl*). A euphemism of this kind is absolutely required by Muslim delicacy: nothing can be more unpolite or more offensive that to speak to a man, in direct terms, of the female part of his family.

(34) This was putting aside all the questions which had been already resolved and established as precedents by the most learned doctors of the law, and permitting his own *adlis*, most of whom were ignorant men, to examine and settle them again as they thought fit.

(35) Muḥād al-Dīn Muḥammad Ibn Ṭālib Muhammad al-Hātimi, surnamed Ibn al-Arabi, was one of the most voluminous writers on Sufism that the Mohammedan world ever produced. He was born in the month of Ramadān, 560 (July-August, A. D. 1165) at Murcia, a city in Spain. After studying the law and the Koran in that country, he went to the East, made the pilgrimage, visited Cairo and other cities, and died at Damascus in the month of the second Rābī, 638 (Oct.-Nov. A. D. 1240). The number of works composed by him is enormous; see Haji Khalifa’s *Bibliographical Dictionary*, vol. VII, p. 1171. Of these the most remarkable is the *Futūhāt al-Mukkiydt* (revelations obtained at Mecca), forming a very large and thick volume closely written, and filled with mystical reveries. His *Fusūs al-Hikam* (maxims of wisdom set as jewels) is another work of the same kind. A long account of him is given by al-Makkarī, vol. I, p. 587 of the Arabic text, Leyde edition, and by M. de Hamer in the *Literaturgeschichte der Araber*, vol. VII, p. 499.

(36) That is, the assistance of his fleet.

(37) For an account of this embassy, see Ibn Khalḍūn’s *Histoire des Berbers*, vol. II, p. 215.

(38) This an oversight of the author: the genealogy is not given in that article.

(39) This was one of the numerous works composed as supplements to the *hāfla* Abū Sulaimān Muḥammad Ibn Abū Ḍalāls al-Wafaydt an-Nākala (Necrology of persons who handed down traditional information), which obituary extended from the time of the Hijra till A. H. 638 (A. D. 949).

(40) Such appears to be the poet’s meaning, if the verse be correctly given. Even in that case, the absence of vowel points renders the reading and the sense very uncertain.

(34) The poet means to say that his hair was now gray, because she whom he loved had taken its darkness away and made use of it as khol, or colouring matter, for her eyelashes.

(35) The tribe of Ṭhāl was celebrated for having produced the best archers in Arabla.

(36) The text of this passage is not to be found in our manuscripts.


(38) See the translation of Makkari by Gayerangos, vol. II, p. 236.

(39) In the *Histoire des Berbers*, vol. II, p. 231, Ibn Khalḍūn gives a different account of Yahyā’s death.

(40) According to Ibn Khalḍūn, the death of Abū ‘l-Alā took place in that year.

(41) Abū Dabba’s al-Wāthik, was the son of Muḥammad, the son of Abū Ḍalāl Omar, the son of Abū al-Mālin. — (Hist. des Berb., vol. II, p. 253).

(42) The fortress of Assimor is situated at the mouth of the Morbla, that is, the Um-Rābbi.

(43) The Merinides were then reigning at Fez, not at Tūlimsān, which belonged to the Abū al-Wādāites.


(46) Adīfūnsh or Adīfūnsh is the Arabic transcription of Adīfūnsh, which is the old manner of writing *Alphonse*. See *Hist. des Berbers*, t. II, p. 78.
YAKUB IBN DAWUD, THE VIZIR.

Abū Abd Allah Yakūb Ibn Dāwūd Ibn Othmān Ibn Amr Ibn Tahmān was an adopted member of the tribe of Sulaim, being a mawla to Abū Sālih Abd Allah Ibn Ḥāzim as-Sulaimi, the governor of Khorāsān (1). Yakūb was secretary to Ibrahim Ibn Abd Allah Ibn al-Hasan Ibn al-Hasan Ibn Ali Ibn Abī Tālib, the same who, stirred up a revolt, in the city and province of Basra, against Abū Jaafar al-Mansūr, and was put to death with his brother Muhammad, who had aided him in that attempt (2). This is not a fit place to speak of their enterprise which, being related in historical works, is well known. Dāwūd Ibn Tahmān, the father of Yakūb, and his (Dāwūd’s) brothers were clerks employed in the office of Nasr Ibn Saiyār, who was then governor of Khorāsān for the Omaiyyides. After the death of Dāwūd, his sons Ali and Yakūb became eminent by their literary acquirements, their talents and their information in all the various branches of knowledge. When al-Mansūr defeated the above-mentioned Ibrahim Ibn Abd Allah, he got Yakūb into his power and imprisoned him in the Maṭbak (3). This was in the year 144 (A. D. 761-2), or, by another account, in the year 146. The latter is probably the right date, because Ibrahim was put to death in 145, as we have said elsewhere. We may suppose, however, that Yakūb was made prisoner anteriorly to the death of Ibrahim, when the latter commenced his revolt; but God knows best! Yakūb was of a kind disposition, liberal, generous, charitable and always ready to oblige. Dībil Ibn Ali ’l-Khuzāi (vol. I. p. 507), the celebrated poet, mentions him in the book which contains the names of the poets. He was often visited by poets, some of them highly eminent, who came to eulogize him in their verses; such were Abū ’s-Shais al-Kuzāi (4), Salm al-Khāsir (vol. I. p. 22), Abū Khunais and others. When al-Mahdi succeeded to the khilifate, on the death of his father al-Mansūr, Yakūb (whom he had released from confinement) endeavoured to ingratiate himself with the new sovereign and, having succeeded in gaining his favour, he attained so high a place in his confidence that he became a personage of great importance. An edict was even addressed to all the boards of administration, declaring that the Commander of the faithful had adopted as a brother Yakūb Ibn Dāwūd. This induced Salm al-
Khâsir to pronounce the following lines:

Say to the imâm who obtained the khalifate by a title not to be contested: "Excellent is the associate whom you have chosen to assist you in your devotions! your brother in God, "Yakûb Ibn Dâwûd."

In the year 160 (A. D. 776-7) al-Mahdi made the pilgrimage and took Yakûb with him. In 161, he permitted him to establish commissaries in all the provinces of the empire, so that none of the governors should address dispatches to court without his (Yakûb’s) authorisation. Al-Mahdi had then for vizir Abû Obaid Allah Moawia Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Yasâr al-Ashari al-Tabarâni, the same after whom the square (murâbbâ) of Abû Obaid Allah, in Baghdad, was so named. His grandfather Yasâr was a mawla to Abd Allah Ibn Idâh (5) al-Ashari. Ar-Râbi Ibn Yûnus, the same of whom we have already spoken (col. I. p. 521) endeavoured to indispose al-Mahdi against him (Abû Obaid Allah) and was the cause of that vizir’s son’s being put to death, having furnished to the khalif proofs that the young man was a zindîk (an infidel). Some time after, he represented to al-Mahdi the danger of keeping about him such a man as Abû Obaid Allah: “Be on your guard against him,” said he, “now that you have killed his son.” He also spoke to him of Yakûb Ibn Dâwûd’s great talents and succeeded in having him appointed vizir. Abû Obaid Allah was thus deprived of his place, and the only charge left to him was the direction of the board of correspondence. This occurred in the year 163 (A. D. 779-780). Four years after, al-Mahdi removed Abû Obaid Allah from that office and gave it to ar-Râbi Ibn Yûnus. Abû Obaid Allah continued to visit al-Mahdi as usual, in order to testify his sentiments as an humble and devoted servant. This induced a native of Kûfa called Ali Ibn al-Khalîfî to compose a poem in which was the following passage:

Say to the vizir Abû Obaid Allah: “What resource have you left? Yakûb now disports himself in the direction of affairs and you turn away your eyes. You brought him into office and he has prevailed over you; such misfortunes attend the great. By your remissness in taking proper measures you have deliberately brought about your own ruin.

Yakûb then gained such influence over al-Mahdi that he took from him the direction of affairs. Al-Mansûr, in dying, had left in the treasure-chambers nine hundred millions and sixty thousand dirhems (£. 22,501,500), and Abû Obaid Allah...
always advised al-Mahdi to be moderate in his expenses and spare the public money. When Abū Obaid Allah was deposed, his successor Yakūb flattered the inclinations of the khaliif and encouraged him to spend money, enjoy all sorts of pleasures, drink wine and listen to music. By this means, he succeeded in obtaining the entire administration of the state. Bashshār Ibn Burd, the poet of whom we have already spoken (vol. I. p. 254), was induced by this to compose the following lines:

Awake, sons of Omaiyā! your sleep has endured too long. It is Yakūb Ibn Dāwūd who is now khaliif. Family (of al-Abbās)! your khaliifate is ruined; if you seek for the vicar (khaliif) of God, you will find him with a wine-flask on one side and a lute on the other.

Abū Hāritha an-Nahdi (6), the guardian of the treasure-chambers, seeing that they had got empty, waited on al-Mahdi with the keys and said: "Since you have spent all your treasures, what is the use of my keeping these keys? give orders that they be taken from me." Al-Mahdi replied: "Keep them still, for money will be coming into you." He then dispatched messengers to all quarters in order to press the payment (of the revenues), and, in a very short time, these sums arrived. A slight diminution was then made in the expenses, and the sums paid in were so abundant that Abū Hāritha had enough to do in receiving them and verifying the amount. During three days, he did not appear before al-Mahdi, who at length said: "What is he about, that silly Bedwin Arab?" Being informed of the cause which kept him away, he sent for him and said: "What prevented your coming to see us?"—"The arrival of cash," replied the other.—"How foolish it was in you, " said al-Mahdi, "to suppose that money would not come in to us! "—"Commander of the faithful!" replied an-Nahdi, "if some unforeseen event happened which could not be surmounted without the aid of money, we would not have the time to wait till you sent to have cash brought in." — It is related that al-Mahdi made the pilgrimage one year and passed by a milestone on which he saw something written. He stopped to see what it was, and read the following line:

O Mahdi! you would be truly excellent had you not taken for a favorite Yakūb, the son of Dāwūd.

He then said to a person who was with him: "Write underneath that: (It shall still be so) in spite of the fellow's nose who wrote that, bad luck attend him!" On
his return from the pilgrimage, he stopped at the same milestone, because the verse had probably left an impression on his mind; and such, in fact, appears to have been the case, for very soon after he let his vengeance fall on Yakûb. Rumours unfavorable to this minister had greatly multiplied; his enemies had discovered a point by which he might be attacked and they reminded the khalif of his having seconded Ibrahim Ibn Abd Allah the Alide in the revolt against al-Mansûr. One of his servants informed al-Mahdi that he had heard his master say: "That man (the khalif) has built a pleasure-house and spent on it fifty millions of dirhems (£ 1,250,000) out of the public money." The fact was that al-Mahdi had just founded the town of Isâbâd (7). Another time, al-Mahdi was about to execute some project when Yakûb said to him: "Commander of the faithful! that is mere profusion." To this al-Mahdi answered: "Evil betide you! does not profusion befit persons of a noble race?" At last Yakûb got so tired of the post which he filled that he requested of al-Mahdi the permission of giving it up, but that favour he could not obtain. Al-Mahdi then wished to try if he was still inclined towards the party of the Alides and sent for him, after taking his seat in a saloon of which all the furniture was red; he himself had on red clothes and, behind him, stood a young female slave dressed in red; before him was a garden filled with roses of all sorts. "Tell me, Yakûb!" said he, "what you think of this saloon of ours." — The other replied: "It is the very perfection of beauty; may God permit the Commander of the faithful to enjoy it long!" — "Well," said al-Mahdi, "all that it contains is yours, with this girl to crown your happiness and, moreover, a sum of one hundred thousand dirhems (£ 2,500)." Yakûb invoked God's blessing on the khalif, who then said to him: "I have something to ask of you." On this, Yakûb stood up from his seat and exclaimed: "Commander of the faithful! such words can only proceed from anger; may God protect me from your wrath!" Al-Mahdi replied: "I wish you to take the engagement of doing what I shall ask." — Yakûb replied: "I hear and shall obey."

"Swear by Allah," said the khalif. — He swore. — "Swear again by Allah." — He swore.

"Swear again by Allah." — He swore for the third time, and the khalif then said to him: "Lay your hand on my head and swear again." Yakûb did so. — Al-Mahdi, having thus obtained from him the firmest promise that could be made, spoke to him in these terms: "There is an Alide named — such a one, the son of such a one, — "and I wish you to deliver me from the uneasiness which he
"gives me and thus set my mind at rest. Here he is; I give him up to you."
He then delivered the Alide over to him and bestowed on him the girl with all the furniture which was in the saloon and the money (which he had offered). Yakûb was so delighted to have got the girl that he lodged her in a room close to his own, so that he might the more easily go and see her. The Alide, whom he had then brought in and whom he found to be a man of intelligence and information, said to him:

"Yakûb! beware lest you have my blood to answer for before God; I am descended from Fâtimâ, the daughter of Muhammad, on whom God's blessings and favours always repose!" — To this, Yakûb replied: "Tell me, sir! if there be good in you." The Alide answered: "If you do good to me, I shall be grateful and pray for you happiness. — "Receive this money," said Yakûb, "and take whatever road you like." "Such a road," said the Alide, naming it, "is the safest." "Depart with my good wishes," said Yakûb. — The girl heard all this conversation and told a servant of hers to go and relate it to him (al-Mahdi) and to say in her name: "Such is the conduct of one whom, in giving me to him, you preferred to yourself! such is the return which he makes you for your kindness!" Al-Mahdi had immediately the road occupied by guards, so that the Alide was taken prisoner. He then sent for Yakûb and said to him, as soon as he saw him: "What has become of that man?" — Yakûb replied: "I have delivered you from the uneasiness he gave you." "Is he dead?" — "He is." — "Swear by Allah." — "I swear by Allah!" — "Lay your hand on my head." — Yakûb did so and swore by his head. Al-Mahdi then said to an attendant: "Boy! bring out to us those who are in that room." The boy opened the door and there the Alide was seen with the very money (which Yakûb had received from the Khalif). Yakûb was so much astounded that he was unable to utter a word and knew not what to say. "Your life," said al-Mahdi, "is justly forfeited, and it depends on me to shed your blood, but I will not. Shut this man (Yakûb) up in the Matbak." He had him confined in that dungeon and gave orders that no one should ever speak to him or to any other about the prisoner. Yakûb remained there during the rest of al-Mahdi's reign, which was two years and some months, and during the reign of Mûsâ al-Hâdi, the son of al-Mahdi, and during five years and seven months of the reign of Hârûn ar-Rashid. Yahya the Barmekide (page 103 of this vol.), having then learned where he was, interceded in his favour and obtained his deliverance. When Yakûb was taken out prison, he had lost his sight. Ar-Rashid
treated him with great kindness, restored to him all his property and allowed him the choice of a place of residence. Yakub chose Mekka and, having received permission to go there, he remained in that city till his death. This event took place in the year 187 (A. D. 803). When he recovered his liberty, he asked for a number of his dearest friends and, being informed that they were all dead, he pronounced these lines:

All men have a cemetery near their residence, and, as their number diminishes, that of the tombs augments. But, though their dwelling be near at hand, the time of meeting them again (the day of the resurrection) is far distant.

These two verses are to be found in the Hamasa, section of elegies. — I must observe that the date of his death, as given above, is the same which is mentioned by Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Abdûs al-Kûfi, generally known by the surname of al-Jîshjî (vol. II. p. 137), in his Tarikh al-Wuzûr (history of vizirs), but another author states that Yakub Ibn Dawûd died in the year 182 (A. D. 798-9); God knows best! — Abd Allah, the son of Yakub Ibn Dawûd, related that, when his father was imprisoned in a well by al-Mahdi, a cupola was built over it by that khalif’s order. He mentioned also that his father related to him as follows:

“Every day, during the fifteen years of my remaining there, a small loaf of bread and a pitcher of water were let down to me by a cord and the hours of prayer were announced so that I might hear the call. Towards the end of the thirteenth year, I saw in a dream a figure which came to me and said:

“The lord took pity on Joseph and drew him forth from the bottom of a well, and of a chamber where darkness was around him.

“I gave thanks to God and said: Deliverance is coming! I then remained another year without seeing anything, till the same figure visited me again and addressed me thus:

“God may perhaps bring deliverance; every day, he does something for his creatures.

“I remained another year without seeing anything, but at the expiration of that time, the same figure came to me and said:
"The affliction in which you were yesterday may perhaps be followed by a prompt deliverance from care. He that is in fear may cease to dread, the captive may be delivered and the stranger in a distant land may be taken back to his family.

"When morning came, I heard a voice calling on me, but thought it was the call to prayers. A black (camel-hair?) rope was lowered down and I was told to tie it about my waist. I did so and was drawn up. When I faced the daylight, my sight was extinguished. They led me to ar-Rashîd and bade me salute the khalif. I said: 'Salutation to the Commander of the faithful, the well directed (al-Mahdi), on whom be the mercy of God and his benediction!' The prince answered: 'I am not he.' I then said: 'Salutation to the Commander of the faithful, the director (al-Iddi), on whom be the mercy of God and his benediction!' He replied again: 'I am not he.' On this, I said: 'Salutation to the Commander of the faithful, the rightly guided (ar-Rashîd), on whom be the mercy of God and his benediction!' To this ar-Rashîd replied: 'Yakûb Ibn Dâwûd! no one interceded with me in your favour, but, this night, as I was carrying one of my children on my shoulder, I remembered that you, formerly, used to carry me about in the same manner; so, I had compassion on you, thinking of the high position which you once held, and I ordered you to be taken out of confinement!' — When ar-Rashîd was a little boy, Yakûb used to carry him about and play with him. — After Yakûb's imprisonment, Abû Jaafar al-Faid Ibn Abi Sâlih was appointed to the vizirate by al-Mahdi. He had been one of Abû Abdallah Ibn al-Mukaffa's (vol. I. p. 431) servants and was noted for his excessive pride. His father was a Christian. It was of al-Faid that a poet said:

O you who unjustly debar me from what I claim, may God oblige you to have recourse to al-Faid's beneficence; to that man who, when he grants a favour, (shuffles about) as if walking upon eggs!

— The name Tahmûn is to be pronounced with an a after the t; the h is not followed by a vowel. — Abû Obaid Allah Moawia al-Ashari was born in the year 100 (A. D. 718-9), and died in the year 170 (A. D. 786-7), or 169. It is said that he and (the khalif) Mûsâ al-Hâdi died on the same day. He breathed his last at Baghdad and was interred in the Kuraish cemetery. — The vizir al-Faid died in the year 173 (A. D. 789-790), and was replaced by ar-Râbi Ibn Yûnus vol. I. p. 521). We have spoken of Yakûb Ibn Dâwûd in the life al-Bashshâr Ibn Burd
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

(vol. I. p. 256) and stated that he contributed to the death of that poet. An elegy was composed on his (Yakūb's) death by Abu Hanash of the tribe of Hilāl, or of that of Numair, according to another account. He was a native of Basra and his true name was Khudair Ibn Kais. He lived to the age of one hundred years. Some verses of his elegy are given in the Hamāsa (p. 339). The first of them is this:

Yakūb! let us not lose you! 0 that you may escape from death; otherwise, we shall have to weep for the days in which you ruled and which were so flourishing and so prosperous.

1) Abū Sālih Abd Allah Ibn Hāzim, a member of the tribe of Sulaim, governed Khorāsān during ten years. He adhered to the party of Abd Allah Ibn az-Zuhair and was killed, A. H. 71 (A. D. 690-1), by his own lieutenant Wākī in a revolt which the latter got up against him at the instigation of the Omānī yīde khalīt Abd al-Malik Ibn Marwān. — (Tabari's Annals; Price's Retrospect).


3) The word matbāk signifies anything which closes with a lid. It was the name given to the state-prison wherein political offenders were confined for life. (Al-Fakhri, page 220 of the Arabic text). It was a pit or a ground chamber, communicating with the exterior by a deep and narrow passage like a well.

4) Abū 's-Shāh (Shāh?), or Abū Ja'far, Mohammad Ibn Abd Allah al-Khuza'i was the cousin of the poet Dībīl Ibn Ali al-Khuza'i. He died A. H. 196 (A. D. 814-5). See vol. I, page 510 of this translation, and Freytag's Hamāsa, page 692 of the Arabic text.

5) According to Ibn Durāid, in his Isḥīdkh, Idāh was a noble Arab chief who settled in Syria after the conquest (min ʻahrāf ahlī 'r-Shām). The vizir Abū Obaid Allah Moauala Ibn Yāsār died A. H. 170 (A. D. 786-7). Some account of him is given in Ibn at-Tiktakā's Fakhri, page 106.

6) This surname is variously written in the manuscripts; one of them gives Hindī, another Mahdi, etc. As the individual who bore it belonged to an Arabian tribe, the only plausible reading is that of Nakhdi, a member of the tribe of Nakhī Ibn Kuṭṭ. Farther on, it will be seen that al-Mahdi called him a Beduin Arab.

7) Isabād (the dwelling of Isā), was so named after Isā, the son of al-Mahdi. It lay to the east of Bagdād. — (Mardāsid.)

YAKUB IBN KILLIS.

Abū 'l-Faraj Yakūb Ibn Yūsuf Ibn Ibrahim Ibn Harūn Ibn Dāwūd Ibn Killis, was vizir to al-Azīz Nizār, son of al-Moizz al-Obaidī (vol. III. p. 377), and sovereign of
Egypt. In the first part of his life he professed the Jewish religion and pretended that he drew his descent from Hārūn (Aaron), the son of Imrān and the brother of Mūsā (Moses). According to another statement, he gave himself out for a descendant of the Jew Sama'uwel Ibn Ađdyā, the lord of the castle called al-Ablak, him who acquired such renown for his good faith. The history of his conduct towards Amrō ’l-Kais al-Kindi and of the fidelity with which he preserved the objects confided to his care by that celebrated poet, is well known to men of learning. Yakūb was born at Baghdad and there he passed his youth. His residence was situated near the gate called Bāb al-Kazz. When he had learned writing and arithmetic, his father took him to Syria and sent him from that to Egypt, in the year 331 (A. D. 942-3). Yakūb then paid assiduous court to an officer in the service of the ʿusūs Kāfūr al-Ikhshti (vol. II. p. 524) and was chosen by the latter to direct the furnishing of his palace. He subsequently became Kāfūr’s chamberlain and acted, in that capacity, with great honour, discernment, probity, intelligence and disinterestedness. His master did not fail to remark his conduct and, having admitted him into his intimacy, he appointed him to a seat in the privy council. Yakūb’s duty being then to wait in Kāfūr’s presence, receive his orders and control the public accounts, every affair passed through his hands. He rose to such a height in Kāfūr’s favour that all the chamberlains and nobles stood up when he entered and showed him the deepest respect. He had no desire of gaining money; when his master sent him any, he always returned it and accepted nothing more than his regular appointments. Kāfūr then sent positive orders to all the boards of administration that not a dinar should be paid without a written authorisation from Yakūb, and thus placed all the public expenses under his control. A part of his modest emoluments Yakūb employed in acts of beneficence, and yet he continued to profess his religion. On Monday, the 18th of Shabān, 356 (29th July, A. D. 967), he became a convert to the Moslem faith and applied to the practise of prayer and the study of the Koran. Having engaged for a salary a learned shaikh, well acquainted with the august text of the Koran, skilled in grammar and knowing by heart the (grammatical) work of as-Sirāfi (vol. I. p. 377), he passed the nights with him in the recitation of prayers and the reading of the Koran. His power and favour continued to augment till Kāfūr’s death, when he was arrested with all the clerks and chiefs of the public offices by the vizir Abū ’l-Fadl Jaqfar Ibn al-Furāt (vol. I. p. 319), whose jealousy he had excited and of whom he
had made an enemy. By the intervention of his friends and by bribes he obtained his liberty from the vizir, and, on leaving the prison, he borrowed money from his brother and other persons, packed it up and departed secretly for Maghrīb. On his way, he met the kādīd Jawhar Ibn Abd Allah ar-Rūmi (vol. I. p. 340), who was marching to Egypt with an army and large sums of money, for the purpose of reducing that country under the authority of his master al-Moizz al-Obaidi (vol. III. p. 377). Yakūb returned with him, or, according to another account, he continued his journey to Ifrikiya and entered into the service of al-Moizz, after which he returned to Egypt. He rose into such great favour (with the Fatimides) that he became the vizir of al-Aziz Nizār, the son of al-Moizz Maadd, and obtained a high place in his esteem. Whilst he was thus favoured by fortune and whilst his door was besieged by crowds of people, he reorganised the administration of the empire, directed with ability the march of the affairs and (gained such influence that) no one dared to contradict him. Under the reign of al-Moizz, he had been employed in the civil administration and, on passing into the service of al-Aziz, he was nominated vizir. This took place on Friday, the 18th of Ramadān, 368 (19th April, A. D. 979). Ibn Zūlāk (vol. I. p. 388) says, in his History (of Egypt), after speaking of al-Moizz and giving the date of his death:

"Amongst the vizirs of al-Moizz, Yakūb Ibn Killis was the first who acted in Egypt for the Fatimide dynasty. After holding a place at the board of government, under (the regence of) Kāfūr, he joined the party of al-Moizz and served him with such zeal and obedience that he was raised to the vizirate." — Another author says: "Yakūb was fond of learned men and liked to assemble them at his residence. Every Thursday night he held a sitting at which he read works of his own composing to an assembly of kādis, doctors of the law, professors of Koran-reading, grammarians, Traditionists, grandees and other persons of talent. When the sitting was over, the poets would advance and recite to him eulogiums. He kept in his palace a number of persons, some of whom were occupied in making copies of the Koran, and others in transcribing books of Traditions, jurisprudence, literature and even medicine; these volumes they collated, adding also to the text vowel signs and diaritical points. One of the doctors who attended his sittings was al-Husain Ibn Abd ar-Rahim, surnamed az-Zalāzili, the same who composed the Kitāb al-Asjīda (the book of rhymes). He kept also with him, at a fixed salary, a number of Koran-readers and imāms whose duty it was to pray in

vol. IV. 46
the mosque which he had constructed in his palace. Kitchens were established there for himself and his guests, and others for his pages, retainers and followers. Every day, a large table was laid out for the learned men, the clerks who were attached to his service, some of his chosen followers and the guests whom he had invited. A great number of other tables were set out for the chamberlains, the other clerks and the retainers. In the palace he had a closet arranged (with a fountain) for the purifications, and eight chambers were always kept ready for the reception of strangers. Every day, after the morning prayer, he gave audience to the public and received, with their salutations, the papers in which they exposed their wants or the acts of injustice which they had to complain of. He placed around his sovereign some officers to whom he assigned the rank of kāids (generals) and whose duty it was to accompany him (the khalif) when he rode out in state; with them were a number of negro slaves to whom also it was obligatory to give the title of kāid. One of these officers was the kāid Abū 'l-Fatāh Fadl Ibn Sālih, the same whose name is borne by the Munya or garden, of the kāid Fadl, which is a hamlet in the province of Jīza, in Egypt. This vizir then began to fortify his palace and the dwellings of his pages by means of darbs (3); there he set guards and laid in a large stock of arms and provisions. The neighbouring grounds got covered with shops for the sale of all sorts of goods, eatables, liquors and clothing. It is stated that his palace was situated in that part of Cairo which is now occupied by the madrasa (or college) that was founded by the vizir Sa'īd ad-Dīn Abū Muhammad Abd Allāh Ibn Ali, surnamed Ibn Shākr (vol. I. p. 196) and which he appropriated to students of the Malikite sect. It is said also that the street of Cairo called Hārat al-Waziriya (the street of the vizirians) and situated (at the entrance of the city), within the Bāb as-Sāāda gate, was so named because his dependants resided there." The vizir Abū 'l-Fadl Ibn al-Furāt was his constant visitor and inspired him with such confidence that he was sometimes authorised to make the agents (of government) give in and settle their accounts. At public audiences he was allowed to sit beside Yakūb, who sometimes detained him for dinner, and yet he had acted towards him in the manner which we have related (vol. I. p. 319) (4). The respect which Yakūb inspired was profound, his beneficence ample, and the eulogiums composed on him by poets were very numerous. On looking over the collected poetical works of Abū Hāmid Ahmad Ibn Muhammad al-Antāki, surnamed Abū 'r-Rakamak (vol. I. p. 116),
I found that most of the eulogistic pieces were addressed to this vizir; such, for instance, is the *kastda* of which we inserted a portion in our account of that poet. In the historical work composed by the emir al-Mukhtar ʻIzz al-Mulk Muhammad Ibn Abi ʻl-Kāsīm, generally known by the appellation of al-Musabbihi (*vol. III. p. 87*), I found a long article on Ibn Killis and, from it, I drew the greater part of the information given above. Yakūb composed a work on jurisprudence, containing the (*Shāfe‘*) doctrines which he had learned from the lips of al-Moizz and of al-Azīz, that prince's son. In the month of Ramadān, 369 (March-April, A. D. 980), he held a sitting to which people of all ranks were convoked, and there he read to them the contents of this work. The vizir Ibn al-Furāt was at the assembly. A number of persons then held sittings in the mosque called *al-Jāmt ʻl-Att*, and decided points of law conformably to the principles enounced in that book. I heard some Egyptians relate that the vizir Yakūb had birds (*pigeons*) of so choice a kind and so excellent a breed that they outstripped all others. His sovereign al-Azīz had also some fine birds, remarkable for the rapidity of their flight. One day, the prince flew a bird of his against one of the vizir's and lost the prize. The displeasure which this gave him induced some of the vizir's enemies to think that they had found the means of ruining his credit, and they said to al-Azīz: "That man chooses for himself the best things of every kind and leaves nothing for you except those of inferior quality. It is even so with regard to pigeons." By these words they meant to incense the prince against his minister, of whom they were all jealous, and turn his mind against him. Yakūb, being informed of what had passed, wrote to al-Azīz these lines:

Say (my letter!) to the Commander of the faithful, to him whose glory is exalted and whose origin illustrious: "Your bird would have had the precedence but, before it, went its cham-berlain (to do it honour)."

The prince was pleased with these verses, and the irritation which he felt against the vizir disappeared. So it is stated by Al-Kādi ar-Rashīd Ibn az-Zubair (*vol. I. p. 143*), in his *Kitāb al-Jindān*, but, according to another author, the two verses were composed by Wali al-Dawla Abū Muḥammad Ahmad Ibn Ali, surnamed Ibn Khai-rān, a *khdīb* and Egyptian poet of whom we have spoken in our account of Abū ʻl-Hasan Ali Ibn Nubakht (*vol. II. p. 319*). I have not given a separate article to Ibn Khairān, because I never met with the date of his death, and because I made
it a rule not to insert, in this work, a notice on any person the year of whose decease I could not discover (5). \( \text{Abû 'l-Kāsim Ali Ibn Munjib Ibn Solaimân, surnamed Ibn as-Sairafî, a} \ kātib \text{and a native of Egypt, drew up a volume to which he gave the title of} \ Al-Ishāra b man ṇāl al-Wizāra \text{(the Indicator, treating of those persons who obtained the vizirate), and in which he mentioned the vizirs who administered in Egypt, up to his time. In this work, he begins by speaking of Yakûb, the subject of the present article, and says:} \) He was a kātib and a jew, guarding himself \( \text{(from vice), strict in the observance of his religious duties, and obliging towards} \) the merchants with whom he had dealings. Kāfûr al-Ikhshîdî, to whose service \( \text{he got attached, was so much pleased with his conduct, that he confided to him} \) the direction of the divān \( \text{(or board of administration) for Egypt and Syria. That office he filled to his master's satisfaction. The cause of his high favour} \) with Kāfûr was this: A jew told him that a sum of thirty thousand dinars was buried at Ramla, in the house of Ibn al-Bakri (6), who had just died. In consequence of this information, he addressed a memorial to Kāfûr, expressing his desire of setting out for Ramla, in order to bring back a sum of twenty thousand dinars, which was hidden in the house of Ibn al-Bakri. Kāfûr gave his consent to this request and sent with him a number of mules for the purpose of transporting the money. News having then arrived that the merchant Bukair Ibn Hârûn was dead, Kāfûr charged Yakûb to make investigations into the property left by deceased. It then happened that a jew who had with him some bales of flax, had just died at al-Farâma. Yakûb seized on the bales, opened them and found, in the interior, money to the amount of twenty thousand dinars. Kāfûr, to whom he announced in a letter this discovery, thought himself highly fortunate in having such an agent, and wrote back to him the order to carry off the money. Yakûb sold the flax, took with him all these sums, and, on reaching Ramla, had an excavation made in Ibn al-Bakri's house, and, from that, he took out money to the amount of thirty thousand dinars. On this, he wrote to his master saying: ‘I informed your Lordship \( \text{(ustād) that the sum was twenty thousand} \) dinars, but I have found it to be thirty thousand.’ He thus acquired a still higher place in Kâfûr's esteem and a greater title to his confidence. Having closely examined into the inheritance left by Ibn Hârûn, he took out of it a large sum which he carried off. Out of the ample donation which Kāfûr then sent to him, he accepted only one thousand dirhems (\£. 25), and returned the rest with
"these words: 'What I have taken is a sufficiency.' His influence with Kāfūr then "rose to such a degree that he was consulted by him in almost every affair."—Abd Allah Akhū Muslim the Alide related as follows: "I saw Yakūb standing to "the right of Kāfūr, and, when he retired, he (Kāfūr) said to me: 'What a vizir "is contained within that man's sides!'" He (Yakūb) travelled to Maghreb and entered into the service of al-Moizz. On the first day of the month of Ramadān, 368 (2nd April, A. D. 979), he became prime minister of al-Aziz, and received from him the title of vizir. Orders were then given by the sultan, that no person should address Yakūb verbally or in writing except by that appellation. In the year 373 (A. D. 983–4), al-Aziz imprisoned him in the Kasr (the citadel of Cairo), but, some months later, in the following year, he set him at liberty and restored him to his former place. In the year 380 (A. D. 990–1), that of Yakūb's death, a paper containing the following lines was found in his house:

Be on your guard against the events of time! Stand in dread of unforeseen misfortunes! You think yourself secure against adversity; you sleep on, yet danger is often hidden by security.

When he read these verses, he exclaimed: "There is no power and no strength, "except through the Almighty!" and used in vain, every endeavour in order to discover the author. Towards the end of the year just mentioned, when he was in his last illness, he received a visit from al-Aziz, who came riding in state to see him. "'O!' said that sultan, "'I should give my kingdom to redeem "you (from death); to ransom you (from her grasp), I should sacrifice my son! "Have you any thing to ask of me, Yakūb?'" The vizir wept and replied:

"As to what concerns me personally, you can so well appreciate my deserts, that "I need not refer you to them, and you have been so kind to those whom I am "leaving behind me, that I need not recommend them to your benevolence. But "I shall give you some advice touching the welfare of your empire: Remain in "peace with the Greeks as long as they remain in peace with you; be satisfied with "the Hamdanides (of Aleppo), as long as they offer up the prayer for you from "the pulpit and inscribe your name on the coinage; show no mercy to Mufrij "(Mufarrīj?) Ibn Daghfal Ibn al-Jarrāh (vol. I. p. 406), whenever the opportunity "presents itself." When he died, al-Aziz gave orders that he should be buried in the house where he (Yakūb) resided, and which was called the Palace of the
Vizirat. It was situated in Cairo, within the gate which bears the name of Bāb an-Nasr (victory Gate), and it contained a mausoleum (kubba), which the vizir had built for himself. Al-Aziz said the funeral service over him, and arranged the body in the grave with his own hands. He then returned, sorrowing for his loss, and ordered that all the public offices should remain shut for some days. The appointments which he allowed to the vizir were one hundred thousand dinars (£50,000) a year. In the property left by Yakūb were four thousand slaves, whites and blacks, all of them young men, precious stones to the value of four hundred thousand dinars, and drapery of all sorts to the value of five hundred thousand dinars. Six hundred thousand dinars were owed by him to merchants, but this debt was acquitted by al-Aziz, who drew the amount from the public treasury and distributed it to the creditors over the vizir's grave. The ḥāfiz Ibn Asākir (vol. II. p. 252) mentions him in the History of Damascus and says: ""He was a Jew of Baghdad, perverse and crafty, full of shrewdness and cunning. In the early part of his career, he went to Syria and settled in Ramla, where he became an agent of affairs. Having embezzled the property of the merchants, he fled to Egypt, and was chosen by Kāfur as his commercial agent. Kāfur soon remarked his intelligence, his skill in the management of affairs, his perfect acquaintance with everything concerning the (government) estates, and was heard to say: 'Were that man a Muslim he would be fit to be made a vizir.' The hope of obtaining the vizirship induced him to embrace Islamism, and he made his profession of faith, one Friday, in the great mosque of Misr. The vizir Abū 'l-Fadl Ja'far Ibn al-Furāt perceived what he was aiming at and planned his ruin, on which he fled to Maghrib and joined some Jews who were with the person surnamed al-Moizz (7). When the latter set out for Egypt, he accompanied him, and, on that chief's death, he became vizir to the person surnamed al-Aziz, who was the son and successor of al-Moizz. This took place in the year 365 (A.D. 975-6). He continued in the direction of affairs till the death of his master, which occurred in the month of Zu 'l-Hijja, 380 (Feb.-March, A.D. 991)."

— Another author says: ""The last illness of the aforesaid vizir began on Sunday, the 21st of Zu 'l-Kaada, 380. He was seized by a palsy which continued to augment and become worse; then he recovered the use of his tongue; then, towards the morning of Monday, the 5th of Zu 'l-Hijja (23 February, A.D. 994), he breathed his last. His body was shrouded in fifty robes, and all the people
assembled in the street leading from the citadel to his house. Al-Azîz came forth, evidently much afflicted; he was mounted on a mule, and, contrary to his usual custom when riding out, no parasol was borne over him. He prayed over the corpse, wept and remained present till the grave was filled up. It is said that the shrouds and the perfumes used in embalming the body, cost ten thousand dinars. A person related that he heard al-Azîz say: 'How long shall I grieve for thee, 'O Vizir!' The kāid Jawhar (vol. i. p. 340) wept bitterly, but it was as if he were weeping for his own death, since he did not survive the vizir more than a single year. The next morning, the tomb was visited by the poets, one hundred of whom, it is said, recited elegies over it. For these poems they received in exchange ample donations.'—Some say that he died in his former religion and was only a Muslim in appearance, but the truth is that he was a sincere and good Muslim. At one of his assemblies, he spoke of the Jews in terms such as that people could not have endured, and he proceeded to expose their infamy and the corruption of their religion. 'Those people,' said he, 'hold opinions which have no foundation, and the name of the Prophet is mentioned in the Pentateuch, though they deny it.' He was born at Baghdad, in the year 318 (A. D. 930-1), near the gate called Bâb al-Kazz. — The orthography of Killis, Samawiel and Addyâ is that which is given here. We have already spoken of the kāid Jawhar. The kāid Fadl (8) was a man of talent and honour, praised by all. The garden called Munyat al-Kāid, and situated in the district of Jîza, was so named after him. It was in his praise that Abû 'l-Kāsim Abd al-Ghaflâr, the court poet of al-Hâkim, the son of al-Azîz, composed the following lines:

Al-Fadl is a brilliant star on the foreheads of our eulogiums; ample in his gifts, the favours he bestows are odours which do not pass away. His hand is the center of beneficence for travellers departing in the morning and arriving at eventide. All things prosper under the direction of the son of Sâlih.

Fadl enjoyed high favour under the reign of al-Hâkim; but, having incurred his sovereign's displeasure, he was cast into prison and there beheaded. This event took place on Saturday, the 21st of Zu 'l-Kaada, 399 (17th July A. D. 1009). He met his death with great fortitude. His body was rolled up in a mat and carried out of the cell where he had been confined. — The poet Abû 'l-Kâsim was put to death by al-Hâkim, with a number of other distinguished men, on Sunday,
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

the 26th of Muharram, 395 (12 November, A. D. 1004). Their bodies were burned by his order. All of them were executed together, in the same cell. God knows how far these things may be true!

(2) The plural of عمل,عمل, bears often the meaning of note, list, account.
(3) The darbs were lanes or passages closed at each end by a gate.
(4) It is a singular oversight of our author not to have mentioned the reconciliation of Ibn Killis and Jaafar Ibn al-Furat in the life of the latter.
(5) The author gave subsequently the date of Ibn Khairan's death in his article on Ibn Nubakht.
(6) According to another reading: al-Baladi. — This person was probably a commercial agent in the service of the Fatimides government.
(7) Ibn Asikir, writing as he did, under the government of the Abbaside caliphs, gives here to understand that the Fatimides had no right to bear imperial titles.
(8) See page 382.

IBN SABIR AL-MANJANIKI.

Abu Yusuf Yakub Ibn Sabor Ibn Barakat Ibn Ammar Ibn Ali Ibn al-Husain Ibn Ali Ibn Hauthara al-Manjaniki, surnamed Najm ad-Din (the star of religion), belonged to a family of Harran, but was, by birth and by residence, a native of Baghdad. Abu Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Said, surnamed Ibn ad-Dubaithi (vol. III. p. 102), notices this distinguished poet in the historical work intended by him to serve as a supplement to the work which the hafiz Abu Saad Abd al-Karim Ibn as-Samani (vol. II. p. 156) drew up as a continuation of the (biographical) history of Baghdad, which was composed by the hafiz Abu Bakr Ahmad Ibn Ali Ibn Thabit al-Baghdadi (vol. I. p. 35). Mention has been made of these three authors in the present historical work. "This Yakub," says Ibn ad-Dubaithi, "was at the head of those who practised his art," — the writer means ballistics and the matters relating to that branch of science, — "he was a man of merit and could extemporize
poetry. Some traditions were learned by him from the lips of Abû 'l-Muzaffar as-Samarqandi and of Abû Mansûr as-Shatranji. I wrote down some pieces of his poetry which were dictated to me by himself. (Thus for instance): The following verses were recited to me by Abû Yusuf Yakûb Ibn Sâbir, as being of his own composing:

"I kissed her cheek and she, in her confusion, turned away her neck and inclined (from me) herpliant waist. From her cheeks trickled down upon her breast drops of respiration like the dew upon the myrtle (1). It was as if the breath of my sighs had obliged the rose of her cheeks to shed its dew-drops.

"I asked him the date of his birth, and he replied that it was on Monday morning, the 4th of Muharram, 554 (26th January, A. D. 1159)." — Another person said: "Ibn Sâbir al-Manjanjikī commenced his career by serving in the regular army (jundi), and became chief of the engineers stationed in the City of Welfare (Dîr es-Sâdîm), which is Baghdad. He laboured assiduously with the sword and the pen, and became noted for his studies and his military exercises. None of his contemporaries could cope with him in the knowledge of these last matters. He composed on that subject a book which he entitled Omdât al-Madâlîk fi Stûsat il-Madâlîk (the directing-post, marking the paths which lead to the government of kingdoms). This fine work, which remains unfinished, treats of every thing relating to war, orders of battle, taking fortresses, building castles, horsemanship, engineering, blockading strongholds, sieges, equestrian exercises, warfare, the management of all sorts of arms, the construction of military engines, close fighting, the different sorts of cavalry and the qualities of horses. He drew up this treatise in sections, each of which is divided into a number of chapters.

"He was an elderly, good-humoured man, well-looking, pleasant and lively; agreeable in his conversation, noble-minded and modest; in his manners conciliatory, kind and tranquil. He was, besides a prolific poet, gifted with original thoughts and composing not only detached pieces, but regular kasîdas. His poetical works were united by him in a compendium to which he gave the title of Maghâni 'l-Madâni (the abodes were striking thoughts abound). He composed poems in praise of the khâlifs and held rather a high place in the favour of the imâm (khâlîf) An-Nâsir li-Dîn Illâh Abû 'l-Abbâs Ahmad, the (Abbasid) khalîf who was then ruling." — Whilst he was alive, we often received news of him;
the professional reciters of poems giving to the public the pieces of his which they
had learned by heart and relating his doings, his adventures, and the passages
composed by him on these matters, and in which he displayed great originality of
thought. I never had an opportunity of seeing him, though the proximity of his
residence to ours rendered us neighbours; he inhabited Baghdad and we dwelt in the
town of Arbela, which places are near one to the other; but, as I heard accounts of
him frequently during his life, as also the verses which he occasionally composed and
which were recited on his authority, I may be considered as having been acquaint-
ed with him. I was always anxious to procure the occasional poems which he com-
posed, so greatly was I pleased with his (style and) manner. Many were the friends
of his with whom I met, and many also were the persons whom I heard repeating
his verses. One of them was our master the shaikh Aflî ad-Dîn (virtuous through
religion) Abû 'l-HasanAli Ibn Adîàn, of Mosul, surnamed al-Mutarjim (the inter-
preter). From him, I learned a great number of these pieces, such, for instance,
as the following:

I was engaged in studying ballistics and in employing machines fitted to destroy castles and
to breach redoubts. Then I turned, through poverty, to the composing of verses; so, in both
cases, I have been always aiming at a hâit (a wall, or something to fill the belly).

Ibn Adîàn recited to me also as Ibn Sâbir's a piece, the idea of which, said he,
never before occurred to any poet. Here it is:

Trust not to him who restrains his anger through perfidy; fear the arrows of the deceitful.
The sharp lances are never more killing than when their water (their well-tempered blade)
sinks into the bosoms.

He communicated to me also the following piece, which the poet had composed
on a dark-coloured Abyssinian girl with whom he was in love:

That maiden, a daughter of the Abyssinians, shot from her eyelids glances at once powerful
and languishing. I loved her through the impulse of youth, and passion turned my hair gray;
a thing which I had no mind to. So, when I reproached her with her blackness, she repro-
ached me with my grayness.

He recited to me also this piece, as being of Ibn Sâbir's composition:

A girl was weeping in (the bustle caused by) the running of the pilgrims round the Kaaba,
and her tears fell in abundance. I said to her: "Enter into the temple and be not afraid; it always gives protection to those who are in fear. Its guardianship belongs to the family of "Shaiba (2)." She replied: "I am also afraid of shaiba (gray hair)."

Another of Ibn Sābir's pieces which he (Ibn Adīlān) recited to me, was composed on a young girl (3), who was learning to swim in the Tigris, at Baghdad. She had put on blue drawers and tied to her back a bladder filled with air, as is customary with persons who are learning to swim. On this subject, the poet said:

O you men (who hear me)! my affliction (shikāya) proceeds from that bladder (shikwa) which holds closely to her whom I desire to possess and whom I love. It is filled with hawa (air) as I am filled with hawa (love), but it floats where my passion would weigh me down and drown me. Those drawers excite my jealousy whilst they embrace her charms; they are really a blue enemy.

This is an original thought. The (desert) Arabs, when they wished to describe a man whose hostility (to another) was very violent, used to say: "He is the blue enemy." This expression occurs frequently in their discourses and poems. Al-Harfīrī (vol. II. p. 490), made use of it, in the fourteenth (4) Makdāma, where he says: "But since (my) green (favouring) life has been soiled, and since the beloved yellow (money) has turned away, black have become my days (once so) white, and white, my locks (once so) black; so that pity is shewn to me (even) by the blue enemy! Welcome (were to me even) red death." In an epistle, the author of which I have not been able to discover, I found the following passage: "We quenched the thirst of our dark iron blades in the water of the little red rose (the heart), belonging to that enemy of God, the blue-eyed Christian, one of the sons of the yellow (Europeans)."—This is a subject offering so ample a stock of examples that we need not lengthen our article by adducing others. —He (Ibn Adīlān) recited to me the following piece as having been composed by Ibn Sābir on a band of Sūfis (derviches), to whom he had given hospitality and who eat up all that he set before them. In this piece, which he sent to their superior, he relates what had taken place between him and them:

My lord! you who are the shaikh of the convent and have manifested to the world your eminent merit and your noble feelings! To you I complain of the injustice committed by some Sūfis who passed the night with me as guests and friends. I offered them provisions in preference to myself, and I passed the night with my stomach complaining of hunger. When
they walked, it was towards the bread; not like those saints whose custom was to walk upon the surface of the waters. They continue to be my guests up to the present moment. Send them, I beg you, bread and sweetmeats; or, if not, take them to you and deliver me from them; I have not a good opinion of people like them.

Here is another piece which the same poet composed on the Sûfis and which was recited to me by Ibn Adlân..... (5). A person, but not Ibn Adlân, related to me as follows: "When Ibn Sâbir grew old and slow in his movements, he used to lean on a staff in walking. Alluding to this, he said:

"In the time of my youth, I threw the staff out of my hand when I intended to make a halt; and now, that hoary age calls on me to journey forth, I have taken that staff up again.

"There was at Baghdad a man called Ibn Bishrân, who was always spreading about reports and rumours. Being forbidden to do so, he took his seat at the roadside, and set up for an astrologer. On this, Ibn Sâbir said:

"Ibn Bishrân turned astrologer through fear of the sultan, and I blame him not. That unlucky wight was formed by nature to be loquacious; and, not being allowed to speak of what passes on earth, he talks to us of the heavens."

In the month of Ramadân, 638 (March–April, A. D. 1241), whilst I was in Cairo, Abû Abd Allah Mohammad Ibn Yusuf Ibn Sâlim, surnamed Shiîbâb ad-Dîn (the flambeau of religion), and generally known by the appellation of Ibn at-Tallâfari, who was an eminent literary scholar and one of the good poets of the day, recited to me the following verses:

"Hoariness! what do you mean? You hasten to invade my dark locks before the time of my youth has expired. Hasten not! for, by Him who changed into day the dark night of my locks, were my hair on the day of judgement to replace the book containing my actions (6) its whiteness, even then, would not rejoice my heart.

On hearing this, I said: "You have stolen from Ibn Sâbir the entire meaning of the last verse and some of the expressions; you have even adopted his rhyme and his measure. That poet said:

"If the heard of the gray-haired man were, on the day of the resurrection, the book of his actions, its whiteness would displease him."
He swore that he had composed the above verses before he heard of this one. God knows best! Ibn Sābir’s verse belongs to a piece which we give here:

They say that hoariness is a brilliant light which clothes a man’s face with brightness and dignity. But, when its grayness invaded the summit of my head, I wished I had not been deprived of darkness. I began to cajole the marks of youth, so that they might remain, and I dyed them with a tint of black. If the beard of the gray-haired man were, on the day of the resurrection, the book of his actions, its whiteness would displease him.

A literary man informed me that Ibn Sābir addressed the following verses to a man of high rank in Baghdad:

I come not to you with praises for the purpose of obtaining gifts; I am satisfied with what you have already bestowed on me and am thankful. But I now come to you with a message from glory: She says that your efforts to obtain her favour shall not go unrewarded.

When I was in Cairo, I met with some quires of a book containing the poems of Ibn Sābir, who, in all his verses, displayed great talent. I there found the famous distich which has been attributed to different poets and of which the real author is not known. Here is that which I mean:

Throw me into fire and, if it consume me, be then assured that I am not Yakūt (a hyacinth). Every one who makes tissues is included in the term weaver; but, in that art, David was not equal to the spider (7).

In answer to those two verses, Ibn Sābir composed the following:

O thou who art so vain-glorious! leave glory to him who is the lord of greatness and of power. David’s tissue would have rendered no service on the night of the Cavern; it was the spider who had all the honour. The resistance of the samand (asbestos) (8) to the ardour of fire deprives the yakūt of its merit. The ostrich can swallow burning coals, though they are not its (natural) food.

The two verses given first of all have served as models to a number of our contemporaries. Such, for instance, were the following, composed by Jamāl ad-Dīn Abū Muhammad al-Kāsim Ibn al-Kāsim Ibn Omar Ibn Mansūr, a native of Wāsit who had settled in Aleppo and who wrote a commentary on the Makāmas (of al-Hartrī):
The silkworm, when it built over itself a house and died after spinning, was right in dying; for the spider has spun before (and outdone it).

It was thus also that a native of Mosul, named Muhaddab ad-Din Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Abî 'l-Hasan Ibn Yumn al-Ansâri, and generally known by the surname of Ibn Ardakhel, expressed a similar thought in these lines:

People said: « We see you frown when persons unworthy pretend to follow the religion of love. ” I answered: “ The silkworm was right in killing itself when its work was equalled by the dwelling of the spider.

In these verses is an allusion to a thought which (two) other poets have expressed thus:

When you have, in any work, a vile fellow for a partner, you incur neither disgrace nor odium. The class of animals necessarily includes Aristotle and the snappish cur.

The wasp and the falcon, like other animals that fly, have wings and can hover in the air. But great is the difference between what is captured by the falcon and what is caught by the wasp.

Having spoken of the silkworm, we cannot but mention what has been said of the surfa (a sort of case-worm or caddis). In al-Jawhari’s lexicon, the Sahâh, we read that the surfa is a little animal which constructs for itself a square house like a coffin, forming it with small bits of wood which it sticks together by means of its spittle. It then enters into this case and dies. The expression: More industrious than the surfa, is proverbial. A person of merit told me that the surfa is the same as the arda (or termite); God knows! — To the verses given above we cannot avoid adding these two:

When people have not at hand an able workman, they take one who is awkward and without skill. When the chess-player is in want of a pawn, his custom is to replace it by a pebble.

The idea which pervades all these verses originates from one which al-Mutanabbi (vol. I. p. 102), has thus expressed:

The most worthless prey that my hand ever seized on was, when the yellow falcon and the vulture obtained equal shares.
**BIографICAL DICTIONARY.**

Something similar is what Abû 'l-Alâ 'l-Maarri (*vol. I. pag. 94*) has enounced thus:

> How could the lion store up food for its daily wants, and thus imitate the ant which gathers up subsistence for the year to come?

There is something in the verses given first of all which requires explanation; for it is not every person who reads them that can understand their meaning. What is said of the *yakût*, in the first verse, refers to the particular nature of that mineral; fire having no effect on it. Al-Hariri alludes to this in his forty-seventh *Makâma*; he has there three verses one of which is:

> The *yakût* may be long heated over burning coals; the coals will at last die out and the *yakût* remain as it was.

A poet said of a young page of his whose name was Yakût (*Hyacinth*):

> Yakût! Yakût! the heart of him that yearns after that (*youth*), — it is an act of generosity that food should not be withheld (*from it*) (9). Come and dwell in my heart (10); you need not fear the flame with which it burns; why should a *yakût* fear the flame of fire.

Ideas of this kind frequently occur in poetry; but it is now better that we should be brief. — In the second line of Ibn Sâbir's answer, the words *David's tissue would have rendered no service, etc.*, allude to the flight of the Prophet from Mekka, with Abû Bakr as-Siddîk (*the veracious*). Apprehensive of being pursued by the infidels of that city, they entered into the cave of Thaur, a mountain situated between Mekka and Medina, but nearer to the former place. Immediately after, a spider wove its web across the entrance of the cave. When the infidels came and saw the work of the spider, they said: "There is nobody here; if any one had gone in, the spider would not have woven its web so soon." The infidels had immediately hastened pursuit of them, and hoped to attain them, but God concealed the fugitives. This was one of the blessed prophet's miracles. In the third verse (*of the same piece*), the poet speaks of the *samand*, which resists the ardour of fire. The word *samand*, or *samandel*, as it is sometimes written (11), designates, it is said, a kind of bird which, if it falls into the fire, receives no injury. Napkins are made of its feathers and brought to our countries. When one of them is soiled, it is cast into the fire,
and that element eats away the impurities without burning the napkin or making any impression on it. I saw a piece of thick cloth made of samand; it was in the shape of a saddle-girth, having the same length as one and the same breadth. They laid it on a fire, but no effect was produced on it; then they dipped one end of it into oil and placed it over the (burning) wick of a candle. It took fire and burned for a long time; when extinguished, nothing was found changed in its former state. People say that it is imported from India, and that the bird of which we have spoken is found in that country. There is something curious in that (experiment), which we must notice here: the end of that piece of cloth was placed over the candle, and left there for a long time, without its taking fire. One of the persons present, then said: "Fire has no effect on it, but dip the end of it into oil and place it on the fire." They did so, and it blazed up. From this, it appears that, unless it be dipped in oil, it resists the action of fire. I, afterwards, found in a copy of the autobiography composed by our shaikh Muwaffak ad-Din Abd al-Latif Ibn Yusuf al-Baghdadi (12), and in that doctor's handwriting, that a piece of samand, one cubit in breadth and two in length, was presented to al-Malik az-Zahir, son of Salāh ad-Din, sovereign of Aleppo. When it was dipped in oil and set on fire, it burned so that the oil was consumed and it then became as white as before. God knows best! Similar to the samand, is the sarafīt, a little animal which lives in glass-furnaces, when they are violently heated. There it lays its eggs and produces its young; never does it make its nest except in a place where fire is constantly burning. Glory be to God, the creator of all things! — In the fourth verse of the piece above given, Ibn Sābir speaks of ostriches swallowing burning coals; this is a fact which we ourselves have often witnessed, and it is so well known that it no longer appears curious. Here, after all, we have digressed from our subject, but one observation brought on another, and they have spread to a great extent. — Ibn Sābir died at Baghdad, on the eve of the 28th of Safar, 626 (26th Jan. A.D. 1229), and was buried on Friday, in the new cemetery of the western quarter of the city. His tomb is near the entrance of the mausoleum which bears the name of Mūsa Ibn Ja’far (vol. III. p. 463). — The word hauthara, designated originally the glans penis, and then became the name of a man. Ibn al-Kalbi (vol. III. p. 608), says, in his Jamharat an-Nisab: "The name of Hauthara was given to Rabiah Ibn Amr Ibn ‘Aţf Ibn Bakr Ibn Wā’il for the following reason: As he was making the pilgrim, he met a woman and bargained with her for a cup. She asked a high
“price for it, on which he said: ‘By Allah! I could stop it up with my hauthara.’

“This word has here the same meaning as the word kamera.” The relative adjective manjantki is derived from manjantk (mangonel), the name of a well known engine. As we have mentioned this word, we cannot avoid offering some remarks concerning it, for, on this subject may be said a number of things little known. First of all, the manjantik is a machine employed (in war) and transportable (from one place to another). It is a general rule that, in words of this class (names of instruments), the letter m should be followed by the vowel i; amongst the rare exceptions, we may cite munkhal (a sieve), mudhun (an oil-flask), and musat (an instrument for introducing medicinal powders into the nostrils). Ibn al-Jawhari (vol. III. p. 498), says, however, in his Muarrab, that this word has four forms: manjantk and manjantk, both of them regular; then manjantk and manjantk. It is stated on good authority, that the m and the first n of this word, may take one or other of the three vowels. It is also said that those two letters belong to the root of the word. According to another statement, the m is a radical, and the n a complementary letter; God knows best (13)!

The word manjantk is of foreign origin (14), for the letters j ( جاء) and k (ك), are never found together in any Arabic word. We thus recognize as foreign, the words jurmāk (slipper), jardak (gâteau), jausak (palace, kiosk), julahlk (ball of an arbalet), kabj (partridge), and others. This is a general rule which applies also to the letters j (ج), and s (ص); they are never to be found together in an Arabic word: sahrīj (pond), jass (gypsum), justul (?), and others are therefore of foreign origin. When we put the word manjantk in the plural number, we begin by suppressing one of the mn; if we take away the first, we obtain the plural majantk, and, if we suppress the second, we obtain manjāt. Al-Jawhari says, in his Sahāh, that the word manjantk is derived from (the Persian) man ji ntk (15), which, in Arabic, means: how good am I. I may add that man signifies 1, ji is (the interrogative) what, and ntk is good. So the meaning is 1, what thing, good.

“These words,” says al-Jawhari, “being arabicized, become manjantk.” Ibn Kutaiba (vol. II. p. 22), says, in his Kitāb al-Madrif, and Abū Hilal al-Askari (vol. II. p. 440), in his Kitāb al-Awdāl (book of origins), that the first inventor of this machine was Jadima tal-Abrash (16), a king of the Arabs, who possessed (the town) of Hira in former times. Al-Wahidī (vol. II. p. 246), says, in his Medium Commentary, on the Korān, šurat of the Prophets: “When the infidels resolved “on burning alive Abraham, the friend of God, they lighted a fire (so great, that
"they could not approach it), and did not know how to cast him into it. Iblis "(Satan), God’s curse be upon him! then went to them and indicated the manner "of constructing a manjank. This was the first ever made. They placed Abra-"ham on it, and shot him off.” God knows best! These paragraphs are a digres-

sion, and, as they are not devoid of useful information, my discourse, on the subject,

has been considerably extended.—Shihâb ad-Din al-Tallâfari, he of whom we have
spoken above, informed me that he was born at Mosul, on the 25th of the latter
Jumâda, 593 (15th May, A. D. 1197). He died at Hamâh, on the 10th of Shauwâl,
675 (17th March, A. D. 1277). I heard from his lips, the following verses, which
were the last he ever composed:

When my bed at night shall be the grave and when I am near unto the Merciful, felicitate me,
my dear friends! and say: "Rejoice! you have now gone into the presence of the bountiful Lord."

(1) In the translation of these verses, it was necessary to disguise their character by changing some of
the pronouns. The significance given by Arabic poets to the words myrtâs and iâdâ has been indicated in

(2) The Shâbâ family had the guardianship (saddâna) of the Kaaba even so far back as the reign of
Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyân.

(3) To render the following piece presentable, modifications of the nature indicated in note (1) have been
made in the translation.

(4) It is in the thirteenth Makama that the passage occurs.

(5) This piece and the following cannot be given by the translator: the grammatical construction of the
first and the wit contained in it he is unable to discover; the second piece, containing three lines, cannot be
translated.

(6) See Sale’s introduction to the Koran, sect. iv.

(7) The king and prophet David was celebrated for making coats of mail; the work of the spider is ex-
plained farther on, page 375.

(8) This word is explained by our author farther on.

(9) In the translation, the awkward grammatical construction of the Arabic text has been followed.

(10) The text has: you have dwelt in my heart.

(11) This word is evidently an alteration of the Greek Σαλμάνδρα.

(12) This is the celebrated Abdallatif whose Description of Egypt has been published by Dr White and by
S. de Sacy. Ibn Khallikân was about nineteen years of age when Abd al-Latif died.

(13) Here, in the Arabic text, is a passage out of its place and which will be found at the end of this bi-
ographica! article. It is given in two of our manuscripts.

(14) Manjank comes from the Greek μελάνιον.

(15) This lexicograph meant to write the Persian words چند تاک (men teche nt).
BIROGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

(16) For the history of this anteislamite prince, who was king of Hirâ, see Pococke’s Specimen hist. Arabum, 2nd edition, page 67 et seq., and Caussin de Perceval’s Essai sur l’hist. des Arabes, tome II, p. 16 et seq. Pococke writes the name Jodaima, and Caussin Djodhâima, but this pronunciation is erroneous.

IBN AS-SAIGH THE GRAMMARIAN.

The grammarian Abû ’l-Bakâ Yaîsh Ibn Ali Yaîsh Ibn Abî ’s-Sarâïya Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn al-Mufaddal Ibn Abîd al-Karîm Ibn Muhammad Ibn Yahya Ibn Haiyan al-Kâdi Ibn Bishr Ibn Haiyan was a descendant of Asad (the progenitor of the Arabic tribe thus named). He belonged to a family of Mosul, but was born and brought up in Aleppo. This grammarian was surnamed Muwafak ad-Din (favoured in religion), and was generally known by the appellation of Ibn as-Sâigh (the son of the goldsmith). He began the study under the direction of Abû ’s-Sahnâ Fîyân (1), a native of Aleppo, Abî ’l-Abbâs al-Maghrebi and an-Nîrouzi. At Mosul he heard traditions delivered by Abû ’l-Fadl Abîd Allah Ibn Ahmad al-Khatib at-Tusi (the pulpit-orator of Tüs) and Abî Muhammad Abîd Allah Ibn Omar Ibn Suwaida of Tikrit. At Aleppo, he learned traditions from Abû ’l-Faraj Yaîya Ibn Mahmûd ath-Thakefi, the kâdi Abû ’l-Husain Ahmad Ibn Muhammad at-Tarsûsi and Khalid Ibn Muhammad Ibn Nasr Ibn Saghîr al-Kaisarâni. At Damascus he received traditions from Taj ad-Din al-Kindi (vol. I. p 546) and other masters, and, at Aleppo, he taught them. In syntax and etymology he displayed great talent and skill. On entering into active life he set out from Aleppo for Baghdad, with the intention of meeting there Abû ’l-Barakât Abîr ar-Rahmân Ibn Muhammad, surnamed Ibn al-Anbârî (vol. II. p. 95) and the other professors who flourished, at that epoch, in Irâk and in Jazira (Mesopotamia). On reaching Mosul he learned that Ibn al-Anbârî was dead.—In our article on that grammarian will be found the date of his death.

—Ile remained for a short time in that city and heard traditions taught there, after which, he returned to Aleppo. Having then decided on becoming a professor of literature, he travelled to Damascus and there met with Taj ad-Din Abû ’l-Yumn Zaid Ibn al-Hasan al-Kindi, a celebrated shâikh (professor) and imâm of whom we
have given a notice (vol. I. p. 546). He questioned him on some difficult points of
Arabic grammar and asked him how he should construe the following passage, taken
from the latter part of al-Hariri's tenth Makâma entitled the Rahabiyan: "Till,
"when illumined the sky (al-uflâ) the tail of the wolf (the twilight, — in Arabic
"dhanâb el-sirhân), and arrived the time of the glimmering of the dawn." Al-
Kindi was unable to resolve the difficulty, which was to determine whether the
words uflâ and dhanâb were in the nominative case or in the accusative, or if uflâ
were in the nominative and dhanâb in the accusative, or vice versa. "I know
"what you at aiming at;" said he, "you wish to show how exalted a place you
"hold in this science." He then wrote with his own hand a certificate in which
he praised him in high terms, acknowledging his great proficiency in literature.—
I may here state that the question admits the four solutions, but that which is pre-
ferrred is the putting of uflâ in the accusative and dhanâb in the nominative. This
opinion has been already expressed by Tâj ad-Din Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn
Abd ar-Rahmân al-Bandahi (vol. III. p. 99), in his commentary on the Makâmas,
and, were I not apprehensive of being led too far, I should explain all that here.—
In the year 626, on Tuesday, the 1st of Zû 'l-Kaada (21st Sept. A. D. 1229), I arri-
vied at Aleppo for the purpose of studying the noble science (jurisprudence and divi-
inity). That city was then the capital of a principality and was filled with learned men
and with students. The Muaffak ad-Din of whom we are here speaking was at that
time the chief of the literary community and in it he stood without a rival. I
began to study under him, he taught in the great mosque, and held his class
in the northern maksûra (vol. II. p. 255), immediately after the asr prayer
(vol. I. p. 594). In the interval between the two prayers (the mughrib and
the asha (?)), he taught in the Rawâhîya college. A considerable number of students,
who had already attained great distinction under his tuition, attended his sittings
most assiduously and were never absent when he gave lessons. I commenced by
Ibn Jinni's Luma (vol. II. p 192) and read over to him the greater part of that work,
besides which, I listened to the lecture which he addressed to the assembly. This
was towards the close of the year 627 (Oct.-Nov. A. D. 1230). I finished the
Luma under another master,—circumstances having forced me to do so. He had
a rare talent for explaining difficulties and rendering them intelligible; his tone
was mild, his patience with beginners and proficient most exemplary, his character
cheerful, his disposition pleasing and, with all his seriousness and gravity, he was
inclined to pleasantry. I was one day at his class whilst a legist was reading the 
Luma under his direction and had come to the following verse of Zû 'r-Rumma's 
(vol II. p. 447), which is cited as an example in the chapter on the vocative:

Gazelle of the desert which lies between Jaldîl and an-Naka! is it you whom I see or 
Omm Sâlim?

Here the professor said to him: "The poet had so violent a passion for his mistress, 
so ardent a desire to possess Omm Sâlim, her whom he loved and whom he had 
often compared to a gazelle, conformably to the custom of poets in assimilating 
handsome women to fawns and to gazelles, that his mind was quite confused, 
and, knowing not whether the object which he saw was a woman or a gazelle, he 
exclaimed: Is it you or Omm Sâlim?" He continued to discourse in this style, 
and in such clear terms that the dullest and most stupid of men might have under-
stood his explanation. The legist listened to him with the utmost attention, so that 
any person who saw him would have thought, from his aspect, that he understood 
perfectly well what was said. When Muwaffak ad-Din had finished, the other 
said to him: "Tell me, master! what are the points of likeness between a hand-
some woman and a gazelle?" The professor replied: "Explanation in full:
The likeness lies in the tail and the horns (2)." These words threw all who 
were present into a fit of laughter, and the legist was so much abashed that I never 
again saw him at the lecture.—Jaldîl or Jaldîl is the name of a place. There are 
two jî in the word.—We were one day reading in the Rawâhiya mosque, under 
Muwaffak ad-Din's direction, when a trooper (jundi) came in with a paper in which 
was written the acknowledgment of a debt; it should be known that the professor 
used to act as a witness to law papers. The man said to him: "Master! witness 
this writing for me." Muwaffak ad-Din took the paper out of his hand and, finding 
that the first words of it were these: Fâtimah acknowledges, he said to 
the man: Are you Fâtimah?" The trooper replied: "She will be here in 
a moment." He then went to the door of the college and, as he brought her in, 
he kept smiling at what the professor said.—An anecdote similar to this is related in 
our article on Aâmîr as-Shâbi (vol. II. p. 6): a person went into the room where he 
was and, finding a woman with him, said: "Which of you two is as-Shâbi?" to 
which the other replied: "She is the man."—We were one day reading under his 
direction, in his own house, when one of the persons present felt thirsty and asked
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

the servant boy for some water. When it was brought, he drank it off and said:
"That is merely cold water (3)." On this, the professor said to him: "Had it
been warm bread, you would have liked it better."—Another day, we were with
him in the Rawâhiya college when the muwaddin came in and announced the asr-
prayer, an hour before the time. The persons present said to him: "What does
this mean? you old fellow! the hour of the asr is yet far off."—"Let him alone,"
said the shaikh Muwaffak ad-Din, "he may perhaps have business and is in haste."
—He was, one day, at the house of Bahâ ad-Din Ibn Shaddâd, the kâdi of Aleppo,
—we shall give his life,—and the company happened to be talking of Zarka
'l-Yemâma (4), her who could distinguish objects at a great distance, that of
a three days' journey, it is said. Those who were present related the anecdotes
which they had learned respecting her, and the shaikh Muwaffak ad-Din said:
"I can distinguish an object at the distance of a two months' journey." The
company were surprised at this assertion but none of them dared to question him
on the subject, till the kâdi asked him how that could be. He replied: "I
can see the new moon." On hearing this, the kâdi said: "You might
as well have said: — 'At the distance of such and such a number of years'
journey.—"Nay," answered Muwaffak ad-Din, "had I said 'so, they would
have known what I meant; but my object was to puzzle them."—It would take
us too long to relate the numerous anecdotes told of this professor.—I was one day
with him at his house when a native of Maghrib, who was an eminent literary scholar
and who had just arrived from Mosul, came in and took his place in the circle of
students which surrounded the professor. During the lesson, the stranger discussed
some questions with the ability which distinguishes a man of talent, and mention was
made of the controversies which he had at Mosul with some of the eminent scholars
who resided in that city. He then related as follows: "I was at the house of Diâ
ad-Din Nasr Allah Ibn al-Alâr al-Jazari,"—we have given an article on this
person (vol. III. p. 541),—"and we engaged in a conversation during which we
recited pieces of verse. On this occasion I repeated to him the following lines
which had been composed by a native of Maghrib."—I may here observe that
Abû Ishak al-Îusri (vol. I p. 34) has mentioned them also and attributes them to a
native of Kairawan whom he does not indicate:

"Those youths, the vegetation of whose cheeks resembles pens of musk (blackness) dipped
in khalâk (5), have united the violet (the dark hair of the cheeks) to the anemone (the
"redness of the cheeks) and ranged underneath the emerald (the hair growing on the upper
"lip) pearls (white teeth) and cornelians (red lips). They are such that when a maiden de-
"void of cares sees them, love towards them finds its way into her heart."

The (latter) half of the second verse contains an idea similar to that which Ibn
az-Zarawi (or ad-Darawi), the Egyptian, expressed in a piece of verse which is given
in our article on Mubarak Ibn Munkid (vol. II. p. 555), where he says:

Under the hyacinth (the dar kred) of his lips appears a row of pearls still humid, and he
displays a mustache of emerald.

In a piece attributed to Abū Muhammad al-Hasan Ibn Ali, generally known by
the surname of Ibn Waki' at-Tinnisi (vol. I. p. 396) we find this passage:

The qualities by which we may describe him are all taken from precious stones; so that the
greatest genius and the sharpest intellect are unable to conceive them. The mustache is
of emerald, the teeth are of pearl enclosed in a mouth of cornelian.

These verses remind me of two others which I knew by heart and which may
be appropriately mentioned here, after the preceding:

When (6) we stopped to say a mutual farewell and when the idea which we had formed of
(the pains of) love was realized, my friends shed pearls (tears) on the dark anemones (the
cheeks) and I let drop cornelians (tears of blood) upon the marigold (my pallid cheeks).

The following verses, in the same style, were recited by al-Wâwâd-Dimishki
(vol. II. p. 340):

She rained down pearls from the narcissus (the eyes) and watered roses (the cheeks); she bit
the jujube (her brown lips) with hailstones (white teeth).

In the same style are the following verses, composed by Muhammad Ibn Said
al-Aâmiri, a native of Damascus, but some persons attribute them to Ibn Waki':

When we embraced to say farewell, dropping tears spoke our feelings in the clearest lan-
guage; they separated veils from eyes (caused the females to unveil) (?) and united the violet to
the anemone. I should sacrifice my life to save that gazelle on the bowers (ringlets) of whose
face are fixed the pupils of our eyes.
Similar to this are the following verses attributed to Abū ’l-Fath al-Hasan Ibn Abi Hasīna, a poet of some reputation and a native of Aleppo:

When we stopped to say a mutual farewell, and whilst her heart and mine were overflowing with passion and with love, she wept liquid pearls; my eyelids let fall cornelians, and both formed a necklace on her bosom.

My friend Husām ad-Din Isa Ibn Sinjar Ibn Bahrām al-Hājiri (vol. II p. 434), who was a native of Arbela, recited to me the following piece as being of his own composing:

When we met again, after a long lapse of time, she saw that the tears in the corners of my eyes were drops of blood, and she said: "When I last saw those pearls, they flowed like cornelians, but why (should they do so now) since this is (the joyful hour of) our meeting." I answered: Wonder not, my beloved! thou for whom I, living or dead, should give my soul! The tears you first saw were those of our farewell; what you see now are the last drops of those which were caused by our separation."

[The shaikh (7) Muwaffak ad-Din often recited the following verses, which he attributed to Abū Ali al-Hasan Ibn Rashīk (vol. I. p. 384), but I looked for them without success in the collected poetical works of that writer:

I did not approach you with the intention of deluding; I did not praise you through artifice; but, considering it my duty to extol you, even when that was not an obligation, I began a discourse of which you could not but see the merit, and I continued till my words were unequal to the grandeur of the subject. Let not unjust suspicions agitate your mind, for they are blamable; leave to me the means of making my peace. If I were distrustful of any other but you, I should give full career to the inclination which impels me to speak (my mind). By Allah, I did not discourse of you with prolixity, neither did I expose any ear to hear a word in your dispraise. I did myself honour (in praising you), exalting myself thus above contempt and humiliation. I have left (you), but enmity has not left (my heart); I have broken (with you), but my sincerity remains unbroken.

There exist a great number of pieces similar, in their character, to those given above, and it needless to expatiate farther on the subject.—Muwaffak ad-Din composed a commentary on az-Zamakhshari’s Mufassal (vol. III. p. 322); it is fuller and more complete than any other treatise of the kind. His commentary on Ibn Jinni’s Tafsīr al-Mulākī (the parsing of the Mulâkī) (8) is a fine work which has greatly contributed to the instruction of many natives of Aleppo, and other places. Amongst
his pupils he had men who, at that time, filled high offices in the city. He was born at Aleppo on the 3rd of Ramadân, 553 (28th Sept. A. D. 1158), and he died there on the morning of the 25th of the first Jumâda, 643 (18th Oct. A. D. 1245). He was buried the same day within the monument which he had erected for himself in the Makâm (or residence) of Abraham (situated within the citadel of Aleppo).

(1) Abû 'e-Sahhâ Fîtyân, a man of a low family and a weaver at Aleppo, studied the science of grammar and, subsequently to the year 518 (A. D. 1124), when that city was besieged and nearly ruined by the Crusaders, he was the only learned man to be found in it. He died on or about the year 660 (A. D. 1264-5). Ibn as-Sâgh was one of his disciples.—Suyûtî, in his History of the Grammarians.)

(2) The professor might have spared the joke and given a direct answer to the legist's question. He had only to tell him that the large eyes and the graceful movements of a handsome girl are compared by poets to those of the gazelle.

(3) It would seem that water and nothing to eat with it was called cold water.


(5) The khâlûk was a sort of perfume or unguent, coloured yellow with the crocus flower. The tint of the cheeks is compared to it.

(6) The manuscripts and the editions have لئل, but the rules of prosody require us to read لئ. The sense is the same in both cases.

(7) The passage placed between brackets is to be found in only one of our manuscripts.

(8) The Muiûkî was probably the same work as the Kîdâb al-Muîûk (Book of Kings), one of the numerous treatises composed by the grammarian al-Akhiûsh al-Ausât (see vol. I, p. 578).

YAMUT IBN AL-MUZARRA.

al-Kais (al-Abdi) and a native of Basra. In Ibn al-Kalbi's Jamhara tan-Nisab (vol. III. p. 608) I find mention made of this Hakim Ibn Jabala, with a genealogy traced up in the same manner as we have just done, but, on the margin of the book I perceived the following note: "One of Hakim Ibn Jabala's descendants was Yamut Ibn al-Muzarrâ Ibn Yamut; he (Ibn al-Kalbi) has traced his genealogy up to Hakim in a manner for which he alone must be answerable." In a collection of rough notes made by myself I found this passage in my own handwriting: "Yamut was the son of al-Muzarrâ Ibn Yamut Ibn Odas Ibn Saiyâr Ibn al-Muzarrâ Ibn al-Hârith Ibn Thalâba Ibn Amr Ibn Dhamra Ibn Dilhâth Ibn Wadiah Ibn Bakr Ibn Lukaiz Ibn Asa." God knows best the truth in this matter! Yamut himself took the name of Muhammad; the Khatib of Baghdad (vol. I. p. 75) mentions him among the Muhammads in his greater (biographical) history of that city, and he afterwards speaks of him under the letter Y. He there says: "His name "was Yamut; he was a sister's son to Abû Othmân al-Jâhiz (vol. II. p. 405)." Yamut Ibn al-Muzarrâ went to Baghdad in the year 301 (A. D. 913-4), and was then an old man (1). He there taught Traditions on the authority of Abû Othmân al-Mâzini (vol. I. p. 264), Abû Hâtîm as-Sijistâni (vol. I. p. 603), Abû 'l-Fadîl ar-Rîâchi (vol. II. p. 10), Nasr Ibn Ali al-Jahdami (vol. I. p. 498), Abd ar-Rahmân, a brother's son to al-Asmâî (vol. II. p. 123), Muhammad Ibn Yahya al-Azîdi (2), Abû Ishak Ibrahim Ibn Sofyân az-Ziâdi and other masters. Traditions were delivered on his authority by Abû Bakr al-Kharâiti (vol. I. p. 323), Abû 'l-Maimûn Ibn Râshid, Abû 'l-Fadîl al-Abbas Ibn Muhammad ar-Râkki, Abû Bakr Ibn Mujâhid, the teacher of the Korân-readings (vol. I. p. 27), Abû Bakr Ibn al-Anbâri (vol. III. p. 53) and others. He was an accomplished literary scholar and well versed in history. A number of curious and interesting anecdotes have been handed down by him. He never fulfilled the duty of visiting the sick lest a bad omen might be drawn from his name (Yamût signifying he dies): "The name," said he, "which I received from my "father has been a great annoyance to me; so, when I go to visit the sick and am "asked my name, I answer: 'The son of al-Muzarrâ,' and suppress my real "name." Mansûr, a blind jurisconsult (ad-Darâr) who was also a poet, composed the following lines in his praise:

You keep (us) in life, and he whom you do not wish to live, dies. You are the twin-brother of my soul; nay, you are the nourishment of my soul's existence. You are a dwelling-place for wisdom; may our dwelling-places be never without your presence.
One of the historical anecdotes related by him was the following, which he gave in the words of Abū ’l-Fadl ar-Riâchi, from whose lips he had heard it: “Al-Asmâi (vol. II. p. 123),” said Abū ’l-Fadl, “related to me as follows: “Hârûn ar-Rashîd was incensed against (his relative) Abd al-Malik Ibn Sâlih, the “son of Ali, the son of Abd Allah, the son of al-Abbâs, the son of Abd al-Muttalib “(vol. I. p. 316). This was in the year 188 (A. D. 803-4). I was with ar-Rashîd “when Abd al-Malik was brought in, dragging after him the chain in which he “was bound. Ar-Rashîd, on seeing him, said: ‘Soho, Abd al-Malik! methinks “I see the cloud (of destruction) already dropping its rains! methinks I see its “lightnings already flashing! methinks I see my threat (executed and) disclosing “to view fingers separated from wrists and heads from shoulders. Gently! “gently! O you children of Hâshim! for it was by me that, for you, the “rugged was smoothed and the turbid clarified; it was through my means, that “power placed her own bridle in your hands. Beware of my wrath lest a cata- “strophy befal you and come stumbling down upon you, tripped off its foresfoot and “its hind ones (3)! Abd al-Malik replied: ‘Shall I speak to you in single or in “double (4)?’—‘Let it be in double,’ said ar-Rashîd. On this, the other spoke “as follows: ‘Commander of the faithful! respect God in what he has confided “to your care; be mindful of him in tending the flock over which he has “appointed you to be the shepherd. By Allah! it was by me that the rugged “paths were smoothed for you and that all bosoms were rendered unanimous in “the hopes and fears which you inspire them. I was like the person whom a “poet of the Bani Jaafar Ibn Kilâb family described in these terms:

Often did I widen a narrow place (remove obstacles) by eloquence and by reasoning. 
Were an elephant to stand forth with his rider and attempt to reach a station such as mine, 
he would retire humiliated.”

The narrator continued thus: ‘Yahya Ibn Khâlid the Barmekide, wishing to abate “the high opinion in which Abd al-Malik was held by ar-Rashîd, then said to the “former: ‘Abd al-Malik! I have been told that you are of a malevolent disposition.’ “To this the other replied: ‘May God direct the vizir! if malevolence consists in “the lasting recollection of good and evil done to me, I avow that such recollec-
tions remain always in my heart.’” Al-Asmâi here added: ‘Ar-Rashîd
"tumed towards me and said: 'Asmāī! take note of that; by Allah I never before was
an argument produced in favour of malevolence such as Abd al-Malik has just
offered.' He then remanded the prisoner, after which"—said al-Asmāī,—
it turned towards me and said: 'I assure you, Asmāī! that, more than once, I
looked at that part of his neck which I meant to strike with the sword, but my
merciful disposition towards every member of my family prevented me (from
striking him)."—I have already spoken of Abd al-Malik Ibn Sālih in the
life of the poet Abū Obâda al-Walîd al-Bohtori (vol. III. p. 657), and have there
given the date of his death.—Yamāt Ibn al-Muzarrā related as follows: "The
kāth Abū 'l-Hasan Ahmad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Abd Allah, surnamed Ibn al-
Mudabbir, was a member of the tribe of Dabba and a native of Dastamisân (5).
When a poet came to him with an eulogy, his custom was, if the verses
did not please him, to say to his attendant: 'Take this man to the great
mosque and do not let him go till he has accomplished a prayer of one hundred
rakas (6). All the poets, except a few, those of real talent, avoided his pre-
sence for that reason.' One day, a native of Egypt named Abū Abd Allah al-
Husain Ibn Abd as-Salâm and generally known by the surname of al-Jaml (7),
asked of him the authorisation to recite him a poem. "You are aware of the con-
dition?" said Ibn al-Mudabbir. "I am," replied the other, and he began thus:

We wished to speak in praise of Abū Hasan, because eulogy is the means by which men in
office are rendered the pasture (of the needy). We said: "He is the noblest of all creatures,
men or genii: nothing can equal him (in the copiousness of his gifts) except the (abund-
ant flow of) the Tigris and the Euphrates." On this, people said: "He receives praises but
repays them with prayers." To which I answered: "To maintain my family, alms are neces-
sary, not prayers of mine. Let him order for me, as a favour, that the first vowel of one
word be changed; then salāt (prayers) will become salāt (gifts) for me."

Ibn al-Mudabbir laughed at this idea and asked the author where he borrowed it? The reply was: "From a verse in which Abū Tammâm at-Ta'il (vol. I. p. 348)
says:

"They are hamām (pigeons), but if, in taking an augury, you pronounce the h with an i,
they will become himām (death)."

This answer pleased Ibn al-Mudabbir and obtained an ample donation for the poet.
—Ahmad Ibn al-Mudabbir was administrator of the land-tax throughout Egypt. In
the year 265 (A. D. 878-9), he was sent to prison by Ahmad Ibn Tulûn (vol. I. p. 153)
and remained there till the month of Safar, 270 (Aug.-Sept. 883 (8), when he died. According to another statement, he was put to death by Ibn Tulün; God knows best! —Mudabbir is to be pronounced with an i after the second b.—(Yamut) Ibn al-Muzarrā stated that his maternal uncle, Abū Othmān al-Jāhiz, related to him the following anecdote: "Al-Motasim (the khalif) endeavoured to obtain a slave-girl belonging to the poet Mahmūd Ibn al-Hasan al-Warrāk and bearing the name of Nashwa. He was greatly enamoured with her and had offered seven thousand dinars to purchase her. Mahmūd, who was also very fond of her, would not consent to the sale. After Mahmūd's death, the girl was bought for the khalif out of the inheritance, and the price given for her was seven hundred dinars.

When she was brought to him he addressed her thus: 'Do you see that? I left you there for a time and then purchased you for seven hundred dinars instead of seven thousand.' To this she replied: 'Certainly, if the khalif waits for (the sale of) inheritances before he gratifies his passions, (such passions cannot be very strong, and) seventy dinars would then be a high price for me, let alone seven hundred!'—The khalif, on hearing these words was greatly abashed.'

—Yamūt related also that a man spoke to him and said: 'I saw in Syria a tomb-stone on which was written: 'Let no one be deluded by the vanities of the world. I was the son of a person who sent forth the wind whither he pleased and retained it when he pleased (9)'! Opposite to this stone was another, bearing this inscription: 'The miserable scoundrel has there told a lie (10). Let no one suppose that the person spoken of is Solomon, the son of David; the man was the son of a blacksmith who used to gather wind into a skin and direct it upon lighted coals.' He then said: 'Never before did I see two tomb-stones one of which insulted the other.'—The historical recitals, stories and curious anecdotes which have come down from Ibn al-Muzarrā are very numerous, but our design is to be as concise as possible and avoid prolixity, unless our discourse happens to take a wide spread. Yamūt had a son called Abū Nadla Muhalhil Ibn Yamūt, who was a good poet and of whom al-Masūdi said, in his Murdj ad-Dahab wa Maddin al-Jauhar (meadows of gold and mines of jewels): 'He is a poet of the present time;' that was in the year 332 (A.D. 943-4). His father addressed him in a piece of verse which we give here:

Muhalhil you adorned for me the web of life (14) whilst stubborn fortune turned her face
against me. I struggled with mankind in every way, till high and low submitted to me humbly. The most painful feeling which my heart encloses is (to see) a virtuous man ill-treated by malignant fortune. It is for me grief quite sufficient to see men of an old (and noble descent) reduced to ruin, whilst thrones are occupied by the sons of slaves. Those eyes which were yielding to sleep, I kept open, fearing that you might be ruined when I was no more. But, through the grace of God, the Protector, I shall find consolation in you, whether I live or die. Travel over the earth; search it throughout for knowledge, and may no dire calamity cut short your career! If a man of learning withholds from you (what he knows), humble yourself before him and let your rule be to keep silent. Say that your father freely bestowed his knowledge, and if people ask who was your father, say that he is dead (yamūt). May your foes and adversaries acknowledge that you possess learning such as no calumniator can disprove.

Yamūt Ibn Muzarrâ went to Egypt at different times; his last visit to that country took place in the year 303 (A. D. 915-6), and he left it the next year. Abū Said Ibn Yūnus as-Sadāfī (vol. II. p. 93), the Egyptian, says in his shorter work on the foreigners who came to Egypt, that Yamūt Ibn al-Muzarrâ died at Damascus in the year 304 (A. D. 916-7), but Abū Sulaimān Ibn Zain (13) states, in the historical work composed by him, that this event took place at Tiberias, in Syria. God knows best! —Muhallīl, the son of Yamūt, is noticed by the Khatīb (vol. I. p. 75), in the History of Baghdad. We there read as follows: "Muhallil was a poet; he composed pleasing verses on amatory and other subjects and inhabited Baghdad. He transmitted orally (his poetical productions) to others. His poetry was written down under his dictation by Abū Badā Ibrahim Ibn Muhammad, surnamed Ṭūzūn." After this, the same author adds: "At-Tanūkhī related to us what I here give: "Abū 'l-Husain Ahmad Ibn Muhammad Ibn al-Abbas al-Akhbāri related to us as follows: "In the year 326 (A. D. 937-8) I was present at a sitting held by Tuhfa tal-Kuwait (14), who was a slave-girl belonging to Abd Allah Ibn Omar al-Bāzyār. "I had on my left Abū Nadla Muhallil, the son of Yamūt, and, on my right, Abū 'l-Kāsim Ibn Abī 'l-Hasan, a native of Baghdad. Tuhfa then sung to us from behind a curtain:

"I am too much preoccupied with him to neglect him, so greatly do I love him; yet he affects to neglect me. Thinking that I wronged him, he turned away from me and let the same (disdain) appear which he feared in me. He was pleased to see that I was sad on his account, and I was pleased when my sadness redoubled.

"Abū Nadla, on hearing these verses, said to me: "It was I who composed them." Abū 'l-Kāsim, who overheard him and had a dislike for him, told me
"to ask of him an additional verse for the same piece. I made the request to Abū Nadla in a polite manner, and he pronounced these words:

"By his beauty he creates such trouble (in our hearts) as gives me who love him every sort of trouble."

The following piece is by Muhalhil:

His charms are so exalted that nothing can be compared to them, and are so great that no one can describe them. Contemplate his beauty and dispense me from describing it; glory to the Creator! glory to the Maker of all! To that youth belongs the humid narcissus (the eyes) and the rose just plucked; in his mouth is the (white) anthemis flower (the teeth), moist in its brightness. By his glances he attracts my heart to my perdition, and it hastens towards him submissively, obedient to his will. It goes there as the moth rushes towards a burning lamp and throws itself into the flame.

Other pieces by the same author are given in the Khatib’s work, but I abstain from inserting them here.—The name Muzarrā is to be pronounced with an ātān after the last r; so it is stated by the shaikh (professor) and hāfiz Zaki ad-Din Abd al-Azīm Ibn Abd al-Kawi Ibn Abd Allah al-Mundiri (vol. I. p. 89).—Hakīm Ibn Jabala, the person who is mentioned in the genealogy (at the beginning of this article), is named by some Hukaim and his father Jabal. He was one of Ali Ibn Abī Tālib’s partisans. Ali, on being proclaimed khalif, received the oath of allegiance from Talha Ibn Obaid Allah al-Taimi and az-Zobair Ibn al-Auwām al-Asadi. He then resolved to nominate the latter as governor of Basra and the former as governor of Yemen; but one of his female clients, happening to go out, overheard those two chiefs say: "We have sworn to him with our tongues, not with our hearts." Ali whom she informed of this circumstance, exclaimed: "May God reject them! whoever breaks an oath does so to his own detriment." He then dispatched Othmān Ibn Hunaif al-Ansāri to Basra in the capacity of governor and confided the government of Yemen to Obaid Allah, the son of al-Abbās Ibn Abd al-Muttalib. Ibn Hunaif gave the command of the shorta (police-guards) to Hakīm Ibn Jabala. Talha and az-Zobair then went to Mekka and, having met there Aāisha (the widow of Muhammad, and surnamed) the Mother of the faithful (Omm al-Muminīn), they concerted matters with her and proceeded to Basra, where Ibn Hunaif was. Hakīm Ibn Jabala went to the latter and advised him to hinder the two chiefs from entering into
the city. Ibn Hunaif refused to do so, saying that he did not know Ali's opinion on that subject. Talha and az-Zubair went into the city and, being well received by the people, they posted themselves in the Marbad (or public place) and began to discourse about the murder of Othmân Ibn Affân and the inauguration of Ali. A man of the Abd al-Kais tribe attempted to refute their insinuations, but was ill-treated by them and had his beard plucked out. The people then began to throw stones and raised a great commotion. Hakim Ibn Jabala went to Ibn Hunaif and asked permission to charge the mutineers, but could not obtain it. Abd Allah, the son of az-Zubair, then went to the city (magazine), where the provisions were kept for the troops, and began to distribute them to his partisans. Hakim Ibn Jabala went forth at the head of seven hundred soldiers belonging to the tribe of Abd al-Kais, but was attacked by the insurgents and killed with seventy of his companions. It is related that he had said to his wife, who belonged to the tribe of Azd: "I shall "to day treat your people in a manner such as will furnish a matter of talk of all men."—"Nay," replied the woman, "I think my people will to day strike you "such a blow as shall be a subject of talk for every one." Hakim was then encountered by a man called Suhaim, who struck him on the neck with his sword and so violently that the head was nearly separated from the body, to which it remained attached by a strip of skin. (Suhaim) then turned the head half-way round, so that the face was directed backwards. This occurred before the arrival of Ali and his army. When he came up, a conflict took place between the two parties, on a Thursday, towards the middle of the latter Jumâda, A. H. 36 (9th December, A. D. 656). The battle was fought on the spot where the castle (casr) of Obaid Allah Ibn Zîdâd was (afterwards) built. Then came on the great engagement called the Battle of the Camel, which took place on Thursday, the 19th of the same month (13th December). The first arrival of the insurgents (at Basra) and the death of Hakim Ibn Jabala had occurred some days previously. The total loss on both sides amounted to ten thousand men. Talha and az-Zubair were killed on that very day, but not in the battle. Were I not apprehensive of being led too far, I should relate how that happened (15). Al-Mâmûni (vol. II. p. 334) says, in his History: "It is stated that "the people of Medina learned on that very Thursday, before sunset, that a battle "had been fought. This they became aware of by seeing a vulture hovering "around the city and bearing something suspended (from its beak). This "it let fall and, on examination, was found to be a hand on which was a
"ring inscribed with the name of Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Attâb Ibn Asîd.
Then, all who dwelt between Mekka and Medina, and all who lived about
Basra, far or near, knew that a battle had taken place, from seeing the number of
hands and feet which had been carried thither by vultures."—Kushâjim (vol. I.
p. 301) says', in his work entitled Al-Masîd wa'l-Matârid, that the vulture
dropped the hand of Abd ar-Rahmân into the city of Mekka, and the same state-
ment is made in the law-book entitled al-Muhabbat (vol. I. p. 9), in the chapter
which treats of the prayer to be said over the dead. Ibn al-Kalbi and Abû Yakzân
(vol. II. p. 578) say, in their respective works, that the vulture dropped the hand
in (the province of) al-Yemâmâ.

(1) This passage and the following belong, perhaps, to the extract from the Khatth's work.
(2) According to the author of the Najûd, Muhammad Ibn Yahya Ibn Abd al-Kartm al-Asîd died A. H. 292
(A. D. 866-7).
(3) This discourse is in rhyming prose, full of metaphors and uncommon expressions; an imitation, in
fact, of the affected and sententious style for which the Arabs of the desert were at that time celebrated
and admired.
(4) That is: in simple phrases or in double ones. We would say: in a plain style or in rhyming prose.
(5) This was the name of a large canton situated between Wâsît, Basra and al-Anbâr.
(7) This poet had been a disciple of the imâm as-Shâfi'. He died A. H. 259 (A. D. 872-8).—(Najûd).
(8) Two manuscripts have تسعين (ninety) in place of سبعين (seventy). The more probable reading has
been followed in this translation.
(9) This is an allusion to the words of the Koran: "And, unto Solomon (we subjected) a strong wind
which ran at his command." (Surât 31, verse 81.)
(10) Literally: mentitus est ille homo, clitoridem matris sum sugere consuetus. This was a common form
of insult with the ancient Arabs.
(11) Literally: You have ornamented the lines of my time.
(12) The reading of the Arabic word is very doubtful; here is its form سمرت.
(13) One of the manuscripts reads Zaid, another Zaina, and another Zûr. I can find no information respecting
this historian.
(14) This surname seems to signify: The choicest present from among the female speakers.
(15) Talhâ was mortally wounded in that battle by an arrow, shot purposely at him by Marwan Ibn al-
Hakam, who was fighting on the same side as he. Az-Zubair was flying to Mêdina when he was slain by
Amr Ibn Jarmûz.
AL-BUWAITI.

Abū Yakūb Yūsuf Ibn Yahya al-Buwaiti, a native of Egypt and a disciple of as-Shafi'i (vol. II. p. 569), was the most eminent of that imām's pupils and the most distinguished for talent. As long as his master lived, he remained invariably attached to him and, on his death, he filled his place as professor and as jurisconsult. Traditions relating to the Prophet were taught to him by the legist Abd Allah Ibn Wahh (vol. II. p. 15) and by the imām as-Shafi'i. His own authority was cited for Traditions by Abū Ismā'il at-Tirmidi (1), Ibrahim Ibn Ishak al-Harbi (vol. I. p. 46), al-Kāsim Ibn al-Mughira al-Jauhari, Ahmad Ibn Mansūr ar-Ramādī (2) and others. During the persecution (of the orthodox musulmans) (3) under the reign of (the khālīf) al-Wāthik Billah, he was carried (as a prisoner) from Old Cairo to Baghdad and summoned to declare that the Koran was created. On his refusal, he was imprisoned at Baghdad and there remained in chains till the hour of his death. He was a most virtuous man, living in the practice of piety, devotion and self-mortification. Ar-Rabi Ibn Sulaimān (vol. I. p. 519) related as follows: "I saw al-Buwaiti mounted on a mule; round his neck was a wooden collar; on his legs were fetters; from these to the collar extended an iron chain to which was attached a clog (4) weighing forty pounds. Whilst (they led him on,) he continued repeating these words: 'Almighty God created the world by means of the word kun (5); now, if that word was created, one created thing would have created another. By Allah! I shall willingly die in chains, for, after me, will be people who shall learn that, on account of this affair, some men died in chains. Were I brought before that man,'—meaning al-Wāthik,—'I should declare unto him the truth.'"

—The ḥāfiz Abū Omar Ibn Abd al-Barr (see page 398 of this vol.) states, in his Intihād (enucleation), a work treating of the preeminent merits possessed by the three legists (Mālik, Abū Ḥanīfa and as-Shafi'i), that Ibn Abi 'l-Laith, the hanifite kadi of Old Cairo, was jealous of al-Buwaiti and so hostile to him that, during the persecution to which the sacred Koran gave rise, he had him transported from Cairo to Baghdad with the other (doctors) who were sent thither. He was the only disciple of as-Shafi'i who was expelled from Egypt. On arriving at Baghdad, he refused to
make the declaration which was required of him, relatively to (the creation of) the Koran, and was therefore committed to prison: "It is the word of God," said he, "his uncreated word!" and he was kept in confinement till he died. The shaikh Abû Ishak as-Shirázî (vol. I. p. 9) says, in his Tabakât al-Fukâhî (classified list of doctors learned in the law): "Every time that Abû Yakûb al-Buwaitî heard, during his imprisonment, the muwaddîn call the people to the Friday prayer, he would wash, dress, and go to the door of the prison. The jailor would, then say to him: 'Where are you going?' and he would reply: 'I answer to him who calls in the name of the Lord.' To this the jailor would say: 'Back! God will pardon you.' Then the prisoner would exclaim: 'Almighty God! you perceive that I answered the call of your herald and that I was prevented from obeying.'"—Abû 'l-Walid Ibn Abî 'l-Jârûd related as follows: "Al-Buwaitî was my neighbour and, no matter at what hour I awoke during the night, I was always sure of hearing him recite the Koran or say his prayers."—"Abû Yakûb," said ar-Râbi, "was constantly moving his lips in commemoration of the glory of God. I never saw a man who drew from the book of God more original arguments than Abû Yakûb al-Buwaitî."—"Abû Yakûb," said he again, held a high place in as-Shâfi'i's esteem. When a man came to ask the solution of a legal difficulty, as-Shâfi'i would tell him to consult Abû Yakûb; and, when the answer was given, the man would bring it back to as-Shâfi'i, who would say: 'The right answer is what he has given.'"—"A messenger from the chief of the police guards (shorta, who was also the magistrate in criminal cases) would sometimes come to ask as-Shâfi'i's opinion on a point of law, and the latter would send him back with Abû Yakûb, saying: 'Here is my tongue.'"—The Khâtib of Baghdad (vol. I. p. 75) says, in his History: "When as-Shâfi'i was in his last illness, Muhammad Ibn Abd al-Hakam (vol. II. p. 598) went to the place where that imâm used to give his lessons, and had the intention of contending for it with al-Buwaitî. The latter said: 'I have a better right to it than you.'—'Nay,' replied the other, 'I am better entitled to his place than you are.' Abû Bakr al-Humâi'dî (vol. II. p. 573), who was then in Egypt, came forward and said: 'As-Shâfi'i has declared that no one is better entitled to that place than Yûsuf al-Buwaitî, and that none of his disciples are more learned than al-Buwaitî.' 'You tell a falsehood,' said Ibn Abd al-Hakam. 'Nay,' replied al-Humâi'dî, 'you are the liar, and your father was a liar and your mother also.' Ibn Abd al-Hakam flew into a
"passion and, leaving the place where as-Shâfi held his sittings, he went
to take his seat in a niche higher up, which was separated from that of as-
Shâfi by another niche. Al-Buwaiti then occupied that niche where his master
used to hold his sittings."—Abû 'l-Abbâs Muhammad Ibn Yakûb al-Asamm (6)
related as follows: "I saw my father in a dream (7), and he said to
me: 'My son! keep to al-Buwaiti's book; it is less faulty than any other.'—
We were one day with as-Shâfi," said ar-Rabi Ibn Sulaimân; "I was there, and
al-Muzani (vol. I. p. 200) and Abû Yakûb al-Buwaiti. He (as-Shâfi) looked at
me and said: 'You will die in (teaching) the Traditions;' he then said of al-Muzani:
'That fellow is capable of confuting Satan himself and reducing him to silence,
if he entered into a discussion with him.' To al-Buwaiti he said: 'You will
die in chains.'" The same person related as follows: "I went to visit al-
Buwaiti, during the persecution; I found him fettered up to the middle of his
legs, and his two hands attached to the same (wooden) collar which confined his
neck." He related also as follows: "Abû Yakûb wrote to me from his prison,
saying: 'There are certain moments, in which I do not perceive that I have
chains on my body till I happen to touch them with my hand. When you have
read this, my letter, act with condescension towards (the students who form)
your class, and be particularly careful in treating with kindness those who come
from foreign parts. How often did I hear as-Shâfi apply to himself the following
verse:

I use condescension towards men; so that, through them I may be honoured. That sou
is never honoured which does not humble itself.

Numerous anecdotes are related of him (al-Buwaiti). He died in the prison, at
Baghdad, and in chains, on a Friday of the month of Rajab, 231 (March, A. D. 846),
before the hour of prayer. Another statement places his death in the year 232,
but the former is nearer to the truth. Ibn al-Furat (vol. I. p. 86) says, in his
History, that he died on a Thursday of that month; God knows best!—Buwaiti
means belonging to Buwait, which is a village in Lower Said, a province of Egypt.
—There are six manners of pronouncing the name of Yâsuf: the first syllable may
be a yû or else a yu' with a hamza (point of separation), and in each case the s may
be followed by an a or an i or an u. The name of Yânus offers a similar variety of
pronunciations, as we shall indicate later.
BIOPGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

(1) Abû 'Ismâ'il Muḥammad Ibn 'Iṣmâ'il at-Tirmîdî, a Traditionist remarkable for his learning and the correctness of the information which he handed down, studied under the most eminent teachers and transmitted what he had learned to an-Nasâ'i (vol. I. p. 58), Ibn Abî Dunyâ (vol. I. p. 531), al-Ajûrri (?) and other eminent doctors in that branch of knowledge. He died in the month of Ramâdân, 288 (Nov.-Dec. A. D. 898).—(Tabakht al-Ḥuffâdz.)

(2) Abû Bakr Ahmad Ibn Mansûr ar-Ramâdî, a native of Baghîdâd, travelled to different countries for the purpose of learning and collecting Traditions. One of his teachers was the celebrated Imâm Ahmad Ibn Hanbal. As a traditionist, he was considered to be perfectly trustworthy. He died in the month of the latter Râbi', 265 (December, A. D. 878).—(Nujûm.)

(3) The Aṭbalīd khalîf al-Mâmûn and his two successors, al-Motâsîm and al-Wâthîk, were inclined to the Shiîte doctrines and rejected the eternity of the Koran, as God's word. To this opinion they summoned the orthodox doctors to subscribe, and, on their refusal, they tried to overcome their obstinacy by means of tortures and imprisonment.

(4) The Arabic word means a brick.

(5) In the Koran, surat 16, verse 42, God is stated to have said: “Verily our speech unto a thing, ‘when we will the same, is, that we only say unto it, Be (kun); and it is.’” This was one of the arguments adduced by the orthodox musulmans to prove the eternity (a parte ante) of the Koran, considered as the word of God.

(6) Abû 'I-'Abbas Muḥammad Ibn Yaḥûb al-Asâm (the deaf), a mawla to the Omâiyâde family, a native of Naisârûd and the chief Traditionist of that age in Khûrâsân, taught during seventy-six years the knowledge which he had acquired. His death took place in the month of the latter Râbî', 346 (July, A. D. 957). He lost his hearing after having travelled and made his studies.—(Huffâdz; Nujûm.)

(7) See vol. I. p. 46.

IBN KAJJ.

The kâdî Abû 'I-Kâsîm Yûsuf Ibn Ahmad Ibn Yûsuf Ibn KaJJ, surnamed al-KaJJi ad-Dinaweri (the Kajjîan, native of Dinawer) and one of the great Shâfîte imams, studied under Ibn al-Kâtîân (vol. I. p. 51), attended the sittings of Abû 'I-Kâsîm Abd al-Åzîz ad-Dârâkî (vol. II. p. 137) and became the chief of the shâfîte sect and head-professor (1). People came from all parts to Dinawer for the purpose of studying under his tuition; so general was the desire of deriving profit from his erudition and the correctness of his speculations. In exposing the doctrines of
as-Shâfi‘, he followed a system peculiar to himself. A number of works were composed by him and were studied with great profit by legists. Abû Saad as-Samâni (vol. II. p. 156) says: "When Abû Ali al-Husain Ibn Shoab as-Sinji (vol. I. p. 419) returned from (Baghdad where he had been studying under) the shaikh Abû Hâmid al-Ishârâni (vol. I. p. 53), he passed through the town where Ibn Kajj dwelt and was so greatly struck with his learning (in the law) and his merit that he said to him: 'I declare, master! that, Abû Hâmid possesses the name of a man of science, but you possess the reality.' To this Ibn Kajj replied: 'Baghdad exalted him and ad-Dinawer depressed me.' He acted as a kâdi in his native place and was living in opulence when he was murdered by the banditti of that town. This occurred on the eve of the 27th Ramadân, 405 (20th of March, A. D. 1015). — Kajj must be pronounced with an a. — We have already spoken of Dînawerî (vol. II. p. 23) and need not therefore repeat here what we have said.—The relative adjective Kajji was derived from the name of his ancestor.

(1) The Arabic text has جمع بين رياضي العلم والدنيا. In the first volume, p. 55, an attempt has been made by the translator to explain a nearly similar expression, but he may be mistaken. The word علم is evidently here synonymous with دين: so that the chief of the science must be the same as the chief of the religion, that is the chief of the orthodox sect to which he belonged. The chief of the world or of the temporal authority may, perhaps, be the title by which the chief kâdi was designated in the language of the school. A considerable number of works have been consulted on this matter, but no information could be obtained from them.

IBN ABD AL-BARR.

Abû Omar Yûsuf Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Muhammad Ibn Abd al-Barr Ibn Aâsim an-Namari, a native of Cordova, was the imâm (the greatest master) of the time by his knowledge of the Traditions, of ancient (moslim) history and of every thing
connected with these two branches of science. At Cordova, he taught Traditions on the authority of the ḥāfiz Khalaf Ibn al-Kāsim (1), Abd al-Wārith Ibn Sufyan, Sād Ibn Nasr (2), Muhammad Ibn Abd al-Mūmin, Abū Omar al-Bāji, Abū Omar at-Tašāfīnki, Abū 'l-Walid Ibn al-Faradi (vol. II. p. 68) and others. Among the doctors of the East who kept up an epistolary correspondence with him were Abū 'l-Kāsim as-Sakati al-Makki, the ḥāfiz Abd al-Ghani Ibn Sādī (3), Abū Durr al-Harawi (4) and Abū Muhammad Ibn an-Nabhās al-Misri. The kādi Abū Ali Ibn Sukkara (5) said: "I heard our professor, the kādi Abū 'l-Walid al-Bāji (vol. I. " p. 593) declare that there was never in Spain the like of Abū Omar Ibn Abd al-
"Barr, as a Traditionist; and the same al-Bāji said: 'Abū Omar was the best 
"' ḥāfiz (traditionist) of all the people in the West.'" Abū Ali al-Husain Ibn Ahmad Ibn Muhammad al-Ghassānī al-Ja'iynī, a doctor of whom we have spoken (vol. I. p. 458), said: "We other students had for professor Ibn Abd al-Barr of "Cordova; it was in that city that he made his studies and there also he learned ju-
risdiction. One of his masters was the Sevillian legist Abū Omar Ahmad Ibn "Abd al-Mālik, whose lessons he wrote down in his presence; another of his pro-
fessors was Abū 'l-Walid Ibn al-Faradi, from whom he obtained a great quantity 
"of traditional and philological information. He was assiduous in the pursuit of "knowledge and acquired such eminence in the different branches of science that "he surpassed all the learned men who had preceded him in Spain." He (Ibn Abd al-Barr) composed a number of useful treatises on the Muwatta (vol. II. p. 549), such as the Tamhtd (arrangement), in which he discussed the matters and isndds (vol. I. p. xxxi) found in that work; it is arranged alphabetically, according to the names of those Traditionists through whom Mālik received his information. Nothing of the kind had ever been composed before; it consists of seventy parts. Abū Muhammad Ibn Hazm (vol. II. p. 267) said: "As a critical "appreciator of the credibility to which a Tradition may be entitled, I do not "know any one like him, and much less any one who has surpassed him." The Istidkār (Remembrancer), a work composed by him subsequently, treats of the various opinions held by the legists in the great cities, relatively (first of all,) to such articles of law as may be deduced, by private judgment, from the texts given in the Muwatta, and (secondly) with respect to the historical facts which are indicated in that compilation. In the Istidkār he explains the Muwatta according to its actual arrangement and in following the order of its chapters. He drew up also a
large and instructive treatise on the names of the Prophet's companions and entitled it the Istāb (comprehensive). In another of his works, he collected every thing which had been said in explanation of what is meant by science and of its high value; he there indicates the rules which are to be observed in transmitting knowledg orally and in learning it by heart. His Kitāb ad-Durar (book of pearls) contains an abridged account of the proceedings and military expeditions (of the first Muslims). Another of his works treats of the intellect and intellectual men, and contains passages in which such persons are described. He left also a small work on the Arabian tribes and their genealogies. Other treatises also were published by him. The composition of works occupied all his thoughts; to that task he was entirely devoted, and God rendered his labours useful to mankind. His profound knowledge of history and his deep insight into the (hidden) meanings of the Traditions did not prevent him from acquiring an extensive acquaintance with (Arabian) genealogies. Having left Cordova, he travelled, for some time, in Western Spain, and then passed into the Eastern part of that country. He resided for a while in Denia, in Valencia and in Xativa. He filled the kadiship of Lisbon and Santarem when al-Muzaifar (or el-Modaffar) Ibn al-Afas (king of Bada-joz) held those cities under his rule. His Bahja tal-Majālis wa Ins al-Jālis (the delight of assemblies and companion of the sedentary) fills three volumes and contains a mass of interesting anecdotes, such as are fit to be repeated at literary conferences and social parties. Here are some extracts from it: "The Prophet dreamt that he entered into Paradise and saw there suspended a bunch of dates. His curiosity being excited, he asked for whom they were reserved, and was told that they were kept there for Abū Jahl. Deeply afflicted with this information, he exclaimed: "What has Abū Jahl to do with Paradise? By Allah! he shall never enter into it! no soul can get in there unless that of a true believer." Some time after, when Ikrima, the son of Abū Jahl, came to him and declared himself a Mu-sulman, he was greatly rejoiced, stood up to receive him and then understood that the fruit seen by him represented the son of Abū Jahl."—"Djaafar Ibn Muhammad, he who bore the surname of as-Sādik (vol. 1, p. 300), being asked what was the longest time which might elapse before the fulfilment of a dream, returned this answer: "The blessed Prophet dreamt that he saw his blood (poured out) and a speckled dog lapping it up. Now the dog represented Shamir Ibn Zi-'l-Jaushan, him who slew al-Husain, the son of Ali Ibn Abi Tālib, and who
"'was a leper. So, the fulfilment of that dream was delayed fifty years.'" — The Prophet had a dream which he related to Abū Bakr as-Siddîk: 'O Abū Bakr,' said he, 'methought that you and I were going up a flight of stairs and that I preceded you by two steps and a half.' Abū Bakr replied: 'Apostle of God! when the Almighty shall have received you into his compassion and mercy, I shall survive two years and a half.'"— "A Syrian (Arab) said to Omar Ibn al-Khattāb: 'Methought I saw the moon and the sun fighting one against the other, and each of them was aided by a band of stars.' — 'On which side were you?' said Omar. The other replied that he had sided with the moon. 'Then,' said Omar, 'you sided with the sign which is subject to be effaced (6). By Allah! you shall never more hold a commandment under me.' That man was then deposed, and he subsequently lost his life at Siffin whilst fighting on the side of Moawia Ibn Abī Sofyān."— "Aāisha said to Abū Bakr: 'Methought that three moons fell into my lap.'— 'If your dream be true,' said he, 'three of the best men upon earth will be buried in your house.' When the Prophet was interred there, Abū Bakr said to her: 'There is one of the moons which you saw, and the best of them.'"— "An Arab of the desert who, as some say, was the poet al-Hutaiya (vol. I, p. 209) formed the project of going to travel and said to his wife:

"'Count my absence by years and wait with patience; leave out the months, for they are but short (kisārād)."

To this she replied:

"'Remember my fondness of you and my passion; have pity on your daughters for they are little children (sīghārād)."

"'On hearing these words, he gave up his intention and remained at home.'"— "Al-Haitham Ibn Adi (vol. III, p. 633) related that, being asked by Sālih Ibn Haiyān who, of all the poets, was the best legist, he made this reply: 'On that subject opinions differ, but some say that it was Waddāh al-Yaman (7) who proved himself such when he pronounced these lines:

"'I said to her: 'Here with it (the wine)! Give it to me.' She smiled and answered: 'God vol. iv. 51"
"'preserve me from doing a thing forbidden!' Neither did she hand it to me till I humbled myself before her and taught her how indulgent was God for venial sins."

"Aslam Ibn Zarāa was told that, if he fled before the partisans of Mirdās (8), he would incur the anger of the emir Obaid Allah Ibn Ziyād. To this he replied: 'I had rather that he should be angry with me, and I living, than that he should be pleased with me, and I dead.'"—"An Arab of the desert was insulted by another and remained silent. Being asked why he held his peace, he answered: I know not that man's vices, and am unwilling to reproach him with defects which he may not have.' An idea similar to this has been enunciated thus:

"If, when Amr insulted me, I insulted him, the insulted and the insulter would be both reprehensible. But I spoke well of him and he spoke ill of me; each of us thus told lies of his adversary."

"Ali (Zain al-Aabidn, vol. II, p. 209), the son of al-Husain, on both of whom be the blessing of God, said: 'A man who extols your good qualities without knowing them, will probably speak ill of you without knowing your defects.'"—"Al-Moghira Ibn Shōba (vol. II, p. 485) said of (the Khalif) Omar: ‘By Allah! he was too generous to deceive and too intelligent to be deceived.'”—"It is related that, when Adam was sent out of Paradise and down to earth by Almighty God, the angel Gabriel went to him and said: 'O Adam! God here sends you three qualities, so that you may select one of them for yourself and leave the two others.'—'What are they?' said Adam. Gabriel replied: ‘Modesty, Piety and Intelligence.’—'I choose Intelligence,' said Adam. The angel then told Modesty and Piety to return to heaven, because Adam had made choice of Intelligence. They answered: 'We will not return.'—'How!' said he, 'do you mean to disobey me?' They replied: 'We do not, but our orders were, never to quit Intelligence wherever she might be.'"—"Abd al-Malik Ibn Abd al-Hamīd (9) said, in a piece of verse:

'Water has its price in the house of Othmān and bread is there the most precious of things. Othmān is aware that praise costs money; yet he wishes to obtain it gratis. But people are too knowing to praise a man unless they discover in him symptoms of liberality.'

From the same work: 'Ar-Rīāshi (vol. II, p. 10) related as follows: 'The
"people of Basra went out to watch for the appearance of the new moon (which indicates the commencement of the month) of (fasting,) Ramadân. One of them discovered it and continued pointing at it till some of his companions perceived it. When the moon which indicates the end of the fast was (about to appear), al-Jamnâz, he who was so much noted for his witty sallies, went to the house of that man, knocked at the door and said: 'Come! Get up and take us out of the scrape into which you brought us.'"—I may here observe that al-Jammâz was descended from one of Abû Bakr's musulam; his surname was Abû Abd Allah, and his name, Muhammad; his father, Amr, was the son of Hammâd, the son of Attâ, the son of Raiyân (?) . This al-Jammâz was a sister's son to Salm (10) al-Khâsir: As-Samâni (vol. II, p. 156) speaks of him in these terms: 'His tongue was virulent; his sallies were clever. He was older than Abu Nuwas (vol. I, p. 391)." Some authors assign to him a genealogy different from that which we have given. Al-Jammâz (the dromedary, the mehâdi camel) was a nickname by which he was known. Amongst the smart sayings attributed to him we may notice the following: 'One rainy morning,' said he, 'I was asked by my wife what was best to be done on such a day as that, and I answered: 'Divorcing (a troublesome wife).' This stopped her mouth and made her leave me quiet.'—An acquaintance of his went to see him, one day, and found him eating out of a dish of meat which he had just cooked. 'Glory to God!' said the visitor, 'what an extraordinary godsend!' Al-Jammâz answered: 'Disappointments are sometimes more extraordinary; may my wife be divorced if you taste a mouthful of it! (11)' As-Sarawi (12) the poet said to him one day: 'Yesterday, my wife brought forth a child, (as pretty) as a gold-piece newly coined.' Al-Jammâz replied: ' (That is not surprising;) its mother was never considered to be barren.'—Al-Jammâz composed some pieces of poetry which he inserted in his Kitâb al-Waraka (book of the leaf (?) ). One of them, which he addressed to an acquaintance who, after being very assiduous in frequenting the mosque, had ceased to go there, runs thus:

You have ceased frequenting the principal mosque, and absence such as that always gives rise to unfavorable suspicions. Yo do no supplementary works of devotion; you serve not as a witness to law-writings (13). The news we have received of you is (as publicly known as if it were) inscribed on banners borne aloft. If you prolong your absence (ghâiba), we shall prolong our talk of it (ghiba) more and more.

The following passages are taken from the Bahia tal-Majdlis: 'Ardashir said:
Beware of being attacked by a noble-hearted man when he is hungry and by a vile fellow who is sated with food. Be it known to you that the noble are firmer in mind and the vile firmer in body." — All this is taken from the Bahja and, as it is quite sufficient, there is no need of dilating farther. — The hāfiz Abū Omar (Ibn Abd al-Barr) died at Shātiba (Zatīna), in Eastern Spain, on the last day of the second Rabi, 463 (3rd February, A. D. 1071). His disciple, Abū 'l-Hasan Tāhir Ibn Mufauwaz al-Maāširi, the same who said the funeral service over him, related as follows: I heard Abū Omar Ibn Abd al-Barr say that he was born on Friday, the 24th of the second Rabi, 368 (29th Nov. A. D. 978), just as the imām was reciting the khotba. In the life of the Khatib Abū Bakr Ahmad Ibn Ali Ibn Thābit al-Baghdādi (vol. I. p. 75), we have mentioned that this person was the hāfiz of the East and Ibn Abd al-Barr the hāfiz of the west, and that they both died in the same year. They were masters in traditional knowledge. — Namari takes an a after the n and after the m. It means sprung from Nomir Ibn Kāsīt, the progenitor of a well-known (Arabian) tribe. This relative adjective offers a particular case of the a being employed after the second radical letter instead of the i (14). — We have spoken of Kortuba (vol. I. p. 94) and of Shātiba (vol. II. p. 501); so, we need not repeat our observations. — Abū Omar mentioned that his father Abū Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Muhammad Ibn Abd al-Barr died in the month of the latter Rabi, 380 (June-July, A. D. 990), and that he was born in the year 330 (A. D. 941-2). — Abū Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Yūsuf, the son of Abū Omar Ibn Abd al-Barr, was highly distinguished for his knowledge of refined literature and the elegance of his style. He is the author of some pieces of verse, one of which is the following:

Gaze not too long on handsome faces, and hold in your glances with a tight rein. If you slacken the bridle to them, they will cast you into the arena of death.

It is stated that he died in the year 458 (A. D. 1065-6); but God knows best.

(1) Abū 'l-Kāsīt Khalaf Ibn al-Kāsīt, surnamed Ibn ad-Dabbāgh, was one of those Spanish Moslems who traveled to the East for the purpose of acquiring traditional knowledge. He studied in Damascus and in Mekka. His authority as a Traditionist was highly appreciated. He died in the month of the latter Rabi, 898 (Feb.-March, A. D. 1003) — (Huffadz, Makkari).

(2) Abū Othmān Sa'd Ibn Naṣr Ibn Omar Ibn Khalīfīn, a native of Ecija in Spain, collected Traditions at
Cordova, at Mekka and at Baghdad. He died in the last-mentioned city, probably towards the end of the tenth century. — (Makkari.)

(8) Abd al-Ghani Ibn Sa'd (sic) al-Azdi, a native of Egypt, was held to be the ablest Traditionist of the age in which he lived. He died in the month of Safar, 409 (June-July, A. D. 1018). — (Huffizz.)

(4) Abu Durr al-Harawi, surnamed Ibn as-Sammák, was professor in chief at Mekka (shaykh al-Haram). He died somewhat before the year 403 (A. D. 1012). — (Huffizz.)

(5) Abu Ali al-Husain Ibn Muhammad as-Sairafi, surnamed Ibn Sukkara, was a native of Sarago sa. In the year 481 (A. D. 1088) he travelled to the East for the purpose of studying, and visited Egypt, Basra, Wasit and Baghdad, in which last city he passed five years. On his return to Spain he became a professor at Murcia and there acted also as a kadi, but much against his will. He was well-versed in the Koran-readings and had great skill in the critical appreciation of Traditions. Having resigned his places with the intention of taking a share in the war against the Christians, he lost his life, in the year 514 (A. D. 1120) at the battle of Cutanda. — (Makkari.)

(8) This is an allusion to a text of the Koran, sur. 17, verse 13, where it is said: "We blot out the sign of the night and we cause the sign of the day to shine forth."

(7) Waddah al-Yaman (The fair faced man of Yemen); such was the surname given to Abd ar-Rahman Ibn Ismail of San'a, on account of his beauty. He drew his descent from one the Persians who were sent into Arabia Felix for the purpose of expelling the Abyssinians and placing Saif Ibn Zi-Yazen on the throne. He was one of Muhammad's contemporaries and bore a high reputation as a poet. The Kitab al-Aghani contains a long article on Waddah and numerous extracts from his poems. The author of the Nujum places his death in the year 63 (A. D. 682-3). Waddah was so handsome that he always wore a veil to protect him against the evil eye.

(8) Abu Bilad Mirdas, a distinguished member of the tribe of Rabbah and surnamed Ibn Udaiya (ابن عديه), lived under the reign of Moawla Ibn Abi Sofyan. Such was the fervour and rigidity of his devotion that he was always ready to join with any band of Kharjites which might take up arms against the Omayyides for the purpose of re-establishing the Muslim government in its primitive simplicity. The year 61 (A. D. 680-1) witnessed the massacre of al-Husain, Muhammad's grandson, and most of his family, by Obaid Allah Ibn Ziyad who, at that time, governed Iraq in the name of the Omayyide prince, Yazid, the son of Moawia. In that same year, Mirdas was at the head of a party and warring against the Omayyides. Ibâd Ibn al-Ahdar was sent by Obaid Allah, with a body of troops, against the insurgents. The two armies met on a Friday. Mirdas requested his adversary to defer the battle and give him time to accomplish the solemn prayer which all Muslims are bound to make on that day. Ibâd consented, but, when the Kharjites were prostrate in prayer, he charged upon them with his cavalry and cut them to pieces. Mirdas fell with the rest. — (Ibn Doraid's Ishikâk; Ibn al-Athlr's Kâmîl.)

(9) I cannot discover who this Abd al-Malik was, nor who was the Othman whose avarice he attacks.

(10) See vol. i. p. 22.

(11) The text of the manuscripts is probably faulty: they read امرانة طالق ان ذخته امراني. The right reading seems to be امرانة طالق ان ذخته امراني. In the anecdotes told of Naas ad-Dln Khaja, an individual, half knave and half fool, who figures in the popular literature of the East, this saying is attributed to him on account of his simplicity. In the Arabic edition of these anecdotes, the reading is that which I have here proposed. The anecdotes of this buffoon exist also in Turkish.

(12) Abu 'l-Ala as-Sarawi (السروری), a native of Tabaristan, stood pre-eminent as a prose-writer and as a
406

IBN KHALLIKAN'S

poet. He was one of those literary men who frequented the court of the vizir Ibn al-Amid (vol. III. p. 256).
—(Thalabi's Yatta). (13) No man could be a witness to bonds or give evidence in court of justice unless his character as a pious
and virtuous moslim was well established.
(14) This is not exceptional case; it falls under the general rule: Namir forms Namari, as Malik and
Kabid form Malaki and Kabadi.

YUSUF AS-SIRAFL.

Abû Muhammad Yusuf Ibn Abi Sa'id al-Hasan Ibn Abd Allah Ibn al-Marzubân
as-Sirafl, was a grammarian, a philologer, a historian, a man of merit and the son
of a man of merit. We have already spoken of his father (vol. I. p. 377). Abû
Muhammad, being well acquainted with grammar, occupied, as a professor, the seat
left vacant by the death of his father. We have already given the date of that event.
He undertook all the occupations in which his father had been engaged, and, even
in the latter's lifetime, he instructed students. The work which his father had left
unfinished and which had received the title of al-Ikna (the sufficiency) was terminated
by him. It is one of the most important and instructive works of the kind;
his father had begun by commenting Sibawaih's Kitab (vol. II. p. 396), as we have
already mentioned, and displayed in that task such erudition and research as never
had been shown before by any of those persons who treated the subject; after that
he drew up the Ikna, which was thus the fruit of the information acquired by him
during his researches and whilst he was writing out his work. He died before
the termination of his task, and it was his son who completed it. Every impartial
critic who may examine the book will not find any great difference between the style
and manner of the father and those of the son. Yusuf as-Sirafl composed afterwards
a number of treatises in which he elucidated the verses adduced as examples in some
(grammatical) works of great note; such, for instance, was his explanation of the verses
cited by Sibawaih, and which is the best and the most extensive treatise on that subject.
He wrote also a very good explanation of the verses quoted in the Isdah al-Mantik
(page 293 of this vol.); another treating of the verses which occur in Abû Obaida's
BIographical DICTIONARY.

Majdz (vol. III. p. 391); another on the verses of the Madni (a work on the figurative expressions of the Koran) by az-Zajjāj (vol. I. p. 28), another on the verses quoted by Abū Obaid al-Kāsim Ibn Sallām (vol. II. p. 486) in the Gharb al-Mu'sannaf (1). This list we might easily augment. The students to whom he gave lessons in philology went twice over the books of that science under his direction: the first time, they recited to him the text, and, the second time, they received from him its explanation. One of the works read to him was the Kitāb al-Bārī (the surpassing, a philological work), composed by al-Mufaddal Ibn Salama (vol. II. p. 611); it forms a number of volumes, the contents of which have been digested into the Kitāb al-Ātn, that philological work which is attributed to al-Khalīl Ibn Ahmad (vol. I. p. 493). To this book he added a considerable quantity of philological observations. The copies which he made of the Islāh al-Mantīk were written by him from memory (2). Abū 'l-Alā al-Maarri (vol. I. p. 94) related as follows: "Abd as-Salām "al-Basri, the keeper of the public library (3) at Baghdad, who was a man of "veracity and a good friend of mine, told me that he was present at one of Abū "Sa'd as-Sirāfī's sittings, whilst a student was reading aloud under his direction Ibn "as-Sikkit's Islāh al-Mantīk. When he came to the verse in which Humaid Ibn "Thaur (4) says:

"And (I was sometimes borne by) a thin-flanked (camel) which, during (the heat of) the "day, took rest and, during the night, slung on at a trot.

"Abū Sa'd here observed that the word thin-flanked should be put in the geni-"tive case, and then, turning towards us, he said: 'The conjunction and, being "here equivalent to sometimes, governs the genitive.' On hearing this I said: "'God preserve you, kādī! the verse which precedes shows that the word is in the "nominative.'—'What is that verse?' said he. I answered:

"God, who sent down from heaven the true direction, has brought me to you; my guides "were a (heavenly) light, islamism and a thin-flanked etc.

"On this, he went over the passage again and corrected the mistake. His son, "Abū Muhammad, who was present, changed colour on witnessing what had passed "and, standing up instantly, with every mark of displeasure in his looks, he returned "to his shop,—he was a butter merchant,—sold that establishment and took
to study. He continued to acquire information until he attained the highest rank in learning and then composed a treatise in which he explained the verses cited in the *Isāḥ al-Mamlīk.* Abū ‘l-Alā said also: ‘A person who saw him whilst he was composing that treatise told me that he had then before him four hundred *divans* (or *collections of poems*).’—Yūsuf as-Sirāfī continued to hold one uniform line of conduct, studying and teaching, till the day of his death. That event took place on the eve of Wednesday, the 27th of the first Rabī, 385 (30th April, A. D. 995). He was then aged fifty-five years and some months. The next morning, he was buried, and the funeral service was said over him by Abū Bakr Muhammad Ibn Mūsā al-Khwārizmi (vol. I. p. 60); so says Hilāl Ibn al-Muhassan as-Sābī (vol. III. p. 628) in his Annals. Another author states that he (Yūsuf as-Sirāfī) was born in the year 330 (A. D. 941-2) and that he died on Monday, the 27th of the above-mentioned month; God knows best! Yūsuf was a pious, virtuous man, very devout and living in the plainest manner. He had frequent discussions and controversies with Abū Tālib Ahmad Ibn Abī Bakr al-Abdī, the grammarian of whom we have spoken (vol. I. p. 82). These conferences have been (preserved and) handed down, but this is not a fit place for them. In the life of his father we have spoken of the word *Siraf* (vol. I. p 379) and need not therefore repeat our observations. Ibn Haukal says, in his *Masālik wa ‘l-Mamālik* (*roads and realms*) (5) ‘Siraf is a large sea-port town in Persia; its buildings are in teak wood. It is situated close to a hill which overlooks the sea, and possesses neither water, nor cultivated grounds nor flocks; yet it is one of the richest places in Persia (6). It lies in the neighbourhood of Jannāba and Najirem. A traveller, on starting from Siraf and following the shore-road, will arrive at the castle (*hīsna*) of Ibn Omāra, a strong fortress on the border of the sea; there is not a stronger place in Persia. It is said that its *former* possessor was the person whom God designated by these words (*of the Koran; surāt 18, verse 78*): ‘And there was behind them a king who took every ship by force.’—Another author says that the name of this king was *al-Julunda,* with a  *u* in each of the first syllables and the last syllable terminating in an *a.* It was he whom a certain poet meant in the following lines, addressed to an oppressor of the people:

*Julunda was a tyrant, but thou art a greater tyrant than he.*

The statements on this subject differ and God alone knows the truth.
ABU YAKUB AN-NAJIRAMI.

Abû Yakûb Yûsuf Ibn Yakûb Ibn Isma'il Ibn Khurrzâd an-Najirami, a philologer and a native of Basra, settled in Egypt. He came of a family which produced a number of eminent literary scholars, all of them deeply versed in philology, gifted with every talent and possessing the most solid information on these subjects. Abû Yakûb taught traditions on the authority of Abû Yahya Zakariya Ibn Yahya Ibn Khallâd as-Sâji (vol. III. p. 411) and other masters of that time. The same information was transmitted down on his authority by Abû 'l-Fadl Muhammad Ibn Jaafar al-Khuzâî and others. He was the most remarkable man of all the family; his handwriting (as a book-copyist) was not good as to its form, but extremely correct, and nearly such also was that of his company (his disciples). The people of Misr (Old vol. IV. 52
Cairo were so anxious and so eager to procure (books) written by him, that a copy which he made of Jarir's poetical works was purchased at the price of ten dinars (1). In Egypt, the received texts of old works, treating of philology, Arabic poetry and the battle-days of the (ancient) Arabs, are those which he had delivered orally and which he himself had drawn up. Indeed, he was able to dictate from memory books of that kind and was perfectly well acquainted with such matters. The members of his family who were in Misr supported themselves by trading in fire-wood. The grammarian Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Barakât Ibn Hilal al-Misri (2) obtained his philological information from some of Abû Yakûb's disciples and was old enough to have seen their master; but, being then a child, he was not capable of receiving lessons from him. Muwaffak ad-Din Abû 'l-Hajjâj Yûsuf Ibn al-Khallâl al-Misri, the official correspondence writer to whom we shall assign an article farther on, related that Ibn Barakât said to him: "I saw Abû Yakûb walking on the road which leads to the Karâfa (vol. I. p. 53). He was an elderly man of a tawny complexion, with a bushy beard and a large round turban. In his hand he held a book which he kept reading as he walked on." This assertion is controvertible: the hâfiz Abû Ishâk Ibrahîm Ibn Saïd Ibn Abd Allah, generally known by the appellation of al-Habbâl (the rope-maker) (3) says, in the Obituary (Wafaiyât) of which he was the compiler, that the death of Abû Yakûb Kharrzâd an-Najfîrami took place on Tuesday, the 4th of Muharram, 423 (22nd Dec. A. D. 1031), and another author places his birth on the 10th of Zu 'l-Hijja, 345 (15th March, A. D. 957). Now, Ibn Barakât was born at Old Cairo in the year 420 (A. D. 1029) and died there in 520 (A. D. 1126); being at that time the chief grammarian of Egypt. This is even said by Muwaffak ad-Din Ibn al-Khallâl. How then could Ibn Barakât have seen Abû Yakûb as he describes? He was only three years old at the time of Abû Yakûb's death. It was perhaps the latter's son whom he perceived; God knows! — The Kâdi al-Fâdil (vol. II. p. 111) said that, in all Ibn Barakât's poems, there was nothing finer than these two verses, composed by him on Musâfir al-Attâr (4):

O thou whose neck is like that of a silver ibrâk(5) and whose waist is a pliant wand! Were you to disdain me and repel me, do you think you could ever get out of my heart?

Ibn Barakât obtained his grammatical information from Ibn Bâbshâd, a grammarian of whom we have already spoken (vol. I. p. 647). Al-Kâdi ar-Rashid Ibn az-Zubair (vol. I. p. 143) mentions him with commendation in the Kûdab al-Jimân.
Kharrzdd; such is the orthography of this name according to the learned in Traditions. It is Persian; zdd means son, but kharr, with a double r, has no meaning; so we must suppose that the people who spoke Arabic altered the orthography of the name, according to their usual custom in such cases, and that it was primitively Khdrzdd, which, in Persian, means the son of a thorn. Khurshtd signifies the sun; if this was the word intended (in the formation of the name), the syllable shdt must have been suppressed, and such a licence is indeed authorized (in Persian). We must say that, in general, the Arabs tamper greatly with foreign names. — I have since read, in that chapter of al-Balâdori's Kitâb al-Bulhán (6) which contains the account of Persia and its provinces, that Ardashtr Khurreh means bahd Ardashtr (the glory of Ardashtr) (7). — Najfram is derived from Najfram on Najfaram. Abû Saâd as-Samâ'î (vol. II. p. 156) says, in his Ansâb, that this is the name of a quarter in the city of Basra. According to another authority, it is the name of a village in the territory of Basra, lying on the road which leads to Fars and situated near Sirâf. God knows best! A similar statement is made in the Masâlik wa l-Mamlîk (8), which places this town on the coast of the Persian Gulf. The fact seems to be that a number of persons belonging to Bajfam went to Basra and settled in a quarter which then received the name of the place from which they came. God knows best!

(1) The Divâns of Jarîr's poems which is in the university library at Leyden, fills about four hundred and seventy pages. If the transcription of such a work cost six dinars and if the dinar be estimated at thirteen shillings and eight pence, each page would have brought in to the copyist somewhat more than two pence.

(2) Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Barakât Ibn Hilâl as-Salî, a native of Salî, or upper Egypt, was known as a grammarian and a philologist. He composed a (khitat or) work on the topography of Cairo, and died A. H. 530 (A. D. 1136).—(Yaft's Annals.)—See also the first volume of the present work, page 448, and, in the third line, read Salî in place of Salîd.

(3) Abû Ishâk Ibrahim Ibn Sallân-an-Nomâni, a ḥâfiz of good authority and noted for his piety, was a native of Egypt and died in Old Cairo (Mîrâb), A. H. 489 (A. D. 1093-94), aged ninety years.—(Yaft's Annals, Nuji'm).

(4) This person is not known to the translator.

(5) The name of ibrîk is given to a sort of ewer with a curved spout like that of a coffee-pot.


(7) The author forgets to draw his conclusion; he evidently means to say that Kharrzdd may be derived from Khurreh-Zdd (the son of glory).

(8) See page 334 of this volume, note (16).
YUSUF AL-HAMDANI.

Abû Yakûb Yûsuf Ibn Aiyûb Ibn Yûsuf Ibn al-Husain Ibn Wahara al-Hamadâni, the jurisconsult, the man of learning, the ascetic, the divinely favoured, he who often enjoyed states (of exaltation) and possessed miraculous gifts (1), went to Baghdad in his youth, some time after the year 460 (A. D. 1067) and became the assiduous disciple of Abû Ishâk as-Shirâzi (vol. I. p. 9). He studied law under that doctor till he mastered the fundamentals of jurisprudence (2), the system of doctrine (peculiar to the Shâfîite sect) and the examination of controverted questions. Traditions were received by him from the lips of the kâdî Abû 'l-Husain Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn al-Muhtadi Billah, Abû 'l-Ghanâim Abd as-Samad Ibn Ali Ibn al-Mâmûn, Abû Ja'far Muhammad Ibn Ahmad Ibn al-Maslama and other teachers of that time. At Ispahân and Samarkand he heard traditions delivered and took down in writing the greater part of them. Having then abstained from that practice and given it up, he took to a life of self-mortification, devotional exercises, and efforts (in pursuit of God's grace); this he continued till he became as a religious hand-post, directing towards God. In the year 515 (A. D. 1121-2) he went (again) to Baghdad and opened in the Nizâmiya College a course of religious instruction which had the greatest success with the public. The venerable shaikh and preacher, Abû 'l-Fadl Sâfî Ibn Abd Allah, related as follows: "I was one day present at a sitting held by our shaikh Yûsuf al-Hamadâni in the Nizâmiya College, and a multitude of people were there assembled. A legist named Ibn as-Sakkâ then stood up, and vexed the shaikh and proposed to him a question: 'Sit down,' said Yakûb, 'for those words of yours smell strongly of infidelity, and you may probably die in another religion than islamism! Some time after the uttering of these words, a Christian ambassador, sent to the khalif by the king of the Greeks, arrived (in Baghdad). Ibn as-Sakkâ went to visit him, asked to become his follower and said: 'It strikes me that I shall abandon the religion of islamism and adopt yours.' The ambassador granted his request and took him to al-Constantinîya (Constantinople), where he got attached to the service of the Greek king and died a Christian. The hâfiz Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Mahmûd al-Baghdâdi,
BIографICAL DICTIONARY.

"surnamed Ibn an-Najjār (vol. I. p. 11) says, in that article of his (biographical) history of Baghdad which treats of Yūsūf al-Hamadānī: "Abū 'l-Karam Abd as-Salām Ibn Ahmad, a teacher of the Koran-readings, said in my presence: "Ibn as-

"Sakkā was a reader of the noble Koran and could psalmody it with great elegance. A person who saw him at Constantinople said to me: "I found him lying on a sofa, sick and holding in his hand a sort of fan with which he drove away the flies from his face. I asked him if the Koran still remained in his memory, and he replied that he remembered nothing of it except this single verse:

"The time may come when the infidels shall wish that they were Moslems (surat 15, verse 2), and that he had forgotten the rest." God preserve us from an evil destiny, from the loss of His grace and from the down-coming of His vengeance!

"We pray him to keep us firm in the religion of islamism; Amen! Amen!""

—Abū Saad Ibn as-Samānī (vol. II. p. 156) says: "Yūsūf Ibn Aiyūb al-Hamadānī was a native of Būzānajird, a village situated in that part of the province of Hamadān which is contiguous to Rai. He was an imām noted for piety, living in the fear of God and the practice of devotion; according to what he knew he acted, fulfilling all his obligations. To him were granted frequent states and prolonged stations (in religious ecstasy); on him devolved the education of the novices who aspired sincerely (to a devout life). In his convent (ribat) at Marw was assembled such a number of persons who had renounced the world for the love of God, that the like of it could not be imagined, neither was it to be found in any other convent. From youth to old age he followed the approved path, the way of rectitude and righteousness. Having left his village for Baghdad, he went to see the imām Abū Ishak as-Shirāzi (vol. I. p. 9) and, during his residence in that city, he studied jurisprudence under his direction and attended his lessons with the utmost assiduity. He thus acquired a superior knowledge of the law and, in the speculative part of it particularly, he surpassed all his contemporaries. Though still a youth, he was appointed to direct the studies of a large class of students by as-

"Shirāzi, who had remarked his self-denial, his virtuous conduct and his exclusive application to the duties of religion (3). He subsequently abandoned the speculative studies which had absorbed his attention and betook himself to a more serious occupation, the practice of devotion, the calling of the people to the service of God and the conducting of his fellow-students in the path of righteousness. He then went to reside at Marw, whence he removed to Herāt, where he remained
" for some time. Being invited to return to Marw, he proceeded thither and, towards " the close of his life, he paid a second visit to Herât. Having then resolved on " going back to Marw, he set out on his journey but, when he reached Bâmayţa, a " place situated between Herât and Baghshûr, he breathed his last. This happened " in the month of the first Rabî, 535 (oct.-nov. A. D. 1140). He was buried there, " but his body was afterwards removed to Marw. His birth is placed, not with cer- " tainty but with probability, in the year 440 (A. D. 1048-9), or 441. He was born " at Bûzanajîrd."—All that precedes was extracted by me from Ibn an-Najîr’s (bio- " graphical) history (of Baghdad).—Some words occur in this notice which require " elucidation: Wahara, the name of his ancestor, has no meaning in Arabic, as far as " I know. — Al-Kostantîniya, the great city of the Greeks (Rdîm), was so called after its " founder, Kostantin (Constantine), who was the first of their sovereigns that embraced " Christianity.—Bûzanajîrd is a village in (the province of) Hamadân and at a day’s " journey from that city. It lies near Sâwah; so says as-Samâni in his Ansâb. — Of " Marw we have already spoken (vol. I. p. 50). — Bâmayţa is a small town in Khorâ- " sân, according to the same author. — Herât we have already mentioned (vol. I. " p. 78); it is one of the four seats of government which exist in Khorâsân. The others " are Naisápûr, Marw and Balkh. — Baghshûr is also a village in Khorâsân and lies " between Marw and Herât. We have mentioned in our article on the jurisconsult " al-Hasan Ibn Masûd al-Farrâ (vol. I. p. 420) that he drew his surname of al- " Baghawi from this place.

(1) For the explanation of these terms, which belong to the theory of that mystic devotion which was " practised by the Sûfis, see the preface of Jâmî in the twelfth volume of the Notices et Extraits.

(2) Ibn Khaldûn has a chapter on the fundamentals of jurisprudence in his Prolegomena. See my french " translation of that work, tome III, page 25.

(3) Literally: to what concerned him. Ibn Khaldûn says, in his Prolegomena, tome III, page 185: "Le " législateur autorise tout ce qui dirige nos pensées vers la religion, parce qu'elle nous assure le bonheur dans " l'autre vie; il permet les actes qui, en nous procurant la nourriture, assurent notre bien-être dans ce monde... " Quant aux actes qui ne nous intéressent pas et qui ne renferment rien de mal, l'homme qui s'en abstient ne " s'éloigne pas de la faveur divine: le meilleur témoignage qu'on puisse donner de sa soumission à la volonté " de Dieu, c'est de s'abstenir des actes qu'on n'a aucun intérêt de faire."
AL-AALAM ASH-SHANTAMARI.

The grammarian Abû 'l-Hajjâj Yusuf Ibn Sulaimân Ibn Isa, surnamed al-Aalam (the hareclipped) was a native of Shantamariya in the West (1). He travelled to Cordova in the year 433 (A. D. 1041-2) and resided there for some time. Having studied under Abû 'l-Kâsim Ibrahim Ibn Muhammad Ibn Zakariya al-Iflili, Abû Sahl al-Harrâni and Abû Bakr Muslim Ibn Ahmad an accomplished literary scholar, he became well acquainted with (pure) Arabic, philology and the ideas usually expressed in poetry. He possessed by heart all the passages illustrative of these subjects, to which he had applied with great assiduity. His extensive learning, the retentiveness of his memory and the correctness (of the texts which he dictated) procured him a wide reputation. To his pupils he furnished a great quantity of information, and he was the only teacher of that time whose renown attracted students from distant parts. One of his disciples was Abû Ali al-Husain Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ahmad al-Ghassâni al-Jaiyâni, the same of whom we have spoken (vol. I. p. 458). Al-Aalam, towards the close of his life, lost his sight. He composed a commentary the Jumal of Abû 'l-Kâsim az-Zajjâji (vol. II. p. 92) and a separate treatise on the verses (given as examples) in that work. A commentary on the poetical works of al-Mutanabbi (vol. I. p. 102) was drawn up by him with the assistance of his master, Ibn al-Iflili. He commented also the Hamdsâ (vol. I. p. 348), as far as I can judge; for I once possessed an explanation of that work by one ash-Shantamari; I do not now recollect the (other) names of the author, but am inclined to think that it was the person of whom we are speaking. It is a very good work, whoever made it. Al-Aalam died at Seville, a city in the Spanish peninsula, A. H. 476 (A. D. 1083-4). He was born in the year 410 (A. D. 1019-20). The following relation was made by Abû 'l-Hasan Shuraih Ibn Muhammad Ibn Shuraih ar-Raaini, a native of Seville and the preacher in the great mosque of that city: "On Friday, the 15th of Shawwâl, 476 (25th February, A. D. 1084) took place the death of my father, Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Shuraih. I went to inform the professor and master Abû 'l-Hajjâj al-Aalam of that event, because they loved each other as brothers. He wept bitterly on hearing the news, and exclaimed:
"We belong to God and unto him must we return!" He then said: 'I shall not survive him more than a month.' And so it happened.—In a document written by the learned and virtuous teacher of Koran-reading, Muhammad Ibn Khair (2), who was a native of Spain, I found the following note: "This Abu 'l-Hajjaj was surnamed al-Aalam because he was much disfigured by a slit in his upper lip." I may here observe that a man who has that defect in his upper lip is called an aalam, which word is derived from the verb alima, yalamu, alaman. A female with this deformity is designated by the term alma. If the defect be in the lower lip, the adjective is aflah, derived from the verb salika, yaflahu, salahan. This is conformable to the general rule for all verbs which designate bodily infirmities and defects: the second radical letter is followed, in the preterite, by an i and, in the aorist and the noun, by an a. Such are the verbs kharisa, yakhrasu, kharasan (to be dumb), barisa, yabrasu, barsan (to be leprous), damia, yama, daman (to be blind). In such verbs, the adjective indicating the person takes (in the masculine) the form aflah; so, they say: akhras, aalam, aflah. Abu Yazid Suhail Ibn Amr al-A'ami, a member of the tribe of Kuraish (and a contemporary of Muhammad) had a harelip. When he was made a prisoner at the battle of Badr, Omar Ibn al-Khattab said to the Apostle of God: "Let me pluck out his fore-teeth so that he may never again stand forward to make speeches against you." The Prophet replied: "Let him alone; he may, one day, stand forward in a manner which you will approve of." This Suhail was a good orator, a correct and elegant speaker. It was he who came (from Mekka) to al Hudaibia for the purpose of concluding a truce, and in that he succeeded. Having subsequently embraced Islamism, he proved a sincere convert. The standing forward, which the Prophet foretold, really occurred: when he gave up his soul to God, many of the Arabs apostatized and violent dissensions arose between them. Suhail, who was then at Mek, stood forward and addressed the people in a speech which tranquillized them and put an end to their disputes. This was the praiseworthy standing-forth which the Prophet had foreseen. When Omar asked leave to pluck out his fore-teeth in order to prevent him from making speeches, he was aware that persons having a harelip and no front-teeth find great difficulty in pronouncing their words. — Antara Ibn Shaddad al-Absi, the famous horseman (and the author of one of the Moallakas), had a harelip and was surnamed al-salh (which is the feminine adjective), but, in his case, the word referred to the noun shafa (lip), which is of the feminine gender. — Shantamariya is a city in western Spain. — Al-
BIograPHICAL DICTIONARY.

Hudaibia is a place situated between Mekka and Medina; it was there that the Prophet received from his followers the oath of satisfaction (bta tar-Riduân) (2). This name is sometimes pronounced al-Hudaibiya.

(1) There were in Spain two large towns called by the Arabs Shanta-Mariya (Santa-Maria): one of them, situated in the province of Algarve, was designated as the Shanta-Mariya of the West (al-ghabr); the other, situated in the kingdom of Aragon, was called the Shanta-Mariya of the Beni Razzlin (Albarracin).

(2) This took place in the sixth year of the Hejira.

THE KADI BABA AD-DIN IBN SHADDAD.

Abû 'l-Mahâsin Yûsuf Ibn Râfî Ibn Tamîm Ibn Othâ Ibn Muhammad Ibn Attâb al-Asadi, surnamed Bahâ ad-Din (lustre of religion), was a legist of the Shâfiite sect and kâdi of Aleppo. When a child, he lost his father and was brought up in the family of his maternal uncles, the Bani Shaddad. This Shaddad was his mother's grand-father. He (Bahâ ad-Din) bore at first the prenomen of Abû 'l-Izz, which he afterwards replaced by that of Abû 'l-Mahâsin, as we have indicated above. He was born on the eve of the 10th of Ramadân, 539 (5th March, A. D. 1145) at Mosul, and there, in his youth, he learned by heart the noble Koran. When Abû Bakr Yahya Ibn Saadûn of Cordova, the shaikh of whom we have given a notice (p. 57 of this vol.), went to Mosul, Abû 'l-Mahâsin attended his lectures with great assiduity, read under his direction the seven ways (or editions) of the Koranic text (1) and obtained a solid acquaintance with its various readings. He, himself, says in one of his works: “The first (professor) from whom I took lessons was the hâfiz (traditio-

(1) Sâin ad-Din Abû Bakr Yahya Ibn Saadûn Ibn Tammâm Ibn Muhammad al-

Azdi al-Kortubi; may God have mercy on his soul! I studied Koran-reading

under him, without discontinuing, during the space of eleven years. I read over,

also, under his direction, the greater part of the works which he used to teach and

which treated of the different readings, the manner of reciting the noble Koran,

and the text of the Traditions, with explanations and commentaries of his own.

VOL. IV.
"He then drew up for me, with his own hand, a certificate attesting that none of his scholars had read under his tuition more than I did. I possess also, in his handwriting, nearly two quires (forty pages) in which were indicated all that I had read under him and the matters which he himself had taught orally and which I might teach on his authority. Amongst the works mentioned in this list are those of Al-Bukhārī (vol. II, p. 594) and Muslim (vol. III, p. 348), with the indication of the different channels through which the texts of these works had come down to him.

Besides that were mentioned most of the (standard) works on Traditions and philosophy. The last treatise which he authorised me to teach was his commentary on the Gharbā, composed by Abū Obaid al-Kāsim Ibn Sallām (vol. II, p. 486). I read it under his direction during a number of sittings, the last of which took place in the last third of the month of Shabān, 567 (April, A. D. 1172)." — I may here observe that this was the year in which the shaikh of Cordova (Ibn Saaddān) died. — "Another of my professors," continues he, "was Abū 'l-Barakat Abd Allah Ibn al-Khidr Ibn al-Husain, generally known by the surname of as-Sizāji (2). I heard him explain a part of ath-Thalabi's (vol. I, p. 60) commentary (on the Koran), and I received from him a licence to teach on his authority all that he had taught orally, touching the various readings. A certificate, drawn up by him to that effect and inscribed by him in the album (or catalogue) containing the list (fihrest) of texts which I had heard taught, is dated the 5th of the first Jumāda, 566 (14 January, A. D. 1171). This doctor was noted for his learning in the science of Traditions and in that of jurisprudence. He acted as a kādī in Basra and taught in the Old Atabekiyā (college)." — The writer means the Atabekiyā of Mosul. — "Another of my masters was the shaikh Majd ad-Dīn Abū 'l-Fadl Abd Allah Ibn Ahmad Ibn Abd al-Kāhir at-Tūsī, the preacher of the great mosque in Mosul. He was so highly renowned as a Traditionist that people came from all countries for the purpose of hearing him. He lived upwards of ninety years." — I may add that Abū 'l-Fadl Ibn at-Tūsī was born on the 15th of Safar, 487 (5th March, A. D. 1094), in the quarter of Baghdad called Bāb al-Marāṭib and that he died at Mosul on the eve of Tuesday, the 14th of the month of Ramadān, 578 (11th January, A. D. 1183). He was interred in the cemetery contiguous to the gate called Bāb al-Ma’dān (hippodrome-gate). Let us resume Abū 'l-Mahāsin's relation and finish it: — "I heard from him," — meaning the preacher just mentioned, "most of the texts which he had learned from the lips of his masters and, on the 26th of Rajab, 558
"(10th June, A.D. 1163), I received from him a licence to teach all that he used
to deliver from memory. Another of my professors was the kādi Fakhr ad-Din
Abū-r-Rida Said Ibn Abd Allah as-Shahrozūri. I heard from his lips the
Masnad (or collection of authenticated traditions made) by as-Shafi (vol. II. p. 569),
that of Abū Awāna (p. 28 of this vol.), that of Abū Yara 'l-Mausili (vol. I. p. 212)
and the Sunan of Abū Dāwūd (vol. I. p. 589). He gave me a certificate to that
effect and inscribed it in my album. I heard him also recite the text of Abū Isa
at-Tirmidi's Jami (vol. II. p. 679), and received from him a licence to teach all
that he himself taught. This document is in his hand-writing and bears the date
of the month of Shawwāl, 567 (May-June, A.D. 1172). Another of my profes-
sors was the ḥafiz Majd ad-Din Abū Muhammad Abd Allah Ibn Mohammod Ibn
Ali al-Ashīrī as-Sanhāji (3). He gave me licence to teach all the texts which he
had dictated from memory, notwithstanding the great variety of their subjects. I
have in my album a certificate to that effect, dated in the month of Ramadān,
559 (July-Aug. A.D. 1164). His own album contains the same document and
is also in my possession."—I must here add that Abū Muhammad Abd Allah Al-
Ashīrī died in Syria, in the month of Shawwāl 561 (August, A.D. 1166), and was
interred at Baalbek, outside the Gate of Emessa (Bah Hims), on the northern side of
the town. —"Amongst them also was the ḥafiz Siraj ad-Din Abū Bakr Muhammad
Ibn Ali al-Jaiyāni (4). At Mosul I read under his tuition the Sahih of Muslim,
from the beginning to the end, as also the Wast of al-Wāhidī (vol. II. p. 246).
He authorized me to teach the same texts as he did, and his certificate bears the
date of 559 (A.D. 1163-4). These were the teachers whose names come to my
recollection; there were a number of others whom I heard, but now, that I am
compiling this treatise, I cannot call to mind on whose authority they gave their
lessons. Their names were Shuhda tal-Kātiba (vol. I. p. 625) at Baghdad,
Abū 'l-Mughith in al-Harbiya (5), Rida ad-Din al-Kazwini, who professed in the
Nizāmiya college, and some others who obtained their information through chan-
nels the recollection of which has escaped me. I need not give their names, as
those whom I have mentioned are quite sufficient." End of Abū 'l-Mahāsin's
personal statement. —According to another account, he studied under Abū 'l-Ba-
rakāt Abd Allah Ibn as-Siṣājī, the chief legist of Mosul, and the same of whom men-
tion has been made; he was noted for learning, self-denial and austerity of life.
His death occurred at Mosul, in the month of the first Jumāda, 574 (Oct.-Nov. A.D.
1178). He was interned outside the city. He (Abū 'l-Mahāsīn) then studied the controverted points of jurisprudence under Dān ad-Dīn Ibn Abī Hāzim, the disciple of that Muhammad Ibn Yahya an-Naisāpūrī who died a martyr (vol. II. p. 628). He then practised the art of controversy under the ablest (mutkini) masters, such as Fakhir ad-Dīn an-Naukānī, al-Barrūwi, Imād ad-Dīn an-Naukānī, Saif ad-Dīn al-Khuwārī and Imād ad-Dīn al-Mayānji. He had attained the highest proficiency when he went down to Baghdad and put up at the Nizāmiya college, where he shortly afterwards was appointed to act as an under-tutor (6). That office he held about four years, during the professorship of Abū Nasr Ahmad Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Muhammad ash-Shāshī. In the month of the latter Rabī, 566 (Dec.-Jan. A.D. 1170-1), ash-Shāshī had been appointed chief professor in the Nizāmiya college, and towards the end of Rajab, 569 (Feb.-March, A. D. 1174), he was dismissed from office. To him, and on the date just given, succeeded Rida ad-Dīn Abū 'l-Khāir Ahmad al-Kazwīnī. Abū 'l-Mahāsīn continued to act as under-tutor and, in that office, he had for a colleague as-Sādī as-Salāmāsī (vol. II. p. 643). He went up to Mosul in the same year, and was appointed to the professorship in the college which had been founded by the kādī Kamāl ad-Dīn Abū 'l-Fadl Muhammad Ibn as-Shahrozūrī (vol. II. p. 646). He there continued his learned occupations and a number of students derived profit from his lessons. In the beginning of a work which he composed on law-cases and entitled Maljā 'l-Hukkām and Iltībās al-Ahkām (the resource for judges in doubtful cases), he says that he made the pilgrimage in the year 583 (A. D. 1188) and, after fulfilling that duty and visiting the (tomb of the) Prophet (at Međīna), he went, in pious devotion, to al-Ba‘t al-Mukaddas (the consecrated dawling, that is Jerusalem) and to (Hebron, where he saw the tomb of Abraham) al-Khalil (the friend of God). He then entered into Damascus, whilst the sultan Salāh ad-Dīn was besieging Kalat Kaukab (7). Being sent for by that prince, who had been informed of his arrival, he thought that he would have been questioned about the manner in which the emir Shams ad-Dīn Ibn al-Mukaddam met with his death. This officer commanded the pilgrim-caravan of that year in the name of Salāh ad-Dīn and was killed at Mount Arafāt in an affray of which there is a long account, but this is not the place to give it (8). When he (Abū 'l-Mahāsīn) appeared before the sultan, he was received by him in the most honourable manner, and no other questions were asked of him except about his journey and the learned men, practisers (of virtue), whom he had met with. The
sultan having then expressed the wish of reading over some traditions under his direction, he produced a (small) volume in which he had collected the *azkār* (or *pious invocations*) handed down by al-Bukhārī, and this book was read aloud to him by the prince. When Abū 'l-Mahāsīn retired, the *kātib* Imād ad-Dīn al-Islahānī (vol. III. p. 300) overtook him and said: "The sultan sends you word that, if you resolve on coming back here after your return from the pilgrimage (9), you must inform him (of your arrival), because he wishes to communicate to you something important." On his return, he let the sultan know of his arrival and received the order to go and see him. During the interval, he had composed a work in which he enumerated the merits to be acquired by warring against infidels, and indicated the promises which God had made in favour of those who engage in holy war. This treatise filled about thirty quires (600 pages). He undertook the journey, found the sultan encamped in the plain (at the foot of the fortress called) Hīs n al-Akrād (the *Castle of the Kurds*), and presented to him this book. "I intend," said he, "to renounce the world and take up my residence in the *Mashhird* (10) which is outside of Mosul, as soon as I could get there." In the beginning of the first Jumāda, 584 (end of June, A. D. 1188), he went to present his respects to the sultan Salāh ad-Dīn who, some time after, appointed him *kādī* of the army (kādī 'l-Askār) and nominated him *hākim* (11) of Jerusalem. — In one of the months of the year 666 (A. D. 1267–8), whilst I was *hākim* in the city of Damascus, a deed came into my hands which had been authenticated (and witnessed) in the presence of the kādī Abū 'l-Mahāsīn, whilst he was acting as Salāh ad-Dīn's kādī 'l-Askār. Its validity had been impaired by the demise of the witnesses and, in my opinion, could hardly be reestablished. This document I read through to the very end because it interested me greatly as being a memorial of our professor Abū 'l-Mahāsīn, him who had taught us so much and whose assiduous disciples we had been. — Let us now return to the account which he gives of himself: "On going to offer my respects to Salāh ad-Dīn, I had for travelling—companions the *shaikh* of "*the shaikhs* (chief of the professors), Sayr ad-Dīn Abū-Ḥamīd ibn Ismā'īl "and the kādī Muḥi ad-Dīn Ibn as-Shahrozūrī, who had been sent to him "on a mission. The death of al-Bahā ad-Dimishki, which happened at that time, "left vacant the chief professorship in the *Manāzil al-Izz* college at Old Cairo and "the office of preacher in that city. Salāh ad-Dīn offered me the professorship, but "I did not accept it. The second time that I appeared before the sultan, I had been
sent to him on a mission from Mosul and found him at Harrân. He was then sick. "..." After the death of Salâh ad-Dîn, at which I was present, I proceeded to Aleppo for the purpose of reestablishing harmony between his sons and inducing them to swear that they would support each other. Al-Malik az-Zâhir Ghiath ad-Dîn, one of these brothers and the sovereign of Aleppo, then wrote to his brother al-Malik al-Afdal Nûr ad-Dîn Ali, the lord of Damascus, demanding I should be sent to him. On my arrival az-Zâhir dispatched me to Cairo for the purpose of obtaining the adhesion of his brother, al-Malik al-Azîz Imâd ad-Dîn Othmân. He then offered me the chief magistracy of Aleppo, but I would not accept it. After my return from this mission, I consented to accept the kadiship of Aleppo, that place having become vacant by the death of him that filled it. "Such is the relation made by Abû 'l-Mahâsin in his Maljâ 'l-Hukkâm. — The kâdî Kamâl ad-Dîn Abû 'l-Kâsim Omar Ibn Ahmad, surnamed Ibn al-Adîm (p. 334 of this vol.), says in his smaller work on the history of Aleppo to which he gave the title of Zubda ta'l-Halâb fi Târikh Halâb [the cream of new milk, being a treatise on the history of Aleppo, ] "In the year 91, " — that is, in 591 (A. D. 1195), " the kâdî Bahâ ad-Dîn Abû 'l-Mahâsin Yusuf Ibn Râfi Ibn Tamîm, entered into the service of al-Malik az-Zâhir, having come to see him at Aleppo. That prince confided to him the kadiship of the city with the administration of the wakîfâs (12), after deposing the kâdî Zain ad-Dîn Abû 'l-Bayân Banâ Ibn al-Bânyâsi, who had been acting as the deputy of Muhî ad-Dîn Ibn az-Zakî. Bahâ ad-Dîn then obtained the places of vizir and privy-counsellor to that prince." End of the extract. — I may here observe that [the kâdî Banâ was the son of al-Fadl Ibn Sulaimân al-Humîri (or al-Himyari), that their family was known at Damascus by the name of al-Bânyâsi, and that] (13) Muhi ad-Dîn Muhammad Ibn az-Zaki, the person above mentioned, had been appointed kâdî by the sultan Salâh ad-Dîn and had afterwards taken for his deputy Zain ad-Dîn Banâ Ibn al-Bânyâsi, who remained in place till the above-mentioned date. At that time, there were but few colleges (or high schools) in Aleppo and learned men were very rare. Abû 'l-Mahâsin was therefore induced to reorganise these institutions and provide them with teachers, learned in the law. During his lifetime, a great number of colleges were thus established. Al-Malik az-Zâhir granted to him a rich ikhd (14) which produced a very ample revenue. The kâdî, having neither children nor relatives, did not spend much, and the rest of his in-
come was so abundant that he was able to found a college near the Gate of Irâk and opposite to the college opened for Shâfîite students by Nûr ad-Dîn Mahmûd Ibn Zinki (vol. III. p. 338). I saw the date of its erection inscribed on the ceiling of the mosque attached to it, in the place allotted to the giving of lessons. That date was 601 (A. D. 1204-5). He then founded in the neighbourhood of this college a school for the teaching of the Traditions concerning the Prophet and, between the two establishments, he erected a mausoleum in which he intended to be buried. This edifice has two entrances, one on the side towards the college and the other on the side towards the Tradition school; they are opposite one to the other and each of them is closed by a (metal) grating, so that a person standing at one end of the monument can see through it to the other. When Aleppo was brought into this (prosperous) state, legists arrived there from all quarters, studies became active and the number of persons who came to the city was very great. A close intimacy, a sincere and friendly attachment subsisted between my deceased father and the kâdi Abû 'l-Mahâsin, from the time in which they were fellow-students at Mosul. When I went to (study under) this kâdi, a very short time after my brother had gone to him, a letter of recommendation, drawn up in the strongest terms, was sent to him by the sovereign of our city (Arbela). This prince (whose names and titles were) al-Malik al-Muazzam Muzaffar ad-Dîn Abû Said Kûkubûrî, the son of Ali and the grandson of Bektûkân (the valourous bey), has been already spoken of (vol. II. p. 535). In this letter he said: "You know what is necessary to be done with those boys: "they are the sons of one who was for me as a brother and who was also a brother "for you. To this I need not add any stronger recommendation."

The writer continued in this style to some length. The kâdi Abû 'l-Mahâsin, being very obliging, received us most honourably and treated us as well as he possibly could and in a manner worthy of himself. He lodged us in his college, inscribed us on the list of those who received commons and placed us in the class of the elder boys, though we were still very young and merely beginning to study. In the life of the shaikh Muwaffak ad-Dîn Yaish the grammarian (page 380 of this vol.) I mentioned the date of my arrival at Aleppo and need not therefore repeat it here. I and my brother remained with him (Abû 'l-Mahâsin) till the day of his death, an event of which the date shall be given farther on. During all that time there was not a general course of lectures in the college, because the professor, Abû 'l-Mahâsin himself, was much advanced in years and so very weak that he could hardly move, much less commit
his lessons to memory and deliver them. He therefore confided to four legists of merit the duty of going over the lessons with the students, and it was under the tuition of these doctors that all the school pursued their studies. I and my brother read our lessons under the shaikh Jamāl ad-Dīn Abū Bakr al-Māhānī, because he was our townsman and had been a fellow-student of my father's under the shaikh Imād ad-Dīn Abū Hāmid Muhammad Ibn Yūnus (vol. II. p. 656). He (al-Māhānī) died on the 3rd of Shawwāl, 627 (15 August, A. D. 1230), aged upwards of eighty years. I then attended the lectures of the shaikh Najm ad-Dīn Abū Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Abī Bakr Ibn Ali, generally known by the appellation of Ibn al-Khabbāz (15), who was a native of Mosul. This legist and imām was then professor in the Saisiya college. I read under his direction al-Ghazzālī’s (law-treatise, the) Wajiz (vol. II. p. 622), from the beginning of the work to the chapter on affirmations (iṣrār) (16). But, after all, these observations, each of them bringing on another, have led us away from our subject.—The kadd Abū ʾl-Mahāzin (being nominated vizir), obtained the entire and absolute direction of affairs, and no person in the state dared to remonstrate with him. The sovereign, at that time, was al-Malik al-Ażīz Abū ʾl-Muzaffar Muhammad, the son of al-Malik az-Zāhir and the grandson of ʿAlā ad-Dīn (Salādīn). As he was still a child, he remained under the care of the eunuch Shihāb ad-Dīn Abū Said Toghrul, who acted as his atābek (guardian) and administered the principality under the direction of Abū ʾl-Mahāzin. Every thing was regulated by the authority of these two persons. During the administration of Abū ʾl-Mahāzin, legists were treated with the highest respect and consideration, particularly those who were attached to his college: they were authorized to assist at the sultan’s private parties and, during the month of Ramadān, they broke their fast every day at his table. As he taught Traditions, we went regularly to his house for the purpose of hearing him. He had there a winter-alcove, arranged purposely for himself, and in it he sat, winter and summer. The fact was that old age had produced its effect on him and rendered him as weak as a little bird just hatched. It was with the greatest pain and difficulty that he was able to stir for the purpose of saying his prayers or for any other motive. As he was often afflicted with a catarrh, he never left his alcove; in winter, he had always beside him a large brazier filled with a great quantity of lighted coals, and yet he was never free from de-fluxions. He constantly wore a pelisse lined with Bortasian furs (17) and a number of tunics; under him was a very soft cushion placed upon a pile of carpets thickly
waddled. When we were with him, the heat inconveniented us greatly, but he did not feel it, so completely was he overcome by the cold which accompanies decrepitude. He never went out to perform his devotions at the mosque unless during the great heats of summer, and when, with extreme difficulty, he stood up to pray, he was always ready to fall. One day, whilst he was standing at prayer, I looked at his legs, and they had on them so little flesh that they were like thin sticks. After Friday prayers, those who had been present went to his house in order to hear him repeat Traditions, and this gave him great pleasure. His conversation was agreeable and, in his discourse, which was highly elegant, literature was the prevailing subject. He frequently quoted at his sittings the following verse:

To escape from (the charms of) Laila and her fair neighbour, you must never, in any case, pass near their place of meeting.

He often quoted proverbially a line from one of Surr Durr's (vol. II. p. 321) long kasīdas, in which that poet says:

The promises made by them in the sands (of the desert) have been broken; so fails whatever is built upon sand.

He repeated it, one day, in the presence of his pupils and one of them said: "Master! Ibn al-Muallim al-Irāki has expressed that idea with great elegance."—"Is that Ibn al-Muallim," said he, "the same who was surnamed Abū 'l-Ghanāim?" (vol. III. p. 168)." Being informed that it was, he replied: "He was my comrade; what did he say?" The other recited as follows:

They failed to fulfil their engagements, but every thing built by the hands of love in the sands of the desert cannot but fail.

"Not bad!" said he, "and the expression by the hands of love comes in gracefully." The same student then said: "Master! he employed again the same thought in another kasīda."—"Let us have it," said he, and the other recited this line:

The promise was not built on sand; how then could it fail?

This verse also obtained his approbation. He frequently repeated to us a piece of vol. iv.
verse composed by Abû 'l-Fawâris Saad Ibn Muhammad, surnamed Hais Bais (vol. I. p. 559) and declared that he gave it on the authority of that poet, because he had heard it from his lips. In our article on Surr Durr we have given this piece, so we need only mention here the first verse:

Strive not to abase exalted worth when you yourself are pointed at with respectful admi-
ration.

He stated also that, whilst he and al-Kadi' l-Fâdil (vol. II. p. 111) were at (the siege of) the castle of Safad (18), the latter recited to him a verse composed by a poet and which ran as follows:

I said to the defluxion (which afflicted me and) which was beginning to affect my tensils:

"Leave my throat, I implore you! for it is the vestibule of my life."

These two verses are attributed to Ibn al-Habbâriya (vol. III. p. 150).—As often as Abû 'l-Mahâsin looked at himself and considered the state of weakness he was in, being unable to stand up, or to sit down, or to pray, or to make any movement whatever, he would say:

Let him who wishes for a long life arm himself with fortitude, so that he may support the death of friends. He that lives long finds in himself all the pains which he could wish for his enemies.

These two verses are attributed to Zahir ad-Din Abû Ishak Ibrahim Ibn Nasr Ibn Askar, the kâdi of as-Sallâmiya whose life we have given towards the commencement of this work (vol. I. p. 15). So it is mentioned by my friend Ibn as-Shiâr al-Mausili, in the article on az-Zahir which he has inserted in the Okûd al-Jumân (collars of pearls) (19). The thought is borrowed from Abû 'l-Alâ al-Maarri (vol. I. p. 94), who said:

Our lips wish long life to him for whom our hearts feel the utmost love. We would rejoice, were his existence prolonged, and yet, in that prolongation, he would meet every thing that he dislikes.

All these verses derive from a passage in which a poet said:
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

My spear (statute) never yielded to whatever tried to bend it; it yielded only to the succession of nights and days. I ardently implored the Lord to preserve my life, and now I find that life itself is an evil.

A Maghrabin named Abū 'l-Hajjāj Yūsuf, who had just come from his native country to Aleppo and who was a man of talent, well versed in literature and philosophy, went to visit him one day, and, on seeing him greatly emaciated and worn away, recited to him these lines:

If people knew what would happen (you), were you allowed to live for their advantage, they would weep because you would be stripped of the garment of youth. Were they able to give up part of their existence (in order to lengthen yours), they would consent to redeem you (from death) with nothing less precious than their lives.

These words gave the kaddi great pleasure, and tears came to his eyes as he thanked the speaker. — One of my acquaintances told me that, one day, he heard the kaddi relate the following anecdote to his assembled auditors: "Whilst we were in the "Nizāmiyya college, at Baghdad, four or five of the law-students agreed on swallowing "kernels of the belddor nut (20) for the purpose of sharpening their wits and "their memory. So, they went to a physician, asked him what was a sufficient "dose for a man and the way in which the drug should be taken. After that, they "went and purchased the quantity which he had indicated and drank off the decoction "in a place situated outside of the college. They then became delirious, sepa- "rated one from the other and each of them went his way. Nobody knew what had "become of them till a few days after, when one of them, a very tall fellow, returned "to the college. He was in a state of nudity, having not even a rag to conceal "his privy parts, but, on his head, he wore a high-peaked cap (21) the tail of which "was extravagantly long and hang down his back as far as his ankles. He remained "tranquil and silent, looking calm and grave, but neither jested nor spoke. One "of the legists who were present asked him what had happened and received this "answer: 'We met together and drank an infusion of belddor kernels; my com- "panions became insane and I was the only one who kept his senses.' He con- "tinued to evince great intelligence joined to a profound gravity. All the assem- "bly laughed at his appearance, but that he did not perceive and, thinking that he "escaped from what had befallen his companions, he paid not the least attention to
those who were around him."—Some of the students who had been with Abû 'l-
Mahāsīn before we went to him made me the following relation: "An eminent poet
and literary scholar of Cordova whose names were Nizâm ad-Din Abû 'l-Hasan Ali
Ibn Muhammed Ibn Yusuf Ibn Masûd al-Kaisi and who was known by the appel-
luation of Ibn Khariif (the son of the lamb) came to see Abû 'l-Mahâsîn and address-
ed to him a letter commencing with some verses in which he asked him for the
gift of a furred cloak (22); the epistle ran thus:

"...Lustre of religion (Bahâ ad-Din) and of the world, refulgent in glory and public esteem!
...I fear the inclemency of the weather and ask of your bounty the skin of my father.
...Your worship knows that I am the lamb (karâf) so eminent in literature. May you always
...milk the teats of prosperity and may the milk (halâb) which I obtain in Aleppo (Halâb) be
...pure!

...He to whom belongs eminent respect and an illustrious origin, he who
...causes happiness (as-sarrâd) to sweep proudly on in its progress and who likes
...grammarians for the sake of al-Farrâ (page 63 of this vol.),—may he bestow
...upon an eminent lamb the skin of its father; a skin dyed red and lately tanned.
...The person who undertook to curry it was not mistaken, neither did he lose
...his pains. Nay! the praise of him who prepared it has been published and
...spread abroad. The fibres of its wool are compact, and it derides the efforts of
...every violent and impetuous storm. When that fur appears, cold dreads
...and fears it; no other garment is like it when frost and snow descend;
...man has nothing to equal it when the tender branches are stripped of
...their foliage. It is not like the hood (ta'sâdun) of Ibn Harb nor like the skin of
...Amr which had been lacerated by beating. It is like the skin of the sheep (the
...constellation of Aries) in the starry heaven (al-jarâb), which sees beside it the
...moon and the stars (najm); not like the skin of the mangy (al-jarâb) sheep
...which feeds on (the leaves of) trees and grass (najm). In species, it is a cloak;
...in odour, a parfume. (Let me have it) so that it may sometimes serve me for a
...coat, and sometimes for an overall; in both cases, it will give life to heat and
...death to cold. May the donor never cease to be happy and to accomplish his
...promises towards friends, his threats against enemies. Such be the will of God!
...Salutation," In our article on Abû 'l-Fath Muhammad Sibt Ibn at-Taâwizi
(vol. III, p. 165) we have inserted an epistle which he adressed to the kdtib Imâd
ad-Din, in the hope of obtaining a furred pelisse also. Both letters are very original in their kind. That which we have just given contains some expressions which require to be explained: the words *not like the tailasān of Ibn Harb* refer to a saying which was current among the literary men of that period; when an object was much used, they said it was like Ibn Harb's tailasān. As we are therefore obliged to notice it, we shall here speak of it. Ahmad Ibn Harb, the nephew of Yazid, the son of al-Muhallab (p. 164 of this vol.), gave to Abû Ali Ismaïl Ibn Ibrahim Ibn Hamduyah al-Hamdū, a poet and literary scholar of Basra, a worn-out tailasān. Numerous epigrams were composed on the subject by the poet and passed from mouth to mouth. Amongst them we may notice the following lines belonging to a piece which contains a number of verses:

In another piece he said:

It became such an annoyance (*khalaf*) to the darner, that he almost wished it could learn from him to darn itself.

He said also:

Ibn Harb! you clothed me in a time-worn tailasān, quite decrepit. As often as I darned it, it said to me: "Glory to thee who restorest life to bones that have mouldered into dust (Coran, "sur. 36, verse 78)."

He said again:

Ibn Harb! you have incurred my lasting hatred by obliging me to darn a tailasān which I could well have done without. Whilst I mend it, I compare it to the family of Pharaoh which deserved to be cast into the fire, morning and evening (Coran, sur. 40, verse 49).

Again he said:

Ibn Harb! we have seen your tailasān; it is a new humiliation to a man already humbled. When the darner mends it in one part, the rest hastens to split open. When a friend embraces me, he pulls away a hand's breadth of it and, when I return his embrace, I tear off from it.
Ibn Khallikan's

an ell. I turn my eyes from one end of it to the other, examining it in length and breadth, and can see nothing but darns. I have no doubt but that in former times, it served as a sail to Noah's ark. For me, it is quite enough to see the rest of it falling to tatters on my shoulders. Stop a little longer, oh hyena! before your departure; let not your station here be for the purpose of saying a long farewell (23).

In a piece addressed to a man in high station he resumed the subject and said:

Let me weep for my garment, now, that it has bidden me farewell; I must persist in weeping since it persists (in leaving me). Son of al-Husain! see you not how my vest has become a rag which, through long use, has fallen (into ruin) and become (a network) like a coat of mail. It has so many rents that the zephyr, in breathing upon it, would disperse it like a cloud. My tailasān declares, by its tattered state, that, from it my vest learned to get used and be worn away. May it not obtain the favour of God! it was always a foe to my other garments and made them fall to pieces. The mountains should praise God, for, had they been as old as it, they would now be split open and fallen down.

He said also on the same subject:

Ibn Harb! you clothed me in a tailasān which is for the darner as if he sowed corn in a salt marsh. He that first mended it is dead; his sons are dead also, and his grandsons are now turning gray and becoming old men.

By the same on the same subject:

O that my tailasān had a voice when people think that (what we say of it) is a lie! It is like Tūr (Mount Sinas) which was shattered in its strength and in its foundations when God manifested his presence. We so often mended it when it was torn, that nothing now remains but the patches; all the (original) tailasān is gone.

By the same:

Ibn Harb! I see in a corner of my chamber one of those things with which you clothed so many. It is a tailasān which I darned and darned, and of which I repatched the patches. Obedient to decay, it was headstrong and obstinate for him who tried to mend it. When any curious enquirer sees me wear it, he takes me for an apprentice in the art (of darning).

By the same:

Tell Ibn Harb that the people of Noah used to talk of his tailasān. It has never ceased passing down as a heritage through by-gone generations. When eyes are fixed upon it, their glances
It is stated that the poet composed on this tailasân two hundred pieces, each of them containing an original thought. — As for the words of the letter: *nor like the skin of Amr which had been lacerated by beating*, we may observe that they allude to the example cited by grammarians: *Zaid beat Amr*, and which is employed by them, to the exclusion of all others (*in order to illustrate the double action of the verb*). So it might be said of them that they tore to pieces the skin of Amr by frequent beatings. — Al-Hamdûli conceived the idea of composing these epigrams on reading some verses which *Abû Humrân* as-Sulami had made on a tailasân which was worn out to a shred. Here is the piece:

Tailasân of Abû Humrân! existence is for you an affliction, and in it you can find no pleasure. Every second day, patching must be recommenced; how foolish to think that what is old can be rendered new! When I put you on with the intention of being present at a festival or an assembly, people turn aside lest their glances might do it harm.

The idea expressed in the third (*and last*) of these verses is taken from a piece composed by the Motażelite doctor, Abû Ishâk Ibrahim Ibn Saiyâr an-Nazzân al-Balkhi (vol. I, p. 186), and in which he described a youth of a very slender shape:

He is so slender that, if his trousers were taken off, he would become light enough to remain suspended in the air. When people look at him, their glances hurt him, and he complains when pointed at with the finger.

In the month of Ramadân, 626 (July-August, A. D. 1229), a literary man at Mosul recited to me the following verses in which a poet had expressed a similar thought:

My eyes saw her in imagination and, the next morning, her cheek bore the impress which my imaginary glances had left upon it. My heart took her by the hand and caused her fingers to bleed; in touching her fingers, my heart left on them a wound.

The sūfi shaikh Aidmor Ibrahim as-Salami (24) recited to me a quatrain composed by himself on this subject, and which I give here:

When the zephyr blew from Irâk, she (*whom I love*) charged it to bear her salutations to
me, if it could. And it said to me, fearing for her cheek (25) : "If you pass near it, it will be "wounded and complain."

A literary man in decayed circumstances made a piece of verse in which he complained of his poverty and his thread-bare clothes. One of these verses contains an idea similar to the preceding and runs as follows:

My clothes are so completely worn out that I dare not wash them, lest that, whilst I wring them, the last shreds may go off with the water.

The same idea has been often expressed in poetry, but here, brevity is preferable. Let us return to our subject. — The kādi Abū 'l-Mahâsin followed the habits of the Baghdad (court) in his mode of living, in his usages and even in his dress. The men in office who went to visit him dismounted at his door and took, each of them, the place regularly assigned to him, without daring to pass on (and take a higher one). He subsequently travelled to Egypt for the purpose of bringing to Aleppo the daughter of al-Malik al-Kâmil Ibn al-Malik al-Aâdil, whose marriage with al-Malik al-Aziz, the sovereign of Aleppo, he had negotiated. He set out towards the beginning of the year 629 (November, A. D. 1231), or the end of 628, and returned with her in the month of Ramâdan (June-July, A. D. 1232). On his arrival, he found that al-Malik al-Aziz was no longer under guardianship and had taken all the authority into his own hands. The atâbek Toghrul had left the castle and retired to his house at the foot of the fortress. Al-Aziz then let himself be governed by some of the young men who had been his companions and associates; it was them only whom he minded. The kādi Abū 'l-Mahâsin, not receiving such countenance as he had a right to expect, retired to his house and never stirred out till the day of his death; but he continued to fill the place of hâkim and receive the revenue of his īktâd. The utmost to be said on the subject is that his word had no longer any influence with the government and that his advice was never asked for. He then opened his door every day to students who wished to hear him deliver Traditions. His intelligence at length became so feeble that he could no longer recognise those who came to see him; when a visitor stood up and retired, he would ask who he was. He remained in this state for a short time, was then sick for a few days and died at Aleppo on Wednesday, the 14th of Safar, 632 (8th November, A. D. 1234). He was buried in the mausoleum of which we have spoken. I was present at his inter-
ment and at what passed afterwards. The works composed by him were the *Majd *l-Hukkām and *Ilḥāds il-Ahkām (the resource for magistrates when the texts of the law are doubtful), treating of (unforeseen) law-cases, in two volumes; the *Daldil al-Ahkām (indication of the sources from which are drawn the articles of Muslim law), in which he treats of the Traditions from which such articles were deduced, in two volumes; the *al-Mujaz al-Bāhir (eminent compendium) on jurisprudence. Amongst the other works of his we may indicate the *Kitāb Strat Salāh ad-Dīn (the history of Salādin* (26).

He left his house to the Sūfis as a convent (*khangāh*), not having any heir. The legists and Koran-readers frequented his mausoleum for a long time and recited the Koran beside his tomb. Before each of the trellises which we have mentioned, he established seven readers, so that every night, the whole of that book might be read over his grave. Each of the fourteen readers went over one fourteenth part of the volume after the last evening prayer. On the 23rd of the latter *Jumāda* (14th March, A. D. 1235) I set out for Egypt, leaving things in this state, but, since then, great changes have taken place, as I am told, and all these establishments are broken up. — The *shaikh* Najīn ad-Dīn Ibn al-Khabbāz died at Aleppo on the 7th of *Zū l-Hijja*, 631 (3rd September, A. D. 1234), and was buried outside the city, near the Arbaīn gate. I was present at the funeral service and the interment. He was born on the 29th of the first *Rabi*, 557 (18th March, A. D. 1162), at Mosul. — The *atābek* Shihāb ad-Dīn Toghruil died at Aleppo on the eve of Monday, the 11th of *Muharram*, 631 (17th October, A. D. 1233), and was buried in the Hanefite college, outside the Arbaīn gate. He was a slave and, by birth, an Armenian; fair in complexion, virtuous in conduct, praiseworthy in all his actions. I was present at the funeral service and interment. — Abū *l-Hasan* Ibn Kharūf, the literary man of whom we have spoken, lost his life at Aleppo, in the year 604 (A. D. 1207-8), having fallen into a cistern.

(1) See vol. I. page 152.

(2) *As-Štaqī* means native of *Štaqī*, a village in Sijistān. Some manuscripts read *as-Shurjī*, which word signifies a dealer in sesame oil. It is worthy of remark that not one of Bahā ad-Dīn's professors is noticed in the manuscript, n° 861, ancien fonds of the Imperial library, which gives a chronological account of the principal Shafīite doctors. The date of *as-Štaqī's* death is given farther on.

(3) These last titles indicate that the bearer was a member of a Sanajian family, that of the Zirides which reigned at Ashr, a town of Algeria, from the middle of the fourth till the middle of the sixth century of the Hejira.— See my translation of Ibn Khaldūn's history of the Berbers, in French, vol. II. p. 9 et seq.
IBN KHALLIKAN’S

(4) According to Makkari, the Traditionnist Abū Bākr Muḥammad Ibn Ali Yāsir al-Ja’yiʿa, a native of Jaen, in Spain, was born in the year 498 (A. D. 1099-1100). He travelled to the East, visited Irak, rambled over the province of Khurāsān and settled in Balkh. In the year 549 (A. D. 1154-5) he arrived at Samarkand and there taught Traditions. The date of his death is not given.—(Makkari.)

(5) The quarter of Baghdad called al-Harbiya took its name from the Bāb Harb, one of the city gates.

(6) The Arabic term is mold; see vol. II. p. 223.

(7) Saladīn laid siege to Kalat Kaukab, A. H. 583 (A. D. 1187-8) and took it in 584.—(Ibn al-Athīr.)

(8) A dispute for precedence took place between Ibn al-Mukaddam and Muḥir ad-Dīn Taṣḥīḥīn, chief of the pilgrim-caravan from Irak. A scuffle ensued in which the Syrian caravan was attacked and plundered by that of Irak. Ibn al-Mukaddam lost his life in the skirmish.—(Ibn al-Athīr.)

(9) As Abū Muḥāsa had just made the pilgrimage to Mekka, we must suppose that the pilgrimage which he now intended to accomplish was the visiting of the holy places in Syria.

(10) The māsh-hid, or funeral chapel, outside of Mosul, was probably the pretended tomb of Jonas at Ninevah.

(11) The akim was a magistrate with full executive authority.

(12) See vol. III., p. 637.

(13) This passage is given in only one of the manuscripts.

(14) The revenue of any property belonging to the state, such as houses and lands, and the product of certain taxes might be conceded by the sultan as an ḫiḍ (detached portion) to any individual whom he chose o favour. The ḥiḍs were often granted for life and, in some cases, became hereditary. ḫiḍs were granted as fiefs, or benefices, to military chiefs, under the condition that these officers should maintain a certain number of troops and furnish them to the sultan, when required.

(15) The date of this professor’s death is given by our author, at the end of the article.

(16) The chapter on verbal declarations, by which an obligation is acknowledged or an intention expressed, is placed, in most Moslem codes, towards the middle of the volume. It is preceded by the chapter on lawsuits and followed by that which treats of compromises.

(17) Bortās was a town situated to the north of the Caspian sea.

(18) Sefād was besieged and taken by Saladīn A. H. 584 (A. D. 1188-9).—(Ibn al-Athīr.)

(19) According to Hajji Khalīfa, the ḥakāʾīd al-Jumān (collars of pearls) contained an account of the poets who were the author’s contemporaries. It was drawn up by Ibn as-Shīār, a native of Mosul, who died in the year 654 (A. D. 1256). In the second volume of this translation, page 559, his name is incorrectly spelled.

(20) According to Dr. Sontheimer, in his German translation of Ibn al-Baltār’s dictionary of simples, the beladur is the Semecarpus anacardium. The remarkable qualities of the nut which it bears are noticed by authors whose observations are given by Ibn al-Baltār.

(21) In Arabic bakīd. The description which follows indicates clearly what such a piece of dress was and removes every thing doubtful in the note (9) of vol. III., page 299.

(22) The word فتوى or قرط signifies a marten or weasel, but the words خفأة the fur seem to indicate merely a cloak lined with fur, no matter of what nature.

(23) Why a tattered hood should be thrown to a hyena cannot readily be answered. Yet all the manuscripts agree in giving the reading مسابة. In general, those epigrams are insipid and full of far-fetched ideas; but such is usually the case with Moslem anecdotes.
YUSUF IBN OMAR ATH-THAKAFI.

Abū Abd Allah Yūsuf Ibn Omar Ibn Muhammad Ibn al-Hakam Ibn Abi Akil Ibn Masūd was a member of the tribe of Thakif (Thakaf). The rest of his genealogy will be found in our article on al-Hajjāj Ibn Yūsuf, who was his cousin, descended from the same ancestor, al-Hakam Ibn Abi Akil (1). Khalīfa Ibn Khājāt (vol. I. p. 492) relates as follows: "Yūsuf Ibn Omar being appointed governor of Yemen by "" (the khalif) Hishām Ibn b d al-Malik, arrived in that province on the 27th of Ramadān, 106 (15th Feb. A. D. 725). This post he held till the year 120 (A. D. '738), when Hishām sent to him a diploma by which he appointed him to the go-
vernment of Irāk. Yūsuf then left his son as-Salt Ibn Yūsuf in Yemen, to act "" there as deputy-governor." Al-Bukhārī (vol. II. p. 594) says that Yūsuf Ibn Omar was appointed to the government of Irāk in the year 121 (A. D. 739) and that he held it till the year 124. Another author relates as follows: "When Hishām "" Ibn Abd al-Malik wished to dismiss Khālid Ibn Abd Allah al-Kasri (vol I. p. 484) "" from the government of Irāk, a courier came to him from Yūsuf Ibn Omar ath-
Thakaf, the governor of Yemen. He had the messenger brought in and spoke to "" him in these terms: 'Your master has passed the bounds in asking for a thing "" much above his merit.' He then ordered the man's clothes to be torn off and "" had him flogged with a whip. 'Now,' said he, 'go back to your master, and may "" God treat you as you deserve (2). ' He then called in Sālim al-Yamānī who was "" a maqūla to Sālim Ibn Anbasa, a grandson of (the khalif) Abd al-Malik and who, "" at that time, was chief of the board of correspondence. 'Here,' said he, 'is an "" order of mine which must be sent to Yūsuf Ibn Omar; write it out and bring me
‘the letter.’ Sālim retired and drew up the dispatch whilst Hishām, who remained alone, wrote with his own hand to Yūsuf Ibn Omar a short note, containing these words: ‘Go to Irāk, for I have appointed you its governor. Take care not to let any one know what you are about, and rid me of that Christian woman’s son,—meaning Khālid,—and of his intendants.’ This note he held in his hand and, when Sālim returned and presented to him the dispatch which he had written, he (Hishām) slipped his own note into the cover of the other letter, without being perceived and, having sealed all up, he gave orders that the packet should be delivered to Yūsuf’s messenger. Sālim obeyed and the messenger departed. When Yūsuf saw him arrive, he said to him: ‘What news?’ The other replied: ‘Bad! the Commander of the faithful is incensed against you and caused my clothes to be torn off and myself to be whipped. He wrote no answer to the letter which you sent him, but here is a dispatch from the chief of the board (of correspondence).’ Yūsuf broke the seal, read the dispatch and, on finishing, perceived the little note. He, in consequence proceeded to Irāk and left his son as-Salt to act as his lieutenant in Yemen. Sālim was, by this time, replaced in the board of correspondence by Bashir Ibn Abi Talha, a member of one of the (Arab) families established in (the military colony of) Urdonn (the Jordan). This officer, being very intelligent, understood what Hishām’s intentions were and said to himself: ‘This (ill-treatment of the messenger) is a mere stratagem; he has certainly appointed Yūsuf Ibn Omar to the government of Irāk.’ He in consequence wrote the following lines to Iyād, the intendant of (the territory called) Ajma Sālim, for whom he had a sincere affection: ‘Your people have just sent you the Yemanite cloak (4); when it reaches you, put it on and let thanks be given to God.’ He (Iyād) told this news to Tārik, the intendant who had been charged by Khālid Ibn Abd Allah al-Kasri with the administration of Kūfa and its dependancies. Bashir then regretted what he had done and wrote again to Iyād, saying: ‘They were thinking of sending you the Yemanite cloak.’ Iyād communicated this news also to Tārik, who said: ‘The truth is in the first letter, but your friend repented of what he had written, fearing that his conduct might be discovered.’ He immediately rode off and informed Khālid of what was passing. Khālid said to him: ‘What think you best to be done?’ Tārik replied: ‘My advice is that you ride off this very instant to the Commander of the faithful; your presence will make him ashamed of what he is
BIODGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

"‘about and dissipate that prejudice against you which weighs on his mind.’ As
Khâlid did not accept this advice, Târik said: ‘Allow me, in that case, to go and
appear before him; I shall then take the engagement that all the revenue (of the
province) for the present year shall be paid to him immediately.’ Khâlid asked
to how much it would amount, and the other replied: ‘To one hundred millions
of dirhems (5). I shall then bring you a diploma confirming you in your
place.’—‘Where will you get the money?’ said Khâlid, ‘by Allah! I do not
possess ten thousand dirhems.’ Târik replied: ‘I and Said Ibn Râshid will
undertake to pay forty millions of dirhems’—this Said was then holding the
perceptorship of Saki ’l-Furât (the lands irrigated by the Euphrates),—‘az-Zai-
nabi and Abbân Ibn al-Walîd will engage to furnish twenty millions and we shall
make the repartition of the rest amongst the other intendants.’ Khâlid re-
plied: ‘I should be considered as a low-minded man were I to recall favours al-
ready granted.’—‘Nay,’ said Târik, ‘we save not only you but ourselves by
giving up a part of our property; the advantages which you and we enjoy will
then continue, and it is better for us to renew our efforts in the pursuit of wealth
than to let you be prosecuted for the non-payment of the money. The mer-
chants of Kûfa have cash of ours in their hands (let us force them to give it up),
for they will be tempted to delay the payment and wait to see what may become
of us; in that case, we shall be the authors of our own ruin and, when we lose
our lives, they will keep the money and spend it.’ Khâlid refused to follow
this advice and Târik then bade him farewell, saying: ‘This is the last time we
shall see you.’ Yûsuf Ibn Omar then arrived among them; Târik was tortured
to death, and Khâlid with all his intendants suffered every sort of ill treatment.
A number of them were tortured to death, and the money extorted from him and
from his agents by Yûsuf amounted to ninety millions of dirhems.’—In our no-
tice on Khâlid Ibn Abd Allah al-Kasri we have given some account of what happened
to him, and to that article we refer the reader. In our notice on Isa Ibn Omar ath-
Thakafi (vol. II. p. 421) we have related what passed between him and Yûsuf Ibn
Omar, when he was questioned about the deposit confided to him. Abû Bakr Ahmad
Ibn Yahya al-Balâdori (6) says, in his Ansâb al-Ashraf (the genealogies of the descen-
dants of Muhammad) and their history: ‘Hishâm Ibn Abd al-Malik’s mind was turn-
ed against Khâlid Ibn Abd Allah al-Kasri in consequence of some reports which
came to his ears concerning him. He was much displeased on learning how
"wealthy he had got and how numerous were his houses and lands; he was also
highly offended at some things which Khālid had openly said of him. He there-
fore resolved on dismissing him from office, but concealed his intention. The
province of Yemen being then governed in his name by Yūsuf Ibn Omar ath-
Thakafi, he wrote to that functionary, ordering him to set out for Kūfa with
thirty men. Yūsuf having received this letter, to which was joined the act of his
nomination to the government of Irāk, set out on his journey, reached Kūfa after
a march of seventeen days and halted, for the night, in the neighbourhood of the
city. Tārik, to whom Khālid al-Kasri had confided the collectorship of the land-
tax (khārāj), had just circumcised his son and, on this occasion, he (Khālid?)
sent him a present of one thousand blood-horses, one thousand male slaves and
one thousand female slaves, besides a quantity of money, clothes and other objects.
It was then that a man came to Tārik and said: ‘I have just seen some people
whose looks I do not like, and who pretend to be travellers.’ In the mean
time Yūsuf Ibn Omar went to the quarter where the Arabs of the Thakif tribe were
residing and told one of them to assemble and bring him as many Modarite
Arabs (7) as he could. This was done and, at the dawn of day, Yūsuf entered into
the mosque and ordered the muwazzin to recite the ḥāṣma (and thus indicate that
the imām was already at the head of the congregation). The muwazzin replied :
‘Wait till the imam comes;’ but, being intimidated by Yūsuf’s threats, he at
length obeyed. Yūsuf then placed himself at the head of the assembly, directed
the prayer and recited (these verses of the Koran): When the inevitable (day of
judgement) shall suddenly come, etc. (sur. 56, verse 1), and: A person asked (to see
God’s vengeance arrive) (sur. 70, verse 1). He then caused Khālid and Tārik to
be arrested with all their people and at length, the pot boiled over.”—Abū Obaida
(vol. III. p. 388) related as follows: ‘Yūsuf imprisoned Khālid but was indu-
ced to release him and his companions by Abbān Ibn al-Walid, who offered him
nine millions of dirhems (£ 225,000). He then regretted having done so; yet, on
being told that, if he had refused the offer, one hundred millions would have been
given, he replied: ‘I am not a man to retract an engagement, once it is taken by
my tongue.’ Khālid, being informed by his friends of what they had done, said
to them: ‘You did wrong in offering so great a sum at the outset; I am sure that
he will accept it and then come down upon you for more. Go back (and speak)
to him.’ They went to Yūsuf and said: ‘We have mentioned to Khālid the
BIOGRAFIHICAL DICTIONARY.

"... amount of the sum for which we assessed ourselves in order to pay you, and he
"... has declared that he does not possess so much.' Khalid replied: 'Do you know
"... better than your master the state of his fortune? by Allah! I do not ask you for
"... more, but if you wish to go back from your engagement, I will not hinder you.'
"... They replied, that they would retract. 'Well!' said he, 'I declare by Allah! that
"... I shall not be satisfied with nine millions of dirhems nor with twice as much.'
"... He then mentioned thirty millions, or, by another account, one hundred millions.'

— Al-Ashras, who was a mawla of the Banu Asad family and who traded for Yusuf
Ibn Omar, made the following relation: 'A letter came to us from Hisham; Yusuf
"... read it, concealed from us its contents and said: 'I shall go and make the Omra
"... (see vol. III, page 248).' We set out with him whilst his son as-Salt remained
"... behind, as governor of Yemen during his absence. Not a word passed between
"... us till we reached al-Ozaib (vol. III, page 445), when he made his camel
"... kneel down, (dismounted) and said: 'Ashras! where is your guide?' — 'Here he
"... is,' said I. He asked him concerning the road, and the guide answered:
"... 'This takes to Medina and that to Irak.' I then said: 'By Allah! for this time
"... we are not making the Omra; ' but he (Yusuf) made no reply, neither did he
"... open his lips till we halted, one night, at a place situated between al-Hira and
"... Kufa. Having then lain down on his back, he crossed one leg over the other
"... and said:

Our camels were not long in bearing us unto a distant land which we had visited not
long ago.

"... Ashras!' said he, 'find me a man from whom I can obtain information.'
"... I brought him one. 'Ask that fellow,' said he, 'what the son of the Christian
"... woman' — meaning Khalid al-Kasri, — 'is about.' — I said to the man:
"... 'What is Khalid doing?' He answered: 'He is at al-Hamma (8); as he was
"... complaining (of some illness), he went there.' 'Ask him,' said Yusuf, 'what
"... Tariq is about.' The man replied: 'He has been circumcising his sons and is
"... now giving a great dinner to the people of Hira, whilst his lieutenant, Atiya Ibn
"... Miklas (مكلاس) is doing the same at Kufa. — 'Let the fellow go,' said
"... Yusuf. He then mounted (his camel), proceeded to the public place (rahaba),
"... entered into the mosque and said his prayers. After that, he laid down on his
back and we passed there a long night. The muwazzins at length came, made
the call to prayer and pronounced the salutation. Ziad Ibn Abd Allah al-Harithi,
who was then acting in Kufa as Khalid’s deputy, for the presidency of the
prayer, came into the mosque and, as the commencement of the prayer had been
just announced, he went to take his place at the head of the congregation. Yusuf
then said: ‘Ashras! remove that man.’ I told Ziad to give up his place to the
emir, and he did so. Yusuf, who could recite the Koran with great elegance,
threw the presidency, repeated the verses: When the inevitable shall come,
and: A person asked to see God’s vengeance arrive, and accomplished the prayer
of day-break. The kaddi then stepped forward, offered to God praise and thanks-
giving, said a prayer for the Khalif and asked of us what was our emir’s name.
Being told it, he prayed for his welfare. All the people (of the city) had joined
the congregation before it separated. Yusuf lost not a moment in sending
for Khalid, and for Abban Ibn al-Walid who was in Fars, and for Bilal Ibn Abi
Burda (vol. II, p. 2) who was in Basra, and for Abd Allah Ibn Abi Burda,
who was in Sijistan. Hisham had given orders that all Khalid’s lieutenants
should be deposed, with the exception of al-Hakam Ibn Awana who was
governing the province of Sind. This officer was confirmed in his place
and there he remained till he was killed by Nakeher (9). He lost his life
on the same day as Zaid Ibn Ali (10). Khalid, on arriving, was informed
that Yusuf was now the emir, on which he exclaimed: ‘Let me alone with
your emir! is the Commander of the faithful still alive?’ Being answered
in the affirmative, he said: ‘In that case, I have nothing to fear.’ Yusuf,
before whom they brought him, sent him to prison and ordered thirty strokes of
a whip to be inflicted on Yazid, the son of Khalid. Hisham then wrote to Yusuf,
saying: ‘I declare solemnly before God that if Khalid receives (from you) even
the scratch of a thorn, I shall have your head struck off.’ Khalid, being allowed
to depart with his family and baggage, went to Syria, took up his residence
there and continued, till the death of Hisham, to accompany, every summer,
the usual expeditions made against the infidels.” — Some persons state that
Yusuf applied to Hisham for the authorisation of putting Khalid to the rack,
but did not obtain it. He insisted however in his demand, pretexting that the
public revenue had been embezzled by Khalid and his agents, and received at
length permission to torture him, but once only. The Khalif sent a soldier
of the guard to witness what would be done, and swore that, if Khâlid died during the operation, he would take Yûsuf’s life. The latter then sent for Khâlid and, having taken his seat in a trader’s stall at Hîra, he convoked the people and caused him to be tortured. Khâlid did not utter a word till Yûsuf spoke to him tauntingly and called him a son of a diviner, meaning the celebrated diviner Shikk, who was one of Khâlid’s ancestors. — We have spoken of Shikk in our article on Khâlid. — Let us resume the narration: On this, Khâlid said: “You are a silly fellow to reproach me with what does me honour; but you are the son of a sabbd; your father was a mere sabbd,” or dealer in wine. Khâlid was then taken back to prison, and he remained there for eighteen months. In the month of Shawwâl, 121 (September–October A.D. 739), Hishâm wrote to him (Yûsuf), ordering the prisoner to be set at liberty. Khâlid then set out with part of his family and some other persons. On reaching al-Karya, a place in the territory of ar-Rusâfa, he stopped there during the remainder of the month and the months of Zû ’l-Kaada, Zû ’l-Hijja, Muharram and Safar, but was unable to obtain from Hishâm the authorisation of going to see him. — Al-Haitham Ibn Adi (vol III, p. 633) related as follows: “Zaid, the son of Ali Zain al-Aâbidin (vol. II, p. 209), who was the son of al-Husain and the grandson of Ali Ibn Tâlib, revolted against Yûsuf Ibn Omar who, in consequence wrote the following lines to Hishâm: ‘Your cousins of that family were dying of hunger and not a man of them had any other thought than to procure his daily food, till Khâlid, on receiving the government of Irâk, strengthened them with money to such a degree that their minds aspired to the khilafat. Zaid would not have revolted without Khâlid’s per- mission, and Khâlid’s sole motive for remaining at al-Karya is his wish to be on the high-road, so that he may readily obtain news of his proceedings.’ Hishâm replied to the bearer of this message: ‘You lie and so does your master; whatever our suspicions may be with respect to Khâlid’s conduct, we have never had any doubts of his fidelity.’ He then caused the messenger’s throat to be compressed (till he was half-strangled). Khâlid, on learning what was going on, set out for Damascus.” — Abû ’l-Hasan al-Madâini (vol. I, p. 438) says: “Bilâl, the son of Abû Burda (vol. II, p. 2) and the grandson of Abû Mûsâ ’l-Ashârî, was the person whom Khâlid al-Kasri entrusted with the government of Basra. He was tortured by order of Yûsuf Ibn Omar till he engaged to pay three hundred thousand dirhems. He offered bail for the amount and, when it was given vol. IV.
in, he fled to Syria. There he was discovered by the circumstance of his
"servant-boy’s going to buy a francolin. According to another account, his servant
"was roasting a francolin and let it burn; for this, he was beaten by his master and
"therefore betrayed him. Bilâl, being taken before Yûsuf Ibn Omar, was kept
"exposed to the sun by that emir’s order. He requested to be taken before the
"Commander of the faithful, saying: ‘Let him treat me as he pleases;’ but he
"(the khalîf) refused to receive him and sent him back to Yûsuf, who caused
"him to be tortured to death. Abd Allah, the brother of Bilâl, said to the jailor:
"‘When you give in the names of the prisoners who die, inscribe that of my bro-
"ther (±±) on the list.’ He did so, but, being ordered by Yûsuf to produce the
"corpse, he smothered the prisoner. According to another statement, its was Bilâl
"who asked the jailor to inscribe the name on the dead-list, promising him a sum
"of money if he did so. The jailor then gave in his name as dead. Some say that
"it was Abd Allah who was tortured to death. God knows best!’ — Yûnus the
"grammarians (11) related as follows: ‘Bilâl’s cunning cost him his life: by the offer
"of money he induced the jailor to inscribe his name on the dead-list, but, as
"Yûsuf ordered the corpses to be produced, the jailor smothered Bilâl and then
"showed his body.’ — The following anecdote is related by al-Madâini: ‘Sâlih Ibn
"Kuraiz had been appointed to a commandment by Yûsuf Ibn Omar. The exami-
"nation of his accounts proved that a sum of thirty thousand (gold pieces?) was due
"by him to government and, for that reason, he was sent to prison. Bilâl Ibn Abi
"Barda, who was then in the same place of confinement, said to him: ‘The man
"who directs the application of the torture is called Sâlim, but people give him the
"nickname of Zenbil (haunched like a female). Take care not to call him Zenbil,
"for he will be displeased.’ Bilâl repeated to him this recommendation very often.
"Sâlih, being put to the torture, forgot Sâlim’s name and surname, and began to cry
"out: ‘O Zenbil! spare me for the love of God.’ (12). During the tortures inflicted
"on him he continued to repeat these words whilst he (Sâlim) kept exclaiming:
"‘Kill the fellow!’ so great was his anger. When Sâlih was let go, Bilâl said to
"him: ‘Did I not tell you to avoid uttering the name of Zenbil?’ To this Sâlih re-
"plied: ‘Who taught me that name except yourself? I had known nothing of it were
"it not for you. You will never give over your wicked tricks, either in prospe-
"rity or in adversity.’ — The same al-Madâini said: ‘The chief of Yûsuf Ibn
"Omar’s police-guards was al-Abbâs Ibn Said al-Murri; his secretaries were Kahram
(13) Ibn Sulaimān Ibn Zikwān and Zīād Ibn Abd ar-Rahmān, who was a mawla to the Thakif tribe; his chamberlain and the chief of his body-guard was Jundub. It was to him (Yūsuf) that the poet alluded in this verse:

"An emir of extreme severity has come to us: the very chamberlain of his chamberlain has for himself a chamberlain (الحاجب حاجب حاجب).

The ḥāfiz Abū 'l-Kāsim Ibn Asākir (vol. II. p. 252) says, in his History of Damascus: "I have been informed that Yūsuf Ibn Omar, when arrested with the other members of al-Hajjāj Ibn Yūsuf's family and tortured in order to make him give up his money, obtained permission to be taken out of prison so that he might ask (of his friends pecuniary assistance). He made his rounds under the guard of al-Hārith Ibn Malik al-Juhdami, who was noted for his negligence. On coming to a certain house which had two entrances, he said to al-Hārith: "Let me go into this house; I have there an aunt to whom I wish to apply." Having obtained permission, he went in, passed out through the other door and made his escape. This took place when Sulaimān Ibn Abd al-Malik was khalīf. Yūsuf Ibn Omar followed the example of al-Hajjāj Ibn Yūsuf, his father's cousin, in the firmness and severity with which he directed public affairs and treated the people; this line of conduct he followed till his dismissal from office." — Omar Ibn Shabba (vol. II. p. 375) relates, in his History of Basra, that Yūsuf Ibn Omar, having weighed a dirhem and found it too light by one grain, wrote to all the coining establishments in Irāk, ordering the persons employed there to be chastised; and it was reckoned that one hundred thousand lashes were applied on account of the deficiency of a single grain. Yūsuf's conduct as a governor was highly repro Nabated; he was fantastic and cruel, but his hospitality was great. He used to have five hundred tables set out, and to these were admitted people from all quarters, far and near; the native of Irāk would partake of the repast with the native of Syria. On every table was placed a cake of bread (furniya) sprinkled over with sugar. The guests at one of these tables happening, one day, to complain that their cake was not sugared, Yūsuf ordered the baker to be chastised, and three hundred lashes were inflicted on him whilst the company were at their meal. Ever after, the baker would go about with the sugar-boxes and add sugar wherever it was wanted. — Al-Hakam Ibn Awāna related that his father said to him: "There is none like (the tribe of) Kalb for strengthening an empire; none like Kuraish for mounting into the pulpit; none like
Tamim for taking vengeance; none like Thakif for tending flocks (governing the people); none like Kais for defending frontiers; none like Rabia for exciting revolts, and none like Yemen for collecting imposts. — Al-Asma'i (vol. II. p. 123) relates as follows: "Yūsuf Ibn Omar said to a man whom he had nominated to the government of a district: 'Enemy of God! you have eaten up the wealth which belonged to God.' The man replied: 'Tell me whose wealth I have been eating from the day in which I was created till now? By Allah! if I asked from Satan a single dirhem, he would not give it to me.'"—Nasr Ibn Saiyār al-Laithi was appointed to the government of Khorāsān by Yūsuf Ibn Omar, and he held that post till the last days of the Omayyad dynasty. His battles and engagements with Abū Muslim al-Khorāsānī (vol. II. p. 100) are set forth in their proper places (the books of annals). It was on Yūsuf that Sawwār Ibn al-Ashār (14) composed these lines:

Khorāsān, after its alarms, was delivered from the tyranny of its numerous oppressors; Yūsuf, being informed of what it suffered, chose Nasr Ibn Saiyār for its protector (nasr).

The following anecdote was related by Simāk Ibn Harb (15): "Yūsuf Ibn Omar, when governor of Irāk, sent to me this message: 'One of my intendents has written to me, saying that he has cultivated for me every khukk and lukk. 'What do these words mean?' I replied: Khukk signifies a low ground, and lukk a high one.'—Here ends the anecdote, but I must observe that al-Jauhari (vol. I. p. 22) says, in his Sahāh: "Khukk means a soil rendered dry by draining off its waters; lukk means a long stripe, or, according to some, a deep excavation in the earth." Khukk is written with a pointed kha. — Yūsuf Ibn Omar was remarked for the extraordinary length of his beard and the shortness of his stature; his beard reached lower down than his navel. He held the government of Irāk during the rest of Hishām Ibn Abd al-Malik's reign. That khalif died on Wednesday, the 6th of the latter Rabi, 125 (6th February, A. D. 743), at ar-Rusāfa, in the district of Kinnisrin, and there he was buried. He lived to the age of fifty-five years, or fifty-four, by another account, or fifty-two; God knows best! His surname was Abū 'l-Walid. He was succeeded by his nephew al-Walid Ibn Yazid Ibn Abd al-Malik, who confirmed Yūsuf Ibn Omar in the government of Irāk. Al-Walid was killed on Thursday, the 27th of the latter Jumāda, 126 (16 April, A. D. 744). He intended to have replaced Yūsuf Ibn Omar by Abd al-Malik Ibn Muhammad, the
grandson of al-Hajjāj Ibn Yūsuf ath-Thakafi. Al-Walīd Ibn Yazīd's mother, surnamed Omm al-Hajjāj (16), was the daughter of Muhammad Ibn Yūsuf and therefore niece to al-Hajjāj. The following letter was then sent to Yūsuf Ibn Omar by "al-Walīd : You have written to me, stating that Khalīd Ibn Abd Allah al-Kasri had "ruined the province of Irāk, and yet you used to send loads (of wealth) to Hishām. "It must be then that, by reviving agriculture, you have restored that country to "its former state. Come therefore to us and bring with you such a convoy (of "money) as may confirm our favorable opinion respecting your efforts in forwarding "the prosperity of the province. We shall then acknowledge your preeminent "merit, and that the more readily, on account of the relationship which exists bet-
ween us; you are our uncle by the mother's side and have more right than any "other man to our consideration. You are aware that we have augmented the do-
natives to which the people of Syria (the Arabic troops established in that country) "are entitled and that we made gifts to our family in consequence of His-
hām's harshness towards them. The result has been the impoverishment of our "treasury." In consequence of this invitation Yūsuf set out to visit al-Walīd Ibn Yazīd, and took with him such a quantity of treasure, merchandise and vases as was never before brought from Irāk. At the time of his arrival, Khalīd Ibn Abd Allah al-Kasri was still in prison. Hassān an-Nabāṭī (vol. I. p. 674) had an inter-
view with him (Yūsuf) by night and informed him that al-Walīd had the intention of appointing Abd Allah Ibn Muhammad Ibn al-Hajjāj (to the government of Irāk) and that he should by all means arrange the affair of his (Hassān's) nomination to the vizirship. Yūsuf answered that he had no money, on which Hassān said: "I have "five hundred thousand dirhems (about £13,500) which, if you wish, I shall give "you as a present, or, if not, (as a loan which) you will repay to me when you get "rich." Yūsuf replied: "You know the people (at court) better than I, and can "well appreciate the extent of their influence over al-Walīd. Do you therefore "distribute that money amongst them, in proportion to what you know of their "credit." Hassān did so, and Yūsuf, on his arrival, was highly extolled by all the party. It was then agreed upon between him and Abbān Ibn Abd ar-Rahmān an-
Numairi that the latter should offer (to the khalīf) forty millions of dirhems (more than one million sterling) to obtain that Khalīd Ibn Abd Allah al-Kasri should be delivered up to him. Al-Walīd (having received Yūsuf's visit,) told him to return to his government. Abbān then said to him: "Deliver Khalīd up to me and
“I shall pay you forty millions of dirhems.” — “Who goes security for you?” said the khalif. Abbān replied: “Yūsuf.” — “Do you become security for him?” said al-Walīd to Yūsuf. The answer was: “Deliver him (Khālid) up to me and I shall force out of him fifty millions of dirhems.” He (al-Walīd) gave up the prisoner to Yūsuf, who enclosed him in a litter without cushions, bore him to Irāk and put him to death in the manner already related (col. l. p. 486). — When al-Walīd Ibn Yazīd was killed, his cousin, Yazīd Ibn al-Walīd Ibn Abd al-Malik, obtained the supreme authority, brought under his command the people of Syria (the Arab troops settled there), and succeeded in consolidating his power. The government of Irāk was then offered by him to Abd al-Azīz Ibn Hārūn Ibn Abd al-Malik Ibn Dihya Ibn Khalīfa al-Kalbi, who replied that, unless troops were given to him, he would not accept. On this, Yazīd turned away from him and nominated Mansūr Ibn Jumhūr. — According to Abū Mihnaf (17), al-Walīd was slain at al-Bakhra (18), on the date above mentioned. Yazīd was proclaimed khalif at Damascus, and Mansūr Ibn Jumhūr set out for Irāk with six companions, on the day of al-Walīd’s death. Yūsuf Ibn Omar, being informed of his approach, took to flight. Mansūr Ibn Jumhūr arrived at Hirā some days after the commencement of Rajab, took possession of the treasure houses (the state treasury), distributed money to those who were entitled to donatives or to pensions, and appointed governors to all the provinces of Irāk. He remained there during the rest of the month of Rajab, the whole of Shabān, and was dismissed from office towards the end of Ramadān. Yūsuf Ibn Omar took the road of as-Samāwa and continued his flight till he reached al-Balkā, where he found a place of concealment. As his family were residing there, he dressed himself in women’s clothes and took his seat among the females. Yazīd Ibn al-Walīd, having learned where he had gone, sent a person to arrest the fugitive and bring him to the capital. The messenger made every search, and Yūsuf was at length found by him, dressed in female attire and seated amongst his women and children. He was put into bonds and carried to Yazīd who sent him to the place in which al-Hakam and Othmān, the sons of al-Walīd Ibn Yazīd, were imprisoned by his orders. On the death of their father, Yazīd had shut them up in the Green House (al-Khadrd), a well-known palace in Damascus which was situated on the south side of the principal mosque and which is now destroyed; its place is, however, well-known to the people of the city. Yazīd Ibn al-Walīd then took the government of Irāk from Mansūr Ibn Jumhūr and gave it to Abd Allah Ibn Omar Ibn Abd al-Azīz.
Yûsuf Ibn Omar remained in confinement during the rest of Yazîd's reign. That khalif died in Zû 'l-Hidjja, 126 (Sept.-Oct. A. D. 744), but statements differ greatly as to the day of the month: some say it was the first, others the tenth, and others the last day of Zû'l-Ka'ada. He had designated as successor to the throne his brother Ibrâhîm Ibn al-Walîd, and ordered that the supreme authority should pass from the latter to Abd al-Azîz Ibn al-Hajjâj Ibn Abd al-Malik. During the reign of Ibrâhîm Ibn al-Walîd, Yûsuf Ibn Omar remained in prison. Marwan Ibn Muhammad, the last sovereign of the Omaiyide dynasty, having made his apparition with the troops of Mesopotamia and Kinnisrin, got possession of the empire, dethroned Ibrâhîm, took his place and put to death Abd al-Azîz Ibn al-Hajjâj Ibn Abd al-Malik. Ibrâhîm reigned four months and was deposed in the month of the latter Rabî', 127 (Jan.-Feb. A. D. 745). According to another statement he reigned seventy days only. Yazîd, the son of Khâlid Ibn Abd Allah al-Kasri, had sided with Ibrâhîm Ibn al-Walîd. When the revolt of Marwân broke out, a conflict took place between his troops and those of Ibrâhîm. The latter were defeated and returned to Damascus. Ibrâhîm's partisans were pursued by Marwân and, being apprehensive that, if he entered into the city, he would deliver from prison al-Hakam and Othmân, the sons of al-Walîd, for the purpose of transferring to them the supreme authority, and that these two princes would then have no mercy on any of the persons who had contributed to their father's death, they resolved on putting them to death. Yazîd, the son of Khalîd al-Kasri, was charged to execute this decision, and Abû 'l-Asad, one of his father's mawâlas, went, with some others, to the prison and beat the two youths to death with clubs. Yûsuf Ibn Omar was taken by them out of the same prison and beheaded, to avenge the death of Khâlid, the father of Yazîd. This occurred in the year 127 (A. D. 745). Yûsuf was then upwards of sixty years of age. When his head was separated from the body, a rope was tied to the legs, and the little boys began to drag the corpse through the streets of Damascus. A woman who passed by and saw how small the body was, exclaimed: "Why did they kill that unfortunate boy?" A person (of Damascus) related as follows: "I saw Yûsuf Ibn Omar dragged through Damascus by means of a cord which had been tied to his testicles, and I afterwards saw his murderer, Yazîd, the son of Khâlid al-Kasri, dragged over the same ground by means of a cord tied to his testicles." According to another account, he (Yûsuf) was put to death towards the middle of the month of Zû 'l-Hijja, 126 (Sept.-Oct. A. D. 744).
448  IBN KHALLIKAN'S


(2) Literally: May God treat you and do with you! A common imprecation of old times and equivalent to: May God's curse be upon you!

(3) Literally: What is behind you? In English we would say: What is going on below there?

(4) The cloth of Yemana was probably at that time highly prized; but here, a Yemenite cloak means a governor from that place.

(5) At that time, one hundred millions of dirhems were equal to at least two millions five hundred thousand pounds sterling.

(6) To the indications given in vol. I, p. 438, I may add that al-Balādorī's history of the conquests effected by the early Musulmans has been published, in Arabic, at Leyden by Mr de Goeje. It is a highly valuable work, full of original matter and most remarkable as a precise and conscientious treatise.

(7) According to the Arabian genealogists, the tribe of Thakif descended from Modar through Kais Ailān.

(8) Al-Hummān is the name given to every place where there is a spring of hot water.

(9) This name, written in Arabic letters, is كفر, but it is probably pointed incorrectly. The person who bore it was apparently one of the princes of India who were warring against the Musulmans established in Sīnd.

(10) Zaid, the son of Ali Zain al-Abīdīn (vol. II, p. 259) revolted against the Omayyade khalif Hishām Ibn Abd al-Malik, A. H. 131 (A. D. 749), and fell on the field of battle, the following year.

(11) The life of Yūnus the grammarian will be found in this volume.

(12) The Arabic equivalent means: Fear God!

(13) I read رخق.

(14) Sawwār Ibn Abd Allah al-Asbar was appointed governor and kadi of Basra by the Abbaside khalif al-Mansūr, A. H. 186 (A. D. 772-3). He died in the following year.—(Naj-den.)

(15) The Traditionist Simāk Ibn Harb died A. H. 188 (A. D. 749-1).—(Naj-den.)

(16) The Arabic text inserts here: "who was also the mother of al-Hajjāj" but this indication is in contradiction with what follows.

(17) Abū Mihnafl Lot Ibn Yahya, one of the earliest Arabic historians, composed a short work extending from the death of the khalif Ali to that of his son al-Husain. He wrote probably in the second century of the Hējira. A copy of this treatise is in the library of the Leyden university, under the no 791.

(18) According to the indications furnished by the author of the Mardīrī, the place called al-Bakhrā was situated on the northern frontier of Hijāz.

YUSUF IBN TASHIFIN (1).  

Abū Yakūb Yūsuf Ibn Tashiīfin (2), the Lamtūnīde (3) and king of the al-Mukaththimīn (4), bore the title of Emīr al-Mustimīn (Commander of the Moslims) (5). It
was he who founded the city of Morocco. In our articles on the two Spanish sovereigns al-Motamid Muhammad Ibn Abbâd (vol. III, p. 182) and al-Motasim Muhammad Ibn Sumâdîh (vol. III, p. 200) we have mentioned some things concerning him and related how he took possession of their states, reduced al-Motamid into captivity and imprisoned him in Aghmât. As I have there given a full relation of these proceedings, to it I refer the reader, so that he may perceive the identity of the king there mentioned with the great and powerful sovereign of whom we are now giving an account. Historians relate many things concerning him, and one of their works, which bears the title of Kitâb al-Maghrib an Strat Maliḳ al-Maghreb (the Expositor, setting forth the proceedings of the king of the West), is that from which we have extracted the following information. I preferred it because it was more comprehensive than the others, but I am unable to indicate the name of the author. All I know of him is that, towards the beginning of the volume which I made use of, he states that he commenced the work in the year 579 (A. D. 1183-4) (6) and finished it at Mosul on the 1st of Zū 'l-Kaada of the same year. Out of this volume, which is a middle-sized one, I have selected the following passages. — The southern part of the country inhabited by the Maghrebins belonged to a Berber race called the Zenâta. Against this people marched another which was designated by the name of al-Mu-laththimân and which dwelt in the region that lies contiguous to the land of the Negroes (7). The leader of the invaders bore the name of Abû Bakr Ibn Omar. He was a man accustomed to a simple life, virtuous in his conduct, preferring his own country to that of Maghreb and having no inclination for the luxuries of life. The chiefs of the Zenâta had little power and, as they were unable to resist the Mu-laththimân, the latter took possession of all their country, from the gates of Tilimsân to the shore of the Surrounded ocean (the Atlantic). When Abû Bakr Ibn Omar got this country into his power, he was informed that an old woman in his own country had a female camel stolen from her in a foray and begun to weep, exclaiming: "Abû Bakr Ibn Omar has ruined us by entering into the land of Maghreb!" This induced him to return to the South and leave as his lieutenant in Maghreb a man called Yusuf Ibn Tâshîfin. This Yusuf was brave, just and enterprising. The city of Morocco, in Maghreb, was founded by him on a spot where robbers used to lie in ambush and which belonged to an old Masmûda woman. When his authority was established throughout the country (of Maghreb), he conceived the wish of passing into Spain (Andalus), which peninsula was (bounded and) fortified by the sea.

VOL. IV.
He therefore constructed galleys and other vessels for the purpose of going across to that country. When the kings of Andalus (Moslem Spain) discovered his intention, they equipped a number of vessels and warriors for the purpose of resisting him, so much did they fear his approach towards their peninsula. The fact was that they stood in dread of his army which, as they well knew, would be for them most difficult to resist, and they shuddered at the idea of having enemies at both sides of them, namely, the Franks on the north, and the Mulaththinân on the south. Whenever they felt the Franks bear too heavily upon them, they kept them in check by manifesting their intention of contracting an alliance with Yusuf Ibn Tâshîfîn. That sovereign had acquired great renown by his effecting so speedily the conquest of the Zenatian empire and of Maghreb. It was reported that the bravest of the Mulaththinân warriors, when in battle, would cut a horseman in two with a single stroke of a sword and pierce through the bodies (of several adversaries) with a single stroke of a lance. Such was the practise of these (kings) and such the fear which filled the hearts of those who were summoned to war against the Mulaththinân. Thus did the kings of Andalus take refuge under the shelter of Yusuf Ibn Tâshîfîn's name; and yet they dreaded his crossing over to them, lest, on seeing their kingdoms, he might be tempted to seize on them. When they discovered that his intention of passing into Spain was already formed, they sent, one to the other, messengers and letters, requesting advice concerning him (Yusuf). In that conjuncture, their main resource was the aid of al-Motamid Ibn Abbâd, because he was the bravest of them all and the sovereign of the greatest kingdom. They therefore agreed on writing to him (to Yusuf Ibn Tâshîfîn), whose intention of going over to them they were now well aware of, requesting him to leave them as they were and assuring him of their perfect obedience. A kûtib (writer, secretary), who was a native of Spain, drew up, in their name, the following letter: “If you let us alone, your conduct will be attributed, not to weakness but to generosity, and if we obey your orders, our conduct will be attributed, not to helplessness but to prudence. We therefore prefer the attribution which is the more honorable for ourselves, hoping that you will prefer the attribution which is the more honourable for you. The place which you hold is one in which you should not let yourself be surpassed in noble acts; by sparing (us who are) members of distinguished families, you will obtain for the duration and the stability of your power all that you can wish for. Salutation!” The letter arrived, accompanied with gifts.
and presents. Yūsuf Ibn Tāshīfīn did not know Arabic, but he understood perfectly well the drift (of such applications). His secretary, who knew the two languages, that of the Arabs and that of the Almoravides (the Berber), then said to him: "Emir! this letter is from the kings of Andalus; in it they offer you their profound respect, declare that they are partisans of your cause and acknowledge your authority; they request of you not to consider them as enemies and they say: 'We are musulmans, come of a noble race; let us not therefore incur your displeasure (8). It is for us a sufficient misfortune to have close behind us a people of infidels. Our country is much straitened and cannot support numerous armies. Spare us therefore, as you have spared the people of Maghreb who acknowledged your authority.'" Yūsuf then asked his secretary what he thought of the matter, and received this answer: "The crown of royalty and its beauty have a testimony in their favour which cannot be repelled, provided that he (9) into whose hands the kingdom has fallen prove himself worthy of it by pardoning when pardon is asked and by granting favours when favours are requested. Every time that he bestows an ample gift, he increases his influence; increase of influence consolidates his dominion, and when his dominion is consolidated, people think it an honour to obey him; when obedience is felt to be an honour, the people come unto him, and he is not obliged to encounter fatigues for the purpose of reaching them, and he thus inherits the kingdom without ruining his (happiness in the) next life. Know that it was said by a great king, who was a sage well acquainted with the means by which royalty is to be attained: 'He who bestows may command; he who commands may lead, and he who leads (an army) becomes master of the land (10).'" Yūsuf Ibn Tāshīfīn, to whom this discourse was addressed in his own language by the secretary, understood its import and felt its truth. He therefore said to him: "Let those people have an answer; draw up a fitting one and then read it over to me." The secretary wrote as follows: "In the name of God, the Merciful, the Clement! From Yūsuf Ibn Tāshīfīn, greeting, with the mercy of God and his benedictions! Such is the good wish of one who is in peace with you and salutes you. May God's decree respecting you be that of aid and assistance! You have full power to enjoy as you please the royalty which is in your hands, being specially honoured with our favour and our benevolence. As long as you hold to your engagements towards us, we shall hold to ours towards you; that we may live in good brotherhood with you, you must live
in good brotherhood with us. May God dispense his grace to us and to you! Salutation!" When the secretary had finished writing, he translated the letter verbally to Yūsuf Ibn Tāshīfīn, who approved of it and sent it off with a present of Lantian shields, things not to be procured except in his country. — I may here mention that the adjective Lantian is derived from Lamta, which is the name of a small town in Ulterior Sūs, at a twenty days' journey from Sijilmassa. So says Ibn Haukal in his work entitled Roads and Realms. That country is the only place which furnishes Lantian shields; it is said that they are not to be found anywhere else. — When the kings of Andalus received this letter, they were filled with love for Yūsuf and extolled him highly; they rejoiced at the offer of his friendship, were pleased at his obtaining the sovereignty of Māghreb, and their hearts were fortified in the hope of repelling the Franks. It was therefore resolved on between them that, if they remarked in the conduct of the king of the Franks anything to disquiet them, they would inform Yūsuf Ibn Tāshīfīn of the circumstance and become his auxiliaries. It was thus that Yūsuf, by the good management of his secretary (11), obtained that which he wished for, namely, the good-will of the people of Andalus; all that he wanted was an opportunity of making war in their defense. Alphonso, the son of Ferdinand (Adhīfons Ibn Fierdeh), the sovereign of Toledo, which was the capital of the kingdom of the Franks, had (again) begun to harry the (Moslim) territory, to take by force the towns of Andalus and to make exorbitant demands from the kings of that country, exacting from them the towns of which they were masters. It was particularly towards al-Motamid Ibn Abbād that he acted in this manner, because the latter was more exposed to his attacks. In our article on al-Motamid (vol. III. p. 189), we have mentioned the date of the taking of Toledo by Alphonso and inserted verses which had been composed on that occasion. Al-Motamid, having considered what was passing, perceived that Alphonso had hopes of seizing on those parts of the country which were contiguous to his own; so, he at length resolved on inviting Yūsuf Ibn Tāshīfīn to come over to Spain, notwithstanding the danger (of his presence) and his conviction that the proximity of a people belonging to another race (the Berbers) would lead to the ruin (of the Arabs). He felt that the Mulaththimin (or Almoravides) would be for him adversaries quite as formidable as the Franks. "If we succumb," said he, "under the attacks of an adversary, it will be less painful for us to fall before the Mulaththimin; better that our children should tend the camels of the Mulaththimin-
"than herd the swine of the Franks!" On this project he kept his eyes always fixed, (meaning to adopt it) whenever he should be forced to do so. On a certain year, Alphonso sallied forth with a great multitude of Franks and overrun the provinces of Andalus. The (Moslim) kings feared for their states; the inhabitants of the villages and cantons fled before the invader and took refuge in the fortresses. Al-Motamid Ibn Abbâd then wrote to Yûsuf Ibn Tâshîfîn, saying: "If you wish to engage in the holy war, now is your time: Alphonso has invaded the country. Has ten therefore to come over to us and encounter him. We, the people of Andalus, will lead the march." Yûsuf, having already terminated his preparations, hastened to send his troops across the strait. When the kings of Andalus learned that the people of Maghreb were coming over for the purpose of engaging in holy war, they had already promised to themselves that they would assist them, and made preparations for marching. Alphonso, perceiving that they were all unanimous in the resolution of resisting him, felt that the year in which he was would be a year of conflict, and therefore called on the Franks to take the field. That people came forward in such numbers that God alone would have been able to count them. The troops continued to assemble and to join successively with others till the Spanish peninsula was filled with the cavalry and infantry of both parties; the troops of each kingdom being assembled around their respective sovereigns. When all the army of Yûsuf Ibn Tâshîfîn had crossed over, to the last man, he sent after them so many camels that the peninsula was choked up with their multitude, whilst their cries reached to the vault of heaven. The people of Spain had never seen camels, and the Spanish horses, not being accustomed to the strangeness of their shape and the singularity of their cries, were filled with trouble and affright. Yûsuf had therefore a good idea in sending them over, so that they might form a line all round his army and be the first to enter into battle; he knew that the horses of the Franks would be scarred at the sight of them and start away. When all the troops were in readiness, they advanced against Alphonso, who was posted in a wide plain called az-Zallâka and situated near Badajoz. According to al-Baiyâsi (12), there is a distance of four parasangs between the two places. He says also (13): Before commencing hostilities, Yûsuf sent forward a letter by which, in accordance with the obligation imposed by the Sunna (or practise of Muhammed), he gave to Alphonso the choice of Islamism, or of war, or of tribute. One passage of this document ran as follows: "I have been informed, o Alphonso! that you prayed for an encounter with us (ما) and wished to
have ships in which you might cross over the sea to meet us. We have now crossed it to meet you; God has brought us both together in the same territory, and you will therefore see the result of your prayer. *But the prayer of the unbelievers serves only to lead them into error* (Koran, sur. 13, verse 15)." When Alphonso heard the contents of this letter, the ocean of his choler boiled up, his arrogance increased still more, and he declared by a solemn oath that he would not stir from the place where he was till he (Yûsuf) came to meet him. Ibn Tâshifin and those who were with him then advanced in the direction of az-Zallâka. When the Moslims arrived there, they halted opposite the Franks. Al-Motamid Ibn Abbâd had preferred being the first to attack the enemy and agreed with Yûsuf Ibn Tâshifin that, if his own troops were repulsed and pursued, the African army would make a conversion so as to encounter the Franks and operate its junction with the troops of Andalus. When this movement was executed, the Franks were frustrated in their expectations; the Moslim troops got in among them and direful was the slaughter. None of the Franks escaped except Alphonso who, accompanied by less than thirty of his partisans, fled to his capital, where he arrived in a miserable state. His arms, his horses and his baggage fell into the hands of the Moslims, who thus obtained a rich booty. — I must here observe that the battle took place on Friday, the 15th of Rajab, 479 (26th October, A. D. 1086). According to another statement, it occurred on one of the last ten days of Ramadân (beginning of Jan. 1087). God knows best! — Al-Baiyâsi states that the Moslim army (that of Yûsuf) landed at Algeziras in the month of Muharram, 479 (April–May, A. D. 1086). — It is related that, on the field of battle, wide as it was, not a spot was to be found where a man could set his foot without treading on a dead body or in a plash of blood. The (Moslim) troops remained there four days, until the spoil was collected. When all was gathered in, Yûsuf abstained from taking it and bestowed the whole on the Spanish kings, declaring, at the same time, that his purpose had been, not to gain booty but to make war. These princes, seeing how he favoured them in preference to himself, were profuse in testifying their respect, their love and their gratitude. Yûsuf then decided on returning to his own kingdom. When he was advancing to encounter Alphonso, he marched purposely through the open country, without passing through any town or canton, and so he continued till he halted at az-Zallâka, overagainst Alphonso. There it was that he effected his junction with the troops of Andalus. — Abû 'l-Hajjâj Yûsuf Ibn Muhammad al-Baiyâsi says, in his *Tazkîr al-
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

Abkil wa Tanbth al-Ghālī (remembrancer for the intelligent and warner for the inattentive): "Ibn Tāshīfīn halted at the distance of less than a parasang from the enemy. This was on a Wednesday. The two parties agreed that the day of engaging battle should be the following Saturday, but Alphonso used deceit and perfidy. Early in the morning of Friday, the 15th of Rajab of the above-mentioned year, the scouts sent forward by Ibn Abbād returned (to the camp), closely pursued by the Rūm (the Christians), and that happened when the Moslims thought themselves secure from an attack. Ibn Abbād hastened to get on horseback and ordered the news to be spread throughout the army. All fell then into confusion; the surprise was successful, the earth shook (with the bustle), the soldiers were in disarray, unprepared, and not in order of battle. The enemy’s cavalry came down upon them, overwhelmed Ibn Abbād, crushed all opposition and left the ground behind them like a field just mown. Ibn Abbād was borne to the ground, with a wound in one of his limbs. The Spanish (Moslim) chiefs fled and abandoned their camp, imagining that an irreparable catastrophe had arrived. Alphonso thought that the Emir of the Moslims (Yūsuf) was amongst those who were put to flight, but he did not know that final success is always reserved for those who fear God (Koran, sur. 11, verse 51). The Emir of the Moslims then rode forward in the midst of his bravest Sanhājian warriors, horse and foot, and surrounded by the chiefs of tribes. They directed their march towards Alphonso’s camp, attacked it, entered and slew those who guarded it. The drums beat so that the earth trembled and every part of the horizon re-echoed the sound. The Christians (Rūm) resolved to retake their camp on being informed that the Emir of the Moslims was there, and their assault was so vigorous that he was forced to retire. He then renewed the attack and expelled the enemy, but they marched against him again and obliged him to quit the place. This series of attacks and defeats did not terminate till the Emir of the Moslims ordered the negroes who formed his domestic troops to dismount. Four thousand of them got off their horses and penetrated into the midst of the fight. Bearing Lamtian shields, Indian swords and Zābīan (15) javelins, they stabbed the enemy’s horses and made them rear under the riders, so that each steed separated from its fellow. Alphonso overtook a negro whose stock of javelins had been spent by his darting them off, and meant to cut him down with his sword. The negro closed with him, seized on the bridle of his horse, drew a dagger from his belt and struck it into
his thigh. The weapon pierced through the rings of Alphonso's coat of mail, entered into the thigh and reached the padding of the saddle. On that day, at the hour of the sun's declining (towards the West), the gale of victory began to blow; God sent down his calm (ṣekīna) to the Muslims and rendered his religion victorious. The true-believers charged upon Alphonso and his partisans with the greatest resolution and drove them from the camp. The enemies turned their backs, exposing their necks to the sword, and fled to a hill where they took refuge and fortified themselves, whilst the (Moslim) cavalry surrounded them on all sides. When the night got dark, Alphonso and his companions slipped off and left the hill at the moment that death had grasped them in its clutches. The Muslims got possession of everything that was in the camp; furniture, plate, tents and arms, all fell into their hands. Ibn Abbâd caused the heads of the Christians who had been slain to be collected and laid before him, and they formed a heap like a large hill. He then wrote a letter to his son ar-Rashid, announcing the victory and dispatched it by a carrier-pigeon. This was on Saturday, the 16th of Muharram (read Rajab)." — It is related also that the Emir of the Muslims required from the inhabitants of the country a subvention in aid of some undertaking in which he was engaged (16). In the letter addressed by him on this subject to the people of Almeria he stated that a number of doctors had declared the demand lawful, because it was conformable to what (the khalif) Omar Ibn al-Khattâb had done under similar circumstances. The inhabitants of the town requested their kâddi Abû Abd Allah Ibn al-Farrâ, who was as pious and as devout a man as could be, to draw up an answer to Yûsuf's letter. He therefore wrote as follows: "The Emir of the Muslims, having exacted a subvention and remarked my delay (in obeying), states that Abû 'l-Walîd al-Bâji (vol. I. p. 593) and all the kâdis and legists, both in Africa and in Spain, have formally declared that such a requisition is legal, because a similar subvention was demanded by the blessed Omar Ibn al-Khattâb, who was the companion of the apostle of God, and who now lies beside him in the tomb and whose justice was never called into question. (Now, I say) that the Emir of the Muslims is not a companion of the apostle of God, neither does he lie beside him in the tomb, neither is he one whose justice can never be called into question. Therefore, if those legists and kâdis have placed you on a line with him for justice, God will take them to an account for what they have asserted respecting you. Omar, before asking for a subvention, entered into the mosque of God's apostle and made
"oath that he possessed not a single dirhem in the public treasury, to spend
"upon the Moslems. Do you therefore enter into the great mosque of the place in
"which you are, and there, in the presence of the learned (the doctors of the law),
"make oath that you possess not a single dirhem and that the public treasury of
"the Moslems does not contain one either. The subvention must then be granted
"to you by right. Salutation!" — When the Emir of the Moslems had achieved
this victory, he ordered his army to keep its position and dispatch pillaging
parties into the territory of the Franks. The direction of these troops he con-
fided to Sir Ibn Abi Bakr. Yusuf meant to return by the same road which he had
followed in coming, but al-Motamid, desirous of doing himself honour, prevailed
on him to turn aside (from that line of march) and visit his kingdom. He induced
him also to accept the hospitality of his palace. Seville, the capital of al-Motamid's
states, was one of the handsomest cities that could be seen. When Yusuf reached it,
he saw that it was situated on the border of a vast navigable river, by which vessels
were bringing cargoes of goods from Maghreb. To the west of the city lay an ex-
tensive district, twenty parasangs in length and filled with thousands of hamlets,
each of them (abounding in) figs, grapes and olives. This place is called the as-
Sharaf (Axaraf) of Seville. All Maghreb draws from thence its provision of these
kinds of fruit. At one side of the city stood the palaces (or castles, kusur) erected by
al-Motamid and by his father al-Motadid. They were extremely beautiful and ma-
gnificent. In it (Seville) were to be found eatables, liquors, clothing, house-furni-
ture, etc., of all sorts. Al-Motamid lodged Yusuf Ibn Tashifin in one of these pa-
laces and treated him with such honour and respect as procured him the warmest
thanks from his guest. Ibn Tashifin's companions never ceased directing his at-
tention towards the state of enjoyment and pleasure in which he was, and inciting
him to get up something of the same kind for himself. "Royalty," said they, "has
"for its main advantage that its possessor may pass his life in enjoyment and in
"pleasure, like al-Motamid and his companions." Yusuf Ibn Tashifin was very
moderate in his way of living; addicted neither to ostentation nor to prodigality, and
by no means nice in respect to food or any thing else: the early part of his life was
passed in his own country and had been full of hardships. He therefore disapproved
of the profusion to which they tried to lead him and said: "Respecting that man,"
— meaning al-Motamid, — "what appears to me is that he is ruining the kingdom
"of which he has possession. The money by means of which he has procured for

Vol. IV.
"herself all those things must have once belonged to others, and, from them,
"such sums could never have been possibly taken by just means; he must have
"procured them by iniquitous measures and here he spends them on mere vani-
ties. Of all futilities, that is the most detestable. A man whose mind is set on
"spending money to such a degree and for no other purpose than the satisfaction
"of his sensual propensities, how can he have sufficient courage to defend his
"states, protect his subjects and augment the prosperity of the country?" Yusuf
then asked if there was any relaxation in the pleasures which al-Motamid enjoyed,
and was answered that there never was: "His whole life," said they, "has been
"passed as you see." — "His companions," said Yusuf, "and those who assisted
"him against his enemies and aided to establish his power, do all of them partake
"of those delights?" The answer was that they did not. — Do you then think,
"said he, "that they can be pleased with him?" They replied that they were not
at all pleased with him. Yusuf then began to reflect with downcast eyes and re-
mained silent. — He passed some days with al-Motamid and, whilst he was stop-
ing there, a man of a shabby exterior, but of great discernment, asked to see the
Spanish sovereign. On being admitted, he spoke as follows: "O king, may God
direct you! One of the most essential obligations to fulfil is, to show gratitude
for favours, and a manner of showing gratitude is, to give good advice. I am one
of your subjects; in your empire I hold a poor rather than a middle station; and
yet I feel obliged to give you a piece of advice, such as a subject owes to his king.
One of the persons who accompany Yusuf Ibn Tashiffin, this guest of yours, ut-
tered something which has reached my ears and which indicates that these people
think themselves and their king better entitled to the enjoyments in which
you indulge than you are. I have a counsel to give and, if you be pleased to
hear it, I shall speak." — Being told by al-Motamid to continue, he said: "This
man, to whom you have shown your kingdom, has always acted like a tyrant, in
his conduct towards other kings. He overthrew the Zenata of Maghreb, deprived
them of their empire and to none of them did he shew mercy. It is therefore to
be feared that he may aspire, not only to the possession of your kingdom but of
all the Spanish peninsula; now, particularly, that he has seen the pleasant life
which you enjoy; and he certainly imagines that the other Spanish kings live in
the same way as you. He has sons and relations whose secret advice he follows;
persons who render agreeable to him the idea of settling in the fertile region
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

"which is now yours. He has destroyed Alphonso and that prince's army; he has
overthrown their power and thus deprived you of a powerful auxiliary who would
have been for you a right arm and an excellent shield. But now, that you have
lost your chance of Alphonso, fail not to take a prudent decision, such a one as
can be still executed." — "What decision," said al-Motamid, "is it possible for
us to take at present?" — The man replied: "Take the resolution of seizing on
this guest of yours and imprisoning him in your palace; declare positively that
you will not set him at liberty till he give orders that all his troops evacuate the
Spanish peninsula and return to the place from which they came, and that not
even a boy of them be left behind. You will then make arrangements with the
sovereigns of the Peninsula for the purpose of guarding that sea and preventing
vessels containing troops of his from navigating therein. After that, make him
swear by the most solemn oath possible that he will never conceive the thought
of returning to this country, except there be an accord between you and him on
that subject. That you may be assured of his keeping his promise, require hos-
tages from him; he will give you as many as you wish, for he will set more value
on his life than on anything which you can exact from him. That man will then
remain satisfied with a country which is really of no good for any one but him.
Thus will you be delivered from him as you have been delivered from Alphonso;
you can then hold your position under the best circumstances; your renown will
be yet more exalted among the sovereigns of the Peninsula and your kingdom will
be enlarged. This proceeding will ensure you a reputation for good fortune and
resolution; and the other kings will stand in awe of you. After that, take your
necessary measures for the conduct which you have to hold as a neighbour of the
man whom you have thus treated. Be assured that a heavenly order has prepared
for you this opportunity; generations will pass away and torrents of blood be shed
before the like of it comes again." Al-Motamid listened to the discourse of this
man and, feeling that the advice was good, began to consider how he should avail
himself of the opportunity. He had then with him some companions engaged in
convivial pleasures, and one of them said to this giver of advice: "Al-Motamid ala
'Llah is the paragon of the honourable and generous; he is not a man to act un-
justly or betray a guest." To this the man replied: "Perfidy consists in depriving
another of that to which he has just right; it is not perfidy in a man to defend him-
self against a danger, if it bring him into straits." The boon companion answered:
"Better to suffer wrong and act honestly than show energy in committing an on-
trage." The adviser then resumed and recapitulated his discourse, after which
he retired with a present given to him by al-Motamid. Yusuf Ibn Tashiffin, being
informed of what had passed, rose early, the next morning, for the purpose of depa-
ting, and accepted a quantity of magnificent presents which were offered to him by
his host. He then set out on his journey and crossed over from Algexiras to Ceuta
(Sibta). — I may here remark that Ceuta is a well-known place, on the strait of
the same name. It is one of the points of passage between the two continents, namely,
Spain and Maghreb. We have already mentioned it (vol. II. p. 419). — Yusuf, on
crossing over to Maghreb, left his troops in Spain, so that they might take repose. (This
army) then followed in the trace of Alphonso and advanced into the heart of his
country. Alphonso, on returning to his former place, asked what had become of
his companions, his brave warriors and the heroes of his army. He was informed
that most of them were slain, and nothing was to be heard but the lamentations of
their widows and children. From that moment he neither ate nor drank, and died of
grief and chagrin (17). His daughter, the only child which he left, obtained the
sovereignty and fortified herself in the city of Toledo. — In this expedition, the Mos-
lims made an immense booty, which they sent over to Maghreb. Their emir, Sir
Ibn Abi Bakr, asked of Yusuf Ibn Tashiffin the permission of remaining in the
Spanish peninsula, and informed him that he had taken a number of fortresses si-
tuated on the enemy's frontiers. He stated also that he had established permanent
garrisons in these places, for the purpose of holding them, but, that it would not be
easy for those troops to continue there, as they were suffering from penury and con-
tinually exposed to the attacks of the enemy, whilst the kings of Andalus were en-
joying all the pleasures of life in their rich and fertile territories. Yusuf Ibn
Tashiffin answered by a letter in which he ordered him to expel these kings from
their states and send them to Maghreb. He added that, if any of them resisted, he
should attack them and give them no respite till he dispossessed them. "Begin,"
said he, "by those who are in the neighbourhood of the (Christian) frontiers, and
make no attempt against al-Motamid Ibn Abbâd till you have got the other king-
doms into your power. Confide the government of these countries to the prin-
cipal officers of your army." Sir Ibn Abi Bakr began by the Bani Hûd and tried
to expel them from Rûda (Rûda), their (principal) fortress. — I must remark that
Rûda, as here written, is the name of a fortress situated in a very strong position,
on the summit of a mountain. A well, at the very top of the mountain, furnishes
the place with water. This fortress was filled with provisions and supplies of every
sort and in sufficient quantity to last for a very long time. Sir, not being able to
take it, retired (to some distance) and, having then equipped some of his soldiers in
the attire of Franks, he ordered them to march against the fortress as if they meant
to surprise it, whilst he and his companions would lie in ambush near the place.
This they did, and the garrison seeing that the invaders were but a feeble band,
gave out to pursue them. Sir Ibn Abi Bakr then sallied from his place of conceal-
ment, seized on the lord of the fortress and took possession of the place. He
then attacked the Bani Sumâdîh in Almeria. This fortress was of great strength,
but the sovereign had neither good troops nor valiant warriors. They (the troops of
Stôr) attacked and defeated them. When al-Motasim Ibn Sumâdîh perceived that he
was vanquished, he retired into his palace (or citadel) and died of grief that very
night. The people, being preoccupied about him alone, surrendered the city.
They then besieged al-Mutawakkil Omar Ibn al-Aftas in Badajoz. He was a man of
great bravery and of a noble family. His father, Abû Bakr Muhammad Ibn Abd
Allah Ibn Maslama at-Tujibi, surnamed al-Muzaffar Billah (victorious through God)
was one of the most learned men of the time. Some works were composed by him,
the greatest and most celebrated of which treats of history and is called, after him,
the Muzaffari. He was king of Badajoz, a very handsome city. (Al-Mutawakkil)
rejected (Stôr's) proposals and took the alternative of resistance and war; but
his troops revolted against him, seized on him and two of his sons and put
them all to death. His youngest children were taken to Morocco. The other
kings of the peninsula surrendered and passed into Maghreb; none remained
except al-Motamid Ibn Abbâd. Sir, having finished with these princes, wrote to
Yûsuf Ibn Tâshîfsîn, informing him that the only one of them who remained in the
country was al-Motamid, and requesting instructions how to act towards him.
Yûsuf ordered him to march against that prince and invite him to retire into Maghreb
with his family. "If he accept," said he, "it is well and good; if he refuse, attack
him." Al-Motamid, having received Sir's proposal, returned no answer. Sir
then besieged him during three months, took the city by storm, expelled al-Motamid
from his palace by main force, and sent him, in chains, to Maghreb. Al-Motamid
went to reside at Aghmât and there he remained till his death. He was the only one
of the kings of Andalus who was placed in confinement. Sir thus obtained posses-
sion of the peninsula. Yusuf Ibn Tashifin died in the year mentioned lower down, and the sovereignty passed to his son, Abu l-Hasan Ali Ibn Yusuf. This was a mild, grave, virtuous and just prince, submissive to the truth (the divine law) and to its doctors. The imposts of his states were paid in regularly; no contrariety ever happened to him; no untoward event ever troubled him on his throne. — I mentioned, in the article on Abu Nasr al-Fath Ibn Muhammad Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Khakân al-Kaisi (vol. II. p. 455), that the Kaldid al-Ikiyan was composed by that author for Ibrahim, one of Yusuf Ibn Tashifin’s sons, and that the person who caused him to be put to death was Ali, the son of Yusuf Ibn Tashifin. After the death of Ali, his son Tashifin obtained the sovereignty. It was under the reign of this prince that the dynasty of the Almoravides was overthrown. We shall give the particulars of that event. Towards the commencement of the present biographical notice, we said that it was Yusuf Ibn Tashifin who founded the city of Morocco. The author of the work from which I extracted (the materials of) this article says, towards the end of the volume: "Marrakosh (vulg. : Marrâksh), a very large city, was built by Yusuf Ibn Tashifin on a spot which bore the name of Marrakosh. This word, in the Masmuda (Berber) language, signifies : pass quickly (18). The place here mentioned had been a resort for robbers and got this name because the persons who passed near it used to say these words to their companions." — Ibn Tashifin built the city of Morocco in the year 465 (A. D. 1072-3)." So says Abu l-Khattab Ibn Dihya (vol. II. p. 384) in the work to which he gave the title of an-Nibrâs (the candle) (19), and in (that chapter of it which treats of) the khalifat of al-Kâim bi-Amr Illah. He adds: "It was one of the places where the inhabitants of Naffis (20) sowed their corn. Yusuf bought it from them with money which he had brought with him from the desert (Sahrd). Naffis is the name of a mountain which overlooks Morocco." — I may add that it is in the territory of Aghmat, in ulterior Maghreb. — "His (Yusuf’s) motive for doing so (for building it) was that, having become accustomed to reign, after subduing the Berber tribes and getting delivered from the adversaries whom he had to contend with in the tribe of Lamtuna, he aspired to the honour of founding a city. On the spot which it occupies was a small village surrounded by a thicket of trees and inhabited by some Berbers. He built the city and erected in it palaces (or castles) and magnificent dwellings. It lies in the midst of a vast meadow (or swamp) and is surrounded by mountains, at the distance of some parasangs. One of these moun-
BIографICAL DICTIONARY.

"tains is always capped with snow (21); it is the same which is noted for the
t mildness of its temperature and (the goodness of) its air." — In the year 464
(A. D. 1071-2) Yusuf laid siege to the city of Fez which was at that time the capital
of Maghreb, and, having reduced the inhabitants to great straits, he got it
into his possession. The ordinary population he allowed to remain there, but the
Berbers and the troops (of the garrison) he expelled; he began, however, by imprisoning
some of them and putting others to death. This augmentation of his power
contributed to fortify his authority in ulterior and citerior Maghreb. To those coun-
tries he added (later) the provinces which he conquered in the Spanish peninsula.
He was a man of resolution, skilled in the management of affairs, vigilant in main-
taining the prosperity of his kingdom, favorable to the learned and to religious men,
whose advise also he often had recourse to. It came to my knowledge that the
Imam Hujja tal-Islam Abu Hamid al-Ghazzali (vol. II. p. 621), having heard of
Yusuf Ibn Tashifin's noble qualities and his predelection for men of learning, re-
solved on going to see him; but, when he arrived at Alexandria and was making the
necessary preparations (for his voyage), he received the news of his death. This
piece of information I found in some book or other, but, at present, I have totally
forgotten where. — Yusuf was of a middle size, a tawney complexion and a lean
body; his cheeks were beardless and his voice feeble. He acknowledged the supremacy
of the Abbasides and was the first who ever intitled himself Emir of the Mos-
lims. His prosperous fortune, his grandeur and his power never ceased till his
death. That event took place on Monday, the 3rd of Muharram, 500 (4th Sept.
A. D. 1106). He was then aged ninety years, fifty of which he had passed on the
throne. Our Shaikh (professor) Izz ad-Din Ibn al-Athir (vol. II. p. 288) says, in his
greater historical work (the Annals): "The Emir of the Moslims, Yusuf Ibn Tâ-
shifin, was virtuous in his conduct, upright and just; he liked learned and pious
men, treated them with honour and appointed them to act as magistrates in his
states; he always let himself be guided by their counsels. In acts of clemency
and the forgiveness of offenses he took great pleasure. As an example of that, we
may relate the following anecdote. Three men met together; one of them ex-
pressed the wish to obtain a thousand pieces of gold, so that he might trade with
them; the other wished for an appointment under the Emir of the Moslims; the
third wished to possess Yusuf's wife, who was the handsomest of women and had
great political influence. Yusuf, being informed of what they said, sent for the
"men, bestowed one thousand dinars on him who wished for that sum, gave an
appointment to the other and said to him who wished to possess the lady: 'Foo-
'dish man! what induced you to wish for that which you can never obtain.'
He then sent him to her and she placed him in a tent where he remained three
days, receiving, each day, one and the same kind of food. She had him then
brought to her and said: 'What did you eat these days past.' He replied:
'Always the same thing.'—'Well,' said she, 'all women are the same thing.'
She then ordered some money and a dress to be given him, after which, she dis-
missed him."—Ali, the son of Yusuf Ibn Tashifin, died on the 7th of Rajab, 537
(26th Jan. A. D. 1143); he was born on the 11th of Rajab, 470 (24th Nov. A. D.
1083). We have said something of him in our article on Muhammad Ibn Tumart
(vol. III, p. 205), and to it we refer the reader. When Abd al-Mumin set out on his expedi-
tion against the provinces of Maghreb, which he intended to take from Ali, the son of
Yusuf Ibn Tashifin, he directed his march along the mountains (the chain of the Atlas),
and Tashifin, the son of Ali Ibn Yusuf, being placed by his father at the head of an
army and sent to oppose him, marched in a parallel direction to that of his adver-
sary, but without quitting the plain. These operations were still going on when
Ali Ibn Yusuf died. Ali's officers then appointed his son Ishak to act, at Morocco,
as lieutenant of (the new sovereign, his brother) Tashifin Ibn Ali. Ishak was then
a mere boy. Abd al-Mumin's success was now becoming evident, the inhabitants of
the mountains, forming all together an immense population and amongst whom
were the Ghomara, the (people of) Tadla (22) and the Masmuda, having sub-
mitted to this authority. Tashifin Ibn Ali was quite dismayed; he felt that he
would be overcome and that the downfall of the Almoravid dynasty was at hand.
He therefore went to Oran, a maritime city, with the intention of making it his place
of residence and then, of embarking, if the empire was taken from him, and pass-
ing into Spain. There he meant to settle as the Omayyides had done after the ruin of
their power in Syria and the countries (of the East). Outside of Oran, and on the
seaside was a hill called Sulb al-Kalb (the dog's backbone), on the top of which stood
a ribat (chapel) much frequented by devotees. The 27th of the month of Ramadân,
539 (22nd March, A. D. 1145), Tashifin went up to that ribat for the purpose of
being present at a sitting during which the whole of the Koran was to be read over,
and he took with him a few of the persons who were attached to his service. Abd
al-Mumin was then at Tâjira (23) which, as we have mentioned in his life, was his
native place, and had happened to send a small troop of horse in the direction of Oran. This detachment, which had for its commander the Shaikh Abû Hafs Omar Ibn Yahya, one of the first companions of al-Mahdi, arrived near the city on the 26th of the month of Ramadân, and lay concealed during the following night. Having then discovered that Tâshîfin was (nearly) alone in the ribâdt, they went up to the edifice, surrounded it and set fire to the gate. Those who were within now felt that death was inevitable. Tâshîfin got on his horse, and galloped forward with the intention of clearing the fire at a bound and thus effecting his escape, but the animal sprang wildly about, through terror, and, heelless of the rein, plunged with its rider down a precipice on the sea-side. They fell upon a heap of stones, the horse’s limbs were broken, and Tâshîfin died on the spot. All the officers who accompanied him were slain. His army, being in another quarter, was not aware of what passed that night. The news of this event was carried to Abd al-Mîmin, who immediately proceeded to Oran and gave to the place where the ribâdt is situated the name of Sulb al-Fath (the force of victory). From that time he ceased to remain in the mountainous country and descended into the plain. After that, he directed his march towards Tilimsân (Tlemcen), which place is composed of two towns, the old and the new, situated at the distance of a short gallop one from the other. He then went and laid siege to Fez, which city he took in the year 540 (A. D. 1145-6). In the following year he marched against Morocco and blockaded it during eleven months. Ishâk, the son of Ali (Ibn Yûsuf), was in the city with a number of the principal officers of the empire. On the death of his father, he had been appointed by them to act there as the lieutenant of his brother Tâshîfin. Abd al-Mîmin took the city, having reduced the inhabitants to the utmost misery by famine. Ishâk was brought out to him with Sir Ibn al-Hâjj (24) who was one of the bravest and most eminent officers of the empire. They were led forward with their hands tied behind their backs. As Ishâk had not yet attained the age of puberty, Abd al-Mîmin wished to spare the life of so young a boy, but, as his officers disapproved of his intention, he made no opposition to their wishes and let them do with the prisoners what they pleased. Ishâk and Sir Ibn al-Hâjj were, in consequence, put to death. Abd al-Mîmin then took up his residence in the palace (or citadel). This happened in the year 542 (A. D. 1147-8), and thus fell the empire of the Beni Tâshîfin. — In our article on al-Motamid Ibn Abbâd we stated that Yûsuf returned to Spain the year after the battle of az-Zallâka, yet I have indicated here that he did not
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

(then) go back to that country and that it was his lieutenants who conquered for him the provinces of Andalus. This must necessarily induce the reader to suppose that I am in contradiction with myself, but my excuse is that, in (my materials for) the life of Ibn Abbâd, I found the first statement and, in (those for) the present article, I found the second under the precise form in which I have given it. God knows which is right! (25). — I have since found in Abû 'l-Hajjâj al-Baiyâsî's Tazhîr al-Adkil that Ibn Tâshîfîn, on crossing the sea (for the first time), proceeded to Seville and that Ibn Abbâd went forth to meet him with the (usual) repast of hospitality and provisions (for the army). He then (says our author) left Seville with all his people, from the highest to the lowest, directed his march towards Bada'oj and fought the battle of which we have spoken. After that, he returned to his own country and, in the year 481, Ibn Abbâd crossed the sea and asked his aid against those (dangerous) neighbours whom he had in the enemy's country. Ibn Tâshîfîn received him honourably and promised to assist him. Ibn Abbâd then returned to his kingdom and had prepared to meet the foe when, in the month of Rajab, 481 (Sept.-Oct. A. D. 1088), Yûsuf joined him. Alphonso took the field at the head of a numerous army, whilst the kings of Andalus had already united their forces to those of Ibn Tâshîfîn. He (Yûsuf), seeing how great an army he (Alphonso) had collected, decamped from his position; he had also lent his ear to the insinuations of his courtiers, who had told him that the kings of Andalus intended to abandon him and leave him alone to contend with Alphonso. This information made so deep an impression on his mind that he began a movement (of retreat) towards his own country, and all his troops accompanied him, marching and halting as he did. When he crossed the sea and reached his own kingdom, his heart was filled with indignation against the kings of Andalus. They soon learned that his feelings towards them were changed and, fearing the consequences of his displeasure, they began to put their cities into a state of defense and collect provisions. One of them (al-Motamid) was in such dread of Ibn Tâshîfîn that he applied to Alphonso for help and obtained the promise of aid and assistance. Alphonso, to whom he sent a great quantity of precious gifts, received them willingly and declared by oath, that he would grant whatever the donor might ask. Ibn Tâshîfîn, being informed of this, flew into a violent rage, crossed the sea for the third time and directed his march towards Cordova, a city which belonged to Ibn Abbâd. He reached it in the month of the first Jumâda, 483 (July, A. D. 1090), and found that Ibn Abbâd had arrived there before him. Ibn Abbâd went forth to
BIOGRAPlCAL DICTIONARY.

meet him and, having presented the repast of hospitality, was treated by him in the same manner as usual. Ibn Täshîfîn then took Granada from its sovereign, Abd Allah the son of Bolokkîn Ibn Bâ'dîs Ibn Habbûs, whom he cast into prison. Ibn Abbâd hoped that Ibn Täshîfîn would bestow on him the conquered city and gave him a hint to that effect, but the other did not seem to mind it. He then began to fear Ibn Täshîfîn's intentions and imagined a plan by which he might be enabled to depart. Having represented to him that the had received letters from Seville informing him that the inhabitants were apprehensive of being attacked by the enemy (the Christians), who were in their neighbourhood, he asked and obtained permission to return there. Ibn Täshîfîn then set out for his own country, crossed over to it in the month of Ramadân, 483 (Oct.-Nov. A.D. 1090), and remained there till the beginning of the year 484. He then resolved on going over to Andalus and besieging Ibn Abbâd (in Seville). The latter, being informed of his project, began to make every preparation for resistance. Ibn Täshîfîn, having arrived at Ceuta, assembled a numerous army which he sent over (to Spain) under the orders of Sir Ibn Abi Bakr. Ibn Abbâd, seeing his cities closely invested by these troops, called on Alphonso for assistance, but no attention was paid to his request. Then happened what we have already related. God knows best! — As we have mentioned the al-Mulaththimûn in this article, it is necessary that we should say something of them here. The information which I found concerning them is that they are a branch of (the Arabian tribe of) Himyar Ibn Sabâ (26), that they possess horses, camels and sheep, that they inhabit the deserts of the South, that, like the Arabs, they keep moving from one (source of) water to another and that they dwell in tents made of hair, that of camels and other animals. The first person who formed them into a body, pushed them to war and encouraged them to conquer the provinces (of Maghreb) was the legist Abd Allah Ibn Yásîn, who was afterwards slain in the war with the Bereghwâta (27). He was replaced by Abû Bakr Ibn Omar the Sanhâjian, a chief who generally remained in the desert and of whom mention has been made in this article. Abû Bakr lost his life in a war with the Negroes. We have already mentioned by what means Yusuf Ibn Täshifîn obtained the supreme command. It was he who gave to his partisans the name of al-Murdbitân (Almoravides, dwellers in ribâts) (28). This people always wear the lithâm (a dark blue veil or mask) and never remove it from their faces; it was for that reason that they were called al-Mulaththamûn (the wearers of lithâms or veils). The custom of wearing the
lithām is general among them and has passed down from one generation to another. Their motive for wearing it is thus accounted for: the tribe of Himyar used veils in order to protect their faces against the effects of heat and cold. It was only men of high rank among them who did so, but the practise became, at length, so general that even the common people wore the lithām. — According to another account, a hostile tribe intended to take them unawares, attack their camp whilst they were absent, and carry off their riches (flocks) and their women. One of their elders then advised them to dress the women in men's clothes and send them to a short distance, whilst the men remained in the camp, with their faces veiled and dressed like women. "Then," said he, "as the enemy, on coming, will take you for women, you must sally out against them." They did so, attacked the enemy, sword in hand, and slew them. From that time they continued to wear the lithām, thinking that it would always bring them good luck, since it had then rendered them victorious. — Our shaikh Izz ad-Dīn Ibn al-Athir says in his greater historical work (29):

"It is said that their motive for wearing the lithām was this: A troop of Lamtū-l-nīdes sallied forth with the intention of taking by surprise a tribe which was their enemy. That tribe took advantage of their departure and went to attack their camp. There was no person remaining there except the old men, the boys and the women. When the old men were certain that it was the enemy, they told the women to dress in men's clothes, put on lithāms and draw them closely (about their faces), so that they might not be recognised, and then to arm themselves. They did so, and the old men went forth with the boys (and stationed) before the women who had placed themselves around the camp. The enemy, on approaching, saw a multitude of people and took them to be men. 'These fellows,' said they, 'are keeping close to their women and will fight for them till they die. 'The best thing we can do is to drive off the flocks and go away; if they follow us, we will attack them, when they are separated from their women.' Whilst they were collecting the flocks from the pasture-grounds, the men belonging to the camp came up and, as the invaders were thus placed between them and the women, a great number of them were slain; the women killed even more of them than the men. From that time, they continued to wear the lithām, so that the old men should not to be distinguished from the boys and the women, and they never took it off, night or day. A poet said of the (people who wear) the lithām:
BIографICAL DICTIONARY.

"They hold the highest rank in (the tribe of) Himyar, and, when the descendants of San-haj'a are asked for, they are the men. As they bore away the palm in every noble deed, they were overcome by their modesty and hid their faces with the lithâm."

In the year 454 (A. D. 1062), when Yusuf Ibn Tashifin commanded the army of Abû Bakr Ibn Omar the Sanhajian, he departed from Sijilmassa. The year before that, Abû Bakr Ibn Omar had gone to besiege Sijilmassa, and he took it after much hard fighting. Yusuf Ibn Tashifin then seized on it (for himself) and subsequently occurred the events (which have been related).

(1) This article is a mere collection of materials drawn from various sources and thrown together without discrimination. The Kitâb al-Murib, which is our author's main authority, appears to me of little value. I entirely concur with Mr Dory in his appreciation of that work. (See Histoire des musulmans d'Espagne, tome IV, page 291.) For the history of Yusuf Ibn Tashifin see the work of Mr Dory just mentioned, his History of the Abbadides, the Histoire des Berbers d'Ibn Khalidun and Ibn Abi Zarh's Kord.'

(2) Tashifin, or Tashfeen is by its form a Berber name, but the root does not, I think, belong to that language. It is the plural feminine of the word Tashfefa which appears to be the Arabic word shefa (remedy) under a Berber form.

(3) For the history of the tribe of Lamtuna see Ibn Khalidun's Hist. des Berbers, tome II, p. 67.

(4) See vol. III, page 200, note (26). — It might perhaps have been well to replace, in this translation, the word al-Mulathhamun by Almoravides.

(5) As Yusuf acknowledged the supremacy of the Abbaside khalifs, he could not take the title of Emir al-Mumistin (commander of the faithful), which was exclusively reserved for the khalifs. The Almohade and Hafside sovereigns adopted the latter title, as chiefs of that Shii sect which formed the Almohade community.

(6) The imperfection of the Arabic written character is such that, in our manuscripts, the same group of letters is pointed so as to give, in one, the date of 577, in another, that of 587, and in a third, that of 599.


(8) The text is corrupt here, but the meaning is sufficiently clear.

(9) I read بُنِيُّ with two manuscripts.

(10) This discourse is evidently a mere fabrication. It is in the sententious style of those political testaments which Arab writers were fond of attributing to the old Persian and Indian kings. It is besides, difficult to imagine how the rude Berber language could have acquired, in few years, sufficient flexibility to express such a series of abstract ideas.

(11) Or, according to another reading: by the prudent counsel of his vizir.

(12) The life of al-Baiyasi is given in this volume.

(13) It is doubtful whether it be al-Baiyasi or the author of the Moriâ whose words are cited here. To judge from the style, it seems to be the latter.

(14) The true date of the battle of az-Zalâka is the 12th Rajab, 479 (23rd October, 1086). — (Dory's Hist. des musulmans Esp., t. IV, p. 293.)
(15) According to another reading: Zdian. Zd is a province of North Africa, to the south of Constantina; Zd is the name given to a species of oak.

(16) This evidently happened at a much later period, after the complete overthrow of the Spanish Muslim kings.

(17) Alphonso VI, king of Leon, Castille and Galicia, died A.D. 1109, twenty-three years after his defeat at az-Zallaka.

(18) Marr (to pass) is Arabic, but is employed in Berber. I cannot find the word Kosh in my Berber texts and vocabularies. It may, perhaps, belong to the Shellah, or Shela, dialect.

(19) According to Hajji Khalifza, this work is a history of the Abbasides.

(20) The name of this town should be pronounced Niffa. The geographer, Abû Obaid al-Bakri, speaks of it frequently in his Description de l'Afrique septentrionale. In the geographical table prefixed to the Histoire des Berbers, the name is written Neffa and its position indicated.

(21) Not only one but the greater part of them.

(22) The text has the false reading Taida.

(23) Tâjira, or Téjira as now pronounced, is a mountain in the Khâdate of the Trara Sheraga. Its extremity advances into the sea and forms a cape to which the maps give the name of cap Nôd (in Arabic Homein). It lies at about eight miles to the N. E. of Nemours (Jmd â-r-Rasâdt).


(25) The movements of Yûsuf Ibn Tashîfin are explained by Mr Dory in his Hist. des musulmans d'Esp.

(26) The Almulaththâmîn were Berbers in race and language, not Arabs.

(27) For the history of these events consult Abû Obaid al-Bakri's Description de l'Afrique septentrionale, Ibn Khaludîn's Hist. des Berb., t. II, and the Karîda.

(28) See vol. I, p. 159. The word riûdt is now pronounced rabdt.


YUSUF IBN ABD AL-MUMIN.

Abû Yakûb Yûsuf al-Kâisi al-Kûmi, the son of Abû al-Mûmin Ibn Ali, was one of the sovereigns of Maghrib. We have already noticed his father Abû al-Mûmin (vol. II. p. 182) and his son Yakûb (p. 335 of this vol.). On the death of his father and the deposition of his brother Muhammad Ibn Abd Al-Mûmin, he obtained the supreme command. Muhammad had been declared successor to the throne; his name was even inscribed on the gold coinage, his father having designated him to reign and obliged the troops to swear that they would serve him with fidelity. He manifested
however such a love of idleness and such a propensity for vain amusements, that Yûsuf dethroned him. There was a third brother named Abû Hafs Omar; and to him Yûsuf confided the government of the Spanish peninsula. Yûsuf was learned in the law, the traditions and a number of other sciences; having been brought up under the eyes of his father who, wishing to give a good education to the (three) brothers, had placed about them the ablest preceptors that could be found amongst the military men and the men of learning. Yûsuf passed his youth in constant occupation, now on horseback, amongst the bravest warriors, and then in study, under the most eminent doctors. He was fonder of metaphysics and philosophy than of literature and the other branches of knowledge. He was a hoarder and a sparer (of money), gathering in carefully the imposts of his empire; and he showed great ability in the government of his subjects. He would sometimes remain a long time in the same city, as if he meant never to quit it, and sometimes he would go abroad and stay there till people thought that he would never return. During his absence, the kingdom was governed by deputies, agents and lieutenants whose talents he had been able to appreciate, and to them he confided the administration of the empire. The Maghribian dinars, called Yûshfians, were thus denominated after him. When he had brought the affairs of the empire into order and established his authority on a solid basis, he passed into Spain for the purpose of examining into the state of that country and taking measures to advance its prosperity. This was in the year 566 (A. D. 1170-1). He departed with an army of one hundred thousand horsemen (1), part of them Arabs and the rest Almohades (Berbers). When he arrived at Seville, Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Saad, generally called Ibn Mardanish, who was at that time the sovereign of Eastern Andalus, that is, of Murcia and its dependencies, felt much alarmed, and the news weighed so greatly upon his heart, that he fell sick and died. Some say that he was poisoned by his mother, because he treated very badly the members of his family, his courtiers and the grandees of the empire. She was giving him good advice, but in so harsh a tone that he threatened to punish her; so she plotted against him and took away his life by poison. He died at Seville (2) on the 29th of Rajab, 567 (27th March, A. D. 1172); he was born in the year 518 (A. D. 1124-5), in a strong fortress situated in the province of Tortosa and called Bunushkula (Peñíscola). On his death, his sons — or, by another account, his brothers (3) — went to the emir Yûsuf Ibn Abd al-Mûmin, who was then at Seville and surrendered to him all the provinces of Eastern Andalus which
had belonged to their father — or, to their brother (according to the second statement). He treated them kindly, took to wife their sister and gave them a high place in his favour. He then began to retake the Moslem provinces which had fallen into the hands of the Franks, and augmented his possessions in Spain to such a degree that his foraging parties sometimes pushed forward to the gates of Toledo, the capital of the enemy’s states and the largest of their cities. He then laid siege to it, and all the Franks assembled to attack him. Seeing his army reduced to great distress for want of provisions, he raised the siege and returned to Morocco. In the year 575 (A. D. 1179-80), he went to Ifrikiya and took the town of Càsfa. In the year 580 (A. D. 1184-5), he passed into Spain with a numerous army and directed his march towards the Western provinces of Andalus. He then besieged Shantarín (Santarem) during a month, but, being taken ill, he died in the month of the first Rabi 580 (June—July, A. D. 1184). His body was placed in a coffin and carried to Seville. He had nominated as successor to the throne his son Abû Yusuf Yakûb, him whose life we have already given. — Our professor, Ibn al-Athir (vol. II. p. 288), states, in his Annals, that Yusuf died without designating his successor, and that the chiefs of the Almohade troops agreed with the descendants of Abd al-Mûmin to take Yakûb, the son of Yusuf, for their king. This they did immediately after Yusuf’s death, because they were close to the enemy’s country and required the presence of a sovereign around whom all parties might rally. — Abû Abd-Allah Muhammad Ibn Abd al-Mûmin, Yusuf’s brother, was deposed in the month of Shabân, 558 (July, A. D. 1163). The emir Yûsuf then assumed the supreme power, his partisans having agreed on nominating him and dethroning Abû Abd Allah. — Some verses of his composition have been handed down, but, as they are not good, I abstain from inserting them. — As for Muhammad Ibn Mardanish, he composed, it is said, the following piece:

In good truth, hers are eyes whose glances scatter death around. I cannot do without her, neither can I live with her; it would be better (for me) to meet death rather than her. But yet I shall let my passion bear me towards her, come of it what may!

I have since found these verses in Ibn al-Kattâa’s Lumah al-Mulah (vol. II. p. 266), where they are attributed to Abû Jaafar Ahmad Ibn Sumâdih al-Binni. God knows best! Al-Bayâsi (4) says, in his Hamâsa, that the names of this author were Abû Jaafar Ahmad Ibn al-Husain Ibn Khalaf al-Binni al-Ubbadi al-Yamori (5); he does
not give these verses, but, farther on, he attributes the following piece to this Abu Jaafar:

My abstaining from the pleasure of accompanying to some distance a friend who leaves me proceeds from my wish to avoid the bitterness of the parting farewell. The consolation arising from the one does not counterbalance the sadness resulting from the other; so I think it best to abstain from both.

By the same author, on a lamp:

It points at the darkness with a serpent's tongue; it (the darkness) trusses up its robe (in order to depart); it (the flame) rises up, and it (the darkness) retires.

When Abu Yakub Yusuf had breathed his last, Abu Bakr Yahya Ibn Mujir, the poet and literary scholar of whom we have spoken in the life of Yakub Ibn Yusuf (page 344 of this vol.) composed on his death a long elegy in which he displayed great talent and which began thus:

Sadness is great; shed therefore tears of blood; eyes are now of no other use but that.

— Mardanisch is a frankish name and signifies excrement (6).—The name Bunushkula (Peniscola) takes the vowels here given. — It is not necessary to mark the orthography of the other proper names, because they are sufficiently known. — Binni, the ethnic name of the poet above-mentioned, is to be pronounced as here indicated. — Ubbadi means belonging to (Ubeda,) an Andalusian town in the province of Jaen. It was built by Abd ar-Rahman, the son of al-Hakam (7), and repaired by his son Muhammad.— After finishing this article, I found a collection of pieces in the handwriting of Imad ad-Din Ibn Jibril Akhi 'l-Ilm (8) al-Misri, the intendant of the treasury in Egypt, and the same of whom we spoke towards the beginning of this work, in our article on Abu Ishak al-Iraki (vol. I. p. 12). Imad ad-Din’s miscellany contains useful information respecting the people of Maghrib and other countries. I have made from it an extract which I subjoin to this biographical notice: Abd al-Mumin designated as his successor Muhammad, the eldest of his sons. The oath of fidelity towards him being administered to the people, dispatches were written to all the provinces, announcing the inauguration. On the death of Abd al-Mumin, his son Muhammad did not succeed in establishing his authority.
because he was noted for things which were incompatible with the sovereign power: he was addicted to wine, feeble in mind, very capricious and cowardly; besides which, he suffered, it is said, from a sort of leprosy. This turned the people against him and brought on his deposition, in the month of Shaban, 558 (July-August, A. D. 1163), after a reign of forty-five days. The persons who dethroned him were his brothers Yusuf and Omar, the sons of Abd al-Mumin. The sovereignty was then held jointly by these two brothers, who were the cleverest and most sagacious of Abd al-Mumin's sons. Abu Hafs Omar abdicated soon after, leaving all the power to his brother Yusuf. The people then took the oath of fidelity to the latter, and this nomination was universally approved of. Yusuf was of a fair complexion, inclined to red; his hair was very dark, his visage round, his mouth wide, his eyes large, his stature somewhat above the ordinary size, his voice clear and mild, and his language elegant. He conversed well and was highly agreeable in company. No one knew better than he how the (ancient) Arabs expressed their thoughts, and none surpassed him in the knowledge of the battle-days of the Arab tribes, both before and after the promulgation of Islamism. He applied attentively to these studies and had frequent conferences with the learned men of Seville whilst he acted as governor of that city. It is stated that he knew by heart the Sahih of al-Bukhari (vol. II. p. 594). He possessed in a high degree the sentiments of a king, being noble-minded, beneficent and generous. Under his reign, the people acquired great wealth. He knew by heart the noble Koran and possessed some knowledge of jurisprudence. Having then formed the wish of studying philosophy, he began by the science of medicine and collected a great quantity of works on philosophy. Abu Bakr Muhammad Ibn Tufail (9), a man learned in these matters, was his frequent companion. Ibn Tufail possessed a solid acquaintance with all the branches of philosophy and had studied under a number of persons versed in that science, Abu Bakr Ibn as-Saigh, surnamed Ibn Bajja (Avempace) (vol. III, p. 130), for instance, and others. He composed a great number of works and endeavoured seriously to reconcile the (revealed) law with philosophy. He was a man of varied information. Persons learned in every branch of knowledge came from all countries to see him (Yusuf), and amongst them was Abu 'l-Walid Muhammad Ibn Ahmad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Rushd (Averroes) (10), who was a native of Spain. When Yusuf had consolidated his authority and obtained possession of the provinces which Ibn Mardanish possessed in Spain, he set out from Seville with the intention of inva-
BIOPGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

...ding the states of Alphonso, which also were in Spain. He halted before a city called Webda (Huetas) and blockaded it during some months, so that the garrison were reduced to great extremities. As they suffered very much from want of water, they sent to him and offered to surrender the place provided that he spared their lives. This proposal he rejected. The besieged were still suffering from thirst when, one night, a great noise and loud cries were heard proceeding from their quarter: they had all assembled to pray God (for rain), and then so heavy a shower fell that all their cisterns were filled (11). Their thirst being thus allayed, they were enabled to resist the Moslims. Yúsuf then left them and returned to Seville after making with them a truce of seven years. The annual taxes of Seville, amounting to one hundred and fifty mule-loads of money, were paid in to him regularly, over and above those which he received from the other provinces of Spain and from Maghrib. In the year 579 (A. D. 1183-4) he set out against the enemy with an immense army and, having crossed over to Spain, he stopped at Seville, according to his usual custom, and completed the equipment of his troops. He then departed for Santarem, a town in Western Andalus, small, but of great strength and well fortified. He blockaded it closely, but was unable to take it. The rainy season then set in, and the Moslims began to suffer from cold and to fear that the river would swell so as to become impassable, and prevent them from receiving provisions. Yúsuf, being advised to return to Seville and come back to Santarem when the weather got fine, accepted this counsel and said: "To-morrow, please God! we shall decamp." These words were not made public because the conference had taken place in his privy council. The first who struck his tents and departed was the khattab (preacher) Abū Ḥasan Ali Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Abd ar-Rahmân al-Mâlaki (a native of Malaga), who was a man of learning and talent. When the army saw that he was decamping, they did the same, being convinced that a person holding so high a place in the empire as he, knew all the secrets of government. The greater part of the army crossed the river during the night, in order to avoid the press and reach good quarters. None of the troops remained except those which were near the tents of the emir Yúsuf Ibn Abd al-Mûmin, and he had no idea of what had taken place. When the Christians (Romans) saw that the army had passed the river and learned from their spies what was the intention of the emir Yúsuf and his companions, they took the opportunity of sallying out and reaching the place where he was. They slew, at the entrance of his tent, a great
number of officers holding a high rank in the army and reached Yûsuf, on whom they inflicted a mortal wound, under the navel. The Moslems then rallied and bet off the enemy. The emir Yûsuf was placed in a litter and carried across the river; during two nights he was transported thus, but, on the third, he died. When the corpse arrived at Seville, it was embalmed, placed in a coffin and carried to Tin-Mall. It was there buried, near the tombs of Abd al-Mûmin and the Mahdi, Muhammad Ibn Tûmart. Yûsuf died on Saturday, the 7th of Rajab, 580 (14th Oct. A.D. 1184). Some months before his death he often repeated the following verse:

The succession of days and nights has rolled up that which I unfolded (the tissue of my life),
and the fair large-eyed maids know me no longer.

His son Abû Yûsuf Yakûb took the supreme command, having been solemnly proclaimed, in the lifetime of his father, as successor to the throne. Some say, however, that the great chiefs of the empire agreed on placing him at their head, subsequently to his father’s death. God knows best! — There was a literary scholar named Abû 'l-Abbâs Ahmad Ibn Abd as-Salâm al-Gûrâwi (12); — Gûrdya is the name of a Berber tribe, the camp-stations of which were in the neighbourhood of Fez. Some say that the name of this tribe was Jarâwa and that the letter J was replaced by a G, so that it became Gârdwa; they add that the relative adjective derived from it takes the forms of Jarâwi and Gîrdwi. — This learned man knew by heart an immense quantity of poetry, both ancient and modern; in that kind of knowledge he held the highest rank and was therefore admitted into the society, not only of Abd al-Mûmin, but of Yûsuf, that prince’s son, and of Yakûb, his grandson. He drew up on the plan of Abû Tamam’s Hamâsa (vol. I. p. 348) a compilation of pieces in verse on every subject; to this work he gave the title of Safwa tâl-Adab wa Dâwân al-Arab (the quintessence of literature and the Archives of the Arabs). This work has obtained general circulation and is, for the people of the West (Maghrib), what the Hamâsa is for those of the East. My object in speaking of this accomplished scholar is to mention that he uttered many amusing and witty sayings which were much admired by literary men, and that one of the anecdotes told of him was the following: He went one day to the door of the emir Yûsuf and there met the physician Said al-Ghomâri, — Ghomâri means belonging to the Ghomâra, who are a Berber tribe. — Yûsuf then said to one of his servants: “See if any of
"my society are at the door." The man went out and, on coming back, answered: "Ahmad al-Gūrāwī is there and Sa'd al-Ghomārī." — "There," exclaimed the emir Yūsuf, "is one of the wonders of the world: a poet belonging to the tribe of Gūrāwa and a physician belonging to that of Ghomārāl." When this was told to al-Gūrāwī, he said: "The emir cites us as extraordinary examples, but has forgotten his own origin; by Allah! a khālid from the tribe of Kūmiya, is still more extraordinary!" When this was related to the emir Yūsuf, he said: "I will punish him by shewing him indulgence and forgiveness; that will suffice to prove that his (unfavorable) opinion respecting me is ill-founded." — One of the poems composed by al-Gūrāwī in praise of the emir Yūsuf contains a very original thought; here is the passage:

The idām (khalif) is the physician who has cured the ailments, both exterior and interior, of all mankind. He sustains the world and the world sustains him; thus the soul sustains (the body) and is sustained (by it).

In the following lines he satirized the people of Fez, a city in Maghrib, which lies between Ceuta and Morocco:

Ignominy roamed over the world like an outcast, and wandered through all the countries of God's earth, both in the East and in the West. But, when it arrived at Fez and met with the inhabitants, they said to it: "Welcome! heartily welcome!"

A quantity of excellent poetry of all kinds was composed by him. He died at an advanced age, having passed his eightieth year. His death took place towards the end of the emir Yakūb Ibn Yūsuf's reign. For the year in which that sovereign died, see his biographical notice in this work. The poet al-Gūrāwī persevered till the last in composing eulogies on the emir Abd al-Mūmin Ibn Ali and on that prince's sons. — Shantarīn (Santarem) is a town in Western Andalus. Ibn Haukal (13) says, in his Kitāb al-Madālik wa'l-Mamālik: "Ambergris is cast on shore there, a circumstance not known to take place in any other European country on the borders of that sea. Some ambergris is thrown up on the shores of Syria. At a certain time of the year they find at Santarem an animal (the pinna marina) which rubs itself on the rocks in the sea and lets fall from its body a sort of wool (byssus) as soft as silk and of a gold colour. They collect enough of this substance to be spun into threads and woven into a kind of versicolor cloth.
"The Omayyide sovereigns of Spain engross it all for themselves, so that it is neither exported nor offered for sale. A garment made of it is worth more than one thousand sand pieces of gold, it is so rare and so beautiful."—A native of Andalus, who was a man of merit, told me that he saw a piece of this stuff, and he endeavoured to describe it but could not find words to do so; he concluded by saying: "It is finer and more delicate than a cobweb; glory be to God whose power is so great, whose wisdom so subtle and whose works so good! See how he favours specially each place with some marvellous thing! Glory be to him! How well Abû Nuwâs (14) expressed himself when he said:

"Every object is a sign of his glory and indicates that he is the only (God)."

(1) According to al-Makkari, Yûsuf had with him ten thousand horse when he landed in Spain.
(2) This is a mistake; Muhammad Ibn Mardanish died in Murcia, during the siege of that city by the Almohades. — (Ibn Khaldûn's Histoire des Berbers, t. II, p. 300.)
(3) It was Hildâ, the son of Ibn Mardanish, who, with his brothers and relatives, surrendered to the Almohades. — (Ibn Khaldûn.)
(4) The life of al-Baydâwi will be found in this volume.
(5) Abû Ja'far al-Binni was highly distinguished as a poet. His impious, debauchery and satirical disposition gave such scandal that he was expelled from Majorca by Nâisir ad-Daula Mubashhar, who reigned over the Balearic islands after the death of Mujâhid, king of Denia. It is well known that Mujâhid died A. H. 486 (A. D. 1094).
(6) Ibn Khallikân derives Mardanish from merda; an absurd supposition, but worthy of remark as it shows that the vowel-sound fat'a was pronounced ē. Mardanish is the exact Arabic transcription of the Latin name Martinus. This family were of Christian descent.
(7) This Abd ar-Rahmân was the fourth Omayyide sovereign of Spain.
(8) The edition of Bûlak reads al-Moallim in place of al-Ilm. — All that follows is a later addition made by the author. The information which it contains respecting the emir Yûsuf is much more correct and satisfactory than that which he has just given. None of our manuscripts contains this long extract, but it is to be found in the edition of Bûlak and that of Mr Wûstenfeld. The text in both editions is not always correct.
(9) Abû Bakr Muhammad Ibn Abû al-Malik Ibn at-Tufail at-Kaïsî, a celebrated Spanish philosopher, was of Arabic descent, as the progenitor of his family belonged to the tribe of Kais. He was born at Guadix, acquired great reputation as a mathematician, a physician and a philosopher. He entered into the service of the Almohade sultan Abû Yakub Yûsuf, the son of Abû al-Mâmin, and died in the city of Morocco, A. D. 1183 (A. H. 581-3). His philosophical romance Hal Ibn Yakdûn was published at Oxford in 1671, by the learned orientalist Edward Pococke, under the title of Philosophus autodidactus, sive epistola Els Tufail de Hal ibn Yakdun. For an excellent article on Ibn Tufail and his works see Mr Munk's Mélanges de philosophie arabe et juive.
THE SULTAN SALAH AD-DIN (SALADIN).

Abū 'l-Muzaffar Yusuf, the son of Aiyūb, the son of Shādi, bore the titles of Al-Malik an-Nāṣir Salāḥ ad-Dīn (the helping prince, welfare of religion) and reigned over Egypt, the provinces of Syria, those of Irāk and those of Yemen. In this work we have noticed his father Aiyūb (vol. I. p. 243), a number of his sons, his uncle Asad ad-Din Shirkūh (vol. I. p. 626), his brother al-Malik al-Ādil Abū Bakr Muḥammad (vol. III. p. 235) and other members of the family. Salāḥ ad-Dīn was the central (and finest) pearl of that (brilliant) necklace, and his renown is so great that we need not descant upon it. Historians agree in stating that his father and family belonged to Duvān (Tovin, in Armenia), which is a small town, situated at the farther extremity of Adarbājān, in the direc-
tion of Arrán, and of the country of the Kurj (the Georgians). They (Salāh ad-Dīn’s family) were Kurds and belonged to the tribe of Rawādiya, which is a branch of the great tribe called al-Haddāniya. I was informed by a legist who was a native of Duwin and who never said any thing of which he was not certain, that, near the gate of that town lies a village called Ajdānakān, all the inhabitants of which are Rawādiya Kurds, and that Aiyūb, the father of Salāh ad-Dīn, was born there. Shādī (said he), went to Baghdad with his two sons, Asad ad-Dīn Shīrkūh and Najm ad-Dīn Aiyūb, and from thence proceeded to Tikrit, where they settled. Shādī died there, and his tomb with a cupola over it, is within the city. — I often endeavoured to trace up their genealogy, but could find no person able to tell me the names of any of their ancestors anterior to Shādī. I read over a great number of title-deeds and instruments establishing pious foundations, which had been drawn up in the names of Shīrkūh and of Aiyūb, but, in those documents, I found no other indication than Shīrkūh, the son of Shādī, and Aiyūb, the son of Shādī. An eminent member of the (Aiyūbide) family informed me that Shādī was the son of Marwān, and so it is stated by me in the lives of Aiyūb and Shīrkūh. I saw (however) a roll which had been drawn up by al-Hasan Ibn Gharib Ibn Imrān al-Harasi (a native of Haras in Egypt), and which contained the following genealogy (1) : “Aiyūb, the son of Shādī, the son of Marwān, the son of Abū Ali, the son of Antara, the son of al-Hasan, the son of Ali, the son of Ahmad, the son of Abū Ali, the son of Abd al-Azīz, the son of Hudha, the son of al-Hassān, the son of al-Harith, the son of Sinān, the son of Amr, the son of Murra, the son of Aūf, the son of Osāma, the son of Nabhesh, the son of al-Harith Sāhib al-Hamāla, the son of Aūf, the son of Ibn Abī Hāritha, the son of Murra, the son of Nushba, the son of Ghaiξ, the son of Murra, the son of Aūf, the son of Saad, the son of Dabyān, the son of Baghdīd, the son of Raith, the son of Ghatafān, the son of Saad, the son of Kais, the son of Ailān, the son of al-Yās, the son of Modar, the son of Nizār, the son of Maadd, the son of Adnān.” — From Adnān the writer traces the genealogy up to Adam. He then adds: “The Ali here mentioned as being the son of Ahmad Ibn Abī Ali Ibn Abd al-Azīz, bore the surname of al-Khorāsānī and was one of those persons in whose honour verses were composed by al-Mutanabbi (vol. I. p. 102). It is of him that the poet speaks in the following verse, taken from one of his kasidas:

“The sky is choked with dust when the powerful chief, Ali Ibn Ahmad, takes the field.”
"As for al-Harith, the son of Aûf Ibn Abi Hâritha and surnamed Sâhib al-Ha-
mâla (the payer of the price of blood), it was he who took upon himself the pay-
ment of all the blood which had been shed in the feud between the tribes of Abs
and Dubyân (2). Khârija Ibn Sinân, the brother of Harem Ibn Sinân (3), shared
with him in doing this act of generosity. It was of them that Zuhair Ibn Abi
Sulma al-Mazini (the author of the Moallaka), said, in one of his kastidas:

"The rich among them feel bound to oblige those who apply to them (for aid), and even
their poor are generous and prodigal. Can any other plant but the Indian cane produce fit
shafts for spears? Do date-trees ever flourish except in a proper soil?

"This document was presented by the author to al-Malik al-Muazzam Sharaf ad-
Din Isa (vol. II. p. 428), the son of al-Malik al-Aâdil (vol. III. p. 235) and sove-
reign of Damascus. That prince and his son, al-Malik an-Nâsir Salâh ad-Din
Abû 'l-Muzaffar Dâwûd, read it aloud (and learned it by heart) under the direction
of him who drew it up, after which, they received from him certificates to that
effect. This was towards the end of the month of Rajab, 619 (beginning of Sep-
tember, A. D. 1222)." End of the extract made by me from that roll. — In the
History of Aleppo composed by the kâdi Kamâl ad-Din Abû 'l-Kâsim Omar Ibn
Ahmad, a native of Aleppo and generally known by the surname of Ibn al-Adîm
(p. 334 of this vol.), mention is made of the differences which occur in the genealogies
of the Aiyûbide family, after which, the author says: "Al-Moizz Isma'il, the son of
Saîf al-Islâm Ibn Aiyûb and king of Yemen, pretended to draw his descent from
the Omaiyides and, on that, he founded claims to the khalifate." (4) — I heard
our professor the kâdi Bahâ ad-Din, surnamed Ibn Shaddâd (page 417 of this vol.),
relate that the sultan Salâh ad-Din rejected that (genealogy) and declared that it had
not the least foundation. — Our professor Izz ad-Din Ibn al-Athîr’s lesser historical
work, that which treats of the Aṭâbek sovereigns of Mosul, contains a chapter in
which is given an account of Asad ad-Din Shîrkûh and his journey to Egypt. We
there read as follows: "Asad ad-Din Shîrkûh and Nâjm ad-Din Aiyûb, who was the
eldest of Shâdi’s sons, were natives of the town of Duwîn and drew their origin
from the Kurdish tribe called ar-Rawâdiya. Having gone to Irâk, they entered
into the service of Mujâhid ad-Din Bihîrûz Ibn Abd Allah al-Ghiâthî, who was then
shihâna (or governor) of that country." — I may here observe that this Mujâhid
ad-Din was a Greek slave and of a fair complexion; he acted as shihâna of Irâk in the
vol. IV.
name of the Seljukide sultan Masud Ibn Muhammad Ghiaath ad-Din, the same of whom we have given an account (vol. III. p. 355); we have spoken also of his father (vol. III. p. 232) and other members of the same family. Bihruz was a high-minded man, fond of constructing great edifices and zealous in promoting the welfare of the country. He was noble-hearted, patient under every change and vicissitude of fortune, aspiring after greatness and renewing his endeavours as often as they failed. Tikrit had been granted to him as an appanage. He had been in the service of the sultan Muhammad, the father of the Masud just-mentioned. A ribat (a caravanserai, or perhaps a convent of derviches) was founded by him at Baghdad and richly endowed. His death took place on Wednesday, the 23rd of Rajab, 540 (9th January, A. D. 1146). Bihruz is a Persian name and signifies dies bonus, the terms being inverted conformably to the genius of the Persian tongue. — "Mujahid ad-Din," says Ibn al-Athir, "having remarked the intelligence, sound judgment and good conduct of Aiyub, nominated him dildar of Tikrit (which he could well do) as that city belonged to him." — I must here observe that dildar (5) is a persian title and means keeper of the castle, that is to say, its governor. Dil in Persian means castle and dar signifies keeper.—(Ibn al-Athir continues thus): "He "(Aiyub) went there (to Tikrit) with his brother Asad ad-Din. When the atbek "and martyr (6) Imad ad-Din Zinki was defeated in Irak by Karaja; " — I shall give here a summary account of that celebrated battle: Masud Ibn Muhammad Ibn Malik Shah, the Seljukide, marched against Baghdad with Imad ad-Din Zinki, lord of Mosul; their intention being to lay siege to that city. The imam (khaliif) al-Mustarshid, who was reigning there, called to his assistance Karaja as-Saki, whose real name was Bers and who was then governor of Fars and Khuzistan. Karaja set out to help him, attacked unawares and routed the army of the two princes, who had to seek for safety in flight. He (Ibn al-Athir) says, in his History of the Seljukides, that the battle was fought near Tikrit, on Thursday the 12th of the latter Rabi, 526 (2nd March, A. D. 1132). Osama Ibn Munkid, a chief of whom we have given an account (vol. I. p. 177), says, in the work wherein he treats of different countries and of the princes who were his contemporaries, that he was present at that battle with Zinki and that it took place on the date just indicated. This he mentions in two places: first, in his article on Arbela, and then in the article on Tikrit. Let us return to our subject: "Zinki," says Ibn al-Athir, "arrived at Tikrit, and Najm ad-Din "Aiyub rendered him a good service by letting him have boats, in order to pass the
BIографical DICTIONARY.

"river. He succeeded in crossing and was followed by his companions, to whom
"Najm ad-Din had shown great kindness and furnished provisions. Bihrūz, being
"informed of his conduct, sent to him a letter of blame, in which he said: 'You
"had our enemy in your power; why then did you treat him so well and let him
"escape?' Some time after, Asad ad-Din Shirkūh had a dispute with a man in
"Tikrit and killed him. On this, Mujāhid ad-Din (Bihrūz) sent a person to expel
"them both from that city. They then went to join Imād ad-Din (Zinkī);"—who
"was at that time sovereign of Mosul. — "Imād ad-Din received them both in the
"kindest manner and, to acknowledge the service which they had rendered him,
"he settled on them a large appanage and admitted them into his army. When
"he took Baalbek, he appointed Najm ad-Din to act as dīzdār of that place. After
"the murder of Zinkī," — we have spoken of that event in his biographical notice
(vol. I. p. 539) — "he (Najm ad-Din) was besieged by the army of Damascus;" —
the sovereign of that city was Mujir ad-Din Abek (vol. I. p. 275), the son of Mu-
hammad Ibn Būrī and the grandson of the atābek Zahir ad-Din Toghtikīn.
It was he from whom Nūr ad-Din Mahmūd, the son of Zinkī, took the city of Da-
mascus after a siege. Our professor Ibn al-Athīr continues thus: "Najm ad-Din
"Aiyūb then sent to Saif ad-Din Ghāzi, the son of Zinkī, who had succeeded to his
"father in the government of Mosul, and, in this dispatch, he represented to him
"the state of affairs and requested that a body of troops might be sent to assist him
"in forcing the sovereign of Damascus to retire. Saif ad-Din, being then in the
"commencement of his reign, was endeavouring to live on good terms with the
"neighbouring princes and had not sufficient leisure to mind this application. The
"garrison of Baalbek being at length reduced to great distress, Najm ad-Din, ob-
"serving how matters stood and fearing that the place might be taken by storm,
"offered to surrender provided that a certain appanage which he pointed out were
"granted to him. The sovereign of Damascus accepted the condition and swore
"to fulfil it. (Najm ad-Din) Aiyūb then gave up the fortress, received the grants
"and privileges which he had stipulated and became one of the greatest emirs at
"the court of Damascus. His brother, Asad ad-Din Shirkūh entered into the ser-
"vice of Nūr ad-Din Mahmūd, after the death of Zinkī, that prince's father." — I
may here observe that Nūr ad-Din Mahmūd, the son of Zinkī, was then sovereign of
Aleppo. — "As he (Nūr ad-Din) had already Shirkūh in his service before the death
"of Zinkī, he took him into favour and settled on him an appanage. The bravery
displayed by this officer in war and the acts of courage by which he made himself
remarked and of which no other man was capable, fixed his sovereign's attention
and obtained for him the gift of Emessa, ar-Rahaba and other cities, with his no-
mination to the command of all the army." — I must here state that our profes-
sor, Ibn al-Athir, now passes to another subject and gives an account of Asad ad-
Din's expedition to Egypt and of the manner in which the authority was established
in that country. As this is not the fit place for such details, I shall relate the career
of Salâh ad-Din, from the time of his entering into active life till he reached the
term of his existence. In this account, I shall include the history of the empire
which he founded and notice the height of power to which his family attained. In
our article on Asad ad-Din Shirkuh we gave some notions on that subject, but did not
enter into particulars, as it was our intention to treat that matter fully in the present
notice. — All historians agree in stating that the birth of Salâh ad-Din took place in
the year 532 (A. D. 1137-8) and in the fortress of Tikrit, where his father and his
uncle were residing. It is evident that (the three) remained there only a short time
after that event, for we have already stated that, when Najm ad-Din and Asad ad-
Din left Tikrit, they went to Imâd ad-Din Zinki, who received them honorably, took
them into favour, then made an unsuccessful attempt to take Damascus and proceed-
ed to Baalbek of which he obtained possession on the 14th of Safar, 534 (10th Oc-
tober, A. D. 1139), after a siege of some months. We here admit the date given
by Osâma Ibn Munkid in the work which treats of the provinces and their kings.
Abû Yala Hamza Ibn Asad, a native of Damascus and generally known by the sur-
name of Ibn al-Kalânisi, says, in the historical work which he drew up as
a continuation of the chronicle composed by Abû 'I-Hasan Hilâl Ibn as-Sâbi (7), that
Imâd ad-Din laid siege to Baalbek on Thursday, the 20th of Zu 'l-Hijja, 532 (29th
August, A. D. 1138); he then mentions, under the year 534, and towards the be-
ginning of the chapter, that news was brought of Imâd ad-Din's having succeeded in
putting the town and the citadel of Baalbek in a good state (of defense) and that he
had repaired the breaches which had been made in the fortifications. If (all) that
be exact, they (Ayyub and Shirkuh) must have left Tikrit either before the close of the
year 532, that in which Salâh ad-Din was born, or else in the year 533; for we
know that Zinki kept them with him at Mosul for some time, after which he besieged
Damascus and then took Baalbek, where he established Najm ad-Din Ayyub as his
lieutenant. This appointment took place in the beginning of the year 534, as we
have already stated. It must therefore be concluded that they departed from Tikrit on or about the epoch just mentioned. Since (writing what precedes) I met with a member of their family and asked him if he knew at what time they left Tikrit. His answer was: "I heard some of our people say that they left it on the night of Salâh ad-Din's birth, and that they augured ill of that circumstance, thinking it a bad omen; but one of them said: 'Good may come of it, when you least expect it.' And such was really the case." Salâh ad-Din remained under his father's care till he grew up. When Nûr ad-Din Mahmûd, the son of Imâd ad-Din Zinki, obtained possession of Damascus, — for the date of this event, see his life, —Najm ad-Din Aiyûb and his son Salâh ad-Dîn were attached to his service. As every sign of good fortune was manifest in that youth's career, rising, as he did, by his talent from one station to another, Nûr ad-Dîn took that into account and treated him with great favour. It was from this sovereign that Salâh ad-Dîn learned to walk in the path of righteousness, to act virtuously and to be zealous in waging war against the infidels. (He remained with him) till he had to make preparations for accompanying his uncle Shîrkûh to Egypt. Of this expedition we shall speak farther on. —I read in a historical work composed by a native of Egypt that Shâwâr (vol. I. p. 608) was constrained to fly from that country by al-Malik al-Mansûr Abû 'l-Ashbâl ad-Dirghâm Ibn Aâmir Ibn Siwâr al-Lakhmî al-Mundiri, surnamed Fâris al-Muslimin (vol. I. p. 609) who, having become master of Egypt, took his place as vizir, according to the custom followed in such cases, and had killed Tai, Shâwâr's eldest son. The fugitive proceeded to Syria with the intention of asking assistance from al-Malik al-Aâdil Nûr ad-Dîn Mahmûd, the son of Zinki. This occurred in the month of Ramadân, 558 (August, A. D. 1163). He arrived at Damascus on the 23rd of Zû 'l-Kaada (23rd Oct. A. D. 1163). Nûr ad-Dîn sent him back with a body of troops which he had placed under the orders of Asad ad-Dîn Shîrkûh, the son of Shâdi. Salâh ad-Dîn accompanied them, having been placed in the service of his uncle (Shîrkûh), but he departed much against his will. Nûr ad-Dîn sent off this expedition because he had two objects in view; in the first place, he wished to oblige Shâwâr for having applied to him and for coming to implore his assistance; in the second, he was anxious to learn what was the state of affairs in Egypt, having been informed that the armed force of the country was very weak and that the utmost confusion prevailed there. He desired to know what was really the case. Shîrkûh, in whom he had great confidence from what he had remarked-
of his bravery, his fidelity and his knowledge (of affairs), was charged to direct that expedition, and it was from him that his nephew, Salāh ad-Dīn, received the command of the vanguard. They left Damascus with Shāwar in the month of the first Jumāda, 559 (March-April, A. D. 1164) and, in the month of Rajab (May-June), the same year, they arrived in Egypt and reduced it under their authority.—Our professor, the kādi Behā ad-Dīn Ibn Shaddād (page 417 of this vol.) says, in the work to which he gave the title of Sīra Salāh ad-Dīn (8), that they entered into Egypt on the 2nd of the latter Jumāda, 558 (8th May, A. D. 1163); the date previously indicated is, however, more correct, for the hāfiz Abū Tāhir as-Silafī (vol. I, p. 86) states, in his Mojam (9), that ad-Dirghām Ibn Siwār lost his life in the year 559. Another author informs us, moreover, that he was killed on Friday, the 28th of the latter Jumāda. Ad-Dirghām met with his death near the mausoleum of as-Saiyida Nafīsa (vol. III. p. 574), which edifice is situated between Old and New Cairo. His head was cut off, placed on a pike and borne through the streets of the city; his body remained lying on the ground during three days and was (partly) eaten by dogs, but it was afterwards buried near the Birka tal-Fil (the pond of the elephant), and a dome was erected over the tomb. I may here add that the dome still exists and that it is situated below al-Kabsh (10), which edifice has been lately rebuilt. I saw in that funeral chapel a company of Juwālikī derviches, who were residing there. Ad-Dirghām’s death is placed by some in Rajab, 559, but all agree in stating that it occurred immediately after the entry (of Nūr ad-Dīn’s) troops into Egypt. It is therefore impossible that they could have arrived there in the year 558, because ad-Dirghām’s death occurred, by all accounts, in the year 559 and immediately after the arrival of Asad ad-Dīn’s army. The hāfiz as-Silafī was well informed on that point; he was in Egypt when they arrived and was more careful than any other man in marking with precision facts of that kind; such was, indeed, the branch of science which he specially cultivated, and his information was always better grounded than that of any one else. — Asad ad-Dīn Shīrkūh became master of Egypt as soon as he arrived there, and ad-Dirghām then lost his life. Shāwar, having thus attained his object, resumed his former post, established his power on a solid basis and took again the direction of public affairs. He then acted perfidiously towards Asad ad-Dīn and, at his request, the Franks gave him their assistance and besieged that chief in Bilbais. Asad ad-Dīn, having now studied the state of the country, perceived that it was a kingdom without (fi) men and that the whole administration was directed by mere
caprice and folly. He therefore conceived hopes of getting it into his possession and, on the 24th of Zā'ūl-Hijja, 559 (12th November, A. D. 1164), he returned to Syria. Our professor, Ibn Shaddād (Bahād ad-Dīn, the historian of Sallāh ad-Dīn), indicates the 27th of Zā'ūl-Hijja, 558, as the date of that event, because he founded his opinion on what he had previously advanced in assigning the date of 558 to their entry into Egypt. — Asad ad-Dīn Shīrkhūr remained for some time in Syria, reflecting on the means of obtaining another mission into Egypt and flattering his hopes with the prospect of founding there an empire for himself. He thus continued, till the year 562 (A. D. 1166), laying the basis of his plan (and concerting) with Nūr ad-Dīn. Sāwar got notice of his proceedings and was filled with apprehension on learning that he aspired to the possession of the country. Being at length convinced that Asad ad-Dīn meant to invade it, he wrote to the Franks and consented to give them a solid footing in Egypt, provided that they came to his assistance and helped to exterminate his foes. Nūr ad-Dīn and Asad ad-Dīn, being informed of this correspondence and of the engagements taken by the two parties, feared that the Franks might obtain possession of Egypt and be thus enabled to subdue the (neighbouring) countries. An army was therefore placed by Nūr ad-Dīn under the orders of Asad ad-Dīn (Shīrkhūr) and sent off to Egypt. Salāh ad-Dīn, being attached to the service of his uncle Asad ad-Dīn, accompanied the troops. Their departure from Syria took place in the month of the first Rabi, 562 (Dec.-Jan. A. D. 1166-7), and their arrival in Egypt coincided with that of the Franks. Sāwar and all the Egyptians united with the Franks against Asad ad-Dīn, and a great number of encounters and fierce conflicts took place before the evacuation of the country by the Franks. Asad ad-Dīn then returned to Syria. The cause which brought about the retreat of the Franks was the invasion of their territory by the troops of Nūr ad-Dīn and the loss of al-Munaṭhirah (11), which that prince took from them in the month of Rajab, 562 (April-May, A. D. 1167). Asad ad-Dīn returned to Syria because his army had been much weakened in its encounters with the Franks and the Egyptians; the misery to which it was reduced and the dangers which it had incurred contributed greatly to his retreat. He did not, however, depart till he concluded a peace with the Franks and obtained from them the engagement that they would evacuate Egypt and return to their own territory (in Syria) before the end of the year. To his great desire of getting possession of Egypt was now joined the extreme apprehension of seeing it fall into the hands of the Franks. He knew that they had examined into the state
of the country just as he had done and that they were now as well acquainted with it as he himself. He remained in Syria, ruminating over these matters with a troubled heart, whilst fate was leading him, without his knowledge, to a thing (a throne) which was destined for another. It was in the month of Zū 'l-Kaada of the year just mentioned (August-Sept. A. D. 1167) that he returned to Syria, or, by another account, on the 15th of Shawwal (4th August); God knows best! — I found, amongst some rough notes in my own handwriting, a piece of information which I here give without knowing from what source I derived it: "Asad ad-Dīn, being ambitious of getting Egypt into his possession, set out for that country in the year 562 (A. D. 1166) and followed the road which passes through Ouâdi l-Ghizlān (gazelle valley). He then appeared before (the town of) Isfīh and fought, in the neighbourhood of Usmūnain, the battle of al-Bābain. Salāh ad-Dīn went to Alexandria and there fortified himself. In the month of the latter Jumāda, 562 (March-April, A. D. 1167) he had to sustain a siege against Shāwar. Asad ad-Dīn then left (the province of) Said and proceeded to Bilbais, where he struck up a peace with the Egyptians. On this, they escorted to him Salāh ad-Dīn, who returned with him to Syria. After that, Asad ad-Dīn invaded Egypt for the third time."

— Our professor, Ibn Shaddād, says: "The cause of that was the conduct of the Franks who had assembled all their troops, horse and foot, and were marching towards Egypt. The hope of getting it into their possession had induced them to break the engagements which they had taken with the Egyptians and Asad ad-Dīn. When the latter and Nūr ad-Dīn heard of this proceeding, they were unable to support with patience such perfidy, and hastened to invade that country. Nūr ad-Dīn, being unable to accompany the expedition, furnished money and men, so great was his apprehension of seeing Egypt fall into the hands of the Franks. (He was prevented from going there) because his attention had been unexpectedly drawn towards Mosul, in consequence of the death of Ali Ibn Bek-tikīn." — I may here observe that this prince is the same who bore title of Zain ad-Dīn and who was the father of the sultan Muzzaffar ad-Dīn Kūkubūrī, lord of Arbela, and that we have spoken of him in the life of his son (vol. II. p. 555). —

"Here," says Ibn Shaddād, "is what happened: He (Ali Ibn Bektikīn) died in the month of Zū 'l-Hijja (12), 563 (Sept.-Oct. A. D. 1168). He (had) delivered all his fortresses to Kub ad-Dīn (Maudūd) the atābek (vol. III. p. 458), with the exception of Arbela, because that place had been given to him by the atābek Zinkī
BIographies DICTIONARY.

"(vol. I. p. 539). As for Asad ad-Din (Shtrk håh, he contributed to this expedition by paying the rest of the expense) out of his own fortune and by accompanying it in person, with his brothers, his relations and his own men (13). The sultan Salah ad-Din, may God rest his soul! said to me: 'I was the most unwilling of men to make a campaign at that time, and it was not by my own choice that I set out with my uncle. Therein was exemplified the truth of God's saying: You may perhaps dislike a thing which is for your good. (Koran, sur. 2, verse 213)."

When Shâwar was informed that the Franks were invading Egypt with the intention which has been mentioned, he sent to Asad ad-Din Shirkûh a dispatch in which he begged of him aid and assistance. He (Shtrk håh) set out immediately and reached Egypt in the month of the first Rabi, 564 (December, A. D. 1168).

When the Franks were informed that his arrival was a thing concerted between him and the Egyptians, they retraced their steps and effected their retreat. Asad ad-Din remained in Egypt, and Shâwar went to visit him from time to time. He (Shdwor) had promised to indemnify him for all the sums spent on the troops, but he had not yet sent him any thing. Asad ad-Din had now laid his clutches upon Egypt; he well knew that the Franks would seize on it if they found the opportunity and that Shâwar was trying to delude him and the Franks alternately; (besides which) the masters (14) of that country professed heretical doctrines, as was well known. Being convinced that there was no means of getting Egypt into his power as long as Shâwar was there, he at length decided on arresting him at one of the visits which he received from him. The emirs who had accompanied Asad ad-Din to Egypt used often to go and present their respects to Shâwar who, on his side, went sometimes to visit Asad ad-Din. On these occasions he rode out in state, drums beating, trumpets sounding and colours flying, according to the custom followed by Egyptian vizirs. As none of Asad ad-Din's party dared to lay their hands on him, it was the sultan Salah ad-Din himself who did so. The manner in which things passed was this: when he (Shdwor) was coming to visit him, he (Salah ad-Din) went forth on horseback to meet him, and then, as he was riding by his side, he seized him by the collar and ordered his own soldiers to fall on those of the vizir. The escort was put to flight and plundered, whilst Shâwar was led off to an isolated tent. Immediately after, a note from the Egyptians, demanding the prisoner's head, was brought by a servant attached to the private service (of their sovereign) (15). Such was the custom followed by that people.
with regard to their vizirs. Shāwar's head was cut off and sent to them, and, in
return, the pelisse of the vizirat was sent to Asad ad-Dīn. He put it on, set out
and entered into the citadel (al-Kāsr), where he was installed in the office of vizir.
This took place on the 17th of the first Rabi', 564 (19th Dec. A.D. 1168). From
that time he continued to rule with absolute sway, and Salāḥ ad-Dīn obtained the
direction of public affairs, so highly was he esteemed for his talents, his informa-
tion, his sound judgment and his ability in governing. This continued till the
22nd of the latter Jumāda, the same year (23rd March A. D. 1169), when Asad ad-
Dīn ceased to live."—As I have already spoken of what befell him and of the man-
er of his death, I need repeat that account here; I may also say the same for the death
of Shāwar. All that precedes here was extracted by me from what is related by our
professor Bahā ad-Dīn Ibn Shaddād in his Life of Salāḥ ad-Dīn. I took there what
was requisite for my purpose and passed over the rest. — I found among my rough
notes one which is in my own handwriting and which contains these indications:
Asad ad-Dīn made his entry into Cairo on Wednesday, the 7th of the latter Rabi',
564 (8th Jan. A.D. 1169); al-Aâdid Abd Allah the Obaidite, who was the last
(Fatimide) sovereign of Egypt, went forth to meet him and arrayed him in a dress
of honour. On Friday, the 9th of the same month, he (Asad ad-Dīn) went to
the hall of state (diwān), took his seat at the side of al-Aâdid, who (again) arrayed
him in a dress of honour. (Asad ad-Dīn,) seeing that Shāwar made to him great
demonstrations of friendship, asked him for money in order to pay his troops, but
was put off till another time. He then sent to Shāwar the following message :
'In my army all hearts are turned against you because they are without pay; so,
when you go out, be on your guard against them.' Shāwar attached no impor-
tance to these words, but resolved on inviting Asad ad-Dīn and (the officers of) the
Syrian army to a great feast, at which he intended to take them all prisoners.
Asad ad-Dīn discovered his project, and Salāḥ ad-Dīn made an agreement with
Jūrdik an-Nūri (a client of Nur ad-Dīn's) and with some other officers that they
should kill Shāwar. Asad ad-Dīn, to whom they mentioned their design, for-
bade them to execute it. (Soon after), Shāwar went to visit Asad ad-Dīn at the
Syrian camp, which had been established on the bank of the Nile, near al-Maks,
and, being informed that he (Asad ad-Dīn) had gone on a pious visit to the
tomb of the imām as-Shāfi', in the Karāfa (cemetery), he said that he would go
and meet him. They (Salāḥ ad-Dīn and his party) joined him on the way and,
"as they were all riding together, Salâh ad-Din and Jûrdîk (with the other conspirators) got around him, forced him off his horse and tied his hands behind his back. Those who were with the vizir took to flight. Shâwar was now their prisoner and, as they dared not take his life without Nûr ad-Dîn's authorization, they shut him up in a tent, under a strong guard. Al-Aâdid then sent them the order to put him to death. They obeyed and, having placed his head on the point of a spear, they sent it to the Egyptian sovereign. This took place on Saturday, the 17th of the latter Rabi of the above-mentioned year (18th Jan., A. D. 1169)."—According to another statement, Asad ad-Dîn was not present at this deed (16); on the contrary, when Shâwar went to visit him, it was Salâh ad-Dîn and Jûrdîk, having with them some soldiers, who met him on the way. Each of the two parties saluted the other and then, as they were riding together, the deed was committed by these two (officers). God knows best! (17) Immediately after the death of Shâwar, al-Aâdid sent for Asad ad-Dîn, who was then in the camp. That chief, on entering into Cairo, saw such a crowd of common people that he felt afraid; so, he said to them: "Our lord al-Aâdid permits you to go and pillage the palace of Shâwar." They immediately dispersed for that purpose and Asad ad-Dîn went in to al-Aâdid, who received him politely, invested him with the robes of the vizirship and conferred on him the titles of al-Malik al-Mansûr (the victorious prince), Amîr al-Juyûdsh (commander in chief of the troops). Asad ad-Dîn died soon after, on Sunday the 22nd of the latter Jumâda of that year (23rd March, A. D. 1169). His disorder was a suffocation (or quinsey). Some say that he died of a poisoned shirt which they put on him whilst they were dressing him in the vizirial robes. He died at Cairo and was buried in the palace of the vizirate, but the body was afterwards removed to the city of the Prophet (Medina). He held the place of vizir during two months and five days. It is stated also that he went to visit al-Aâdid for the first time on Monday, the 19th of the latter Rabi of that year (20th January, A. D. 1169).—In our article on Shâwar and in that on Asad ad-Dîn, some of the facts here related have been noticed; if there be repetitions in this place, the cause is that we have given a fuller account of things than before. In all that, our object was to follow up the history of Salâh ad-Dîn, indicate the degrees of rank through which he passed and mark what happened to him from the beginning to the end of his career. I preferred giving (here) that information in one continuous narrative, so that our discourse might not be interrupted by digressions. I shall now continue: Historians
state that the death of Asad ad-Din Shirkâh consolidated the sultan Salâh ad-Din in his position at the head of affairs and completed the foundations of his future greatness. For him the state of things prospered gradually and assumed the fairest aspect; he was able to spend treasures, gain the hearts of men and, as a fit acknowledgment for the favours which God had granted him, he renounced the use of wine, and avoided all incitations to pleasure; putting on the tunic of energy and fortitude, he took a solid footing in the path of righteousness and continued, till his last day, in the practise of such works as brought him nearer and nearer unto God. Our professor, Ibn Shaddâd (Bahâd ad-Din) says: "I heard the following words from his own lips: "When God enabled me to acquire Egypt so easily, I knew that he meant (to help me to) the conquest of Palestine; such was the thought which was impressed "upon my mind."" As soon as he obtained the supreme command, he began to direct expeditions against the Franks and never ceased to launch plundering parties into the territories of al-Karak, Shaubek and elsewhere. The clouds of generosity and beneficence with which he overshadowed the people were such that their like had never been recorded in the annals of any other reign. All this he did, and yet he was only a vizir in the service of the Fatemides; but he himself was a professor of the orthodox faith, a planter (who established) in that country doctors learned in the law, sâifs and religious men. People hastened to him from all quarters and came to him from every side (18). Never did he frustrate the hopes of those who applied to him and never was he without a visitor. This continued till the year 565 (1169). Nûr ad-Din, being informed that Salâh ad-Din had obtained the government of Egypt, took the city of Emessa from the lieutenants of Asad ad-Din. This was in the year 564. When the Franks learned what the Muslims (of Syria) were doing (in Egypt) and heard that the authority of Salâh ad-Din had been fully established in that country, they felt that he, after acquiring such a force and such an empire, would come to conquer their own territory, ruin their abodes and tear up their establishments by the roots. They in consequence joined with the Greeks (ar-Rûm) and proceeded towards Egypt. As they meant to attack Damietta, they took with them the instruments of siege and all such provisions as might be required. The Franks of Syria, having learned this, took courage, seized by a stratagem on the castle of Akkâr which was occupied by the Muslims, and got the governor into their power. This officer was one of Nûr ad-Din’s mamlûks; he bore the name of Khotlokh and held the rank of alam-dâr (standard-bearer of the sultan). It was in the month of the-
BIographical Dictionary.

The latter Rabl, 565 (A. D. 1169-70), that this took place. When Nūr ad-Dīn learned that the Franks had appeared and were encamped before Damietta, he resolved on giving them something else to occupy their attention and, in the month of Shabān (April-May) of the same year (A. D. 1170), he laid siege to al-Karak. The Franks of the Sāhil (Phoenicia) marched against him but, when he advanced to meet them, they did not await his arrival. News was then brought to him that Majd ad-Dīn ibn ad-Dāya was dead,—he died at Aleppo in the month of Ramadān, 565 (May-June, A. D. 1170).—His attention was in consequence turned towards that quarter because ibn ad-Dāya acted there as executor of his orders. He therefore left the place where he was and returned to Syria. Being then informed that Aleppo and a great number of other cities had been ruined by an earthquake, on the 12th of Shauwal of that year (29th June A. D. 1170), he set out for Aleppo but, when he had got as far as Tell Bāsher, news reached him that his brother Kutb ad-Dīn had died at Mosul. On receiving this intelligence, he departed, the same night, for that city. This we have noticed in our article on that prince, whose name was Maudūd (vol. III. p. 459). When Salāh ad-Dīn was informed that the Franks meant to attack Damietta, he equipped troops, filled that city with implements of war and promised to the inhabitants a reinforcement in case the enemy came to besiege them. Gifts and donations were distributed by him to a great amount, because he was now a vizir, acting with absolute power, whilst no one dared to control his orders. The Franks, having taken position before Damietta, directed against it a number of violent assaults, but he, may God have mercy on his soul! attacked them from without by means of flying parties, whilst the garrison fought against them from within. It was through his means and by his skilful measures that the Muslims remained victorious. The besiegers, frustrated in their expectations, were obliged to decamp; their mangonels were burned, their (military) engines taken and a great number of their men slain. Salāh ad-Dīn, having thus consolidated his power, sent to request of Nūr ad-Dīn that his father Najm ad-Dīn Aiyūb should be allowed to join him. "My happiness" said he, "will thus be complete and "my adventure be similar to that of Yūsuf (Joseph) the faithful." In the month of the latter Jumāda, 565 (Feb.-March, A. D. 1170) he was joined by his father.—Such is the date assigned by Ibn Shaddād to the arrival of Aiyūb in Egypt, but the true one is that which we have mentioned in our article on that chief (vol. I. p. 245).—He (Salāh ad-Dīn) received him with all due honour and respect, and offered to.
resign to him the supreme command; but Aïyûb refused to accept it, saying: "My son! God would not have chosen you to fill this place of authority, had you not been equal to the task. It is not right to change the object of fortune's favours." He was then appointed by his son to the interdiction of the treasury-stores and continued to hold the rank of a vizir till the death of al-Ââdid. — I must here observe that the greater part of the foregoing information is extracted from Ibn Shaddâd's *History of Salâh ad-Dîn*; the rest is derived from other sources. — Our professor, the hâfiz Izz ad-Dîn Ibn al-Athîr, the same of whom we have made mention above, gives, in his *History of the Âtâbeks* the following account of the manner in which Salâh ad-Dîn obtained the supreme command: "Some of the emirs whom Nûr ad-Dîn had sent to Egypt aspired to the command of the whole army and the possession of the vizirship." — This was subsequently to the death of Asad ad-Dîn. — "One of them was the emir Âin ad-Dawla al-Yârûkî; another was Kuth ad-Dîn Khorsû Ibn Talîl, a nephew of Abu 'l-Hâja al-Hâdîbî who, at one time, had been lord of Arbela." — The college at Cairo which is called *al-Madrasa tal-Kubiya* was founded by this Kuth ad-Dîn. — "The third was Saïf ad-Dîn Ali Ibn Ahmad al-Hâkkârî, the same whose grandfather possessed the castles in the country of the Hakkârâ Kurds." — He was generally known by the appellation of *al-Mashûtâb* (the scarred) and was the father of the same Imâm ad-Dîn Ahmad Ibn al-Mashtûtâb whose life we have given in a separate article (vol. I. p. 162). — "The fourth was Shihûb ad-Dîn Mahmûd al-Hârîmi, one of Salâh ad-Dîn's maternal uncles. Each of these chiefs aimed at the supreme power and had prepared to seize on it by force. Al-Ââdid, the sovereign of Egypt, then sent to Salâh ad-Dîn, inviting him to come to the palace in order to receive his investiture as vizir and thus replace his uncle. What induced al-Ââdid to take this step, was his idea that Salâh ad-Dîn, being ill supported and having neither troops nor men to rely on, would have but little power in the exercise of his authority and would let himself be governed by the will of the sovereign, without daring to resist. He intended also to send an agent to the Syrian army for the purpose of gaining over a part of it and then sending the rest out of the country. He hoped, by this means to regain the mastery throughout all Egypt, which country he might then be able to protect against the Franks and against Nûr ad-Dîn, with the aid of the Syrian troops which had entered into his service. But here again was exemplified the fact indicated by the well-known saying: *I meant Amr, but God meant*
BIIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

"Khdrja (19)." — Of this proverbial expression, with which the learned are not unacquainted, I shall give an account, if God so please, when I have terminated the present article. Let us resume Ibn al-Athir's recital: "Salâh ad-Dîn refused the offer, thinking himself unable to fill so elevated a place, but, yielding, at length, to the remonstrances of his father, he accepted it, much against his will: Certe- 

tainly God will make (men) wonder at (seeing) people led to Paradise in chains (20).

On arriving at the palace, he was arrayed in the viziral dress, which consisted in the jubba (robe), the turban and other objects; he then received the title of al-\n
Malik an-Nâsir (the helpful prince), after which he retired to the palace of Asad ad-Dîn. There he remained for some time, without receiving the slightest mark of attention or any offer of service from the other emirs, who were hoping to obtain the power for themselves. The legist Dîâ ad-Dîn Isa al-Hakkârî, who staid with him, — we have given a separate article (vol. II. p. 430) to this doctor, — then made advances to Saif ad-Dîn Ali Ibn Ahmad, and succeeded in gaining him over, by making him observe that the authority could not pass to him as long as Atîn ad-Dawla, al-Hârîmi and Ibn Talît were living. He then went to Shihâb ad-Dîn al-Hârîmi and said: 'There is Salâh ad-Dîn, your sister's son; what he possesses is yours, and now, as he has got the authority into his hands, be not the first to try and deprive him of it; never, in any case, will it come to you.' He did not discontinue his efforts till he induced him to appear before Salâh ad-Dîn and take the oath of fidelity. He then went to Kutb ad-Dîn and said: 'All the people now obey Salâh ad-Dîn; you and al-Yârîkî are the only exceptions. In every case, that which should unite you to him is the reflexion that he (like you,) is a Kurd by origine and that the power should not be allowed to pass into the hands of the Turks.' At length, by magnificent promises and the offer of a larger appanage, he decided him on submitting to Salâh ad-Dîn. He then applied to Atîn ad-Dawla tal-Yârîkî, who was the principal chief among them and who possessed more troops than the others; but, on him he vainly em- 
ployed the charms of his (discourse) and the magic of his language. That chief declared positively that he would never serve under Salâh ad-Dîn, and then returned to Nûr ad-Dîn with some others. That sultan blamed him for leaving Egypt, but the fault was committed in order that God might accomplish a thing which was (destined) to be done (Koran, sur. 8, s. 43). Salâh ad-Dîn's power was now established on a solid footing and his authority well consolidated.
Acting as the lieutenant of al-Malik al-Aâdil Nûr ad-Dîn, he had the ḥādîth said in that prince's name throughout all the cities of Egypt; it was also in Nûr ad-Dîn's name that the agents of government fulfilled the duties of their office. Nûr ad-Dîn, when writing to Salâh ad-Dîn, addressed him by the title al-Amîr al-İsfâhânsalâr (the emir commander of the cavalry) and signed his letters with the 'aldâma (21) so as to avoid compromising the dignity of his name (by subscribing it to missives of that kind). His letters were never addressed to Salâh ad-Dîn himself but ran thus: 'The Amir Isfahânsalâr Salâh ad-Dîn and all the other emirs in the Egyptian territory are hereby enjoined to do so and so.' Salâh ad-Dîn gained the affection and the hearts of all men by lavishing on them the treasures heaped up by Āsad ad-Dîn. When al-Aâdîd was asked by him for money, he dare not refuse; having now become like the animal which dug up with its hoof the instrument of its death (22).' — Ibn al-Atthîr says, in his greater historical work (23): On examining the annals of the Moslim people, I perceived that, with regard to many of those chiefs who founded dynasties, the authority did not pass to their sons but to their collaterals. Thus, in the early times of Islamism, Moawîa Ibn Abî Sofyân was the first of his family who reigned, and the sovereignty passed from his posterity to his cousins of the Marwân family. Some time after, appeared as-Saffâh, the first of the Abbasides who came to the throne; after him, the empire passed, not to his descendants but to those of his brother al-Mansûr. At a later period, Nasr Ibn Ahmad, the first of the Samanides, founded an empire which passed to his brother Isma'îl Ibn Ahmad, in whose posterity it remained. Yakûb as-Saffâr was the first of his family who came to the throne, and the sovereignty passed from him to his brother Amr, in whose posterity it continued. Such also was the case with Imâd ad-Dawla Ibn Buwaih; the authority passed from him to his brothers Rukn ad-Dawla and Moizz ad-Dawla. After that came the Seljûkîdes, of whom the first sovereign was Toghrûl Bek and who had for successors the descendants of his brother Dâwûd. In the present case, we see that the supreme authority passed directly from Şirkhû to the son of his brother Najm ad-Dîn Aîyûb. Were I not apprehensive of being led too far, I should mention a great number of other cases, similar to these. The cause of that must be, I think, that when a man begins to found an empire, multitudes of lives are lost. He then seizes on the (conquered) kingdom, but the hearts of those who were in it (and had been dispossessed) still remain attached to it. God therefore
"excludes, for their sake, that conqueror's posterity from the throne and thus chastises him.—Salāh ad-Dīn then sent to Nūr ad-Dīn, requesting permission for his brothers to come and join him, but met with a refusal. 'No,' said the sultan, 'I am afraid that one or other of them may oppose your measures and thus bring the state into confusion.' Learning, however, that the Franks had assembled with the intention of invading Egypt, he dispatched to that country a body of troops and, with them, the brothers of Salāh ad-Dīn. Amongst them was his elder brother, Shams ad-Dawla Tūrān Shāh Ibn Aiyūb, — the same to whom we have given a separate article (vol. I. p. 284). — When he was on the point of setting out, Nūr ad-Dīn said to him: 'If, on going to Egypt, you mean to look upon your brother Yūsuf with the same eyes as when he was in your service, waiting on you whilst you remained seated, I advise you not to depart, for you would bring ruin on the country and I should be obliged to recall you and punish you as you deserved. But, if you go there to look upon him as the lord of Egypt and as my lieutenant, and to serve him as devotedly as you serve me, you may depart. Go then and be for him a firm support, an assistant in all his undertakings.' The other replied: 'I shall serve him and obey him, please God! in a manner which you will hear of (with satisfaction);' and he behaved towards Salāh ad-Dīn as he said.'

— Some leaves farther on, Ibn al-Athīr has a chapter on the fall of the Egyptian dynasty and its replacement by the authority of the Abbasides, an event which took place in the month of Muharram, 567 (Sept.-Oct. A. D. 1171). He there says:

The name of al-Aādīd, sovereign of Egypt, then ceased to be mentioned in the khotba and was replaced by that of the imām (khalīf al-Mustadī bi-Amr Ilāh, commander of the faithful. That change was effected in the following manner: when Salāh ad-Dīn had established his authority on a firm basis in Egypt and met no longer with any (chiefs) inclined to disobey him, al-Aādīd's influence was greatly diminished and not a man remained of all the Egyptian army.' Nūr ad-Dīn then wrote to Salāh ad-Dīn, ordering him to suppress the khotba made for al-Aādīd and replace it by the khotba of the Abbasides. Salāh ad-Dīn hesitated to comply and excused his conduct by stating his fears lest that proceeding should excite a revolt among the people of Egypt who, being favorably inclined towards their old dynasty, would not consent to such a change. The sultan paid no attention to this remonstrance and sent back such positive orders that Salāh ad-Dīn had no means of avoiding the task. Knowing that al-Aādīd was unwell, he con-

vol. IV. 63
sulted the emirs on the propriety of introducing the Abbaside khotba. Some of
them approved and engaged to second him; others declared it dangerous, but the
order of Nur ad-Din was not to be disobeyed. A Persian named al-Amir al-
Aàlim, whom I often saw at Mosul, had just then arrived in Egypt. When he
perceived their hesitation, he declared that he himself would be the first to say the
( Abbaside ) khotba and, on the first Friday of the month of Muharram, he got into
the pulpit before the preacher, and offered up a prayer for al-Mustadi bi-Amr Ilah.
As no disapprobation was shown, Salâh ad-Din gave orders that, on the Friday
following, the preachers ( attached to the mosques ) of Old and New Cairo should re-
place the khotba for al-Aàdid by a khotba for al-Mustadi. This was done without
provoking even the slightest opposition (24). He then sent to all the provinces of
Egypt written orders to the same effect. As al-Aàdid was very ill, none of his fa-
mily told him what had happened; ' If he recover,' said they, ' he will learn it
(time enough.,) and, if he is to die, let us not trouble the last days he has to live.'
He died on the 10th of Muharram, without being aware of what was passing.
Salâh ad-Din then held a sitting in order to receive ( as the defunct sovereign's
vizir and lieutenant ) the addresses of condolence, after which he took possession
of the palace ( or citadel, al-Kasr ) and of all that it contained. Previously to the
death of al-Aàdid, he had placed there as its guardian the eunuch Bahâ ad-Din
Karakûsh. '— We have given his life ( col. II. p. 520). — ' This officer, being
installed there as al-Aàdid's ustad-dar ( intendant of the household ), kept all things
safe and delivered them up to Salâh ad-Din. Al-Aàdid's family were taken to an
insulated mansion and placed under guard; his sons, his uncles and their chil-
dren were lodged in one of the halls of the palace ( citadel ) and guards set over
them. All the male and female slaves were removed from the palace; to some
of them Salâh ad-Din granted their liberty; others he gave away and others he
sold. Thus did he empty the palace of its inhabitants; Glory be to Him whose
reign shall never pass away and on whom no change can be effected by the suc-
cession of ages! Al-Aàdid, in the height of his illness, sent for Salâh ad-Din, but
he, being apprehensive of some treachery, abstained from going. After al-
Aàdid's death, Salâh ad-Din discovered that his intentions had been friendly and
regretted to have staid away. The Obaidite ( Fatimide ) dynasty had its commen-
cement in Ifrikiya and Maghreb; it began in the month of Zu '1-Hijja, 299 (July,
A. D. 912) (25). The first of these sovereigns was al-Mahdi Abû Muhammad
"Obaid Allah. He founded the city of al-Mahdiya and became master of all Ifrikiya."—Such is the date assigned by our professor Ibn al-Athir to the conquest of Ifrikiya by al-Mahdi, but the true one is that which we have given in our account of his life (vol. II. p. 79), to which we refer the reader.—Ibn al-Athir then says: "On the death of al-Mahdi, the sovereignty passed to his son al-Kāim Abū 'l-Kāsim Muhammad."—He then speaks of these princes, one after another, till he comes to al-Aadid, and there he says: "His death marked the downfall of their empire. They reigned two hundred and sixty-six years, two hundred and eight of which they passed in Egypt (26). Fourteen members of this family reigned, namely: al-Mahdi, al-Kāim, al-Mansūr, al-Moizz, al-Aziz, al-Hākim, az-Zahir, al-Mustansir, al-Mustali, al-Aāmir, al-Hāfiz, az-Zahir, al-Fāiz and al-Aaadid, who was the last of them."—As I have given, in this work, a separate article on each of these princes, whoever wishes to know something of their history, will find what he wants under their respective names. We need not therefore repeat that information here. Ibn al-Athir continues thus: "A summary account of the (princes) whose names we have collected here is given in our greater historical work;"—he means the chronicle which he entitled the Kāmil; it is a work of great repute and one of the best of its class. After that, he says: "Salāh ad-Din, having taken possession of the palace with what it contained, distributed part of the money and the treasures to the members of his family and his emirs. A considerable portion of the property which remained he sold. Amongst these treasures were precious stones and jewels in such a quantity as was never possessed by any other king. They had been collected during a long series of years and the lapse of ages. One of these objects was the (famous) rod of emerald which was one span and a half in length; another was the (celebrated) string of rubies. There also were found one hundred thousand books, selected with great care and very fairly written; some of them were in the mansūb (or eastern neskhī) character (27). When the khutba was said in Cairo for al-Mostadi, Nūr ad-Din took to him the good news. It gave the highest satisfaction to the Khalif who, in return, caused a complete dress of honour to be borne to him by Imād ad-Din Sandal al-Muktafawi (who was one of the Khalif al-Muktafī's freedmen). This was a high mark of honour, because Imād ad-Din occupied an eminent position at the Abbaside court. He sent also a state-dress to Salāh ad-Din, but it was of a kind inferior to that which Nūr ad-Din had received. He dispatched also to Egypt a quantity of black
standards, that they might be set up on the pulpits. These were the first emblems of Abbásid pomp which appeared in Egypt since the conquest of that country by the Obaidites." End of the extract from Ibn al-Athir.—When news was brought to the imām (khalīf) al-Mustadi bi-Amr Ilhāl Abū Muḥammad al-Ḥasan, who was the son of the imām al-Mustanjid and the father of the imām an-Nāṣir li-Dīn Ilhāl, that his (family’s) authority had been reestablished in Egypt and that his name was not only pronounced in the khotba but inscribed on the coinage, after so long an interval, Abū ‘l-Fath Muḥammad Sibt Ibn at-Taawizi (vol. III. p. 162) composed on the subject a magnificent kastād in which he celebrated the praises of that khalīf. In it he notices also the recovery of Egypt, the conquest of Yemen and the death of the heretic who there took up arms and assumed the title of al-Mahdi. This occurred in the year 571 (A. D. 1175–6 (27). Salāh ad-Dīn had just sent to him (to the khalīf) a large quantity of the treasures of Egypt and the spoils of the Egyptians. Here is the beginning of the poem:

Say to the cloud which leans towards the earth whilst the southern gales are exciting the flow of its waters: "Turn towards the valley in the sands (where my beloved used to reside), and shed your drops profusely upon the spots which we frequented and upon the traces of the camp." Station where all our friends halted! noisy playground of the tribe! a few loose corner-stones are now thy only occupiers, since friends and inhabitants are gone. Whether did the camel which bore off my beloved direct its steps? When did it depart? Ardent is my passion to enjoy again the time which I passed in the tribe’s reserved grounds! Blessings (28) upon a time such as that! Mine is the passion of a man who, forced away by the hand of departure, is cast into a distant land. How well I recollect thee (dearest spot!), where I and my beloved met so often without being perceived by (jealous) fortune; at that time, thy extensive pasture-grounds were never dusty; thy waters were never tainted. (To see) thy friendly gazelles was for me, a necessity; for me thy soil was a bed (29). A censor blamed my conduct, but without knowing who caused my passion and the agitation of my heart. My passion was for one whose waist put to shame the plant wand and (whose sweet voice) humbled the pride of the bleating gazelle. She who was my torment could not have given me pain, had she taken pity on the person thus tormented. Through love for her, my tears have been set at liberty and my heart remains a captive. O thou who art my torment! Thy disdain hath deprived of life a lover by thee afflicted. On thy departure, thou didst devote him for ever to tears and to affliction. My heart has been obliged to suffer the unremitting pain of travelling and sojournings. Have pity on those eyelids now chafed by weeping and long deprived of sleep. Be not parsimonious (of your kindness); parsimony deprives the fairest face of its beauty. How many were the nights which I passed till overcome by the wine-cup and the amphora! Then, in my wantonness, I strutted proudly, sweeping the ground with my train and my long sleeves; my companion was slender-waisted, pliant in stature, bending gracefully as she turned around, delicate in body. But the sin of each nocturnal visit that I made to her is now expiated by the praises which I address to al-Mustadi Abū Muḥammad al-Ḥasan, a sovereign established on the highest pinnacle of the kha-
BIographiesal Dictionary.

Prince! thou who hast trod for years in the path traced by the Prophet! thou who hast united in the same bonds the aspect of the Prophet and the (dignity of the) khalifate! Kingdoms, fortresses and cities have humbly submitted to the awe which you inspire; subdued as they were by the sharp sword and the pliant spear. To thee have come the kingly spoils of Sald (Upper Egypt) and of Aden. The pretended khalif in the land of Egypt and the misled insurgent in Yemen have been despoiled of the treasures heaped up, since olden times, by Zul Roain and by Zul Yazan (30). The hate and animosity with which they inspired you has now been quenched (in the blood spilt) by the points of your lances. Struck with terror (by your anger), they found that shields and castles were of no avail. One evening saw them led off as captives, humble and submissive as the victims which the pilgrims lead to sacrifice; and you gave up their extensive countries as an offering to calamities and disasters. Every day, a band of your troops made a hostile inroad, and thus you disclosed the secret of the sainted Muslim warriors (in former times). You have washed away the stains of the filth left by heretic princes; and now, it is as if prayers had never been offered up for them from those pulpits.

The quantity of verses just given is quite sufficient, and, to it I shall limit the extract which I make from this long kashda. Another piece composed by the same poet in honour of the khalif contains also allusions to these events. I cannot recollect any part of it except the passage in which the charms of the beloved are extolled, and, as it full of grace and beauty, I am induced to insert it here:

Welcome to the aspect of a (fair) visitor whose brilliant countenance puts darkness to shame! Time has at length permitted us to meet. Despite all obstacles, she approached, and then passed the night in banding around the wine-cup. I was one those who could cope with her, but, inebriated by her glances, I did not require her wine. The maiden is fair and her custom is to slay me, both by her departure and by her staying. (I die,) whether she casts her eyes upon me or retires with disdain. Never do her promises find the day of their fulfilment. The sun is her rival and the moon her (admiring) observer; morning appears over her lighdam and night lies under her hood (31). She belongs to the tribe of Modar and can trace back her origin to the (owner of the) red (tent) (32). Whilst she passed the night in her pavilion, shining spears circled around it. I feel the stroke of death when she is on the point of her departure, and again I feel it when we are about to meet. After a long absence, I passed by her vernal abode and by its open courts; my eyes then wept for those fawns (maidens). I stopped to look towards the orient tracts in which her beauty used to rise; hoping to discover the moons (the handsome maids, who formerly shone) in these heavens. There I wept till I nearly excited the compassion of the two ban-tree (groves) which grew in that valley. O thou who afflict those eyes accustomed to shed tears (33), thou hast yet left within my bosom a spark of life, but it is dying out from the malady of weeping. My eyes long to see thee, but (they cannot, because) thou art (carefully preserved) within their pupils (34). By refusing to cast a look on me, thou grantest to my eyes time to collect fresh tears, which then flow as copiously as gifts fall from the khalif's hand.

After this passage, the poet commences the eulogium which, like the rest of the
piece, contains ideas of great originality. Towards the end of this article, we shall insert some of the verses composed by him in honour of Salāh ad-Dīn. He used to send his kastdas from Baghdad to that prince and, with each of them, another piece of verse containing the praises of al-Kādi al-Fādil; the latter received the packets and presented the kastdas to Salāh ad-Dīn. — After the passages inserted above, our professor Ibn al-Athīr has a chapter on the origin of the coolness which arose between Nūr ad-Dīn and Salāh ad-Dīn, and which they both kept secret. He there says:

"In the year 567 (A. D. 1171-2) something occurred which led Nūr ad-Dīn to distrust Salāh ad-Dīn. Here is what passed: The former sent a dispatch to Salāh ad-Dīn, ordering him to assemble the troops of Egypt, lead them into the territory of the Franks and blockade al-Karak, whilst he, on his side, would call together his army and join him there, so that they might both wage war against the Franks and conquer their provinces. Salāh ad-Dīn left Cairo on the 20th of Muharram and informed Nūr ad-Dīn by a dispatch that he would not loiter on the way. Nūr ad-Dīn had already assembled his troops and made every preparation for his departure. He did not intend to commence his march till he was assured that Salāh ad-Dīn had begun his; so, when he received that intelligence, he set out from Damascus with the intention of going to al-Karak. On reaching that place, he received from him a letter of excuses in which he stated that he was unable to depart in consequence of the agitation which prevailed in the cities of Egypt and which was excited, as far as he could learn, by a partisan of the Alides (the Fatimides). He added that the disaffected intended to surprise and occupy these cities, and that he feared to lose them if he absented. This excuse was not accepted by Nūr ad-Dīn. The real cause of Salāh ad-Dīn's immobility was that his companions and intimate friends had excited his apprehensions and deterred him from going to meet Nūr ad-Dīn. This disobedience to orders highly displeased the latter who immediately resolved on entering into Egypt and expelling his refractory servant from that country. Salāh ad-Dīn, being informed of his intention, assembled the members of his family, amongst whom was his father, Najm ad-Dīn Ayyūb, and his maternal uncle, Shihāb ed-Dīn al-Hārimi. He called also to that meeting all the other emirs. Having then informed them that Nūr ad-Dīn had the intention of coming to attack him and deprive him of the possession of Egypt, he asked their advice on the subject. All of them kept silent, till at length his nephew Taki ad-Dīn Omar, — we have given his life in a sepa-
rate article (vol. II. p. 391), — "said: 'If he come, we shall fight him and keep 'him out of the country.' Some other members of the family concurred with him, "but Najm ad-Dîn Aïûb, who was a man of foresight, prudence and sagacity, re- "primanded them severely and declared that what had been just said was an "enormity. Having then ordered Taki ad-Dîn to sit down, he scolded him and "said to Salâh ad-Dîn: 'I am your father, and there is Shihâb ad-Dîn, your ma- "terial uncle; do you think that, in all this assembly, there are persons who love "you as much as we do and who are as anxious as we for your welfare?' — 'No, "by Allah!' exclaimed Salâh ad-Dîn. 'Know then,' continued Najm ad-Dîn, "that, if I and your uncle Shihâb ad-Dîn met Nûr ad-Dîn, we could not possibly "avoid dismounting and kissing the ground before him. Did he even order us "to behead you with the sword, we should obey. From that you may judge of the "other emirs. All the chiefs whom you see here and all the troops could not "avoid dismounting and kissing the ground before Nûr ad-Dîn, were they to meet "him. This country is his, and, if he wish to depose you, we shall obey him "without hesitation. My advice is therefore that you write to him and say: 'I "have been informed that you intend making an expedition for the purpose of "(occupying) this country; but, what necessity is there for your doing so? Let "your lordship send here a courier mounted on a dromedary, with orders to put a "turban-sash about my neck and lead me off to you; no one here will offer to re- "sist your will.' He then said to the persons present: 'Retire and leave us! "we are Nûr ad-Dîn's mamlûks and slaves, he may do with us what he "pleases.' The meeting then broke up, and the greater number of those who "had been there wrote to Nûr ad-Dîn, informing him of what had passed. Najm "ad-Dîn, being left alone with his son Salâh ad-Dîn, said to him: 'You are very "imprudent and know little of the men who formed that numerous assembly; you "let them perceive your secret feelings and what you had upon your mind. If "Nûr ad-Dîn heard that you meant to prevent him from entering into this country, "he would leave aside all other affairs and direct his whole attention towards you; "and, were he to come against you, not a single man of this army would help you; "on the contrary, they would deliver you up to him. Now, that the sitting is over, "these emirs will write to him and mention what I said. So, you must also write "to the same purport and say to him: 'What necessity is there for your coming "against me?' Send one of your dromedary-couriers and let him cast a rope about
‘my neck.’ When he reads this, he will give up his project and turn his attention to such affairs as he may consider more serious. Time runs on and God is doing something at every instant. By Allah! if Nūr ad-Dīn attempted to take from us a single sugar-cane of ours, I myself should fight against him and hinder him from doing so, were I even to lose my life in the struggle.’ Salāh ad-Dīn followed his father’s advice, and Nūr ad-Dīn, seeing how things stood, gave up his project, as Najm ad-Dīn had foretold, and did not resume it as long as he lived. The counsel given to Salāh ad-Dīn was really excellent.” End of Ibn al-Athyr’s relation.—Our professor Ibn Shaddād says in the historical work mentioned above: Salāh ad-Dīn then placed himself on the footing of ruling with justice, of practising beneficence and of bestowing favours on all men. This continued till the year 568 (A. D. 1172-3), when he set out with his army for the purpose of invading the territory of al-Karak and Shaubeik. He began by these places because they were the nearest to him and lay so close to the road that they intercepted the communications with Egypt and rendered impossible the passage of caravans, unless he himself went out (with troops) in order to help them through. He intended to widen that road and clear it of obstructions. That same year, he laid siege to the place (al-Karak) and had a number of encounters with the Franks, after which he retreated without obtaining any success. On his return, he learned that his father Najm ad-Dīn Ajībīb had died some time before his arrival.”—I have given the date of that prince’s death in his biographical notice (vol. I. p. 246).—“In the year 569 (A. D. 1173-4), he saw (with satisfaction) the strength of his army and the number of his troops. Being then informed that a man called Abd an-Nabi Ibn Mahdī had become master of Yemen and gotten possession of its fortresses, he sent his brother Tūrān Shāh against the usurper.”—As we have given an account of that event in the life of Tūrān Shāh (vol. I. p. 284), we need not repeat it here. —In the year 569, Nūr ad-Dīn died, as we have stated in his life (vol. III, p. 338). “Salāh ad-Dīn then learned that an individual called al-Kanz had assembled a great multitude of negroes at Syene under the pretext of restoring the former Egyptian dynasty (the Fatimides), and that numbers of the people of Cairo, being desirous of reestablishing that family on the throne, had gone to join the rebel. He therefore placed his brother al-Mālik al-Ādīl at the head of a numerous army and sent him against the insurgents. On the 7th of Safar, 570 (7th September, A. D. 1174), al-Ādīl encountered the enemy and routed them com-
quot;plety. (By this victory) the authority of Salâb ad-Dîn was fully established.quot; ""Nûr ad-Dîn (in dying,) left a son called al-Malik as-Sâlih Ismâîl,"" — we have spoken of him in our article on Nûr ad-Dîn and mentioned that he was at Damascus when his father died. — ""The citadel of Aleppo was then occupied by Shams ad-Dîn Ali Ibn ad-Dâyâ and by Shadbakht, the former of whom was meditating great projects. Al-Malik as-Sâlih left Damascus and, in the month of Muharram, 570 (August, A. D. 1174), he halted outside of Aleppo, having with him Sâbik ad-Dîn. Badr ad-Dîn Hasan (, the brother of Ali) Ibn ad-Dâyâ went out to him and then arrested Sâbik ad-Dîn. When al-Malik as-Sâlih entered into the citadel, the two brothers, Shams ad-Dîn and Hasan Ibn ad-Dâyâ were arrested and cast into prison along with Sâbik ad-Dîn. That same day, Abu 'l-Fadl Ibn al-Khashshâb (35) lost his life in a riot which took place at Aleppo; another account says that he was killed on the day which preceded the restoration of the sons of ad-Dâyâ and that these chiefs were the authors of his death. After the death of Nûr ad-Dîn, it became evident to Salâb ad-Dîn that the son of the deceased prince was not old enough to undertake the direction of affairs or support the weight of the sovereignty, and that, in Syria, things would fall into the greatest confusion. A letter which he then received from Shams ad-Dîn Ibn al-Mukaddam (35*) decided him on taking the field with a large body of troops.

He set out from Old Cairo, leaving there a sufficient garrison, and proceeded to Damascus, under the pretext that he was going to take charge of al-Malik as-Sâlih's interests. On Tuesday, the last day of the latter Rabî, 570 (27 November, A. D. 1174), Damascus was delivered up to him and its citadel also. The first house into which he entered was that of his father."" — This residence is now called the house of as-Sharfîf al-Akki and has opposite to it the Addiliya College, which is an establishment well known in the city. — ""The inhabitants gathered round him and expressed great joy at his arrival. That same day, he distributed large sums of money, to the extreme delight of the Damascus. Having then left a garrison in the citadel, he set out for Aleppo. (On his way,) he besieged the city of Hems (Emessa) and took it in the month of the first Jumâda (December), but did not lose his time in attempting to reduce the citadel. He then proceeded to Aleppo and, on Friday, the last day of the first Jumâda (27th December), he attacked that city for the first time. Saif ad-Dîn Ghazi, the son of Kutb ad-Dîn Maudûd and the grandson of Imâd ad-Dîn Zinki, who was then reigning at Mosul, perceived from vol. iv.
"what was going on how redoubtable that man (Salâh ad-Dîn) had become and how
great was the influence which he had acquired. Fearing that, if he neglected to
take proper measures, Salâh ad-Dîn would obtain possession of the whole country,
acquire a firm footing in the sovereignty and usurp the supreme authority, he
sent against him an immense army, which he placed under the orders of his bro-
ther Izz ad-Dîn Masûd. These troops were to expel Salâh ad-Dîn from the coun-
try. The latter, being informed of their approach, decamped from before Aleppo,
on the 1st of Rajab, the same year (26th January, A. D. 1175) and returned to
Hamât whence he went again to Hems, the citadel of which place he then got into
his possession. Izz ad-Dîn Masûd, having arrived at Aleppo, took off with him
the troops of his cousin al-Malik as-Sâlih, who was then the sovereign of that city,
and set out with an immense army. Salâh ad-Dîn, being informed of
their march, advanced to meet them and joined them at Kurûn Hamât (36).
As he was desirous of obtaining peace, he opened negotiations with them,
but peace they refused to make; thinking to attain their object more rea-
dily by risking a battle. Destiny leads, however, to things of which
men are not aware: the two armies encountered and, with God's per-
mission, Salâh ad-Dîn's adversaries were routed and fled most disgrace-
fully. A number of prisoners fell into his hands and received from him their
liberty. The battle was fought at Kurûn Hamât, on the 19th of Ramadân
the same year (13 April, A. D. 1175). After gaining this victory, he returned
to Aleppo and encamped before it, for the second time, but the chiefs of the
city obtained peace by ceding to him Maarra, Kafertâb and Bârin. At the time
in which the battle above-mentioned took place, Saif ad-Dîn Ghâzi was besieging
his brother, Imâd ad-Dîn Zinki, in Sinjâr, of which city the latter was the sove-
reign. He intended to deprive him of it because he saw that he had come to a
good understanding with Salâh ad-Dîn; but, when on the point of taking it, he
learned that his (other) army had been defeated. Fearing that the news might
reach his brother, Imâd ad-Dîn, and encourage him to make a prolonged resis-
tance, he entered into negotiations with him and concluded a peace. Immedia-
tely after, he proceeded to Nasîbin, where all his attention was directed to levying
troops and providing for the necessary expenses. He then went to al-Bîra, cros-
sed the Euphrates and encamped on the Syrian side of the river. From that place
he sent to his cousin, Al-Malik as-Sâlih, the son of Nûr ad-Dîn and sovereign of
"Aleppo, for the purpose of settling the basis of an alliance which he wished to contract. He then proceeded to Aleppo, and al-Malik as-Salih went out to receive him. During the short stay which he made there, he went with an escort of his own troops to the citadel and, on going down from it, he set out for Tall as-Sultan," — a station between Hamat and Aleppo, — "taking with him a numerous army. Salah ad-Din, having drawn from Egypt the troops which were quartered there, led them to Tall as-Sultan and there he halted. On the morning of Thursday, the 10th of Shawwal, 571 (22nd April, A.D. 1176), the two armies drew up in line and had a terrible conflict. Salah ad-Din's right wing was broken by Muzaffar ad-Din Ibn Zain ad-Din" — the lord of Arbeta whom we have spoken of elsewhere, and who commanded Saif ad-Din's left wing. — "Salah ad-Din then charged at the head of his troops, bore down all before him and took a number of prisoners. Amongst them were some of the great emirs, and these he set at liberty. Saif ad-Din returned to Aleppo, carried off the treasures which were kept there and crossed the Euphrates in order to reach his own country. Salah ad-Din prevented his troops from pursuing the fugitives, and, during the rest of that day, they occupied the tents of their adversaries who, in their flight, had left all their baggage behind them. The horses in the stables were distributed by him to his soldiers; all the treasures he gave away, and the tent of Saif ad-Din was bestowed by him on his cousin Izz ad-Din Farrukh Shâh." — This prince was the son of Shâhân Shâh Ibn Aiyûb and the brother of Taki ad-Din Omar, sovereign of Harat. Farrukh Shâh was lord of Baalbek; his son, al-Malik al-Amjad Bahrâm Shâh became lord of that city. — "Salah ad-Din then marched to Manhej, which place was delivered up to him. He then proceeded to the fortress of Azâz and commenced to besiege it on the 4th of Zu'l-Kaada, 571 (15th May, A.D. 1176). There he was traitorously assailed by some Isma'ilians, but God saved his life and the assassins were taken. He remained there till the 14th of Zu'l-Hijja (22nd June), when he got possession of the place. From that he went to Aleppo, where he arrived on the 16th of the same month, and remained some time before the city, after which he departed. Azâz was given up by him to a young girl, the daughter of Nur ad-Din, who had been sent out of the city to request of him the restitution of that place. Salah ad-Din then returned to Egypt for the purpose of examining into the state of the country. His journey thither took place in the month of the first Rabî, 572 (Sept-Oct., A.D. 1176). He had already nominated
as his lieutenant in Damascus his brother Shams ad-Dawlat Tûrân Shâh, who had come from Yemen to see him. Having then made preparations for an expedition into the Sûhil (the littoral provinces of Syria occupied by the Franks), he set out and had an encounter with the Franks at ar-Ramla, on one of the first (ten) days of the latter Jumâda, 573 (Nov.-Dec., A.D. 1177). In this battle the Muslim were defeated,—in consequence of a circumstance too long to be related here (37).—"As they had no fortress in the neighbourhood to which they might have retreated after their defeat, they directed their march towards Egypt but, having lost their way, they were scattered and dispersed, so that a number of them fell into the hands of the enemy. Amongst these was the legist Isa al-Hakkâri, whose captivity was a great loss. God repaired this disaster by the famous battle which was gained at al-Hittin. With al-Malik as-Sûlih, the sultan of Aleppo, affairs were going on badly; he arrested the chief of his administration, Kumushtikin, and put him to death because he could not obtain from him the cession of (the fortress and territory of) Harim. The Franks, being informed of this event, laid siege to Harim with the hope of getting it into their possession. This was in the month of the latter Jumâda (Nov.-Dec.) of that year (A.D. 1177). The garrison, knowing how much they had to fear from the Franks, delivered up the place to al-Malik as-Sûlih, on one of the last (ten) days of Ramadân (Feb. March, A.D. 1178), the same year. This obliged the Franks to retire. Salâh ad-Dîn remained in Egypt till he had brought all things into order and repaired the losses which his partisans had suffered at ar-Ramla. Being then informed that affairs were in a bad posture in Syria, he resolved on invading that country again and turned his thoughts to the undertaking of a holy war. An ambassador then arrived from Killj Arslân, the sultan of Asia Minor (ar-Rûm) for the purpose of making a treaty of peace and of relating (to Salâh ad-Dîn) how much they had to suffer from the Armenians. Salâh ad-Dîn then decided on invading the son of Leon's country (38),—"that is to say, the territory of os-Sis, which is the maritime region that lies between Aleppo and ar-Rûm (Asia Minor).—"in order to assist Killj Arslân against him. He therefore set out and summoned the troops of Aleppo to come and join him. This they were bound to do by one of the conditions mentioned in the treaty of peace (which had been made with al-Malik as-Sûlih). Having then penetrated into the son of Leon's country, he took, on his way, and ruined a fortress, after
"which he granted peace to the enemy, at their humble request and returned back.
"Being then asked by Kilij Arslân to make peace with all the people of the East, he
gave his consent and, on the 10th of the first Jumâda, 576 (3rd Oct., A. D.
1180) he swore (to observe the treaty). In this peace were included Kilij Arslân
and the people of Mosûl. He then returned to Damascus and from that to Egypt.
"After that took place the death of al-Mâlik as-Sâlih, the son of Nûr ad-Dîn." —
"For the date, see our article on his father (vol. III. p. 342). — Before dying,
he made the emirs and the troops of Aleppo swear fidelity to his cousin, Izz ad-
Dîn Masûd, the lord of Mosul." — We have already spoken of this prince, who
was the son of Kuth ad-Dîn Maudûd (vol. III. p. 356). — "On the death of Saif
ad-Dîn," — the date is mentioned in our article concerning him (vol. II. p. 442),
— "his brother, Izz ad-Dîn Masûd, succeeded to the throne. When the latter was
informed of al-Mâlik as-Sâlih's death and learned that he had bequeathed to him
Aleppo, he hastened to that city, lest Salâh ad-Dîn should get there before him.
The first (of his partisans) who arrived at Aleppo was Muzaffar ad-Dîn, the son of
Zain ad-Dîn and the sovereign of Arbela (vol. II. p. 535)." — At that time he
was sovereign of Harrân only and in the dependance of (the sovereign of) Mosul,
to whom all that country belonged. — "Muzaffar ad-Dîn reached Aleppo on
the 3rd of Shâbân, 577 (12th Dec. A. D. 1181). Seventeen days later,
Masûd arrived, went up to the citadel and took possession of all the treasures
deposited there. On the 5th of Shawwâl (11th Feb.) of the same year (1182),
his married al-Mâlik as-Sâlih's mother." — Our professor Ibn Shaddâd then
relates a number of events which have been already noticed in our articles on Izz
ad-Dîn Masûd, on Imâd ad-Dîn Zinki, that prince's brother, and on Tâj al-Malûk
Bâri (vol. I. p. 272), the brother of Salâh ad-Dîn. Whoever wishes to know them
may recur to these articles. I may now state, in a summary manner, that Izz ad-
Dîn Masûd made an exchange with his brother Imâd ad-Dîn Zinki, giving him Aleppo
and receiving from him Sinjâr. Zinki entered into Aleppo after the departure of Izz
ad-Dîn but, when Salâh ad-Dîn came to besiege him, he felt himself unable to keep
the city. Salâh ad-Dîn encamped before it on the 26th of Muhamram, 579 (21st
May, 1183), or on the 16th of that month, if we admit the statement of Ibn Shaddâd.
The emir Imâd ad-Dîn Zinki had then a private conference with the emir Husâm
ad-Dîn Tumân Ibn Ghâzi and consulted him on what was to be done. The advice
of Tumân was to surrender Aleppo provided that some other cities were given to him.
in exchange and that all the treasures in the citadel were left in his possession. 

‘That,’ said Imâd ad-Dîn, ‘is precisely what I thought of doing.’ Husâm ad-Dîn had then a secret conference with Salâh ad-Dîn and obtained his consent to the proposed arrangement. Imâd ad-Dîn received Sinjâr, al-Khabûr, Nasûtîn and Sarûj; Tumân got ar-Rakka as a recompense for his mediation, and Salâh ad-Dîn swore to observe the treaty. This took place on the 17th of Safar (14th June), the same year. Salâh ad-Dîn had laid siege to Sinjâr and taken it on the 2nd of Ramadân, 578 (30th December, A. D. 1182), after which, he gave it to his nephew Taki ad-Dîn Omar. When the peace was concluded in the form just mentioned, he remitted Sinjâr to Imâd ad-Dîn and was put in possession of Aleppo. On Monday, the 7th of Safar (21st May), he went up to the citadel and remained there till he terminated all his arrangements. On the 22nd of the latter Rabî, the same year (15th August), he departed from the city, after establishing there his son al-Malik az-Zâhir, who was then a boy. We have given to him a separate article. The government of the citadel was assigned to Saif ad-Dîn Yâzkûj al-Asadi (one of Asad ad-Dîn Shir-kâh’s mawlas), to whom also the sultan confided the interests of his son. On the date just mentioned, Salâh ad-Dîn set out for Damascus. Ibn Shaddâd says: ‘On the 3rd of Rajab, the same year (22nd Oct. 1183), he left Damascus with the intention of besieging al-Karak, and sent to his brother, al-Malik al-Aâdîl, the order to join him there. He (al-Addîl) left Egypt with a numerous army, and, on the 4th of Shubân (22nd Nov.) he effected his junction with Salâh ad-Dîn in the neighbourhood of al-Karak. When this news reached the Franks, they assembled a great quantity of troops and set out for al-Karak, with the intention of taking a position opposite to the Muslim army. Salâh ad-Dîn, having then conceived fears for the safety of Egypt, sent there his nephew Taki ad-Dîn Omar. On the 16th of Shubân (4th Dec.), the same year, he departed from al-Karak and, on the 24 of that month, he arrived at Damascus. His brother, al-Malik al-Aâdîl, whom he had taken with him, then received from him the government of Aleppo, which city he entered on Friday, the 22nd of Ramadân, the same year (8th January, A. D. 1184). Al-Malik az-Zâhir then left Aleppo with Yâzkûj and arrived at Damascus on Monday, the 28th of Shawwal (13 Jan. 1184). Salâh ad-Dîn loved him better than any of his other sons, because he remarked in him the most praiseworthy qualities, and it was only to effect a necessary arrangement that he deprived him of Aleppo. It is said that al-Aâdîl obtained Aleppo from Salâh ad-Dîn by
"giving him a sum of three hundred thousand dinars to aid in carrying on the holy war; God knows best! Salāh ad-Dīn perceived afterwards that it would be more advantageous to send al-Malik al-Aādil back to Egypt and restore Aleppo to al-Malik az-Zāhir." — It is said that his motive for doing so was what we are going to relate: The emir Alam ad-Dīn Sulaimān Ibn Haidar [left al-Aādil's service because that prince had acted unjustly towards him by giving the promotion which he expected to another officer. He] was one of Salāh ad-Dīn's intimate acquaintances, even previously to the time in which that prince became master of so many countries. Salāh ad-Dīn having fallen dangerously ill whilst besieging Mosul, was carried to Harrān, where he recovered, after bequeathing to each of his sons a portion of his states. On his way to Syria, Alam ad-Dīn, who travelled at his side, addressed him in these terms: "You suppose that these bequests will be fulfilled as exactly as the orders which you give on going out to hunt with the intention of soon returning! How can you think so? Are you not ashamed to see that birds have more foresight than you?" — "How is that?" said Salāh ad-Dīn, laughing. The other replied: "When a bird intends to make a nest for its young, it chooses the top of a tree, so as to preserve them from danger. But you have left the 'lofty' fortresses to your relatives and placed your children on the ground. Aleppo, the capital of a large state, is in the hands of your brother; Hamāt is held by your cousin, Taki ad-Dīn; Hems by the son of Asad ad-Dīn (Shtrkāh), whilst your son al-Afdal is in Egypt with Taki ad-Dīn, who can expel him from that country whenever he pleases. Another of your sons is under the same tent with a brother of yours, who may do with him what he likes." — "You are right;" replied Salāh ad-Dīn, "but let what you have said remain a secret." He then took Aleppo from his brother and gave it to al-Malik az-Zāhir; after that, he bestowed Harrān, ar-Roha (Edessa) and Maiyāfārikīn on al-Malik al-Aādil, in order to get him out of Syria and to find, in that country, wherewithal to provide abundantly for his own children. Then happened (what we have seen). Our article on Izz ad-Dīn Masūd, the son of Kutb ad-Dīn Maudūd and sovereign of Mosul, contains a paragraph concerning the three unsuccessful sieges of Mosul by Salāh ad-Dīn. — Our professor Ibn al-Athir says, in his History: "The third time that he laid siege to it, the rainy season had set in; but he resolved on staying and cutting up all the province of Mosul into fiefs. It was in the month of Shābān, 581 (Oct. Nov. A. D. 1185) that he arrived; he remained there during the rest of that month and during the month of
Ramadān. Frequent messages passed between him and the sovereign of the city, and this correspondence was still going on when he was taken seriously ill and obliged to return to Harrān. It was there that messengers brought to him the acceptance of the proposals which he had made. Peace was then concluded on these conditions: that the sovereign of Mosul should deliver up to him the city of Shahrokhūr and its dependances, the government of al-Karayelli (39) and of the provinces on the other side of the (river) Zāb, that his name should be inserted in the khotba pronounced from the pulpits, and that it should be inscribed on the coinage. When the two contracting parties had ratified the treaty by their respective oaths, Salāh ad-Dīn sent lieutenant-governors to all the provinces which, according to agreement, were to be delivered up to him, and he thus got them into his possession. He was still at Harrān and his indisposition increased to such a degree that his life was dispersed of. He then made all his people (his troops) swear fidelity to his sons. His son al-Malik al-Azīz Imād ad-Dīn Othmān and his brother al-Malik al-Ādil, who had arrived from his sovereignty at Aleppo, were then with him. To each of his sons he assigned a portion of his states and appointed al-Ādil to act as their guardian. After that, he recovered his health and, in the month of Muharram, 592 (March-April, A. D. 1186), he returned to Damascus. During his illness at Harrān he had with him his cousin Nāsir ad-Dīn Muhammad and to him he granted as feft (the cities of) Hems and ar-Rahaba. This prince then set out for Hems and, in passing by Aleppo, he sent for some of the militia and gave them money after making them (magnificent) promises. On arriving at Hems, he wrote to some natives of Damascus, engaging them to deliver their city up to him in the case of Salāh ad-Dīn's death. The latter recovered and, very soon after, Nāsir ad-Dīn died. That event took place on the night preceding the festival of the Sacrifice, the same year (20th Feb. A. D. 1187). He had drunk a great deal of wine and, the next morning, was found lifeless. Some people said that a man suborned by Salāh ad-Dīn went to visit him and then, at a convivial party, put poison into his drink. The next morning, this person was not to be found. His name was an-Nāsīh Ibn al-Amīd. Enquiries were made about him, and the answer was that he had departed the same night. This circumstance contributed to fortify the suspicions which were entertained; God knows best! After his death, the feft held by him was given to his son Shīrkhūh, who was at that time twelve years old. He left great deal of
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

"money, with horses, mules and furniture in abundance. Salâh ad-Din, having
then gone to Hems, examined into the fortune of the deceased prince, and took
the greater part of it, leaving only what was of no value." Our professor then
adds: "I was told that Shirkâh, a year after his father's death, went to see Salâh ad-
Din and was asked by him how far he had advanced in learning the Koran by heart.
To this he replied: "As far as: Surely they who swallow up the wealth of orphans
unjustly shall swallow fire into their bellies and shall burn in flames (Sur. IV,
vers. 11)." All the assembly and Salâh ad-Din himself marvelled at his sharpness.

"— "When Salâh ad-Din," says Ibn Shaddâd, "arrived at Damascus, after recover-
ing from his sickness, he sent for his brother al-Malik al-Aâdil who, in conse-
quence of that order, left Aleppo on the eve of Saturday, the 24th of the first
Rabi, 582 (14th June, A. D. 1186) and proceeded to Damascus with an escort
of light cavalry. He remained there, at the court of Salâh ad-Din, and had
with him a number of conferences and discussions relative to the arrangements
which they had to make. It was decided, at length, in the month of the latter
Jumâda (Aug.-Sept.), the same year, that al-Aâdil should return to Egypt and give
up Aleppo." — Al-Malik az-Zâhir was then sent to that city and made his entry
into the citadel on a Saturday, in the year 582. I have mentioned in his life, that
he died on the same day of the year as that on which he entered into Aleppo as so-
vereign (vol. II. p. 443). I have there indicated the date and the day but know not
from what source I drew that piece of information. The sultan (Salâh ad-Din) then
confided his son al-Malik al-Aziz to al-Aâdil, whom he appointed to act as adâbek (or
guardian) of that prince. Ibn Shaddâd states that al-Malik al-Aâdil related to him as
follows: "When that arrangement was made, I went to pay my respects to al-Malik
al-Aziz and al-Malik az-Zâhir. Having sat down between them, I said to the for-
mer: 'My Lord! I am ordered by the sultan to hold myself ready at your ser-
vice and accompany you to Egypt; but I know that there are a number of auda-
cious fellows who will say things of me which should not be suffered and
who will endeavour to make you mistrust me. Now, if you be disposed to
hearken to such people, let me know it immediately, so that I may not go
there.' The prince answered me thus: 'How can you think it possible that I
could hearken to their words or follow their advice?' I then turned towards
al-Malik az-Zâhir and said: 'I know that your brother has sometimes listened to
the calumnies said of me by insolent fellows and that I have no other friend but

vol. IV.

65
you. So, if I feel my bosom oppressed by any act on his part, I shall be quite satisfied to obtain from you the government of Manbij." — He replied: 'May all turn out fortunately!' — and then said to me every thing kind. — The sultan al-Malik az-Zahir took to wife Ghazia Khâtûn, the daughter of his uncle (40), al-Malik al-Aâdil, and consummated his marriage on Wednesday, the 26th of Ramadân (10th Dec.) the same year (A. D. 1186). After that took place the battle of Hittin, which was such a blessing for the Musulmans. (The historian) says that it was fought on Saturday, the 14th of the latter Rabi, 583 (23rd June, A. D. 1187) and (had begun) towards the middle of Friday. He (Salâh ad-Din) often wished to encounter the enemy on a Friday, hoping to profit by the blessed effects of the prayers offered up on that day by the Moslims and of the invocations then pronounced from the pulpits by the preachers. Having collected all the Moslim troops, he set out with an army numerous beyond count or reckoning. They marched in order of battle and in the fairest array. He had been informed that a great multitude of the enemy, on receiving intelligence that the Moslim troops were assembling, had met at a place called Safûriya and situated in the territory of Acre. He advanced towards the lake of Tiberias and halted on the top of the hill which overlooks the town. There he waited, thinking that the Franks would advance to attack him when they heard that he was encamped on that spot. This demonstration did not, however, induce them to move or to quit their posts. It was on Wednesday, the 21st of the latter Rabi, that they (the Moslims) took up that position. When he saw that the Franks did not stir nor leave their ground, he set out with a troop of cavalry to attack Tiberias, leaving his squadrons where they were, facing the enemy. Having attacked the town, he stormed it in an hour's time and let it be plundered by his troops, who had begun to slay, to make prisoners and to set the houses on fire. The citadel, being defended by the garrison, held out. The enemy were so greatly concerned for the loss of Tiberias that they set out to deliver that town, and Salâh ad-Din, being informed of their approach, left a sufficient number of troops to blockade the place and joined his army. On Thursday, the 22nd of the latter Rabi, he met with the enemy on the western side of the (plain which forms the) summit of the hill of Tiberias; but night intervened and separated the two armies. The soldiers of both parties slept on the ground, without quitting their ranks and, the next morning, which was that of Friday, the 23rd, they got on horseback, charged and engaged in a furious battle. It was fought on the territory of a village called Lûbya.
The enemy felt a compression in the throat and, like a flock driven forward, they advanced towards death which they saw (right before them). Certain that they were falling into misfortune and ruin, they felt that, on the following day, they would be visitors of the tombs. The flames of war raged; each horseman charged upon his adversary, and no safety was to be found except in victory. Evil fortune then befall the people of infidelity, but night intervened with its darkness. Both parties remained under arms till the next morning, Saturday, without leaving their stations. The Moslims knew that they had the Jordan behind them, the enemy’s country before them and that nothing could save them but strenuous fighting in that holy war. The Moslim squadrons dashed forward from every quarter; the center advanced to the charge, and all shouted aloud as if with one single voice. God then cast terror into the hearts of the infidels, for he judged it right to help the true believers against their enemies. The Comes (Raimond, count of Tripoli), perceiving that no hopes remained, fled soon after the commencement of the action, and took the road of Tyre, closely pursued by a troop of Moslims, but he effected his escape. God thus delivered the true believers from his malice. The Moslims surrounded the infidels on every side, shooting at them with their arrows, striking them down with their swords, and making them drink out of the goblet of death. A part of the enemy fled but, being pursued by the bravest of the Musulmans, not one of them escaped. Another band took refuge on the top of Hittin, a hill thus called after a village near which is the tomb of the prophet Shoaib (Jethro). Being closely pressed by the Musulmans, who had lighted fires all around them, they suffered greatly from thirst and were reduced to such straits that, through fear of death, they surrendered themselves prisoners. Their chiefs were taken alive but the others were put to death. Amongst these chiefs were the king Jofri (41) and his brother, the Brins Arnât (prince Renaud de Chatillon), lord of al-Karak and ash-Shaubek, the son of al-Honferi (Humphrey of Thoron), the son of the lord of Tiberias, the (grand-) master of the Templars, the lord of Jusail and the (grand-) master of the Hospitallers. “It was related to me,” says Ibn Shaddâd by a person in whose veracity I could confide, that he saw a man in Haurân leading off upwards of thirty captives whom he had tied together with the cords of his tent; such was the consternation into which they had fallen. When the Comes who fled at the beginning of the action arrived at Tripoli, he was attached by a pleurisy which carried him off. The masters of the Hospitallers and the Templars, with the prisoners who belonged to these
orders were put to death by (the command of) the sultan. As for prince Renaud, the sultan had made a vow that, if he ever got hold of him, he would take his life. What induced him to do so was this: A caravan of Egyptian merchants passed by ash-Shaubek when the prince was there, and, notwithstanding a truce which had been concluded, he attacked them traiterously and slew them. When they implored him to respect the truce which existed between him and the Moslems, he answered in terms which denoted his contempt for the Prophet. Salāh ad-Dīn, being informed of this, was impelled by his honorable pride and his zeal for religion to vow that he would shed the blood of him who said so. When God had granted to him this signal victory, he held a sitting in the court before his tent, which had not yet been pitched, and ordered the prisoners to be brought before him. Whilst (his soldiers) were pressing forward to him with their captives, he felt the liveliest joy at the victory which, through his means, God had granted to the Moslems, and, having taken his seat in the tent, which had now been set up, he thanked the Almighty for that signal favour. The king Jofri was brought forward with his brother and prince Renaud. — Jofri, to whom the sultan presented an iced sherbet (jūlāb) and who was suffering greatly from thirst, drank some of it and handed the cup to the prince; on which the sultan said to the interpreter: 'Repeat these words to the king: It is from you and not from the sultan that he has received the drink.' By these words he alluded to one of the good customs which prevailed amongst the Arabs of the desert and which formed a noble trait in their character, namely, that the person who ate or drank of what belonged to his captor had no longer any thing to fear. He then ordered them (the king and his brother,) to be taken to a place which he indicated and where they got something to eat. When brought back, they found him there, with only a few servants in attendance. — He made the king sit down in the vestibule of the tent and, having ordered the prince to be brought in, he said to him: 'Here am I who shall take Muhammad's part against you; to save your life you must become a Moslim.' On the prisoner's refusal, he drew his cutlass and, with one stroke it, dislocated his shoulder. The attendants put an end to the Christian's life and cast the body outside the door of the tent. The king, having seen what passed, was convinced that he would be killed also and dispatched after the other, but the sultan told him to draw near and allayed his apprehensions, saying: 'It is not the custom that one king should kill another. As for
"‘that man, he passed all bounds and audaciously insulted the Prophets of God.’
—The Moslims passed the night in jubilation, exclaiming, as with one voice:
‘Praise and thanks be to God! There no god but God! God is the greatest of all!’
This continued till daybreak. On Sunday, the 25th of the latter Rabi (4 July),
the sultan went down to Tiberias and, on that same day, he obliged the citadel to
 capitulate. On Tuesday, he left that place and took the road of Acre, where he
arrived on Wednesday, the last day of the latter Rabi. On the morning of Thurs-
day, the 1st of the first Jumâda, he commenced the attack of that fortress and,
having taken it, he delivered from captivity upwards of four thousand Moslims who
were confined there. All the wealth and treasures contained in the place fell
into his power, as also an immense quantity of merchandise, Acre being a great
resort for traders. Detachments of the army being then sent into all parts of the
Sâhil (Palestine), took a great number of castles, fortresses and strong-holds. Na-
blos (Napûlûs), Haifa (Caïpha), Kaisariya (Casarea); Saffûriya (Sephouri) and an-
Nâsira (Nazareth) fell into their power because they had no garrisons; death and
captivity having taken off the greater part of their defenders. When order was
re-established in Acre, the sultan distributed to his troops the treasures and the
prisoners, after which he set out for Tibnûn and, on Sunday, the 11th of the first
Jumâda, he halted before that place, which was a strong castle. Having then
planted his mangonels against it and assaulted it repeatedly, he reduced the gar-
rison to the last extremity. As it was defended by troops of noted courage and
zealously attached to their religion, it made a vigourous resistance, but God lent
his aid against them and, on Sunday, the 18th (of the same month) it was taken
by storm. Those of the garrison who survived were led into captivity. From
that he went to Saida (Sidon) and halted before its walls. On the following day,
which was Wednesday, the 20th of the first Jumâda, he obliged it to capitulate.
After establishing his authority in that place, he departed for Bairût, before which
town he encamped on the eve of Thursday, the 22nd of the first Jumâda. His
mangonels were then mounted and directed against the walls; assaults were gi-
ven, and hostilities continued without intermission till Thursday, the 29th of the
same month, when he obtained possession of the place. Jubail, which is beyond
Bairût, was taken by (a detachment of) his troops. As nothing more remai-
ned in that quarter to occupy his mind, he resolved to march against Ascalon.
On passing before Tyre (Sûr), he halted, but then felt unwilling to lose his time
in carrying on a long siege; more particularly as he saw how his troops were dis-
persed throughout the Sāhil, where each detachment was operating for its own
profit, and how his men were fatigued and harassed (42) with continual warfare
and daily combats. All the Franks of the Sāhil had, besides, assembled in Tyre.
Thinking therefore that it would be more difficult to take than Ascalon, he resum-
med his march towards that city. On Sunday, the 16th of the latter Jumāda, the
same year (23rd August, A. D. 1187), he arrived under its walls, after taking on
his way a number of places such as ar-Ramla and ad-Dārūm. On halting before
Ascalon, he set up his mangonels and attacked the place so vigorously that he
forced it to surrender. This was on Saturday, the last of the latter Jumāda.
During the siege, some of his troops took Ghazza, Bait Jibril and an-Nāṭrūn, with-
out meeting with any resistance. Thirty-five years had elapsed from the con-
quest of Ascalon by the Franks till its recovery by the Moslems; as it was taken
from the Moslems on the 27th of the latter Jumāda, 548 (19th Sept. A. D. 1153).
So says our shaiikh Ibn Shaddād in his History (of Saldh ad-Dīn), but Shibāb ad-
Dīn Yakūt al-Hamawi (page 9 of this vol.) states, in the work to which he gave the
title of al-Mustāriḳ, etc., that they (the Franks) took it from the Moslems on the
24th of the latter Jumāda. — Ibn Shaddād says: "When Salāh ad-Dīn got posses-
sion of Ascalon and the places which are situated around Jerusalem (al-Codā), he
made active preparations for going to that holy city. Having collected the troops
which were dispersed throughout the Sāhil, he began his march, referring his
enterprise to the will of God in whom he placed all his confidence, and anxious to
profit by the opportunity of finding the door of righteousness opened, a duty to
which the blessed Prophet exhorted the people by these words: 'He for whom the
door of righteousness is opened, should take advantage of the opportunity; for he
knows not when it may be shut against him.' On Sunday, 15th Rajab, 583
(20th Sept. 1187), he halted at the western side of the city, which was filled with
troops, both horse and foot. Their number, according to an estimation made by
men of experience who were with him, amounted to upwards of sixty thousand (43),
without taking into count the women and the children. On Friday, the 20th of Ra-
jab, he removed to the northern side of the city, having found some advantage in
that change of position, and then set up his mangonels. By continual attacks, he
invested the place closer and closer still the miners were enabled to make a breach
in that part of the wall which overlooks the valley of Jehannam (Gehenna). The
"enemies of God, perceiving the misfortune which was impending and which they had no means of avoiding, saw therein manifest signs of the taking of the city and of their defeat by the Moslems. They were besides in consternation at being deprived of their bravest warriors by death and captivity, and at seeing their fortresses given up to devastation and ruin. Convinced that the same fate which befell their comrades awaited them, they felt discouraged and asked for quarter.

Messengers then passed between the two parties for the purpose of settling the bases of the treaty, and the city was delivered up to Salâh ad-Dîn on Friday, the 27th of Rajab (1st October, A.D. 1187). The eve of that day was the anniversary of the Prophet's miraculous ascension to heaven, a fact positively enounced in the sacred Koran. See what an extraordinary coincidence! See how God permitted the Moslems to regain the city at the same time of the year in which his blessed Prophet made the nocturnal journey to heaven! Therein was an evident sign by which God denoted his acceptance of the obedience shown him (by the sultan). At this important conquest were present a great number of docteurs learned in the law and a multitude of dervishes and devotees. The fact was that, when they learned how God had facilitated the conquests made in the Sâhil, and were informed that the sultan was about to march against Jerusalem, the Ulemâ of Egypt and Syria hastened to join him, not one of them remaining behind. All voices were then raised in shouts of triumph, pious invocations, declarations of God's unity and of his greatness. On Friday, the very day of the conquest, divine service was said (in the mosque) and the khotba recited by a preacher."

In the life of the kâdi Muḥâ ad-Dîn Muhammad Ibn Ali, generally known by the appellation of Ibn az-Zâki (vol. II. p. 634), I inserted the khotba as it was pronounced by him, and to that article I refer the reader. In an epistle composed by al-Kâdi 'l-Fâdil (vol. II. p. 111) and entitled by him ar-Risâla 'l-Kodsiya (the Jerusalem epistle), I read that the fourth of Shâbâtan was the day on which the recitation of the khotba took place. God knows best! As we have spoken of the conquest of Jerusalem and given the text of that khotba in a preceding part of this work, it is fit that I insert here the letter in which al-Kâdi 'l-Fâdil announced these victories to the imâm (khâdîj) an-Nâsir li-Dîn Allâh Abû 'l-Abbas Ahmad, the son of the imâm al-Mustâdî bi-Amr Allâh. I do so the more readily as it is one of the most eloquent and most original pieces of the kind. I do not give the whole of it (44), but only the finest passages; having omitted the rest because the document is rather long. It runs thus:
May God prolong the days of the August Divan (45), the relative of the Prophet! May the efforts of that prince be always triumphant over the contumacious! May the divine favour enrich him (with wisdom) so that he can do without the counsels of skillful investigators. His efforts are consecrated to the acquisition of unreserved praise for his noble deeds; (the sword of) his assistance is always awake though its point be sleeping in the scabbard; his beneficence is present when (the fertilising rains of) the cloud are absent from the earth. The works of his generosity will always abound, even were there no one to give him thanks. The decisions of his justice are executed by a firm resolve which operates not like the bolt-shot at random (46), but like the well-feathered arrow. His ample charities to holy men are like showers for pasture-grounds and lamps for mosques. The bands of terror which he sends against the foe appear in the shape of horsemen watching from the heights, or in the form of spectres going to haunt their places of repose. Your servant has indited this token of profound respect, subsequently to a communication which emanated from him in the shape of good tidings respecting the first dawn of that resolute enterprise, and in the form of a preface to a treatise descriptive of a signal favour which, for us, is an ocean in which our pens long to swim and, in the bearing of which, gratitude is oppressed by the burden. It is a joyful news, of which all minds require the explanation, and a felicity, for the publishing of which, disclosure has an ample field (masdrīb). In the renewal of our thanks, God will feel satisfaction; the grace attached to that (favou) will have a duration of which the words: 'It has ceased' shall never be said. The affairs of Islamism have taken an excellent turn, and the faith of its followers is now fixed by the most evident of proofs. The far-spreading shade cast by the hopes of the infidels is now reduced to a narrow compass, and God has been true unto those of his religion; when the condition is not fulfilled, the stipulation is void (47). — In this country, the true faith was like a stranger in a foreign land, but now, it finds itself at home. Success was put up for sale, and lives were profusely bestowed to purchase it. The cause of truth, lately thought to be very weak, has gained the superiority, and the region where it flourished is again peopled; that region which, when ruined and desolate, was an object of horror. The order of God has been executed in despite of the infidels, and at nightfall, the swords went to rouse from slumber the terms of men's lives. God's promise of making his religion triumph over all the
"others received its fulfilment and then flashed forth lights by which was clearly
seen that, on the next day, there would be burying of corpses (janâd al-jâtn).
The Moslems recovered an inheritance which had been for them as a runaway
slave. The lover, in his dreams, sees the image of his mistress coming from afar to
visit him; but they, whilst awake, obtained the view of that (happiness) which they
did not expect. Their feet were set firmly upon the heights and their banners
floated far and wide; their kisses were impressed on the sakhe (48) and, by it,
though a stone (sakhe), their wounded hearts were cured, as thirst is cured by
water. When these pious men approached it, the inmost feelings of their hearts
were made known, and they congratulated its fellow, the black stone (of Mekka),
on being in a temple which protected it against the infidel and his warfare. Your
servant (Salâh ad-Dîn) would not have acted as he did, had he not been anxious to
obtain that supreme felicity; neither would he have undergone those sufferings,
had he not the hope of gaining that favour. He would not have encountered in
battle those who fatigued him by their tyranny, neither would he have replied
with the point of the lance to those who devoted themselves to death by insulting
him, had his wish not been to make the Moslem people of one mind, so that the
word of God might acquire the superiority, and to obtain, not the transitory en-
joyments of this life, but that precious jewel, happiness in the next. Sometimes
insulted by the evil-tongued, he wounded them to the heart by the contempt he
showed them; sometimes the cauldrons (of their thoughts) would boil over,
but he averted that ebullition by his patience and his endurance. He who seeks
for greatness must encounter perils; he who tries to make a profitable speculation
must have courage; he who undertakes to disperse a crowd of foes must fight.
Treaties of peace are soft under the teeth of foreign infidels; therefore, (since
they tear them,) he also must bite (and lacerate) them; the hilts of the swords
are so weak in the hands of those (infidels) who brandish them, that he is
induced to break them completely (49). Besides, it was not by means of treaties
that the obligation of holy war could be fulfilled, and that he could maintain the
rights which he has over the people; neither could he accomplish by treaties the
duties of that submission which was placed as a collar around his neck by imâms
(khalîfs) who, in their equity, always decided rightly, and by khalîfs who often
asked when this glorious day would arrive. It was easy to be seen that (their an-
cestors) left their happiness and their throne as an inheritance to descendants born

vol. iv.
of the purest race, to illustrious sons, to a noble progeny, to an offspring of exalted merit. The title to be inscribed on the page of their excellence will never be without finding (what it requires:) the black (ink) of the pen and the whiteness of the leaf. They have never been absent there where he (Salih ad-Dīn) was present; their eyes were never closed when he was waking. He has passed to them the recompense which he obtained for himself, and they have shared with him in the works which were accepted of him (by God). He has become their companion on the couches (of glory), between the sides of which he now takes repose, and (he has met them) in the pages (of history) with (noble deeds) the odour of which is retained within the folds of the leaves (50). Through these deeds he (the khalif) has gained renown such as never ceases to be the subject of conversation by night and of contemplation by day. The East is directed by his (guiding) lights; nay, when the light of his person appears, the West exclaims: 'Cover it! (it is too bright).’ It is really a light which the deepest shades of darkness cannot hide, and a renown which the leaves of (numerous) volumes would be unable to contain. This letter from your servant announces what follows: God has given (us) a victory over the enemy whose spears are now broken to pieces (tashattatad kanatuhi shukakān), whose sword is now blunted to a staff, whose army, though greater in number and stronger in hands (than ours) has been routed, whose troops are scattered (tdrat firakhuhi frakān) and whose impetuous attacks are paralyzed. That was by stroke which put a bridle on the sight (i.e. quicker than sight) by a chastisement such that he who had a hand in it must have been without hands (i.e. a superior being, God). The feet slipped from under the foe, even on the ground which they had worn bare (halkka), and his eyes were cast down (in fear) whilst the eyes of the swords opposed to him were numerous. The eyelid (the scabbard) of his sword was asleep, but a flash of lightning which removed slumber from all eyelids awakened it. The noses (points) of his spears were cut off, they which had been so long cocked up in vain hopes or bloody with (inflicting) deaths. The holy land has become the pure one, after being in a state of impurity; there the only God is now one, he who, according to them, was the third (of the trinity). The temples of infidelity have been overturned and the fangs of polytheism are now plucked out. Its bands, once so brave, have agreed on surrendering their strong castles, and its champions fully equipped have humbly given up their ample fiefs. For they discovered that the water (the temper) of their swords would no
longer be for them a defense and that the fire (warmth) of confraternity would no longer stand them in aid. Disgrace and humiliation have fallen upon them; God has replaced bad by good and transferred the house of his worship from people predestined to be placed on his left hand to people predestined to stand at his right. Your servant (Saldh ad-Dtn) had already encountered them and, as God came to his assistance with the angels, he inflicted on them such a defeat as could never be retrieved, and prostrated them so low that, please God! infidelity will never get upon its feet again. The prisoners were taken in such numbers that all our chains were filled, and so many were the slain that our swords also were killed (put out of service). The conflict, on ceasing, disclosed to view horses, arms and insidels lying on the ground, offering thus an example of fitting retribution (insaf mukhtl), for they (who cut and destroyed) were slain with cutting swords and destroying spears. Whilst our weapons retaliated on them, they retaliated on our weapons (by causing them to be worn out and spoiled). How many were our crescent-shaped swords which inflicted strokes till they became (as blunt) as the spathes of the date-tree! how many the star (bright) lances which inflicted wounds till the y were rendered (curved) like aged men! how many the Persian horses which galloped forward with their valiant riders towards the fate by which they were immediately seized! The bow opened its month (emitted a twanging sound) and bit (struck) the adversary, far off as he was, making him thus its prey. On that day, multitudes were assembled and the angels were there as witnesses. Insidellity then cried out (like a woman in labour), but Islamism was the child (which it brought into the world). The ribs of the unbelievers became fuel for Gehenna. Their despot was taken prisoner, bearing in his hand the object in which he placed his utmost confidence, the strongest bond by which he held to his religion, namely, the cross of the Crucifixion, by which were led to battle the people of arrogance. In every serious affair, he would stand in the midst of the assembly and stretch forth his arm (with that cross), but on this occasion, he stretched forth his arms to bid it farewell. These moths of his did not fail to cast themselves into the flame which he lighted up, and his reptiles never missed to congregate under the shade of his misguidance. Under that cross, they would fight the crossetest and the most resolute of battles; they considered it as the best guarantee of the stipulations which they contracted, and they thought it to be a wall (of protection), round which the trench was dug by the continual
treading of their horses' hoofs. On that day, their chiefs were made prisoners
and their crafty men disappeared (from the world); no one of any consequence es-
aped with the exception of the Count who, may God curse him! had, that same
day, plenty of fighting and, on that day of frustration, plenty of disappointment.
He got off, but how? flying lest he should be struck by the beak of the lance or by
the wing of the sword; and then, soon after, the hand of God fell upon him, took
his life (and sent him) to his appointed place. Such is, in truth, their promised
retribution. Thus was he delivered up to the angel (Malek) of the kingdom of
death. Your servant (Salah ad-Din) then went through the country and extended
over it the Abbaside standards, so black (in colour) and so white (fortunate) in their
effects. — It was they that fluttered and shook, but the hearts of the foe flutter-
ed still more. These (standards) were rendered victorious, as also the resolutions
of their partisans, by the light which they spread around when the zephyr opened
their eyes, and when their fringes pointed towards the face of victory. He took this
place and that, which were really towns and cities, though designated by the names
of countries, because they possessed corn-fields and tillage-grounds, strong-holds
and good lands, lakes and islands, mosques and pulpits, troops and soldiers.
Your servant placed garrisons in them and passed on, leaving them behind after
seizing on the opportunity (of taking them). Out of them he mowed away infi-
delity and in them he sowed Islamism; from their places of prayer he cast down
the cross and set up the addn (the Muslim call to prayer). The altars were repla-
ced by pulpits and the churches converted into mosques; the people of the Koran
succeeded to the people of the cross and formed there settlements whence they
might carry on war for the religion of God. His (Salah ad-Din's) eyes and those
of the Moslems were rejoiced to find that, for him and for his troops, victory was
always attached to a preposition and its complement (51). They were delighted
at his getting possession of every rampart the fall of which could not have been ex-
pected till the day on which the trumpet (of the resurrection) is to be sounded, and
(were much pleased to find) that nothing remained (to be taken) except Jerusalem,
in which all the scattered bands and fugitives had taken refuge. From far and
near all fled to it as an asylum, imagining that it would protect them against
God and that its church would be with Him their intercessor. Your servant, on
halting before the place, saw that it was a town as large as a city and (that it con-
tained) a multitude equal to that of the day of mutual interpellation (the day of judg-
ment). In it (he perceived also) resolutions firmly concerted and combined to
(encounter) death. He took position on a spot before it, whilst the garrison
thought light of (drinking at) the pond where the sword allays its thirst, even were
they to die, choked with that draught. On the side of the city where he had
encamped, he saw a deep valley, a precipice rugged and profound, with a wall
which encircled the city like a bracelet, and towers which represented the larger
pearls of the necklace worn by that place of residence. He therefore removed to
another side which was more accessible and to which cavalry could approach.
There he took his stand and invested the place, pitching his tent so near (the walls)
that its sides could be reached by the missiles (of the besieged). He pushed the
walls with his shoulders (i.e. he advanced close to them), faced the city and attacked
it, assailed it and pressed it so closely that its capture was expected. The people
collected in it fell into disunion and behold, rather than fall by the edge of the
sword, they preferred captivity (52). They sent a message to him with the offer of
paying tribute for a certain time; hoping thus to obtain some respite from their
sufferings and to await the arrival of succour. Your servant, perceiving their in-
tentions through the equivocal meaning of their words, replied in a tone of supe-
riority and brought forward those engines, the mangonels, which are charged to
inflict chastisement on rebellious and contumacious (?) fortresses. He strung
against the enemy the bows of these arbalets which shoot off without being depre-
ced of arrows (being always well provided with them), and these arrows were
not deprived of points. They reached the wall, and, behold! the arrows ser-
v ed as toothpicks to the teeth (the embrasures) of the battlements. Victory sent
to announce its arrival a mangonel which like it, was to have its basis upon the
earth whilst its apex touched the stars (53). It wounded the heads of those towers
which served to repel attacks and made a noise which the deafest of the infidels
must have heard. It struck up a cloud of dust like a beacon, depriving the wall
of its defenders and the fight of its spectators. The miner thus got an opportunity
of removing the veil from the face of war (54) and of converting stone into its
pristine form, that of earth. He approached the rock (the wall), gnawed its tissue
with the tooth of the crowbar and undid its knots with heavy strokes, showing
thus the dexterity of his fingers. He made the holy Sakhra hear his sighs and in-
vocations, so that it almost had compassion on his eyes (which were inflamed with
weeping). Some of the stones renounced their attachment to others and then
took with ruin the engagement never quit the ground again. A breach was made in
the wall, and that opening closed the doors against their escape. Whilst the pas-
sage was making through these stones, the infidel exclaimed: ‘O that I were dust!’
(Koran, s. 78, v. 41). Then the infidels despaired of the (safety of) the occupiers
of the houses, as the infidels despair of (the resurrection of) the occupiers of the
tombs (Koran, s. 60, v. 13). The order of God came to pass (Koran, s. 40, v. 78),
and the deceiver deceived them concerning God (Koran, s. 57, v. 13). At that in-
stant, the chief of their infidelity, the director of their affairs (whose name was) Ibn
Barizân (Barisan or Baléan d’Ibelin), came out to request that the city might be
taken by capitulation, not by force, by a treaty of security, not by storm. Thus
he did he expose himself to receive death or to be covered with the humiliation of
captivity after enjoying the grandeurs of sovereignty; he cast his side upon the
ground, that side which no adversary was ever able to cast down. He offered
tribute to an amount such as the most covetous could not have hoped for and he
said: ‘We have there some thousands of Moslim prisoners, and the Franks
are resolved that, in case their city is stormed and their shoulders are to feel all
the burden of war, they will commence by speeding them (out of the world)
and redouble (the slaughter) by killing their own women and children. After that,
they will advance to meet the foe; not a combattant shall die without being reen-
ged, and not a sword shall be laid down till it is shattered and broken.’ — The
emirs were of advice that the mildest measures should be taken against a city des-
tined to be captured. For, said they, if it be taken by assault, their bravest war-
riors will certainly rush to the fight and there will be a great loss of lives in an
enterprise of which the commencement has so well answered our expectations.
The wounds already inflicted on our soldiers are sufficient to shackle every
assault (al-fatakat) and impede every movement. — The offer made by the be-
sieged, gratuitously and humbly, was accepted, and the partisans of fighting,
though victorious, abstained from what they had the power to execute. The Mos-
lims then regained possession of a place which, when they last saw it, contained
only the vestiges of inhabitants, but which had been so well attended to by infi-
delity that it had become a paradise. Assuredly it was God who turned the (Franks)
out of it and expelled them, and who, in his anger against them, favoured the
true believers. The infidels, may God frustrate their projects! had defended it
with the lance and the sword, and had rebuilt it with columns and slabs of mar-
ble. It was there that they had established their churches and the dwellings of
the Templars and Hospitallers; (there they had erected) all those curious (foun-
tains) of marble which poured forth water in abundance and of which the flow
never ceased. (For them,) iron was easy to be cut and let itself be twisted into a
variety of forms; so that the metal which is so stubborn became (as ductile) as the
gold which is subservient to our pleasures. Nothing is seen there but sitting-
places that resemble gardens and are coated with shining marble; there are co-
lumns to which sprouting leaves give the appearance of trees. Your servant then
ordered that the Aksa should be restored to its former state and appointed to it
imams, charged to celebrate the usual divine service. — On Friday, the 4th of
Shâbân (9th Oct. A. D. 1187), the khotba was recited in it with such effect
that the heavens had nearly split, not with indignation (55) but to shed tears (of
joy), and the stars left their places, not to lapidate (56) but to make rejoicing.
The profession of the divine unity, to make which the road had been closed, was
then raised up to God, and the tombs of the prophets were brought to light after
having been covered with filth and trodden under foot. The five daily prayers
which Trinitarianism had suppressed were established again, and the tongues
which had been tied by the enchantments of infidelity proclaimed aloud that God
was great. The name of the Commander of the faithful was announced from the
pulpit, from that noblest of stations which a khalif can hold, and it received such
welcome as is given by those who have already made the pilgrimage to those who
have just fulfilled that duty. The doctors of the law kept flitting about in both
sides of the mosque which, had it been capable of flying, would have done so.
Your servant writes (to you) whilst occupied in reducing the remainder of the for-
tresses and in giving relief to those hearts which had been oppressed by the con-
tinuance of war; for the sources which furnished strength to his soldiers had been
drained out and the fountains of suffering had been often visited. The conquer-
ed country, that which has been already indicated, is overrun by troops, its
stores have been plundered, its crops eaten up; it is now a country which asks for
aid and from which none should be required; it must repose in order to recover
its strength, and therefore, it should not be exhausted; it stands in need of pecu-
niary assistance and cannot furnish any, ships must be sent to its sea and
posts established to guard its coasts (57). He (Sallâh ad-Dîn) is actively engaged
in arming the walls and repairing the ruins of the fortresses, but the greatest toil
is easily borne when counterbalanced by this conquest. Since it has been effec-
ted, the hopes entertained by the Franks have been deferred, but are not aban-
donned; if they offer up prayers, your servant hopes that God will not listen to them,
and that their hands will be withheld from this country till they are totally cut
off. The particulars of this fortunate event can hardly be furnished without the
assistance of the tongue nor can their recital be completed except by oral com-
munication. For that reason, your servant has sent to you a tongue which will
relate them all, set forth clearly and in regular order the details of this good news and
pass in review all these subjects of joy, from the first to the last. His name is so
and so. God is he who grants true favour." — Here ends al-Kādī 'l-Fādil's
dispatch. I intended to abridge it, in retaining its beauties, but, on commencing
the task, I said to myself: It may happen that one of my readers, on perusing
these fragments, may be desirous of reading the whole document; I therefore gave
up my former idea and inserted it all; besides, it is rarely to be met with. As the
copy of it which I followed was inexact (lit. was sickly), I endeavoured to correct it,
as far as I was able, and thus brought it into its present form. — The kādī Imād
ad-Dīn al-Isṣahānī also wrote an epistle on the conquest of Jerusalem, but, not to be
prolix, I abstain from inserting it. The same author composed, on that subject,
a book in two volumes (or sections) which he entitled al-Fath al-Kussi (see vol. III,
p. 303, etc.). Some time ago I saw an elegant epistle relating to the conquest
of that city and drawn up by Diā ad-Dīn Nasr Allah Ibn al-Ṭāhir al-Jazari (vol. III,
p. 541). Every writer wished to try his hand on the subject, but the Kādī 'l-Fādil was
the great master in that branch of composition and, when he undertook any thing
of the kind, no one was capable of being his rival or of surpassing him. I therefore
have given his production and omitted the others, lest I should extend this article
too much. — Rāshīd ad-Dīn Abū Muhammad Abū-Rahmān Ibn Nasr Ibn al-Ḥasan
Ibn Mufarrij an-Nablusi, a poet of some celebrity, who was present at the taking of
the city, recited to the sultan Salāh ad-Dīn a kasīda of his own composing which
began thus:

This is what every day expected; let people then fulfil towards God what they have vowed.

It is a long poem, containing upwards of one hundred verses. In it the author
praises Salāh ad-Dīn and congratulates him on that conquest. Having terminated
what we had to say on this subject (58), we shall now resume the narration made
by Ibn Shaddâd in the History of Salâh ad-Dîn: "Then," says he, "was thrown down the cross which stood on the dome of the Sakhra and was of an immense size; thus, God furnished to Islamism, through him, a powerful assistance."—In our article on Ortuk (vol. I. p. 171) we have spoken of Jerusalem and mentioned that it was taken from Sokmân and Il-Ghâzi, the sons of that prince, by al-Afdal Amîr al-Juyûsh (vol. I. p. 612). It was afterwards taken by the Franks, on Friday, the 23rd of Shaabân, 492 (15 July, 1099); or, according to another account, on the second of that month; some say that Friday, the 26th of Ramadân (16th August), is the date of that event. It remained in their hands till it was taken from them by the sultân Salâh ad-Dîn on the day of which we have already indicated the date. Let us return to Ibn Shaddâd's recital: "The main condition of the peace was that every man (of the city) should pay twenty pieces of gold, every woman five Tyrian dinars, and the children, male and female, each one dinar. Those who paid this tax were to obtain their liberty, and those who did not were to be made captives. All the Moslim prisoners detained in the city recovered their liberty, and their number was very great. He (Salâh ad-Dîn) remained there till had collected the money and distributed it to his emirs and soldiers. He gave part of it also to the doctors of divinity, the legists, the ascetics and the persons who had come to see him. Orders were issued by him that those Franks who had paid the tax imposed on them should be safely escorted to Tyre, their place of refuge. He did not leave the city till he had given away all the sums which had been collected for him and which amounted to nearly two hundred and twenty thousand dinars (£. 132,000). His departure took place on Friday, the 25th of Shaabân, the same year (30th Oct. 1187). After conquering Jerusalem, he thought it would be right to march against Tyre, being well aware that if he delayed doing so, he would probably have great difficulty in reducing such a fortress. On his way, he passed through Acre and halted in order to examine the state of that place, after which, he set out for Tyre. This was on Friday, the 5th of Ramadân (8th Nov.). Having halted near the city, he dispatched messengers with orders to send him the machines of war and, when all were brought, he took position and attacked the place with great vigour. This was on the 12th of the same month. The Egyptian fleet, which he had called to this assistance, having then arrived, he attacked Tyre by sea and by land, whilst some of his troops went to reduce Hûnain, which place surrendered on the 23rd of Shauwâl (26th December.,

Vol. IV.
"Ibn Khallikan's" 530

"187. Some time afterwards, the fleet of Tyre sallied out by night, surprised the Muslim fleet, of which they took five vessels with the mokaddam (the military chief) and the rafis (the naval commander). In this combat a great number of Muslims lost their lives. It took place on the 27th of the month just mentioned (30th Dec.). Salâh ad-Din was vexed to the heart by this contrariety and, as the rainy season had set in with extraordinary violence, he consulted his officers as to what should be done. Their advice being that he ought to raise the siege, so as to repose his army and have time to collect more troops, he decamped and took with him as many of the engines of war as he could carry off. The remainder he burned, being unable to remove them on account of the mud and the rain. It was on Sunday, the 2nd of Zû 'I-Kaada (3rd January, 1188) that he commenced his retreat. The army then separated, and each of its divisions having received permission to depart, returned to the country from which it came.

He remained at Acre with his own private troops and stayed there till the beginning of the year 584 (March, A. D. 1188). In the beginning of the month of Muharram (March), he laid siege to Kaukab with the small body of men which had not left him. As Kaukab was a strong fortress, full of men and stores, he perceived that it could not be taken without hard fighting, and therefore proceeded to Damascus, where he arrived on the 6th of the first Rabi (5th May)." — The same author says: "When he was posted near Kaukab, I went to offer him my services, but soon left him for the purpose of making a pilgrimage to Jerusalem and Hebron, and then I returned to Damascus, where I arrived on the same day as he did." — Of this we have spoken in our article on Ibn Shaddâd (page 420 of this volume). — "He remained five days in Damascus," said Ibn Shaddâd, "and, being informed that the Franks were in march with the intention of taking (the fortress of) Jubail (Jebeil) by surprise, he set out in all haste and dispatched messengers to every quarter for the purpose of calling his troops together. When the Franks heard that he was in march for Jubail, they gave up their attempt. Salâh ad-Din having then learned that Imâd ad-Din (Zînîk II), the sovereign of Sinjûr, and Muzaffar ad-Din Ibn Zain ad-Din had arrived at Aleppo with the troops of Mosul and that they intended to place themselves under his orders and make a campaign with him, proceeded to Hisn al-Akrâd (the castle of the Kurds)." — He says in the same work: "On the 1st of the first Jumâda, 584 (28th June, A. D. 1188), I entered into the sultan's service. All that I have already related is given on the authority of persons in whose
"veracity I confide, and from this out, I inscribe nothing (in my work) except what
"I have witnessed or what I learned from persons whose statements were (for me)
"almost as worthy of belief as the actual sight (of the occurrences)." — "On Friday,
"the 4th of the first Jumâda, the sultan penetrated into the enemy's country in
"full military array, each division of the troops being drawn up in proper order;
"that which formed the right wing took the lead, under the commandment of
"Imâd ad-Dîn Zinki; that of the left wing, under the orders of Muzaffar ad-Dîn,
"brought up the rear, and that of the center was between them both. The sultan
arrived before Antartûs on Sunday, the 6th of the first Jumâda, after day-break
and halted so that he might examine the aspect of the place. He was then in
march for Jabala, but as it (Antartûs) did not appear to him very formidable, he
resolved on attacking it and called back the right wing. He retained the position
which he had taken, whilst the left wing was posted, by his orders, on the sea-
coast (at one side of the city) and the right wing on (the coast at) the other side.
— The army thus invested the city from the sea (on one side of it) to the sea (on
the other). Antartûs was of great strength, being situated on the sea and defen-
ded by two towers as large as castles. The troops mounted (on horseback)
and advanced towards the place; the assault was then given and, by a vigo-
rous attack, they carried it when hostilities were least expected. Their tents
had not been all pitched when the ramparts were scaled and the place was taken
by storm. Every thing contained in it became the prey of the Moslims. He (Sa-
lâd ad-Dîn) caused the city to be burnt down and remained outside of it
till the 14th of the first Jumâda. Muzaffar ad-Dîn was charged to take one of the
towers and directed his attacks against it till he laid it in ruins. Al-Malik az-
Zâhir then came to join his father, in pursuance to that sultan's orders, and brought
with him a large body of troops. He (the sultan) then marched against Jabala,
reached it on the 18th of the first Jumâda, the same year (15th July, A. D. 1188)
and took it before the rest of the army had come up and taken position. This
place contained a Moslim population, and the people had a kâdi charged to settle
their differences. The citadel being vigourously attacked, capitulated on Satur-
day, the 19th of the first Jumâda. The sultan remained there till the 23rd of the
month and then set out for al-Lâdakiya. He halted before that place on Thurs-
day, the 24th of the same month. It was an agreeable town, without walls, and
possessed a harbour of great renown. (For its defense) it had two castles, one
touching the other and both situated on a hill by which it was commanded. The town was taken after a severe struggle which lasted till the end of the day, but the castles held out. The victors found in it an immense booty, as it was a place of commerce. The castles were then attacked by assaults and by a mine which finally attained the length of sixty cubits and was four cubits in width. When the troops in these forts perceived that the next assault would be successful, they asked for quarter. This was on the evening of Friday, the 25th of the same month. They offered to capitulate on condition that they, their women and their children should retire in safety and be allowed to retain their personal property; consenting, at the same time, to deliver up the grain and other provisions which were in their stores, and, moreover, their arms and their machines of war. This proposal being accepted, the Moslim standard was set up there, on Saturday. Salâh ad-Din remained outside the place till Sunday, the 27th of the month and then departed for Sahyûn. On Tuesday, the 29th of the month, he arrived there, and his troops, after some hard fighting, took the town. This was on Friday, the 2nd of the latter Jumâda (29th July, A. D. 1188). After that, they advanced against the citadel and attacked it vigorously. The garrison, perceiving (that further resistance would be their) perdition, asked to be taken into safeguard, which favour was granted on condition that each man should pay ten dinars, each woman five, and each child, whether male or female, one dinar. The sultan remained in that part of the country till he took Platanus and a number of other fortresses in the dependencies of Sahyûn. He then went to Bakâs, which is a strong castle situated on the Orontes and from beneath which flows out a stream of water. He arrived there on Tuesday, the 6th of the latter Jumâda and attacked it vigorously till Friday, the 9th of that month, when God enabled him to take it by assault. The greater part of the garrison was slain and the survivors were reduced to bondage. The Moslims plundered the place and took all it contained. To it (Bakâs) belonged another castle called ash-Shughr, which was very strong and with which it communicated by means of a bridge; there being no other road to it. He directed his mangonels against the fortress, from every side, till the garrison, seeing that no one was coming to their relief, asked to capitulate, provided that a respite of three days were given to them. This was on Tuesday, the 13th of that month. The condition was accepted and, on Friday the 16th, the place surrendered and the Moslim standard was planted upon its walls. He then pro-
ceeding towards a group of castles called Burzaib, the strength of which was proverbial throughout the territory of the Franks. This fortress was surrounded on all sides by deep valleys and stood on a hill upwards of five hundred and seventy cubits high. He arrived before it on Saturday, the 24th of the month and, on Tuesday, the 27th, he took it by assault. The strong castle of Darbessak, against which he then turned and which he reached on Friday, the 8th of Rajab (2nd Sept. 1118), was vigorously attacked by him and, on Friday, the 22nd, the Muslim standard was planted on its walls. Having given this place as a present to the emir Alam ad-Din Ibn Haidar (59), he departed on Saturday morning, the 23rd, and halted before Baghras, a strong castle in the neighbourhood of Antioch. On the 2nd of Shaaban (26th Sept.), after some hard fighting, he planted the Muslim standard on its walls. The people of Antioch having then sent to ask for a truce, he acceded to their prayer because his army was heartily tired of this (continual) warfare. The truce was to last seven months and no longer, and the conditions imposed on them were that they should set at liberty all their captives and surrender the city if no one came to their assistance. On his departure from that place, he accepted the invitation of al-Malik az-Zahir, prince of Aleppo, who requested of him to pass through that city. He arrived there on the 11th of Shaaban, stopped three days in the citadel and was treated by az-Zahir with great hospitality. After leaving Aleppo he was met by his nephew Taki ad-Din Omar, who took him up to the fortress of Hamat where he partook of a repast and heard a concert of music, such as is performed by the Sûfis (dervishes). He passed one night there and bestowed on his nephew the towns of Jabala and al-Lâdakiya. He then took the road which passes through Baalbek and arrived at Damascus, a few days before the commencement of Ramadân. — On one of the first ten days of that month, he set out for Safad, which place he attacked unremittingly till the 14th of Shauwel, when the garrison capitulated to save their lives. In the month of Ramadân (Oct.—Nov., A.D. 1188), al-Karak was surrendered to al-Malik al-Addi, and the officers who commanded there obtained, on giving up the place, that their master, who had remained in captivity since the battle of Hittin, should be set at liberty. — Such are the words of Ibn Shaddâd, but they are in discord with what has been already mentioned respecting (Arndt), prince of al-Karak and ash-Shaubek, who had been taken prisoner at Hittin and whom the sultan slew with his own hand. To clear up this difficulty, it would be requisite to examine elsewhere. — " The sultan then pro-
ceed to al-Kaukab, which place he invested and attacked with great vigour. The rain fell incessantly, the muddiness of the ground augmented, the storms were continual and the besieged had the advantage of an elevated position; yet they were soon convinced that they should be taken prisoners unless they surrendered. It was on the 15th of Zul-Kaada, the same year (5th Jan. 1189), that the sultan granted them a capitulation and obtained possession of the fortress. He then went down into (the territory of) al-Ghaur and encamped there, after dismissing the greater part of his troops. Towards the end of the month he set out again, with the intention of visiting Jerusalem and of accompanying so far his brother al-Aãdíl, who was proceeding to Egypt. On the 8th of Zul-Hijja he arrived in that city, (on the 10th) he presided at the prayer of the Festival and, on the 11th, he set out for the purpose of examining the state of Ascalon, which place he then took from his brother al-Aãdíl, giving him al-Karak in exchange. After that he visited and inspected the towns of the Sâbil; then he went to Acre and remained there during the greater part of Muharram, 585 (Feb.-March, A. D. 1189). Having put all things there into proper order, he appointed the emir Bahâ ad-Din Karâkûsh (vol. II. p. 520) to the government of the place and ordered him to get the walls into a good state of defense. He then departed for Damascus, where he arrived on the 1st of Safar (21st March). He remained there till the month of the first Rabi (April-May) and then set out for Shakif Arnûn, which was a place of great strength. On the 17th of that month, he encamped in Marj Ayûn, a low plain in the neighbourhood of as-Shakîf. For some time he directed in person the attacks made upon that fortress, whilst troops came every day to join him. — The lord of as-Shakîf, perceiving his inability to resist, went out to see Salâh ad-Din so secretly that no one was aware of his presence till was seen standing at the entrance of the sultan’s tent. Salâh ad-Din ordered him to be introduced and received him with every mark of honour and respect. This chief was one of the greatest among the Franks and one of most intelligent: he knew Arabic and had some acquaintance with historical facts and narratives. — When presented to the sultan, he behaved with becoming deference and, after dining with him, he said to him in private: I am your mamlûk (slave) and your servant. This fortress I shall deliver to you without giving you the trouble (of besieging it); but I must obtain from you a dwelling in Damascus, because it would be impossible for me to live among the Franks after doing so. I must have also an appanage suffi-
cient for my own maintenance and that of my family. The sultan agreed to these
conditions and to some others which were proposed. In the month of the first
Rahf, news reached him of the surrender of ash-Shaubek, which place he had kept
blockaded for the space of a year, till the garrison, having consumed all its provi-
sions, asked to capitulate. Having then discovered that the sovereign of Shakff's
proposals were a mere deception, he caused him to be arrested. Soon after, he
was informed that the Franks had marched against Acre and laid siege to it on
Monday, the 13th of Rajab, 585 (27th August, A. D. 1189). That same day, he
sent the lord of Shakff to Damascus after covering him with humiliation. — He
then visited Acre unexpectedly, with the intention of giving heart to those who
were in the town, and dispatched messengers to all parts, with orders to send up
troops. When these reinforcements arrived, the enemy had about two thousand
horse and thirty thousand foot under arms; but the Franks continued to arrive in
such numbers and became so formidable that, on Thursday, the last day of Rajab
(13th Sept.), they were able to invest Acre completely and prevent people from en-
tering into it and from leaving it. The sultan took this greatly to heart and set
his mind on opening by main force a passage into the town, so that convoys might
furnish it with provisions and supplies. The emirs, being consulted by him on
the subject, were all of opinion that they should close with the enemy and force a
passage. This being executed, the Moslems were enabled to enter into the place
with the sultan, who went in to examine the state of affairs. During some days,
frequent conflicts took place between the two parties and (our) people then retired
to Tall al-Ghâaiâdiya (60), a hill overlooking the town. It was at this place of
station that Husâm ad-Din Tumân, the emir of whom we have spoken (p. 509)
breathed his last. This chief, who was noted for his bravery, died on the night
preceding the 15th of Shabân, 585 (28th Sept. A. D. 1189).” — Our shaikh Ibn
Shaddâd now proceeds to narrate a number of conflicts which we have no motive
for indicating here; a full account of them would lengthen this article too much,
and our object is to notice main points only and nothing else. If I have mention-
ated the taking of these fortresses, it was merely because the reader might wish to
know the dates, and I spoke of those only which (by their importance) might draw
his attention; as for the others, I passed them over in silence. — The sultan,
being informed that a great sickness prevailed in the plain of Acre and was
spreading through both armies, recited in my hearing the following verse:
"My two friends! kill me with Malik; kill Malik with me.

"By that he gave us to understand that he was willing to die provided that God destroyed His enemies." — The origin of this verse requires to be explained: Malik Ibn al-Harith, surnamed al-Ashtar an-Nakhai, bore a high reputation for courage and bravery; he was one of Ali Ibn Abi Talib's chief partisans. At the battle of the Camel, he and Abd Allah, the son of az-Zubair, seized on each other. This Abd Allah also was renowned for bravery and was then (fighting) on the side of his maternal aunt Aaiasha, the mother of the faithful (and Muhammad's widow).—Talha and az-Zubair were on the same side, fighting against Ali. — When the two champions seized one on the other, he that was the strongest would get his adversary under him and weigh upon his breast; this they did alternately, a number of times, and Abd Allah, the son of az-Zubair, kept exclaiming: Kill me with Malik! kill Malik with me! By Malik he meant al-Ashtar an-Nakhai. Such is the substance of the long narration which is given in the books of annals. Abd Allah Ibn az-Zubair said, in speaking of this affair: "I encountered al-Ashtar an-Nakhai at the battle of the Camel and, for every blow I gave him, he returned me six or seven. Then he caught me by the foot, threw me into the ditch and said: "By Allah! were you not related to the Prophet of God, not a single member of your body should remain joined to another." Abū Bakr Ibn Abi Shaibah said: "When Aaiasha learned that Ibn az-Zubair had escaped with his life after enduring the battle of al-Ashtar, she gave ten thousand dirhems to the man who brought her the news." It is related that, subsequently to the battle of the Camel, Aaiasha received a visit from al-Ashtar and said to him: "It was you, Ashtar! who meant to kill my sisters's son on the day of the battle?" To this he replied by reciting these verses:

"O Aaiasha! had I not been without food for three days, you would have found your sister's son among the slain, on the morning of the day in which he exclaimed with a feeble voice, whilst spears were directed against him: 'Kill me with Malik.' What saved him from me was his breakfast, his youth and the emptiness of (my) stomach which could not support (long fasting)."

Zahr Ibn Kais related as follows: "I went to the bath with Abd Allah Ibn az-Zubair and I remarked on his head a schar so deep that it would have held the contents
of an oil-flask. He asked me if I knew who gave him that blow and, on my re-
plying that I did not, he said: ‘It was your uncle’s son, al-Ashtar an-Nakhāi.’
—Let us return to our subject: ‘The Franks,’ says Ibn Shaddād, ‘then received
reinforcements from beyond the sea and prevailed, at Acre, over the assembled
Musulmans. Amongst the latter were the emirs Saif ad-Dīn Ali Ibn Ahmad al-
Mashtūb al-Hakkārī (vol. i. p. 164) and Bahā ad-Dīn Karākūsh, one of Salāh ad-
Dīn’s domestics. The enemy pressed the Moslems so closely that they put it out of
their power to keep the town any longer; so, on Friday, the 17th of the latter Ju-
māda, 587 (12th July, 1191), a man swam from Acre with letters in which the
besieged described the state to which they were reduced, and declared that all was
certainly lost and that the besiegers would strike off their heads in case the place
was taken by storm; they had therefore consented to capitulate on the following
conditions: the town was to be delivered up with all it contained, such as en-
gines of war, military stores, arms and ships; a contribution of two hundred thou-
sand dinars was to be paid; five hundred prisoners, not otherwise designated, and
one hundred whose names were mentioned, should be delivered up and the cross
of the Crucifixion should be restored. The besieged would then be allowed to
retire in safety, carry off their personal property, such as money and clothing,
and take with them their women and children. By another article they engaged
to pay four thousand dinars to the Marquis (Conrad of Monferrat) who had been
the chief director in this negotiation. When the sultan heard the contents of these
letters, he disapproved in the most formal manner of the arrangement which had
been made and took the matter greatly to heart. He assembled those grandees of
his empire who were capable of giving good advice and asked them what was to
be done. After wavering in his resolutions and hesitating between conflicting
thoughts, he remained greatly troubled in mind, but at length decided on send-
ing, that very night, the same swimmer to the besieged garrison, with
a letter in which he blamed the arrangement concluded between the parties.
He was still hesitating when behold! the standards of the enemy, their
crosses, their fires and their distinctive emblems appeared on the walls of the
town. This was on the noon of Friday, the 17th of the latter Jumāda of the
same year. The Franks uttered simultaneously a loud cry which fell like a
heavy stroke upon the Moslems who, in their deep affliction, began to wail, to
groan, to weep and to lament.’—Farther on Ibn Shaddād says: The Franks

VOL. IV.
"set out from Acre with the intention of taking Ascalon, and followed the "shore-road whilst the sultan kept opposite to them with his army. On reaching "Arsuf they fought a battle by which the strength of the Moslems was greatly "broken. Advancing in the same order as before, they reached a halting-place, "and there was terminated the tenth day of their march from Acre. The sultan "then went to ar-Ramlah, where news was brought to him that the enemy intended "to rebuild Jaffa and establish in it a garrison, with provisions and instruments of "war (62). He therefore called in his ordinary counsellors and asked their advice "respecting Ascalon, whether that place should be demolished or preserved. They "were all of opinion that al-Malik al-Aâdil should remain and face the enemy whilst "the sultan himself went to destroy Ascalon; for it was to be feared that the Franks, "if they occupied it whilst it was still inhabited, would be enabled, from that posi-
tion, to take Jerusalem and cut off all communication with Egypt. The troops "were, besides, unwilling to enter into a place where they might meet with the "same fate as had befallen the Moslems of Acre. It was therefore decided that As-
calon should be destroyed and that the conservation of Jerusalem should be pre-
ferred to everything else. The demolition was to begin by ruining simultaneously "different parts of the city which were indicated beforehand. This assembly was "held on Tuesday the 17th of Shâbân, 587 (9th September, A. D. 1191). On the "morning of the next day, they set out for Ascalon." — In another place, Ibn Shaddâd says: "He (Sâlih ad-Dîn) spoke to me respecting the destruction of the "town, after having conversed with his son al-Malik al-Afdal on the same subject, "and he finished by saying: 'I should rather lose all my sons than throw down a "single stone of that place; but since God has decided that it must be done and "since it will be advantageous for the Moslems, by what means can it be avoided?' The same author says elsewhere: "When the resolution of destroying Ascalon was "formed, God made him feel the necessity of that (sacrifice) and perceive its utility; "especially as the Moslems would be unable to keep the place. — The work of de-
struction was begun on Thursday morning, the 19th of Shâbân. The task of de-
molishing the walls was shared among the troops, each emir and his men having "one of the curtains and one of the towers assigned to them. When these troops "entered into the town, the inhabitants uttered loud cries and lamentations; for it "was a very agreeable town, protected by strong walls, possessing lofty buildings "and much liked as a residence. The destruction of Ascalon was a great affliction
for the people (the Muslims), and loud were the lamentations of the inhabitants, then forced to quit their homes. They sold whatever they could not carry away, giving for one dirhem an object which was worth ten. A dozen of hens were sold for one dirhem; all was confusion in the town; the inhabitants went to the camp, whence some set out for Egypt and others for Syria, and all underwent the greatest hardships (on the way). The sultan and his sons did their utmost to ruin the town before the Franks were aware; he feared that the enemy might hasten up and render the destruction of the place impossible. The people (soldiers) passed a very uncomfortable night, fatigued as they were in toiling at the demolition of the place. That same night a courier arrived with a dispatch from al-Malik al-Âdîl in which was mentioned that the Franks had parleyed with him for a peace and that they asked to retain for themselves all the towns of the sea-coast (63). He felt that there was an advantage in such an arrangement; knowing, as he did, that his troops were harassed with warfare and burdened with debts. He therefore authorised his brother to treat (with the Franks) and make such arrangements as he thought fit. At an early hour on Friday, the 27th of Shâbân, he was seen press- ing the work of destruction and hastening the efforts of his men. He gave them permission to take as much grain as they pleased out of the granary in which the produce of the mîta (land-tax paid in kind) was hoarded up; for he feared that the Franks might burst into the town before he could carry it off. He then gave orders that the town should be burned, and the soldiers set fire to the houses. The demolitions continued till the end of Shâbân and, on Monday, the 1st of Ramadân, the sultan ordered his son al-Malik al-Afdâl to take charge of that work and finish it with the assistance of his own people; and I saw that prince carrying wood for the purpose of keeping up the fires. On Wednesday, the 3rd of Ramadân, he arrived at ar-Ramla and then visited Ludd, which place he ordered to be demolished after inspecting it. The castle of ar-Ramla was demolished at the same time. On Saturday, the 13th of Ramadân, he retired with his troops towards the high lands, in order that the soldiers might be able to send off their beasts of burden for the things of which they stood in need (64). The sultan then made the circuit of an-Natrûn and, by his order, the demolition of this strong castle was commenced."

—Ibn Shaddâd then relates that al-Ankòlédr (Richard, roi d'Angleterre), who was one of the greatest of the Frankish kings, sent to al-Malik al-Âdîl, requesting an interview. Al-Âdîl consented and, on Friday, the 18th of Shauwâl, the same year,
they had a conversation which lasted for the greater part of the day and they separated on terms of sincere friendship. Al-Anketâr requested of al-Aādîl to procure for him an interview with the sultan, and the latter, to whom al-Aādîl spoke on the subject, consulted the grandees of the empire. They were all of opinion that the answer should be: "Let there be peace between us; the interview may take place "after." A messenger then arrived from al-Anketâr and said (in that king's name): "Your friendship and good will are what I desire. You say that you have given "to your brother these countries here, in the Sâhil. Now, I wish you to judge "between him and me and divide that region between us. As for Jerusalem, it "must, of course, be included in my share." The envoy spoke to a great length on the subject and the sultan replied by fair words. The messenger, on whom this (reception) made a deep impression, was then authorised to retire. "After the en-""voy's departure," says Ibn Shaddâd, "the sultan said to me: 'Were we to make "'peace with them, we should never be secure from their perfidy. Were I to "'die, such an army as this could never again be assembled and the Franks would "'become powerful. What I had best do is to continue the war against the infi-""'"dels till I expel them from the Sâhil or till I meet with my death.' Such was "his real opinion, but he was obliged to make peace." — "Then," says the same historian, "envoys passed back and forward for the purpose of establishing the "peace." — He gives a long account of these (proceedings), but that, I omit, because we have no necessity for it. Then took place a number of events which I abstain from noticing, the account given of them by the author extending to so great a length; the abstract of it is that peace was concluded and ratified by oath on Wednesday, the 22nd of Shâbân, 588 (2nd Sept., A. D. 1192). A proclamation was then made, announcing that peace was established and declaring that the Moslim territory and that of the Christians should equally enjoy repose and security; so that persons of either nation might go into the territory of the other and return again, without fear and without apprehension. That day, crowds were assembled, and the joy felt on both sides was such as God alone could conceive; but the Almighty knew well that he (Salâh ad-Dîn) had not made peace through choice and freewill but for a certain advantage: his troops were tired of war and manifested openly their unwillingness to obey orders. God alone knew what that advantage was to be: Salâh ad-Dîn died subsequently to the peace; had he died when the (previous) events were taking place, Islamism would have been in danger. The troops which were
arriving from distant countries for the purpose of reinforcing the army, received permission to return home and departed. The sultan, having no longer any cause of uneasiness from that quarter, resolved on making the pilgrimage (to Mekka). The Moslems now frequented the territory of the Franks who, on their side, visited that of the Moslems; goods and merchandise were carried to the towns, and a great number of the Christians went to visit Jerusalem. The sultan also set out for the purpose of inspecting that place; his brother, al-Malik al-Aadil, went to al-Karak; his son, al-Malik az-Zahir, proceeded to Aleppo, and al-Afdal, his other son, departed for Damascus. The sultan, during his stay in Jerusalem, distributed fiefs to his people (his officers) and authorised them to return home; he made also preparations for a journey to Egypt. Having no longer any desire of making the pilgrimage, he continued to mind what he was engaged in till he at length learned positively that al-Anktaar had sailed for his own country on the 1st of Shauwâl (10th October, 1192). He then decided on entering into the Sâhil with an escort of cavalry; his intention being to examine the state of his maritime fortresses, advance to Banyas, go from that to Damascus, pass a few days there, return to Jerusalem and then set out for Egypt. Ibn Shaddâd says: "He ordered me to remain in Jerusalem till his return, so that I might direct the instalment of an hospital and the completing of a college which he had founded there. He departed on the morning of Thursday, the 6th of Shauwâl, 588 (15th Oct., A. D. 1192) and, after inspecting his fortresses and remedying their defects, he arrived in Damascus on Wednesday, the 26th of Shauwâl. There he found his sons, al-Malik al-Afdal, al-Malik az-Zahir, al-Malik az-Zâfir Muzaffar ad-Din al-Khidr, surnamed al-Mushammer, and his younger children. He liked that city and preferred it as a residence to all others. On Thursday morning, the 27th of the same month, he held a public audience so that the people, who longed to see him, were enabled to gratify their desire. Pieces of verse were then recited to him by the poets, not one of whom, from the highest to the lowest, staid away. He remained in the city, spreading out the wings of his justice, pouring forth the showers of his liberality and beneficence, and putting a stop to the acts of oppression which his subjects had to complain of. On Tuesday, the 1st of Zula 'l-Kaada, al-Malik al-Afdal gave a great dinner to al-Malik az-Zâhir who, on arriving at Damascus and learning that (his father) the sultan was on his way (to that city), had stopped there in order to have the pleasure of seeing him again. He seemed to have felt in his mind that
the sultan's life was drawing to its end, for, on this occasion, he repeated again
and again the parting farewell. At this repast al-Afdal displayed magnificence
worthy of his noble heart; it was as if he intended to render an equivalent for the
hospital reception which he found at his brother's, on arriving that prince's city.
All those, who held a high rank in the world and those (who were entitled to one)
in the next shared in that repast. The sultan also was invited and, to give
his son satisfaction, he went there. I have been told that immense crowds had
assembled to witness the splendors of that day.—Al-Malik al-Aādil, having inspec-
ted al-Karak and terminated all the ameliorations which he intended to make
there, took the road of his provinces (east of) the Euphrates and reached Da-
mascus on Wednesday, the 17th of Zū 'l-Kaada. The sultan went out to meet
him and, whilst he awaited his arrival, he hunted over the country around Gha-
bāghib and from that to al-Keswa. When they met, the hunting recommenced
and it was at a late hour on Sunday evening, the 11th of Zū 'l-Hijja, 588 (18th
Dec., A. D. 1192), that they entered into Damascus. The sultan continued to
hunt with his sons and his brother, going over the grounds about Damascus and
visiting the places inhabited by gazelles. He seemed to have found in the chase
some relief from his continual fatigues, his toils and his lengthened vigils. This
might be considered as his last farewell to his children and to the spots where he
used to take his pleasure. He thought no more of his projected journey to Egypt,
other affairs having turned up and other projects being formed.” The same his-
torian says: “I received from him, at Jerusalem, a letter by which he called me to
his court. Heavy rains were then falling and the mud was very deep, yet I set
out from Jerusalem. My departure took place on Friday, the 23rd of Muharram,
589 (29th Jan. A. D. 1193), and I arrived at Damascus on Tuesday, the 12th of Safar
(17 Feb.). The 15th of that month, which was a Friday, the sultan rode out to
meet the pilgrim-caravan, and that was the last time he got on horseback. On
the eve of Saturday he felt a great lassitude and, a little before midnight he had
an attack of bilious fever. This indisposition was more in the interior of the body
than in the exterior. On Saturday morning, he felt greatly exhausted in conse-
quence of the fever, but did not let his sufferings appear. I and al-Kādi al-Fādil
went to see him; his son al-Malik al-Afdal came in also, and we remained sitting
with him for a considerable time. He complained of the agitated night which he
had passed and felt some relief in conversing with us. A little before noon, we
"retired, but our hearts remained with him. We then received from him the order "to partake of a repast at which al-Malik al-Afdal presided; al-Fâdil, not being ac-"customed (to such things) went away, but I went in and found the tables laid out in "the Southern Hall, and al-Afdal sitting in his father's place. Being greatly af-"fected at the sight, I had not the courage to sit down, and withdrew. His occu-"pying that place was considered as a bad omen and caused many tears to be "shed on that day. From that time the sultan's illness continued to increase; "we went to visit him regularly, morning and evening, and al-Kâdi 'l-Fâdil enter-"ed with me into the sick-chamber several times every day. His disorder was in "the head, and the absence of the physician who was well acquainted with his consti-"tution and who attended him constantly whilst journeying and sojourning, led peo-"ple to think that he had not long to live. The (other) physicians were of advice that "blood should be drawn, and, on the fourth day, he was bled. The illness then "became more intense; the moisture of the body diminished, exsiccation prevailed, "and the state of the patient became worse and worse, so that he was rendered ex-"tremely weak. On the sixth day, and the seventh and the eighth the disorder in-"creased gradually and reached such a height that the intellect became deranged. "On the ninth day, he had fainting fits and refused the draught which was offered "to him. The city was filled with apprehension and the people (the merchants) "were so much alarmed that they removed their goods from the bazaars. All the "inhabitants were overcome with grief and affliction such as could not be described. "On the 10th day of the illness, two injections were administered and procured "him some relief. This excited great joy among the people, but the malady still "increased and the doctors at length despaired of the patient's recovery. Al-Malik "al-Afdal then began to make the people (and the troops) swear allegiance to "himself. On Wednesday, the 27th of Safar, 589 (4th March, 1193), after the hour "of morning prayer, the sultan breathed his last. The day of his death was, for "Islamism and the Musulmans, a misfortune such as they never before suffered "since they were deprived of the four first Khalifs. The palace, the empire and the "world were overwhelmed with grief such as God only could conceive. I often "heard of persons saying that they would willingly die in order to save the life of "one whom they loved dearly; but, till that day, I considered such declarations as "mere hyperboles and lax expressions; now, however, I solemnly declare, after my "own feelings and those of others, that, if the life of one man could be redeemed
"by the life of another, many lives would have been offered to save his. Al-Malik
al-Afdal held a sitting after his father's death, in order to receive the condolences
of the people. The corpse was washed by ad-Daulah." — The person thus deno-
minated bore the title of Diā ad-Din and his names were Abū 'l-Kāsim Abd
al-Malik, the son of Zaid, the son of Yāsin, the son of Zaid, the son of Kāid, the son
of Jamil. He belonged to the tribe of Thalab (ath-Thalabi) and drew his descent
from al-Arkam (al-Arkami). He was a doctor of the Shafite sect and filled
the place of preacher (khattāb) at Damascus. His death took on the 12th
of the first Rabi, 598 (10th Dec. A. D. 1201). — Being asked respecting the
year of his birth, he replied: "The year 507" (A. D. 1113-4), but afterwards men-
tioned other dates; God knows best! He was buried in the cemetery of the martyrs
(Makdīr ash-Shuhadd), outside (the gate called) Bāb as-Saghīr. — Ibn Shaddād con-
tinues thus: When the afternoon prayer was said, the body was brought out in a
coffin over which a sheet was spread as a pall. At this sight a loud outcry was raised
and the people began to weep, to lament and to pray over the corpse in successive
bands. It was then carried back to the garden-house in which the sultan had resi-
ded during his last illness, and was buried under the estrade at the western side of
it. The asr (vol. I. p. 594) prayer was on the point of being said when the body was
lowered into the grave. — Ibn Shaddād then expatiates on the subject, but I omit
his discourse lest I should fatigues the reader. He concludes his work with a verse
composed by Abū Tammām at-Tāī (vol. I, p. 348) and which we give here:

Those years and the people who lived therein have passed away; years and people have disap-
peared like dreams.

May the Almighty have mercy on him (Salāh ad-Dīn) and sanctify his soul! for
he was the ornament and the admiration of the world. — Sibt Ibn al-Jauzi (vol. I.
p. 439) says, in his chronicle, under the year 578 (A. D. 1182-3) : "On the 5th of
Muharram, Salāh ad-Dīn set out from Old Cairo, on his way to Syria and halted
at al-Birka (65). The great officers of the empire went out to bid him farewell
and the poets recited to him valedictory poems. He then heard a voice, outside
the tent, pronounce these words:

"Enjoy now the odour of the ox-eyes which grow in Najd; after this evening, you will find
them no more."
The person who spoke was sought for, but could not be found. These words saddened the sultan’s mind and were considered by those who were present as a bad omen. Indeed, they turned out to be true, for the sultan was kept so much occupied by the affairs of the Eastern provinces and by the Franks, that he was never able to revisit Egypt.” — I may here observe that the line just mentioned was taken from a piece of verse that may be found in that section of the Hamāsa which contains the amatory poems. Our professor, Izz ad-Din Ibl al-Athir (vol. II. p. 288) relates the same anecdote under another form in his greater historical work. He there says: “An extraordinary example of an evil omen’s being fulfilled is the following: When the sultan left Cairo, he stopped where his tent was pitched, till the troops were collected into one body. He had with him the principal officers of the empire, the doctors of the law and the eminent literary scholars, some of whom were there to take leave of him, and others to accompany him on his journey. Each of them was saying his word on the subject of adieu and separation from friends, when a tutor of one of the sultan’s children thrust forward his head, over the shoulders of the company, and pronounced that verse. Salāh ad-Din who, a moment before, was very gay, shuddered at the bad omen and all the persons in the assembly felt ill at ease. He never again returned to Cairo.” — Ibn Shaddād says in the first part of his historical work: “He (Salāh ad Din) left, on dying, neither gold nor silver in his treasury, with the exception of forty-seven Nasirian dirhems (66) and one gold piece coined at Tyre. He possessed neither estates, nor houses, nor lands, nor gardens, nor villages, nor tillage-grounds. Immediately after his death, al-Kādī ’l-Fādil wrote to al-Malik az-Zāhir, the sovereign of Aleppo and one of the sultan’s sons, a letter of which we here give the contents: “—‘You have in the apostle of God an excellent example. (Koran, s. 33, v. 21); verily the earthquake of the (last) hour (will be) a terrible thing. (Koran, s. 22, v. 1). — I have written this to al-Malik az-Zāhir; may God grant him good consolation, alleviate his affliction and give him a compensation for it on that hour.—The Mosliams have received a violent shock; tears have furrowed every cheek, hearts have come even to the throats. (Koran, s. 23, v. 10), and I have said to your father, who was my master, a farewell never to be followed by another meeting. I kissed his face for myself and you; to almighty God I delivered him now vanquished in dexterity, weakened in strength and resigned to the will of God. There is no might nor force but through God. At his door troops were marshalled up
and arms were (ready) in their scabbards, but they were unable to repel this afflic-
tion; no king can resist the decrees of fate. All eyes are shedding tears, all
hearts are humbled and our only words are: 'Let God's will be done! for thy
sake, o Yusuf! are we in sorrow!' As for counsels, you need them not, and as
for my opinion, the stroke I have received prevents me from forming one by dis-
tracting my attention. But, to judge from the aspect of affairs, (I shall say that,)
if concord reign, you will suffer no other loss than that of his noble presence. If
otherwise, his death will be a less misfortune than the evils which may happen.
That is the main subject of apprehension. Receive my salutations!' — How ad-
mirably well said! In this short epistle he has displayed great novelty (of expres-
sion) even when inserting in it sound advice, suitable to a state of things which
would make a man forget his own interests." — I have given a separate article to
all the sons of Salah ad-Din whose names occur in the present notice, and have
indicated the dates of their birth and their death.—Those whom I mean are al-Afdal,
Az-Zahir and al-Aziz. The only one of them whom I have passed over is al-Malik
az-Zahir, surnamed al-Mushammer and, as I have mentioned his name in this arti-
cle, it is necessary for me to say something concerning him. He bore the title of
Muzaffar ad-Din and the names of Abu 'd-Dawâm and Abu 'l-Abbâs al-Khidr. He
was designated by the appellation of al-Mushammer because he exclaimed, when
his father shared his states between the elder brothers: I also am ready (mu-
shammer). — This became a nickname by which he was generally known. He
was born in Cairo on the 5th of Shâbân, 568 (22nd March, A. D. 1173), and
had for mother the same woman who gave birth to al-Malik al-Afdal. He died
at Harrân, in the month of the first Jumâda, 627 (March-April, A. D. 1230);
being then with his cousin, al-Malik al-Ashraf, the son of al-Malik al-Aâdîl. Al-
Ashraf did not then possess Harrân; he was only passing through it on his way to the
country of ar-Rûm (Asia Minor), where he was going on account of the Khowa-
rezmites (67). — Another author says: The (body of the) sultan Salah ad-Din remain-
ked interred within the citadel of Damascus till a tomb was built for its reception,
on the northern side of the Kallâsa, which edifice lies to the north of the great
mosque of Damascus. This (mausoleum) has two doors, one opening on the Kallâsa,
and the other on a street in which there is no thoroughfare and which is conti-
iguous to the Aziziya college. — I entered into this kubba (chapel with a dome) by the
doors which gives on the Kallâsa and, after reciting a portion of the Koran over the
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

grave, I invoked God’s mercy on its occupier. The warden, who was also the inten-
dant of the *kubba*, then produced to me a packet containing Šalāh ad-Dīn’s
body-clothes, among which I remarked a short, yellow vest (*kabīd*) with black
cuffs (68), and I prayed that their sight might be a blessing to me. — The same nar-
rator says: ‘‘The body was removed from the citadel to this *kubba* on Thursday, the
10th of Muharram, 592 (15 Dec. A. D. 1195), and Koran-reader were attached
to the establishment, with servants to keep it in good order. Some time after,
his son, al-Malik al-Azīz Imād ad-Dīn Othmān, the same of whom we have spoken
(vol. II. p. 195), took Damascus from his brother, al-Malik al-Afdal, and erected
at the side of this mausoleum the college which bears the name of *al-Madrasa ’l-
Azīziyya* and endowed it richly. — A grated window of the *kubba* looks towards
the college, which is one of the most noted in Damascus.’’ — On the first Friday
of the month of Ramadān, 680 (April, 1281), I visited this tomb and saw on the
chest which it supports, the date of the sultan’s death followed by these words: ‘‘Al-
mighty God! let his soul be acceptable to thee and open to him the gates of Para-
dise; that being the last conquest [lit. opening] for which he hoped.’’ The war-
den of the place told me that this prayer was of al-Kādi ’l-Fādīl’s composition.

When the sultan Šalāh ad-Dīn became the master of Egypt, there was not a single
(*orthodox*) college in that country, because the dynasty which had reigned there
followed the doctrine of the Imámians (*the Shī’ites*) and did not admit the utility of
such establishments. He therefore founded, in the Lesser Karāfā, near the tomb of
the *imām* as-Shāfīī, a college of which we have spoken in our article on Najm ad-Dīn
al-Khubūshānī (v. II, p. 645). — He built also another college in Cairo near the
mausoleum which is dedicated to al-Husain, the son of Ali, and settled on it a
large endowment. He converted into a college for the Hanafites and endowed richly
the house which had belonged to Abbās, the same person of whom we have spoken
in our articles on az-Zāfīr al-Obaidī (vol. I. p. 223) and al-Aādīl Ibn Sallār (vol. II.
p. 351). — He endowed also very richly, for the Shafites, a college in Cairo which
goes under the name of Zain at-Tujjār (69). Inside the citadel (*kasr*) of Cairo he built
an hospital, on which he settled considerable property. Another hospital, richly
endowed, and a *Khānqāh* (*convent for derviches*) were founded by him in Jerusalem.
In Old Cairo he founded a college (*madrasa*) for the Malikites. — I have often thought
of that man’s acts and said to myself: ‘‘He was fortunate in this world and must be
so in the next; here he wrought those famous deeds, such as his numerous con-
quests, and founded so many establishments richly endowed and of which not one
is publicly known by his name. The college founded by him in the Karâfa is cal-
led by the people the Shaftâne college; that which is near (al-Husain's) mosque is de-
signated by them as the Mash-hed; the khângâdh is named after Sa'id as-Suwadâ (71);
the Hanifite college is called the Madrasa of Saif ad-Din; that which is in Old
Cairo bears the name of Zain at-Tujjâr and the other college in the same place is
called the Malikite. Here is really an example of good works done secretly. It
is remarkable that the college founded by him in Damascus, near the hospital of
Nûr ad-Din, is called the Saldhian after him, though it is without an endowment,
and that his Malikite college, in the same city, does not bear his name. For
this favour (that of escaping from vain-glory,) he was indebted to the grace of
God.' Though he possessed so extensive a kingdom and such vast dominions,
he was extremely kind and condescending; being affable to all men, tender-hearted,
full of patience and indulgence. He befriended he learned and the virtuous, ad-
mitted them into his society and treated them with beneficence. Towards talents of
all kinds he was favorably inclined and, being a great admirer of good poetry, he
would repeat pieces of verse before the company at his assemblies. Often, say they,
did he recite the following lines, attributed by some to Abû Mansûr Muhammad Ibn
al-Husain Ibn Ahmad Ibn al-Husain Ibn Ishak al-Himyari, and, by others, to Abû
Muhammad Ahmad Ibn Ali Ibn Khairân, who was governor of Almeria in Spain
and who bore the surname of al-Aâmiri because his grandfather, Khairân, was one
of the captives made by al-Mansûr Ibn Abi Aâmir:

The harbinger of spring let its voice be heard, and the image of my beloved visited me in a
dream, taking every precaution against jealous spies. I had nearly awakened those around
me by the joy which that visit gave me, and she, through desire, had nearly torn asunder the
veil which concealed her love. I awoke when my hopes had led me to imagine that I would
obtain my utmost wish; but then, my happiness was changed into sorrow.

It is related that he admired greatly the following verses composed by Nashû 'l-
Mulk Abû 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn Mufarraj, surnamed Ibn al-Munajjim, who was a native
of Maarra tan-Nomân (al-Maarî), but had settled and died in Cairo. They were
composed on the custom of giving a black die to gray hair:

It is not for the uncomeliness of gray hair that they are dyed; for, certainly, hair, when it
loses its colour, is still more uncomely. But they do so because, when youth is dead, its dwelling-place is blackened in order to denote how greatly the loss is regretted.

It was related that (the sultan), on pronouncing the words: youth is dead, would take hold of his mistress, look at her and say: Yes, by Allah! youth is dead. — The kātib Imād ad-Dīn al-Iṣbahāni states, in his Khandāda, that the sultan Salāh ad-Dīn had just commenced to reign when he wrote to one of his friends in Damascus these two verses:

O you who are absent (and far) from us, though our recollections have rendered you my neighbours (present) in my heart! Ever since I have been deprived of you, I see you visibly, with the eyes of my imagination.

As for the two Kasīdas which, as I said, were sent from Baghdad by Sibt Ibn at-Tāwizī, the poet imitates, in one of them, a poem composed by Surr Durr (p. II, p. 321), of which I have given some verses in the life of the vizir al-Kunduri (vol. III, p. 292) and which begins thus:

It this the requital which my fellow men receive for their love?

Here is Ibn at-Taawizi's Kasīda:

If thy custom, when in love, resembles mine, stop thy camels at the two sand-hills of Yabrīn, and kiss a soil which my very eyelids would kiss, were my camels to bear me up to the tops of its hills. Seek there for my heart, under the pretext of discovering its gazelles; but my folly is caused by other gazelles than those of the sandy desert! My poem (was recited) between the tents, but, to turn away suspicion, I spoke only of large-eyed gazelles. Were it not through dread of foes, I should have designated the glances of those maidens and their graceful bearing by other emblems than tender fawns and pliant branches. What admirable pearls were concealed, on the day of their departure, within the vaulted palanquins! each of them surpassing in beauty its companions and requiring no ornament to set it off; maidens who, when they appear, display the moon of heaven (the brightness of) their cheeks and (of) their foreheads. In the morning, their (shining) teeth had scarcely flashed forth their lightnings when my eyelids poured forth floods of tears. If they perceive not the breath of the zephyr, it is because they have just passed near the sighs proceeding from my afflicted heart. When the camels looked back, as they ascended the mountains, I also turned my head, and that gesture excited a tender sadness in her heart and mine. O Salma! if you break your engagements with me, the person in whom I placed my trust is no longer worthy of confidence. Your promises were made to a dupe, but, in affairs of tender passion, I am not the first lover who has been duped. (Act with) mildness! the moment of separation has cruelly oppressed one whose tears flow without control and who remains as a pledge in the bonds of love. But what have
Ibn Khallikan's

I to do with the affection of fair maidens, so parcimonious of that (love) which, for me, was all I needed? Yet, why should I complain, if they defer the payment of what they owe me, whilst their glances shed with impunity my heart's blood? Let me give up these follies! what have fair maids to do with a man who has now passed his fiftieth year? Asking gifts from a miser or expecting good-faith from a deceiver is, for me, the greatest of afflictions. O that she who is so sparing of favours to her lover had learned liberality from Salih ad-Din!

Here is the second kastda:

How long must I be pleased with loving you, and you be displeased? How long will you afflict me with false imputations and then upbraid me? My only failing is to have incurred your disdain; and every time that your disdain was manifested, you said that the fault was mine. Testify your dislike in every manner; I have a heart not to be cast down by affliction. Do you think that I can ever feel consolation if deprived of you? sooner will you show kindness than I receive consolation. On your account, my bosom burns, through sadness, with a fire not to be extinguished, and the sources of my tears are never dried up. Have you forgotten those days and nights which we passed in sport, giving free career to wanton folly? those days in which there was no detractor ready to count my passion for you as a crime, no censor ready to blame me. You formerly rendered justice to my love and, in fondness for me, you faced the same perils which I boldly encountered. But now I am satisfied if, during my slumbers, your image passes near my couch and appears to me at night, during my dreams. I did not think that the days of love would pass away, just as a new garment is worn out; neither did I imagine that I should ever be divested of the raiment of youth. But, at length, the clouds of delusion were dissipated, the guide which led darkness on its way took the right path and the shades of night withdrew. Maidens, fair and handsome, now shun me; Soád beeds me not, and Zainab pretends not to know me. She whom I loved, being shocked at the whiteness of my hair and the thinness of my body, exclaimed: “The best part of you has disappeared.” (I replied:) “If you find fault with my body, your waist also is thin; disdain not the whiteness of my hair; your teeth also are white (ashnabu).

That is admirably said! He has enounced the idea as perfectly as possible, though he imagined that the root shanab signified the whiteness of the teeth. He employed it as having that meaning and thus completed the expression of his thought, which was this: when she whom he loved reproached him with his infirmities (and emaciation), he twitted her with the thinness of her waist and, when she expressed her dislike of white hair, he retorted by saying that her teeth also were white. It was if he said that the whiteness of his hair was counterbalanced by the whiteness of her teeth. But, he was mistaken in supposing that shanab had that signification: this word, as employed in the language, does not mean the whiteness of the teeth but their sharpness. Some say, however, that it designates their coolness and sweetness, but the other meaning is the right one. The sharpness of teeth indicates youth,
for they are sharp when they first appear and, after serving for some years, they are ground down and lose their acuity. The thought itself is borrowed from a well known kastda, in which the author, an-Nâbigha ad-Dubyâni, says:

No defect can be found in them except the state of their swords, which are notched with striking upon hostile squadrons.

Mention has been made of this verse in our article on Orwa Ibn az-Zubair (vol. II. p. 200), where the reader may find it. The kâtib Bahâ ad-Din Zuhair Ibn Muhammad (vol. I. p. 542), recited to me, as being of his own composition, a piece of verse in which one of the lines, offering a similar thought, is as follows:

There is no defect in her except the languor (lit. the weakness) of her eyes.

Let us resume and finish the text of the kastda composed by Sibt Ibn at-Taâwizi:

You who seek for the pleasures of life when your hair has turned gray! (know that) time which maketh all things pass away, has also passed away (for you). Do you think, after counting up your forty years, that you can still obtain the favours of the fair? That, alas! would be highly difficult (72). Dwelling of my beloved! were it not for my Ozrite love (73), never should I have rejoiced at the aspect of glimmering lightnings, deceptive (of our hopes that rain would fall upon the country in which you are situated). Never should that have been; never also shall I commence degrading my self-respect (by soliciting gifts)! never shall I do so as long as the beneficence of Salâh ad-Din flows by, copious as a torrent.

All the poets of the age celebrated the praises of Salâh ad-Din and came from every quarter to partake of his beneficence. One of them was Alam ad-Din as-Shâtâni, the same whose article we have given amongst those of the Hasans (vol. I. p. 403), and who made that sultan’s eulogy in a kastda rhyming in R and beginning thus:

I see victory attached to your yellow standard; proceed therefore and conquer the world, for you are worthy of its possession.

Another poem was composed in his praise by Muhaddab ad-Din Abû Hafs Omar Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn Abi Nasr generally known by the surname of Ibn as-Shihna ‘l-Mausili (the son of the governor of Mosul). It begins thus:

Let the salutation of a lover, emaciated by his passion, be borne to the females of the tribe which has now separated.
This kastda contains one hundred and thirteen verses, two of which are currently known. One of them is the following:

I love you for the noble qualities which I am told that you possess; the ear can be smitten with love as well as the eye.

This thought he borrowed from Bashshār Ibn Burd, who said:

Know, good people! that my ear is enamoured of a person in that tribe; for the ear is sometimes enamoured sooner than the eye.

The second of these verses is the following:

My hopes said to me: "If you meet the sons of Aīyūb, you will prosper."

Eulogies were composed on Salāḥ ad-Dīn by Ibn Kalākis (vol. III. p. 537), Ibn az-Zarawa, Ibn al-Munajjim (Nashu ‘l-Mulk), Ibn Sanā ‘l-Mulk (vol. III. p. 589), Ibn as-Sāati (vol. II. p. 328), an-Najrānī al-Irbili, Ibn Duhn al-Hasa al-Mausili Muhammad Ibn Ismaīl Ibn Hamdān al-Khairānī and other poets, most of whom we have noticed in this historical work. If I have given a great extent to this biographical notice, I shall excuse myself in the words of the poet al-Mutanabbi:

The nobleness of him whose merits I extol gives nobleness to my verses; the eulogy of a base fellow (timbul) is itself abased.

The word timbul signifies a man of stature. — In the present article, where we related that (the Fatimide khalīf) al-Āūdīd sent for Salāḥ ad-Dīn in order to invest him with the vizirship, mention is made of the proverbial expression: I meant Amr, but God meant Khādīja. — As some of my readers may not be acquainted with its origin and signification, I will explain it, so that they may not be obliged to search for its meaning elsewhere. The Amr here spoken of was the son of al-Āsī and belonged to the Sahmide branch of the Koraish family. His father was the son of Wā’il, the son of Háshim, the son of Soaid, the son of Saad, the son of Saḥm, the son of Amr, the son of Husais, the son of Kaab, the son of Luwāt. Amr’s surname was Abū Abd Allah, or, as some say, Abū Muhammad. He was one of the Prophet’s companions, having embraced Islamism in the eighth year of the Hijra, anteriorly
to the conquest of Mekka. That city was taken by the Prophet in the month of Ramadân, A. H. 8 (Dec.-Jan. 629-630). This statement is rejected by some (traditionists), who say that he became a Moslem in the interval between the expedition of al-Hudaibiya and that of Khaibar; but it is nevertheless the true one. He and Khalid Ibn al-Walid al-Makhzumi set out with Othman Ibn Talha Ibn Abi Talha, a member of the Koraishide family called the Bani Abd ad-Dar (al-Abdari), and went to the Prophet, who was then at Medina and before whom they appeared as Moslems. On seeing them, the Prophet said (to his companions): "Mekka has cast out to you the most precious of its treasures." (74)—Al-Wâkidî (vol. III. p. 61) says: "Amr Ibn al-Aasî was already a Moslem when he went to join the Prophet. He had become a convert at the court of an-Najashi, the king of Abyssinia. With him came Othman Ibn Talha and Khalid Ibn al-Walid. They arrived at Medina in the month of Safar (A. H. 8). Some say that he did not leave Abyssinia till he became a believer in Islamism and that his conversion was brought about in the following manner: An-Najashi said to him: 'Tell me, Amr! how it happens that you take no corn about the affairs of your cousin (Muhammad). By Allah! he is really God's apostle.' Amr replied: 'Are you sure of that?' An-Najashi answered: 'Yes, by Allah! so follow my counsel.' On this, Amr left him with the intention of going to join the Prophet. He was then sent off to Syria by the Prophet with an armed troop, for the purpose of calling his father's maternal uncles to the Moslem faith, and he arrived with three hundred men at as-Salasil, which is a watering-place in the territory of the Judham tribe, in the country possessed by the Kodâa. That was the reason why this expedition was called the Inroad of Zat as-Salasil. Being afraid that his troop was too small, he wrote to the Prophet for assistance and received from him a reinforcement of two hundred horsemen, part of them emigrants from Mekka, the rest natives of Medina, and all of them belonging to noble families. Amongst them were Abû Bakr and Omar. The command of this detachment was given by the Prophet to Abû Obaida Ibn al-Jarrâh. When they came up, Amr Ibn al-Aasî said: 'I am your chief and you are only my auxiliaries.' To this, Abû Obaida replied: 'By no means! you are the chief of those whom you have with you, but I shall be the chief of those who are with me.' As Amr rejected this proposal, Abû Obaida said: The apostle of God made me this recommendation: When you reach Amr, give, both of you, examples of obedience and let there be no dissentions between you; so, if you re-

vol. iv.
“fuse to obey me, I must obey you.” Amr replied: I refuse to obey you.—Abū Obaida.

“on hearing this, saluted him and stood behind him at the public prayer, with all the troops, the number of which amounted to five hundred men.” — Amr Ibn al-Aāṣi was appointed by the Prophet to the government of Omān and held that place till the latter’s death. In the twelfth year of the Hijra, Abū Bakr sent him to Syria with Yazīd Ibn Abi Sofyān the Omaiyide, Abū Obaida and Shurabbill Ibn Hasana. Khalīd Ibn al-Walid then came from Irak and joined them. The first conquest effected by them in Syria was that of Bosra, which they took by capitulation. Omar Ibn al-Khattāb, who succeeded to the Khalifate on the death of Abū Bakr, gave the command of the troops to Abū Obaida, and by this chief was effected the conquest of Syria. He gave also to Yazīd Ibn Abi Sofyān the government of Palestine (Filistīn), a province of which the capital was ar-Ramla. When Abū Obaida died, Moād Ibn Jabal succeeded in the command, and, on Moād’s death, Yazīd Ibn Abi Sofyān took his place. Yazīd died also and was succeeded by his brother Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyān, and Omar sent to the latter a diploma investing him with the authority which had been exercised by Yazīd. All these governors died in the eighteenth year of the Hijra; being carried off by the plague which then raged at Aμawaḍs, a town of Syria, situated between Naplūs and ar-Ramla. Some say that Yazīd died at Damascus in the month of Zū ’l-Hijja, A. H. 19 (Nov.-Dec., 641), subsequently to the conquest of Cæsaria (Kaisariya). After the death of Yazīd, Omar gave to Amr Ibn al-Aāṣi the governments of Palestine and the Jordan (Urdunn); to Moawia he confided those of Damascus, Bsalbek and al-Balkā, and to Sa‘d Ibn Aāmir Ibn Hilibyem he gave the government of Emessa. After that, all the provinces of Syria were united under the command of Moawia, and Amr, having received from him a written order, set out for Egypt in the twentieth year of the Hijra (A. D. 641), took that country and governed it till the death of Omar. During four years, Othmān allowed him to retain that command and then replaced him by his own foster-brother, Abd Allah Ibn Sa‘d Ibn Abi Sarh al-Aāmīrī. Amr Ibn al-Aāṣi then retired to Palestine and made an occasional visit to Medina. When Othmān was murdered, he accepted an invitation from Moawia and, having gone to join him, he fought on his side at the battle of Siffin. It was there that he managed the arbitration which those who are conversant with this branch of science (history) are well acquainted with. When Moawia obtained the supreme authority, Amr asked from him the government of Egypt and addressed to him, one day, a request drawn up
in this form:

Moawia! I shall not sacrifice to you my religion (i. e. my happiness in the next life) unless I obtain from you (the good things of) this world; see therefore what you have to do! If you give me Egypt, consider yourself to have made an excellent bargain; for I am an old (experienced) man who can be hurtful (to his foes) and useful (to his friends) (75).

He then obtained from Moawia the government of Egypt and continued to hold it till he died, being at that time ninety years of age.— His death took place on the day of the breaking of the Fast (1st Shawal) A. H. 43 (6th Jan., 664). Other accounts indicate the years 42, 48 and 51 as the dates of that event, but the true one is what we have just given. He was interred at the foot of Mount Mokattam.— His son Abd Allah recited over him the funeral service and, on his return, presided (as governor) at the public prayer which is said on the festival of the fast-breaking. Moawia replaced this Abd Allah by his own brother, Othba Ibn Abi Sofyan. About a year afterwards, Othba died, and Moawia appointed Maslama Ibn Mukhallad to the vacant place.— Amr Ibn al-`Asi was one of the bravest horsemen among the Kuraishides and, in the time of paganism, he was one of their heroes. By his shrewdness in worldly matters and by the soundness of his judgment, he stood pre-eminent. When Omar wished to tell a man that he was a shallow fellow, he would say to him: "I declare that the same Being who created you created Amr!" meaning (God, who created things by) contraries. — Abu `I-Abbas al-Mubarrad (vol. III. p. 31) relates as follows, in his Kamil: "When Amr was on his death-bed, Ibn Abbás (vol. I. p. 89) went in to him and said: Abu Abd Allah! I heard you often say that you would like to meet with an intelligent man who was on the point of death, in order to ask him what were his feelings. Now, I address that question to you. Amr replied: I feel as if the sky was applied closely to the earth and that I was between the two, breathing as if through the eye of a needle. "After these words, he exclaimed: 'Almighty God! take away from me what you please!' His son having then come in to him, he addressed him thus: 'My son! 'take that chest!' The other replied: 'I have no need of it.'— 'Take it;' said Amr, 'it is full of money.'— 'I have no need of it;' said the son, 'I had rather it were filled with dung (76). After that, he (Amr) raised up his hands and said: 'Almighty God! you ordered and I disobeyed; you forbade and I transgressed; I am not innocent enough to deserve pardon neither am I so strong.
"that I can prevail (over your will)."

He then breathed his last (فَاصِ النَّاس). — The verb (فَاصِ النَّاس) means to die; a poet has said in employing the word (فَاصِ النَّاس): ‘They do not bury those among them who are dead.’

As for the Khārijja whose name occurs in the proverb, he was the son of Hudhāfa Ibn Ghānim Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Aūf Ibn Obaid Ibn Owaïj Ibn Adi Ibn Kaab, and was one of the Adi family, which is a branch of the Kuraish tribe. ‘He assisted at the conquest of Egypt and, having obtained a lot of ground at Old Cairo, he took up his residence there. — He commanded the fourth part of the auxiliary troops which Omar Ibn al-Khattāb sent to assist Amr Ibn al-Aāsi in conquering Egypt.

When Amr governed that country in the name of Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyān, Khārijja commanded the shurta (the police-cavalry) of Old Cairo. — He was assassinated in the fortieth year of the Hijra by a Khārijite who had mistaken him for Amr.” — So says Ibn Yūnis (vol. I. p. 93) in his history of Old Cairo, and the same statement is made in Ibn Abd al-Barr’s Istīlāb, where the genealogy is set out in the form in which it bears in our statement. The same author adds: “It was said that he alone counted for one thousand horsemen.” According to some persons versed in genealogy and history, Amr Ibn al-Aāsi wrote to Omar Ibn al-Khattāb for a reinforcement of three thousand horse, and Omar sent him (only three men) Khārijja Ibn Hudhāfa, az-Zubair Ibn al-Auwām (vol. II. p. 199) and al-Mīkdād Ibn al-Aswad (77), Khārijja was at the taking of Old Cairo, and it is said that he acted there as a kaddi when Amr Ibn al-Aāsi was governor; others state that he was the commander of Amr’s shurta. He continued to reside there till he was murdered by one of those Khārijites who had conspired to kill Ali Ibn Abi Tālib, Moawia Ibn Abi Sofyān and Amr Ibn al-Aāsi. Khārijja had been sent, that day, by Amr, to preside as his deputy, at the morning prayer. The assassin, being taken and brought before Amr Ibn al-Aāsi, said: “Who is this man before whom you have brought me?” They answered: “Amr Ibn al-Aāsi.” — “Who was it,” said he, “that I killed?” They replied: “Khārijja.” On hearing this, he said: “I meant Amr but God meant Khārijja.” Some say that the words were: “You meant Amr, etc.” and attribute them to Amr, but God knows best (78). The murderer belonged to the tribe of al-Anbar Ibn Amr Ibn Tamīm and bore the name of Dādawaiḥ or Zādāwāiḥ; according to others, he was only a mawla of that tribe. “It has been stated that Khārijja, he who was mistaken for Amr Ibn al-Aāsi and killed by the Khārijite in Old Cairo, was a
"member of the Sahm family, the same to which Amr belonged." — End of what
the author of the Istāb says on the subject. Another historian relates that
Amr Ibn al-Aāsī was obliged by a derangement in his stomach to remain at
home that night, and that Khârijâ was presiding (in his stead) at the evening prayer
when the Kharijite killed him. (They add that) Amr said afterwards: "My belly
never rendered me any service except on that night." — Such is the origin of
the proverb. An allusion to this event is made by Abû Muhammad Abd al-Majīd
Ibn Abdân al-Andalusi (79) in the elegy (kasīda) composed by him on the downfall
of the Aftasides who reigned at Badajoz and beginning thus:

Misfortune afflicts (us, first) by its aspect and then by the traces (which it leaves).

Here is the verse containing the allusion:

Since fortune accepted the life of Khârijâ for that of Amr, she might have obtained the lives
of as many as she wished in exchange for that of Ali.

It is a splendid kasīda and contains a great quantity of historical allusions. A
full commentary was composed on it by the eminent literary scholar Abû Marwân
Abd al-Malik Ibn Abd Allah Ibn Badrân al-Hadrami (a descendant from the Arabs of
Hadramaut and) a native of Silves (in Portugal, ash-Shibī') (80). We terminate
here our discourse on the proverb, but, as the verse requires to be explained, I shall
give here the commentary, in abridging it, for it is rather long. — Historians tell us
that Ali Ibn Abî Tâlib was proclaimed khalif the same day on which Othmân Ibn Affân was murdered. Then began the revolt of those people who fought
against him at the battle of the Camel. In our article on Yamût Ibn al-Muẓarra
(p. 392 of this vol.), we have spoken of that conflict in a continued narration and
noticed the main facts of it. After that was fought the battle of Siffin, when Moa-
wâî Ibn Abî Sofyân the Omaiyide and Amr Ibn al-Aâsî revolted against Ali Ibn
Abî Tâlib. (This khalif) marched from Irak to attack them and they advanced from
Syria to meet him. The encounter took place at Siffin, on the border of the Eu-
phrates and in the vicinity of ar-Rahaba. This famous battle was fought in the
thirty-seventh year of the Hijra (A. D. 657). The Syrians, being overpowered, re-
quested Ali to let matters be settled by arbitration; messengers went to and fro seve-
ral times, and Ali at length consented to the proposal. On this, a number of his
partisans abandoned him, saying: "You have submitted a question of religion to the judgment of men and not to that of God." They departed for an-Nahrawân, and Ali went there, fought with them and exterminated nearly all of them. This conflict is generally designated as the Battle of the Kharijites. — Things continued in a troubled state for some time and they (the surviving Kharijites) assembled and said: "Ali, Moawia and Amr Ibn al-Aâsi have ruined the cause of the nation; could we kill them, things would be all set to rights." Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Muljam al-Murâdi then offered to kill Ali. "How will you manage?" said they. He replied: "I shall take him unawares." Al-Hajjaj Ibn Abd Allah as-Sarîmi, surnamed al-Burak (the slaggard), offered to kill Moawia, and another individual, called Dâdawâli, or Zâlâwâli, the same of whom we have made mention in speaking of Khârîja Ibn Hudhâfa, declared that he would slay Amr. It was agreed upon that these murders should be accomplished on the same day. Ibn Muljam went to Kûfa where Ali was and, having purchased a sword for one thousand dirhems (82), he steeped it in poison till it could absorb no more. When Ali went to say the morning prayer, Ibn Muljam rushed out from a place of concealment and wounded him on the head, exclaiming: "It is for God to judge, not for you!" Some say that he struck him whilst celebrating the prayer. This happened on Friday morning, the 17th of Ramadân, A. H. 40 (24th Jan. 661), but other dates have been given. — Al-Burak as-Sarîmi went to Damascus, where Moawia was, attacked him whilst he was in prayer and wounded him in the sitting-part. Some say the nerve of generation was cut through, so that he was never afterwards capable of begetting children. — Of Amr we have spoken in our account of Khârîja. — There is a abridged explanation of the proverb and the verse; God know best!

(1) This genealogy is evidently an impudent forgery.
(2) See Mr Caussin de Perceval’s Essai sur l’histoire des Arabes, tome II, pp. 497 et suiv.
(3) See Essai, etc., t. II, pp. 499, 599.
(4) In Johannsen’s Historia Yemeni will be found some account of al-Moizz, Sâlîh ad-Din’s nephew.
(5) Our author says that this word should be pronounced duadd, but he is mistaken.
(6) Zinki was murdered whilst besieging a Musulm chief who was holding out in Kalât Jaabar. The title of martyr (shahid) was given to him by persons who wished to gain the favour of his son Nûr ad-Din.
(8) This is the work of which the text, with a Latin translation, was published at Leyden, in 1733 by Albert Schultens. Further on, Ibn Khallikân gives numerous extracts from it.

(9) This work is not noticed by Haiji Khâliîa. From its title, Majem as-Safer, which means Dictionary of the journey, we may suppose that it contained an account, arranged in alphabetical order, of the learned and eminent men whom the author met with in his travels and of the information which he received from them.

(10) This was the name of a large belvedere or pavilion which was erected on a hill, in the neighbourhood of the mosque of Tûbîn, by al-Malik as-Sâlih, the son of al-Malik al-Káníh, between the years 640 and 647 of the Hijra (A.D. 1242-1249). Al-Mârikî gives an historical account of this edifice in his Khitat; see the Bulak edition, vol. II, p. 133.

(11) According to the author of the Marasid al-Itîlidî, there was a castle in the neighbourhood of Tripoli which bore the name of al-Munaidhara; that is, the little watch-tower. This castle, situated on one of the tops of mount Lebanon, gives its name to a tract of country, 30 miles S. of Tripoli.

(12) Ibn Khallikân (vol. II, p. 535) places Ibn Békîkîn's death in Zâ 'l-Kâda, a month sooner than the date given by Ibn Shaddâd.

(13) These extracts from Bahâ ad-Dîn's work do not always agree with the text given in the printed edition; they are often fuller.

(14) I read mulldqâha.

(15) This passage has been already inserted in the Life of Shârâr (vol. I, p. 609). The expression ala yed Khâddim Khâss (خصاص), rendered here by a servant attached to the private service, is translated differently and perhaps, less exactly, in the first volume. A. Scultens renders it by per eunuchum, which is certainly a mistake.

(16) Apparently, the arrestation of Shârâr.

(17) There is no difference between the accounts unless it be that, according to the latter, the two parties met by accident.

(18) This is also extracted from the work of Bahâ ad-Dîn.

(19) For the explanation of this proverbial expression, see towards the end of the present article. Abû ʿl-Fadâ gives it in his Anwa, under the year 40 of the Hijra, and so does Ibn Badrân, in his commentary on the kasîda of Ibn Abîl, page 167 of professor Dozy's edition.

(20) This appears to be one of the sayings attributed to Muhammad.


(22) A well known proverb of which the origin is thus related: an Arab caught a gazelle but had no instrument to kill it. The animal, in struggling to escape, pawed up the sand and laid bare a knife which had been concealed there.

(23) The passage which here follows is evidently out of its place; and, as some of the manuscripts do not give it, we may consider it as an addition made by Ibn Khallikân on the margin of his copy, without his indicating where it was to be inserted.

(24) Literally: and two goats did not fight for it with their horns.

(25) Al-Mâhî, the first Fatimide sovereign, was placed on the throne A. H., 297.

(26) The Fatimides reigned two hundred and seventy years; they possessed Egypt during two hundred and five years.

(27) In the second volume, page 331, is a note on the sort of handwriting called manâkhîb. To the observations contained in it, the following remarks may be subjoined. The neskî handwritings got into use
before the middle of the first century of the hijra. It was nothing else than the stiff and clumsy kufic, reduced to a running hand. It spread throughout all Muslim countries, and has continued unchanged till this day in Mauritanian. In the East, a slight alteration was made in this character by Ibn al-Bawwab, and from it is derived that naskhi which prevails there and which was most probably what was called the mansub character. The mansub is therefore a simple modification of the old naskhi, and by no means, as had been supposed, the naskhi itself; it is the oriental hand, as the old naskhi is the occidental.

(38) Literally: may the morning-rains water it!

(39) Lit: a residence.

(40) For the history of these ancient Yemenite princes, Mr Causein de Perceval's Essays may be consulted.

(41) The word rendered here by hood is ridd, which word designates a curtain, a sheet or any large piece of stuff serving to cover the body. The lidthin is a veil covering the lower part of the face.

(42) For the reason of Modar's being denominated the owner of the red tent (hamra), see Mr Causein de Perceval's Essays, tome I, page 189.

(43) Literally: O thou who renderest wild an eye which was tame by long weeping.

(44) In English, this idea might be expressed by the words: She is as dear to me as the pupil of my eye; but Arabian lovers preserved their mistresses in their eyes or in their hearts.

(45) Al-Malik as-Sallih was only eleven years of age on the death of his father Nur ad-Din. The emirs of the deceased sultan, thinking that the young prince would be safer at Aleppo than at Damascus, sent him off to the former city under the protection and guidance of Kumushikin, emir of Mosul. It was the latter who arrested Ibn ad-Daya at Aleppo, which city was then torn by factions. Part of the population was Shnite and devoted to the Fatimides; the rest professed the orthodox faith. Shams ad-Din Ibn ad-Daya, one of Nur ad-Din's principal emirs, had obtained from him the government of Aleppo but was obliged to keep within the citadel, as another emir, Badr ad-Din, commanded in the city. Abû 'l-Fadl Ibn al-Khashshab was addi of the place and, according to Ibn al-Athir, he was also chief of the militia (addith) and of the Shnite party. All these emirs were jealous one of the other; each of them endeavoured to become sole master at Aleppo and obtain the guardianship of the young prince, so as to govern under his name. One plotted against the other's life and every sort of treachery was practised by them against their rivals, till Kumushikin arrived in Aleppo and imprisoned them all. — (Raml ad-Din's Zubda tal-Halab.)

(46 bis) Shams ad-Din Ibn al-Mukaddam had been named guardian of the young prince, Al-Malik as-Sallih. Alarmed by the conduct of Saad ad-Din Kumushikin (Gumushikin i.e. silver warrior), he sided with Salâh ad-Din and put that prince in possession of Damascus.

(46) Kur'dn Hamât (the peaks of Hamath) is the name of a hill situated at about ten miles from that city, in a north-western direction.

(47) The defeat of the Moslems at Ramla resulted from a false manœuvre on the field of battle. Their commander ordered the troops of the left wing and those of the right to change places when the action had already commenced. The operation failed and brought on the defeat of the army.

(48) Moslem historians designate the sovereigns of lesser Armenia by the title of Ibn Ldîn (the son of Leon).

(49) Karayelî, a Turkish word signifying subject to sirocco, (literally, to the black wind), designates a mountain-pass in the province of Kerkôr, on the eastern bank of the Tigris. A road leading from Mosul to Baghdad passed through it. The true orthography of the name is given in Abû l-Fedâ'î's own copy of his Annals.

(50) The text has بنت هذا (the daughter of his brother); but marriage between uncle and niece is forbidden by the Moslem law. Besides, al-Addîl, the lady's father, was az-Zahir's uncle, not his brother.
(41) The author should have said: the king and his brother Jofri (Geoffroi de Lusignan). Further on, he falls into the same mistake.

(42) Literally: how their teeth were set on edge.

(43) Some manuscripts read: thirty thousand.

(44) Our author inserts the whole letter and then states his reasons for doing so. The document itself is written in a most pretentious and affected style, full of enigmatical expressions, verbal quibbles and obscure allusions. Some of the passages are so turned that they seem to express the very contrary of the writer's meaning. This extravagant style was highly fashionable at that period. The text of this epistle being very difficult to understand, has varied greatly under the hands of the copyists. Some passages of it are here rendered by conjecture.

(45) The August Dhoon (ad-Diwan al-Aziz) was the title by which the khalif himself was then designated and which was prescribed by the court etiquette of the time. Other examples of it occur in the works of contemporary historians.

(46) Here, the meaning of the original text is very doubtful.

(47) This appears to be a maxim of Muslim law. The writer cites it with reference to the violation of treaties by the Christians.

(48) The Sakhra is an enormous stone in the very center of the mosque of Omar, at Jerusalem. It is supposed to be the same upon which the Jews set up the tabernacle.

(49) This is another of the passages in which the meaning of the text is doubtful.

(50) Here again, the meaning of the text is very doubtful.

(51) The writer meant to say that God would always grant victory to the Muslims. The preposition and its complement are those which occur in the Muslim war-cry: Help from God and a speedy victory. Such grammatical allusions were greatly admired.

(52) The translator has here endeavoured to find a meaning for a passage the text of which is evidently corrupt. By the substitution of ینص attrs for ینص attrs a phrase is obtained which might be rendered thus: They would not patiently endure the servitude of the edge in order to avoid the enfrenchisement of the flat. That seems to mean: they would not submit to the edge of the sword and die in order to avoid being wantonly struck, when prisoners, with the flat side of it.

(53) Literally: reached the Simak; i.e. the star which we call Spica virginis.

(54) The text may also signify: of unveiling himself for war. In either case, its true meaning is difficult to be discovered.

(55) This is an allusion to the 92nd verse of the 19th surat of the Koran, which Sale renders thus: "They say: the Merciful hath begotten issue. Now you have uttered an impious thing; it wanteth little but on occasion thereof, the heavens be rent and the earth cleave in sunder."

(56) According to Muslim doctors, the shooting stars are fire-brands cast by the angels against the demons who go to listen at the gates of heaven.

(57) The khalif must have expected that this conquest would have brought him in money; Salāh ad-Dīn, being aware of that, gives him to understand that there was none for him.

(58) Most of the manuscripts omit this passage.

(59) Some manuscripts read Jandar.

(60) Some of the manuscripts have Tall al-īdāya.
In many of these extracts, and here particularly, Ibn Khallikân has abridged the narrative made by Ibn Shaddâd. — The note (61) has been suppressed.

Or: all the places of the Sâhil.

Our author read very inattentively the text of Bahâ ad-Dîn, who says that the sultan returned to the hills so that his men might send their beasts for forage.

Al-Birka (the pond) is probably the same which is situated at eleven miles north of Cairo and is usually called Birka al-Hajj (The pond of the pilgrims).

The Nasirian dirhems were probably inscribed with the names of al-Malik an-Nâsir Salâh ad-Dîn.

Jalâl ad-Dîn Khwârezm-Shâh had laid siege to Akhlat, in Armenia, which fortress was then governed by one of al-Malik al-Ashraf’s lieutenants.

Such appears to be the meaning of the Arabic words, which, if rendered literally, signify: and the head of the two sleeves with black.


This note has been suppressed.

Sa’d as-Suwâda was one of the eunuchs (ustddîn) employed in the Kaâr, or palace, of the Fatimides at Cairo. He was enfranchised by the khâilf al-Mustanzir and put to death in the month of Shaâbân, 544 (A. D. 1149). — (Khitat, vol. II, p. 415.)

Here follows a verse which is given in two manuscripts, but the text of it is corrupt. The meaning of it seems to be that, to court a young girl (عبّود) when one’s hair has turned gray, is nothing more or less than an act of folly.

The young men of the tribe of Qura were noted as ardent, passionate and devoted lovers. See the commentary on Hariri’s Makamat, page 470 of de Sacy’s edition.

Literally: the fragments of its liver; a well known expression.

To be hurtful and useful was one of the talents which, according to the Arabs, were required from the character of a perfect man.

Abd Allah Ibn Amr was extremely pious and devout. Some of the Traditions handed down by him have been adopted as genuine by al-Bukhârî. For the date of his death see vol. II, p. 308.

Mikdâd Ibn Amr Ibn Thalâbî, a member of the tribe of Kinda and the adopted son of al-Aswad Ibn Abd Yagûth, was one of the earliest of Muhammad’s companions and assisted him in all his battles. At that of Badr he was the only musulman who fought on horseback and, for that reason, he obtained the title of Fâris al Islam (The cavalier of Islamism). He was present at the conquest of Egypt. His death occurred at al-Jurf, a place ten miles distant from Melûna, A. H. 33 (A. D. 653-4), being then aged nearly seventy years. He transcribed down a number of Traditions, some of which were accepted as authentic by al-Bukhârî. — (Tahâdîb; Nujâm; Tabakhât al-Fukhâd.)

The text merely says: God knows which of the two said so. The translator has rendered the phrase more intelligible by adding the words: Some say that the words were.

Abd Abûn, a native of Evora, in Spain, was highly distinguished as a poet and composed a celebrated elegy on the downfall of the Altside dynasty which reigned at Badajoz. He had been patronised by these princes, but afterwards, he entered into the service of the Almoravide chief who had overturned their throne.
AL-MUWAFFAK IBN AL-KHALLAL.

Abû 'l-Hajjâj Yûsuf, the son of Muhammad al-Khâlîl (the vinegar-maker), bore the title of al-Muwaffak (favoured by God). He was president of the Board of Correspondence, in Old Cairo, under the reign of al-Hâfiz Abû 'l-Ma'mûn Abd al-Majîd al-Obâdî (, the Fatimid khalîf) whose life we have already given (vol. II. p. 179), and of that prince’s successors, Imâd ad-Dîn al-Ispahâni (vol. III. p. 300) says of him, in the Khartûda: “He was the superintendent of Egypt and the pupil of its eye; combining (in himself) all the noble qualities of which that country can justly boast.

He was charged with the correspondence and had a great talent for inditing epistles, writing them in whatever (style) he pleased. He lived to an advanced age but, having lost his sight in the latter part of his life, he remained unemployed and never left his house till he exchanged it for a tomb. He died three or four years after the conquest of Egypt by al-Malik an-Nâsir (Salâh ad-Dîn).” This author then gives a number of pieces composed by him in verse, and some of these we shall reproduce farther on. Dîâ ad-Dîn Abû 'l-Fath Nasr Allah Ibn al-Athîr (vol. III. p. 541), surnamed al-Jazîri (the native of Je'zirat Ibn Omar), and afterwards al-Mausili (the native of Mosul), mentions him in the first chapter of the work entitled Al-Wâshi 'l-Mârkâm, and says: “In the year 588 (A. D. 1192), al-Kâdi 'l-Fâdîl Abd ar-Rahîm Ibn Ali al-Baisânî (vol. II. p. 114), being then at Damascus and employed as scribe in the service of Salâh ad-Dîn’s government, spoke to me in these
 IBN KHALLIKAN'S

"terms: 'The art of epistolary writing flourished and prospered under the dynasty
of the Alides [Fatimides], and the Board of Correspondence was never without a
chief holding the first rank, not only by his place but by his style, and maintai-
ning, with his pen, the authority of the sultan. It was then customary for the
directors of public offices, when any of their children grew up and had acquired
some knowledge of literature, to present them at the Board of Correspondence
in order that they might be instructed and exercised in epistolary writing, and
that they might see and hear (how things were done there). My father, who was
then kādi in the frontier town of Ascalon (1), sent me to Egypt, under the reign
of al-Hāfiz, one of their khalifs, and told me to go to the Board of Correspon-
dence. The person who was then at the head of that establishment was called
Ibn al-Khallāl. When I entered into his office, I stood respectfully before him
and told him who I was and what I came for. He received me in the most obli-
ging manner and said: 'What means have you procured for yourself in order
to acquire the art of epistolary writing?' I answered: 'None at all, unless it
be that I know by heart the noble Koran and the Hamāsa.' — 'That, said he,
will do.' He then told me to attend him regularly. After going often to see
him and exercising my talent in his presence, he bade me turn the verses of the
Hamāsa into prose. This I did, from the beginning to the end of the book.
'He then told me begin again and I obeyed.' End of Ibn al-Athīr's relation.
— After borrowing it from him and giving it under this form, I met a person who
had assiduously cultivated polite literature, and particularly that branch of it
(biography); no man was better acquainted than he with the particulars of al-
Kādi 'l-Fādil's life. From him I learned that the truth of Ibn al-Athīr's rela-
tion could not possibly be established and that he must have made some mistake in
it. Al-Kādi 'l-Fādil, said he, did not go to Egypt till az-Zāfīr, the son of al-Hāfiz,
was on the throne; he arrived there with his father for an affair which concerned
them personally. I then found in a note written by myself and taken from
some source which I cannot now discover, that al-Kādi 'l-Ashraf, the father of
al-Kādi 'l-Fādil, was a native of Ascalon and acted as deputy-kādi and superin-
tendant (ndzir) in the town of Baisān. He went to Egypt in the reign of az-Zāfīr,
the son of al-Hāfiz, in consequence of a discussion which he had with the governor
(wāli) of the place respecting a large and very valuable estate which they (his family)
held in their possession. The governor, through 'complaisance, allowed him to
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

retire without arresting him, and, for that reason, was called up to Old Cairo and ordered to justify himself. A fine to a considerable amount was then required of him, but he obtained protection from one of the grandees of the empire. This gave rise to much talk respecting the kaddi's conduct; he was ordered up (to the capital) and forced to pay so much money that nothing was left to him. None of his sons were with him except al-Kadi 'l- Fadil. The treatment he underwent weighed so greatly upon his mind that he died at Old Cairo on the eve of Sunday, the 11th of the first Rabī, 546 (28th June, A. D. 1151). He was interred at the foot of Mount Mokattam. Al-Kadi 'l- Fadil then went to the frontier city of Alexandria and presented himself to Ibn Hadid, the kaddi and superintendant (nadzir) of the place. That functionary, having known him by reputation and been acquainted with his father, took him for secretary. When the Franks got possession of Ascalon (A. H. 548), his brothers came to him for refuge. The dispatches which Ibn Hadid sent to Old Cairo were drawn up with such extreme elegance that the clerks in the correspondence office were filled with jealousy and, as they feared that the writer might be placed over them, they intrigued against him and gave az- Zafir to understand that the secretary in Alexandria was inadequate to the task of writing official communications. It is related that the kaddi al- Athir Ibn Bayân, who was then director of that board, having gone to see az- Zafir, that sovereign said to him: "Write to Ibn Hadid and order him to cut off the hand of his secretary." On hearing these words, he took the secretary's defense and said: "My lord! that man is by no means incompetent, but the clerks, being jealous of his talent, have calumniated him in order that he may be ill-treated by your Majesty." Az-Zafir replied: "Write to Ibn Hadid and tell him to send us the man; he shall be our secretary." Ibn Bayân related as follows: "Some time after, I was at- Zafir's levee and saw there al- Kadi 'l- Fadil, who had just arrived and was standing before the sovereign, having been taken into his service." — The kādib Imād ad-Dīn says, in his Khartda: "The following verses were recited to me by Murhaf Ibn Osāma (vol. I. p. 146), who stated that they were communicated to him orally by al- Muwaffak Ibn al- Khallāl, who gave them as a part of a kastda composed by himself:

Delightful were the nights (which I) passed at al- Ozaib, and sweet the meetings which were embellished by the meeting (with my beloved). But passed (are) those nights and lost the remembrance (of those delights), which would have captivated the man whose heart was till then free (from love), and deprived of reason him who (after suffering from unrequited love,) had
been consoled. Bright are those rosy cheeks which, by means of their beauty-spot, enchain even the indifferent in the bonds of love. They tell me that she is descended from chieftains of the tribe of Hilāl; that must be true, for the full-moon also (that emblem of perfect beauty,) proceeds from a crescent (hilāl).

Imād ad-Dīn says also in the Khartīa: "From the work entitled Jindān al-Janān "wa Rīd al-Adhān (gardens for the heart and meadows for the mind)," — this work was composed by ar-Rashīd Ibn az-Zubair (vol. I. p. 143), — "I extracted "the following verses of which Ibn al-Khallāl was the author:

"(I think) of that gazelle (maiden) the sword of whose glances could cut through sabres "with its edge. By her slenderness and her sharpness she put to shame lances and scimitars.
"People wonder how I can still be alive after having been afflicted by her disdain; but my "body, though emaciated and exposed to the fire of her aversion, still resists, like the amber "of her beauty-spot which is placed on the furnace of her cheek.

"Here is another piece of his:

The tongue sometimes manifests and sometimes conceals (our thoughts); O that our eyelids could hold in their flowing tears! By the arrow of your glances you have struck him (your "lover) to the heart; why then should he be blamed for shedding tears of blood? The sickness caused by the torture you inflicted has made him (as thin as) a signal-post (alem), yet he never revealed what he knew (alem) of your cruelty. Why should the silent (lover) be blamed when his sickness creates in each member of his body a mouth (to utter his complaints).

Imād ad-Dīn gives the following (enigma) composed by the same author on a candle:

Sound (in constitution) and white, it causes light to shine through darkness and (whilst consuming) by its malady, it heals the eyes (which were unable to see). In the time of its youth, its crest is grey, but, as it wears away, its top is black. Like the eye, it has its covering (the lantern), and its tears (drops), and its blackness, and its whiteness and its brightness.

The same author devotes an article of the Khartīa to the kādi Abū 'l-Ma'āli Abū al-Azīz Ibn al-Husain Ibn al-Hubāb, and, in it, he gives some verses which that person addressed to ar-Rashīd Ibn az-Zubair relatively to a misfortune which had be-fallen al-Muwaṭṭak Ibn al-Khallāl. Here are his words: "He was his maternal "uncle," — without indicating which of them was uncle to the other, — "and a
"misfortune which happened to Ibn al-Khallâl gave him a headache."—The verses which he speaks of are these:

Hearken to my words, Ibn az-Zubair! for you are worthy of hearing them. We are afflicted with a kinsman, a doubtful one, who is of little use to us even when he enjoys an easy life. If anything good happens to him, we never hope (to partake of) it; but, if he receives a box on the ear, we also are sure to receive one.

This idea is borrowed from the following verse in which the Kharîjîte, Iûsain Ibn Hâsâ as-Saâdi, addressed Katari Ibn al-Fujâa (vol II. p. 522), the chief of that party:

Thou art he from we cannot separate; your life brings us no advantage, but your death would be our ruin.

I then endeavoured to clear up what Imâd ad-Din meant by the words: he was his maternal uncle, without indicating which of them, and I discovered that Ibn al-Khallâl was uncle by the mother's side to Ibn al-Hubâb. — *The Sâ'il wa az-Zâ'il*, a work composed by Imâd ad-Din as a supplement to the *Kharîda*, contains an article on Ibn al-Khallâl in which are given as his the following verses:

(I am thinking) of a gazelle (a maiden) the fire of whose cheek has lighted up a flame in my bosom. She possesses eyes of which the glances assist my passion against my patience. I shot glances at her cheeks and she hid them under the protection of the coat of mail (the gauze veil?)

This last verse is borrowed from a famous poet of Baghdad called Abû Muhammad al-Hasan Ibn Muhammad Ibn Jakima (2), but some say that it was taken from another author. I have since discovered the following piece in Imâd ad-Din's *Kharîda tal-Kasr* where it is attributed to Abd as-Salam Ibn al-Hakam as-Sauwâf, who was a native of Wâsit:

Had it depended upon me, I should have made for my use a provision before your departure. Your eyes shoot their arrows at my heart; why then has your cheek put on its coat of mail? Your lips are a honey-comb, and the proof of it is that we see an ant (the beauty-spot) creeping up your cheek.

Abû 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn Zâfir al-Azdi al-Masri (of the tribe of Azd and of the city of Cairo) (3) relates, in his work entitled *Badât al-Badâya*, that Abû 'l-Kâsim Ibn Hâni, a poet of later times, composed a satire on Ibn al-Khallâl, who,
having heard the piece, conceived for the author a deep hatred which he carefully concealed. It happened that, during one of the festivals at which it was customary for the sovereigns of Egypt to be present in order to hear the (poetical) elogiums composed in their honour, (the Fatimite khalif) al-Hāfiz Abū ʾl-Maimūn Abd al-Majīd, who was then reigning, took his seat and listened to the poems which were recited. When Ibn Ḥāniʾ’s turn came, he read a piece in which he displayed great talent. Muwaffak (Ibn al-Khallāl), being then asked by al-Hāfiz what he thought of it, praised the poem highly and expatiated on its beauties; after which, he said: "Did the author claim for himself no other merit than his descent from Abū ʾl-Kāsim Ibn Ḥāni (vol. III. p. 123), the poet of your majesty’s family, the extoller of its glory and the versifier of its noble deeds, (that would have been quite sufficient for his reputation); but there is a verse of his which the ill-humour felt by him on entering into this country induced him to compose.” Al-Hāfiz asked to hear it; Ibn al-Khallāl made difficulties about repeating it and, whilst the prince was insisting on hearing it, he composed and recited the following verse:

Curse upon Egypt! Its khalifate is now become a bone which passes from one dog to another.

Al-Hāfiz was greatly incensed on hearing it and deprived the author of the customary gift; he even had thoughts of punishing him more severely. God knows best! — Ibn al-Khallāl continued to direct the Board of Correspondence till he was far advanced in age and hardly able to move about. He therefore retired to his house and never left it. It is stated that al-Kādiʾ ʾl-Fādil was not unmindful of his obligations towards Ibn al-Khallāl, with whom he had resided and under whom he had studied, and that, during the remainder of his former master's life, he furnished him with every thing that he might require. Ibn al-Khallāl died on the 23rd of the latter Jumāda, 566 (2nd March, A. D. 1171).

(1) Ascalon belonged, at that time, to the Fatimides of Egypt. The Crusaders took it from az-Zāfīr, the son of al-Hāfiz, A. H. 548 (A. D. 1153-4).

(2) See vol. I, p. 171 and vol. II, p. 492. In some of the manuscripts this name is written with an H instead of a J. Its true pronunciation is not yet determined.

(3) According to Hajji Khallāf, this Ibn Zāfīr, who must not be confounded with the author of the Sālūdāt al-Mutda, died A. H. 623 (A. D. 1226).
YUSUF IBN HARUN AR-RAMADI.

Abû Omar Yûsuf Ibn Harûn al-Kindî (a member of the tribe of Kinda), surnamed ar-Ramâdi (1) was a poet of great celebrity. Abû Abd Allah al-Humaidi (vol. III. p. 4) says of him, in the Judwa: "I believe that one of his ancestors was a native of ar-Ramâda, a place situated in Maghrib. He was a poet of Cordova, remarkable for the quantity of his productions and for the promptitude with which he enounced his ideas, noted in that place, by people high and low, for following those paths in the various sorts of poetry which lead to general approbation (2)."

(So great was his talent) that the most eminent teachers of the belles lettres at that time used to say: 'The art of poetry began in (the tribe of) Kinda and has been perfected in (the tribe of) Kinda;" indicating by these words Amr 'I-Kais and al-Mutanabbi (vol. I. p. 102), and then his own contemporary Yûsuf Ibn Harûn ar-Ramâdi. I might adduce to confirm that opinion the eulogium addressed by the latter, in the form of a kastâda, to Abû Ali Ismail Ibn al-Kâsim al-Kâli (vol. I. p. 210), who had just arrived in Spain. The piece to which we allude begins thus:

"Who is to be the judge between me and my censurers? My pains are really pains; my complaints are really complaints."

Abû Ali 'I-Kâli's arrival in Spain took place in the year 330 (A. D. 942), as we have already stated in his life. Al-Humaidi then relates some of the poet's adventures and cites a quantity of verses composed by him. He adds that he drew up a treatise on falconry and had been imprisoned for some time. Abû Mansûr at-Thâlibi (vol. II. p. 129) has inserted in his Fattma tad-Dahr the piece in which Yûsuf Ibn Hârûn extolled the merits of Abû Ali 'I-Kâli and, after the verse which we have just mentioned, he introduces those which follow here:

To preserve my tormentor (I should enclose her within my body); but is there a single member of it unscathed by the torture and sufferings (which she inflicted)? If I say: "(I shall treasure her) in my eye," there my tears have their source; and if I say: "In my heart," there is the thirst which consumes me. Three dishonours have settled on my vol. IV.
head (3), and their settling there is a sign of my (approaching) departure. For three misfortunes which came down upon me, three others have arisen against me: a delator, the face of a spy and that of an importunate (adviser). Thou hast dismissed me from (the field of) love; judge of my humiliation by that which a man feels who is dismissed from office.

The poet then passes to the eulogy, after giving a description of the chase and of meadows, and says:

A meadow often visited by the rain-cloud and (so verdant) that one would think it had received the visit of Ismāʾīl’s (al-Kāli’s) presence. Compare with him (those elegant speakers), the Arabs of the desert, and you will acknowledge that he deserves the preference. Each of their tribes has its distinct dialect, but he possesses the dialects of them all. The East seems empty after his departure from it, and appears as if ruin had settled in its abodes once so populous. He has appeared like a sun in our (country, the) West, after disappearing, by his setting, from the countries of the East. Here, sir! is my encomium on you; it is not feigned neither is it offered in exchange for a gift. If it expected a gift, know that I am a man who expects no other gift than your friendship.

The following verses were taken from a piece composed by him on a girl who lisped in pronouncing the letter r:

The letter r cannot hope for thy favour neither can I; your repulsion includes us both and renders us equal (in misfortune). When I was alone, I inscribed that letter on the palm of my hand and I then lamented and wept, I and the r (4).

He said also of the same person:

Repeat again the lisping of the r; had Wāsīl heard you, he would have abstained from suppressing the r.

The Wāsīl here mentioned is the Wāsīl Ibn Aṭa of whom we have spoken (vol. III. p. 642). In our article on him we made mention of the poet (ar-Ramāḍī) and inserted some of his verses. Ibn Bashkuwāl (vol. I. p. 491) speaks of him in the Silat and says: “Yūsuf Ibn Harūn ar-Ramāḍī, a native of Cordova, bore the surname of “Abū Amr and was one of the most celebrated poets whom the people of Andalus (Moslim Spain) ever possessed; holding (as he did,) a place far above the others. “He taught orally the contents of the Kitāb an-Nawādir (5) which he had learned “from the lips of the author, Abū Ali ‘l-Baghdādi,” — the historian means al-Kāli. — “Abū Omar Ibn Abd al-Barr (p. 398 of this vol.) learned from him some pieces
"of his poetry and inserted them, under the name of their author, in one of his works." — Ibn Haiyân (vol. I. p. 479) says: "He died, poor and destitute, on Whitsunday, [al-Ansara] A. H. 403 (24th June, A. D. 1013), and was buried in the Kalâ cemetery." The day of al-Ansara is well known in Spain; it is a festival for the Christians, like the Nativity (al-Mîldd), and falls on the 24th of Hazîrân (June). It is the anniversary of Yahya Ibn Zakariya's (John the Baptist, the son of Zacharias) birth. It was on a Whitsunday that God stopped the sun for Joshua (Yûshâ), the son of Nûn, who had been sent to Jericho (Arîtha) by Moses, his maternal uncle, for the purpose of fighting against the mighty ones. He slew part of them and, fearing that the night might intervene and hinder him from exterminating the rest, he prayed Almighty God to stay the sun over him, till he had dispatched the whole. God stopped the sun at his prayer. Poets have often alluded to that event in their verses; Abû Tammâm al-Ta'i (vol. I. p. 348), for instance, who says, in one of his longer kâstdas:

The sun has been restored to us, against the will of the night, by the presence of one of their suns (beauties) which appeared from behind the curtain (of the palanquin). Its light effaced the dark tint of the night, and its brightness caused the sable raiment of the sky to be folded up. By Allah! I knew not whether it was a vision, appearing in a dream, which approached me, or if Joshua was in the caravan.

Abû 'l-Alâ al-Maarî (vol. I. p. 94) says also, in one of his longer kâstdas:

Joshua brought back Bûh for a part of a day, and you, when you unveil yourself, bring us back Bûh.

Bûh is one of the names given to the sun; Yâh is also a name of the sun. — Ariha is a town of Syria, situated between al-Cods (Jerusalem) and as-Sharîâ (the Jordan.) It was one of Lot's cities. — Ramâdân means belonging to ar-Ramâda. — Yakût al-Hamawi (p. 9 of this vol.) says, in his dictionary of geographical synonyms, the Mushtorik, under the word ar-Ramâda, that there are ten places which bear this name; he then begins to enumerate them and says: The third is the Ramâda of Maghrib, and from it Yusûf Ibn Hârûn derived his surname. — Kâld (كلد) is the name of the cemetery at Cordova; but God knows best! Ibn Salîd (6) says, in his Kitâb al-Maghrib fi Akhâbâr Ahl il-Maghrib, that ar-Ramâdî acquired his philosophical knowledge from the professor Abû Bakr Yahya Ibn Hudail al-Kaffî (the blind),
IBN KHALLIKAN'S

who was the ablest literary scholar of Spain and the author of these verses:

Blame me not for stopping near the dwelling (of my beloved), the inhabitant of which gave
me sickness for a bed-fellow. They opened to me the way which led me to love them, and
when I entered, they closed that door and hindered my retreat.

The same author says: "Yahya Ibn Hudail died A. H. 386 (A. D. 996-7), or
385, at the age of eighty-six years."

(1) Er-Remmâda, with a double m, is the name of a town situated on the border of the sea and traversed
by the road which leads from Alexandria to Barka, in Cyrenaica. Its name is still borne by the gulf sit-
tuated immediately to the east of the Akaba tas-Sullam (the dejectity of the ladder), called also the greater
Akaba, anciently Calabothmus Magnus.

(2) Literally: for which there was a good market; an expression in general use.

(3) It may be supposed that the poet meant grey hair, loss of teeth and weakness of sight.

(4) What the poet meant by this verse, the translator is unable to indicate.

(5) Nawadir signifies anecdotes, literary curiosities, indications little known.

(6) Abû 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn Mûsa, surnamed Ibn Sald, a member of an illustrious Spanish family, the Beni
Sald, was born at Granada in the month of Shawwâl, 610 (Feb.-March, A. D. 1214). After making his pre-
liminary studies in Cordova, he went to the Levant, visited the principal cities in that country and then re-
turned to Spain. He died at Tunis in the year 678 of the Hijra, according to Hâjji Khalîfa, in his bibliogra-
phical dictionary, but an author who must have been much better informed, the celebrated vizir of Granada,
Lisân ad-Din, places his death in the year 685 (A. D. 1286-7). Ibn Sald composed some works, one of
which is a compendium of geography (see the supplement arabe of the Bibliothèque impériale, no 1905).
Another and much more important work of his was that of which Ibn Khallikân has here given the title and
which formed fifteen volumes. This interesting compilation is known to us only by extracts given by other

---

IBN AD-DARRA.

Yûsuf Ibn Durra, a poet of great reputation and generally known by the surname
of Ibn ad-Darrâ, belonged to a family of Mosul. From his youth he displayed great
intelligence. Abû Shujâa Muhammad Ibn Ali Ibn ad-Dahhân (vol. III. p. 175)
says of him in his History (1): "He died in accompanying the pilgrim-caravan, A. H. 545 (A. D. 1150-1), when it was captured by the Ziêb." Imâd ad-Dîn al-Ispahâni (vol. III. p. 300) mentions him in the Kharida tal-Kasr, and Abû'l Maâli Saad Ibn Ali al-Haziri (vol. I. p. 563) speaks of him in the Ztna tad-Dahr. The best known of his poetical productions is the following (epigram) on a man who had large feet; it is certainly well turned:

That man with the heel so (flat and) round, him you might employ to (tread over and) destroy a young plantation or to break down (thalli) a throne. If his eye glanced at the Pleiades, it would drive them out of Ursa Major's company (2).

He composed also other good things. Our professor, the kâfz Izz ad-Dîn Ibn al-Athîr al-Jazari (vol. II. p. 288), says, in the abridgment which he made of Abû Saad Ibn as-Samâni's (vol. II. p. 156) work on patronymics: "I say that this name should be written Ziêbi زبي; it means descended from Ziêb, who was the son of Malik Ibn Khufâf Ibn Amro'l-Kais Ibn Buhtha Ibn Sulaim (3). The Ziêb formed a notable branch of the Sulaim tribe. It was they who captured the pilgrim-caravan in the year 545; an immense number of the pilgrims were killed or died of hunger and thirst. From that time till now God has afflicted the Ziêb with a great diminution of their numbers and with degradation." — Durre is to be pronounced with an u after the D and a double r. — Darrd has an a after the D, a double r and a short a (4).

(1) In the article on Ibn ad-Dabhân no mention is made of this work.

(2) What the wit of this may be, the translator is unable to discover.

(3) Ibn al-Athîr must have probably read in as-Samâni's work that the name of this tribe was Zoghba زغبة, and this he considered to be a mistake. But the mistake is his: Ibn Khaldûn, in his Histoire des Berbers, tome I, pages 135, 136, says that the name is Zoghba. He must have known it well, because he lived among them for some time. The greater part of this tribe had been sent into North Africa, A. H. 443 (A. D. 1051-2).

(4) So say all our manuscripts, but etymology would require a long d.
AS-SHIHAB ASH-SHAUWA.

Abū 'l-Mahāsin Yūsuf Ibn Isma'il Ibn Ali Ibn Ahmad Ibn al-Husain Ibn Ibrahim, surnamed ash-Shauwā (the roaster) (?), and entitled Shihāb ad-Dīn (the flambeau of religion), belonged to a family of Kūfa, but was born and bred in Aleppo, where also he died. — As a literary scholar he displayed great abilities; in prosody and versification he was well skilled, and in poetry he composed pieces of two or three lines, containing singulary original ideas. The diwan (or collection) of his poems fills four volumes. He wore the dress of the old-fashioned people in Aleppo, with a two-peaked turban (1). He was a constant attendant at the lessons (lit. the circle) of the shaikh Tāj ad-Dīn Abū 'l-Kasim Ahmad Ibn Hibat Allah Ibn Saad Ibn Saad Ibn Mukallad, generally known by the surname of Ibn al-Jibrānī, who was an eminent grammarian and philologer, and a native of Aleppo. Under this master he studied principally philology and profited greatly by his tuition. Another teacher whose lessons he attended for some time wasat-Tāj (Tāj ad-Dīn) Maṣūd Ibn Abi 'l-Fadl an-Nakāš, who was also a native of Aleppo and a poet of some reputation. Under him he learned the art of poetical composition. A close intimacy and a sincere friendship were formed between me and ash-Shihāb ash-Shauwā; we frequently met at conferences where we discussed points of literature. He often recited to me verses of his own composing, and he was my inseparable companion from the latter part of the year 633 (A.D. 1236) till the time of his death. Before we became acquainted, I often saw him sitting on the sofa, beside Ibn al-Jibrānī, in that part of the mosque at Aleppo where the latter delivered his lectures. He used to walk about in the mosque, as was the custom of the people there and as we see them do in the mosque of Damascus; at that time we did not know each other. His conversation was agreeable, his delivery pleasing and his demeanour grave and modest. The first verses of his own composing which he recited to me were the following:

Behold, my friend! the hills of Lālā; I implore you in Allah's name to turn aside and follow me. Let us then dismount between the tents erected on the sands; for those vernal pasture-
grounds have again received their population. There we may pass the day in contemplating
the inhabitants or in expressing our tender feelings for that beloved spot.

Here is another of his pieces which he recited to me:

(I think) of that graceful youth on whose cheek time has been working till it clothed it with
a double raiment, one of night (dark hair) and one of day (a clear complexion). The charms
of his face would be an excuse for my admiring him, even did his flourishing izār (2) excite
my dislike.

One day, whilst we were conversing on literary subjects, he recited to me the fol-
lowing verses which Sharaf ad-Din Abū 'l-Mahāsin Muhammad, generally known by
the appellation of Ibn Onain (vol. III. p. 176), had composed upon a native of
Bokhara, or of Sarakhis, as some say, whose name was Sadr Jihān and who bore
the surname of Ibn Marā :

It would be easier for needy solicitors to strip the bark off the thorny acacia-tree (3) or to take
hold of the polar star, than to obtain any of Ibn Māra’s money. His constancy in hoarding
that money prevents it from passing into other hands and makes it resemble a singular
noun in the vocative case (4).

"That verse, said he, is not good." I asked him why, and he answered: "It is
not absolutely necessary that the singular noun, in the vocative case, should
receive the domma; if it be indefinite and have nothing to determine
it, there is no need of its taking the domma; ex. : Ya rajulân (5). But I am
composing things on the same subject."—Shortly afterwards, he met me in the
mosque and told me that he had accomplished the task. I asked to hear the verses,
and he recited to me these:

We have a friend whose qualities denote clearly the meanness of his origin. They are in
him (as invariable) as the word haitkā; were it not better that they should be like amsī (i. e.
past and gone).

On this, I said to him, that his piece also might incur objections. He asked me
of what kind and I replied: "The particle haitk admits of various forms: some of
the desert Arabs make it indeclinable with a final u, others, with a final a and
others with a final ā; besides which it can assume other forms (as kth, etc.). As
for amsī, some of the Arabs make it invariable with a final ā, whilst others say that
"it is declinable but does not take a particular inflexion for each case; an example of what I state is offered by this verse:

"I have seen a strange thing since yesterday evening (amsan, for amsan); five old women look like ogresses.

"Here aman (أمسن) is definite (marks a particular time), but when it is indefinite, it retains always one and the same inflexion (amsan)." My friend, on hearing this, did not utter another word. — He frequently introduced terms of Arabic grammar into his pieces, one of which I shall cite; I do not know if it was he who repeated it to me or not, for he communicated to me orally a great quantity of his own poetry and I neglected writing all of it down. This remark applies equally to the other pieces of his which I am about to give; and, as I am unable to say from whom I learned them, I insert them at a venture. — Here is the piece of which I am speaking:

We were fifteen years in accordance and, despite the envious, there was nothing to ruin it. I thus became a tanwin (6) and the beloved was always in the state of annexion (7).

He said also of a girl who let one of her ringlets hang down and kept the other tied up:

My assassin let one ringlet hang down and kept the other twisted up; giving thus a deal of pain to him who tried to describe her charms. That which was on her cheek I took for a serpent running about, and the other appeared to be a scorpion (8). One was (as strait) as (the letter) alif; but it was not the alif of union; the other was (ενώ) like the wāw (4), but it was not the wāw of conjunction.

The kātib Bahā ad-Din Zuhair Ibn Muhammad (vol. I. p. 542) recited to me a piece of the same cast, containing a verse which I give here:

O wāw of her cheek! perhaps (you will have) pity on me by effecting my union (with the beloved); for I know that the wāw is a connecter.

The following piece is by Abū 'l-Mahāsin ash-Shauwā:

I said to her who, in conspicuousness, was like the sun, whilst my body, in occultness, was
like a shadow: "O thou splendid one who art more definite (i.e. evident) than a pronoun! be kind to a feeble being who is the most indefinite (i.e. obscure) of beings."

He said of a person who could not keep a secret:

I had a friend who never came (to me) without repeating calumnies and scandals. No man resembled the echo more than he: if you say a word, he immediately repeats it.

By the same:

They told me that my beloved exhaled such fragrance as perfumed the country all around, and I replied, on observing a beauty-spot upon her cheek: "See you not that the fire (the red-ness of her cheek) is consuming ambergris?"

Our article on Yahya Ibn Nizár al-Manbeji (p. 134 of this vol.) contains some verses composed by Imâd ad-Din al-Muhalli and others, in which the thought comes near to what is expressed here. — The following piece is by Abû 'l-Mahâsin ash-Shauwâ:

O thon who art so full of pride! I have no wile by means of which I can gain thy love. During all my time thy verbs (i.e. acts) were divided into three which never varied. Your promising was always in the future, my endurance was in the preterite, and my passion for thee is always in the present.

By the same:

I should sacrifice my life for Râs-âtn, for those who dwell there and for the white (tâmpid) streamlets which circulate around its blue (dark) palm-trees (9). Whilst its flowing sources were charming my sight, the eyes of its maidens caused my blood to flow.

By the same:

If they conceal her from me through jealousy, I shall remain contented with her (simple) recollection. She is like musk; its odour we perceive though the place where it is escapes discovery; its emanations suffice to reveal its presence.

By the same:

With joy I congratulated my young friend on his circumcision, and I said, when he was overcome by apprehension: "To deliver you from pain a person has approached you whose
"tender solicitude is excited even when the zephyr obliges your body to bend before it. O
you who cause my uneasiness! how have you been able to support the pain with firmness? is
not the young gazelle the most timorous of beings? Were this purification not a rite al-
ready instituted by Abraham, I should have vigorously attacked the operator (10) when he
came forward with Moses (11) in his hand though you were Moses (to be wounded) (12)."

Most of his poetry is of the same cast, but the specimens here given may suffice.
He was one of those sectaries who held the most extravagant doctrines of the Shiite
sect (13). The greater part of the people, at Aleppo, knew him by the appellation
of Mahdsin ash-Shauwd, but his real names were what we have mentioned in this ar-
ticle, that is to say, Ydsuf, surnamed Abù 'l-Mahdsin. Since writing what pre-
cedes (14), I met with the Okud al-Jumán (strings of pearls), a work composed by
my friend al-Kamal (Kamâl ad-Din) Ibn ash-Shiâr al-Mausili (of Mosul), (see p. 436
of this vol.) and, in it I found the biographical notice of this poet ranged amongst
those of the persons who bore the name of Ydsuf and the surname of Abù 'l-Mahdsin.
Now, al-Kamal was a friend of his, had learned from him a quantity of his poems
and was better acquainted with his history than any other person. — The birth of
ash-Shauwð may be placed approximately in the year 562 (A. D. 1166-7), for the
date has not been well ascertained; he died at Aleppo on Friday, the 19th of Muhar-
ram, 635 (11th Sept. 1237), and was buried in the cemetery which lies to the west
of the city, outside the gate of Antioch. A circumstance happened which prevented
me from attending his funeral. May God have mercy on him, for he was an excel-
 lent friend! His professor, Ibn al-Jibrâni, belonged to the Buhur family, which is
a branch of the tribe of Ta'î. He came from a village situated in the government of
Azaz and called Jibrin Karestayâ (15) and, from it he drew his surname (al-Jibrâni).
This we give after his own declaration. He had an extensive acquaintance with gen-
eral literature and particularly with philology, which had been his predominant
study. He taught as a professor in the mosque of Aleppo and held his sittings in
the eastern maksûra (vol. I. p. 228), that which is raised above the floor of the mos-
que and lies opposite to the maksûra in which the kâdi of Aleppo says the prayer on
Fridays. — I was one day sitting in that pew, near the grating which faces the court
of the mosque, when I saw al-Jibrâni come in with a number of his pupils, and
amongst them Abù 'l-Mahâsin Ibn ash-Shauwâ. He took his seat in the small
mihrâb (vol. I. p. 37) which is in the other maksûra and in which he gave his
lessons as professor. I directed my attention to what he said, as I was then en-
gaged in literary studies, and I heard him treat of the rule which applies to such triliteral verbs as have a w for their first radical and an i after the second radical; for instance wajila. He observed that the aorist of such verbs had four forms, ex. yawjalu, yaijalu, yajalu and yijalu. The exceptions (, said he,) are eight in number: warima, waritha, varid, varida, wamika, wathika, wafika and walia which, in the aorist, take an i (after the second radical and change the first syllable). Having indicated this exactly, he observed that the exceptions were wasid, yasad, and yatid, yadad, each of which, in the aorist, takes an a after the second radical, through the influence of the guttural letter. — On this subject he made a long discourse which I was unable to commit to memory, the paragraph just given being all that I heard distinctly. He (al-Jibrānī) was born on Friday, the 22nd of Shawwal, 561 (21st August, A. D. 1166), and he died at Aleppo on Tuesday, the 7th of Rajab, 628 (11th May, A. D. 1231). He was buried at the foot of Mount Jaushen (16).

(1) Literally: with a split turban (maskīka); another reading is maskāfa (a roofted turban).
(3) The word kāth, here rendered by acacia tree, designates the treocanthes.
(4) The singular noun in the vocative receives for final vowel the u or domma, when the noun is definite. The noun is then said to be madum, which word signifies accompanied with a domma, and also held fast.
(5) The words, I say, man! may be rendered in Arabic by ya rajul, with the sign of the definite nominal, or ya rajulde, which is the sign of indefiniteness. See de Sacy's Grammaire Arabe, 2nd ed. t. ii. p. 89.
(6) The tawla is indicated by two vowel signs of the same kind; it is therefore a couple of signs, a pair. The poet meant that he and his mistress formed a pair. So, at least, appears to be his meaning.
(7) To explain the technical terms of Arabic grammar which follow would lead us too far.
(9) The second sawdikī appears to be a plural formed from asklo, which is also a plural. Plurals of plurals are frequent in Arabic. All the pieces inserted here are full of double meanings and verbal quibbles.
(10) The word musaiyin, here rendered by operator, signifies literally adorner, and is one of the terms employed to designate a barber. In Moslem countries, the barbers are also surgeons.
(11) Mūsə in Arabic, is the name of the prophet Moses and signifies also a clasped-knife or a razor.
(12) The word Kafūm, here rendered by Moses, has two significations, wounded and spoken to. Moses was called the Kalum Allah because God spoke to him on Mount Sinai.
(13) That is, in believing that Ali and the imams, his descendants, were incarnations of the Divinity.
(14) This passage is given in the printed editions but is not to be found in our manuscripts.
(15) This place, whatever may be its name, lay at about thirty miles NNW of Aleppo.
(16) Mount Jaushen lies on the west side of Aleppo.
Abū 'l-Hajjāj Yūsuf Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ibrāhīm al-Ansāri al-Baiyāsī (descended from a Medina family and native of Baeca, in Spain) was one of those accomplished scholars and exact traditionists who were an honour to Spain. Versed in philology, learned and gifted with preeminent talents, he possessed a perfect knowledge of the language spoken by the desert Arabs and was acquainted with it in all its divisions, both in poetry and prose. He was a professional narrator of the occurrences which marked the history of that people, their wars, and their battle-days. I have been informed that he knew by heart the Hamāsa of Abū Tammām at-Tay (vol. I. p. 340), the works of the six poets (1), the collected poetical works of the same Abū Tammām, the Divān of al-Mutanabbi (vol. I. p. 102), the Sīkt az-Zand by Abū 'l-Alâ 'l-Maarri (vol. I. p. 94) and a great quantity of pieces composed by the poets who flourished in the days of paganism and by those who lived in Muslim times. He visited the different provinces of Spain, travelled over the greater part of them and proceeded to the city of Tunis where he compiled for the sovereign of Isrikya, the emir Abū Zakaria Yahya, the son of Abū Muhammad Abd al-Wâhid and the grandson of Abū Hafs Omar (2), a work which he entitled Kitâb al-Ildân b-il-Hurâb il-Wâhid fi Sadr il-Islâm (the book of information respecting the wars which took place during the first period of Islamism). — In it he commenced by relating the assassination of the khalif Omar and terminated by an account al-Walid Ibn Tarif ash-Shâri's revolt in Mesopotamia against the authority of Hârûn ar-Rashid. In our article on this Walid (vol. III. p. 668) we have narrated his history and adventures and mentioned that he fell by the hand of Yazid Ibn Mazyad Ibn Zâida ash-Shaihâni. To this Yazid we have given a separate article (page 218 of this vol.); so, by means of both, the history of al-Walid can be fully made out. Al-Baiyâsî's work forms two volumes, which I met with and read. It is well drawn up and evinces, by its contents, that the author was master of his subject. I also met with a copy of his Hamāsa in two volumes; which copy had been read over to the author; it bore
his signature dated in the last third of the month of the latter Rabī' 650 (commencement of July, A. D. 1252). In concluding the work he says: "The compilation and arrangement of this book were terminated in the month of Shawāwāl, 646 (Jan.-Feb., A. D. 1249), at Tunis, which city may God protect!" — I extracted from it that part of the preface which follows the doxology, and shall insert it here: "In the time of my boyhood and the days of my youth I had a strong passion for literature and a great fondness for the language of the Arabs. I persevered unremittingly in searching out the meaning of its terms, examining into its fundamental principles and grammatical forms, till I acquired a mass of such knowledge as no serious student should be unacquainted with and which every person who directs his attention to this branch of science should possess. My fondness for that study and the passion which I felt for it impelled me to collect all the poetical pieces which I had admired and which were selected by me from the works of the Arabs, not only of those who lived in the days of paganism and those who flourished both in pagan and in Islamic times, but also of those who figured after the promulgation of Islamism. (I collected also) such pieces of later authors, inhabitants of the East, Spain and other countries, as might serve to embellish conversation and furnish matter for discussion. Having then perceived that any attempt to preserve this collection, unless it were reduced into a regular form and put into the shape of a dievān, would only serve to proclaim its speedy disparition and bring on its destruction, I thought it advisable to collect those chosen extracts, assemble those beautiful passages and arrange them in classes, in order to retain what might go astray and preserve what was rare. After reflecting on this matter, I could find no classification more simple, no arrangement better than that which Abū Tammām Habīb Ibn Aūs had adopted for his Hamāsā. (I resolved) on imitating it with care and on following its plan, more particularly as the author held the first place in that art and stood alone in it by his abundant share (of erudition) and by the value of his information. I therefore adopted his system, pursued the same course as he, and joined (each piece) to those which resembled it by their subject, uniting it to those of a similar character. I sifted them well; choosing them with all the care of which I was capable and with the utmost attention, doing "to the best of my power." — The author continues in a long discourse which we need not reproduce. From that work I made some extracts, such as the following, taken from the section of elegies: 'Abū Ali 'l-Kāli (vol. I. p. 210) stated that Abū
Bakr Ibn Duraid (vol. III. p. 37) had recited to him the following piece, declaring that he had learned it from the lips of Abû Hâtim as-Sijistâni (vol. I. p. 603):

"How many (of those who fought) in the cause of God are now enclosed in the bosom of the earth or confined to the soil of the desert! (They were brilliant) moons enlightening the world when darkness covered it, and their hands, in times of drought, poured forth showers (of beneficence). O, thou who rejoicest at their death, exult not at their fall! Their life procured them glory, and their death a wide renown. Their life kept the enemy in dejection (ghema); their death was an honour for those who could claim them as relations. Whilst they remained upon the surface of the earth, all its groves were verdant; and now, that they are in its interior, that surface remains forlorn."

The section of amatory pieces furnishes us with the following lines, composed by al-Abbas Ibn al-Ahnaif (vol. II. p. 7):

Bear with the greatest injustice done to you by her whom you love; if you are the injured man, say that you were the transgressor. If you do not pardon the faults of the beloved, she will abandon you, in despite of your wishes.

"The following piece," says our author, "was composed by al-Wâwâd-Dimishki (vol. II. p. 340);" but I am greatly inclined to believe that it was composed by Abû-Farâs Ibn Hamdûn (vol. I. p. 366):

My two friends! I beg of you in the name of Allah, your Lord, to turn (from the road and go) to her whom I love. Then reproach her; a reprimand may, perhaps, induce her to relent. Allude to me and say, whilst discoursing with her: "What has your servant done that "you are killing him with your disdain?" If she smile, say to her in a coaxing way: "What harm would it do, were you to take him into favour?" If she then testifies anger, deceive her by saying: "We know not the person."

(The same work contains) the following piece of which the author is al-Majnûn (3):

I got attached (taalaktâ) to Laila whilst she was still a girl without experience, and before the time that her companions perceived the swelling of her bosom. We were then both young and tended flocks; O, that we and our lambs (baham) had never grown up!

The word baham means a young sheep and is the plural of bahma. — These two verses are cited by grammarians in order to prove that the term which indicates the state (of a thing or person already mentioned) and which is put in the accusative case may, though a single word, refer at the same time to the agent and the object of the
BIографICAL DICTIONARY.

action. Here, the word saghtrain (both being young) is 'put in the accusatif as a term indicating the state, and yet it refers to the pronoun t in the verb taallaktu (4) and to the noun Laila, which is in the accusative case. Another example of this (construction) is offered by the following verse, of which Antara 'l-Absi (5) is the author:

If ever you meet me (talkani) and we be both alone (faradain), the hinder parts (6) of your breech will quiver with fear.

The word faradain, being employed here to express a state, is in the accusative and refers not only to the agent but to the object of the action in the verb talkani. This verse is cited by Ibn al-Anbâri (vol. II. p. 95), in his Aṣrâr al-ʿArabiya, chapter on the (terms which indicate a) state. — The following piece by Wâwâ ad-Dimishki is given by al-Baiyâsi in his Hamâsa:

(I think) of a visitor whose aspect charmed all men and was more grateful than an amnesty granted to him who is in fear of death. She cast upon the night a deeper shade by the darkness of her locks, and the morning, abashed (by the brightness), dreaded her appearance. She tried to kill me by her disdain, but, when I appealed to her (clemency), she took me into favour and drew my soul out of the hands of death. Thus, through her (kindness), I became the prince of lovers; that principality existed before my time.

(We read in the same work): „‘ʿAlî Ibn Aṭiya Ibn ar-Rakkâk, a native of Valencia, said:

“(I think) of her whose movements were so graceful, whose waist was so pliant and whose haunches were so large. She drew near, and the night, unable to contend with her, took to flight, though it had no other wings than (our mutual) joy (7). She visited me on the sweetest of nights and held me embraced till the morning was morning. Her arms were passed around my neck, like a shoulder-belt, and mine were passed around her waist, like a girdle.”

“Ahmad Ibn al-Husain Ibn Khalaf, generally known by the surname of Ibn al-“Binni al-Yamori,” — a person of whom we have spoken in our article on Yûsuf Ibn Abd al-Mûmin (p. 472 of this vol.), the sovereign of Magrib, — “was expelled from Majorca by the governor of that island and sent across the sea. After the first day of the voyage a wind arose and forced them to return. To this he alluded in the following piece:
O my friends! you whom people blamed on my account, whilst they banished me; the moment of farewells soon drew near. Separated from you, who were such gay and amusing companions, shall I ever again find pleasure in life? After sailing for a day, I said: "Is it desire that impels our ship (to go back) or is it violence? As it flew along with us, it hovered round you, as if our hearts had been its sails."

"(The khali) al-Wâthik Billah said, in a piece which alone would suffice to evince his talent:

I did not know what the pains of separation were till the people cried out: "Here come the ships!" My beloved, drowned in tears, leaned forward to bid me farewell and uttered some words so indistinctly that their meaning could not be seized. She bent towards me, kissing me and saying that she would willingly give her life for mine; like her the pliant branches in the garden bend before the zephyr. She then turned away, and exclaimed, in weeping: O that I had never known you!

In the section which contains the passages on hospitality, guests, vaingloriousness and eulogy, the author inserts the following verses, which were pronounced by Abû 'l-Hasan Ja'far Ibn Ibrâhîm Ibn al-Hajjâj al-Lûrki:

Admire (in me) a man who seeks for praise, though he avoids giving away any thing of his own, and who directs (lit. who opens) his hopes towards renown, though he does not open his hand. Why should I not like the (presence of a) guest, and hasten with joy to receive him, if he eats of his own provisions, and praises me for my hospitality?

"Amongst the verses attributed to Abd Allah Ibn Abûâs (vol. I. p. 69) are the following, which he pronounced after losing his sight:

"Though God has deprived my eyes of their light, a portion of that light remains in my tongue and in my heart. My heart is acute, my intelligence unimpaired and, in my mouth, is something as sharp and as cutting as a sword."

In the section which contains the satires, reproaches and pieces connected with such subjects, he gives the following piece as the production of Abû 'l-Aâlîa Ahmad Ibn Malik ash-Shâmi:

I speak in dispraise of Baghdad as a residence; after having gained information and experience. No gifts can be expected from its princes; no alleviation for the grief of the afflicted. Those princes have left to others the path of honour and given themselves up to debauchery and crime. He who wishes to succeed with them must first be introduced and then possess three things: the wealth of Kârûn (8), the years of Noah (9) and the patience of Job.
(Here the author says:) "Abū Bakr Muhammad Ibn Yahya as-Sūli mentioned that the following piece was composed by Abū 'l-Attāf al-Kūsī and directed against Sālih Ibn Abd ar-Rahmān Nasīḥ:

"Son of al-Walid! explain to us, and let your explanation remain within bounds: Why do we see you at liberty? what has become of your chains and fetters? is iron now dear in your country or is it incapable of holding you?"

Here finish our extracts from al-Baiyāsī's Hamds. They are sufficient for our purpose, which was, to select out of the pieces chosen by him a certain number which might indicate his (extensive) acquaintance with poetry. He was born on Thursday, the 14th of the first Rabi, 573 (11th Sept. A. D. 1177), and he died at Tunis, on Sunday, the 4th of Zu 'l-Kaada, 653 (5th Dec. A. D. 1255). — "Baiyāsī means belonging to Bayds (Baeza), which is a large town of Moslem Spain and now included in the province of Jaen." So says Yakūt al-Hamawi (page 9 of this vol.) in his dictionary of geographical synonyms.

(1) The six poets whose works are inserted in this collection were Amro 'l-Kaṣī, an-Nābigha ad-Dubyānī, Alkame, Zuḥair, Tarafa and Antara. For farther information see the translator's edition of the Diwāns of Amro 'l-Kaṣī, preface, page x.

(2) For the history of Abū Zakariya Yahya, the founder of the Hafside dynasty, see Ibn Khaldūn's Histoire des Berbères, tome II, p. 397 et seq.

(3) See Mr de Sacy's remarks relatively to Majnūn in the Anthologie grammaticale arabe, page 150.

(4) It is the second t in that word which represents the pronoun of the first person singular.

(5) For the history of Antara, the author of one of the Moallakas, see Mr Cassin de Perceval's Essai sur l'Histoire des Arabes, tome II, pp. 314 et suiv.

(6) Read رواذى with the manuscripts. For the signification of this word see the Hamds, p. 565, l. 15 and as-Zusenī's commentary on the sixteenth verse of Amr Ibn Kulthūm's Moallaka.

(7) This translation is merely conjectural.

(8) For the Moslem legend respecting Kārūn, the Corah of the Bible, Numbers, XVI, see Sale's note on the twenty-eighth surah of the Koran.

(9) According to the Koran, sūrat XXXIX, verse 18, Noah tarried among his people one thousand years, save fifty years.
YUNUS IBN HABIB.

Abū Abd ar-Rahmān Yūnus Ibn Habib the grammarian. Abū Abd Allah al-Marzubānī (vol. III, p. 67) says, in his work entitled Kitāb al-Muktabis (Book for him who desires information) and containing the history of the grammarians: "He was attached to the tribe of Dabba by the bonds of enfranchisement, or, by another account, to the family of Laith Ibn Bakr Ibn Abū Manāt Ibn Kināna. Others say that he was a client, by enfranchisement, of Bilāl Ibn Harmi, a member of the family called the Dubayyā Ibn Bahālā and that he was a native of Jabbul. His birth took place in the year 90 (A. D. 708-9) and his death in the year 182 (A. D. 798-9). He sometimes said that he recollected the death of al-Hajjāj (1). Some place his birth in the year 80. According to others, he saw al-Hajjāj and lived to the age of one hundred and two years; another account says, ninety-eight years. — The following indications are furnished, not by al-Marzubānī, but by another author: "Yūnus learned philology from Abū Amr Ibn al-Alāʾ (vol. II. p. 399) and Hammād Ibn Salama (vol. I. p. 261), but the study of grammar became his predominant occupation. He obtained, by audition (much philological information) from the Arabs (of the desert); Sibawayh handed down much (information of that kind) on his authority, and lessons were given by him to al-Kisāʾī (vol. II. p. 237) and al-Farrāʾ (page 63 of this vol.). In grammar he followed a system of analogical deduction and of rules which was peculiar to himself. As a philologer, he belonged to the fifth class (2). — It was at Basra that held his school (lit. his circle), which was much frequented by literary men and (even) by the most elegant speakers among the Arabs and the inhabitants of the desert." — Abū Obaida Māmar Ibn al-Muthanna (vol. III. p. 388) said: "I frequented (the school of) Yūnus during forty years and, every day, I filled my tablets with notes which he dictated from memory." — The grammarian Abū Zaid al-Ansārī (vol. I. p. 579) said: "I sat (as a student) by the side of Yūnus Ibn Habib during ten years, and Khalaf al-Ahmār (vol. I. p. 572) before me did the same during twenty years." — Yūnus himself said: "Rūba Ibn al-Ajjāj (vol. I. p. 527) addressed me, one day, in these terms: 'How long will you be asking me questions about those (philological) futi-
" lities, and how long must I be adorning them for your (pleasure)? Do you not perceive that the greater part of your beard has turned gray?" — Amongst the works which Yûnus drew up (and published), we may notice the Kitâb Mândi 'l-Korân (on the rhetorical figures employed in the Koran), the Kitâb al-Loghdt, the Kitâb al-Amthdil (book of Proverbs) and the lesser collection of Anedotes (Nawâdir) (3). Ishak Ibn İbruîm al-Mausîli (vol. I, p. 183) said: "Yûnus lived eighty-eight years; he was never married, never kept a concubine and never thought of any thing but acquiring knowledge and conversing with distinguished (literary men.)"—Yûnus said: "If I formed the wish of being able to compose in verse, I should not desire to utter any thing better than the verse in which Adî Ibn Zaid (4) said:

"O you who rejoice at other's woes and deride the fickleness of Fortune! are you then safe from danger and perfectly secure?"

This verse belongs to a piece which is currently known among literary men and contains moral exhortations with examples. The next lines we here give:

Do you know the history of ancient times (5)? No! you are ignorant and misled. Whom think you that destiny will render immortal? Who has always a guardian, so that he may not be harmed? What has become of Chosroes, the Chosroes of kings, Arûshrewân? What has become of Sâpûr before him? The noble race of Asfar (6), kings of the Romans, have left no recollection worthy of being recalled. (Think of) the founder (7) of al-Hadr (8), when he built it and when tribute was paid to him by (the countries situated on) the Tigris and the Khâbûr. He lined it with marble, coated it with plaster, and, on its pinnacles, the birds built their nests. The vicissitudes of time alarmed him not, but his kingdom departed from him and the door of his palace was abandoned. Think of the lord of al-Khawr of (9), when he looked, one day, from the top of his castle, — and reflection leads to wisdom; — he rejoiced in his kingdom and his ample possessions; (he contemplated with pleasure) the river flowing before him and (the palace of) as-Sadrî. Then his heart was troubled and he said: "What is the felicity of living beings who are always journeying towards their death? After enjoying prosperity, ruling over a kingdom and a people, they fall as an inheritance to the grave, and become like the dry leaves which are blown about by the east wind and by the west.

These verses would require a long commentary; if I undertook to give one, I should be led into prolixity and digress from my subject; more particularly as many of them have a historical, and the rest a philological, import. I therefore keep within bounds, giving what is necessary for my purpose and nothing more. As a full explanation of the verses would fill four or five quires (of twenty pages each), it could not find a place here. — Muhammad Ibn Sallâm al-Jumahi (10) relates that Yûnus
Ibn Khallikan's said: "The Arabs (of the desert) never expressed grief with more energy than in lamenting (the loss of) youth, and yet they did not do full justice to its value." Mansur an-Namari (page 131 of this vol.) took hold of this expression and said, in a kasida of some length which he composed in praise of Harun ar-Rashid:

Whilst my youth was in its prime, I did not appreciate its value, and, when it passed away, (I perceived that) the world also was passing away (for me).

It was mentioned by Yunus that the (desert) Arabs said: "Separation from friends is sickness for the heart." He then recited these lines:

Were my eyes to shed tears of blood, foreboding loss of sight, they could not do justice even to the tenth part of two things; departure of youth and separation from friends.

He related also that Labid (the author of the Moallaka), after the introduction of Islamism, never uttered a line of poetry except the following:

Praise be to God for not bringing me to the term of my life till I had put on the robe of Islamism.

Abu Obaida Mamar Ibn al-Muthanna related as follows: "Djaafar Ibn Sulaiman the Abbasi (vol. II. p. 547) was visiting the Khalif al-Mahdi. On returning home, he sent for Yunus Ibn Habib and said to him: 'I and the Commander of the faithful have differed in opinion respecting the meaning of this verse:

'"The blackness (of the hair) being invaded by grayness, is like the night (lail), at the beginning and the end of which, day (nahdr) utters its cry (is on the alert)."

'"What do the words lail and nahdr mean?' Yunus replied: 'Lail has here the meaning with which you are familiar and so also has nahdr.' Djaafar then said: 'Al-Mahdi maintains that lail means a young partridge and nahdr a young bustard.' Ibn Habib was in the right with regard to the signification of these words; the meanings assigned to them by al-Mahdi are no where recognised except in treatises on the unusual terms of the language." — Yunus related the following anecdote: Jabala Ibn Abd ar-Rahman (11) used, in ordering his dinner, to write out a list of the dishes which he wished to have served, and send it to the cook. In this list he always employed such uncommon and agrestic expressions that
the cook never knew what was wanted till he consulted Ibn Abi Ishak (12), Yahya Ibn Yamar (see p. 59 of this vol.) and other well-informed men. — When he obtained from them the explanation of the difficult words, he would bring to his master what was required. — One day Jabala said to him: "Woe betide you! I am dying of hunger." The cook answered: "Make easy phrases and your dinner will be easy (to get ready)." — Jabala replied: "You son of a slut! must I lay aside my pure Arabic on account of your doltishness?" — Yûnus was a native of Jabbul, a town situated on the Tigris, between Baghdad and Wâsit. He did not like to be considered as having come from that place (or to hear it named). A man belonging to the Bani Abi Omair family met him one day and said: "Tell me, Abu Abd ar-Rahmân! Jabbul is it of the first declension or the second?" — The other answered by abusive language, and the Omairide looked round for some one whom he might take as a witness of the insult, and, not seeing any person, he went away. The next morning, when Yûnus was sitting with his pupils around him, the same man came to him and said: "Tell me, Abû Abd ar-Rahmân! Jabbul is it of the first declension or of the second?" To this Yûnus replied: "The answer is the same as that which you received yesterday." — As-Samâni (vol. II. p. 156) says, in his Ansâb, that Jabbul (J,b,l,) is to be pronounced with an a after the J and a double b followed by the vowel u. This (13) was the native place of Abû 'l-Khattâb al-Jabbuli, a poet of some celebrity and the author of these lines:

To reach you, how many deserts did I not cross which, had I been unsupported by my passion, I should never have been able to pass through. To get near you I faced the greatest dangers, but, to encounter perils for the pleasure of seeing you is a welcome task.

"Abû 'l-Khattâb, says as-Samâni, died in the month of Zâ 'l-Kaadâ, 439 (April-May 1048).—A poetical rivalry existed between him and Abû 'l-Alâ al-Maarâî (vol. I. p. 94) and it was to him that the latter addressed the kasâda which begins thus:

"My religion and my creed declare imputable (lamentations over the dead and the song of the camel-driver) (14)."

Here as-Samâni is mistaken: the poem was written by Abû 'l-Alâ and sent to Abû Hamza al-Hasan Ibn Abd ar-Rahmân, a native of Maarra tan-Nomân and a hanifite doctor, who was then acting as a kâdî at Manbej. The same remark has been made by the kâdî Kamâl ad-Din, in his history of Aleppo. — Habîb was the name of his
(Yûnûs's) mother, and, as it is therefore of the feminine gender (and a proper name), it belongs to the second declension. The name of his father is not known. Some say that Yûnûs was born after the divorce of his mother, who had been legally separated from her husband in consequence of a mutual anathema (15). According to others, Habîb was his father's name; if so, it is of the first declension. The same observations apply equally to the name of Muhammad Ibn Habîb (16), the genealogist. — Yûnûs entered, one day, into the mosque, tottering in his gait and supported by two men, one on each side of him, because he was very old. A man of whose friendship he had doubts then addressed him and said: "Abû Abd ar-Rahmân! may "I attain the state in which I see you!" Yûnûs replied: "That which you see may "you never attain!" (17). A number of poets took hold of this idea and put it into verse.—Abû 'l-Khattâb Ziad Ibn Yahya said: "Yûnûs is like a bottle with a narrow "neck: to put any thing into it is difficult and, to get it out is impossible." By "these words he meant that Yûnûs (learned slowly and) forgot nothing. The dates of his birth and of death are given at the commencement of this article, but some say that he died in the year 183 (A. D. 799). — Abd al-Râki Ibn Kânî (vol. 1, p. 374) states that his death took place in the year 184. It is said that he lived to the age of ninety-eight years.

(2) The word class means here generation of oral teachers.
(3) It there be not an omission in the Arabic text, there must have been then in circulation a greater Na-"uddir composed by some other author, perhaps Ibn al-Anbâri.
(4) See vol. I, p. 189. A fuller and more satisfactory account of this celebrated poet is given in M. Caus-"sin de Perceval's Essai sur l'histoire des Arabes, tome II, page 126 et suiv.
(5) The text may also signify: have you the old covenant (or testament) of days? that is, the Bible, contain-ing the history of ancient times. Adî Ibn Zaid was a Christian.
(6) The Arabs designated the Romans and their emperors by the title of Bondu 'l-Asfâr. They were probably aware that Vespasian and his successors bore the surname of Flavius; and this word, being confounded by them with Flavus, was rendered by Asfâr.
(7) Literally: the brother.
(8) See vol. III, p. 318. In M. Causson's Essai, vol. II, p. 49, will be found an historical account of al-Hadr, called AtRâ, by the historians of the Roman emperors.
(9) The castles of al-Khawarnak and as-Sadîr were built in the neighbourhood of Htra by an-Nomân al-Awar. See M. Causson's Essai vol. II, p. 85, and the sources there indicated.
(10) As-Soyûtî says, in his Dictionary of Grammarians, ms. of the Bibl. imp., no 683: "Abû Abd Allah ' Muhammad Ibn Sallâm Ibn Obaid Allah Ibn Sâlim al-Jumahi, a mawla of Muhammad Ibn Ziad, who, him-
BIOGRAPHICAL DICTIONARY.

self was a mawla of Kodâma Ibn Matâtûn, a member of the Jumâh family, which was a branch of the Ku-
ralsh tribe, is placed by az-Zubâïdî (vol. III, p. 83) in the fifth class (or generation) of the philologers who
belonged to the school of Basra. He died in that city, A.H. 281 (A.D. 893)." — We read in the Fihrist:
Abû Abd Allah Muhammad Ibn Sallâh al-Jumâh was one of those who transmitted down orally
historical relations and pieces of poetry. He composed some works, such as the Pdsil, treating of the
beauties of historical narratives and of poetry, an account of the noble houses (or families) among the
Arabs, a classified account of the poets who lived in pagan times, another of the poets who lived in the
times of Islamism and a work containing anecdotes of horse-racing."

(11) This Jabala was evidently a man of high rank, perhaps one of the generals who command in Khorâ-
sân, under the orders of al-Hajjâj.

(12) Abû Bahr Abd Allah Ibn Abî Isâk Zâid Ibn al-Hârîth al-Hadrâmî, was a native, or an inhabitant, of
Basra. He acquired a high reputation by his learning as a grammarian and by his profound acquaintance
with the Koran-readings. He lived to the age of eighty-eight years and died A.H. 127 (A.D. 744-5). (Abû

(13) This passage is given in the printed editions but is not to be found in our manuscripts.

(14) The rest of the verse, omitted here, in the Arabic text, and inserted in the translation, runs as follows:

نوح باك ولا ترم شادی. The song of the camel-driver alludes to the journeys undertaken by lovers for
purpose of visiting the spot inhabited by the beloved.

(15) If a husband accuses his wife of infidelity, and persists in declaring that the accusation is true whilst
the wife asserts that it is false, both parties must affirm their declarations by oath and invoke God's curse
upon themselves if they are perjured. This double anathema dissolves the marriage.

(16) Abû Ja'far Muhammad Ibn Habîb, a mawla of the Hâshim family, was versed in the science of gene-
alogies, skilled in grammar and well acquainted with the accounts of the battle-days of the Arabs. He
was considered as an exact and trustworthy authority. He died at Samarra in the month of Zâ 'l-Hijja, 245

(17) This answer, if taken as a complement, means: may you never be so decrepit as I; but it has another
meaning: may you not live as long as I.

YUNUS IBN ABD AL-AALA.

Abû Mûsâ Yûnûs Ibn Abd al-Aalâ Ibn Mûsâ Ibn Maisara Ibn Hâfîs Ibn Haiyân
as-Sadafî, a native of Egypt and a doctor of the Shâfîte sect, was one of as-Shâfî's
(vol. II. p. 569) most assiduous pupils and one of the most active in transmitting
down what that imâm taught. To his profound piety and his firm religious convic-
tions he joined so extensive an acquaintance with the history (of the learned) and with the Traditions that no person of that age could equal him. We have spoken in this work (vol. II. p. 93) of his grandson, Abû Said Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Ahmad Ibn Yûnus, the author of the History of Misr (Old Cairo), and of this Abû Said’s son (vol. II. p. 365), Abû 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn Abî Said Abî-Rahmân Ibn Yûnus, a famous astronomer and the author of the (Hakemite) tables. Each of them was a master in the science which he cultivated. Yûnus learned the kuran-readings (vol. I. p. 152) by reciting that book aloud under the direction of Warsh (vol. III, p. 434), Saklâb Ibn Shunaina (1) and Moalla Ibn Dihya (2). The systems (of reading) with which he thus became acquainted were that of Nâfê (vol. III, p. 522) and that which Ali Ibn Kîsa (3) had learned from Sulaim (4) and which Sulaim had learned from Hamsa Ibn Habib az-Zaiyât (vol. I. p. 478). He heard traditions delivered by Sofyân Ibn Oyaina and Abd Allah Ibn Wahb (vol. II. p. 15), the Egyptian. Koran-reading was taught on his authority by his pupils Mawâs Ibn Sahl (5), Muhammad Ibn ar-Rabî (6), Osâma Ibn Ahmad (at-Tu'fî), Muhammad Ibn Ishak Ibn Khuzaima (7), Muhammad Ibn Jarîr at-Tabari and others. He held a high rank as a Traditionist. Abu Abd Allah al-Kudâî (vol. II. p. 616) speaks of him in his topographical description of Misr (Old Cairo) and says : ‘‘He was one of the most eminent men of that time and ranked ‘‘with the most intelligent. It has been handed down that as-Shâﬁ said: ‘‘I never ‘‘saw in Misr a more intelligent man than Yûnus Ibn Abd al-Aala.’ From as-‘‘Shâﬁ he learned Traditions and jurisprudence, which information he taught to ‘‘others in his master’s name. He received a pension out of a mortmain (habs) held ‘‘by the board of government (diwân al-hukm), and left posterity. His house is si-‘‘tuated in the district of as-Sadîf and bears an inscription containing his name and ‘‘dated in the year 215 (A. D. 830-1). He was one of those inhabitants of Misr ‘‘who were authorised to act as witnesses (to bonds), and he filled that office during ‘‘sixty years.’’ Another author states that Traditions, received from Yûnus Ibn Abd al-Aala, were taught on his authority by the imâm Muslim Ibn al-Hajjâj al-Kushairi (vol. III, p. 348), Abû Abd ar-Rahmân an-Nasâî (vol. I. p. 58), Abû Abd Allah Ibn Mája (vol. II. p. 680) and others. Abû Muhammad al-Hasan Ibn Zâlâk (vol. I. p. 388) relates the following anecdote in his History of Misr: Bakkâr Ibn Kutaîba being nominated kâdî of Misr, set out for that city from Baghdad and, on reaching al-Jîfâr (8), he met Muhammad Ibn Laith, the former kâdî of Misr who, after his deposition, was returning to Irak. In a conversation which he had with him, he
said: "I am a stranger to Misr and you know the place well; indicate to me the per-
sons whom I may take as advisers and on whom I may place reliance." Ibn al-
Laith replied: "I recommend to you two persons, one of them very clever and na-
med Yûnus Ibn Abd al-Aala; I know well that he is clever, because I endeavoured
to have him condemned to death and he found means of getting me outlawed.
The other is Abû Hârûn Mûsa Ibn Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn al-Kâsim; (I indicate him)
because he is a very devout man." Bakkâr expressed the wish to know what was
their personal appearance and Ibn al-Laith said: "Yûnus is a tall man, of a clear
complexion," describing him fully, after which, he gave the description of Mûsa.
When Bakkâr arrived at Misr, the people came to see him, and amongst the
visitors was a man whose appearance answered the description given of Yûnus.
Bakkâr made him sit down in the place of honour, and began to converse with him,
calling him Abû Mûsa every time he addressed him. They were still talking, when
Yûnus himself came in. Bakkâr then turned towards the other, and said to him:
"You Sir! who are you? why did you keep silent? I might have confided to you
some of my secrets!" Yûnus then advanced and was installed in the place of ho-
nour. After that, Mûsa came in, and Bakkâr took them both for friends and advi-
sers. — It is related that the kaddi Bakkâr admitted Mûsa into his intimacy because
he considered the acquaintance of so pious a man to be a blessing, and said to him
one day: "Tell me, Abû Hârûn! how do gain your livelihood?" The other an-
swered. "Out of a mortmain (wakf) founded by my father in my favour." — "Is it
sufficient for you maintenance?" said Bakkâr. — "It is quite sufficient," replied the
other, "and now, since the kaddi has addressed me questions, I wish to address some
of him." — "Begin," said Bakkâr. — "Did the kaddi, when at Basra, get so deeply
into debt that he consented to accept this kadiship?" — The other answered: "No."
— "Was he obliged," said Mûsa, "to accept it because God had granted him a num-
ber of children?" — "No," replied Bakkâr, "I was never married." — "Have you a
number of relatives to support?" — "No." — "Did the sultan force you to accept
this office and threaten you with tortures if you refused?" — "No." — "So
then, you kept whipping the flanks of camels, from Basra to Misr, without being
under the necessity or the obligation of doing so? I take God to witness that I
shall never come to see you again!" — "Pray, forgive me;" said Bakkâr. — "No,"
replied Mûsa, "you began the asking of questions; had you remained silent, I
should not have spoken." He then departed and never returned again. — Yûnus
related that he had a dream in which he heard a voice say to him: "The name of the Almighty God is: There is no god but God (9)." — The work entitled Kitāb al-Muntazem fi akhbār man sakan al-Mukattam (the digest, being an account of the persons who inhabited Mount Mokattam) contains an article on Yūnus, from which I extract this passage: "One of the anecdotes which he related, saying that he had learned it from another person, was the following: A man went to a coppersmith and asked for the loan of one thousand dinars, to be repaid at a fixed time. Who will answer me for the payment? said the coppersmith. — The other replied: "Almighty God. — The smith gave the money, and the man set out on a trading voyage. When the time of payment arrived, the debtor wished to go to his creditor, but, being prevented by the calm weather, he took a chest, placed in it one thousand dinars, locked it up, nailed it and cast it into the sea, saying: 'Almighty God! here is what you were engaged to pay for me.' The creditor having gone out to see if his debtor was coming with the money, perceived a dark object floating on the sea and had it brought to him by his servants. It was that very chest of which we have spoken and, on opening it, he found one thousand dinars. The other man, having afterwards collected a sum to the same amount, took advantage of a favorable wind and set out with the intention of seeing the coppersmith. On arriving, he saluted him and, being asked who he was, he replied I am the person who got from you the thousand, and here they are." The coppersmith replied: "I will not accept them till you tell me what you did with your money." The man related to him what had passed and mentioned that the wind had been unfavorable to his return. "Almighty God," said the coppersmith, "took charge of bearing to me that thousand in your name, and I have received it." — A great number of anecdotes related of Yūnus and by him have been preserved. He stated that the following verses were composed by as-Shāfi:

Scratch yourself with your own nails; always do your own business, and, when you intend asking for a service, go to a person who can appreciate your merit.

Yūnus related that as-Shāfi said to him: "Tell me, Yūnus! did you ever go to Baghdad?" He answered that he had never been there, and as-Shāfi then said: "In that case, you have not seen the world or its inhabitants." — He related also that he heard as-Shāfi make an observation which could be uttered only by one like him; it was this: "To please everybody is an impossible task; seek there-
fore what may be advantageous for your spiritual and temporal welfare, and stick
to that.” — Ali Ibn Kadid said: “Yûnus Ibn Abd al-Aala knew the Traditions
by heart and acted by them.” Abû Abd ar-Rahmân Ahmad Ibn Shoâib an-
Nasawi (10) declared that Yûnus was a trustworthy authority. Another author states
that Yûnus was born in the month of Zû ‘l-Hijja, 170 (May–June, A. D. 787) and
that he died on Tuesday, the 27th of the latter Rabi‘, 264 (6th Jan. A. D. 878);
the same year in which took place the death of al-Muzani (vol. I. p. 200). He
died in Misr (Old Cairo) and was interred in the cemetery of the Sadif tribe. His
tomb is a well-known object in the lesser Karâfa. — His father, Abd al-Aala, was a
man of holy life and bore the surname of Abû Salama. One of his sayings was :
“Buying what one does not require is selling what one requires.” “I know by ex-
perience the truth of that,” said his son Yûnus. Abd al-Aala died in the month
of Muharram, 201 (August, A. D. 816); he was born in the year 121 (A. D. 738-9).
Abû ‘l-Hasan Ahmad, the son of Yûnus, was the father of Abû Said Abd ar-Rah-
mân Ibn Ahmad, the author of the History of Misr. The latter says, in that work :
“My father (Ahmad Ibn Yûnus) was born in the month of Zû ‘l-Kaada, 240 (March-
April, A. D. 855), and died on Friday, the 1st of Rajab, 302 (20th Jan. A. D.
915). He was counted as one of the Sadif family, but did not belong to it either
by birth or by enfranchisement.” — Sadaﬁ, with an a after the S and another
after the d, is the adjective derived from Sadif with an i after the d. According to
as-Suhaili (vol. II. p. 99), this name may be pronounced Sadif or Sadaﬁ; but, in the
adjective derived from it, the a is employed after the d in order that there may not
be two i (kesras) before the double (fínal) i (11). It is thus that Namârî is formed
from Namir. — There exists a difference of opinion respecting the person who bore
the surname of as-Sadif. Some say that it was Malik, the son of Sahl, the son of
Amr, the son of Kais; and such is also the statement made by al-Kudâî in his Topo-
ography. As-Samâni (vol. II. p. 156) continues that genealogy in his Ansâb : “As-
Sadif,” says he, “was the son of Sahl Ibn Amr Ibn Kais Ibn Moâvia Ibn Ju-
Zuhair Ibn Aiman Ibn Humaisa Ibn Hîmûr Ibn Sabá.” According to ad-Dârâ-
kutnî (vol. II. p. 239), the true name of as-Sadif was Sahhâl Ibn Domît Ibn Ziâd Ibn
Hadramaut. Al-Hâzîmi (vol. III. p. 11) says, in his Kitâb al-Ojda, which is a trea-
tise on patronymics, that as-Sadif’s name was Amr, the son of Malîk. God knows
best! Al-Kudâî states that the family of Sadif was counted among those of the tribe
of Kinda. He was called as-Sadif because he turned (sadafa) his face away from his people when the torrent of Arim (12) came down upon them; they assembled for the purpose of stopping up the breach, but he turned his face from them (and went) towards Hadramaut. — Some relate thus the circumstance which procured him this name; he was so brave that not one of the Arabs was able to overcome him. A certain Ghassanite king sent a man with orders to bring him before him, but he attacked the messenger, slew him and took to flight. A numerous body of horse was sent after him by the king and, every time that they came up to an Arab tribe and asked for him, the answer was: "He turned (sadaf) away from us and we did not get a 'sight of him." From that time, he was called as-Sadaf. Having then reached the tribe of Kinda, he settled among them. — Genealogists say that the greater part of the Sadaf tribe is in Mısır and in Mağrib. God knows best! — We have here digressed from our subject, but what we have said is not devoid of useful information (13).


(2) Abū Dihya Moalla Ibn Dihya, a native of Old Cairo, was well acquainted with the Koran-readings, having studied them under Nafū. — (Kurra.)

(3) I adopt the reading given by the Tabakht al-Kurra, fol. 33, and one of the manuscripts of Ibn Khallikân’s work.

(4) Abū Iṣa Sulaṣam Ibn Iṣa Ibn Sulaim, a native of Kūfa and a teacher of Koran-reading, was Hamza’s principal disciple and replaced him as a teacher. He learned Traditions from Hamza and Sofyān ath-Thauri. — (Kurra, fol. 83.)

(5) Mawās Ibn Sahl is mentioned in the Kurra, fol. 53, as a disciple of Yūnus Ibn Abī al-Asla.

(6) In the Kurra, fol. 52, is a simple mention of this name.

(7) Abū Bakr Muhammad Ibn Iṣhak Ibn Khuzayma, a native of Naṣibān, was so highly distinguished for his knowledge of the Traditions and the Koran-readings that he became the Shaikh al-Islam of Khordān. He left a work on the Ilāl or defects which may impair the validity of Traditions. He died A. H. 807 (A. D. 919-920), aged upwards of seventy years. — (Tabakht al-Huffāz.)

(8) Al-Jīlār was the name given to that part of the desert which lies between Syria and Egypt.


(10) Nasāw and Nasādi both mean, a native of the town of Nasādī, in Khordān. The person here indicated is the celebrated Abī faṣ an-Nasādī, of whom our author has spoken, vol. I, p. 58.

(11) This was to avoid the awkward pronunciation of the word Sayfi.


(13) Our author was probably not aware that Arabic historians knew very imperfectly the ancient history of their nation; that many of the genealogies given by them were altered or forged under the first Khalifs, and that their explanations of the origin of proper names are, most of them, fanciful inventions.
YUNUS IBN MANA.

Abû 'l-Fadl Yûnus Ibn Muhammad Ibn Manâ Ibn Malik Ibn Muhammad Ibn Saad Ibn Said Ibn Aâsîm Ibn Aâid Ibn Kaab Ibn Kais, bore the title of Rida ad-Dîn (acceptable for piety) and was a native of Arbela. We have spoken of his two sons, Imâd ad-Dîn Abû Hamîd Muhammad (vol. II. p. 656) and Kamâl ad-Dîn Abû 'l-Fath Mûsa (vol. III. p. 466). The genealogy given here was found by me in the handwriting of one of our literary men, but I cannot say where he discovered the links which he added to it; all that I knew of it was given in the articles on the two sons. The shaikh Yûnus belonged to a family of Arbela and was born in that city. Having gone to Mosul, he studied jurisprudence there under Abû Abd Allah al-Husain Ibn Nasr al-Kaabi al-Juhani, surnamed Tâj ad-Dîn and generally known by the appellation of Ibn Khamis (vol. I. p. 442). After hearing that professor dictate the text of most of his works and of the traditional information which he had received, he embarked on the river and went down to Baghdad, where he studied jurisprudence under the shaikh Abû Mansûr Saïd Ibn Muhammad Ibn Omar, surnamed Ibn al-Bazzâz, who was then chief professor in the Nizâmiya college. After that, he went up by land to Mosul, settled in a neighbouring village and was perfectly well received by the governor of Mosul, Zain ad-Dîn Abû 'l-Hasan Ali Ibn Bektikîn, the father of al-Malik al-Moazzam Muzaffar ad-Dîn, the sovereign of Arbela (vol. II. p. 535). That emir confided to him the professorship and the administration of the mosque founded by himself and bearing his name. Yûnus, having begun to teach, to act as a muftî (casuist, consulting lawyer) and to hold conferences, drew to his lectures a great number of persons desirous of studying under him and of discussing points of doctrine with his two sons, those of whom we have spoken. He continued to act as a muftî, as a professor and as a chief of conferences till he died. His death took place at Mosul, on Monday, the 6th of Muharram, 576 (2nd June 1180). I heard from a friend of that family, that he died in the year 575, but the shaikh Kamâl ad-Dîn, that doctor’s son, declared that he ceased to live in the year 576, and he must have been better informed on the subject than any one else. Yûnus Ibn Manâ was buried in a tomb which he had erected for himself in
the vicinity of Zain ad-Dīn’s mosque. He died in his sixty-eighth year. — We have spoken of his grandson Sharaf ad-Dīn Ahmad (vol. 1, p. 90), the son of the shaikh Kamāl ad-Dīn Mūsa Ibn Yūnūs. In a word, that family produced a number of eminent men who, by their talents, contributed greatly to the instruction of those who inhabited Arbela and distant countries. Students came to them from Irāk, Persia and other provinces. May God have mercy on them all! (1) [Yūnūs composed some good poetry of which we give here a passage:

She visits me once a year, but sometimes the months of the year pass by without our meeting. Favour and disdain (are shown by her) for no motive whatever; except that her humour is like that of Fortune which (sometimes) grants and (often) refuses.]

(1) Here ends the last biographical article in the manuscripts A, B, C, D and E.

IBN MUSAED.

Yūnūs Ibn Yūsuf Ibn Musāed (1), a member of the Mukharīk family (al-Mukharīk), which is a branch of the tribe of Shaiban, was the superior (shaikh) of that order of derviches which is denominated after him the Yūnusiya. He was a man of great sanctity. I asked a number of his followers the name of his superior and they replied: “He never had a superior; he was a majdūb.” By this word they designate a person (who entered into the devout life) without a master (to guide him); they call him majdūb (attracted), because he was drawn (by divine grace) into the path of virtue and righteousness. They often speak of the miraculous manifestations operated in his favour. The shaikh Muhammad Ibn Ahmad Ibn Obaid told me that, when he was a boy, he saw his father Ahmad in company with this holy man: “We were travelling,” said he, “and the shaikh Yūnūs was with us. We halted, on our journey, at Aln al-Bawār, the place from which the Bawār salt is brought and which is situated between Sinjar and Aâna. As the road was dan-
“gerous (on account of robbers), none of us could sleep, that night, through fear, with the exception of the shaikh Yûnus. When he awoke, I said to him: ‘How was it possible for you to sleep?’ and he answered: ‘By Allah! I should not have slept had not Ismail, the son of Abraham, come to me and undertaken to lock the door.’ When morning came, we departed, without harm, thanks to the merits of the shaikh Yûnus.” Another time, he related as follows: ‘I was with the shaikh Yûnus, in his village, when I resolved on making a journey to Nasibîn, and he said to me: ‘When you arrive there, buy a shroud for Omm Mu-sâèd.’ She was the mother of his son and then enjoyed good health; so, I asked him if there was anything the matter with her that could render such a purchase necessary. He answered: ‘There can be no harm in doing so.’ On my return, I found her dead.” — Other anecdotes respecting his miraculous gifts and his ecstasies were related to me by the same person, from whom also I learned a mawaliya (vol. I. p. 42) which I give here:

It was I who protected the reserved grounds and who dwelt therein. It was I who cast the creatures into the ocean of perplexity. He who wished for a gift from me, it was I who gave it; I am a hero not to be injured by the person in whom is assimilation (2).

The same shaikh Muhammad informed me that Yûnus died, A. H. 619 (A. D. 1222-3), in his village, which place bears the name of al-Kunaiya and is situated in the province of Dârâ. Kunaiya is the diminutive of kandh (lance). His tomb is a well-known object there and attracts numerous pilgrims. He was upwards of ninety years old when he died.

(1) This biographical notice is not to be found in any of our manuscripts. According to al-Makritzi, in his Khitai, vol. 11, p. 435, Yûnus Ibn Musâèd died in the year 719 the Hijra. If his statement be true, Ibn Khalikân, who died in the year 681, could not have drawn up this notice. The editor of the Bûlâk edition of this biographical dictionary declares in a marginal note that the date given by al-Makritzi is false, and his assertion is confirmed by the author of the Ghiribi as-Zamân, ms. ar. sept. 724, who places the death of Yûnus in the year 619.

(2) These verses have no meaning, unless their import be mystical. In that case, it is God who speaks, and the reserved grounds are the gardens of Paradise. Assimilation may perhaps mean being attached to the world and making one’s God of it.
Here ends the work to which I gave the title of *Wafayāt al-Ayān wa Anbā' Abnā' ez-Zamān*, (Book of the Deaths of eminent men and history of the sons of the epoch); praise be to God for his bounty! It was terminated on the 22nd of the latter Jumāda, 672 (3rd Jan. A.D. 1274) in Cairo the well-guarded.—The humble servant, who stands in need of the mercy of God and who is named Ahmad Ibn Muhammad Ibn Ibrahim Ibn Abi Bakr Ibn Khallikān, he who is the author of the present work, says: I began to compose this book at the epoch mentioned in the preface, and (*I drew it up*) in the form which is there indicated, though my hours were passed in judging lawsuits, in Cairo, and pronouncing sentences in conformity with the divine law. When I came to the article on Yahya Ibn Khālid Ibn Barmek (*page 113 of this volume*), I was obliged to set out for Syria in the train of his high Lordship and imperial Majesty, the support of the world and of the faith, the sultan of Islamism and of the Moslems, al-Malik az-Zāhir Abū'l-Fath Baibars, the colleague of the Commander of the faithful; may God perpetuate his sovereignty and consolidate, by the duration of his reign, the foundations and the pillars of the empire! Our departure from Cairo took place on Sunday, the 7th of Shauwāl, 659 (4th Sept. 1261) and, on Monday, the 7th of Zū ʿl-Kaada, the same year (3rd October), we arrived at Damascus. That prince then appointed me to act as chief *kadi* over all the provinces of Syria. My nomination took place on Thursday, the 8th of Zū ʿl-Hijja (3rd November) of the same year. Being therefore overwhelmed with business and surrounded by obstacles which hindered
the completion of this work, I abstained from continuing and, having
left it in the state to which I had brought it, I concluded it by re-
questing that my numerous occupations might serve me as an excuse
for not completing it. I said also that if God granted me time and
helped me in my undertaking, I should commence another work
containing every requisite information on this branch of science. —
At length took place my departure from Syria and my return to
Egypt, after residing in Damascus the well-guarded during ten whole
years, neither a day more nor a day less: I entered into Damascus on
the date just mentioned and I left it on the morning of Thursday, the
8th of Zul‘l-Kaada, 669 (18th June, 1271). On my arrival in Cairo, I
met with a number of works which I was desirous of seeing and which,
before that, I had not time enough to consult. So, having, at last, more
leisure than the surgeon-barber of Sëbdt, after being more occupied than the
woman with the two bags(1), I perused those books and extracted from them
what I required. Having then undertaken to finish the present work, I
terminated it in the form which it now bears; but my intention is still to
begin the work which I promised to draw up, in case that God allow me
and that he come to my assistance by smoothing the way to its accom-
plishment. If any well-informed person remark, in examining this book,
that it contains faults, he should not hasten to blame me, for I always
aimed at being exact, as far as I could judge; and, besides, God has allow-
ed no book to be faultless except his noble Koran. This production of
mine is the fruit of efforts made by one whose information is very limited,
but who has done all in his power (to render it correct). Moreover, no
man is obliged to accomplish what exceeds his force, and «far above the
« possessors of science is the Being who is all-knowing (Coran; sur. xii
verse 76).” As the preface of this book contains my excuses and exposes my motives for engaging in such an undertaking, I need not repeat these considerations here. May the Almighty God spread over our faults the veil of his indulgence, so ample in its shade, and may he not trouble the pure source of the favours which he has allowed us to enjoy! In him do we place our trust, for he is the excellent guardian (Coran; sur. iii, verse 167).

(1) The explanation of these two expressions will be found in Freytag’s translation of the Proverbs of al-Maiddni, vol. ii, p. 227 and vol. i, p. 687.

END OF THE FOURTH AND LAST VOLUME.
ADDITIONS AND CORRECTIONS

Page 59, line 14. For Adwai read Adwân.
P. 118, line 28. In some copies the Arabic word is inverted.
P. 131, line 24. For merchand read merchant.
P. 142, line 10. Insert the article a before prayer.
P. 144, line 10. Suppress the word Irak.
P. 161, line 18. For Oeba read Okba.
P. 171, line 11. For Mutarrif read Mutarrif.
P. 191, lines 19 and 27. For woman read woman.
P. 278, line 7. For mispellet read mispellet.
P. 313, line 28. The words A. H. 262 should have been included within the parentheses.
P. 336, line 15. Read Bismillah here and in the note (6), page 350.
P. 387, line 2. For Ḳabchi read Ḳabshi.
P. 454, line 20. After the words "God knows best!" insert the reference to note (14).
P. 592, line penult. For Laith read al-Laith.
## INDEX TO THE FOURTH AND LAST VOLUME

### PART. I. — PROPER NAMES.

The names preceded by an asterisk are those of persons or places particularly noticed in this volume. In consulting this list, search for the name or surname by which the person was usually known, and neglect all prefixes, such as *Abd, Ibn, etc.*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Ibn Aadam</em> (إدامٍ), 28.</td>
<td>28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aâisha, 586.</td>
<td>586.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abd 'l-Ââla</em>, 584.</td>
<td>584.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Aamili, 293.</td>
<td>293.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>ââmîr Ibn Omar</em>, 77.</td>
<td>77.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aamul, 811.</td>
<td>811.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>âbbâsid</em> Abd al-Ââlz, the Omaiyyâde, 192.</td>
<td>192.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abû Asim</em> Abd al-Ââlz, 50.</td>
<td>50.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ibn Azzîb</em>, 286.</td>
<td>286.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abûbad Ibn Zâd, 284 et seq., 288.</td>
<td>284 et seq., 288.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abdân Ibn al-Walid, 446, 446.</td>
<td>446, 446.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Abbas Ibn Saâad al-Murri, 442.</td>
<td>442.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Abbâs Ibn al-Walid, 192.</td>
<td>192.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abbâs, 66, 558.</td>
<td>66, 558.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abdâl</em>, 94.</td>
<td>94.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abd Allah Ibn Abd al-Ââlz</em>, 394.</td>
<td>394.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Ibn Ayîthâb, 287, 292.</td>
<td>287, 292.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Ibn Beleqûlîb, 467.</td>
<td>467.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Ibn Abî Burda, 440, 442.</td>
<td>440, 442.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Ibn al-Fâth, 528, 529.</td>
<td>528, 529.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Ibn al-Hasan, the Alîde, 283.</td>
<td>283.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Ibn Maân, 284.</td>
<td>284.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Ibn Malik, 24, 28.</td>
<td>24, 28.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Akhû Mülisim, 365.</td>
<td>365.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Ibn Omar Ibn Abd al-Ââlz, 446.</td>
<td>446.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Ibn Yakob, 357.</td>
<td>357.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Allah Ibn Tâhir, 72.</td>
<td>72.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abd al-Ââlz Ibn Ali</em>, 46.</td>
<td>46.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd al-Ââlz Ibn Harûn, 446.</td>
<td>446.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd al-Ââlz; see Ibn Shaddâd.</td>
<td>446.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abd al-Bâkî, 58.</td>
<td>58.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ibn Abd al-Barr</em>, Abd Allah, 404.</td>
<td>404.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abd al-Kâdir al-Jillî, 56.</td>
<td>56.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd al-Kârim Ibn Mohammad, 78.</td>
<td>78.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd al-Lâtîf (Abdallahîf), 376, 378.</td>
<td>376, 378.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd al-Malîk Ibn Mohammad, 444.</td>
<td>444.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd al-Malîk Ibn Sâlib, 218, 237.</td>
<td>218, 237.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abd al-Mujîb, 397.</td>
<td>397.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn al-Mûmin Ibn Ali, 103.</td>
<td>103.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn al-Mûminîn, 399.</td>
<td>399.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd an-Nâbi Ibn Mahdi, 504.</td>
<td>504.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Abî Bakr, 287, 284 et seq.</td>
<td>287, 284 et seq.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn al-Hakam, 399.</td>
<td>399.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Isâmîl, 405.</td>
<td>405.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Yâsîn, 165.</td>
<td>165.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd ar-Rahmân Ibn Zayd, 159.</td>
<td>159.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd ar-Razzâk Ibn Wâhûb, 59.</td>
<td>59.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd as-Salâm Ibn Ahmad, 413.</td>
<td>413.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abd as-Salâm, Ahmad, 476.</td>
<td>476.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abd as-Salâm al-Husain, 388.</td>
<td>388.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abd as-Salâm, Yahya, 379.</td>
<td>379.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abd as-Samad, 391.</td>
<td>391.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd al-Wâhid the Almohade, 346.</td>
<td>346.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd al-Wâhid the Hafside, 349, 349.</td>
<td>349, 349.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd al-Wârîth Ibn Sofâyân, 599.</td>
<td>599.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abdûn, 562.</td>
<td>562.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abûhamî</em>, 94.</td>
<td>94.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acre, 493, 533, 537.</td>
<td>493, 533, 537.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Aftûnsh</em>, 349.</td>
<td>349.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Adâwi</em>, 76.</td>
<td>76.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alââdîwî</em>, Abd Muhammad, 69.</td>
<td>69.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Alââdîwî</em>, Abd Sulaimân, 59.</td>
<td>59.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Ibn Artâb, 185, 189, 192, 196.</td>
<td>185, 189, 192, 196.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Ibn ar-Rika, 203.</td>
<td>203.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abd Ibn Zalîd, 587.</td>
<td>587.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ibn al-Adîm</em>, see Kamâl ad-Din.</td>
<td>370.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Adîn, 370.</td>
<td>370.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adûnâ, 63.</td>
<td>63.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Abû al-Âshashehâb</em>, 221.</td>
<td>221.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atîf ad-Din Ibn Adîn, 370.</td>
<td>370.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atîf ad-Din Ibn al-Hâddâd, 385.</td>
<td>385.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Aghlab Ibn Sâlim, 205.</td>
<td>205.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ahass, 203.</td>
<td>203.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad Ibn Abû Dâwûd, 34.</td>
<td>34.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad Ibn Haubal, 38.</td>
<td>38.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ahmad Ibn Isâmîl the Sâmâni, 85.</td>
<td>85.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Ahmad Ibn Khâlid</em>, 38.</td>
<td>38.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX.

أحمد بن عباد، 500.
أحمد بن عثمان، 357.
الأخمري، علي، 69.
al-Ahmadi بن كامل، 540.
al-Ahnaf بن كايم، 540.
al-Ahnaf بن نافذ، 582.
al-Ahtam، 186، 187.
al-Alwazi، حسان بن علي، 162.
المصور، عز الدين، 158.
المصور، إبراهيم، 474.
al-Aحmad بن الحارث، 598.
al-Aحmad بن تمار، 189.
al-Aحmad بن البتلا، 36، 39.
أيوب بن أغبل، 211.
al-Aيوب بن أيوب، 158، 162.
al-Aيوب بن محمد بن سائغ، 418، 422، 423، 428، 429، 430.
al-Aيوب بن مسلم بن أبا بكر، 180، 181.
al-Aيوب بن سلام، 480.
al-Aيوب بن أحمد بن محمد بن عثمان، 390.
al-Aيوب بن أحمد بن محمد بن أحمد، 398.
al-Aيوب بن أحمد بن محمد بن علي، 398.
al-Aيوب بن أحمد بن محمد بن علي، 398.
al-Aيوب بن أحمد بن محمد بن علي، 398.
al-Aيوب بن أحمد بن محمد بن علي، 398.
al-Aيين بن عبد الرحمن، 170، 179، 180.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن، 433.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
أبو بكر بن أحمد بن أحمد، 290.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
al-Aيض بن أحمد بن عبد الرحمن بن عبد الرحمن، 419.
INDEX.

al-Burak as-Sa'dmi, 558.
Burd, 236, 237.
Ibn Burd; see HshÂr, 22.
Ibn Burhab al-Tabari, 22.
Burzaib, 533.
Bushanj, 335.
*Buwaiti, 594, 596.
*al-Buwaiti, 594.
Hizanajr, 414.

C

Ceuta, 560.
The Comes, 513.
Conrad de Montferrat, 537.

D

al-Dabbi, Abu Bakr Muhammad, 55.
Abu Dahhâb al-Wâthik, 357.
Dahik, 174.
Dâdawâlî, 556.
ad-Dahâkah Ibn Kais al-Fihri, 228.
ad-Dahâkah Ibn Kais ash-Shatibi, 205, 212.
ad-Dahhân, Abu Muhammad, 82.
Ibn ad-Dahâhan, 2.
Dahîk, 389.
Dair al-Akôlî, 537.
Damotte, 145, 543.
ad-Dâni, Abu Amr, 75.
Dar as-Salam, 65, 9.
Dâr al-Wazir, 119.
Dârâbijr, 304.
Darri, 303.
Ibn ad-Darawi, 533.
Darbessak, 333.
*Ibn Darith, 505, 506.
*Ibn ad-Darr, 572.
ad-Dârûm, 538.
Dartamsán, 389.
*ad-Daulâ, 544.
Dârur, 394.
Dâwûd Ibn Tahmân, 539.
Dawûd Ibn Yazîd Ibn Hûtîm, 217.
Ibn ad-Dâya, Badr ad-Din, 505.
Ibn ad-Dâya, Shams ad-Din, 505, 569.
ad-Dâya, Majd ad-Din, 493.
Dibal al-Khâzálî, 91.
Ibn Dihdâ, Abu ʿl-Khattâb Omar, 490, 492.
Ibn Dihâya, Abu ʿl-Khattâb Omar, 490, 492.
IDinâwâlî, 556.
*Dirghâm, 543, 548.
Dirhem Ibn al-Husâin, 301.
Dirhem Ibn ad-Nâdi, 315.
Ibn Dirhem, 399.
Dîvâd, 319.

Dubâyi, Ibn Bahâla, 586.
ad-Dufr, Muhammad, 291.
Ibn Duhâ al-Hassâ, 553.
Dûr Armanaya, 115.
*Abu Durr al-Ghâfîrî, 51.
Abû ʿl-Durr; see Yâkût.
*Ibn Duwaib, 51.
ad-Duwâli, Abu ʿl-Aswad, 59.
Dwâîn, 479.

F

*The Kâtâ Fadl, 503, 506.
Ibn Fadlân, 55.
al-Fâdil al-zîrî, 555.
al-Fâyûmî ad-Imad, 81.
Ibn Abû ʿl-Fâyûmî, 51.
*Ibn Fâhîm, Abu Ali, 539, 539.
*Ibn al-Fâhbâkhâr, 538.
*Falja, 503, 506.
*Falaja, 503, 506.
Ibn Abû Fanân, 203, 238.
Ibn al-Faradî, 51, 52.
*Ibn Farah, 389.
Ibn al-Farâh, 508.
Abû Farâs Ibn Hamdân, 582.
al-Faradâk, 173, 189.
*Abû Fârâs, 508.
*Ibn al-Fârâh, 508.
Abû Farâs Ibn Hamdân, 582.
al-Faradâk, 173, 189.
Ibn al-Fârâs, 508.
Abû Farâs Ibn Hamdân, 582.
al-Faradâk, 173, 189.
*Abû Fârâs, 508.
Ibn al-Fârâh, 508.
Abû Farâs Ibn Hamdân, 582.
al-Faradâk, 173, 189.
*Abû Fârâs, 508.
Ibn al-Fârâh, 508.
Farrukh-Shân, 540.
Farsik, 199.
Fath Ibn Khânân, 56, 57, 482.
Fet, 483.
Pîrbz Ibn Hussîn, 177.
al-Fîrûzân, 55.
Fîyân the grammarian, 385.
The Franks in Egypt, 487, 488.
Ibn al-Furât, Naufal, 213.
Abû ʿl-Futûh Ibn Yahyâ, 100.

G

Ibn Ghalân, 587.
Abû ʿl-Ghanâmi, 412.
*al-Ghanawi, 531, 533.
*Ibn Ghânta, 536, 541, 549.
al-Ghâsnâni, Ahmad, 51.
Ghâzi Salî ad-Din, 505 et seq.
Ghâzi Khâtîn, 514.
Ghâza, 517.
al-Ghazzâli, Abu Hâmîd, 463.
Ghâth Ibn Ziâd, 97.
al-Ghumâlî, 463.
Ghomsâni, 540.
*Ibn Gûrâwi, 478, 477.

H

al-Hâbîbî, 410.
*Ibn Habbî, 32.
Ibn Habbû, 327.
*al-Hadda, 164.
Ibn Hadûd, 565.
al-Hadramî, Abu Allah, 287.
al-Hadramî, Yakhûb, 287.
Abû Hafs, the shaikh, 463.
Hai Ibn Yakhân, 154.
Ibn Haurân, 571.
Haifa, 517.
Hais Bâi, 119, 128.
al-Haiitham Ibn Shâba, 203.
Haiyân an-Nabâbî, 174.
Ibn Haiyân, Sâbîb, 401.
al-Hajjâj Ibn Yûsuf, 60, 81, 164.
al-Hadâmî, 428.
al-Hajjâj Ibn Yûsuf, 428.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
al-Hâmîdî, 429.
INDEX.

Kalsariya, 517.
"al-Ka‘i-l-‘Āmi, 349.
"Kajji, 398.
"Iblin Kajji, 587.
al-‘Ala‘a‘ ibn Khallid, 167.
"Iblin al-Ka‘ar, 159.
"Iblin al-Kalami, 384.
Kalâ (تلمع), 571.
Kalat Kaukab, 428.
Kamal ad-Din ibn al-‘Ādîm, 384, 428.
Kamal ad-Din ibn ash-Shahrûrî, 420.
al-‘Abi Kamarâni, 445.
Kānim, 844.
al-Kanz, 504.
Karji as-Sâki, 488.
Karâkûs, Bahâ‘ ad-Dîn, 498, 584, 537.
Kârdîyllî, 519, 560.
al-Karya, 441.
al-Kâsim ibn al-Kâsim, 373.
"Abî ‘l-Kâsim ar-Rakki, 92.
Kasr al-Husna, 329.
Kasr Zid, 101.
al-Kassâs, Abû ‘l-‘Abbas, 55.
"Katan, 48.
"Iblin Kathîr, Muwâmad, 207.
"Iblin Abî Kathîr, 28.
Katafa, 193.
al-Kaukab, 530, 533, 534.
Kauwâm (Kiwâm?) ad-Dîn, 36.
"Iblin al-Khâbîzzî, 543, 433.
"Iblin Khâbta, 285.
"Khâdîjî, 204.
"Iblin al-Khâmi, 443.
"Iblin Khârî, 446.
"Iblin Khârîn, 363, 348.
al-Khârînî, 559.
"Iblin Khârinîn, 78, 82.
"Abû Khâthîma, 28.
Iblin Khâthîma, 168.
Iblin Khâthîma al-Waddâh, 292.
Iblin Bint al-Khiyât, 58.
"Iblin Khâzîna, 196.
"Khâlif ibn al-Kâsim, 404.
"Iblin Khâlif al-Mukri, 55.
"Iblin Khâlîfîn, 404.
Khâlid Ibn Abû ‘Alih Khârî, 455 et seq.
Khâlid Ibn Bârme, 104.
Khâlid Ibn Sâfîn, 69.
Khâlid Ibn al-Wâlî, 353.
Khâlid Ibn Yâsîn, 930.
"Iblin Khâdîgî, 33.
INDEX

INDEX.

O

Narsh Ibn Ahmad the Samanide, 324, 325.
Narsh Ibn Safafir, 444.
Ibn Abi Nasr, 511.
*Narsh ad-Din Khoja, 405.
*Ibn an-Natrûn, 518.
*Ibn an-Nattâb, 218, 231.
Naufal Ibn al-Furât, 213.
an-Nanafî, al-Fudl, 233.
an-Naukânî, Fakhir ad-Din, 420.
an-Naukâd, Imâd ad-Din, 420.
an-Nazzâm al-Balkhi, 431.
an-Nirî, 9.
an-Nirûzî, grammian, 379.
Abû Nâsim, Abd al-Malik, 201.
Ibn Abi No'am, 40.
Noe (Cape), 470.
an-Nomâni, 411.
Num, songstress, 71.
Ibn Nabîta, Muhammad, 207, 208.
an-Nuhawandî, Abû Bakr, 55.
an-Numairî, Abû Bakr, 63.
Nur ad-Dîn, 493.
*Nustûkîn, 126.

Obâd Allah Ibn al-Abbas, 521.
*Obâd Allah al-Rakki, 522.
Obâd Allah Ibn Tahîr, 313, 317.
Obâd Allah Ibn Yahya, 319.
Obâd Allah Ibn Zaid Ibn Abih, 234
et seq., 241 et seq.
Abû Obâd Allah the vizir, 352.
Abû Obâida, 553.
Omar Ibn Abî Mûmîn, 474.
Omar Ibn Aïyîb, 208.
Omar Ibn Bukair, 65.
Omar Ibn Hafsa, 213.
Omar Ibn al-Khâtâb, 247, 256, 258.
Omar Ibn Saad Ibn Abî Wakkâs, 244.
Omar Ibn Shabba, 36.
Omar al-Wârakî, 225.
Abû Omar Ibn Abî al-Malik, 399.
*Omm Amsîm, 191.
Omm Habîba, 249.
Omm al-Hajjâj, 445.
Omm Jamîl, 45, 255, 257.
Onâsî, 265.
Ons, 265.
*Ibn Abî Osâbîa, 143, 158.
*al-Ôdrîdî, 290.

211, 222, 223.
Abû Muslim al-Khorâsânî, 206.
*Ibn Abî Muslim, 290.
*al-Mustâdâ, the Futûmid, 499.
*al-Mustanjîd, the Abbasid, 119.
*al-Mustâsîr, the Almohad, 346.
Mutâwîl, 301.
Ibn al-Muthanna, 43.
Ibn al-Muwaţîdî, 43.
Muwaddî, 262.
*al-Muwaffâk, the Abbasid, 318, 319.
*al-Muwaffâk Ibn Khallâl, 410, 563.
*al-Muwaffâk, Talha, 85.
*Muwaffâk ad-Dîn, the grammian, 379.
*al-Muzaffâr, historian, 243, 249.
*al-Muzaffâr Billah, the Abbasid, 461.
Muzaffâr ad-Dîn Kûkûbûrî, 507, 509, 530, 531, 429.
Abû-l-Muzaffâr as-Samarkandî, 369.
*Ibn al-Muzaffâr, Abu'd ad-Dîn, 125, 126.
*Ibn al-Mazuni, 396.
*Muzarrî, 391.
*Ibn al-Muzarrâ, 505.

N

Ibn Nubâta, Muhammad, 207, 208.
an-Nuhawandî, Abû Bakr, 55.
an-Numairî, Abû Bakr, 63.
Nur ad-Dîn, 493.
*Nustûkîn, 126.

R

*ar-Rabâda, 49.
The Rabâda, 30.
*ar-Ra'id Ibn Subâсим, 394, 396.
Rabia ar-Râkki, 213, 214, 215.
Ibn Abî Rabia, 299.
*Rafrî Ibn Harthama, 324, 325, 326.
ar-Râfîka, 111, 112.
Ibn Râ'is ar-Ruwârâ, 132, 133.
Ibn Rajâ as-Sindî, 291.
ar-Râkki, Abû 'l-Fudl, 386.
ar-Râkki, 281.
*Rakka, the old and the new, 111.
ar-Râkki, Abû l-Kasîm, 78.
ar-Ramâdî, Abû Bakr Ahmad, 397.
ar-Ramâdî, Yusuf Ibn Hârûn, 569.
ar-Ramila, 508, 518, 533, 539.
*Râzîn, 94.
ar-Rashîd, see Hârûn.
ar-Rashîd, the Almohad, 348.
Ramî ad-Dîn an-Nabûsî, 526.
*Rashî, Abû al-Mûmîn, 399.
Hawâdiya, a Turkish tribe, 480.
ar-Razi, Muhammad Ibn Ahmad, 57.
*Remmâda, 573.
Rettil, prince de Kâbul, 196, 302.
*Ibn Rezzân, 292.
ar-Ra'î, Abû l-Fudl, 387, 402.
Ribât al-Fath, 341.
Richard, king of England; see Anketâr.
Abû 'r-Râ'dî as-Shahrazûri, 419.
Rida ad-Dîn al-Kazwînî, 419, 420.
*Ibn ar-Rika al-'Alâmî, 203.
ar-Roûnî, Shura'id, 445.
*Roger the Frank, 101, 102.
Rôsâ, 460.
Abû Rûfa al-Murjî, 195.
*Ibn Rûmân, 178.
*ar-Rûmî, traditionist, 28.

S

Saad Ibn al-Hakâm, 391.
*Saad al-Khair, 82.
Saadân Ibn Nasr, 291.
as-Sâdânî, 55.
Orân, 484.
*Ibn Saadân, 57, 417.
Ibn as-Sâbâh, Abû Nasr, 237.
Ibn as-Sâbâh, Abû Tahîr, 56.
as-Sâbîl, 486.
INDEX.

"Abū Sāmir, 468.
"Abū Sūrī, 469.
"Abū Sūrah, 470.
"Abū Sūrah, 471.
"Abū Sūrah, 472.
"Abū Sūrah, 473.
"Abū Sūrah, 474.
"Abū Sūrah, 475.
"Abū Sūrah, 476.
"Abū Sūrah, 477.
"Abū Sūrah, 478.
"Abū Sūrah, 479.
"Abū Sūrah, 480.
"Abū Sūrah, 481.
"Abū Sūrah, 482.
"Abū Sūrah, 483.
"Abū Sūrah, 484.
"Abū Sūrah, 485.
"Abū Sūrah, 486.
"Abū Sūrah, 487.
"Abū Sūrah, 488.
"Abū Sūrah, 489.
"Abū Sūrah, 490.
"Abū Sūrah, 491.
"Abū Sūrah, 492.
"Abū Sūrah, 493.
"Abū Sūrah, 494.
"Abū Sūrah, 495.
"Abū Sūrah, 496.
"Abū Sūrah, 497.
"Abū Sūrah, 498.
"Abū Sūrah, 499.
"Abū Sūrah, 500.
"Abū Sūrah, 501.
"Abū Sūrah, 503.
"Abū Sūrah, 504.
"Abū Sūrah, 505.
"Abū Sūrah, 506.
"Abū Sūrah, 507.
"Abū Sūrah, 508.
"Abū Sūrah, 509.
"Abū Sūrah, 510.
"Abū Sūrah, 511.
"Abū Sūrah, 512.
"Abū Sūrah, 513.
"Abū Sūrah, 514.
"Abū Sūrah, 515.
"Abū Sūrah, 516.
"Abū Sūrah, 517.
"Abū Sūrah, 518.
"Abū Sūrah, 519.
"Abū Sūrah, 520.
"Abū Sūrah, 521.
"Abū Sūrah, 522.
"Abū Sūrah, 523.
"Abū Sūrah, 524.
"Abū Sūrah, 525.
"Abū Sūrah, 526.
"Abū Sūrah, 527.
"Abū Sūrah, 528.
"Abū Sūrah, 529.
"Abū Sūrah, 530.
"Abū Sūrah, 531.
"Abū Sūrah, 532.
"Abū Sūrah, 533.
"Abū Sūrah, 534.
"Abū Sūrah, 535.
"Abū Sūrah, 536.
"Abū Sūrah, 537.
"Abū Sūrah, 538.
"Abū Sūrah, 539.
"Abū Sūrah, 540.
"Abū Sūrah, 541.
"Abū Sūrah, 542.
"Abū Sūrah, 543.
"Abū Sūrah, 544.
"Abū Sūrah, 545.
"Abū Sūrah, 546.
"Abū Sūrah, 547.
"Abū Sūrah, 548.
"Abū Sūrah, 549.
"Abū Sūrah, 551.
"Abū Sūrah, 552.
"Abū Sūrah, 553.
"Abū Sūrah, 554.
"Abū Sūrah, 555.
"Abū Sūrah, 556.
"Abū Sūrah, 557.
"Abū Sūrah, 558.
"Abū Sūrah, 559.
"Abū Sūrah, 560.
"Abū Sūrah, 561.
"Abū Sūrah, 562.
"Abū Sūrah, 563.
"Abū Sūrah, 564.
"Abū Sūrah, 565.
"Abū Sūrah, 566.
"Abū Sūrah, 567.
"Abū Sūrah, 568.
"Abū Sūrah, 569.
"Abū Sūrah, 570.
"Abū Sūrah, 571.
"Abū Sūrah, 572.
"Abū Sūrah, 573.
"Abū Sūrah, 574.
"Abū Sūrah, 575.
"Abū Sūrah, 576.
"Abū Sūrah, 577.
"Abū Sūrah, 578.
"Abū Sūrah, 579.
"Abū Sūrah, 580.
"Abū Sūrah, 581.
"Abū Sūrah, 582.
"Abū Sūrah, 583.
"Abū Sūrah, 584.
"Abū Sūrah, 585.
"Abū Sūrah, 586.
"Abū Sūrah, 587.
"Abū Sūrah, 588.
"Abū Sūrah, 589.
"Abū Sūrah, 590.
"Abū Sūrah, 591.
"Abū Sūrah, 592.
"Abū Sūrah, 593.
"Abū Sūrah, 594.
"Abū Sūrah, 595.
"Abū Sūrah, 596.
"Abū Sūrah, 597.
"Abū Sūrah, 598.
"Abū Sūrah, 599.
"Abū Sūrah, 600.
"Abū Sūrah, 601.
"Abū Sūrah, 602.
"Abū Sūrah, 603.
"Abū Sūrah, 604.
"Abū Sūrah, 605.
"Abū Sūrah, 606.
"Abū Sūrah, 607.
"Abū Sūrah, 608.
"Abū Sūrah, 609.
"Abū Sūrah, 610.
"Abū Sūrah, 611.
"Abū Sūrah, 612.
"Abū Sūrah, 613.
"Abū Sūrah, 614.
"Abū Sūrah, 615.
"Abū Sūrah, 616.
"Abū Sūrah, 617.
"Abū Sūrah, 618.
"Abū Sūrah, 619.
"Abū Sūrah, 620.
"Abū Sūrah, 621.
"Abū Sūrah, 622.
"Abū Sūrah, 623.
"Abū Sūrah, 624.
"Abū Sūrah, 625.
"Abū Sūrah, 626.
"Abū Sūrah, 627.
"Abū Sūrah, 628.
"Abū Sūrah, 629.
"Abū Sūrah, 630.
"Abū Sūrah, 631.
"Abū Sūrah, 632.
"Abū Sūrah, 633.
"Abū Sūrah, 634.
"Abū Sūrah, 635.
"Abū Sūrah, 636.
"Abū Sūrah, 637.
"Abū Sūrah, 638.
"Abū Sūrah, 639.
"Abū Sūrah, 640.
"Abū Sūrah, 641.
"Abū Sūrah, 642.
"Abū Sūrah, 643.
"Abū Sūrah, 644.
"Abū Sūrah, 645.
"Abū Sūrah, 646.
"Abū Sūrah, 647.
"Abū Sūrah, 648.
"Abū Sūrah, 649.
"Abū Sūrah, 650.
"Abū Sūrah, 651.
"Abū Sūrah, 652.
"Abū Sūrah, 653.
"Abū Sūrah, 654.
"Abū Sūrah, 655.
"Abū Sūrah, 656.
"Abū Sūrah, 657.
"Abū Sūrah, 658.
"Abū Sūrah, 659.
"Abū Sūrah, 660.
"Abū Sūrah, 661.
"Abū Sūrah, 662.
"Abū Sūrah, 663.
"Abū Sūrah, 664.
"Abū Sūrah, 665.
"Abū Sūrah, 666.
"Abū Sūrah, 667.
"Abū Sūrah, 668.
INDEX.

* Sulaimân at Taimi, 285.  
Abû Sulaimân Mohammad Ibn Abû  
Allah, 344, 351, 389.  
as-Sulaimâni, Abû Shâhâ, 359.  
Sulib al-Fath, 465.  
Sulib al-Kalib, 464.  
*Bâni Sumâhi, 464.  
*Sumâya, 464 et seq.  
*Ibn Sûr, 50.  
as-Suraimi, 558.  
as-Silsi, Abû Shoaib, 77.  
*Îm Suwaid, 121.  
*Îm Suwâida, 379.

T

Îm at-Tasawwî, 129, 500, 549.  
*Tabâla, 428, 933.  
at-Tabârât, Abû Othaim Allah, 382.  
Tâdla, 464.  
Tâhir Ibn Ahpâd, 278.  
*Tâhir Ibn Mohammad Ibn Amr  
Îm Ibn al-Lâit, 334.  
Tâhir Ibn Tâhir, 368.  
Abû Tâhir Ahmad at-Thâkafi, 55.  
Abû Tâhir Mohammad, the âdûb, 55.  
*Tâhman, 358.  
*At-Tayib Ibn Ismail, 77.  
*Taj ad-Dawla, son of Thîka tad-  
Dawla, 47, 51.  
*Tâj ad-Din Ibn al-Jarrâh, 129.  
*Tâjra, 464.  
Tâki ad-Dîn Omar, the Ayûbide, 502, 503, 510, 583.  
Takrûr, 345.  
at-Tolâmâni, Abû Omar, 399.  
*Îlha Ibn Mohammad Ibn Jaâfar, 49, 386.  
*Îlha Ibn Othaim Allah, 291, 292.  
*Ibn Tâllî, 494, 495.  
Talî al-Sultan, 507.  
*At-Tannâshi, Ali Ibn Mohammad, 54.  
*Tanza, 91, 94.  
*Târeh, 134.  
Târik, intendant of Kof, 486, 487, 499.  
at-Taarsî, Abû 'l-Husain, 375.  
The Târtarks, 19.  
Tâthiriya, 268.  
*Ibn al-Tâthiriya, 268.  
*Bint at-Tâthiriya, 267.  
*Tâshîlîn, 469.  
*Tâshîlin Ibn Ali, 482, 484, 486.  
Tâshûkîn, Mu'âlî ad-Dîn, 434.  
*Tejra, 470.  
*Thabit Kûna, 197, 198.  
thathâkîf, Abû 'l-Faraj, 379.  
Thalâb, Abû 'l-Abbas, 63, 64, 67.  
Abû Thaur, 364.  
Thîka tad-Dawla, Ibn al-Husain, 43.  
Thurâmâ Ibn al-Ashra, 63.  
*Thâlî, tribe, 357.  
Tiberias, 514.  
Tîbânî, 517.  
*At-Tibrizi, 78.  
*Tîlimân, 465.  
*Ibn t-Termid, Abû Ismail Mohammad, 387.  
*Toghrul, Shihâb ad-Dîn, 424, 438, 433.  
*Ibn Tusâlî, 474, 475.  
Tuhfa al-Kawâla, 390.  
*Ibn Tukush Khwârezm Shâh, 11.  
Tûman Ibn Ghâzi, Husâm ad-Dîn, 509, 555.  
Tunâr, 366.  
*Ibn Tumart, 97.  
Tûran Shâh Ibn Ayyûb, 497, 504, 508.  
*Ibn Abû Turab, 58.  
*Ibn 'Uthâb, Abû 'l-Hassan, 262, 267, 269.  
*Ibn al-Tûski, Abû 'l-Fadîl, 448.  
Tûrân, 389.  
*Tyre, 559.

U

*Ibn al-Ubdâdî, 473, 473.  
*Ibn Usâyîyâdî, 49.  
*Ibn al-Ushnasî, 49.  
*Ibn Uyayl, 181.

W

i-Ibn al-Wâdâbî Ibn Khalitama, 262.  
i-Ibn al-Wâdâbî al-Yamani, 401, 405.  
i-Ibn Abû 'l-Wafa al-Fârisi, 320.  
i-Abî al-Jarir, 163.  
i-Ibn Hassân, 189.  
i-Ibn al-Wâkitî, 104.  
i-Ibn al-Wâlîd Ibn Abû al-Malik, 180 et seq.  
i-Ibn al-Wâlîd Ibn Yazîd, 190, 444, 445.  
i-Ibn al-Wâlîd, legist, 391.  
i-Ibn al-Wâlîd al-Muzaffar, 125.  
i-Ibn Wardân, 162.  
i-i-Warrâk, Abû 'l-Hassan Muhammad, 271.  
i-i-Warrâk, Omar, 285.  
i-Ibn al-Warrâk, Abû 'l-Faraj, the author of the Fihrist, 361.  
Warsh, 592.

"Washiq, 62.  
*al-Wâthik, the Almohade, 346.  
i-al-Wâthik Billah, 548.  
i-Webda, 475.  
i-William, the son of Roger, 102.  
i-Wisâs, 32.  
i-Wisâs, 32.

Y

Îm Ya'âya Ibn Ali Ibn al-Kâsim, 89, 90.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Abîkham, 33, 105.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Abîz, 102.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Abîtâb, 74', 103, 218, 337.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Mûsâ, 349.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Hudâil, 571, 572.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Jaâlîr, 127.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn al-Jarrâh, 139.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Mahmûd, 379.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Malân, 54.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Mânsûr, 134.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Mâsûd, 319.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Mâwûd, 29.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn al-Mubarak, 60.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Nizâr, 134.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Said ash-Shâbâni, 129.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Tamâm, the Zîrîde, 95.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Yâhûy, 29.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Yâmar, 59.  
Îm Ya'âya Ibn Yâshî, 379.  
Îm Yâkôb Ibn Abû al-Hâkk, the Meri-  
nîde, 349.  
i-i-Yâkôb Ibn Dâwûd, the vizir, 352.  
i-i-Yâkôb Ibn Killîs, 359.  
i-i-Yâkôb al-Mausûlî, the Almohade, 344.  
i-i-Yâkôb Ibn Mohammad Ibn al-Lâit, 333.  
i-i-Yâkôb as-Saffârû, 301.  
i-i-Yâkôb Ibn Yûsuf Ibn Abî al-Mâ-  
min, 355.  
i-i-Yâkôb Ibn al-Diwâwaî, 394.  
i-i-Yâkôb, 475.  
i-i-Yâkôb al-Hamawi, the geographer, 9.  
*Yâkut al-Mausûlî, the penman, 2.  
i-i-Yâkôb ar-Rûmi, the poet, 5.  
i-i-Abû Yâla al-Khâlîlî, 29.  
i-i-Yâma, 62.  
i-i-Îbn Ya'âya, see Ya'âya.  
i-i-Îbn Mûzâarrâ, 383.  
i-i-Îbn Yamût, see Mûsâbîl.  
i-i-Yârukh the Turkmân, 1.  
i-i-Yârûkî, 494, 495.  
i-i-Yârûkiya, 1.  
i-i-Îbn Yasîn, Abû Allah, 467.  
i-i-Îbn Hâtîm, 213.
INDEX.

*Yūsuf ibn Tashīfīn, 448.
*Yūsuf, the son of the kadi Abū Yūsuf, 284.
Abū Yūsuf the kadi, 377.
Abū Yūsuf, the son of Yūsuf ibn Abū Mūmin, 476.
Yūsufian dinārs, 471.

Z

* Abū Zabada, 199.
*az-Zahdati, Muhammad ibn Yahya, 115, 127.
*az-Zahdati, 199.
* Abū Zahir, 587.
Zaghāl, 175.
Zahr ibn Kais, 536.
Zaid, the son of Ali Zain al-Abidine, 444, 448.
Zaib ibn Mānūn, 924.
Abū Ḥāfiz al-Anārī, 374.
Yūsuf, 396.
As Yūsuf ibn Abū Mūmin, 470, 471.
Yūsuf ibn Ayyūb al-Hamdānī, 412.
Yūsuf ibn Khārūn, 569.
Yūsuf ibn Omar ath-Thakab, 438.

PART II.—NOTES.

Abl, 4.
Adultery, 386.
Add (وَلَّا) (الدَّاَدَّ), the armed hands of a city, 560.
Adīn, plural of آدن, 267, 268.
Almohad, origin of their name, 467.
Aml, liste, schedule, account, 368.
Ampets, 128.
Anfars, the conquest, 571.
Arabs, their epistolary style, 300.
Armour and arms of a Persian horsem architecture, 323.
Babylonia, its inhabitants were magicians, 9.

Badr, one thousand dirhems, 334.
Bakhtar (بَكَّتَار), a high-peaked cap, 434.
Barbat (بَرَبَت), a lute, 272.
Basbīs (بَسْبِيس), 533.
Bath (بَتَح), 440.
Belad (بلَاد), 436.
Bonnet, or cap, of displeasure, 329.
Blue (أَرْجَم), implacable, 371.
Būth (بَث), the sun, 571.
Camel, battle of the, 392.
Coat of mail; the rippled surface of a pond is compared to one, 128.
Cushion, doubling the (ثَنَي), treating with honour, 499, 212.
Cushions, the two; civil and military authority (?), 192.
Dikhdan, 328.
The August Diwan, 561.
Divan az-Zimma, 115.
Divorce by mutual anathema, 591.
Dizdar, 482.
Donations, The year of, 108.
Dress of the ulemā, 273.
Du`, 139.
Duma, 293.

Emir al-Māniyā; the Almohade
INDEX.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>335</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>376</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>393</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>399</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>421</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>424</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>441</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>444</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>447</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>508</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>519</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>538</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>558</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>567</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>573</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>574</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>591</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>592</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>605</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>606</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>607</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>608</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>609</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>611</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>612</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>613</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>614</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>615</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


INDEX.

The Tdr, 117, 128, 134, 141.
Tajrth wa ta'dil, 28.
Taksim (تکسیم), 91.
Tauriya (توریه), 141.
Testimony, law of, 50, 406.

Tamg (تنگ), 143.
Tanhrif (تنوین), a robe of honour, 117.

Timbd (تنبیل), 552.
Turrahdt (ثرهات), 339.
Wassada, see Cushion.
Witnesses, 406.

Yafaq et (یافع), 69.
Yatok (یطوق), 147.

Yath (یوح), 571.
Zabian, 455, 470.
Zabada (زیادة), 134.
Zda, 478.
Zebzab (زبیب), 133.
Zendik, 159.
Zenbil (زنبیل), 462.
Zd 'I-Fkhār, 320, 321.

END OF THE FOURTH AND LAST VOLUME.